NATIONAL MARINE FISHERIES SERVICE
ENDANGERED SPECIES ACT SECTION 7 CONSULTATION
BIOLOGICAL OPINION

AGENCY:	Bureau of Ocean Energy Management Bureau of Safety and Environmental Enforcement National Marine Fisheries Service U.S. Army Corps of Engineers U.S. Coast Guard U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
ACTIVITY CONSIDERED:	Construction, Operation, Maintenance, and Decommissioning of the South Fork Offshore Energy Project (Lease OCS-A 0517) GARFO-2021-00353 – [CORRECTED]
CONDUCTED BY:	National Marine Fisheries Service Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office
DATE ISSUED:	October 1, 2021
APPROVED BY:	Michael Pentony Regional Administrator

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This constitutes NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service's (NMFS) biological opinion (Opinion) issued to the Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM), as the lead federal agency, in accordance with section 7 of the Endangered Species Act of 1973 (ESA), as amended, on the effects of the construction, operation, maintenance, and decommissioning of the South Fork Wind Offshore Wind Project (Lease OCS-A 0517). South Fork Wind, LLC (formerly Deepwater Wind South Fork, LLC) is proposing to construct and operate a commercial-scale offshore wind energy facility within Lease Area OCS-A 0517 that would generate up to approximately 180 megawatts (MW) of electricity.

BOEM is the lead federal agency for purposes of section 7 consultation; the other action agencies include the Bureau of Safety and Environmental Enforcement (BSEE), the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE), the U.S. Coast Guard (USCG), the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), and NMFS. This Opinion considers effects of the proposed action on ESA-listed whales, sea turtles, fish, and designated critical habitat that occur in the action area. A complete administrative record of this consultation will be kept on file at our Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office.

1.1 Regulatory Authorities

The Energy Policy Act of 2005 (EPAct), Public Law 109-58, added section 8(p)(1)(c) to the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act. The new section authorized the Secretary of Interior to issue leases, easements, and rights-of-way (ROW) in the Outer Continental Shelf (OCS) for renewable energy development, including wind energy. The Secretary delegated this authority to the former Minerals Management Service, and later to BOEM. Final regulations implementing this authority (30 CFR part 585) were promulgated on April 22, 2009. These regulations prescribe BOEM's responsibility for determining whether to approve, approve with modifications, or disapprove South Fork's Construction and Operations Plan (COP). South Fork filed their COP with BOEM on June 2018, with subsequent revisions through July 2020[1]. BOEM issued a Notice of Intent to prepare an Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) under the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) (42 USC § 4321 et seq.) on October 19, 2018, to assess the potential impacts of the Proposed Action and Alternatives (83 Fed. Reg. 53104). A draft EIS (DEIS) was published on January 4, 2021 and a final EIS (FEIS) was published on August 16, 2021.[2]

BSEE's mission is to enforce safety, environmental, and conservation compliance with any associated legal and regulatory requirements during project construction and future operations. BSEE will be in charge of the review of Facility Design and Fabrication and Installation Reports, oversee inspections/enforcement actions as appropriate, oversee closeout verification efforts, oversee facility removal inspections/monitoring, and oversee bottom clearance confirmation.

---

[1] COP is available online at: https://www.boem.gov/renewable-energy/state-activities/south-fork. Last accessed September 20, 2021.

[2] The DEIS and FEIS are available online at: https://www.boem.gov/renewable-energy/state-activities/south-fork. Last accessed September 28, 2021.

USACE issued a Public Notice (NAN-2020-01079[3]) describing their proposed authorizations on January 6, 2021. In the notice, USACE notes that work regulated by USACE, through section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act of 1899 and section 404 of the Clean Water Act, will include the construction of up to 15 offshore wind turbine generators (WTGs), scour protection around the base of the WTGs, submarine inter-array cables connecting the WTGs, one offshore substation (OSS), inter-array cables connecting the WTGs to the OSS, and installation of the South Fork Export Cable (SFEC) from the OSS to the onshore interconnection facility at Beach Lane, Town of Easthampton, Suffolk County, New York.

The USCG administers the permits for private aids to navigation (PATON) located on structures positioned in or near navigable waters of the United States. PATONS and federal aids to navigation (ATONS), including radar transponders, lights, sound signals, buoys, and lighthouses are located throughout the Project area. It is anticipated that USCG approval of additional PATONs during construction of the WTGs, OSS, and along the offshore export cable corridor may be required. These aids serve as a visual reference to support safe maritime navigation. SFW would establish marine coordination to control vessel movements throughout WDA as required. Federal regulations governing PATON are found within 33 CFR part 66 and address the basic requirements and responsibilities.

The Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972 (MMPA) as amended, and its implementing regulations (50 CFR part 216) allow, upon request, the incidental take of small numbers of marine mammals by U.S. citizens who engage in a specified activity (other than commercial fishing) within a specified geographic region. Incidental take is defined under the MMPA (50 CFR 216.3) as, "harass, hunt, capture, collect, or kill, or attempt to harass, hunt, capture, collect, or kill any marine mammal. This includes, without limitation, any of the following: The collection of dead animals, or parts thereof; the restraint or detention of a marine mammal, no matter how temporary; tagging a marine mammal; the negligent or intentional operation of an aircraft or vessel, or the doing of any other negligent or intentional act which results in disturbing or molesting a marine mammal; and feeding or attempting to feed a marine mammal in the wild."

An Exempted Fishing Permit (EFP) is issued by NMFS to provide a limited exemption from specific regulatory provisions to carry out fishing activities that would otherwise be prohibited under regulations at 50 CFR part 648 or part 697. Generally, EFPs are issued for activities in support of fisheries-related research, including landing undersized fish or fish in excess of a possession limit for research purposes, seafood product development and/or market research, compensation fishing, and the collection of fish for public display. Anyone that intends to engage in an activity that would be prohibited under these regulations (with the exception of scientific research on a scientific research vessel, and exempted educational activities as described below) is required to obtain an EFP prior to commencing the activity. NMFS may issue EFPs for one or more of the surveys for fisheries resources to be carried out as part of the South Fork project. These surveys' effects would not occur but for the South Fork project;

---

[3] Public Notice is online at https://www.nan.usace.army.mil/Portals/37/docs/regulatory/publicnotices/2021/PUBLIC%20NOTICE_NAN-2020-01079-EME.pdf?ver=jpFgKXOWKeHKVVXlLGf_xA%3d%3d. Last accessed September 20, 2021.

therefore, it is appropriate to consider them in this Opinion and, to the extent the surveys cause incidental take, in this Opinion's Incidental Take Statement.

South Fork may obtain a Letter of Acknowledgment (LOA) from NMFS for certain fisheries survey activities. An LOA acknowledges certain activities as scientific research conducted from a scientific research vessel. Scientific research activities are activities that would meet the definition of fishing under the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (Magnuson-Stevens Act), but for the statutory exemption provided for scientific research. Such activities are exempt from any and all regulations promulgated under the Magnuson-Stevens Act, provided they continue to meet the definition of scientific research activities conducted from a scientific research vessel. To meet the definition of a scientific research vessel, the vessel must be conducting a scientific research activity and be under the direction of one of the following: Foreign government agency; U.S. Government agency; U.S. state or territorial agency; University (or other educational institution accredited by a recognized national or international accreditation body); International treaty organization; or, Scientific institution. In order to meet this definition, vessel activity must be dedicated to the scientific research activity, and cannot include commercial fishing. Scientific research activity includes, but is not limited to, sampling, collecting, observing, or surveying the fish or fishery resources within the Exclusive Economic Zone. Research topics include taxonomy, biology, physiology, behavior, disease, aging, growth, mortality, migration, recruitment, distribution, abundance, ecology, stock structure, bycatch or other collateral effects of fishing, conservation engineering, and catch estimation of fish species considered to be a component of the fishery resources. The issuance of an LOA by NMFS is not a federal action subject to section 7 consultation and it is not an authorization or permit to carry out an activity. However, as BOEM's action we are consulting on includes some surveys that may be carried out with an LOA, and these surveys' effects would not occur but for the South Fork project, it is appropriate to consider them in this Opinion and, to the extent the surveys cause incidental take, in this Opinion's Incidental Take Statement.

On March 15, 2019, the NMFS Office of Protected Resources (OPR) received a request from South Fork for an Incidental Harassment Authorization (IHA) to take marine mammals incidental to construction of an offshore wind energy project southeast of Rhode Island. Following a delay of the project, South Fork Wind submitted an updated version of the application on June 3, 2020, and then a revised version September 14, 2020. The application was deemed adequate and complete on September 15, 2020. On December 15, 2020, South Fork Wind submitted a subsequent application due to changes to the project scope. NMFS OPR deemed the application adequate and complete on December 16, 2020. South Fork Wind's request is for take of 16 species of marine mammals by harassment. Neither SFW nor NMFS expects serious injury or mortality to result from this activity and, therefore, NMFS determined that an IHA is appropriate. A notice of the proposed IHA was published in the *Federal Register* on February 5, 2021 (86 FR 8490).

2.0 CONSULTATION HISTORY

BOEM submitted a Biological Assessment (BA) and request for initiation of ESA consultation on January 8, 2021. We requested additional information in correspondence dated January 26 and February 1, 2021. BOEM responded to those requests in correspondence dated February 5, 2021; consultation was initiated on February 8, 2021. On May 27, 2021, BOEM provided us with information on South Fork's Fisheries Research and Monitoring Plan and requested that we consider the activities described therein as part of the proposed action. We received a supplemental BA from BOEM on July 7, 2021 and a revised supplemental BA on July 20, 2021.

3.0 DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPOSED ACTIONS ON WHICH CONSULTATION WAS REQUESTED

3.1 Overview of Proposed Federal Actions

BOEM is the lead federal agency for the project for purposes of this ESA consultation and coordination under the NEPA; BOEM requested consultation on its proposal to approve a COP to authorize the construction, operation, and eventual decommissioning of the South Fork Wind Farm (SFWF) and South Fork Export Cable (SFEC). BSEE will provide recommendations to BOEM for enforcing safety, environmental, and conservation compliance with any associated legal and regulatory requirements during project construction and future operations; oversee inspections/enforcement actions, as appropriate; oversee closeout verification efforts; oversee facility removal and inspections/monitoring; and oversee bottom clearance confirmation. The request for consultation included: EPA's proposal to issue an Outer Continental Shelf Air Permit; the USACE's proposal to issue a permit for in-water work, structures, and fill under Section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act of 1899 and Section 404 of the Clean Water Act; NMFS' proposal to issue a Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) Incidental Harassment Authorization (IHA); and the USCG proposal to issue a Private Aids to Navigation (PATON) Authorization. Through the provisions of the Clean Water Act, EPA has delegated authority to issue permits under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) to the State of New York. South Fork Wind, LLC (South Fork Wind) proposes to apply for a NPDES authorization under the State Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (SPDES) Permit Program delegated to New York State; it is anticipated that this permit will be needed for activities at the cable landing site. The issuance of State permits is not an action subject to ESA section 7 consultation; however, this consultation considers the effects of water quality impacts of all proposed activities that would not occur but for the South Fork Wind project that may affect listed species.

As described in the DEIS, vessels are required to adhere to state and federal regulations, including NPDES standards. Additionally, BOEM will require all Project construction vessels to adhere to existing state and federal regulations related to ballast and bilge water discharge, including USCG ballast discharge regulations (33 CFR 151.2025) and EPA National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System Vessel General Permit standards.

3.2 South Fork Wind Project

3.2.1. Overview

BOEM is proposing to authorize South Fork Wind, LLC (South Fork Wind) to construct, operate, maintain, and eventually decommission an offshore wind energy project in Lease Area OCS-A 0517, located within the Rhode Island-Massachusetts Wind Energy Area (RI/MA WEA). The other Federal actions identified in Section 3.1 authorize various aspects of the proposed action. Here, for simplicity, we may refer to BOEM's authorization when that authorization may also include other Federal actions (e.g., construction of the wind turbines requires authorizations from BOEM, USACE, EPA, USCG, and NMFS). South Fork Wind's proposed activity would occur approximately 19 miles (30.6 kilometer (km), 16.6 nautical miles [nm]) southeast of Block Island, Rhode Island, and 35 miles (56.3 km, 30.4 nm) east of Montauk Point, New York. Water depths in the Wind Development Area (WDA) range from approximately 29–44 meters (m) (108–134 feet (ft.)). The project includes two main components, the SFWF, which would consist of up to 15 offshore wind turbine generators (WTGs) of 6 to 12 megawatt (MW) capacity, 34.5 kilovolt (kV) or 66 kV submarine cables between the WTGs (inter-array cables), and an offshore substation (OSS) all located within the lease area, and the SFEC. The total capacity of the project will be approximately 90-180 MW. The SFEC would be a 138 kV AC cable located offshore, in both federal waters and New York State territorial waters, and onshore in East Hampton, New York. Two onshore landing sites are being considered for the SFEC in East Hampton: Beach Lane or Hither Hills. The SFEC would connect the SFWF to the existing mainland electric grid on Long Island. The project also includes a number of survey components, including high-resolution geophysical surveys (HRG) and surveys of fisheries resources in the project area. These survey activities will occur both before and after construction.

Construction and installation of the SFWF and SFEC is anticipated to occur over a two-year period with land-based components commencing as early as quarter one of 2022, followed by offshore construction in approximately quarter four of 2022. The proposed Project is being developed and permitted using the Project Design Envelope (PDE) concept; this means that the "maximum impact scenario" (i.e., greatest number of piles, largest turbines, etc.) is proposed for authorization in permits and is being analyzed in accompanying review documents (see Table 3.2.1). Further discussion of construction methods and schedule are provided in COP Volume 1, Section 3.0 (Jacobs 2021) and summarized below. Additional relevant details of the proposed activities are also included in the Effects of the Action section of this Opinion.

Table 3.2.1. Range of the Project Design Envelope from which the maximum impact is derived.

Design Parameter	**Minimum Design Size**	**Maximum Design Size**
WIND TURBINE GENERATOR (WTG) AND FOUNDATION		
Turbine size	6 MW	12 MW
Number of WTG positions	11	Up to 15
Distance between positions	1 nautical mile (nm) between WTGs on an east–west, north–south grid	1 nm between WTGs on an east–west, north–south grid
Total tip height	577 feet mean sea level (MSL)	840 feet MSL
Hub height	331 feet MSL	472 feet MSL
Rotor diameter	492 feet MSL	735 feet MSL
Rotor swept zone area	190,117 square feet	424,173 square feet
Blade length	246 feet	358 feet
Platform level/interface level height for monopile	66 feet MSL	75 feet MSL

Tip clearance/air gap	85 feet MSL	105 feet MSL
Foundation construction method	Pile driving	Pile driving
Foundation and WTG vessel type	Jack-up vessel or derrick barge, vessel on dynamic positioning with feeder barges	Jack-up vessel or derrick barge, vessel on dynamic positioning with feeder barges
MONOPILE FOUNDATION		
Number of monopile foundations	12	Up to 16
Monopile diameter	36 feet	36 feet
Number of piles per foundation	1	1
Seabed footprint—no scour protection—per foundation	1,025 square feet	1,025 square feet
Seabed footprint—with scour protection—per foundation	39,765 square feet	39,765 square feet
Seabed preparation per foundation	40,365 square feet	40,365 square feet
Vessel anchoring/mooring per foundation	2,234,089 square feet	2,234,089 square feet
Hammer size for monopile foundation	4,000 kilojoules (kj)	4,000 kj
Max penetration depth into seabed	164 feet	164 feet
Duration of pile driving (hours/pile)	2 to 4 hours	2 to 4 hours
Duration of installation (days/foundation)	2 to 4 days	2 to 4 days

Source: Appendix D, South Fork FEIS (2021)

3.2.2 Construction - Offshore Activities

Wind Turbine Generators

South Fork Wind would erect up to 15 WTGs of 6 to 12 MW capacity extending up to 840 feet (256 m) above mean lower low water (MLLW) with a spacing between WTGs of approximately one nautical mile within the WDA. Each WTG would be mounted on a monopile foundation, a long steel tube driven 164 feet (50 m) into the seabed. As described in the COP, there will be small amounts of lubrication, grease, oil, and cooling fluids within the WTG to support the operation of the WTG bearing, pitch, and hydraulic systems as well as the WTG transformer. There also may be a small, temporary diesel generator at each WTG location on the work deck of the foundation. If present, the generator would have a maximum power of 200 horsepower (hp) and up to a 50-gallon diesel tank with secondary containment. Each WTG will also have helicopter access by means of winching personnel onto/from a landing area. In September 2021, BOEM staff confirmed that South Fork will install direct drive WTGs; therefore there is no gearbox lubrication oil.

Inter-array Cables and Offshore Substation (OSS)

Inter-array cables will connect the individual WTGs and transfer power between the WTGs and the OSS. South Fork Wind's PDE includes a cable design that encompasses a conservative range of parameters, detailed in Table 3.2.2 below. The voltage capacity of the inter-array cables would be 34.5 kV or 66 kV, depending on the selected WTG. The cable contains three conductors, screens, insulators, fillers, sheathing, armor, and fiber optic communications cables. Between three and 5 WTGs would be connected through the inter-array cable that would be buried 4 to 6 feet (1.2 to 1.8 m) below the seabed and then connected to the OSS. Cable protection may be placed on the seabed near the WTG foundation where the inter-array cable emerges from the trench and attaches to the foundation.

The OSS would serve as the interconnection point between the offshore and onshore components. The primary purpose of the OSS is to collect electric energy generated by the WTGs and transform voltage from the inter-array cable to the SFEC and would also house the Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) system for monitoring and control between the WTGs, substation, and onshore remote operation(s). The OSS would be above the water located either by itself on a stand-alone monopile, or co-located on a foundation with a WTG. According to the PDE, the total maximum height of the OSS will depend on the foundation type. On a stand-alone foundation, the total height of the substation would be 150 to 200 feet (46 to 61 m), measured from mean sea level to the top of the substation, whereas on a co-located foundation with a WTG the maximum height would not exceed that of the other WTGs (Table 3.2.2).

WTGs and the OSS would include lighting and marking that complies with Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) and USCG standards, and be consistent with BOEM best practices. A detailed description of inter-array cables and OSS is provided in COP Volume 1, Sections 3.1.2.3 and 3.1.2.4 (Jacobs 2021).

Table 3.2.2. South Fork Wind Farm OSS and inter-array cable specifications with maximum design scenario

Design Parameter	Minimum Design Size	Maximum Design Size
OFFSHORE SUBSTATION (OSS)		
Number of OSS	1	1
OSS foundation type	Co-located monopile	Stand-alone monopile
OSS number of piles per foundation	1	1
OSS foundation construction method	Pile driving	Pile driving
OSS max height	Stand-alone monopile at 150 to 200 feet	Stand-alone monopile at 150 to 200 feet
INTER-ARRAY CABLE		
Inter-array cable capacity	34.5 kilovolts (kV)	66 kV
Number of foundations per inter-array	Up to 3	5
Inter-array cable length	21.4 miles	21.4 miles
Maximum trench depth	10 feet	10 feet
Burial depth	4 feet	6 feet
Installation advancement (length of cable lay per day)	1 to 2 miles	1 to 2 miles

Source: South Fork FEIS Appendix D (2021)

WTG Installation

South Fork Wind would install foundations and WTGs using a jack-up lift barge or derrick barge moored to the seabed or maintained by a dynamic positioning system, as well as necessary support vessels and barges. These installation vessels would be equipped with a crane and a pile-driving hammer. Prior to commencing installation activities, geophysical surveys may be conducted near each foundation location and the seabed will be checked for debris and levelness within a 200-foot (61-m) diameter circle from the location where the monopile will be installed. As necessary, significant debris, such as large boulders, will be moved outside this area. Prior to monopile installation, a filter layer of engineered rock will be placed on the seabed by an FPV or rock-dumping vessel.

The foundations will be installed from a jack-up lift barge or derrick barge moored to the seabed or kept in position by the vessel's dynamic-positioning (DP) system. The hydraulic pile-driving hammer and crane used for lifting foundations and piles will be located on the installation barge. Jack-up vessels use metal legs with spud cans attached to the bottom to lift the work vessel out of the water. Once the vessel has completed its task, the vessel lowers back down to the water, lifts the spud cans off the sea floor, and moves to the next work location. If a moored derrick barge is used as the installation vessel, support tugs will deploy and set a series of anchors and associated anchor chains/lines to maintain the barge's position at the location of the foundation. Once the moored vessel has completed its tasks, its anchors and lines are retrieved and the barge moves to the next work location. Alternatively, if a DP derrick barge is used, the vessel's thrusters utilize global positioning system (GPS) fixes to continually maintain position at the location of the foundation. Once the vessel has completed its tasks, it motors to the next work location.

Material barges will be used to transport the foundations to the installation site. Each monopile will be lifted from the material barge, placed onto the seabed, leveled, and made ready for pile driving. Each monopile will then be driven to its final penetration target depth using a hydraulic hammer. Once the monopile is installed to the target depth, a transition section will be bolted to the top of the monopile to complete the installation. A transition piece may include boat landing and access ladders. Alternatively, a "one-piece monopile" (also known as a "transition piece-less monopile") may be used, in which secondary steel components may be installed instead of a transition piece, potentially including an anode cage, internal and external platforms, and boat landing. Assuming a 24-hour work window and no delays due to weather, sea conditions, or other circumstances, each monopile will require approximately 2 to 4 days for installation. Duration of pile driving is anticipated to be approximately 2 to 4 hours per pile. Concurrent driving (*i.e.*, the driving of more than one pile at the same time) would not occur and is not analyzed in this Opinion. Foundation installation is expected to take between 1-4 months and cable installation will take 6-9 months (Table 3.2.3).

Table 3.2.3. Anticipated installation schedule for South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable containing activities addressed in the application

Project Component	**Milestone**	**Expected Duration**
SFWF	Foundation installation	1 to 4 months
	HRG surveys	2 to 4 months
SFEC	Sea-to-shore installation (including horizontal directional drilling)	6 to 9 months
	HRG surveys	6 to 9 months

Source: BOEM SWFW and SFEC BA (2021)

Impact pile-driving activities at SFWF would take place between May 1 and December 31. The current engineering design considers two pile-driving scenarios. There are two piling scenarios that are considered possible within the current engineering design. The most likely scenario assumes that a single pile is driven every other day such that 16 monopiles piles would be installed over a 30-day period. A more aggressive schedule is considered for the maximum design scenario in which six piles are driven every 7 days such that the 16 piles are installed over a 20-day period. Within each design scenario, two pile schedules are considered; a standard pile schedule which will require an estimated 4,500 strikes for the pile to reach the target penetration depth and a difficult pile schedule which would require 8,000 strikes. A pile may be difficult to drive because of denser than anticipated substrate or the presence of an unavoidable boulder but no more than one difficult-to-drive pile is expected out of the total sixteen piles.

South Fork Wind estimates that each WTG would take 2 to 4 days to install completely assuming a 24-hour work window and no delays due to weather, sea conditions, etc. The monopile for each WTG would typically take 2-4 hours of hammering to install to target penetration depth; the remaining time is required to install the rest of the components. Impact pile driving entails the use of a hammer that utilizes a rising and falling piston to repeatedly strike a pile and drive it into the ground. Pile driving would begin using a soft start before driving intensity increases. A temporary steel cap called a helmet would be placed on top of the pile to minimize damage to the head during impact driving. The intensity (*i.e.*, hammer energy level) would be gradually increased based on the resistance that is experienced from the sediments. The expected hammer size for monopiles is up to 4,000 kJ (however, required energy may ultimately be far less than 4,000 kJ). As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA, in both potential pile installation scenarios (i.e., most likely and maximum design), only one pile will be driven in any 24-hour period.

Scour protection would be placed around all foundations, and would consist of engineered rock placed around the base of each monopile in a 68 m (222 ft.) diameter circle. The scour protection would serve to stabilize the seabed near the foundations as well as the foundations themselves. To maximize precision when placing scour protection, South Fork Wind would use the fall pipe method whenever feasible. See COP Volume 1, Section 3.1.2 for detailed specifications of proposed scour protection (Jacobs 2021).

Cable Laying

Cable burial operations will occur both offshore for the inter-array cables and the SFEC - Offshore and onshore for the SFEC - Onshore carrying power from the OSS to land. Inter-array cables will connect radial “strings” of 3 to 5 WTGs to the OSS (Figure 3.4.1). The offshore SFEC will connect the OSS to the SFEC – Interconnection Facility and onshore SFEC. South Fork Wind would bury the cables primarily using a jet plow. Cable burial produces a temporary disturbance footprint of approximately 10-feet wide along the entire length of the buried segments. Minimum and maximum seabed footprint is listed in Table 3.2.4. Prior to installation of the cables, a pre-lay grapnel run would be performed in all instances to locate and clear obstructions such as abandoned fishing gear and other marine debris. Where seabed features interfere with burial, such as boulder fields or bedrock outcroppings, the cable would be laid on the seabed surface and covered with a rock layer or concrete blanket.

The use of a cofferdam is being proposed for the nearshore SFEC connection and would require vibratory pile driving of sheet piles. The cofferdam would be installed using a vibratory hammer to drive Z-type steel sheet piles 9 m (30 feet) into the sediment. Cofferdam installation is anticipated to require approximately 18 hours of hammer operation over 1 to 3 days. As described in BOEM’s BA, no impact pile driving for foundations would occur from January 1 to April 30. Mitigation measures proposed for pile driving are described in Table 3.3.1.

As described in BOEM’s July 2021 Supplemental BA, as an alternative to the cofferdam, SFW may install a 60” diameter steel casing pipe with a pneumatic hammer or similar smaller size hammer through which the 24-inch-diameter conduit would be pulled. The casing pipe may be used in place of the proposed cofferdam at the same location. The casing pipe may require that temporary support piles be installed to ensure pipe stability. These support piles are anticipated to consist of up to 8 steel sheet piles temporarily driven into the seafloor. Casing pipe installation is anticipated to be accomplished using a small pneumatic impact hammer (e.g., Grundoram Taurus or similar) operating around 18.6 kJ to drive the pipe in the seafloor. No acoustic modeling was carried out for the pneumatic hammer.

Table 3.2.4. Maximum-case scenario measurements for SFEC seabed footprint

South Fork Export Cable	Minimum Temporary Seabed Footprint	Maximum Permanent Seabed Footprint
SFEC trench width	25-43 feet	1 foot
SFEC-OCS submarine cable	555.3 acres	7.0 acres
SFEC-OCS cable joints	N/A	0.1 acre
SFEC-OCS cable protection [a]	N/A	0.6 acre
SFEC-OCS secondary cable protection	N/A	7.1 acres
SFEC-NYS submarine cable	18 acres	0.4 acre
SFEC-NYS secondary cable	N/A	0.2 acre
SFEC-NYS sediment excavation [b]	26,500 cubic yards	N/A
SFEC secondary cable protection [c]	N/A	7.3 acres

Source: SFW COP Volume 1, Section 3.2.3 (Jacobs 2021)

[a] Cable protection for up to 7 crossings

[b] Offshore cofferdam

[c] Estimated 5% OCS + 2% NYS

More information on cable laying associated with the proposed project is provided in COP Volume 1, Section 3.2.3 (Jacobs 2021).

Unexploded Ordinance

BOEM has determined that the likelihood of munitions and explosives of concern and unexploded ordnance (MEC/UXO) encounter is very low. Prior to seafloor preparation, cable routing, and micrositing of all assets, South Fork will implement a MEC/UXO Risk Assessment with Risk Mitigation Strategy (RARMS) designed to evaluate and reduce risk in accordance with the As Low As Reasonably Practicable (ALARP) risk mitigation principle. The RARMS consists of a phased process beginning with a Desktop Study and Risk Assessment that identifies potential sources of MEC/UXO hazard based on charted MEC/UXO locations and historical activities, assesses the baseline (pre-mitigation) risk that MEC/UXO pose to the Project, and recommends a strategy to mitigate that risk to ALARP. Avoidance is proposed as the preferred approach for MEC/UXO mitigation; however, there may be instances where confirmed MEC/UXO avoidance is not possible due to layout restrictions, presence of archaeological resources, or other factors that preclude micrositing. During Project construction, once the ALARP standard has been achieved, the likelihood of MEC/UXO encounter is very low. SFW will work with BOEM to identify appropriate response actions, which may include developing an emergency response plan, conducting MEC/UXO specific safety briefings, or retaining an on-call MEC/UXO consultant. In such situations, confirmed MEC/UXO may be removed through physical relocation to another suitable location on the seabed within the APE or previous designated disposal areas for wet storage using a “Lift and Shift” operation. Selection of a mitigation strategy will depend on the location, size, and condition of the confirmed MEC/UXO, and will be made in consultation with a MEC/UXO specialist and in coordination with the appropriate agencies. Safety measures such as the use of guard vessels, enforcement of safety zones, and others will be identified in consultation with a UXO/MEC specialist and the appropriate agencies and implemented as directed.

Construction-Related Vessel Activity

According to South Fork Wind, the most intense period of vessel traffic would occur during the construction phase when wind turbine foundations, inter-array cables, and WTGs are installed in parallel. South Fork Wind estimates that construction would involve approximately 25 vessels of various classes on-site over a period of about one year. Many of these vessels could remain in the project area for days or weeks at a time, potentially making only infrequent trips to port for bunkering and provisioning, as needed. However, the maximum number of vessels involved in the proposed Project area at one time is highly dependent on the Project’s final schedule, the final design of the Project’s components, and the logistics solution used to achieve compliance with the Jones Act. The Jones Act requires project components that move between U.S. ports be transported on Jones Act compliant, U.S.-flagged vessels. The number of vessel trips from outside the U.S. and their ports of origin would not be fully known until contractors are selected and supply chains are established. This Opinion considers South Fork Wind’s current assumptions that vessel trips would originate from ports in Europe and/or Gulf of Mexico, where many offshore wind components are manufactured.

Probable vessel classes used to construct the SFWF monopiles include heavy lift and derrick barge cranes, jack-up barges, material transport barges, a jack-up crane work vessel, and transport and anchor handling tugs (Table 3.2.6). A rock-dumping fallpipe vessel would be used to place scour protection, and a cable-laying vessel would be used to place the inter-array cable (see Table 3.2.6). A fuel-bunkering vessel would remain on station to refuel construction vessels and equipment. Transport vessels would be used to rotate construction crews to and from area ports. Small support vessels would be used for construction monitoring. Materials for construction may be transported from ports outside the WDA, including Europe, Canada, and the Gulf of Mexico. The number of trips from outside of the United States, and which ports those trips could originate from, would not be fully known until contractors are selected and supply chains are established; however, BOEM provides estimates of such vessel trips in the BA. This analysis assumes trips could originate from ports in Europe and/or Gulf of Mexico because many offshore wind components are currently manufactured there. Staging areas in Canada are also possible before transporting to the construction site. The values provided in Tables 3.2.5 and 3.2.6 are based on SFWF's current assumptions and are subject to change based on unforeseen circumstances. Currently, most industry-specific vessels are located in Europe but as the industry matures in the United States, fewer trips from Europe will be necessary. If WTG components are shipped to the WDA from one or more ports in Europe or other global suppliers, BOEM estimates this would consist of up to approximately eight vessel trips (see Table 3.2.5) based on the maximum design envelope installation of 15 WTGs.

Although specific ports have not been identified where equipment and components may originate, vessel transits from ports in the regions may occur as a result of the Project. The following ports may be used for fabrication, assembly, or deployment activities for the SFWF: Montauk, New York; Providence, Rhode Island: New Kingstown, Rhode Island; New Bedford, Massachusetts; New London, Connecticut; Paulsboro, New Jersey; Baltimore Maryland and/ or Norfolk, Virginia. In addition, staging may occur at Sheet Harbor, Nova Scotia (Jacobs 2021).

Table 3.2.5. Construction phase anticipated number of vessel trips outside of Rhode Island-Massachusetts.

State/Origin	Potential Ports	Est. Max. Daily Trips	Est Max. Monthly Trips	Estimated Total	Likelihood of Use
New York	Montauk, Shinnecock Fish Dock	< 1	2	4	Unlikely
Connecticut	New London	< 1	6	50	Likely
Europe	Unknown at this time	N/A	2	6	Likely
Canada, Worldwide	Port of Sheet Harbor, other ports unknown at this time	N/A	1	2	Possible
Other United States ports	Paulsboro Marine Terminal (NJ), Port of Baltimore (MD), Sparrows Point (MD),Norfolk International Terminal (VA), Other Ports (Atlantic/Gulf of Mexico)	N/A	2	4	Unlikely

Source: BOEM SWFW and SFEC BA (2021)

Table 3.2.6. Estimated proposed action vessel use parameters during South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable construction

Construction Element	Vessel Type	No. of Each Type of Vessel	Avg. Speed of Vessel (knots)	Estimated Work Duration (days)			Supply Trips to Port (1-way)	Estimated Number of Miles Traveled
				Federal Waters	New York State Waters	Other State Waters		
SFWF installation	Floating/jack-up crane barge	1	10	75	0	0	4	200
	Towing tug	2	11	45	0	0	15	750
	Material barge	2	4	30	0	50	5	250
	Anchor handling tug	1	11	45	0	0	30	1,500
	Rock dumping vessel	1	6.5	30	0	50	10	500
	Crew transport vessel	2	23	25	0	25	15	750
	Support vessel/inflatable	1	23	45	5	15	25	1,250
	Feeder barge: Monco 335	2	4	45	0	0	15	750
	Bunkering vessel	1	11	9	1	0	8	400
SFEC and inter-array cable	Transportation barge	1	4	0	0	60	0	0
	Fuel bunkering vessel	1	11	25	5	0	6	300
	Towing tug	2	11	20	0	0	8	400
	Material barge	1	4	20	0	60	8	400
	Anchor handling tug	1	11	20	0	0	8	400
	Cable-laying vessel	1	12.4	60	10	0	6	300
	Work vessel	1	10	45	0	0	30	1,500
	Work vessel support tug	1	11	45	0	0	30	1,500
	Crew transport vessel	2	23	60	0	60	30	1,500
	Support vessel/inflatable	1	23	30	15	15	20	1,000
Total		**25**	**N/A**	**674**	**36**	**335**	**273**	**13,650**

Source: SFW COP Appendix L Air Emissions Inventory (Jacobs 2021)

3.2.3 Construction - Interconnection Facility and Onshore Operations and Maintenance Facility

Construction of upland components would include the interconnection facility for the SFEC and an onshore operations and maintenance (O&M) facility where staff can prepare and mobilize for offshore maintenance activities, monitor the wind farm, and/or access storage space for spare parts and other equipment to support maintenance activities. The facility would be located in a port in Montauk, New York, or at Quonset Point, Rhode Island, and would be used during the duration of the Project. The facility would include building(s) that provide office space (a maximum of up to approximately 1,000 square feet); equipment storage space (a maximum of up to approximately 6,600 square feet at Montauk and up to approximately 11,000 square feet at Quonset Point); a stationary crane for equipment transfer, up to three vessel berths for the crew transfer vessels (CTV); as well as accommodations for parking spaces, additional containers for equipment storage, and minor surface improvements.

Modifications at the Port of Montauk may also include reinforcement and/or rehabilitation of the quayside(s), as well as both initial and maintenance dredging to support the CTVs. These modifications are not anticipated to be required at Quonset Point. As described in the USACE's Public Notice[4], dredging is required at the proposed Lake Montauk O&M Facility. A mechanical clamshell dredge will be used to dredge up to approximately 2,500 cubic yards of sediment from an approximately 1,500 square foot area to a depth of 12.4 feet below the plane of mean low water, including a 1-foot overdredge. The dredged material would be loaded directly into scows. Once full, the scow may be allowed to settle and decanted of excess water. The scow would be transported off the beach west of the Montauk Harbor entrance (Placement Area) where sediment would be pumped to shore. The sediment would be dewatered in a contained location on the beach, in an approximately 1,200 foot long by 25 foot wide area, landward of the plane of spring high water, then eventually spread as beach nourishment along the beach adjacent to the dewatering area, between the planes of mean high water and spring high water. Additional maintenance dredging events would occur annually, up to approximately 1,500 cubic yards per event, for a 10-year period. Additionally, a new ramp and floating pontoon would be installed from the existing bulkhead. This would be supported by five two-foot diameter steel piles. In addition, one new two-foot diameter steel monopile with donut fendering and mooring ring would be installed. The piles would be installed with a vibratory hammer.

Onshore Facilities - Landfall Site

South Fork Wind has proposed two landfall locations for the SFEC in East Hampton, Beach Lane and Hither Hills. At either landfall site, the SFEC would be installed at least 30 feet (9 m) below the current beach profile. The SFEC - Onshore will be installed entirely underground within the right-of-way (ROW) of the existing roadways or within the ROW of the Long Island Rail Road (LIRR). The transition of the export cable from offshore to onshore would be accomplished by horizontal directional drilling (HDD), which would bring the proposed cables beneath the nearshore area, the tidal zone, beach, and adjoining coastal areas to the proposed landfall site. One or more underground concrete transition vaults would be constructed at the landfall site.

---

[4] NAN-2020-01079-EME; https://www.nan.usace.army.mil/Portals/37/docs/regulatory/publicnotices/2021/PUBLIC%20NOTICE_NAN-2020-01079-EME.pdf?ver=jpFgKXOWKeHKVVXlLGf_xA%3d%3d; last accessed April 21, 2021.

A detailed description of the proposed landfall sites are provided in COP Volume 1, Section 3.2.2.2 (Jacobs 2021). Further discussion of proposed landfall site construction approach is provided in COP Volume 1, Section 3.2.3.4 (Jacobs 2021).

South Fork Export Cable - Interconnection Facility
Onshore, the SFEC - Interconnection Facility would connect the offshore SFEC with the existing 69 kV LIPA substation in East Hampton, New York. The offshore and onshore cables would be spliced together so the cable can be routed to the SFEC - Interconnection Facility by an underground electrical duct bank. The sea to shore transition will include a new onshore transition vault, cable installed using HDD under the beach and intertidal water, and may also include a temporary cofferdam located offshore beyond the intertidal zone. Conceptually, the sea-to-shore transition would be based on a landing site at Beach Lane; however, the concept would be similar for a landing site at Hither Hills.

The proposed onshore export cables would terminate at the proposed substation site. This previously developed site is adjacent to an existing substation on a parcel zoned for commercial and industrial use, where power would be transmitted to the electrical grid.

Detailed specifications of the onshore export cable are provided in COP Volume 1, Section 3.2.2.3. Further discussion of the proposed onshore export cable construction approach is provided in COP Volume 1, Section 3.2.3.5 (Jacobs 2021).

3.2.4 Operations and Maintenance

South Fork Wind's lease with BOEM (Lease OCS-A 0517) has an operations term of 25 years that commences on the date of COP approval. South Fork Wind would have to apply for an extension if it wished to operate the proposed Project for more than 25 years. This consultation does not consider operation of the proposed Project beyond the 25-year designed life span as this is the action that BOEM requested consultation on. South Fork Wind would monitor the SFWF and SFEC 24-hour a day / seven days a week from a remote facility. Monitoring would include regular inspections, tests, and repairs, as well as periodic review of anomalies in cable charging current, power factor, and protection devices.

Regular maintenance typically consists of routine inspections and preventative maintenance activities. These activities would require the use of CTVs but would not require the use of other specialized vessels. Crew transfer vessels and helicopters would transport crews to the proposed offshore Project area during operations and maintenance. Normal operations would involve up to three crew transport vessels periodically traveling to and from the SFWF from the O&M facility in Montauk Harbor. Regular maintenance typically consists of routine inspections and preventative maintenance activities. The number of CTV trips to the WTGs and OSS during a typical year is estimated to be approximately 5 to 10 visits per year per WTG (75–500 trips per year) and approximately 20 to 30 visits per year to the OSS. This number may vary and it is anticipated that there would be more activities taking place during summer months when weather conditions are more favorable. The use of specialized vessels would only be needed for major repairs, which are expected to be infrequent over the life of the wind farm. Additional operations and maintenance information can be found in COP Section 4.3.

The SFWF would be remotely monitored and operated from an onshore facility. South Fork Wind does not expect the SFEC to require planned maintenance but would maintain a stockpile of transmission cable for emergency repairs as needed. SFWF WTGs would be regularly inspected and maintained by service technicians delivered by a dedicated crew transport vessel from a nearby port. Should unplanned maintenance (e.g., WTG replacement) be required, support vessels may travel directly to the SFWF from locations that would be determined based on the type of maintenance that is required and vessel availability. These vessels may originate from the Gulf of Mexico, Atlantic Coast, Europe, or other worldwide ports. Table 3.2.7 represents anticipated vessel traffic from outside of RI/MA during the O&M phase.

Table 3.2.7. Operations and maintenance phase anticipated trips outside of Rhode Island-Massachusetts

State Origin	Potential Ports	Est. Max. Daily Trips	Est. Max. Monthly Trips	Estimated Total (30 years)	Likelihood of Use
New York	Montauk, Shinnecock Fish Dock	< 1	7	2,500	Likely
Connecticut	New London	N/A	< 1	50	Possible
Europe	Unknown at this time	N/A	< 1	30	Likely
Worldwide	Unknown at this time	N/A	< 1	1	Unlikely
Other United States ports	Paulsboro Marine Terminal (NJ), Port of Baltimore (MD), Sparrows Point (MD), Norfolk International Terminal (VA), other ports (Atlantic/Gulf of Mexico)	N/A	< 1	30	Unlikely

Source: BOEM SWFW and SFEC BA (2021)

3.2.5 Decommissioning

The SFWF and SFEC would be decommissioned when these facilities reach the end of their designed service life; here, we consider decommissioning following the 25-year operations period. South Fork Wind's COP (Jacobs 2021) describes the proposed scenario for decommissioning of the SFWF and SFEC at the end of facility service life. The same types of vessels used during construction would be employed for decommissioning. According to 30 CFR part 585.902 and other BOEM requirements, South Fork Wind would be required to remove or decommission all installations and clear the seabed of all obstructions (and marine debris) created by the proposed Project. All facilities would need to be removed 15 feet (4.6 meters) below the mudline (BML; 30 CFR § 585.910(a)). The WTGs would be removed and the monopiles cut off below the seabed and recovered to a barge for transport. BOEM assumes the WTG towers and foundations can be removed using non-explosive severing methods. Under the same regulation, foundations would be temporarily emptied of sediment, cut 15 feet (4.6 meters) BML, and removed. The portion buried below 15 feet (4.6 meters) would remain, and the depression would be refilled with the sediment that had been temporarily removed. A cable-laying vessel would be used to remove as much of the inter-array and SFEC transmission cables from the seabed as practicable to recover and recycle valuable metals. A material barge would transport components to a recycling yard where the components would be disassembled and prepared for re-use and/or recycling for scrap metal and other materials. Cable segments that cannot be easily recovered would be left buried below the seabed or rock armoring, contingent upon approval from DOI for abandonment-in-place (AIP). However, requests for AIP will require substantial justification/review and final disposition may include removal of all cable segments. Site clearance of the sea bottom will be required following removal of the structure pursuant to 30 C.F.R. 585.902(a) (2). Site clearance verification (SCV) procedures are expected to include side-scan or sector-scanning sonar and visual surveys using ROV camera surveys. All vessel strike avoidance measures would be required for vessel operations associated with decommissioning and SCV. Site-clearance verification using high-resolution side scan sonar equipment would operate at frequencies above the hearing ranges of all listed species (greater than 180 kilohertz [kHz]). Table 3.2.8 represents anticipated vessel traffic from outside of RI/MA during the decommissioning phase.

Decommissioning is intended to recover valuable recyclable materials, including steel piles, turbines and related control equipment, and the copper transmission lines, as well as remove debris and any other seafloor obstructions created by activities on the lease. The decommissioning process involves the same types of equipment and procedures used during the construction phase, aside from pile driving, and would have similar impacts on the environment.

As detailed in 30 CFR §585.902(b), the lessee must submit an application and receive approval from BOEM before commencing with the decommissioning process. Final approval of this application is a separate process from approval of the conceptual decommissioning methodology in the COP. By maintaining an inventory list of all components of the proposed Project, the decommissioning team would be able to track each piece so that no component would be lost or forgotten. The above decommissioning plans are subject to a separate approval process under BOEM. BSEE will review decommissioning plans and provide recommendations to BOEM as part of the approval process. This process will include an opportunity for public comment and consultation with municipal, state, and federal management agencies. South Fork Wind would require separate and subsequent approval from BOEM to retire any portion of the Proposed Action in place. Inventory lists and component tracking will be assessed during the process; however, regulations default to complete SCV requirements to ensure that any items inadvertently lost and not retrieved during lease operations can be detected and retrieved to reduce conflicts with other OCS users and return the site to prelease conditions.

Table 3.2.8. Decommissioning phase anticipated trips outside of Rhode Island-Massachusetts

State Origin	Potential Ports	Est. Max. Daily Trips	Est. Max. Monthly Trips	Estimated Total	Likelihood of Use
New York	Montauk, Shinnecock Fish Dock	< 1	5	15	Possible
Connecticut	New London	< 1	6	50	Likely
Europe	Unknown at this time	N/A	1	4	Likely
Worldwide	Unknown at this time	N/A	1	2	Possible
Other United States ports	Paulsboro Marine Terminal (NJ), Port of Baltimore (MD), Sparrows Point (MD), Norfolk International Terminal (VA), Other Ports (Atlantic/Gulf of Mexico)	N/A	2	4	Possible

Source: BOEM SWFW and SFEC BA (2021)

3.2.6 Pre and Post-Construction Survey Activities

3.2.6.1 High-Resolution Geophysical Surveys

As described in the BA, high-resolution geophysical (HRG) surveys may be carried out throughout construction and may also occur during operations and in association with decommissioning. Survey activities would include multibeam depth sounding, seafloor imaging, and shallow and medium penetration sub-bottom profiling within the wind farm area and export cable route. An estimated 1,000 line-km plus in-fill and re-surveys are anticipated to perform construction surveys of the inter-array cable and the export cable. Although the final survey plans would not be completed until construction contracting commences, HRG surveys are anticipated to operate during any month of the year for a maximum of 60 vessel days surveying, on average, 70 line-km per day at 4 knots. Additional geotechnical surveys may occur for further sediment testing at specific WTG locations. The geotechnical surveys would include in situ testing, boring, and sampling at foundation locations.

HRG equipment will either be deployed from ROVs or mounted to or towed behind the survey vessel at a typical survey speed of approximately 4.0 knots (kn) (7.4 km) per hour. Up to four vessels may survey concurrently throughout the project area. As described in the notice of proposed IHA, the geophysical survey activities proposed by South Fork Wind would include the following:

- Shallow Penetration Sub-bottom Profilers (SBPs; Compressed High-Intensity Radiated Pulses (CHIRPs)) to map the near-surface stratigraphy (top 0 to 5 meters (0 to 16 feet) of sediment below seabed). A CHIRP system emits sonar pulses that increase in frequency over time. The pulse length frequency range can be adjusted to meet project variables. These are typically mounted on the hull of the vessel, from a side pole, or in some cases on an ROV.
- Medium penetration SBPs (Boomers) to map deeper subsurface stratigraphy as needed. A boomer is a broadband sound source operating in the 3.5 Hz to 10 kHz frequency range. This system is typically mounted on a sled and towed behind the vessel.

- Medium penetration SBPs (Sparkers) to map deeper subsurface stratigraphy as needed. A sparker creates acoustic pulses from 50 Hz to 4 kHz omni-directionally from the source that can penetrate several hundred meters into the seafloor. These are typically towed behind the vessel with adjacent hydrophone arrays to receive the return signals.
- Parametric SBPs, also called sediment echosounders, for providing high-density data in sub-bottom profiles that are typically required for cable routes, very shallow water, and archaeological surveys. These are typically mounted on the hull of the vessel or from a side pole.
- Ultra-short Baseline (USBL) Positioning and Global Acoustic Positioning System (GAPS) to provide high accuracy ranges to track the positions of other HRG equipment by measuring the time between the acoustic pulses transmitted by the vessel transceiver and the equipment transponder necessary to produce the acoustic profile. It is a two-component system with a hull or pole mounted transceiver and one to several transponders either on the seabed or on the equipment.
- Multibeam echosounder (MBES) to determine water depths and general bottom topography. MBES sonar systems project sonar pulses in several angled beams from a transducer mounted to a ship's hull. The beams radiate out from the transducer in a fan-shaped pattern orthogonally to the ship's direction.
- Seafloor imaging (sidescan sonar) for seabed sediment classification purposes, to identify natural and man-made acoustic targets resting on the bottom as well as any anomalous features. The sonar device emits conical or fan-shaped pulses down toward the seafloor in multiple beams at a wide angle, perpendicular to the path of the sensor through the water. The acoustic return of the pulses is recorded in a series of cross-track slices, which can be joined to form an image of the sea bottom within the swath of the beam. They are typically towed beside or behind the vessel or from an autonomous vehicle.

3.2.6.2 Fisheries and Benthic Resource Surveys and Monitoring

South Fork will implement a Fisheries Research and Monitoring Plan (South Fork and Inspire, 2020) that includes a gillnet survey, beam trawl and otter surveys, ventless trap survey, and a fish pot survey as well as other benthic resource monitoring components. As described in the Plan, the overarching objective is to determine whether the construction and operation of the wind farm leads to changes in the relative abundance of fish and invertebrate species in the Project Area. The surveys will evaluate the relative abundance and distribution of fish and invertebrate resources around the wind farm after construction, as compared to abundance and distribution in Reference Areas, and in the Project Area prior to construction. Maps of the specific areas to be sampled are included in the Survey Plan. The monitoring is planned with an emphasis on detecting changes in relative abundance, rather than attempting to assess the ecological response to a single impact associated with the construction of an offshore wind farm. At least two years of sampling will be conducted prior to the start of offshore construction and a minimum of two years of monitoring will be completed following offshore construction.

Demersal Fisheries Resources Survey - Gillnet

As described in the Survey Plan, the objective of the pre-construction monitoring survey is to collect data on the distribution, abundance and composition of demersal fish species in the area of potential affect and in the Reference Areas. The objective of post-construction monitoring is to identify any changes in the fish community in the Project Area between pre- and post-construction that did not also occur at the Reference Areas that could be attributed to either construction or operation of the wind turbines. The survey will be conducted from commercial fishing vessels with scientists onboard to process the catch. Marine mammal deterrent devices will be used on all gillnet gear as required under regulation. All gear restrictions, closures, and other regulations set forth by take reduction plans (e.g., Harbor Porpoise Take Reduction Plan, Atlantic Large Whale Reduction Plan, etc.) will be adhered to.

The requirements described in the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan (NOAA, 2018a) for the Northeast gillnet fishery will be followed. At a minimum, the following measures will be in place:

- No buoy line will be floating at the surface.
- There will not be wet storage of the gear. All sampling gear will be hauled at least once every 30 days, and all gear will be removed from the water at the end of each sampling season.
- All groundlines will be constructed of sinking line.
- Fishermen contracted to perform the field work will be encouraged to use knot-free buoy lines.
- All buoy line will use weak links that are chosen from the list of NMFS approved gear.
- All gillnet strings will be anchored with a Danforth-style anchor with a minimum holding strength of 22 pounds.
- All buoys will be labeled as research gear, and the scientific permit number will be written on the buoy. All markings on the buoys and buoy lines will be compliant with the regulations, and instructions received from staff at the Protected Resources Division.

An asymmetrical Before-After-Control-Impact (BACI) design is proposed with three sampling areas: a Project Area within the SFWF “Work Area” and two Reference Areas. The gillnet survey will be conducted using gillnets that are typical of the commercial fishery in Rhode Island and Massachusetts. Each gillnet string will consist of six, 300-ft net panels of 12-inch mesh with a hanging ratio of 1/2 (50%) and using net tie-downs. Five gillnet lines per area will be randomly selected for each sampling event, resulting in 15 gillnet strings conducted per sampling event. Gillnets will be sampled twice per month from April-June and again from October-December. Fish collected in each gillnet will be identified, weighed, and enumerated as described in the Survey Plan. The planned soak time is approximately 48 hours. The pre-construction gillnet survey began in May 2021 and will continue through December 2022.

Demersal Fisheries Resources Survey – Beam Trawl and Otter Trawl

The beam trawl survey will collect pre- and post-construction data on distribution, abundance, and community composition, with a focus on demersal fish and macroinvertebrates species. The primary objective of the beam trawl survey is to evaluate whether the construction and operational activities associated with the Project lead to a significant change in the relative abundance of demersal fish and invertebrates within the Project Area relative to the Reference Areas. Two years of sampling (i.e., 24 monthly sampling trips) will be conducted prior to the commencement of offshore construction. The pre-construction trawl survey began in October 2020. Two years of monitoring will be completed following offshore construction.

The survey will be conducted from commercial fishing vessel(s) with scientists onboard to process the catch. All gear restrictions, closures, and other regulations set forth by take reduction plans (e.g., Harbor Porpoise Take Reduction Plan, Atlantic Large Whale Reduction Plan, etc.) will be adhered to. An asymmetrical BACI design is proposed for the beam trawl survey to sample within three areas: one survey area within the SFWF Project Area and two Reference Areas. Sampling will occur once per month within the Project and Reference Areas. During each sampling event, three beam trawl lines will be randomly selected from the universe of possible sampling locations in each area, resulting in nine beam trawls conducted per monthly sampling event

Beam trawling will be conducted monthly by a commercial fishing vessel using a 3-m beam trawl, with a cod-end of double 4.75 inch mesh and a 1-inch (2.54-cm) knotless cod end liner (or similar; equivalent to NEAMAP cod end) to ensure retention of the smaller fish. Rock chains will be fitted across the mouth of the beam trawl to prevent larger rocks from entering and damaging the catch or net. Once on station, the crew of the vessel lowers the net into the water fully and allows it to drag behind the boat. When the gear is fully deployed and the winch brakes are set, and the start coordinates, start time, date, tow direction, water depth, and tow speed are recorded. Upon completion of the tow, the end time and coordinates are recorded. At the outset of the survey a target towing speed of 4.0 knots and tow duration of 20 minutes will be used. However, the tow speed and duration may be modified based on feedback received from the captain and scientific crew after initial sampling trips have been completed. Fish collected in each tow will be identified, weighed, and enumerated as described in the Survey Plan.

Otter trawl surveys will be conducted to monitor the composition and relative abundance of demersal fish within the SFEC work area and a nearby reference area. Trawl sampling will occur seasonally (e.g. winter, spring, summer, and fall) and SFW anticipates five days of surveying each season with 30 to 40 tows per season for a period of five years encompassing the pre-, during, and post-construction time periods. Consistent with NEAMAP protocols the participating vessel will use a 400 x 12cm, three-bridle four seam trawl, with a 12 cm codend and a 2.54 cm (1 inch) knotless liner. The net has a 3-inch cookie sweep and Thyboron Type IV 66” doors (VIMS, 2020). The BACI survey will have equal sample sizes in the impact and reference areas, thus there will be 15 -20 tows in each area per season. Trawls will take place during daylight hours with a target tow duration of 20 minutes at a target speed of 2.9-3.3 knots.

Demersal Fisheries Resources Survey – Ventless Trap, Lobster, and Crab

A BACI ventless trap survey will be conducted to collect pre- and post-construction data on lobster and crab resources in the proposed Project Area. The objective of the pre-construction monitoring is to evaluate the spatial and seasonal patterns of relative abundance of lobster, Jonah crab and rock crab in the Project Area and in the Reference Areas. At least two years of sampling (i.e., 14 semi-monthly sampling events) will be conducted prior to the commencement of offshore construction. The pre-construction monitoring began in May 2021. Two years of monitoring will be completed following offshore construction. All sampling will occur on commercial lobster vessels that are chartered by Commercial Fisheries Research Foundation and the University of Rhode Island for the survey.

As described in the Survey Plan, all gear restrictions, closures, and other regulations set forth by take reduction plans (e.g., Harbor Porpoise Take Reduction Plan, Atlantic Large Take Whale Reduction Plan, etc.) will be adhered to. The requirements described in the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan (NOAA, 2018b) for the trap and pot fisheries will be followed. The survey plan includes the following measures to avoid interactions between the ventless trap survey and marine mammals:

- No buoy line will be floating at the surface.
- There will not be wet storage of the gear. All sampling gear will be hauled at least once every 30 days, and all gear will be removed from the water at the end of each sampling season.
- All groundlines will be constructed of sinking line.
- Fishermen contracted to perform the field work will be encouraged to use knot-free buoy lines.
- All buoy line will use weak links that are chosen from the list of NMFS approved gear.
- All buoys will be labeled as research gear, and the scientific permit number will be written on the buoy. All markings on the buoys and buoy lines will be compliant with the regulations. Gear will be marked according to instructions received from the Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office.
- Missing line or trawls will be reported to the NOAA Protected Resources Division as quickly as possible.

Sampling stations in the Project and Reference Areas will be allocated using a spatially balanced random design, with ten trawls (10 traps per trawl) deployed in each of the thee areas during each sampling event. The sampling will use a trap that is consistent with that used in the ASMFC and SNECVTS ventless trap surveys. This trap is a single parlor trap, 16 inches high, 40 inches long, and 21 inches wide with 5-inch entrance hoops and is constructed with 1-inch square rubber coated 12-gauge wire. The trap is constructed with a disabling door that can close off the entrance during periods between samples when the trap is on the bottom but not sampling.

Trawls will be configured with 10 traps on each trawl – six ventless (v) and four vented (or standard, S) in the following pattern: V-S-V-S-V-V-S-V-S-V; this is consistent with the gear configuration used in the SNECVTS. One trawl will be set in each of the 10 grid cells within the Project Area and two Reference Areas, for a total sampling intensity of 30 trawls (300 traps) per bimonthly sampling event.

Pre-construction sampling will occur twice per month from May through November. The standard soak time will be five nights. At the start of each monthly sampling event, the lobsterman will retrieve and bait the traps. After the five-day soak period, the traps will be hauled and the catch will be processed for sampling, and the traps will be rebaited for another five-night soak.

Demersal Fisheries Resource Survey – Ventless Fish Pot

As described in the Survey Plan, fish pots are a transportable, cage-like, stationary fishing gear, which typically use bait as an attractant for target species, along with retention devices to prevent the escape of captured individuals. The SFWF fish pot survey will be conducted to determine the spatial scale of potential impacts on the abundance and distribution of juvenile and adult fish, particularly black sea bass, scup, and tautog, within the proposed SFWF site. Two years of sampling (i.e., 14 monthly sampling events) will be conducted prior to the commencement of offshore construction. The fish pot survey began in June 2021. Two years of monitoring will be completed following offshore construction.

A Before-After-Gradient (BAG) survey will be conducted at SFWF using fish pots to assess the spatial scale and extent of wind farm effects on habitat preferred by structure associated species like black sea bass, scup, and tautog. The survey will be conducted from commercial fishing vessels with scientists onboard to process the catch. The survey will comply with all gear restrictions, closures, and other regulations set forth by take reduction plans (e.g., Harbor Porpoise Take Reduction Plan, Atlantic Large Whale Reduction Plan, etc.).

The requirements described in the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan (NOAA, 2018b) for the trap and pot fisheries will be followed. As described in the survey plan, the following measures will be used to avoid interactions between the fish pot survey and marine mammals:

- No buoy line will be floating at the surface.
- There will not be wet storage of the gear. All sampling gear will be hauled at least once every 30 days, and all gear will be removed from the water at the end of each sampling season.
- All groundlines will be constructed of sinking line.
- Fishermen contracted to perform the field work will be encouraged to use knot-free buoy lines.
- All buoy line will use weak links that are chosen from the list of NMFS approved gear.
- All buoys will be labeled as research gear, and the scientific permit number will be written on the buoy. All markings on the buoys and buoy lines will be compliant with the regulations. Gear will be marked according to instructions received from the Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office.

Eight turbine locations will be randomly selected for sampling prior to the first year of the survey. Those turbines and trawl positions will remain fixed for the duration of the survey (pre-construction and post-construction). Each trawl will be 900 meters in length. The length of the trawl was chosen to cover approximately half of the distance between adjacent turbines. During the pre-construction monitoring, the first trap of the trawl will be placed within the buffer zone around the planned location of turbine, and the trawl will be set in a straight line extending away from the turbine. During the post-construction monitoring, the first pot of the string will be placed as close to the turbine foundation as possible (given safety considerations) to sample the habitat immediately adjacent to the turbine.

Each trawl will have 18 pots. The ventless fish pots measure 43.5 inches long, 23 inches wide, and 16 inches high and are made from 1.5-inch coated wire mesh. Each pot will be baited with whole clam bellies and the entire trawl allowed to soak for 24 hours. Sampling will take place once per month from April through October. The Contractor selected to carry out the survey will take efforts to ensure that the timing of sampling is approximately consistent within each month, to the extent practicable. Soak time will remain consistent throughout the duration of the survey. Each survey event will be managed by a team of qualified scientists including a lead

Scientist with experience performing fisheries research. The catch will be removed from the pots by the boat crew for processing. The lead scientist will be responsible for collection of data and data recording. The survey plan indicates that the catch from the fish pot survey will not be retained for sale by the participating vessels, and all animals will be returned to the water as quickly as possible once the sampling is completed.

Benthic Habitat Monitoring

Monitoring of soft bottom habitats will focus on measuring physical changes and indicators of benthic function (bioturbation and utilization of organic deposits, Simone and Grant 2020) as a proxy for measuring changes in the community composition. Monitoring of hard bottom habitats will focus on measuring changes in macrofaunal attached communities (native vs. non-native species groups), percent cover, and physical characteristics (rugosity, boulder density) as a proxy for measuring changes in the complex food web.

Soft bottom monitoring will be conducted within the project area and along the SFEC with a Sediment Profile and Plan View Imaging (SPI/PV) system. SPI/PV provides an integrated, multi-dimensional view of the benthic and geological condition of seafloor sediments and will support characterization of the function of the benthic habitat and physical changes that result from construction and operation of SFWF.

A BAG survey design will be used to determine the spatial scale of potential impacts on benthic habitats and biological communities within the proposed SFWF site and along the SFEC. A single benthic survey conducted in late summer (August to October) six months prior to the start of construction activity will be used to represent benthic habitats prior to potential disturbance.

Subsequent surveys will be conducted in the same seasonal time frame at intervals of 1 year, 3 years, and 5 years after completion of construction. The SPI/PV surveys will be conducted at SFWF using fixed stations to assess the spatial scale and extent of wind farm effects on benthic habitat over time. The surveys will be conducted from research vessel(s) with scientists onboard to collect images utilizing a SPI/PV camera system. Collecting seafloor imagery does not require disturbance of the seafloor or collection of physical samples.

An acoustic and ROV video survey is planned to monitor hard bottom substrata within subareas of the SFWF project area. The primary objective for the hard bottom survey is to measure changes over time in the nature and extent of macrobiotic cover of hard bottom (i.e., percent cover and relative abundance of native vs. non-native organisms), contrasting undisturbed boulder areas with boulder areas disturbed by seafloor preparation activities for cable installation. The secondary objective is to characterize changes to the physical attributes of habitats in areas disturbed by seabed preparation for installation/construction: rugosity, boulder height, boulder density in relation to structural complexity and potential refuge for finfish and decapods.

Multibeam Echosounder (MBES) and side-scan sonar (SSS) surveys will be used to map hard bottom habitat within 12 months before (timed to avoid conflict with other surveying activities in the project area) and within one month after construction/installation is complete. From these detailed before-after acoustic maps, areas with modified boulder density (boulders > 1m in diameter) can be identified to form the sampling frames for the ROV video and imaging survey, as well as to characterize overall changes to the physical habitat attributes within the areas surveyed.

An ROV survey of boulders will be used to characterize macrobiotic cover of native vs. non-native species in the disturbed and undisturbed areas. A systematic random sample of boulders will occur within the sampling frames of disturbed/undisturbed areas approximately one month after seabed preparation (i.e. boulder relocation) has been completed, and again at six, 12, and 24 months. This design is based on an understanding of macrobiotic colonization of recently disturbed hard bottom habitat, and detailed information of the distribution of hard bottom benthic habitat within the SFWF project area.

Within the targeted areas (IAC routes south of WTG1 and north of WTG8), acoustic surveys will provide detailed maps of the seafloor and identify areas where boulders were undisturbed; and areas where boulders were relocated directly adjacent to the prepared IAC route (representing disturbed hard bottom; Figures 10 and 11 in the Survey Plan). A single sampling frame will be identified within each of the disturbed and undisturbed areas for the two WTGs, placed to align with the presence of boulders based on the acoustic survey conducted immediately following seabed preparation for the cable installation. This type of non-probability (opportunistic) sampling will indicate macrobiotic cover within these areas but does not allow inference to the windfarm in general. A total of 20 random boulders from each sampling frame will be sampled using a systematic design.

Within one month after WTGs have been installed, an ROV will be used to collect reference images of the underwater surface of the turbine foundation to determine percent cover of macrofauna and microflora, native and non-native organisms, and distribution of key suspension feeding organisms that could contribute to benthic enrichment (mussels, tube-building amphipods, etc.).

The acoustic (SSS and MBES) and ROV surveys will be conducted from a research vessel with scientists onboard to collect acoustic data and images. The acoustic surveys of the two targeted areas will be collected in a single day and processed the following day; the ROV survey will be conducted immediately after processing of the acoustic data. Collecting seafloor imagery does not require disturbance of the seafloor or collection of physical samples.

3.2.7 IHA Proposed for Issuance by NMFS

The NMFS Office of Protected Resources Permits and Conservation Division has proposed to issue South Fork Wind an IHA for the take of small numbers of marine mammals incidental to construction of the South Fork Project with a proposed duration of one year with a possible one-year renewal. More information on the proposed IHA, including South Fork Wind's application is available online (*https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/action/incidental-take-authorization-south-fork-wind-llc-construction-south-fork-offshore-wind*). As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA (86 FR 8490; February 5, 2021), take of marine mammals may occur incidental to the construction of the project due to in-water noise exposure resulting from impact pile driving activities associated with installation of WTG and OSS foundations, vibratory pile driving associated with the installation and removal of a temporary cofferdam nearshore, and HRG surveys of the inter-array cable and export cable construction area.

3.2.7.1 Amount of Take Proposed for Authorization

The initial IHA would be effective for a period of one year, and, if issued as proposed, would authorize harassment as the only type of take expected to result from activities during the construction phase of the project. Section 3(18) of the Marine Mammal Protection Act defines ‘‘harassment’’ as any act of pursuit, torment, or annoyance, which (i) has the potential to injure a marine mammal or marine mammal stock in the wild (Level A harassment); or (ii) has the potential to disturb a marine mammal or marine mammal stock in the wild by causing disruption of behavioral patterns, including, but not limited to, migration, breathing, nursing, breeding, feeding, or sheltering (Level B harassment). It is important to note that the MMPA definition of harassment is not the same as the ESA definition. This issue is discussed in further detail in the Effects of the Action section of this Opinion.

The proposed IHA would authorize the take, by Level A and Level B harassment, of some species of ESA listed marine mammals. Authorized take for this Project would primarily be by Level B harassment resulting from exposure to noise from pile driving. NMFS OPR predicts that marine mammals are likely to be behaviorally harassed in a manner consistent with Level B harassment when exposed to underwater anthropogenic noise above received levels of 160 dB re 1 mPa (rms) for impulsive and/or intermittent sources (*e.g.*, impact pile driving). For some species, NMFS OPR predicts that there is also some potential for auditory injury (Level A harassment) from exposure to some activities considered here.

Installation of Monopiles with Impact Hammer

Table 3.2.9 shows the modeled radial distances to the dual Level A harassment thresholds using NMFS (2020) frequency weighting for marine mammals, with zero, 6, 10, 12, and 15 dB sound attenuation incorporated. As noted above, the proposed action incorporates consideration of 10 dB sound attenuation. For the peak level, the greatest distances expected are shown, typically occurring at the highest hammer energies. The distances to sound exposure level (SEL; represented as dB re 1 μPa^2-s) thresholds were calculated using the hammer energy schedules for driving monopiles under two piling scenarios: D) maximum design including one difficult to drive pile; S) standard design with no difficult to drive pile. The radial distances shown in Table 3.2.9 are the mean distances from the piles, averaged between the two modeled locations and two modeled seasons.

The radial distances shown in Table 3.2.10 are the maximum distances to the Level B harassment threshold from the piles, averaged between two modeled locations, using the maximum hammer energy. Of the ESA-listed whales that occur in the action area (see section 4.0 of this Opinion), all are categorized as low frequency cetaceans (LFC) except for sperm whales which are categorized as mid frequency cetaceans (MFC). Only information relevant to LFC and MFC is discussed here; the IHA also addresses non-ESA listed species that fall into the HFC and pinniped categories.

Table 3.2.9. Radial distances (m) to Level A harassment thresholds with 0, 6, 10, 12, and 15 dB sound attenuation incorporated for monopiles installed with an impact hammer

Foundation type	Hearing group	Level A harassment (PK)				
		No attenuation	**6 dB attenuation**	**10 dB attenuation**	**12 dB attenuation**	**15 dB attenuation**
11 m (36 ft.) monopile	LFC [a] (all baleen whales, including North Atlantic right whale)	87	22	9	7	2
	MFC [b] (sperm whales)	8	2	1	1	1
Foundation type	**Hearing group**	**Level A harassment (SEL)**				
		No attenuation	**6 dB attenuation**	**10 dB attenuation**	**12 dB attenuation**	**15 dB attenuation**
11 m (36 ft.) monopile	LFC [a] (all baleen whales, including North Atlantic right whale)	S: 16, 416 D: 21, 941	S: 8,888 D: 11,702	S: 6,085 D: 7,846	S: 5,015 D: 6,520	S: 3,676 D: 4,870
	MFC [b] (sperm whales)	S: 107 D: 183	S: 43 D: 59	S: 27 D: 32	S: 27 D: 26	S: 26 D: 26

Source: Federal Register Notice of Proposed IHA (86 FR 8490)
*Radial distances were modeled for two different locations and between summer and winter sound velocity profiles.
[a] LFC: Low-Frequency Cetaceans
[b] MFC: Mid-Frequency Cetaceans

Table 3.2.10. Radial distances (m) to the Level B harassment threshold (i.e., 160 dB re 1 μPa rms) for monopiles installed with an impact hammer

Foundation type	No attenuation	6 dB attenuation	10 dB attenuation	12 dB attenuation	15 dB attenuation
11 m (36 ft.) monopile	6,316	4,121	4,684	2,739	3,272

Source: Federal Register Notice of Proposed IHA (86 FR 8490)

As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA, modeled acoustic ranges to threshold levels may overestimate the actual distances at which animals receive exposures meeting the Level A (SELcum) harassment threshold criterion. In addition, modeled acoustic ranges to thresholds assume that receivers (i.e., animals) are stationary. Therefore, such ranges are not realistic, particularly for accumulating metrics like SELcum. Applying animal movement and behavior

(Denes et al. 2020c) within the propagated noise fields provides the exposure range, which results in a more realistic indication of the distances at which acoustic thresholds are met. For modeled animals that have received enough acoustic energy to exceed a given threshold, the exposure range for each animal is defined as the closest point of approach (CPA) to the source made by that animal while it moved throughout the modeled sound field, accumulating received acoustic energy. The resulting exposure range for each species is the 95th percentile of the CPA distances for all animals that exceeded threshold levels for that species (termed the 95 percent exposure range (ER95%)). Notably, the ER95% are species-specific rather than categorized only by hearing group which affords more biologically-relevant data (e.g., dive durations, swim speeds, etc.) to be considered when assessing impact ranges. The ER95% for SELcum are provided in Table 3.2.11 and are smaller than the acoustic ranges calculated using propagation modeling alone (Table 3.2.9). The Notice of Proposed IHA provides further detail on the acoustic modeling methodology. The ER95% ranges assuming 10 dB attenuation for a difficult-to-drive pile were used to determine the Level A harassment zones for impact pile driving.

Table 3.2.11. Exposure-Based Ranges (ER95%) to Level A Sound Exposure Level (SELcum) Harassment Acoustic Thresholds Due to Impact Pile Driving of a Standard Pile (S; 4,500 Strikes *) and a Difficult to Drive Pile (D; 8,000 Strikes *)

Species	**ER95% to SELcum thresholds (m)**			
	0 dB attenuation		**10 dB attenuation**	
	S	**D**	**S**	**D**
Low-Frequency Cetaceans				
Fin whale	5,386	6,741	1,451	1,769
Sei whale	5,287	6,488	1,346	1,756
North Atlantic right whale	4,931	5,857	1,481	1,621
Blue whale [1]	5,386	6,741	1,451	1,769
Mid-Frequency Cetaceans				
Sperm whale	0	0	0	0

dB re 1 µPa2 s = decibel referenced to 1 micropascal squared second

* Approximation

[1] There were no Level A SELcum exposures as a result of animal movement modeling for the blue whale which resulted in a “0” exposure range; however, an expected exposure range for mitigation purposes must be applied to each species. Therefore, the fin whale exposure range was used as a proxy for the blue whale given similarity of species and activity

Vibratory Pile Driving

As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA, for vibratory pile driving (non-impulsive sounds), sound source characteristics were generated by JASCO using GRLWEAP 2010 wave equation model (Pile Dynamics, Inc., 2010). Installation and removal of the cofferdam were modeled from a single location. The radiated sound waves were modeled as discrete point sources over the full length of the pile in the water and sediment (9.1 m [30 ft.] water depth, 9.1 m [30 ft.] penetration) with a vertical separation of 0.1 m (0.32 ft.). Removal of the cofferdam using a vibratory extractor is expected to be acoustically comparable to installation activities. No noise mitigation system will be used during vibratory piling. Summaries of the maximum ranges to

Level A harassment thresholds and Level B harassment thresholds resulting from propagation modeling of vibratory pile driving are provided in Table 3.2.12. Peak thresholds were not reached for any marine mammal hearing group. The large Level B harassment isopleths resulting from vibratory piling installation and removal are a reflection of the threshold set for behavioral disturbance from a continuous noise (*i.e.,* 120 dB_{rms}). Level B harassment thresholds are highly contextual for species and the isopleth distance does not represent a definitive impact zone or a suggested mitigation zone; rather, the information serves as the basis for assessing potential impacts within the context of the project and potentially exposed species.

Table 3.2.12. Distances to Level A Cumulative Sound Exposure Level (SELcum) Harassment Acoustic Thresholds and Level B Root-Mean-Square Sound Pressure Level (SPLrms) Acoustic Threshold Due to 18 Hours of Vibratory Pile Driving

Marine mammal hearing group	Level A threshold SEL_{cum} (dB re 1 μPa^2 s)	Maximum distance (m) to Level A threshold	Level B threshold SPL_{rms} (dB re 1 μPa)	Maximum distance (m) to Level B threshold
Low-frequency cetaceans	199	1,470	120	36,766
Mid-frequency cetaceans	198	0	120	36,766

dB re 1 μPa = decibel referenced to 1 micropascal; μPa^2 s = decibel referenced to 1 micropascal squared second.
Source: Table 11. Federal Register Notice of Proposed IHA (86 FR 8490)

HRG Surveys
The Notice of Proposed IHA includes a description of the modeling used to predict the amount of take proposed for authorization. Results of modeling using the methodology described indicated that, of the HRG survey equipment planned for use by South Fork Wind that has the potential to result in Level B harassment of marine mammals, sound produced by the Applied Acoustics Dura-Spark UHD sparkers and GeoMarine Geo-Source sparkers would propagate furthest to the Level B harassment threshold (141 m; Table 3.2.13). For the purposes of the exposure analysis, it was conservatively assumed that sparkers would be the dominant acoustic source for all survey days. Thus, the distances to the isopleths corresponding to the threshold for Level B harassment for sparkers (141 m) was used as the basis of the take calculation for all marine mammals. Potential exposures of marine mammals to acoustic impacts from HRG survey activities were estimated as described in the Notice of Proposed IHA. The modeled distances corresponding to the Level A harassment threshold are very small (<2 m) for ESA listed marine mammals. As described in the Notice, based on the extremely small Level A harassment zones for these functional hearing groups, the potential for these species to be taken by Level A harassment is considered so low as to be discountable. Potential for exposure to HRG sources that would result in Level A harassment is also minimized by the narrow beam width and directional nature of many of these sources, as well as the mitigation measures.

Table 3.2.13. Distance to Weighted Level A Harassment and Level B Harassment Thresholds for Each HRG Sound Source or Comparable Sound Source Category for Marine Mammal Hearing Groups

	Distance to Level A (m)		**Distance to Level B (m)**
Source	LF (SELcum threshold)	MF (SELcum threshold)	All species (160 dB SPLrms threshold)
Shallow SBPs			
ET 216 CHIRP	<1	<1	12
ET 424 CHIRP	0	0	4
ET 512i CHIRP	0	0	6
GeoPulse 5430	<1	<1	29
TB CHIRP III	1.5	<1	54
Medium SBPs			
AA Triple plate S-Boom (700/1,000 J)	<1	0	76
AA, Dura-spark UHD (500 J/400 tip)	<1	0	141
AA, Dura-spark UHD 400+400	<1	0	141
GeoMarine, Geo-Source dual 400 tip sparker	<1	0	141

µPa = micropascal; AA = Applied Acoustics; CHIRP = Compressed High-Intensity Radiated Pulse; dB = decibels; ET = EdgeTech; J = joules; LF= low frequency; MF = mid-frequency; re= referenced to; SBP = sub-bottom profiler; SELcum = cumulative sound exposure level in dB re 1 µPa2 s; SPL0-pk = zero to peak sound pressure level in dB re 1 µPa; TB = teledyne benthos; UHD = ultra-high definition; USBL = ultra-short baseline.
Source: Table 12. Federal Register Notice of Proposed IHA (86 FR 8490)

Take Estimates

The methodology for estimating marine mammal exposure and incidental take is described fully in the Notice of Proposed IHA. For the purposes of the proposed IHA, NMFS OPR estimated the amount of take by considering: (1) acoustic thresholds above which NMFS OPR determined the best available science indicates marine mammals will be behaviorally harassed or incur some degree of permanent hearing impairment; (2) the area or volume of water that will be ensonified above these levels in a day; (3) the density or occurrence of marine mammals within these ensonified areas; and, (4) and the number of days of activities. Pile driving using a noise attenuation device, vibratory pile driving, and HRG surveys are provided in Table 3.2.13. As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA, the take numbers NMFS proposes for authorization are considered conservative for the following key reasons:

- Proposed take numbers for impact pile driving of foundations assume a maximum piling schedule (16 monopiles installed in 20 days);
- Proposed take numbers for vibratory pile driving assume that a sheet pile temporary cofferdam will be installed (versus the alternative installation of a gravity cell cofferdam, for which no take is anticipated);

- Proposed take numbers for HRG surveys assume the sparker sources which produce the largest threshold isopleth (141 m) will be used for 100% of the survey days when, in actuality, a portion of the surveys will likely be conducted with sources producing smaller acoustic isopleths;
- Proposed take numbers for impact pile driving of foundations are conservatively based on maximum densities across the proposed construction months;
- Proposed Level A harassment take numbers do not fully account for the likelihood that marine mammals will avoid a stimulus when possible before the individual accumulates enough acoustic energy to potentially cause auditory injury;
- Proposed take numbers do not fully account for the effectiveness of proposed mitigation and monitoring measures in reducing the number of takes to effect the least practicable adverse impact (with the exception of the seasonal restriction on impact pile driving, which is accounted for in the proposed take numbers).

Table 3.2.13. Proposed takes by Level A harassment and Level B harassment for all activities conducted during SFWF construction - (Activities include impact pile driving using a noise mitigation system (NMS) from May through October, vibratory pile driving (October through May), and HRG surveys (year-round))

Species	**Proposed MMPA take authorization combined for all construction and HRG activities**		**Total proposed takes (Level A + level B)**
	Proposed Level A takes	**Proposed Level B takes**	
Fin whale	1	11	12
Sei whale	1	2	3
North Atlantic right whale	0	13	13
Blue whale	0	1*	1*
Sperm whale	0	6	6

Source: Table 23. Federal Register Notice of Proposed IHA (86 FR 8490)

* NMFS OPR erroneously included proposed take authorization for blue whales in the proposed IHA. This will be removed in the final IHA. Based on modelling results, no exposure of blue whales to pile driving noise above the Level A or B harassment thresholds is anticipated.

3.2.7.2 Proposed Mitigation Measures Included in the Proposed IHA

The proposed IHA includes a number of minimization and monitoring methods designed to ensure that the proposed project has the least practicable adverse impact upon the affected species or stocks and their habitat. The proposed IHA is included as Appendix A to this Opinion. For the purposes of this section 7 consultation, all measures included in the proposed IHA are considered as part of the proposed action. We note that some of the measures identified here overlap or are duplicative with the measures described by BOEM in the BA as part of the proposed action (see Table 3.3.1).

Section 4.0 of the proposed IHA includes a number of mandatory mitigation measures. These include restrictions on pile driving, establishment of clearance zones for all activities, shutdown measures, soft start of pile driving, ramp up of HRG sources, noise mitigation for impact pile driving, and vessel strike avoidance measures. Section 5.0 of the proposed IHA also requires specific monitoring and reporting. A copy of the Proposed IHA, including the complete set of measures is included in Appendix A. The mitigation measures included in section 4 of the IHA are copied here.

Mitigation Measures Included in Section 4.0 of the February 2021 Proposed IHA

(a) Seasonal Restriction: Impact pile driving must not occur from January 1 through April 30.

(b) Impact Pile Driving Time Restrictions: Impact pile driving may commence only during daylight hours no earlier than one hour after (civil) sunrise. Impact pile driving may not be initiated any later than 1.5 hours before (civil) sunset. Pile driving may continue after dark only when the installation of the same pile began during daylight (1.5 hours before (civil) sunset), when clearance zones were fully visible for at least 30 minutes (as described under condition 4(c)(ix)), and must proceed for human safety or installation feasibility reasons[5].

(c) Establishment of clearance zones for all activities:

   (i) South Fork Wind must deploy at least two PSOs on duty on the impact pile driving platform and at least two PSOs on duty on a dedicated PSO vessel at all times during impact pile driving to monitor for marine mammals. PSO requirements are described under condition 5(a).

   (ii) Monitoring must take place from 60 minutes prior to initiation of impact pile driving through 30 minutes post-completion of impact pile driving activity.

   (iii) South Fork Wind must deploy at least two PSOs on duty on the vibratory pile driving platform, or nearby construction vessel, at all times during vibratory pile driving to monitor for marine mammals. PSO requirements are described under condition 5(a).

   (iv) Monitoring must take place from 30 minutes prior to initiation of vibratory pile driving through 30 minutes post-completion of vibratory pile driving.

   (v) South Fork Wind must deploy a minimum of one PSO on duty during daytime high resolution geophysical (HRG) survey

---

[5] Installation feasibility refers to ensuring that the pile installation results in a usable foundation for the wind turbine generator (*e.g.*, installed to the target penetration depth without refusal and with a horizontal foundation/tower interface flange).

activities and two PSOs during nighttime HRG survey activities to monitor for marine mammals. PSO requirements are described under condition 5(a).

(vi) Monitoring must take place 30 minutes prior to initiation of HRG acoustic sources through 30 minutes post-termination of HRG acoustic sources.

(vii) For all impact pile driving, vibratory pile driving, and HRG survey activity, South Fork Wind must designate clearance and monitoring zones with radial distances as identified in Table 2.

(viii) Impact pile driving, vibratory pile driving, and HRG survey activity must only commence when all clearance zones are fully visible (i.e., are not obscured by darkness, rain, fog, etc.) for at least 30 minutes as determined by the lead PSO. If conditions (e.g., darkness, rain, fog, etc.) prevent the visual detection of marine mammals in the clearance zones, construction activities must not be initiated until the full extent of all clearance zones are fully visible as determined by the lead PSO.

(d) Clearance Measures: South Fork Wind must use PSOs to establish clearance zones around the impact pile driving, vibratory pile driving, and HRG equipment (Table 2) to ensure these zones are clear of marine mammals prior to the initiation of activities. Clearance requirements are as follows:

(i) If a marine mammal is observed entering or within the relevant clearance zones (Table 2) prior to the initiation of impact pile driving, vibratory pile driving, or HRG survey equipment, all activity must be delayed.

(ii) Impact pile driving, vibratory pile driving, and HRG survey activity must be delayed upon observation of a North Atlantic right whale that is visually observed by PSOs at any distance from the pile or acoustic source.

(iii) Impact pile driving must be delayed upon a confirmed passive acoustic monitoring (PAM) detection of a North Atlantic right whale, if the detection is confirmed to have been located within the clearance zone (Table 2).

(iv) Impact pile driving, vibratory pile driving, and HRG survey activity must only commence after PSOs have confirmed all clearance zones (Table 2) are clear of marine mammals, as described in conditions 4(c)(ii)(iv)(vi).

(v) Any large whale sighted by a PSO within 1,000 m of the pile or HRG acoustic source that cannot be identified to species must be treated as if it were a North Atlantic right whale.

(vi) Pile driving and may commence and HRG acoustic sources may be activated when either the marine mammal(s) has voluntarily left the respective clearance zone and been visually confirmed beyond that clearance zone, or, when 30 minutes have elapsed without re-detection (for mysticetes, sperm whales, Risso's dolphins and pilot whales) or 15 minutes have elapsed without re-detection (in the case of all other marine mammals).

(viii) Requirements for real-time PAM during impact pile driving are as follows:

1. Real-time PAM must begin at least 60 minutes prior to pile driving.
2. The real-time PAM system must be designed and established such that detection capability extends to 5 km from the pile driving location, for all monopile installations.
3. The real-time PAM system must be configured to ensure that the PAM operator is able to review acoustic detections within approximately 15 minutes of the original detection in order to verify whether a right whale has been detected.
4. The PAM operator responsible for determining if the acoustic detection originated from a North Atlantic right whale must be trained in identification of mysticete vocalizations.
5. If the PAM operator has at least 75 percent confidence that a vocalization originated from a right whale located within 5 km of the pile driving location, the PAM operator must determine that a right whale has been detected and appropriate associated mitigation and monitoring measures must be implemented.
6. A record of the PAM operator's review of any acoustic detections must be reported to NMFS.

(e) Shutdown Measures for all activities:

(i) If a marine mammal is observed entering or within the respective clearance zones (Table 2) after pile driving has commenced or HRG acoustic sources are activated, a shutdown of impact pile driving (when practicable as described under 4(e)(v)), vibratory pile driving, and HRG acoustic sources must be implemented.

(ii) Pile driving must be halted (when practicable as described under 4(e)(v)) upon visual observation of a North Atlantic right whale observed by PSOs at any distance from the pile.

(iii) Pile driving must be halted (when practicable as described under 4(e)(v)) upon a confirmed PAM detection of a North Atlantic right whale within the Level A harassment exclusion zone of the pile being driven.

(iv) Following shutdown, pile driving may not commence and HRG acoustic sources may not be reactivated until either the animal has voluntarily left and been visually confirmed beyond the respective clearance zone or 15 minutes have elapsed without subsequent detection for delphinids and pinnipeds, or 30 minutes have elapsed without subsequent detection for all other marine mammals.

(v) In cases where impact pile driving has commenced and a shutdown is called for due to a marine mammal entering or within an exclusion zone, the lead engineer on duty must evaluate the following to determine whether shutdown is practicable:

1. Use site-specific soil data and real-time hammer log information to judge whether a stoppage would risk causing piling refusal at re- start of piling; and
2. Check that the pile penetration is deep enough to secure pile stability in the interim situation, taking into account weather statistics for the relevant season and the current weather forecast.
3. Determinations by the lead engineer on duty will be made for each pile as the installation progresses and not for the site as a whole.

(vi) For impact pile driving, if shutdown is called for but South Fork Wind determines shutdown is not practicable due to an imminent risk of injury or loss of life to an individual, or risk of damage to a vessel that creates risk of injury or loss of life for individuals, reduced hammer energy must be implemented, when the lead engineer determines it is practicable.

(vii) After a shutdown, impact pile driving must only be initiated once all clearance zones are confirmed by PSOs to be clear of marine mammals for the minimum species-specific and activity-specific time periods 4(c)(ii)(iv)(vi) or, if required to maintain installation practicability.

(viii) If a delphinid(s) from the genera Delphinus, *Lagenorhynchus*, *Stenella*, or Tursiops is visually detected approaching the HRG vessel (e.g., to bow ride) or towed HRG survey equipment, shutdown is not required. If there is uncertainty regarding identification of a marine mammal species (i.e., whether the observed marine mammal(s) belongs to one of the delphinid genera for which shutdown is waived), PSOs must use best professional judgment in making the decision to call for a shutdown.

(ix) If an individual from a species for which authorization has not been granted, or a species for which authorization has been granted but the authorized take number has been met, is observed entering or within the clearance zone, impact pile driving (when practicable as described under 4(e)(v)), vibratory pile driving, and HRG survey activities must shut down immediately. Activities must not resume until the animal has been confirmed to have left the clearance zone or the observation time period, as indicated in conditions 4(ii)(iv)(vi), has elapsed with no further sightings.

(x) For in-water construction, heavy machinery activities other than pile driving, if a marine mammal comes within 10 meters of equipment, South Fork Wind must cease operations (when practicable as described under 4(e)(v)).

(f) Soft Start for impact pile driving:

(i) South Fork Wind must implement soft start techniques for all impact pile driving, both at the beginning of a monopile installation and at any time following the cessation of impact pile driving of 30 minutes or longer. The soft start procedure must include a minimum of 20 minutes of 4-6 strikes/minute at 10-20 percent of the maximum hammer energy.

(g) Ramp-up for HRG acoustic sources:

(i) When practicable, acoustic sources must be ramped up at the start or restart of survey activities. Ramp-up must begin with the power of the smallest acoustic source at its lowest practical power output. The power must then be increased and other acoustic sources added in a way such that the source level would increase gradually.

(h) Noise Mitigation for impact pile driving:

(i) South Fork Wind must employ a noise mitigation device(s) during all impact pile driving.

(ii) The noise mitigation device(s) must perform such that measured ranges to the Level B harassment threshold is consistent with those modeled assuming 10 dB attenuation, determined via sound source verification (described under condition 5(e)).

(iii) If a bubble curtain is used, the following requirements apply:

1. The bubble curtain(s) must distribute air bubbles around 100 percent of the piling perimeter for the full depth of the water column.

2. The lowest bubble ring must be in contact with the seafloor for the full circumference of the ring, and the weights attached to the bottom ring must ensure 100 percent seafloor contact.

3. No parts of the ring or other objects may prevent full seafloor contact.

4. Construction contractors must train personnel in the proper balancing of air flow to the bubblers. Construction contractors must submit an inspection/performance report for approval by South Fork Wind within 72 hours following the performance test. Corrections to the attenuation device to meet the performance standards must occur prior to impact driving.

(i) Vessel Strike Avoidance Measures. Vessel operators and crews must maintain a vigilant watch for all marine mammals and slow down, stop their vessel, or alter course, as appropriate and regardless of vessel size, to avoid striking any marine mammal. A visual observer aboard the vessel must monitor a vessel strike avoidance zone around the vessel (distances stated below). Visual observers monitoring the vessel strike avoidance zone may be third-party observers (i.e., PSOs) or crew members, but crew members responsible for these duties must be provided sufficient training to distinguish marine mammals from other phenomena and broadly to identify a marine mammal as a right whale, other whale (defined in this context as sperm whales or baleen whales other than right whales), or other marine mammal. South Fork Wind must adhere to the following measures:

(i) All vessels greater than or equal to 65 ft. (19.8 m) in overall length must comply with the 10-knot speed restriction in any Seasonal Management Area (SMA) per the NOAA ship strike reduction rule (73 FR 60173; October 10, 2008).

(ii) Vessels of all sizes will operate port to port at 10 knots or less between November 1 and April 30, except for vessels transiting inside Narragansett Bay or Long Island Sound.

(iii) A trained, dedicated visual observer and alternative visual detection system (e.g., thermal cameras) will be stationed on all transiting vessels that intend to operate at greater than 10 knots from November 1 through April 30. The primary role of the visual observer is to alert the vessel navigation crew to the presence of marine mammals and to report transit activities and marine mammal sightings to the designated South Fork Wind information system.

(iv) Vessels of all sizes will operate at 10 knots or less in any North Atlantic right whale Dynamic Management Area (DMA).

(v) Outside of DMAs, SMAs, and the November 1 through April 30 time period, localized detections of North Atlantic right whales, using passive acoustics, would trigger a slow-down to 10 knots or less in the area of detection (zone) for the following 12 hours (hrs.). Each subsequent detection would trigger a 12-hr reset. A slow-down in that zone expires when there has been no further visual or acoustic detection in the past 12- hr. within the triggered zone.

(vi) For all vessels greater than or equal to 65 ft. (19.8 m) in overall length, vessel speeds must be reduced to 10 knots or less when mother/calf pairs, pods, or large assemblages of cetaceans are observed near a vessel.

(vii) All vessels must maintain a minimum separation distance of 500 m from North Atlantic right whales. If a whale is observed but cannot be confirmed as a species other than a right whale, the vessel operator must assume that it is a right whale and take appropriate action.

(viii) All vessels must maintain a minimum separation distance of 100 m from sperm whales and all other baleen whales.

(ix) All vessels must, to the maximum extent practicable, attempt to maintain a minimum separation distance of 50 m from all other marine mammals, with an exception made for those that approach the vessel.

(x) When marine mammals are sighted while a vessel is underway, the vessel must take action as necessary to avoid violating the relevant separation distance, e.g., attempt to remain parallel to the animal's course, avoid excessive speed or abrupt changes in direction until the animal has left the area. If marine mammals are sighted within the relevant separation distance, the vessel must reduce speed and shift the engine to neutral, not engaging the engines until animals are clear of the area. This does not apply to any vessel towing gear or any vessel that is navigationally constrained.

(xi) These requirements do not apply in any case where compliance would create an imminent and serious threat to a person or vessel or to the extent that a vessel is restricted in its ability to maneuver and, because of the restriction, cannot comply.

(xii) When not on active watch duty, members of the monitoring team must consult NMFS' North Atlantic right whale reporting systems for the presence of North Atlantic right whales in the project area.

(xiii) Project-specific training must be conducted for all vessel crew prior to the start of in-water construction activities. Confirmation of the training and understanding of the requirements must be documented on a training course log sheet.

3.3 Proposed Measures to Minimize and Monitor Effects of the Action

There are a number of measures that South Fork Wind is proposing to take and/or BOEM is proposing to require as conditions of COP approval that are designed to avoid, minimize, or monitor effects of the action on ESA listed species. For the purpose of this consultation, the mitigation and monitoring measures included in the February 2021 proposed IHA and additional measures proposed by BOEM are considered as part of the proposed action. The IHA only proposes mitigation and monitoring measures for marine mammals including threatened and endangered whales considered in this Opinion. Although some measures also apply to and provide minimization of potential impacts to listed sea turtle and fish species (e.g., pile driving soft start minimize potential effects to all listed species), they do not completely cover all threatened and endangered species mitigation, monitoring, and reporting needs. The measures considered as part of the proposed action are included in table 3.3.1 below.

Table 3.3.1. Mitigation and monitoring measures considered as part of the Proposed Action

Measure	Description	Project Phase
Impact Pile-driving seasonal restriction for NARWs	No impact pile-driving activities will occur from January 1 to April 30 as described in measure 4(a) of the Proposed IHA.	Construction
Impact pile driving time restrictions	Sunrise and sunset conditions as described in measure 4(b) of the Proposed IHA	Construction
Pile driving visibility requirements	PSOs must have effective visual monitoring in all directions and must not commence pile-driving until all clearance zones are fully visible (i.e., are not obscured by darkness, rain, fog, etc.) for at least 30 minutes. If conditions (e.g., darkness, rain, fog, etc.) prevent the visual detection of marine mammals in the clearance zones, construction activities must not be initiated until the full extent of all clearance zones are fully visible. The lead PSO will make a determination as to when there is sufficient light to ensure effective visual monitoring can be accomplished in all directions. South Fork Wind must develop and implement measures for alternative monitoring in the event that poor visibility conditions unexpectedly arise and pile-driving cannot be stopped due to safety or operational feasibility. South Fork Wind must prepare and submit an Alternative Monitoring Plan to NMFS and BOEM for NMFS' review and approval at least 90 days prior to the planned start of pile-driving. This plan may include deploying additional observers, alternative monitoring technologies such as night vision, thermal, and infrared technologies, or use of PAM with the goal of ensuring the ability to maintain all clearance and shutdown zones for all ESA-listed species in the event of unexpected poor visibility conditions.	Construction

Measure	**Description**	**Project Phase**
Establishment of Clearance Zones and Clearance Measures for Impact Pile Driving	For ESA listed whales: as described in measure 4(c) and (d) of the Proposed IHA. See also Table 3.3.2. For sea turtles: To ensure that impact pile-driving operations are carried out in a way that minimizes the exposure of listed sea turtles to noise that may result in injury or behavioral disturbance, PSOs will establish a 1,640-foot (500-meter) clearance zone for all pile-driving activities. Adherence to the 1,640-foot (500-meter) clearance zones must be reflected in the PSO reports. Any visual detection of sea turtles within the 500-m clearance zones must trigger the required delay in pile installation. Upon a visual detection of sea turtles entering or within the relevant clearance zone during pile-driving, South Fork Wind must not determine the area is clear to start pile driving until: (1) The lead PSO verifies that the animal(s) voluntarily left and headed away from the clearance area; or (2) 30 minutes have elapsed without re-detection of the sea turtle(s) by the lead PSO	Construction
Establishment of Shutdown Zones for Impact Pile Driving	For ESA listed whales: as described in measure 4(e) of the Proposed IHA. See also Table 3.3.2. For sea turtles: To ensure that impact pile-driving operations are carried out in a way that minimizes the exposure of listed sea turtles to noise that may result in injury or behavioral disturbance, PSOs will establish a 1,640-foot (500-meter) shutdown zone for all pile-driving activities. Adherence to the 1,640-foot (500-meter) shutdown zones must be reflected in the PSO reports. Any visual detection of sea turtles within the 500-m shutdown zones must trigger the required shutdown in pile installation. Upon a visual detection of a sea turtles entering or within the shutdown zone during pile-driving, South Fork Wind must shut down the pile-driving hammer (unless activities must proceed for human safety or for concerns of structural failure) from when the PSO observes, until: 1) The lead PSO verifies that the animal(s) voluntarily left and headed away from the clearance area; or 2) 30 minutes have elapsed without re-detection of the sea turtle(s) by the lead PSO. Additionally, if shutdown is called for but SFWF determines shutdown is not technically feasible due to human safety concerns or to maintain installation feasibility, reduced hammer energy must be implemented, when the lead engineer determines it is technically feasible to do so.	Construction
Soft Start for impact pile driving	As described in measure 4(f) of the Proposed IHA. Also proposed to provide minimization of potential impacts to listed sea turtles and fish.	Construction
Noise mitigation for impact pile driving	As described in measure 4(h) of the Proposed IHA. Also proposed to provide minimization of potential impacts to listed sea turtles and fish.	Construction

Measure	**Description**	**Project Phase**
Pile-driving sound source verification plan	Field verification during pile-driving to be conducted as described in measures 5(d) and (e) of the Proposed IHA. Additionally, a Sound Source Verification Plan will be submitted to the USACE, BOEM at *renewable_reporting@boem.gov*, and NMFS at nmfs.gar.incidental-take@noaa.gov for review and written approval by the agencies 90 days prior to the commencement of field activities for pile-driving. Sound source verification must be carried out for the first monopile to be installed. Should larger diameter piles be installed, or greater hammer size or energy used, additional field measurements must be conducted. The plan must describe how South Fork Wind will ensure that the location selected is representative of the rest of the piles of that type to be installed and, in the case that it is not, how additional sites will be selected for sound source verification or how the results from the first pile can be used to predict actual installation noise propagation for subsequent piles. The plan must describe how the effectiveness of the sound attenuation methodology will be evaluated based on the results. The plan must be sufficient to document sound propagation from the pile and distances to isopleths for potential injury and harassment. The measurements must be compared to the Level A and Level B harassment zones for marine mammals (and the injury and behavioral disturbance zones for sea turtles and Atlantic sturgeon).	Construction
Pile driving noise reporting and clearance zone adjustment	Before driving any additional piles following underwater noise measurements, South Fork Wind must review the initial field measurement results of at least one (1) WTG foundation of each type. The Lessee may request modification of the clearance and shutdown zones based on the field measurements of three (3) foundations but must meet or exceed minimum seasonal distances for threatened and endangered species that may be specified in the Biological Opinion. If the initial field measurements indicate that the isopleths of concern are larger than those considered in the Proposed Action, in coordination with BOEM, NMFS, and USACE, South Fork Wind must implement additional sound attenuation measures and/or enhanced clearance and/or shutdown zones before driving any additional piles. South Fork Wind must submit the initial results of the field measurements to NMFS, USACE, and BOEM (renewable_reporting@boem.gov) as soon as they are available; NMFS, USACE, and BOEM will discuss these as soon as feasible with a target for that discussion within two business days of receiving the results. BOEM and NMFS will provide direction to South Fork Wind on whether any additional modifications to the sound attenuation system or changes to the clearance and shutdown zones are required.	Construction
Establishment of Clearance Zones and Clearance Measures for Vibratory Pile Driving	For ESA listed whales: as described in measure 4(c) and (d) of the Proposed IHA. See also Table 3.3.2. For sea turtles: To ensure that impact pile-driving operations are carried out in a way that minimizes the exposure of listed sea turtles to noise that may result in injury or behavioral disturbance, PSOs will establish a 1,640-foot (500-meter) clearance zone for all pile-driving activities. Adherence to the 1,640-foot (500-meter) clearance zones must be reflected in the PSO reports. Any visual detection of sea turtles the 500-m clearance zones must trigger the required delay in pile installation. Upon a visual detection of a sea turtles entering or within the relevant clearance zone during pile-driving, South Fork Wind must not determine the area is clear to start pile driving until: 1) The lead PSO verifies that the animal(s) voluntarily left and headed away from the clearance area; or 2) 30 minutes have elapsed without re-detection of the sea turtle(s) by the lead PSO	Construction

Measure	**Description**	**Project Phase**
Establishment of Shutdown Zones for Vibratory Pile Driving	For ESA listed whales: as described in measure 4(e) of the Proposed IHA. See also Table 3.3.2. For sea turtles: To ensure that impact pile-driving operations are carried out in a way that minimizes the exposure of listed sea turtles to noise that may result in injury or behavioral disturbance, PSOs will establish a 1,640-foot (500-meter) shutdown zone for all pile-driving activities. Adherence to the 1,640-foot (500-meter) shutdown zones must be reflected in the PSO reports. Any visual detection of sea turtles the 500-m shutdown zones must trigger the required shutdown in pile installation. Upon a visual detection of a sea turtles entering or within the shutdown zone during pile-driving, South Fork Wind must shut down the pile-driving hammer (unless activities must proceed for human safety or for concerns of structural failure) from when the PSO observes, until: 1) The lead PSO verifies that the animal(s) voluntarily left and headed away from the clearance area; or 2) 30 minutes have elapsed without re-detection of the sea turtle(s) by the lead PSO. Additionally, if shutdown is called for but SFWF determines shutdown is not technically feasible due to human safety concerns or to maintain installation feasibility, reduced hammer energy must be implemented, when the lead engineer determines it is technically feasible to do so.	Construction
Establishment of Clearance Zones and Clearance Measures for HRG Surveys	For ESA listed whales: as described in measure 4(e) of the Proposed IHA. See also Table 3.3.2. For sea turtles: 100 m clearance zone must be maintained for at least 30 minutes as described in the 2021 Data Collection Programmatic ESA. Measures will be required in accordance with project design criteria and associated best management practices in the 2021 Data Collection Programmatic ESA Consultation with NMFS. See Appendix B	Construction, O&M, decommissioning
Ramp-up for HRG acoustic sources	As described in 4(g) of the Proposed IHA.	Construction
Establishment of Shutdown Zones for HRG Surveys	For ESA listed whales: as described in measure 4(e) of the Proposed IHA or the conditions specified in the 2021 Data Collection Programmatic ESA Consultation with NMFS, whichever is greater. See also Table 3.3.2.	Construction, O&M, decommissioning
Vessel Strike Avoidance Measures for Marine Mammals during the term of the IHA	As described in 4(i) of the IHA	Construction (duration of the IHA)

Vessel Strike Avoidance Measures for Marine Mammals following the term of the IHA	• Vessel captain and crew must maintain a vigilant watch for all ESA-listed species and slow down, stop their vessel, or alter course, as appropriate and regardless of vessel size, to avoid striking any listed species. The presence of a single individual at the surface may indicate the presence of submerged animals in the vicinity; therefore, precautionary measures should always be exercised. • A PSO (or crew lookout if PSOs are not required) must be posted during all times a vessel is underway (transiting or surveying) to monitor for listed species within a 180-degree direction of the forward path of the vessel (90 degrees port to 90 degrees starboard). • Visual observers monitoring the vessel strike avoidance zone can be either PSOs or crew members (if PSOs are not required). If the trained lookout is a vessel crew member, this must be their designated role and primary responsibility while the vessel is transiting. Any designated crew lookouts must receive training on protected species identification, vessel strike minimization procedures, how and when to communicate with the vessel captain, and reporting requirements. All observations must be recorded per reporting requirements. • Regardless of monitoring duties, all crew members responsible for navigation duties must receive site-specific training on ESA-listed species sighting/reporting and vessel strike avoidance measures. • All vessel crew members must be briefed in the identification of ESA-listed species and marine mammals that may occur in the survey area and in regulations and best practices for avoiding vessel collisions. Reference materials must be available aboard all project vessels for identification of listed species. The expectation and process for reporting of protected species sighted during surveys must be clearly communicated and posted in highly visible locations aboard all project vessels, so that there is an expectation for reporting to the designated vessel contact (such as the lookout or the vessel captain), as well as a communication channel and process for crew members to do so. • Vessels underway must not divert their course to approach any listed species. • If an ESA-listed whale or large unidentified whale is identified within 500 m of the forward path of any vessel, the vessel operator must steer a course away from the whale at 10 knots (18.5 km/hr.) or less until the 500 m minimum separation distance has been established. Vessels may also shift to idle if feasible. • If an ESA-listed large whale is sighted within 200 m of the forward path of a vessel, the vessel operator must reduce speed and shift the engine to neutral. Engines must not be engaged until the whale has moved outside of the vessel's path and beyond 500 m. If stationary, the vessel must not engage engines until the ESA-listed large whale has moved beyond 500 m. • Regardless of vessel size, vessel operators must reduce vessel speed to 10 knots (18.5 mph) or less while operating in any Seasonal Management Area (SMA) and Dynamic Management Area (DMA) (or Slow Zone otherwise designated as a DMA). • All vessel operators must check for information regarding mandatory or voluntary ship strike avoidance (DMAs and SMAs) and daily information regarding North Atlantic right whale sighting locations. These media may include, but are not limited to: NOAA weather radio, U.S. Coast Guard NAVTEX and channel 16 broadcasts, Notices to Mariners, the Whale Alert app, or WhaleMap website. North Atlantic right whale Sighting Advisory System info can be accessed at: WhaleMap	O&M, decommissioning

Measure	Description	Project Phase
	• The only exception to these requirements is when the safety of the vessel or crew necessitates deviation from these requirements. If any such incidents occur, they must be reported (see reporting requirements). • South Fork may file for consideration by NMFS and BOEM a request for a waiver of any of these restrictions by submitting a vessel strike risk reduction plan that details revised measures along with an analysis to demonstrate that the measure(s) will provide a level of risk reduction at least equivalent to the measure(s) being proposed for replacement. The plan must be provided to NMFS and BOEM at least 60 days prior to a request for approval and will not be implemented unless NMFS and BOEM reach consensus on approval.	

Vessel Strike Avoidance Measures for Sea Turtles (non HRG survey vessels)	Training and Observers • Regardless of monitoring duties, all crew members responsible for navigation duties must receive site-specific training on ESA-listed species sighting/reporting and vessel strike avoidance measures. • All vessel crew members must be briefed in the identification of ESA-listed species and marine mammals that may occur in the survey area and in regulations and best practices for avoiding vessel collisions. Reference materials must be available aboard all project vessels for identification of listed species. The expectation and process for reporting of protected species sighted during surveys must be clearly communicated and posted in highly visible locations aboard all project vessels, so that there is an expectation for reporting to the designated vessel contact (such as the lookout or the vessel captain), as well as a communication channel and process for crew members to do so. • Visual observers monitoring the vessel strike avoidance zone can be either PSOs or crew members (if PSOs are not required). If the trained lookout is a vessel crew member, this must be their designated role and primary responsibility while the vessel is transiting. Any designated crew lookouts must receive training on protected species identification, vessel strike minimization procedures, how and when to communicate with the vessel captain, and reporting requirements. Vessel personnel must be provided an Atlantic reference guide that includes and helps identify marine mammals and sea turtles that may be encountered in the Project area and material regarding NARW SMAs, sightings information, and reporting. All observations must be recorded per reporting requirements. • Vessel captain and crew must maintain a vigilant watch for all ESA-listed species and slow down, stop their vessel, or alter course, as appropriate and regardless of vessel size, to avoid striking any listed species. • To monitor the Vessel Strike Avoidance Zone, a PSO (or crew lookout if PSOs are not required) must be posted during all times a vessel is underway (transiting or surveying) to monitor for listed species within a 180-degree direction of the forward path of the vessel (90 degrees port to 90 degrees starboard). • A trained, dedicated person-on-watch and alternative visual detection system (e.g., thermal cameras) will be stationed on all vessels during transits that intend to operate at greater than 10 knots from November 1 through April 30. The primary role of the person-on-watch is to alert the vessel navigation crew to the presence of marine mammals and sea turtles and to report transit activities and protected species sightings to the designated SFW information system. • If a vessel is carrying a visual observer for the purposes of maintaining watch for NARWs, an additional lookout is not required and this visual observer must maintain watch for whales, giant manta rays, and sea turtles. If the trained lookout is a vessel crewmember, this must be their designated role and primary responsibility while the vessel is transiting. Any designated crew observers should be trained in the identification of sea turtles and in regulations and best practices for avoiding vessel strikes. • Vessels underway must not divert their course to approach any listed species. • If a sea turtle is sighted within 100 m of the operating vessel's forward path, the vessel operator must slow down to 4 knots (unless unsafe to do so) and may resume normal vessel operations once the vessel has passed the individual. If a sea turtle is sighted within 50 m of the forward path of the operating vessel, the vessel operator must shift to neutral when safe to do so and then proceed away from the individual at a speed of 4 knots or	Construction, O&M, and decommissioning

Measure	Description	Project Phase
	less until there is a separation distance of at least 100 m at which time normal vessel operations may be resumed. • Between June 1 and October 30, vessels must avoid transiting through areas of visible jellyfish aggregations or floating vegetation (e.g., sargassum lines or mats). In the event that operational safety prevents avoidance of such areas, vessels must slow to 4 knots while transiting through such areas. • The only exception to these requirements is when the safety of the vessel or crew necessitates deviation from these requirements. If any such incidents occur, they must be reported (see reporting requirements). • South Fork may file for consideration by NMFS and BOEM a request for a waiver of any of these restrictions by submitting a vessel strike risk reduction plan that details revised measures along with an analysis to demonstrate that the measure(s) will provide a level of risk reduction at least equivalent to the measure(s) being proposed for replacement. The plan must be provided to NMFS and BOEM at least 60 days prior to a request for approval and will not be implemented unless NMFS and BOEM reach consensus on approval.	

Measure	Description	Project Phase
Pile driving monitoring plan and PSO requirements	A final pile-driving monitoring plan (PDM Plan) must be submitted to BOEM (at renewable_reporting@boem.gov), BSEE (at protectedspecies@bsee.gov), and NMFS for review and approval by lead agency in writing a minimum of 90 days prior to the commencement of pile-driving activities. The PDM Plan must: • Contain information on the visual and PAM components of the monitoring describing all equipment, procedures, and protocols; • The PAM system must demonstrate a near-real-time capability of detection to the full extent of the 160 dB distance from the pile-driving location; • The PAM plan must include a detection confidence that a vocalization originated from within the clearance and shutdown zones to determine that a possible NARW has been detected. Any PAM detection of a NARW within the clearance/shutdown zone surrounding a pile must be treated the same as a visual observation and trigger any required delays in pile installation. • Ensure that the full extent of the harassment distances from piles are monitored for marine mammals and sea turtles to document all potential take; • Include number of PSOs or Native American monitors, or both, that will be used, the platforms or vessels upon which they will be deployed, and contact information for the PSO providers; • Include an Alternative Monitoring Plan that provides for enhanced monitoring capabilities in the event that poor visibility conditions unexpectedly arise, and pile driving cannot be stopped. The Alternative Monitoring Plan must also include measures for deploying additional observers, using night vision goggles, or using PAM with the goal of ensuring the ability to maintain all clearance and shutdown zones in the event of unexpected poor visibility conditions. • Describe a communication plan detailing the chain of command, mode of communication, and decision authority must be described. PSOs as determined by NMFS and BOEM must be used to monitor the area of the clearance and shutdown zones. Seasonal and species-specific clearance and shutdown zones must also be described in the PDM Plan including time-of-year requirements for NARWs. A copy of the approved PDM Plan must be in the possession of the lessee representative, the PSOs, impact-hammer operators, and any other relevant designees operating under the authority of the approved COP and carrying out the requirements on site.	Construction
PSO and reporting requirements for pile driving shutdown events	Within 24 hours, SFW must report to BOEM at renewable_reporting@boem.gov all marine mammals and/or sea turtles in the shutdown zone that result in a shutdown or a power-down. In addition, the PSO provider must submit the data report (raw data collected in the field) and must include the daily form with the date, time, species, pile identification number, GPS coordinates, time and distance of the animal when sighted, time the shutdown or power-down occurred, behavior of the animal, direction of travel, time the animal left the shutdown zone, time the pile driver was restarted or powered back up, and any photographs that may have been taken.	Construction

Measure	**Description**	**Project Phase**
Weekly and final Pile Driving Reporting Requirements	Weekly Pile-Driving Reports (Construction). Weekly PSO and PAM monitoring reports must be submitted to NMFS and DOI during the pile-driving and construction period of the wind farm installation. Weekly reports must document daily start and stop times of all pile-driving activities, daily start and stop times of associated observation periods by the PSOs, details on the deployment of PSOs, and a record of all observations of marine mammals and sea turtles. The third party PSO providers must submit the weekly monitoring reports to BOEM at renewable_reporting@boem.gov and NMFS at nmfs.gar.incidental-take@noaa.gov every Wednesday during construction for the previous week (Sunday through Saturday) of monitoring of pile-driving activity. Weekly reports can consist of raw data. Required data and reports provided to DOI may be archived, analyzed, published, and disseminated by BOEM. PSO data must be reported weekly (Sunday through Saturday) from the start of visual and/or PAM efforts during pile-driving activities, and every week thereafter until the final reporting period upon conclusion of pile-driving activity. Any editing, review, and quality assurance checks must be completed only by the PSO provider prior to submission to NMFS and DOI. The Lessee must submit to DOI at renewable_reporting@boem.gov and protectedspecies@bsee.gov a final summary report of PSO monitoring 90 days following the completion of pile driving.	Construction

Measure	Description	Project Phase
Injured/protected species reporting	SFW must report any potential takes, strikes, or dead/injured protected species caused by project vessels to NMFS Protected Resources Division, nmfs.gar.incidental-take@noaa.gov; to NOAA Fisheries 24-hour Stranding Hotline number (866-755-6622); to BOEM at renewable_reporting@boem.gov, and to BSEE at protectedspecies@bsee.gov as soon as practicable. In the event that an injured or dead marine mammal or sea turtle is sighted, regardless of the cause, the Lessee must report the incident to NMFS Protected Resources Division; to NOAA Fisheries 24-hour Stranding Hotline number (866-755-6622); to BOEM at renewable_reporting@boem.gov; and to BSEE at protectedspecies.gov as soon as practicable (for crew and vessel safety), but no later than 24 hours from the sighting. nmfs.gar.incidental-take@noaa.gov; to NOAA Fisheries 24-hour Stranding Hotline number (866-755-6622); to BOEM at renewable_reporting@boem.gov; and to BSEE at protectedspecies.gov as soon as practicable (for crew and vessel safety), but no later than 24 hours from the sighting. (1) A Detected Protected Species Report must include the following information: • Time, date, and location (latitude/longitude) of the first discovery (and updated location information if known and applicable); • Species identification (if known) or description of the animal(s) involved; • Condition of the animal(s) (including carcass condition if the animal is dead); • Observed behaviors of the animal(s), if alive; • If available, photographs or video footage of the animal(s); and • General circumstances under which the animal was discovered. Staff responding to the hotline call will provide any instructions for handling or disposing of any injured or dead animals by individuals authorized to collect, possess, and transport sea turtles. (2) An Impacted Protected Species Report (e.g., a vessel injury or dead animal detected during a pile driving event) must include the following information: • Time, date, and location (latitude/longitude) of the incident; • Species identification (if known) or description of the animal(s) involved; • Lessee and vessel(s) information; • Vessel's speed during and leading up to the incident; • Vessel's course/heading and what operations were being conducted (if applicable); • Status of all sound sources in use (if applicable); • Description of avoidance measures/ requirements that were in place at the time of the strike and what additional measures were taken, if any, to avoid strike; • Environmental conditions (e.g., wind speed and direction, Beaufort scale, cloud cover, visibility) immediately preceding the strike; • Estimated size and length of animal that was struck; • Description of the behavior of the animal immediately preceding and following the strike; • Estimated fate of the animal (e.g., dead, injured but alive, injured and moving, blood or tissue observed in the water, status unknown, disappeared); and • To the extent practicable, photographs or video footage of the animal(s).	Construction, O&M, and decommissioning

Measure	Description	Project Phase
Passive Acoustic Monitoring	Use PAM devices to record ambient noise and marine mammal species vocalizations in the Lease Area before, during, and immediately after construction (at least 3 years of operation) to monitor impacts. The archival recorders must have a minimum capability of detecting and storing acoustic data on vessel noise, pile-driving, WTG operation, and marine mammal vocalizations in the lease area. No later than 30 days prior to buoy deployment, the Lessee must submit to BOEM and BSEE (renewable_reporting@boem.gov and protectedspecies@bsee.gov) the PAM plan and receive written concurrence from BOEM and BSEE. Results must be provided to BOEM and BSEE within 90 days of buoy collection and again within 90 days of the 1-year and 2-year anniversary of collection. The underwater acoustic monitoring must follow standardized measurement and processing methods and visualization metrics developed by the Atlantic Deepwater Ecosystem Observatory Network (ADEON) for the U.S. Mid- and South Atlantic Outer Continental Shelf (see https://adeon.unh.edu/) and NMFS requirements for marine mammal detections. At least two devices must be independently deployed within the lease area or one or more buoys must be deployed in coordination with other acoustic monitoring efforts in the RI and MA Lease Areas.	Construction, O&M
Periodic underwater surveys, reporting, and monofilament and other fishing gear cleanup around WTG foundations	Monitor impacts associated with charter and recreational gear lost from expected increases in fishing around WTG foundations by surveying at least 5 of the WTG foundations in the lease area annually, starting the third year of operations. Surveys by remotely operated vehicles, divers, or other means will inform frequency and locations of marine debris. The results of the surveys will be reported to BOEM and BSEE (renewable_reporting@boem.gov and marinedebris@bsee.gov) in an annual report submitted by April 30 for the preceding calendar year in which the survey is performed. Reports must be submitted in Word format. Photographic and videographic materials will be provided on a drive in a lossless format such as TIFF or Motion JPEG 2000. Reports must include daily survey reports that include the survey date, contact information of the operator, location, and pile identification number, photographic and/or video documentation of the survey and debris encountered, any animals sighted, and the disposition of any located debris (i.e., removed or left in place). Required data and reports may be archived, analyzed, published, and disseminated by BOEM.	O&M

Marine debris awareness and elimination	"Marine trash and debris" is defined as any object or fragment of wood, metal, glass, rubber, plastic, cloth, paper or any other solid, man-made item or material that is lost or discarded in the marine environment by the Lessee or an authorized representative of the Lessee (collectively, the "Lessee") while conducting activities on the Outer Continental Shelf (OCS) in connection with a lease, grant, or approval issued by the Department of the Interior (DOI). To understand the type and amount of marine debris generated, and to minimize the risk of entanglement in and/or ingestion of marine debris by protected species, lessees must implement the following Best Management Practices ("BMPs"). 1. Training: All vessel operators, employees, and contractors performing OCS survey activities on behalf of the Lessee (collectively, "Lessee Representatives") must complete marine trash and debris awareness training annually. The training consists of two parts: (1) viewing a marine trash and debris training video or slide show (described below); and (2) receiving an explanation from management personnel that emphasizes their commitment to the requirements. The marine trash and debris training videos, training slide packs, and other marine debris related educational material may be obtained at https://www.bsee.gov/debris. The training videos, slides, and related material may be downloaded directly from the website. Lessee Representatives engaged in OCS survey activities must continue to develop and use a marine trash and debris awareness training and certification process that reasonably assures that they, as well as their respective employees, contractors, and subcontractors, are in fact trained. The training process must include the following elements: a. viewing of either a video or slide show by the personnel specified above; b. an explanation from management personnel that emphasizes their commitment to the requirements; c. attendance measures (initial and annual); and d. recordkeeping and availability of records for inspection by DOI. By January 31 of each year, the Lessee must submit to DOI an annual report signed by the Lessee that describes its marine trash and debris awareness training process and certifies that the training process has been followed for the previous calendar year. You must send the reports via email to renewable_reporting@boem.gov and to marinedebris@bsee.gov. 2. Marking: Materials, equipment, tools, containers, and other items used in OCS activities which are of such shape or properly secured to prevent loss overboard. All markings must clearly identify the owner and must be durable enough to resist the effects of the environmental conditions to which they may be exposed. 3. Recovery: Lessees must recover marine trash and debris that is lost or discarded in the marine environment while performing OCS activities when such incident is likely to: (a) cause undue harm or damage to natural resources, including their physical, atmospheric, and biological components, with particular attention to those that could result in the entanglement of or ingestion by marine protected species; or (b) significantly interfere with OCS uses (e.g., are likely to snag or damage fishing equipment, or present a hazard to navigation). Lessees must notify DOI when recovery activities are (i) not possible because conditions are unsafe; or (ii) not practicable because the marine trash and debris released is not likely to result in any of the conditions listed in (a) or (b) above. The lessee must recover the marine trash and debris lost or discarded if DOI does not agree with the reasons provided by the Lessee to be relieved from the obligation to recover the marine trash and debris. If the marine trash and debris is located within the boundaries of a potential archaeological resource/avoidance area, or a sensitive ecological/benthic resource area, the Lessee must contact DOI for approval prior to conducting any recovery efforts. Recovery of the marine trash and debris should be completed immediately, but no later than 30 days from the date in which the incident occurred. If the Lessee is not able to recover the marine trash or debris within 48 hours (See BMP (4)), the Lessee must submit a recovery plan to DOI explaining the recovery activities to recover the marine	Construction, O&M, decommissioning

Measure	Description	Project Phase
	trash or debris ("Recovery Plan"). The Recovery Plan must be submitted no later than 10 calendar days from the date in which the incident occurred. Unless otherwise objected by DOI within 48 hours of the filing of the Recovery Plan, the Lessee can proceed with the activities described in the Recovery Plan. The Lessee must request and obtain approval of a time extension if recovery activities cannot be completed within 30 days from the date in which the incident occurred. The Lessee must enact steps to prevent similar incidents and must submit a description of these actions to BOEM and BSEE within 30 days from the date in which the incident occurred. 4. Reporting: The Lessee must report all marine trash and debris lost or discarded to DOI (using the email address listed on DOI's most recent incident reporting guidance). This report applies to all marine trash and debris lost or discarded, and must be made monthly, no later than the fifth day of the following month. The report must include the following: a. project identification and contact information for the lessee, operator, and/or contractor; b. the date and time of the incident; c. the lease number, OCS area and block, and coordinates of the object's location (latitude and longitude in decimal degrees); d. a detailed description of the dropped object to include dimensions (approximate length, width, height, and weight) and composition (e.g., plastic, aluminum, steel, wood, paper, hazardous substances, or defined pollutants); e. pictures, data imagery, data streams, and/or a schematic/illustration of the object, if available; f. Indication of whether the lost or discarded item could be a magnetic anomaly of greater than 50 nanoTesla (nT), a seafloor target of greater than 0.5 meters (m), or a sub-bottom anomaly of greater than 0.5m when operating a magnetometer or gradiometer, side scan sonar, or sub-bottom profile in accordance with DOI's applicable guidance; g. an explanation of how the object was lost; and, h. a description of immediate recovery efforts and results, including photos. In addition to the foregoing, the Lessee must submit a report within 48 hours of the incident ("48-hour Report") if the marine trash or debris could (a) cause undue harm or damage to natural resources, including their physical, atmospheric, and biological components, with particular attention to those that could result in the ingestion by or entanglement of marine protected species; or (b) significantly interfere with OCS uses (e.g., are likely to snag or damage fishing equipment, or present a hazard to navigation). The information in the 48-hour Report would be the same as that listed above, but just for the incident that triggered the 48-hour Report. The Lessee must report to DOI if the object is recovered and, as applicable, any substantial variation in the activities described in the Recovery Plan that were required during the recovery efforts. Information on unrecovered marine trash and debris must be included and addressed in the description of the site clearance activities provided in the decommissioning application required under 30 C.F.R. § 585.906. The Lessee is not required to submit a report for those months in which no marine trash and debris was lost or discarded.	
Reporting of all NARW sightings	If a NARW is observed at any time by PSOs or personnel on any Project vessels, during any Project-related activity or during vessel transit, SFWF must report the sighting information to NMFS and BOEM immediately after conclusion of the detection event (the time, location, and number of animals) to BOEM at renewable_reporting@boem.gov and the NOAA Fisheries 24-hour Stranding Hotline number (866-755-6622), the USCG via channel 16, and through the WhaleAlert app (http://www.whalealert.org/).	Construction, O&M, and decommissioning

Measure	**Description**	**Project Phase**
Vessel communication of threatened and endangered species sightings	Whenever multiple Project vessels are operating, any visual observations of listed species (marine mammals and sea turtles) must be communicated to a PSO and/or vessel captains associated with other Project vessels.	Construction, O&M, and decommissioning
Geophysical survey off-effort PSO monitoring	Measures will be required in accordance with project design criteria and associated best management practices in the 2021 Data Collection Programmatic ESA Consultation with NMFS. See Appendix B	Construction, O&M, and decommissioning
Geophysical survey vessel whale strike-avoidance and equipment shutdown protocols	Measures will be required in accordance with project design criteria and associated best management practices in the 2021 Data Collection Programmatic ESA Consultation with NMFS. See Appendix B	Construction, O&M, and decommissioning
Geophysical survey clearance of shutdown zone and restart protocols following shutdowns	Measures will be required in accordance with project design criteria and associated best management practices in the 2021 Data Collection Programmatic ESA Consultation with NMFS. See Appendix B	Construction, O&M, and decommissioning
Sea turtle avoidance and clearance zones during geophysical surveys	Measures will be required in accordance with project design criteria and associated best management practices in the 2021 Data Collection Programmatic ESA Consultation with NMFS. See Appendix B	Construction, O&M, and decommissioning
Geophysical survey clearance zone, power-up, and re-start procedures	Measures will be required in accordance with project design criteria and associated best management practices in the 2021 Data Collection Programmatic ESA Consultation with NMFS. See Appendix B	Construction, O&M, and decommissioning

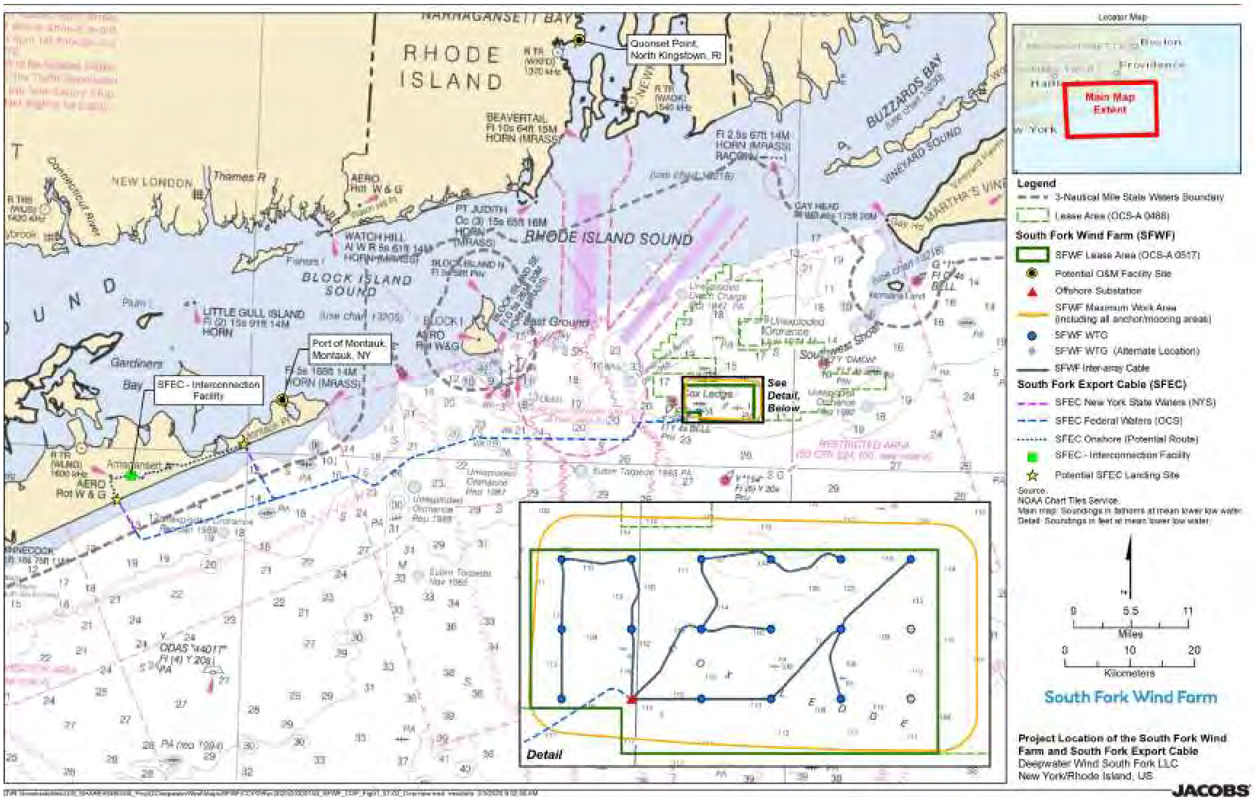
Table 3.3.2. Proposed clearance and exclusion zones

Species	**Clearance Zone (m)**	**Shutdown Zone (m)**
Impact pile driving		
North Atlantic right whale	5,000	2,000
Blue, fin, sei, and sperm whale	2,200	2,000
Sea Turtles	500	500
Vibratory pile driving		
NARW, blue, fin, sei, and sperm whale	1,500	1,500
Sea Turtles	500	500
HRG Surveys		
North Atlantic right whale	500	500
Blue, fin, sei, and sperm whale	100	100
Sea Turtles	100	NA

3.4 Action Area

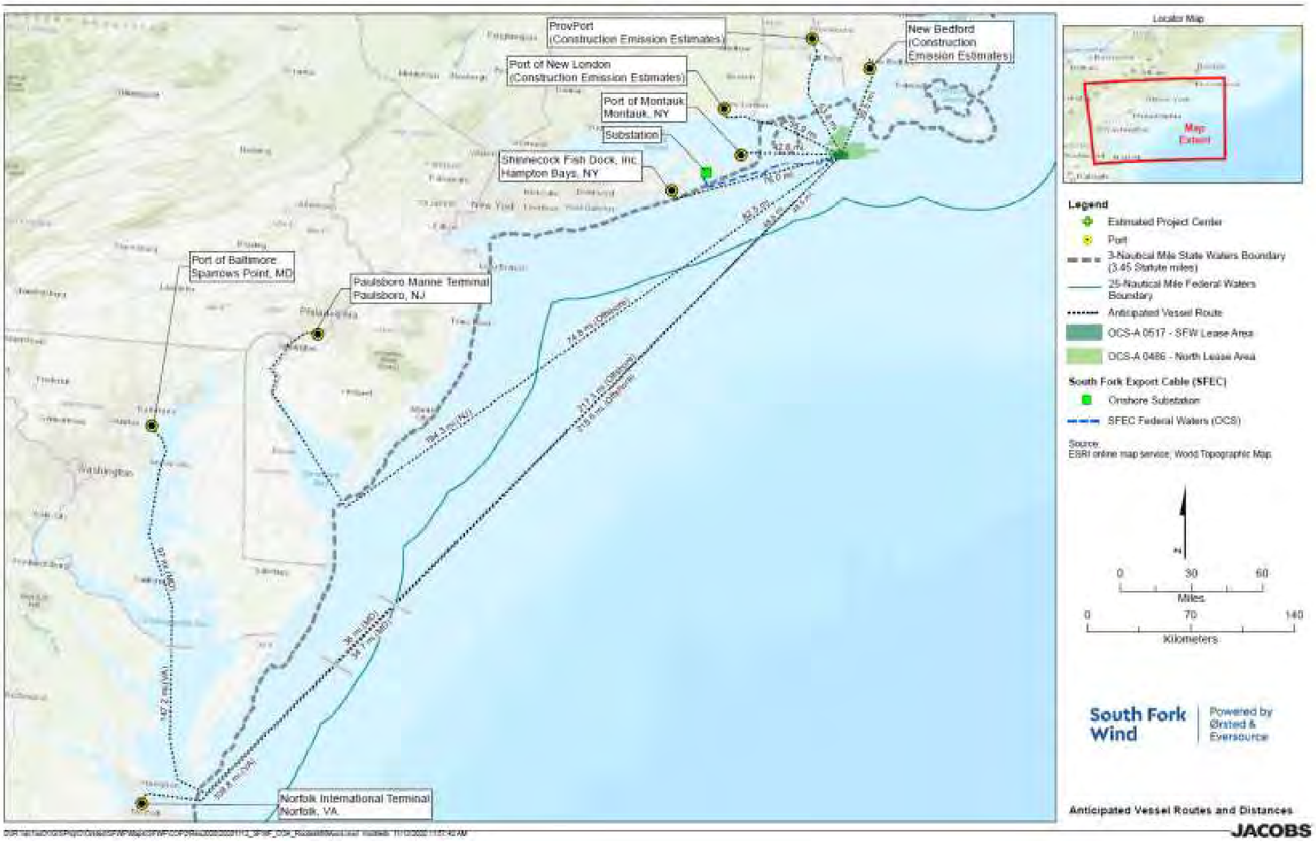
The action area is defined in 50 CFR 402.02 as "all areas to be affected directly or indirectly by the Federal action and not merely the immediate area involved in the action." The action area includes the RI/MA WEA where project activities will occur and the surrounding areas ensonified by proposed Project noise; the SFEC – Offshore cable route, which extends south to landfall in East Hampton, New York; the areas where HRG and fisheries and benthic resource surveys will take place; the vessel transit areas between the RI/MA WEA and ports in Massachusetts, Rhode Island, New York and Canada; and the routes used by vessels transporting manufactured components from Europe and/or Gulf of Mexico (see Figure 3.4.1, 3.4.2, and 3.4.3) inclusive of the portion of the Atlantic Ocean that will be transited by those vessels and the territorial sea of nations along the European Atlantic coast from which those vessels will originate.

Figure 3.4.1. South Fork Wind Farm proposed port turbine locations, inter-array cables, and export cable route locations



Source: Jacobs 2021

Figure 3.4.2. Mid-Atlantic vessel traffic routes and distances



Source: Jacobs 2021

Materials for construction may be transported from ports outside the WDA, including Europe, Halifax, Canada, and the Gulf of Mexico. The number of trips from outside of the United States, and which ports those trips could originate from, would not be fully known until contractors are selected and supply chains are established. Trips could originate from ports in Europe and/or Gulf of Mexico because many offshore wind components are currently manufactured there. Staging areas in Canada are also possible before transporting to the construction site. Currently, most industry-specific vessels are located in Europe but as the industry matures in the United States, fewer trips from Europe will be necessary. Vessels transporting parts from the Gulf of Mexico and/or Mid-Atlantic ports (Figure 3.4.2) are expected to take the most direct route to the WDA and/or to ports in Connecticut, New York, Massachusetts, or Rhode Island, thus, we consider the action area to include the portion of the North Atlantic Ocean as illustrated in Figure 3.4.3, where we assume that any project vessels transiting from the Gulf of Mexico and/or Mid-Atlantic ports will operate. All trips originating from Europe will either travel directly to the project site within the RI/MA WEA or to one of the ports in Canada, Connecticut, New York, Massachusetts, or Rhode Island that were identified above (Table 3.2.5). At this time, the port(s) of origin are unknown. All vessel routes will depend, on a trip-by-trip basis, on weather and sea-state conditions, other vessel traffic, and any maritime hazards. Based on a review of AIS data (see Figure 3.4.4), we expect vessels approaching the project area from Europe to have a track that eventually approaches the precautionary area at the intersection of the Boston Harbor Traffic

Lanes and the Nantucket to Ambrose Traffic Lane and then tracks along the Nantucket to Ambrose Traffic Lane. At some point, the vessel will depart the Nantucket to Ambrose Traffic Lane and travel directly to the WDA or to the Narragansett Bay or Buzzards Bay traffic separation scheme. We assume that vessels traveling from Europe to the WDA or the MA, RI, or Canadian ports will take the most direct route; thus, we consider the action area to include the portion of the North Atlantic Ocean as illustrated in Figure 3.4.3, where we assume that any project vessels transiting from Europe will operate.

Figure 3.4.3. Map representing the entirety of the action area (Note that given the scale of the map, this is meant only to serve as a general visual representation of the text description of the action area provided above - lease area (pink) and cable route (blue) are shown in inset map)

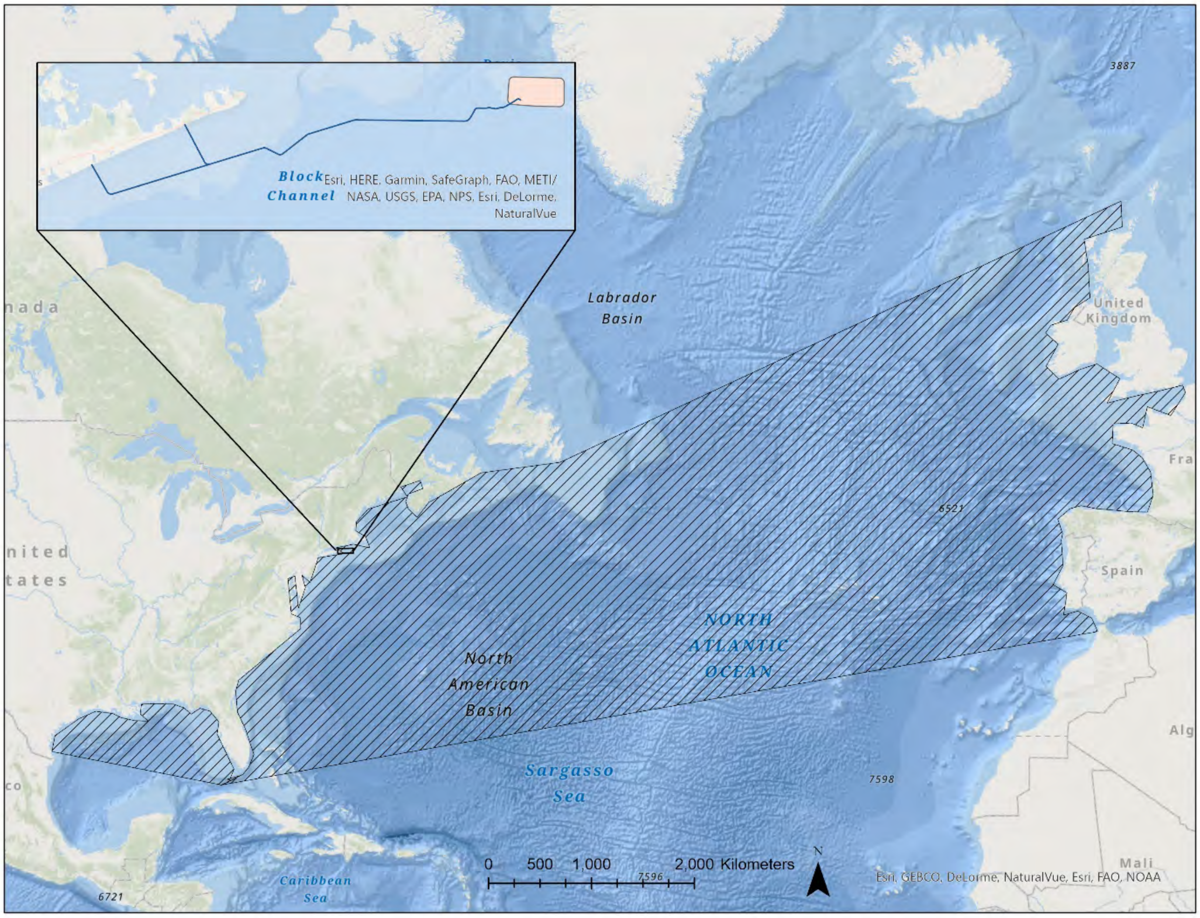
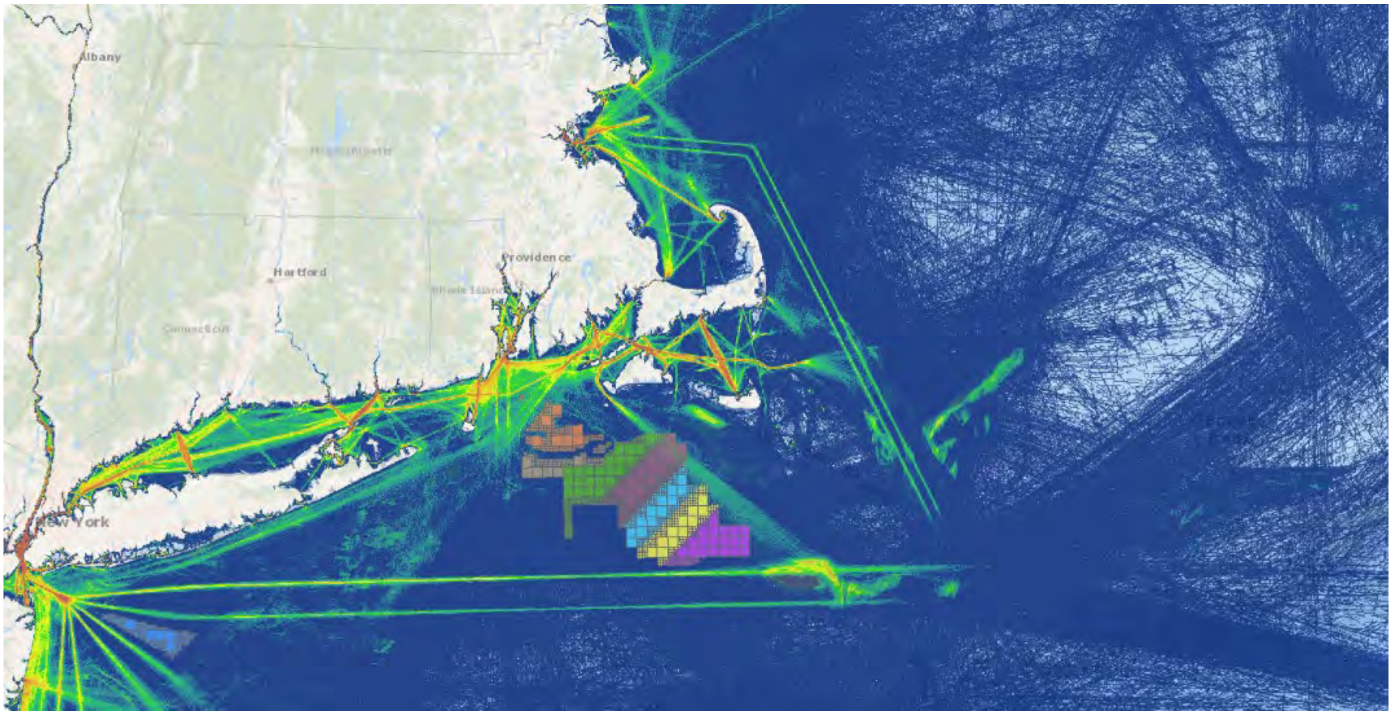


Figure 3.4.4. AIS Vessel Traffic in southern New England area (2018-2019) overlaid with offshore wind lease areas (South Fork is located in the orange colored lease area).
Source: https://tinyurl.com/xmbh26rk, last accessed 4/28/2021



4.0 SPECIES AND CRITICAL HABITAT NOT CONSIDERED FURTHER IN THIS OPINION

In the BA, BOEM concludes that the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect blue whales, Rice’s whales (formerly Gulf of Mexico Bryde’s whale), giant manta rays, hawksbill sea turtles, the Northeast Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles, smalltooth sawfish, gulf sturgeon, oceanic whitetip sharks, five DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon, and Nassau grouper. BOEM determined that shortnose sturgeon and the Gulf of Maine DPS of Atlantic salmon do not occur in the action area. BOEM also concludes that the proposed action will have no effect on critical habitat designated for North Atlantic right whales, the New York Bight and Chesapeake Bay DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon, and the Northwest Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles and no effect on a number of ESA listed coral species that may be present in the southern portion of the action area (i.e., the portion of the action area that overlaps with vessel traffic routes in the Gulf of Mexico and/or off the South Atlantic coast of the United States). With the exception of shortnose sturgeon and Atlantic sturgeon, we agree with these determinations. Shortnose sturgeon do occur in a portion of the action area that may be transited by project vessels; our effects analysis is provided below. As described in section 7.0 of this Opinion, we anticipate the capture of Atlantic sturgeon in fisheries surveys that are part of the proposed action; therefore, a not likely to adversely affect conclusion is not appropriate for Atlantic sturgeon.

4.1. ESA Listed Species

Blue whales (Balaenoptera musculus) – Endangered

In the North Atlantic Ocean, the range of blue whales extends from the subtropics to the Greenland Sea. As described in Hayes et al. (2020; the most recent stock assessment report), blue whales have been detected and tracked acoustically in much of the North Atlantic with most of the acoustic detections around the Grand Banks area of Newfoundland and west of the British Isles. Photo-identification in eastern Canadian waters indicates that blue whales from the St. Lawrence, Newfoundland, Nova Scotia, New England, and Greenland all belong to the same stock, while blue whales photographed off Iceland and the Azores appear to be part of a separate population (CETAP 1982; Wenzel et al. 1988; Sears and Calambokidis 2002; Sears and Larsen 2002). In the action area, blue whales are most frequently sighted in the waters off eastern Canada, with the majority of recent records in the Gulf of St. Lawrence (Hayes et al. 2010) which is outside the action area. The largest concentrations of blue whales are found in the lower St. Lawrence Estuary (LeSage et al. 2017, Comtois et al. 2010) which is outside of the action area. Blue whales do not regularly occur within the U.S. EEZ and typically occur further offshore in areas with depths of 100 m or more (Waring et al. 2010).

Migration patterns for blue whales in the eastern North Atlantic Ocean are poorly understood. However, blue whales have been documented in winter months off Mauritania in northwest Africa (Baines & Reichelt 2014); in the Azores, where their arrival is linked to secondary production generated by the North Atlantic spring phytoplankton bloom (Visser et al. 2011); and traveling through deep-water areas near the shelf break west of the British Isles (Charif & Clark 2009). Blue whale calls have been detected in winter on hydrophones along the mid-Atlantic ridge south of the Azores (Nieukirk et al. 2004).

Blue whales have not been documented in the WDA[6]. Based on their distribution, blue whales could occur along a portion of the vessel transit routes between Canadian or European ports and the project site. These trips are limited to no more than 8 during the two year construction period; no trips are anticipated during the operations or decommissioning phases of the project. There are recorded sightings of blue whales in the northern portion of the transit route from ports in Canada that may be used during the construction phase. There is an area off the coast of Nova Scotia (overlapping with the potential vessel transit route from Sheet Harbor) with approximately 30 sightings of blue whales recorded; however, all of these sightings are from a three year period in the 1960s (1966-1968), despite sighting effort since then. The portion of the action area that overlaps with the vessel transit route from Sheet Harbor has about seven sightings between 1975 and 2006. The rarity of observations in this area is consistent with the conclusion in Waring et al. (2010) that the blue whale is best considered as an occasional visitor in U.S. Atlantic EEZ waters and would be rare along the vessel transit route from Canada. In the BA, BOEM estimates a maximum of two vessel trips between Sheet Harbor, Canada, and the project site over the two year construction period. Given the rarity of blue whales in this area, it is extremely unlikely that any blue whales will co-occur in the area with these vessel trips. Similarly, given the rarity of blue whales along any transit routes from Europe, co-occurrence with any of those six trips over the two year construction period is not reasonably expected. However, even if co-occurrence did occur, any effects are extremely unlikely to occur. This is because the slow

---

[6] Available sightings data at: http://seamap.env.duke.edu/species/180528. Last accessed September 7, 2021.

transit speed (not exceeding 10 knots) and the use of a dedicated lookout, will allow vessel operators to avoid interactions with any whales along the vessel transit route. Traveling at speeds not exceeding 10 knots provides a significant reduction in risk of vessel strike as it both provides for greater opportunity for a whale to evade the vessel but also ensures that vessels are operating at such a speed that they can make evasive maneuvers in time to avoid a collision (Laist et al., 2001; Jensen and Silber, 2003; Vanderlaan and Taggart, 2007). Therefore, based on the unexpected co-occurrence of blue whales and project vessels as well as the speed reductions and use of a lookout, any effects to blue whales are extremely unlikely to occur. No take is anticipated. The proposed action is not likely to adversely affect the blue whale.

Rice's whale (Balaenoptera ricei) – Endangered

On August 23, 2021, NMFS issued a direct final rule to revise the common and scientific name of the Gulf of Mexico Bryde's whale to Rice's whale, *Balaneoptera ricei*, and classification to species to reflect the scientifically accepted taxonomy and nomenclature of the whales (86 FR 47022). The distribution of Rice's whale is limited to the northeastern Gulf of Mexico, along the continental shelf break between 100 m and 400 m depths (Rosel et al. 2016). The only project-related activity that has the potential to affect this species is a portion of the vessel activity. We have considered whether vessels transiting to and from the project area from ports in the Gulf of Mexico could potentially encounter Rice's whales. BOEM estimates a total of approximately 34 roundtrips between Gulf of Mexico ports and the project area, with any ports of origin in the Gulf of Mexico located west of the mouth of the Mississippi River. These 34 trips include 4 during the two year construction phase and up to one per year over the 25 year operational period. These vessel routes are not anticipated to overlap with the distribution of Rice's whales. Based on the vessel transit routes, which are anticipated to be south and west of the distribution of Rice's whales, it is extremely unlikely that any Rice's whales will co-occur with project vessels. As such, effects to Rice's whales are extremely unlikely to occur. No take is anticipated. The proposed action is not likely to adversely affect the Rice's whale.

Giant Manta Ray (Manta birostris) – Threatened

The giant manta ray inhabits temperate, tropical, and subtropical waters worldwide, between 35° N and 35° S latitudes. In the western Atlantic Ocean, this includes South Carolina south to Brazil and Bermuda. Giant manta rays also occur in the Gulf of Mexico. Occasionally, manta rays are observed as far north as Long Island (Miller and Klimovich 2017, Farmer et al. 2021); however, these sightings are in offshore waters along the continental shelf edge. Giant manta rays travel long distances during seasonal migrations and may be found in upwelling waters at the shelf break south of Long Island, where they could potentially occur within the waters transited by vessels traveling between the project area and Europe. Manta rays may also occur in the action area along vessels routes between the project area and ports in the Gulf of Mexico or the Southeast United States.

Giant Manta Rays are not anticipated in the lease area. Farmer et al. (2021) summarized results of NYSERDA surveys carried out from nearshore to offshore marine environments of New York, with temporal coverage during the spring/summer of 2016–2019 and fall/winter of 2016–2018. Of the 21,539 rays identified in the surveys, 7 were manta rays. Farmer et al. (2021) reports that despite comprehensive coast to shelf survey coverage, manta ray sightings were exclusively in August on the continental shelf edge.

Given the distribution of Giant manta rays, we have considered the potential for effects of project vessels. Giant manta rays can be frequently observed traveling just below the surface and will often approach or show little fear toward humans or vessels (Coles 1916), which may also make them vulnerable to vessel strikes (Deakos 2010); vessel strikes can injure or kill giant manta rays, decreasing fitness or contributing to non-natural mortality (Couturier et al. 2012; Deakos et al. 2011); however, vessel strikes are considered rare. Information about interactions between vessels and giant manta rays is limited. We have at least some reports of vessel strike, including a report of five giant manta rays struck by vessels from 2016 through 2018; individuals had injuries (i.e., fresh or healed dorsal surface propeller scars) consistent with a vessel strike. These interactions were observed by researchers conducting surveys from Boynton Beach to Jupiter, Florida (J. Pate, Florida Manta Project, pers. comm. to M. Miller, NMFS OPR, 2018) and it is unknown where the manta was at the time of the vessel strike. The geographic area considered to have the highest risk of vessel strikes for giant manta ray is nearshore coastal waters and inlets along the east coast of Florida where recreational vessel traffic is concentrated; this area does not overlap with the action area. Given the few instances of confirmed or suspected strandings of giant manta rays attributed to vessel strike injury, the risk of giant manta rays being struck vessels is considered low. This lack of documented mortalities could also be the result of other factors that influence carcass detection (i.e., wind, currents, scavenging, decomposition etc.); however, giant manta rays appear to be able to be fast and agile enough to avoid most moving vessels, as anecdotally evidenced by videos showing rays avoiding interactions with high-speed vessels (Barnette 2018).

The speed and maneuverability of giant manta rays, the slow operating speed of project vessels transiting through the portion of the action area where Giant manta rays occur, the dispersed nature of Giant manta ray distribution in the open ocean area where these vessels will operate, and the small number of potential vessel trips through the range of Giant manta rays (4 over the 2 year construction period and up to one per year during the 25 year operational period), make any effects extremely unlikely to occur. No take is anticipated. The proposed action is not likely to adversely affect the giant manta ray.

Hawksbill sea turtle (Eretmochelys imbricate) – Endangered

The hawksbill sea turtle is typically found in tropical and subtropical regions of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans, including the coral reef habitats of the Caribbean and Central America. Hawksbill turtles generally do not migrate north of Florida and their presence north of Florida is rare (NMFS and USFWS 1993).

Given their rarity in waters north of Florida, hawksbill sea turtles are highly unlikely to occur in the WDA. The presence of hawksbill sea turtles in the action area is limited to the portion of the action area in the Gulf of Mexico and off the Florida coast that may be transited by project vessels. As noted in section 3.0, use of this area is expected to be limited to up to four vessel trips during the two year construction period and up to one vessel trip per year during the 25 year operational period. However, given the low numbers and dispersed nature of hawksbills in the areas where vessels will transit, the small number of vessel trips, it is extremely unlikely that any hawksbill sea turtles will co-occur with project vessels. As such, effects to hawksbill sea turtles from vessel operations are also extremely unlikely to occur. No take is anticipated. The proposed action is not likely to adversely affect the hawksbill sea turtle.

Smalltooth Sawfish (Pristis pectinate) – Endangered

Smalltooth sawfish live in shallow, coastal waters of tropical seas and estuaries of the Atlantic Ocean and sometimes enter the lower reaches of tropical freshwater river systems. The historical range for smalltooth sawfish in the western Atlantic extended from Brazil to the Gulf of Mexico and eastern seaboard of the U.S. (Carlson et al. 2013 in NMFS 2018). However, the species has been wholly or nearly extirpated from large areas of its historical range, and in U.S. waters smalltooth sawfish are now found only off the coast of Florida (NMFS 2018). Small, juvenile smalltooth sawfish are generally restricted to mangroves and estuaries around the Florida peninsula, where project vessels will not travel. Larger adults have a broader distribution and could be found in the southeastern Gulf of Mexico in nearshore waters along the Florida shoreline. Given the distribution of the species in nearshore waters, the occurrence of smalltooth sawfish along the deepwater areas that will be used by project vessels to transit to or from Gulf of Mexico ports is extremely unlikely. Vessel strikes are not identified as a threat in the listing determination (68 FR 15674), the most-recent 5-year review (NMFS 2018), or the recovery plan (NMFS 2009). We have no information to suggest that vessels in the ocean have any effects on smalltooth sawfish. Therefore, we do not expect any effects to this species even if individuals unexpectedly occurred along the vessel transit routes to be traveled by project vessels. No take is anticipated. The proposed action is not likely to adversely affect smalltooth sawfish.

Gulf Sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus desotoi) – Threatened

The Gulf sturgeon is a sub-species of the Atlantic sturgeon that can be found from Lake Pontchartrain and the Pearl River system in Louisiana and Mississippi to the Suwannee River in Florida (USFWS and NMFS 2009). Historically the species ranged from the Mississippi River east to Tampa Bay. Gulf sturgeon spawn in rivers in the spring and fall and spend the summer months between the upstream spawning areas and the estuary. In the winter, adults will move into marine waters but younger fish remain in the estuarine and freshwater habitats for their first few years.

The only portion of the action area that could potentially overlap with the range of Gulf sturgeon are the vessel transit routes to and from Gulf of Mexico ports. The few vessels trips originating from the Gulf of Mexico are anticipated to occur from ports west of the Mississippi River associated with oil and gas operations, where Gulf sturgeon do not occur. The distribution of Gulf sturgeon within the Gulf of Mexico is limited to the northeastern areas of the Gulf. Vessels transiting from western Gulf of Mexico ports are not expected to be in these areas. As such, we do not expect any effects on Gulf sturgeon caused by project vessels. No take is anticipated. The proposed action is not likely to adversely affect Gulf sturgeon.

Nassau Grouper (Epinephelus striatus) – Threatened

Nassau grouper are reef fish found in tropical and subtropical waters of the western North Atlantic. This includes Bermuda, Florida, Bahamas, the Yucatan Peninsula, and throughout the Caribbean to southern Brazil. There has been one verified report of Nassau grouper in the Gulf of Mexico at Flower Gardens Bank. They generally live among shallow reefs, but can be found in depths to 426 feet (NMFS 2013). The range of Nassau grouper is described as including the southeastern portion of the Gulf of Mexico between the Florida coast and the Yucatan Peninsula (NMFS 2013). As described in NMFS 2013, the Nassau grouper is considered a reef fish, but it transitions through a series of ontogenetic shifts of both habitat and diet. As larvae they are planktonic. As juveniles, they are found in nearshore shallow waters in macroalgal and seagrass habitats. They shift progressively deeper with increasing size and maturation into predominantly reef habitat (e.g., forereef and reef crest). Adult Nassau grouper tend to be relatively sedentary and are found most abundantly on high relief coral reefs or rocky substrate in clear waters (Sadovy and Eklund 1999 in NMFS 2013), although they can be found from the shoreline to about 100-130 m. Larger adults tend to occupy deeper, more rugose, reef areas (Semmens et al. 2007a in NMFS 2013).

Overlap with the range of Nassau grouper and the action area is limited to the portion of the action area where vessels transiting to or from ports in the Gulf of Mexico would move through the southeastern portion of the Gulf of Mexico into the Atlantic Ocean. Given the primary distribution of Nassau grouper over reef habitats, which will be avoided by the transiting vessels, there is a low potential for occurrence of Nassau grouper in the areas where vessels will transit. Further, the near-bottom distribution of Nassau grouper in the water column makes it extremely unlikely that there would be any interactions with any project vessels. Vessel strikes are not identified as a threat in the biological report that supported the listing determination (NMFS 2013), listing determination (81 FR 42268) or the recovery outline (NMFS 2018). We have no information to suggest that vessels in the ocean have any effects on Nassau grouper. Therefore, we do not expect any effects to this species even if individuals co-occur with project vessels. No take is anticipated. The proposed action is not likely to adversely affect Nassau Grouper.

Oceanic White Tip Shark (Carcharhinus longimanus) – Threatened

The oceanic whitetip shark is usually found offshore in the open ocean, on the outer continental shelf, or around oceanic islands in deep water greater than 184 m. As noted in Young et al. 2017, the species has a clear preference for open ocean waters between 10 N and 10 S, but can be found in decreasing numbers out to latitudes of 30°N and 35°S, with abundance decreasing with greater proximity to continental shelves. In the western Atlantic, oceanic whitetips occur from Maine to Argentina, including the Caribbean and Gulf of Mexico. In the central and eastern Atlantic, the species occurs from Madeira, Portugal south to the Gulf of Guinea, and possibly in the Mediterranean Sea. Oceanic white tip sharks are not known to occur in the WDA; the only portion of the action area that overlaps with their distribution is the open ocean waters that may be transited by vessels from Europe or the Gulf of Mexico. Vessel strikes are not identified as a threat in the status review (Young et al., 2017), listing determination (83 FR 4153) or the recovery outline (NMFS 2018). We have no information to suggest that vessels in the ocean have any effects on oceanic white tip sharks. Considering the lack of any reported vessel strikes, their swim speed and maneuverability (Papastamatiou et al. 2017), and the slow speed of ocean-going vessels, vessel strikes are extremely unlikely even if migrating individuals occur along the vessel transit routes. No take is anticipated. The proposed action is not likely to adversely affect the oceanic white tip shark.

Northeast Atlantic DPS of Loggerhead Sea Turtles (Caretta caretta) – Endangered

The Northeast Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles occurs in the Northeast Atlantic Ocean north of the equator, south of 60° N. Lat., and east of 40° W. Long., except in the vicinity of the

Strait of Gibraltar where the eastern boundary is 5°36′ W. Long (76 FR 58867). The only portion of the action area that loggerheads from the Northeast Atlantic DPS are present in is along the portion of any vessel transit routes from Europe that are east of 40° W. Long. As noted in section 3.0 of this Opinion, no more than six trips from European ports are anticipated during the construction phase of the project. In this portion of the action area, co-occurrence of project vessels and individual sea turtles is expected to be extremely unlikely; this is due to the seasonal distribution and dispersed nature of sea turtles in the open ocean, the small number and intermittent presence of project vessels (i.e., 6 trips over a one to two year period). Together, these factors make it extremely unlikely that any Northeast Atlantic DPS loggerheads will be struck by a vessel as a result of the project. No take is anticipated. The proposed action is not likely to adversely affect the Northeast Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles.

ESA Listed Corals – Threatened and Endangered

There are six species of corals protected under the ESA that are known to occur in the action area: Elkhorn coral (*Acropora palmata*); Staghorn coral (*Acropora cervicornis*); Boulder star coral (*Orbicella franksi*); Mountainous star coral (*Orbicella faveolata*); Lobed star coral (*Orbicella annularis*); Rough cactus coral (*Mycetophyllia ferox*); and Pillar coral (*Dendrogyra cylindrus*) (79 FR 53851). The only activity that overlaps with the distribution of these species are vessel transits from ports in the Gulf of Mexico or along the U.S. South Atlantic coast. Transit routes for project vessels may co-occur with coral habitats, however, no impacts to corals are anticipated along vessel transit routes as water depths exclude the potential for vessel hulls and propellers to interact with the sessile species, and no anchoring will occur in areas where corals could be present. No take of these coral species is anticipated. The proposed action is not likely to adversely affect ESA-listed corals in the action area.

Shortnose sturgeon (Acipenser brevirostrum) – Endangered

Shortnose sturgeon are benthic fish that mainly occupy the deep channel sections of large rivers (SSSRT 2010). The population of shortnose sturgeon that is closest geographically to the lease area and cable corridor is the Connecticut River population. Shortnose sturgeon do not occur in the lease area or along the cable corridor. Within the Gulf of Maine, some portion of the shortnose sturgeon population natal to the Kennebec River make nearshore coastal migrations north to at least the Penobscot River and south to the Merrimack River. Despite intense study of shortnose sturgeon in New England, there is only one recorded occurrence of a shortnose sturgeon making a coastal migration outside of the Gulf of Maine. In fall 2014, a shortnose sturgeon was caught in the Merrimack River (MA) carrying a tag that was implanted in the Connecticut River in 2001 (pers. comm. Kieffer and Savoy 2014). The genetic differentiation between the Connecticut and Merrimack River sturgeon populations is a reflection of the rarity of these types of movements. Based on the available information on coastal movements of shortnose sturgeon in the Gulf of Maine, it is assumed that the sturgeon that transited from the Connecticut to the Merrimack River would have stayed in near shore waters that would not overlap with the lease area or the cable corridor. Thus, even if these movements are more frequent than anticipated, we do not expect shortnose sturgeon to occur in the lease area or along the cable corridor.

The only portion of the action area that overlaps with the distribution of shortnose sturgeon is the portion of the Delaware River that may be transited by project vessels going to or from the

Paulsboro Marine Terminal in Paulsboro, NJ (approximately river kilometer 139) and the portion of the Chesapeake Bay that may be transited by project vessels going to or from the Port of Baltimore, Sparrows Point, or Norfolk. As noted in the BA, this is limited to four vessel trips between these ports and the project site.

Vessels traveling to Paulsboro will transit through Delaware Bay and a portion of the Delaware River. It is also possible that vessels transiting to Baltimore, Sparrows Point, or Norfolk could also transit through Delaware Bay to the C&D canal. From the canal, these vessels would transit through the upper Chesapeake Bay to the Sparrows Point facility, located near the mouth of the Patapsco River, or go on to the Port of Baltimore, which is also along the Patapsco River.

Information on the number of shortnose sturgeon struck and killed by vessels in the Delaware Bay and River is currently limited to reports provided to NMFS through our sturgeon salvage permit[7]. A review of those reports indicates that of the 53 records of salvaged shortnose sturgeon from 2008-2016, 11 were detected in the Delaware River. Of these 11, 6 had injuries consistent with vessel strike. This is considerably less than the number of records of Atlantic sturgeon from the Delaware River with injuries consistent with vessel strike (15 out of 33 over the same period). In 2019-2020, there are only two records of salvaged shortnose sturgeon (both in 2020) and neither of these was from the Delaware River; this compares to the reported salvage of 49 Atlantic sturgeon in 2019 (12 in the Delaware River) and 44 in 2020 (2 in the C&D Canal and 5 in the Delaware River). The available information indicates that more Atlantic sturgeon are struck by vessels in the Delaware River than shortnose sturgeon.

No more than four vessel trips associated with the South Fork project will transit the Delaware River. Several major ports are present along the Delaware River. In 2014, there were 42,398 one-way trips reported for commercial vessels in the Delaware River Federal navigation channel (USACE 2014). In 2020, 2,195 cargo ships visited Delaware River ports[8]. Neither of these numbers includes any recreational or other non-commercial vessels, ferries, tugboats assisting other larger vessels or any Department of Defense vessels (i.e., Navy, USCG, etc.).

If we assume that any increase in vessel traffic in the Delaware River would increase the risk of vessel strike to shortnose sturgeon, then we could also assume that this would result in a corresponding increase in the number of sturgeon struck and killed in the Delaware River. Considering only the number of commercial one way trips in a representative year (42,398), and even assuming that all four vessel transits occurred in a single year, this represents an approximately 0.009% increase in vessel traffic in the Delaware River navigation channel in a given year. The actual percent increase in vessel traffic is likely even less considering that commercial traffic is only a portion of the vessel traffic in the river. DiJohnson (2019) estimates that approximately 400 Atlantic sturgeon have been killed by vessel strikes in the Delaware River from 2005 – 2019, resulting in an average annual mortality of approximately 27 individuals. Even in a worst-case scenario that assumes that an equal number of shortnose sturgeon are killed annually and that all 27 mortalities occur in the portion of the Delaware River that will be transited by the survey vessels, and that any increase in vessel traffic due to the

---

[7] The unpublished data are reports received by NMFS and recorded as part of the sturgeon salvage program authorized under ESA permit 17273; this permit was superseded by permit 21858 in 2018.

[8] https://ajot.com/news/maritime-exchange-reports-2020-ship-arrivals; last accessed March 24, 2021

project results in a proportionate increase in vessel strikes, this increase in vessel traffic would result in a hypothetical additional 0.002 shortnose sturgeon struck and killed in the Delaware River. Given this very small increase in traffic and the similar very small potential increase in risk of strike and a calculated potential increase in the number of strikes that is very close to zero (despite likely being an overestimate) we conclude that any increase in the number of sturgeon struck in this reach because of the increase in traffic resulting from the South Fork project operating in the Delaware River or Delaware Bay is extremely unlikely. Therefore, effects of this increase in traffic are extremely unlikely. In addition, given the very small increase in risk and the calculated increase in strikes is close to zero, the effect of adding the survey vessels to the baseline cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated; therefore, effects are also insignificant.

Chesapeake and Delaware Canal

The 14 mile long C and D canal is a fabricated waterway first excavated in 1824 to improve navigation time between ports in the Chesapeake Bay and the Delaware River; over time, it has been expanded and is currently maintained at a depth of 35 feet and width of 450 feet. We identified a number of estimates of vessel traffic in the C and D canal included 25,000 total vessels annually[9] and a reported 5,853 commercial one-way trips in 2014 (USACE 2014).

Information on sturgeon use of the C and D canal is limited to detection of tagged individuals on telemetry receivers. Welsh *et al.* (2002) captured and tagged 13 shortnose sturgeon in the Chesapeake Bay and 26 in the Delaware River; receivers were deployed in upper Chesapeake Bay, in the C and D Canal and in the Delaware River. Two of the shortnose sturgeon tagged in Chesapeake Bay were detected on receivers within the canal; an additional shortnose sturgeon tagged in the Bay was later detected on receivers in the Delaware River. This third individual was assumed to swim through the canal during a three-week period when the receivers within the canal were not operational. More detailed information on use of the canal is provided in a final ESA Section 6 report prepared by the State of Delaware (Award Number NAI0NMF4720030). As part of a study to document interbasin movements through the canal, an array of five receivers was deployed from April through November in 2011, 2012, and 2013. In all three years, a small number of tagged shortnose sturgeon (0-1 shortnose annually) were documented in the canal. In all cases, the movements were characterized as exploratory behavior lasting from two hours to two weeks.

We have reports of five dead Atlantic sturgeon that were observed within the canal (one in 2013, three in 2016, and one in 2020). Three of these had injuries consistent with vessel strike (2 in 2016, 1 in 2020); the other two were too decomposed to assess injuries or any potential cause of mortality. For purposes of this consultation, we are assuming that the three sturgeon with identifiable injuries were struck and killed within the canal. We have no other information on vessel strikes in the C and D canal; however, even this limited information indicates that there is a risk of vessel strike in the C and D canal. There are no targeted surveys to monitor sturgeon in the canal or to look for dead sturgeon in this area. All reports received were opportunistic reports.

We have considered whether the increase in vessel traffic that will result from the use of the

---

[9] http://www.offshoreblue.com/cruising/cd-canal.php

C&D canal would increase vessel strikes of shortnose sturgeon. Given the high amount of vessel traffic in the waterbody, and even just considering the number of commercial one way trips, an increase of 4 trips would result in an approximately 0.03% increase in vessel traffic (assuming that all 4 trips occurred in the same year). The actual percent increase in vessel traffic is likely even less considering that commercial traffic is only a portion of the vessel traffic in the canal (e.g., if the 25,000 vessel estimate is used the increase in traffic would represent a 0.0002% increase). The highest number of sturgeon mortalities observed in the canal in a single year is the two in 2016. As noted above, in 2016 two dead Atlantic sturgeon were observed in the canal with injuries consistent with vessel strike. If we assume that the increase in vessel traffic will result in a corresponding increase in risk of vessel strike and number of sturgeon struck, and that the risk to shortnose sturgeon is no greater than Atlantic sturgeon we would expect an additional 0.0006 shortnose sturgeon struck in the canal. Given this very small increase in traffic and the similar very small potential increase in risk of strike and a calculated potential increase in the number of strikes that is very close to zero (despite likely being an overestimate), we conclude that any increase in the number of sturgeon struck in the C&D Canal because of the increase in traffic resulting from the South Fork project operating in this area is extremely unlikely. Therefore, effects of this increase in traffic are extremely unlikely. In addition, given the very small increase in risk and the calculated increase in strikes is close to zero, the effect of adding the survey vessels to the baseline cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated; therefore, effects are also insignificant. Similarly, all of the vessels that transit the C and D canal transit through the upper Chesapeake Bay where the vessel would travel to Sparrows Point or the Point of Baltimore. As such, effects in this area are also insignificant.

Vessels traveling to or from the Port of Norfolk would travel from the lower Chesapeake Bay to the Port of Norfolk along the Elizabeth River. Shortnose sturgeon are not known to occur in the lower Chesapeake Bay where vessels would transit to Norfolk and are not known to occur in the Elizabeth River. As such, we do not anticipate any co-occurrence between shortnose sturgeon and project vessels in this portion of the action area. Therefore, we do not anticipate any effects to shortnose sturgeon as a result of project-related vessel traffic in this portion of the action area. As all effects of the project on shortnose sturgeon are extremely unlikely or insignificant, the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect shortnose sturgeon.

Gulf of Maine DPS of Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar) – Endangered

The only remaining populations of Gulf of Maine DPS of Atlantic salmon are in Maine. Smolts migrate from their natal rivers in Maine north to foraging grounds in the Western North Atlantic off Canada and Greenland (Fay et al. 2006). After one or more winters at sea, adults return to their natal river to spawn. Atlantic salmon do not occur in the lease area or along the cable corridor and vessels transiting to the project area from Canada or Europe will be south of the species range; therefore, we do not anticipate any overlap between the action area and the range of the Gulf of Maine DPS of Atlantic salmon. However, even if migrating salmon occurred along the routes of vessels transiting from Europe or Canada, we do not anticipate any effects to Atlantic salmon. There is no evidence of interactions between vessels and Atlantic salmon. Vessel strikes are not identified as a threat in the listing determination (74 FR 29344) or the recent recovery plan (NMFS and USFWS 2019). We have no information to suggest that vessels in the ocean have any effects on migrating Atlantic salmon and we do not expect there would be any due to Atlantic salmon migrating at depths below the draft of project vessels. Therefore, we do not expect any effects to Atlantic salmon even if migrating individuals co-occur with project vessels moving between the project site and ports in Europe or Canada.

4.2. Critical Habitat

Critical Habitat Designated for North Atlantic right whales

On January 27, 2016, NMFS issued a final rule designating critical habitat for North Atlantic right whales (81 FR 4837). Critical habitat includes two areas (Units) located in the Gulf of Maine and Georges Bank Region (Unit 1) and off the coast of North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia and Florida (Unit 2). The action area does not overlap with Unit 1. It is possible that some vessels traveling from ports in the Gulf of Mexico or other South Atlantic ports may transit through Unit 2.

Consideration of Potential Effects to Unit 1

There are no project activities that overlap with Unit 1. Here, we explain our consideration of whether any project activities located outside of Unit 1 may affect Unit 1. As identified in the final rule (81 FR 4837), the physical and biological features essential to the conservation of the North Atlantic right whale that provide foraging area functions in Unit 1 are: The physical oceanographic conditions and structures of the Gulf of Maine and Georges Bank region that combine to distribute and aggregate *C. finmarchicus* for right whale foraging, namely prevailing currents and circulation patterns, bathymetric features (basins, banks, and channels), oceanic fronts, density gradients, and temperature regimes; low flow velocities in Jordan, Wilkinson, and Georges Basins that allow diapausing *C. finmarchicus* to aggregate passively below the convective layer so that the copepods are retained in the basins; late stage *C. finmarchicus* in dense aggregations in the Gulf of Maine and Georges Bank region; and diapausing *C. finmarchicus* in aggregations in the Gulf of Maine and Georges Bank region.

We have considered whether the proposed action would have any effects to right whale critical habitat. Copepods in critical habitat originate from Jordan, Wilkinson, and George’s Basin. The effects of the proposed action, including those of vessels going to/from Canada, do not extend to these areas, and we do not expect any effects to the generation of copepods in these areas that could be attributable to the proposed action. The proposed action will also not affect any of the physical or oceanographic conditions that serve to aggregate copepods in critical habitat. Offshore wind farms can reduce wind speed and wind stress which can lead to less mixing, lower current speeds, and higher surface water temperature (Afsharian et al. 2019), cause wakes that will result in detectable changes in vertical motion and/or structure in the water column (e.g. Christiansen & Hasager 2005, Broström 2008), as well as detectable wakes downstream from a wind farm by increased turbidity (Vanhellemont and Ruddick, 2014). However, these effects will not extend more than a few hundred meters from each foundation. The South Fork project is a significant distance from right whale critical habitat and, thus, it is not anticipated to affect the oceanographic features of critical habitat. Further, the South Fork project is not anticipated to cause changes to the physical or biological features of critical habitat by worsening climate change, given the energy generated by the project is anticipated to displace electricity generated by existing fossil-fuel fired plants (Jacobs 2021). As described in the DEIS, the South Fork project could contribute to a long-term net decrease in greenhouse gas emissions which would be expected to help reduce climate change impacts (BOEM 2021). Therefore, we have determined that the proposed action will have no effect on Unit 1 of right whale critical habitat.

Consideration of Potential Effects to Unit 2

As identified in the final rule (81 FR 4837), the physical and biological features essential to the conservation of the North Atlantic right whale, which provide calving area functions in Unit 2, are: (i) Sea surface conditions associated with Force 4 or less on the Beaufort Scale; (ii) Sea surface temperatures of 7 °C to 17 °C; and, (iii) Water depths of 6 to 28 meters, where these features simultaneously co-occur over contiguous areas of at least 231 nmi^2 of ocean waters during the months of November through April. When these features are available, they are selected by right whale cows and calves in dynamic combinations that are suitable for calving, nursing, and rearing, and which vary, within the ranges specified, depending on factors such as weather and age of the calves.

Vessel transits will have no effect on the features of Unit 2; this is because vessel operations do not affect sea surface state, water temperature, or water depth. Therefore, we have determined that the proposed action will have no effect on Unit 2 of right whale critical habitat.

Critical Habitat Designated for the New York Bight and Chesapeake Bay DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon

Critical habitat has been designated for all five DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon (82 FR 39160; effective date September 18, 2017). The action area overlaps with a portion of the Delaware River critical habitat unit designated for the New York Bight DPS. The only project activity that may affect this critical habitat is the transit of project vessels to or from the Paulsboro Marine Terminal in Paulsboro, NJ (approximately river kilometer 139).

The critical habitat designation for the New York Bight DPS is for habitats that support successful Atlantic sturgeon reproduction and recruitment. The Delaware River critical habitat unit extends from the Trenton-Morrisville Route 1 Toll Bridge at approximately RKM 213.5 (RM 132.5), downstream to where the main stem river discharges into Delaware Bay at approximately RKM 78 (RM 48.5). In order to determine if the proposed action may affect critical habitat, we consider whether it would impact the habitat in a way that would affect its ability to support reproduction and recruitment. Specifically, we consider the effects of the action on the physical features of the critical habitat. The essential features identified in the final rule are:

> (1) Hard bottom substrate (e.g., rock, cobble, gravel, limestone, boulder, etc.) in low salinity waters (i.e., 0.0 to 0.5 parts per thousand (ppt) range) for settlement of fertilized eggs, refuge, growth, and development of early life stages;
>
> (2) Aquatic habitat with a gradual downstream salinity gradient of 0.5 up to as high as 30 ppt and soft substrate (e.g., sand, mud) between the river mouth and spawning sites for juvenile foraging and physiological development;
>
> (3) Water of appropriate depth and absent physical barriers to passage (e.g., locks, dams, thermal plumes, turbidity, sound, reservoirs, gear, etc.) between the river mouth and

> spawning sites necessary to support: (i) Unimpeded movement of adults to and from spawning sites; (ii) Seasonal and physiologically dependent movement of juvenile Atlantic sturgeon to appropriate salinity zones within the river estuary; and, (iii) Staging, resting, or holding of subadults or spawning condition adults. Water depths in main river channels must also be deep enough (e.g., at least 1.2 m) to ensure continuous flow in the main channel at all times when any sturgeon life stage would be in the river.
>
> (4) Water, between the river mouth and spawning sites, especially in the bottom meter of the water column, with the temperature, salinity, and oxygen values that, combined, support: (i) Spawning; (ii) Annual and interannual adult, subadult, larval, and juvenile survival; and, (iii) Larval, juvenile, and subadult growth, development, and recruitment (e.g., 13°C to 26 °C for spawning habitat and no more than 30°C for juvenile rearing habitat, and 6 milligrams per liter (mg/L) dissolved oxygen (DO) or greater for juvenile rearing habitat).

Feature One: Hard bottom substrate (e.g., rock, cobble, gravel, limestone, boulder, etc.) in low salinity waters (i.e., 0.0–0.5 ppt range) for settlement of fertilized eggs, refuge, growth, and development of early life stages

The Delaware River Basin Commission (DRBC) identifies RKM 107.8 as the lower part of the median range for the salt front (defined as 0.25 ppt); the historic salt front location is reported as approximately RKM 92.3 (Delaware River Basin Commission 2017). The longitudinal salinity gradient is dynamic and subject to short and long-term changes caused by variations in freshwater inflows, tides, storm surge, weather (wind) conditions, etc. These variations can cause a specific salinity value or range to move upstream or downstream by as much as 10 miles (~16 RKM) in a day due to semi-diurnal tides, and by more than 20 miles (~32 RKM) over periods ranging from a day to weeks or months due to storm and seasonal effects on freshwater inflows (USACE 2009c). Given the dynamic nature of salinity near the salt front, the availability of data on salinity levels of 0.25 ppt and not 0.5 ppt and the very small area where there would be a difference in salinity between 0.25 and 0.5 ppt, we use the furthest downstream extent of the median range of the location of the salt front (0.25 ppt) as a proxy for the downstream border of PBF 1 in the Delaware River. Therefore, we consider the area upstream of RKM 107.8 to have salinity levels consistent with the requirements of PBF 1. As the upper limit of the action area in the Delaware River is more than 30 km downstream, PBF 1 does not occur in the action area. Therefore, the activities considered here will have no effect on PBF 1.

Feature Two: Aquatic habitat with a gradual downstream salinity gradient of 0.5 up to as high as 30 ppt and soft substrate (e.g., sand, mud) between the river mouth and spawning sites for juvenile foraging and physiological development

In considering effects to PBF 2, we consider whether the proposed action will have any effect on areas of soft substrate within transitional salinity zones between the river mouth and spawning sites for juvenile foraging and physiological development; therefore, we consider effects of the action on soft substrate and salinity and any change in the value of this feature in the action area.

In the Delaware River, aquatic habitat with a gradual downstream salinity gradient of 0.5 up to as high as 30 ppt and soft substrate (e.g., sand, mud) between the river mouth and spawning sites to support juvenile foraging and physiological development (i.e., PBF 2) occurs from approximately RKM 77 (RM48; where the final rule describes the mouth of the river) to approximately RKM 107, or the downstream median range of the salt front. As described above, salinity levels in the river are dynamic, and the salt front is defined by a lower concentration (0.25 ppt) than the lower level of PBF 2 (0.5 ppt), but RKM 107 is a reasonable approximation given the lack of real time data. Soft substrates are the dominant bottom feature in this portion of the Delaware River (DENRC 2015). Vessels transiting to or from the South Fork project site to the Paulsboro Marine Terminal will travel through the portion of the Delaware River critical habitat unit containing PBF 2.

Project vessels will have no effect on this feature as they will not have any effect on salinity, and they will not interact with the river bottom in this reach of the river. Therefore, there would be no impact to soft substrate.

Feature Three: Water absent physical barriers to passage between the river mouth and spawning sites

In considering effects to PBF 3, we consider whether the proposed action will have any effect on water of appropriate depth and absent physical barriers to passage (e.g., locks, dams, thermal plumes, turbidity, sound, reservoirs, gear, etc.) between the river mouth and spawning sites necessary to support: unimpeded movements of adults to and from spawning sites; seasonal and physiologically dependent movement of juvenile Atlantic sturgeon to appropriate salinity zones within the river estuary, and; staging, resting, or holding of subadults or spawning condition adults. We also consider whether the proposed action will affect water depth or water flow, given water that is too shallow can be a barrier to sturgeon movements, and an alteration in water flow could similarly impact the movements of sturgeon in the river, particularly early life stages that are dependent on downstream drift. Therefore, we consider effects of the action on water depth and water flow and whether the action results in barriers to passage that impede the movements of Atlantic sturgeon.

Water of appropriate depth and absent physical barriers to passage between the river mouth and spawning sites necessary to support: (i) Unimpeded movement of adults to and from spawning sites; (ii) Seasonal and physiologically dependent movement of juvenile Atlantic sturgeon to appropriate salinity zones within the river estuary; and, (iii) Staging, resting, or holding of subadults or spawning condition adults, is present throughout the extent of critical habitat designated in the Delaware River. Water depths in the main river channels is also deep enough (*e.g.,* at least 1.2 m) to ensure continuous flow in the main channel at all times when any sturgeon life stage would be in the river.

Vessels transiting to or from the South Fork project site to the Paulsboro Marine Terminal will travel through the portion of the Delaware River critical habitat unit containing PBF 3. Project vessels will have no effect on this feature as they will not have any effect on water depth or water flow and will not be physical barriers to passage for any life stage of Atlantic sturgeon that may occur in this portion of the action area. Therefore, there will be no effect on PBF 3.

Feature Four: Water with the temperature, salinity, and oxygen values that, combined, provide for dissolved oxygen values that support successful reproduction and recruitment and are within the temperature range that supports the habitat function

In considering effects to PBF 4, we consider whether the proposed action will have any effect on water, between the river mouth and spawning sites, especially in the bottom meter of the water column, with the temperature, salinity, and oxygen values that, combined, support: spawning; annual and interannual adult, subadult, larval, and juvenile survival; and larval, juvenile, and subadult growth, development, and recruitment. Therefore, we consider effects of the action on temperature, salinity and dissolved oxygen needs for Atlantic sturgeon spawning and recruitment. These water quality conditions are interactive and both temperature and salinity influence the dissolved oxygen saturation for a particular area. We also consider whether the action will have effects to access to this feature, temporarily or permanently and consider the effect of the action on the action area's ability to develop the feature over time.

Vessels transiting to or from the South Fork project site to the Paulsboro Marine Terminal will travel through the portion of the Delaware River critical habitat unit containing PBF 4. Project vessels will have no effect on this feature as they will not have any effect on temperature, salinity or dissolved oxygen.

Summary of Effects to Critical Habitat

We have determined that the proposed action will have no effect on PBFs 1, 2, 3 and 4. Based on this conclusion and its supporting rationale, the action will have no effect on critical habitat designated for the New York Bight DPS and Chesapeake Bay DPS of Atlantic sturgeon.

Critical Habitat for the Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS of Loggerhead Sea Turtles

Critical habitat for the Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS of loggerhead sea turtles was designated in 2014 (79 FR 39855). Specific areas for designation include 38 occupied marine areas within the range of the Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS. These areas contain one or a combination of habitat types: Nearshore reproductive habitat, winter area, breeding areas, constricted migratory corridors, and/or *Sargassum* habitat. There is no critical habitat designated in the lease area. The only project activities that may overlap with Northwest Atlantic loggerhead DPS critical habitat are vessels transiting to or from the project site from ports outside the Northeast U.S. As explained below, the proposed action will have no effect on this critical habitat.

Nearshore Reproductive

The PBF of nearshore reproductive habitat is described as a portion of the nearshore waters adjacent to nesting beaches that are used by hatchlings to egress to the open-water environment as well as by nesting females to transit between beach and open water during the nesting season.

Primary Constituent Elements (PCEs) that support this habitat are the following: (1) Nearshore waters directly off the highest density nesting beaches and their adjacent beaches as identified in 50 CFR 17.95(c) to 1.6 km (1 mile) offshore; (2) Waters sufficiently free of obstructions or artificial lighting to allow transit through the surf zone and outward toward open water; and, (3) Waters with minimal manmade structures that could promote predators (i.e., nearshore predator concentration caused by submerged and emergent offshore structures), disrupt wave patterns necessary for orientation, and/or create excessive longshore currents.

The occasional project vessel transits that may occur within the designated nearshore reproductive habitat will have no effect on nearshore reproductive habitat for the following reasons: waters would remain free of obstructions or artificial lighting that would affect the transit of turtles through the surf zone and outward toward open water; and, vessel transits would not promote predators or disrupt wave patterns necessary for orientation or create excessive longshore currents.

Winter

The PBF of winter habitat is described as warm water habitat south of Cape Hatteras, North Carolina near the western edge of the Gulf Stream used by a high concentration of juveniles and adults during the winter months. PCEs that support this habitat are the following: (1) Water temperatures above 10° C from November through April; (2) Continental shelf waters in proximity to the western boundary of the Gulf Stream; and, (3) Water depths between 20 and 100 m.

The occasional project vessel transits that may occur within the designated winter habitat will have no effect on this habitat because they will not: affect or change water temperatures above 10° C from November through April; affect habitat in continental shelf waters in proximity to the western boundary of the Gulf Stream; or, affect or change water depths between 20 and 100 m.

Breeding

The PBFs of concentrated breeding habitat are sites with high densities of both male and female adult individuals during the breeding season. PCEs that support this habitat are the following: (1) High densities of reproductive male and female loggerheads; (2) Proximity to primary Florida migratory corridor; and, (3) Proximity to Florida nesting grounds.

The occasional project vessel transits that may occur within the designated breeding habitat will have no effect on this habitat because they will not: affect the density of reproductive male or female loggerheads or result in any alterations of habitat in proximity to the primary Florida migratory corridor or Florida nesting grounds.

Constricted Migratory Corridors

The PBF of constricted migratory habitat is high use migratory corridors that are constricted (limited in width) by land on one side and the edge of the continental shelf and Gulf Stream on the other side. PCEs that support this habitat are the following: (1) Constricted continental shelf area relative to nearby continental shelf waters that concentrate migratory pathways; and, (2) Passage conditions to allow for migration to and from nesting, breeding, and/or foraging areas.

The occasional project vessel transits that may occur within the designated winter habitat will have no effect on this habitat because they will not result in any alterations of habitat in the constricted continental shelf area and will not affect passage conditions in this area.

Sargassum

The PBF of loggerhead *Sargassum* habitat is developmental and foraging habitat for young loggerheads where surface waters form accumulations of floating material, especially Sargassum. PCEs that support this habitat are the following: (i) Convergence zones, surface-water downwelling areas, the margins of major boundary currents (Gulf Stream), and other locations where there are concentrated components of the Sargassum community in water temperatures suitable for the optimal growth of Sargassum and inhabitance of loggerheads; (ii)

Sargassum in concentrations that support adequate prey abundance and cover; (iii) Available prey and other material associated with Sargassum habitat including, but not limited to, plants and cyanobacteria and animals native to the Sargassum community such as hydroids and copepods; and, (iv) Sufficient water depth and proximity to available currents to ensure offshore transport (out of the surf zone), and foraging and cover requirements by Sargassum for post-hatchling loggerheads, i.e., >10 m depth.

The occasional project vessel transits that may occur within the designated *Sargassum* habitat will have no effect on: conditions that result in convergence zones, surface-water downwelling areas, the margins of major boundary currents (Gulf Stream), and other locations where there are concentrated components of the Sargassum community in water temperatures suitable for the optimal growth of Sargassum and inhabitance of loggerheads; the concentration of Sargassum; the availability of prey within Sargassum; or the depth of water in any area.

Summary of Effects to Critical Habitat
We have determined that the proposed action will have no effect on any of the habitat features of the critical habitat designated for the Northwest Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles.

5.0 STATUS OF THE SPECIES

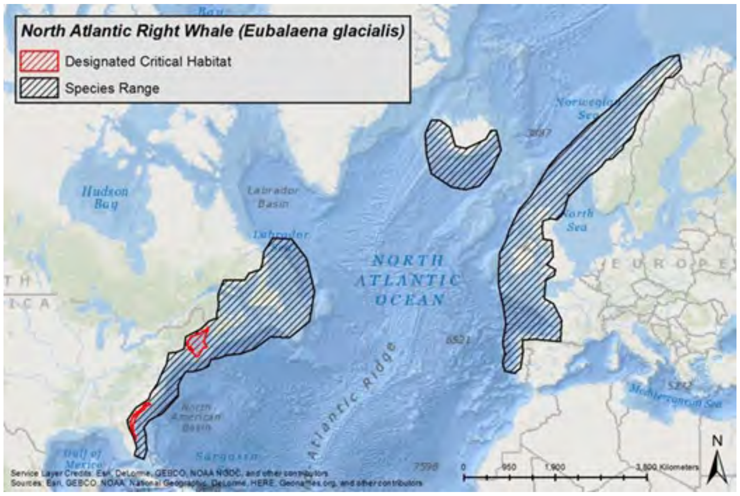
5.1 Marine Mammals

5.1.1 North Atlantic Right Whale (Eubalaena glacialis)

There are three species classified as right whales (genus *Eubalaena*): North Pacific (*E. japonica*), Southern (*E. australis*), and North Atlantic (*E. glacialis*). The North Atlantic right whale is the only species of right whale that occurs in the North Atlantic Ocean (Figure 5.1.1) and, therefore, is the only species of right whale that may occur in the action area.

North Atlantic right whales occur primarily in the western North Atlantic Ocean. However, there have been acoustic detections, reports, and/or sightings of North Atlantic right whales in waters off Greenland (east/southeast), Newfoundland, northern Norway, and Iceland, as well as within Labrador Basin (Hamilton et al. 1998, Jacobsen et al. 2004, Knowlton et al. 1992, Mellinger et al. 2011). These latter sightings/detections are consistent with historic records documenting North Atlantic right whales south of Greenland, in the Denmark straits, and in eastern North Atlantic waters (Kraus et al. 2007). There is also evidence of possible historic North Atlantic right whale calving grounds in the Mediterranean Sea (Rodrigues et al. 2018), an area not currently considered as part of this species' historical range.

Figure 1. Approximate historic range and currently designated U.S. critical habitat of the North Atlantic right whale



The North Atlantic right whale is distinguished by its stocky body and lack of a dorsal fin. The species was listed as endangered on December 2, 1970. We used information available in the most recent five-year review for North Atlantic right whales (NMFS 2017), the most recent stock assessment reports (Hayes et al. 2021), and the scientific literature to summarize the status of the species, as follows.

Life History

The maximum lifespan of North Atlantic right whales is unknown, but one individual reached at least 70 years of age (Hamilton et al. 1998, Kenney 2009). Previous modelling efforts suggest that in 1980, females had a life expectancy of approximately 51.8 years of age, which was twice that of males at the time (Fujiwara and Caswell 2001); however, by 1995, female life expectancy was estimated to have declined to approximately 14.5 years (Fujiwara and Caswell 2001). Most recent estimates indicate that North Atlantic right whale females are only living to 45 and males to age 65 (https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/species/north-atlantic-right-whale). Females, ages 5+, have reduced survival relative to males, ages 5+, resulting in a decrease in female abundance relative to male abundance (Pace et al. 2017). Specifically, state-space mark-recapture model estimates show that from 2010-2015, males declined just under 4.0% and females declined approximately 7% (Pace et al. 2017).

Gestation is estimated to be between 12 and 14 months, after which calves typically nurse for around one year (Cole et al. 2013, Kenney 2009, Kraus and Hatch 2001, Lockyer 1984). After weaning calves, females typically undergo a ‘resting’ period before becoming pregnant again, presumably because they need time to recover from the energy deficit experienced during lactation (Fortune et al. 2013, Fortune et al. 2012, Pettis et al. 2017). From 1983 to 2005, annual average calving intervals ranged from 3 to 5.8 years (overall average of 4.23 years) (Kraus et al. 2007). Between 2006 and 2015, annual average calving intervals continued to vary within this range, but in 2016 and 2017 longer calving intervals were reported (6.3 to 6.6 years in 2016 and 10.2 years in 2017) (Hayes et al. 2018a, Pettis and Hamilton 2015, Pettis and Hamilton 2016, Pettis et al. 2018a, Pettis et al. 2018b, Pettis et al. 2020). Annual average calving interval was 7 in 2019 and 7.6 in 2020 (Pettis et al. 2020, 2021). The calving index is the annual percentage of reproductive females assumed alive and available to calve that was observed to produce a calf. This index averaged 47% from 2003 to 2010 but has dropped to an average of 17% since 2010 (Moore et al. 2021). Females have been known to give birth as young as five years old, but the mean age of a female first giving birth is 10.2 years old (n=76, range 5 to 23, SD 3.3) (Moore et al. 2021). Taken together, changes to inter-birth interval and age to first reproduction suggest that both parous (having given birth) and nulliparous (not having given birth) females are experiencing delays in calving. These calving delays correspond with the recent distribution shifts. The low reproductive rate of right whales is likely the result of several factors (Moore et al. 2021).

Pregnant North Atlantic right whales migrate south, through the mid-Atlantic region of the U.S., to low latitudes during late fall where they overwinter and give birth in shallow, coastal waters (Kenney 2009, Krzystan et al. 2018). During spring, these females and new calves migrate to high latitude foraging grounds where they feed on large concentrations of copepods, primarily *C. finmarchicus* (Mayo et al. 2018, NMFS 2017). Some non-reproductive North Atlantic right whales (males, juveniles, non-reproducing females) also migrate south, although at more variable times throughout the winter. Others appear to not migrate south and remain in the northern feeding grounds year round or go elsewhere (Bort et al. 2015, Mayo et al. 2018, Morano et al. 2012, NMFS 2017, Stone et al. 2017). Nonetheless, calving females arrive to the southern calving grounds earlier and stay in the area more than twice as long as other demographics (Krzystan et al. 2018). Little is known about North Atlantic right whale habitat use in the mid-Atlantic, but recent acoustic data indicate near year round presence of at least some whales off the coasts of New Jersey, Virginia, and North Carolina (Davis et al. 2017, Hodge et al. 2015, Salisbury et al. 2016, Whitt et al. 2013). While it is generally not known where North Atlantic right whales mate, some evidence suggests that mating may occur in the northern feeding grounds (Cole et al. 2013, Matthews et al. 2014).

Population Dynamics

Today, North Atlantic right whales are primarily found in the western North Atlantic, from their calving grounds in lower latitudes off the coast of the southeastern United States to their feeding grounds in higher latitudes off the coast of New England and Nova Scotia (Hayes et al. 2018a). In recent years, the location of feeding grounds has shifted, with fewer animals being seen in the Great South Channel and the Bay of Fundy and more animals being observed in Cape Cod Bay, the Gulf of Saint Lawrence, the mid-Atlantic, and south of Nantucket, Massachusetts (Daoust et al. 2018, Davis et al. 2017, Hayes et al. 2018a, Hayes et al. 2019, Meyer-Gutbrod et al. 2018, Moore et al. 2021, Pace et al. 2017).

There are two recognized populations of North Atlantic right whales, an eastern, and a western population. Very few individuals likely make up the population in the eastern Atlantic, which is thought to be functionally extinct (Best et al. 2001). However, in recent years, a few known individuals from the western population have been seen in the eastern Atlantic, suggesting some individuals may have wider ranges than previously thought (Kenney 2009). Specifically, there have been acoustic detections, reports, and/or sightings of North Atlantic right whales in waters off Greenland (east/southeast), Newfoundland, northern Norway, and Iceland, as well as within Labrador Basin (Jacobsen et al. 2004, Knowlton et al. 1992, Mellinger et al. 2011). It is estimated that the North Atlantic historically (i.e., pre-whaling) supported between 9,000 and 21,000 right whales (Monsarrat et al. 2016). The western population may have numbered fewer than 100 individuals by 1935, when international protection for right whales came into effect (Kenney et al. 1995).

Genetic analysis, based upon mitochondrial and nuclear DNA analyses, have consistently revealed an extremely low level of genetic diversity in the North Atlantic right whale population (Hayes et al. 2018a, Malik et al. 2000, McLeod and White 2010, Schaeff et al. 1997). Waldick et al. (2002) concluded that the principal loss of genetic diversity occurred prior to the 18th century, with more recent studies hypothesizing that the loss of genetic diversity may have occurred prior to the onset of Basque whaling during the 16th and 17th century (Mcleod et al. 2008, Rastogi et al. 2004, Reeves et al. 2007, Waldick et al. 2002). The persistence of low genetic diversity in the North Atlantic right whale population might indicate inbreeding; however, based on available data, no definitive conclusions can be reached at this time (Hayes et al. 2019, Radvan 2019, Schaeff et al. 1997). By combining 25 years of field data (1980-2005) with high-resolution genetic data, Frasier et al. (2013) found that North Atlantic right whale calves born between 1980 and 2005 had higher levels of microsatellite (nuclear) heterozygosity than would be expected from this species' gene pool. The authors concluded that this level of heterozygosity is due to postcopulatory selection of genetically dissimilar gametes and that this mechanism is a natural means to mitigate the loss of genetic diversity, over time, in small populations (Frasier et al. 2013).

In the western North Atlantic, North Atlantic right whale abundance was estimated to be 270 animals in 1990 (Pace et al. 2017). Between 1990 to 2011, right whale abundance increased by approximately 2.8% per year, despite a decline in 1993 and no growth between 1997 and 2000 (Pace et al. 2017). However, since 2011, when the abundance peaked at 481 animals, the population has been in decline, with a 99.99% probability of a decline of just under 1% per year (Pace et al. 2017). Between 1990 and 2015, survival rates appeared relatively stable, but differed between the sexes, with males having higher survivorship than females (males: 0.985 ± 0.0038; females: 0.968 ± 0.0073) leading to a male-biased sex ratio (approximately 1.46 males per female) (Pace et al. 2017). Using the methods in Pace et al. (2017), as of January 2017, the median estimate of right whale abundance was 428 animals (95% credible intervals (CI) 406-447) and the minimum population estimate (N_{min}) was 418 animals; this estimate did not account for the 17 confirmed mortalities observed in June 2017 (12 in Canada; 5 in the United States) that triggered the designation of a Unusual Mortality Event (UME) for North Atlantic right whales (Hayes 2019). In 2018, there were three confirmed dead stranded right whales found in the United States, and, in 2019, 10 confirmed dead stranded right whales (nine discovered in Canada and one in the United States). In 2020, there were two confirmed dead stranded right whales found in the U.S. (none in Canada); through September 2021, there were also two confirmed dead right whales and three confirmed serious injuries in the U.S. (none in Canada). See https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-life-distress/2017-2021-north-atlantic-right-whale-unusual-mortality-event for more information on the UME.

Each year, NMFS estimates the right whale population abundance and shares that estimate at the North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium's annual meeting. This estimate is considered preliminary and undergoes further review before being finalized in the North Atlantic Right

Whale Stock Assessment Report. The best estimate of the right whale population in 2019 is 368 whales (± 11) with a strong male bias (approximately 60 percent male) (Pace et al. 2017, Pace 2021). This is based on modifications to the population model, described in Pace et al. (2021) which recognized that mortality of right whales since the regime shift in 2010 and during the Unusual Mortality Event that began in 2017 was higher than originally anticipated. Prior estimates considered the annual survival rate to be flat across the history of the time series. However, since 2010, annual survival rates have dropped. Therefore, the survival mechanism parameter in the model was adjusted to allow for different rates for different years. Using the original model, the population estimate is 371 (359-381) (Pace 2021). For the purposes of this Biological Opinion, we are using the estimate of 368 individuals.[10] Updated photo-identification data support that the annual mortality rate changed significantly, and the new information reports a faster rate of decline than previously estimated. In these new analyses, the previous estimate of right whales alive as of January 2018 was revised down from 412 to 383. Additionally, the estimated right whale abundance for 2017 was likely lower than the estimated abundance of 428 individuals provided in the 2019 Stock Assessment Report (Hayes 2020).

In addition to finding an overall decline in the North Atlantic right whale population, Pace et al. (2017) also found that between 1990 and 2015, the survival of age 5+ females relative to 5+ males has been reduced; this has resulted in diverging trajectories for male and female abundance. Specifically, there was an estimated 142 males (95% CI=143-152) and 123 females (95% CI=116-128) in 1990; however, by 2015, model estimates show the species was comprised of 272 males (95% CI=261-282) and 186 females (95% CI=174-195; Pace et al. 2017). Calving rates also varied substantially between 1990 and 2015 (i.e., 0.3% to 9.5%), with low calving rates coinciding with three periods (1993-1995, 1998-2000, and 2012-2015) of decline or no growth (Pace et al. 2017). Using generalized linear models, Corkeron et al. (2018) found that between 1992 and 2016, North Atlantic right whale calf counts increased at a rate of 1.98% per year. Relative to three populations of southern right whales that increased 5.34%, 6.58%, and 7.21% per year, this rate of increase for North Atlantic right whales is substantially less (Corkeron et al. 2018). Using the highest annual estimates of survival recorded over the time series from Pace et al. (2017), and an assumed calving interval of approximately four years, Corkeron et al. (2018) suggests that the North Atlantic right whale population could potentially increase at a rate of at least 4% per year if there was no anthropogenic mortality.[11] This rate is approximately twice that observed, and the analysis indicates that adult female mortality is the main factor influencing this rate (Corkeron et al. 2018).

Status

---

[10] Although we use 368 as the best available scientific information (Pace 2021) for the purposes of this Biological Opinion, we note that this does not change anything in the marine mammal stock assessment process, and the estimate will still undergo review through this process. The most recent stock assessment report available at the time of this Opinion is Hayes et al. 2021, which includes a population estimate based on information available through January 2018.

[11] Based on information in the North Atlantic Right Whale Catalog, the mean calving interval is 4.69 years (P. Hamilton 2018, unpublished, in Corkeron et al. 2018). Corkeron et al. (2018) assumed a 4 year calving interval as the approximate mid-point between the North Atlantic Right Whale Catalog calving interval and observed calving intervals for southern right whales (i.e., 3.16 years for South Africa, 3.42 years for Argentina, 3.31 years for Auckland Islands, and 3.3 years for Australia).

The North Atlantic right whale is listed under the ESA as endangered. With anthropogenic mortality limiting the recovery of North Atlantic right whales (Corkeron et al. 2018), currently, none of the species recovery goals (see below) have been met. With whaling now prohibited, the two major known human causes of mortality are vessel strikes and entanglement in fishing gear (Hayes et al. 2018a). Estimates of total annual anthropogenic mortality (i.e., ship strike and entanglement in fishing gear), as well as the number of undetected anthropogenic mortalities for North Atlantic right whales have been provided by Hayes et al. (2020) and Pace et al. (2017); these estimates show that the total annual North Atlantic right whale mortality exceed or equal the number of detected serious injuries and mortalities.[12] These anthropogenic threats appear to be worsening (Hayes et al. 2018a), as evidenced by the North Atlantic right whale UME declared by NMFS on June 7, 2017, as a result of elevated right whale mortalities along the Western North Atlantic Coast. As of April 2021, the confirmed mortalities for the UME are 34 dead stranded right whales (21 found in Canada; 13 in the United States) (for more information on UMEs, see https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-mammal-protection/marine-mammal-unusual-mortality-events). Examinations by necropsy or photo documentation have been conducted on 23 of the 34 whales. Final results from some examinations are pending; however, preliminary findings indicate vessel strikes or rope entanglements as the cause of death. Additionally, since 2017, 15 live-free swimming non-stranded whales have been documented with serious injuries from entanglements (13) or vessel strikes (2). Therefore, the UME has been updated to 49 to include individuals to include both confirmed mortalities and seriously injured free-swimming whales.

The North Atlantic right whale population continues to decline. As provided above, between 1990 to 2011, right whale abundance increased by approximately 2.8% per year; however, since 2011 the population has been in decline (Pace et al. 2017). Recent modeling efforts indicate that low female survival, a male biased sex ratio, and low calving success are contributing to the population's current decline (Pace et al. 2017). For instance, five new calves were documented in 2017 calving season, zero in 2018, and seven in 2019 (Pettis et al. 2018a, Pettis et al. 2018b, Pettis et al. 2020), these numbers of births are well below the number needed to compensate for expected mortalities. More recently, there were 10 calves in the 2020 calving season and 17 calves in 2021, as of March 29. Two of the 2020 calves and one of the 2021 calves died or were seriously injured due to vessel strikes. Two additional calves were reported in the 2021 season, but were not seen as a mother/calf pair. One animal stranded dead with no evidence of human interaction and initial results suggest the calf died during birth or shortly thereafter. The second animal was an anecdotal report of a calf off the Canary Islands.

Long-term photographic identification data also indicate new calves rarely go undetected, so these years likely represent a continuation of low calving rates that began in 2012 (Kraus et al. 2007, Pace et al. 2017). While there are likely a multitude of factors involved, low calving has been linked to poor female health (Rolland et al. 2016) and reduced prey availability (Devine et al. 2017, Johnson et al. 2017, Meyer-Gutbrod and Green 2014, Meyer-Gutbrod and Greene 2018, Meyer-Gutbrod et al. 2018). A recent study comparing North Atlantic right whales to other right whale species found that juvenile, adult and lactating female North Atlantic right whales all had lower body condition scores compared to the southern right whale populations, with lactating females showing the largest difference (Christiansen et al. 2020). North Atlantic right whale

---

[12] Currently, 72% of mortalities since 2000 are estimated to have been observed (Hayes et al. 2020).

calves were in good condition. While some of the difference could be the result of genetic isolation and adaptations to local environmental conditions, the authors suggest that the magnitude indicates that North Atlantic right are in poor condition, which could be suppressing their growth, survival, age of sexual maturation and calving rates. In addition, they conclude that the observed differences are most likely a result of differences in the exposure to anthropogenic factors (Christiansen et al. 2020). Furthermore, entanglement in fishing gear appears to have substantial health and energetic costs that affect both survival and reproduction (Hayes et al. 2018a, Hunt et al. 2016, Lysiak et al. 2018, Pettis et al. 2017, Robbins et al. 2015, Rolland et al. 2017, van der Hoop et al. 2017).

Kenney et al. (2018) projected that if all other known or suspected impacts (e.g., vessel strikes, calving declines, climate change, resource limitation, sublethal entanglement effects, disease, predation, and ocean noise) on the population remained the same between 1990 and 2016, and none of the observed fishery related M/SI occurred, the projected population in 2016 would be 12.2% higher (506 individuals). Furthermore, if the actual mortality resulting from fishing gear is double the observed rate (as estimated in Pace et al. 2017), eliminating all mortalities (observed and unobserved) could have resulted in a 2016 population increase of 24.6% (562 individuals) and possibly over 600 in 2018 (Kenney 2018).

Given the above information, North Atlantic right whales resilience to future perturbations is expected to be very low (Hayes et al. 2018a). Using a matrix population projection model, it is estimated that by 2029 the population will decline from 160 females to the 1990 estimate of 123 females if the current rate of decline is not altered (Hayes et al. 2018a). Consistent with this, recent modelling efforts indicate that the species may decline towards extinction if prey conditions worsen and anthropogenic mortalities are not reduced (Meyer-Gutbrod et al. 2018). In fact, recent data from the Gulf of Maine and Gulf of St. Lawrence indicate prey densities may already be in decline (Devine et al. 2017, Johnson et al. 2017, Meyer-Gutbrod et al. 2018).

Factors Outside the Action Area Affecting the Status of the Right Whale: Fishery Interactions and Vessel Strikes in Canadian Waters

In Canada, right whales are protected under the Species at Risk Act (SARA) and the Fisheries Act. The right whale was considered a single species and designated as endangered in 1980. SARA includes provisions against the killing, harming, harassing, capturing, taking, possessing, collecting, buying, selling, or trading of individuals or its parts (SARA section 32) and damage or destruction of its residence (SARA section 33). In 2003, the species was split to allow separate designation of the North Atlantic right whale, which was listed as endangered under SARA in May 2003. All marine mammals are subject to the provisions of the marine mammal regulations under the Fisheries Act. These include requirements related to approach, disturbance, and reporting. In the St. Lawrence estuary and the Saguenay River, the approach distance for threatened or endangered whales is 1312 ft. (400 m).

North Atlantic right whales have died or been seriously injured in Canadian waters by vessel strikes and entanglement in fishing gear (DFO 2014). Serious injury and mortality events are rarely observed where the initial entanglement occurs. After an event, live whales or carcasses may travel hundreds of miles before ever being observed. It is unknown exactly how many serious injuries and mortalities have occurred in Canadian waters historically. However, at least

14 right whale carcasses and 20 injured right whales were sighted in Canadian waters between 1988 and 2014 (Davies and Brillant 2019); 25 right whale carcasses were first sighted in Canadian waters or attributed to Canadian fishing gear from 2015 through 2019. In the sections to follow, information is provided on the fishing and shipping industry in Canadian waters, as well as measures the Canadian government is taking (or will be taking) to reduce the level of serious injuries and mortalities to North Atlantic rights resulting from incidental entanglement in fishing gear or vessel strikes.

Fishery Interactions in Canadian Waters

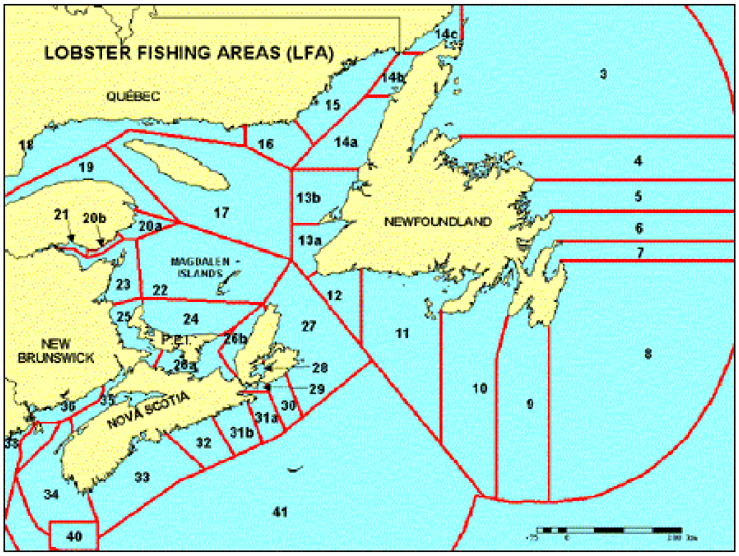
There are numerous fisheries operating in Canadian waters. Rock and toad crab fisheries, as well as fixed gear fisheries for cod, Atlantic halibut, Greenland halibut, winter flounder, and herring have historically had few interactions. While these fisheries deploy gear that pose some risk, this analysis focuses on fisheries that have demonstrated interactions with ESA-listed species (i.e., lobster, snow crab, mackerel, and whelk). Based on information provided by the Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada (DFO), a brief summary of these fisheries is provided below.

The American lobster fishery is DFO's largest fishery, by landings. It is managed under regional management plans with 41 Lobster Fisheries Areas (Figure 5.1.2), in which 10,000 licensed harvesters across Atlantic Canada and Quebec participate.[13] In addition to the one permanent closure in Lobster Fishery Area 40 (Figure 5.1.2), fisheries are generally closed during the summer to protect molts. Lobster fishing is most active in the Gulf of Maine, Bay of Fundy, Southern Gulf of St. Lawrence, and coastal Nova Scotia. Most fisheries take place in shallow waters less than 130 ft. (40 m) deep and within 8 nmi (15 km) of shore, although some fisheries will fish much farther out and in waters up to 660 ft. (200 m) deep. Management measures are tailored to each Area and include limits on the number of licenses issued, limits on the number of traps, limited and staggered fishing seasons, limits on minimum and maximum carapace size (which differs depending on the Area), protection of egg-bearing females (females must be notched and released alive), and ongoing monitoring and enforcement of fishing regulations and license conditions. The Canadian lobster fisheries use trap/pot gear consistent with the gear used in the American lobster fishery in the U.S. While both Canada and the U.S. lobster fisheries employ similar gears, the two nations employ different management strategies that result in divergent prosecution of the fisheries.

Figure 5.1.2. Lobster fishing areas in Atlantic Canada (https://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/fisheries-peches/commercial-commerciale/atl-arc/lobster-homard-eng.html)

---

[13] Of the 41 Lobster Fisheries Areas, one is for the offshore fishery, and one is closed for conservation.



The snow crab fishery is DFO's second largest fishery, by landings. It is managed under regional management plans with approximately 60 Snow Crab Management Areas in Canada spanning four regions (Scotia-Fundy, Southern Gulf of St. Lawrence, Northern Gulf of St. Lawrence, and Newfoundland and Labrador). In 2010, 4,326 snow crab fishery licenses were issued. The DFO website indicated that 3,703 permits were issued in 2017[14]. The management of the snow crab fishery is based on annual total allowable catch, individual quotas, trap and mesh restrictions, minimum legal size, mandatory release of female crabs, minimum mesh size of traps, limited seasons, and areas. Protocols are in place to close grids when a percentage of soft-shell crabs in catches is reached. Harvesters use baited conical traps and pots set on muddy or sand-mud bottoms usually at depths of 230-460 ft. (70-140 m). Annual permit conditions have been used since 2017 to minimize the impacts to North Atlantic right whales, as described below.

DFO manages the Atlantic mackerel fishery under one Atlantic management plan, established in 2007. Management measures include fishing seasons, total allowable catch, gear, Safety at Sea fishing areas, licensing, minimum size, fishing gear restrictions, and monitoring. The plan allows the use of the following gear: gillnet, handline, trap net, seine, and weir. When established, the DFO issued 17,182 licenses across four regions, with over 50% of these licenses using gillnet gear. In 2017, DFO issued 7,965 licenses (http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/stats/commercial/licences-permis/species-especes/se17-eng.htm); no gear information was available. Commercial harvest is timed with the migration of mackerel into and out of Canadian waters. In Nova Scotia, the gillnet and trap fisheries for mackerel take place primarily in June and July. Mackerel generally arrive in southwestern Nova Scotia in May and Cape Breton in June. Migration out of the Gulf of St. Lawrence begins in September, and the fishery can continue into October or early November. They may enter the Gulf of St. Lawrence, depending on temperature conditions. The gillnet fishery in the Gulf of St. Lawrence also occurs in June and July. Most nets are fixed, except for a drift fishery in Chaleurs Bay and the part of the Gulf between New Brunswick, Prince Edward Island, and the Magdalen Islands.

---

[14] (http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/stats/commercial/licences-permis/species-especes/se17-eng.htm)

Conservation harvesting plans are used to manage waved whelk in Canadian waters, which are harvested in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, Quebec, Maritimes, and Newfoundland and Labrador regions. The fishery is managed using quotas, fishing gear requirements, dockside monitoring, traps limits, seasons, tagging, and area requirements. In 2017, there were 240 whelk license holders in Quebec; however, only 81 of them were active. Whelk traps are typically weighted at the bottom with cement or other means and a rope or other mechanism is positioned in the center of the trap to secure the bait. Between 50 and 175 traps are authorized per license. The total number of authorized traps for all licenses in each fishing area varies between 550 and 6,400 traps, while the number of used or active traps is lower, with 200 to 1,700 traps per fishing area. Since 2017, the Government of Canada has implemented measures to protect right whales from entanglement. These measures have included seasonal and dynamic closures for fixed gear fisheries, changes to the fishing season for snow crab, reductions in traps in the mid-shore fishery in Crab Fishing Area 12, and license conditions to reduce the amount of rope in the water. Measures to better track gear, require reporting of gear loss, require reporting of interactions with marine mammals, and increased surveillance for right whales have also been implemented. Measures to reduce interactions with fishing gear are adjusted annually. In 2021, mandatory closures for non-tended fixed gear fisheries, including lobster and crab, will be put in place for 15 days when right whales are sighted. If a whale is detected in days 9-15 of the closure, the closure will be extended. In the Bay of Fundy and the critical habitats in the Roseway and Grand Manan basins, this extension will be for an additional 15 days. If a right whale is detected in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, the closure will be season-long (until November 15, 2021). Outside the dynamic area, closures are considered on a case-by-case basis. There are also gear marking and reporting requirements for all fixed gear fisheries. The Government of Canada will also continue to support industry trials of innovative fishing technologies and methods to prevent and mitigate whale entanglement. This includes authorizing ropeless gear trials in closed areas in 2021. Measures to implement weak rope or weak-breaking points were delayed and will be implemented by the end of 2022. Measures related to maximum rope diameters, sinking rope between traps, and reductions in vertical and floating rope will be implemented after 2022. More information on these measures is available at https://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/fisheries-peches/commercial-commerciale/atl-arc/narw-bnan/management-gestion-eng.html.

In August 2016, NMFS published the MMPA Import Provisions Rule (81 FR 54389, August 15, 2016), which established criteria for evaluating a harvesting nation’s regulatory program for reducing marine mammal bycatch and the procedures for obtaining authorization to import fish and fish products into the United States. Specifically, to continue in the international trade of seafood products with the United States, other nations must demonstrate that their marine mammal mitigation measure for commercial fisheries are, at a minimum, equivalent to those in place in the United States. A five-year exemption period (beginning January 1, 2017) was created in this process to allow foreign harvesting nations time to develop, as appropriate, regulatory programs comparable in effectiveness to U.S. programs at reducing marine mammal bycatch. To comply with its requirements, it is essential that these interactions are reported, documented, and quantified. To guarantee that fish products have access to the U.S. markets, DFO must implement procedures to reliably certify that the level of mortality caused by fisheries does not exceed U.S. standards. DFO must also demonstrate that the regulations in place to reduce accidental death of marine mammals are comparable to those of the United States.

Vessel Strikes in Canadian Waters

Vessel strikes are a threat to right whales throughout their range. In Canadian waters where rights whales are present, vessels include recreational and commercial vessels, small and large vessels, and sail, and power vessels. Vessel categories include oil and gas exploration, fishing and aquaculture, cruise ships, offshore excursions (whale and bird watching), tug/tow, dredge, cargo, and military vessels. At the time of development of the Gulf of St. Lawrence management plan, approximately 6400 commercial vessels transited the Cabot Strait and the Strait of Belle Isle annually. This represents a subset of the vessels in this area as it only includes commercial vessels (DFO 2013). To address vessel strikes in Canadian waters, the International Maritime Organization (IMO) amended the Traffic Separation Scheme in the Bay of Fundy to reroute vessels around high use areas. In 2007, IMO adopted and Canada implemented a voluntary seasonal Area to Be Avoided (ATBA) in Roseway Basin to further reduce the risk of vessel strike (DFO 2020). In addition, Canada has implemented seasonal speed restrictions and developed a proposed action plan to identify specific measures needed to address threats and achieve recovery (DFO 2020).

The Government of Canada has also implemented measures to mitigate vessel strikes in Canadian waters. Each year since August 2017, the Government has implemented seasonal speed restrictions (maximum 10 knots) for vessels 20 meters or longer in the western Gulf of St. Lawrence. In 2019, the area was adjusted and the restriction was expanded to apply to vessels greater than 13 m. Smaller vessels are encouraged to respect the limit. Dynamic area management has also been used in recent years. Currently, there are two shipping lanes, south and north of Anticosti Island, where dynamic speed restrictions (mandatory slowdown to 10 knots) can be activated when right whales are present. In 2020 and 2021, the Government of Canada also implemented a trial voluntary speed restriction zone from Cabot Strait to the eastern edge of the dynamic shipping zone at the beginning and end of the season and a mandatory restricted area in or near Shediac Valley mid-season. More information is available at https://www.tc.gc.ca/en/services/marine/navigation-marine-conditions/protecting-north-atlantic-right-whales-collisions-ships-gulf-st-lawrence.html. Modifications to measures in 2021 include refining the size, location, and duration of the mandatory restricted area in and near Shediac Valley and expanding the speed limit exemption in waters less than 20 fathoms to all commercial fishing vessels.

Critical Habitat

Critical habitat for North Atlantic right whales has been designated as described in section 4.0 of this Opinion.

Recovery Goals

The goal of the 2005 Recovery Plan for the North Atlantic right whale (NMFS, 2005) is to promote the recovery of North Atlantic right whales to a level sufficient to warrant their removal from the List of Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants under the ESA. The intermediate goal is to reclassify the species from endangered to threatened. The recovery strategy identified in the Recovery Plan focuses on reducing or eliminating deaths and injuries from anthropogenic activities, namely shipping and commercial fishing operations; developing demographically-based recovery criteria; the characterization, monitoring, and protection of important habitat; identification and monitoring of the status, trends, distribution and health of the species; conducting studies on the effects of other potential threats and ensuring that they are addressed, and conducting genetic studies to assess population structure and diversity. The plan also recognizes the need to work closely with State, other Federal, international and private entities to ensure that research and recovery efforts are coordinated. The plan includes the following downlisting criteria:

> North Atlantic right whales may be considered for reclassifying to threatened when all of the following have been met: 1) The population ecology (range, distribution, age structure, and gender ratios, etc.) and vital rates (age-specific survival, age-specific reproduction, and lifetime reproductive success) of right whales are indicative of an increasing population; 2) The population has increased for a period of 35 years at an average rate of increase equal to or greater than 2% per year; 3) None of the known threats to North Atlantic right whales (summarized in the five listing factors) are known to limit the population's growth rate; and 4) Given current and projected threats and environmental conditions, the right whale population has no more than a 1% chance of quasi-extinction in 100 years.

The most recent five-year review for right whales was completed in 2017 (NMFS 2017). The recommendation in that plan was for the status to remain as endangered. The plan noted that in many ways, progress toward right whale recovery had regressed since the previous 5-year review was completed in 2012 citing the declining population trend, below average calving rates, and worsened body condition.

5.1.2 Fin Whale (Balaenoptera physalus)

Globally there is one species of fin whale, *Balaenoptera physalus*. Fin whales occur in all major oceans of the Northern and Southern Hemispheres (NMFS 2010a) (Figure 5.1.3). Within this range, three subspecies of fin whales are recognized: *B. p. physalus* in the Northern Hemisphere, and *B. p. quoyi* and *B. p. patachonica* (a pygmy form) in the Southern Hemisphere (NMFS 2010a). For management purposes in the northern Hemisphere, the United States divides, *B. p. physalus,* into four stocks: Hawaii, California/Oregon/Washington, Alaska (Northeast Pacific), and Western North Atlantic (Hayes et al. 2019, NMFS 2010a).

Figure 5.1.3. Range of the fin whale

Fin whales are distinguishable from other whales by a sleek, streamlined body, with a V-shaped head, a tall hooked dorsal fin, and a distinctive color pattern of a black or dark brownish-gray body and sides with a white ventral surface. The lower jaw is gray or black on the left side and creamy white on the right side. The fin whale was listed as endangered on December 2, 1970 (35 FR 18319).

Information available from the recovery plan (NMFS 2010a), recent stock assessment reports (Carretta et al. 2019a, Hayes et al. 2019, Muto et al. 2019a), the five-year status review (NMFS 2019b), as well as the recent International Union for the Conservation of Nature's (IUCN) fin whale assessment (Cooke 2018b) were used to summarize the life history, population dynamics and status of the species as follows.

Life History

Fin whales can live, on average, 80 to 90 years. They have a gestation period of less than one year, and calves nurse for six to seven months. Sexual maturity is reached between 6 and 10 years of age with an average calving interval of two to three years. They mostly inhabit deep, offshore waters of all major oceans. They winter at low latitudes, where they calve and nurse, and summer at high latitudes, where they feed, although some fin whales appear to be residential to certain areas.

Population Dynamics

The pre-exploitation estimate for the fin whale population in the entire North Atlantic was approximately 30,000-50,000 animals (NMFS 2010a), and for the entire North Pacific Ocean, approximately 42,000 to 45,000 animals (Ohsumi and Wada 1974). In the Southern Hemisphere, prior to exploitation, the fin whale population was approximately 40,000 whales (Mizroch et al. 1984b). In the North Atlantic Ocean, fin whales were heavily exploited from 1864 to the 1980s; over this timeframe, approximately 98,000 to 115,000 fin whales were killed (IWC 2017). Between 1910-1975, approximately 76,000 fin whales were recorded taken by modern whaling in the North Pacific; this number is likely higher as many whales killed were not identified to species or while killed, where not successfully landed (Allison 2017). Over 725,000 fin whales were killed in the Southern Hemisphere from 1905 to 1976 (Allison 2017).

In the North Atlantic Ocean, the IWC has defined seven management stocks of fin whales: (1) North Norway (2) East Greenland and West Iceland (EGI); (3) West Norway and the Faroes; (4) British Isles, Spain and Portugal; (5) West Greenland and (6) Nova Scotia, (7) Newfoundland and Labrador (Donovan 1991, NMFS 2010a). Based on three decades of survey data in various portions of the North Atlantic, the IWC estimates that there are approximately 79,000 fin whales in this region. Under the present IWC scheme, fin whales off the eastern United States, Nova Scotia and the southeastern coast of Newfoundland are believed to constitute a single stock; in U.S. waters, NMFS classifies these fin whales as the Western North Atlantic stock (Donovan 1991, Hayes et al. 2019, NMFS 2010a). NMFS' best estimate of abundance for the Western North Atlantic Stock of fin whales is 7,418 individuals (N_{min}=6,029); this estimate is the sum of the 2016 NOAA shipboard and aerial surveys and the 2016 Canadian Northwest Atlantic International Sightings Survey (Hayes 2019). Currently, there is no population estimate for the entire fin whale population in the North Pacific (Cooke 2018b). However, abundance estimates for three stocks in U.S. Pacific Ocean waters do exist: Northeast Pacific (N= 3,168; N_{min}=2,554), Hawaii (N=154; N_{min}=75), and California/Oregon/Washington (N= 9,029; N_{min}=8,127) (Nadeem et al. 2016). Abundance data for the Southern Hemisphere stock remain highly uncertain; however, available information suggests a substantial increase in the population has occurred (Thomas et al. 2016).

In the North Atlantic, estimates of annual growth rate for the entire fin whale population in this region is not available (Cooke 2018b). However, in U.S. Atlantic waters NMFS has determined that until additional data is available, the cetacean maximum theoretical net productivity rate of 4.0% will be used for the Western North Atlantic stock (Hayes et al. 2019). In the North Pacific, estimates of annual growth rate for the entire fin whale population in this region is not available (Cooke 2018b). However, in U.S. Pacific waters, NMFS has determined that until additional data is available, the cetacean maximum theoretical net productivity rate of 4.0% will be used for the Northeast Pacific stock (Muto et al. 2019b, NMFS 2016b). Overall population growth rates and total abundance estimates for the Hawaii stock of fin whales are not available at this time (Carretta et al. 2018). Based on line transect studies between 1991-2014, there was estimated a 7.5% increase in mean annual abundance in fin whales occurring in waters off California, Oregon, and Washington; to date, this represents the best available information on the current population trend for the overall California/Oregon/Washington stock of fin whales (Carretta et al. 2019a, Nadeem et al. 2016).[15] For Southern Hemisphere fin whales, as noted above, overall information suggests a substantial increase in the population; however the rate of increase remains poorly quantified (Cooke 2018b).

Archer et al. (2013) examined the genetic structure and diversity of fin whales globally. Full sequencing of the mitochondrial DNA genome for 154 fin whales sampled in the North Atlantic Ocean, North Pacific Ocean, and Southern Hemisphere, resulted in 136 haplotypes, none of which were shared among ocean basins suggesting differentiation at least at this geographic scale. However, North Atlantic fin whales appear to be more closely related to the Southern Hemisphere population, as compared to fin whales in the North Pacific Ocean, which may

---

[15] Since 2005, the fin whale abundance increase has been driven by increases off northern California, Oregon, and Washington; numbers off Central and Southern California have remained stable (Carretta et al. 2020, Nadeem et al. 2016).

indicate a revision of the subspecies delineations is warranted. Generally, haplotype diversity was found to be high both within and across ocean basins (Archer et al. 2013). Such high genetic diversity and lack of differentiation within ocean basins may indicate that despite some populations having small abundance estimates, the species may persist long-term and be somewhat protected from substantial environmental variance and catastrophes.

Status

The fin whale is endangered because of past commercial whaling. Prior to commercial whaling, hundreds of thousands of fin whales existed. Fin whales may be killed under "aboriginal subsistence whaling" in Greenland, under Japan's scientific whaling program, and Iceland's formal objection to the IWC's ban on commercial whaling. Additional threats include vessel strikes, reduced prey availability due to overfishing or climate change, and sound. The species' overall large population size may provide some resilience to current threats, but trends are largely unknown.

Critical Habitat

No critical habitat has been designated for the fin whale.

Recovery Goals

Recovery is the process of restoring endangered and threatened species to the point where they no longer require the safeguards of the Endangered Species Act. A recovery plan serves as a road map for species recovery—the plan outlines the path and tasks required to restore and secure self-sustaining wild populations. It is a non-regulatory document that describes, justifies, and schedules the research and management actions necessary to support recovery of a species. The goal of the 2010 Recovery Plan for the fin whale (NMFS 2010a) is to promote the recovery of fin whales to the point at which they can be downlisted from endangered to threatened status, and ultimately to remove them from the list of Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants, under the provisions of the ESA. The intermediate goal is to reclassify the species from endangered to threaten. The recovery plan also includes downlisting and delisting criteria. Key elements for the recovery program for fin whales are:

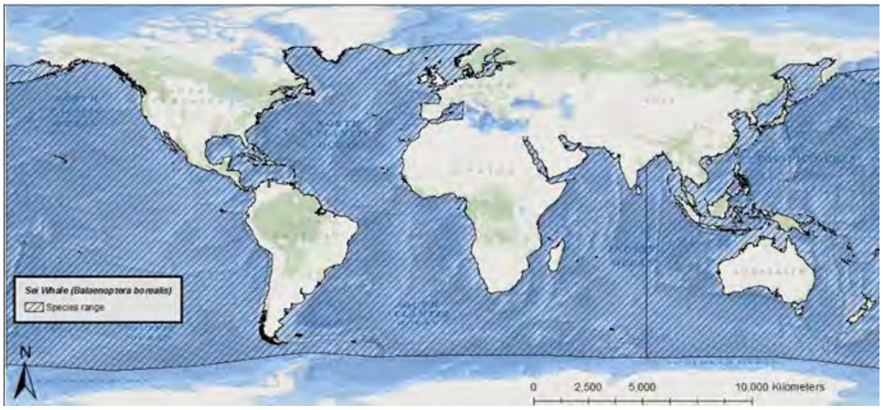
1. Coordinate state, federal, and international actions to implement recovery actions and maintain international regulation of whaling for fin whales;
2. Determine population discreteness and population structure of fin whales;
3. Develop and apply methods to estimate population size and monitor trends in abundance;
4. Conduct risk analysis;
5. Identify, characterize, protect, and monitor habitat important to fin whale populations in U.S. waters and elsewhere;
6. Investigate causes and reduce the frequency and severity of human-caused injury and mortality;
7. Determine and minimize any detrimental effects of anthropogenic noise in the oceans;
8. Maximize efforts to acquire scientific information from dead, stranded, and/or entrapped fin whales; and,
9. Develop post-delisting monitoring plan.

In February 2019, NMFS published a Five-Year Review for fin whales. This 5-year review indicates that, based on a review of the best available scientific and commercial information, that the fin whale should be downlisted from endangered to threatened. The review also recommended that NMFS consider whether listing at the subspecies or distinct population segment level is appropriate in terms of potential conservation benefits and the use of limited agency resources (NMFS 2019).

5.1.3 Sei Whale (Balaenoptera borealis)

Globally there is one species of sei whale, *Balaenoptera borealis borealis*. Sei whales occur in subtropical, temperate, and subpolar marine waters across the Northern and Southern Hemispheres (Figure 5.1.4) (Cooke 2018a, NMFS 2011a). For management purposes, in the Northern Hemisphere, the United States recognizes four sei whale stocks: Hawaii, Eastern North Pacific, and Nova Scotia (NMFS 2011a).

Figure 5.1.4. Range of the sei whale



Sei whales are distinguishable from other whales by a long, sleek body that is dark bluish-gray to black in color and pale underneath, and a single ridge located on their rostrum. The sei whale was listed as endangered on December 2, 1970 (35 FR 18319).

Information available from the recovery plan (NMFS 2011a), recent stock assessment reports (Carretta et al. 2019a, Hayes 2019, Hayes et al. 2017), status review (NMFS 2012), as well as the recent IUCN sei whale assessment (Cooke 2018a) were used to summarize the life history, population dynamics and status of the species as follows.

Life History

Sei whales can live, on average, between 50 and 70 years. They have a gestation period of 10 to 12 months, and calves nurse for six to nine months. Sexual maturity is reached between 6 and 12 years of age with an average calving interval of two to three years. Sei whales mostly inhabit continental shelf and slope waters far from the coastline. They winter at low latitudes, where they calve and nurse, and summer at high latitudes, where they feed on a range of prey types, including: plankton (copepods and krill), small schooling fishes, and cephalopods.

Population Dynamics

There are no estimates of pre-exploitation sei whale abundance in the entire North Atlantic Ocean; however, approximately 17,000 sei whales were documented caught by modern whaling in the North Atlantic (Allison 2017). In the North Pacific, the pre-whaling sei abundance was estimated to be approximately 42,000 (Tillman 2977 as cited in (NMFS 2011a)). In the Southern Hemisphere, approximately 63,100 to 65,000 occurred in the Southern Hemisphere prior to exploitation (Mizroch et al. 1984a, NMFS 2011a).

In the North Atlantic, the entire North Atlantic sei whale population, in 1989, was estimated to be 10,300 whales (Cattanach et al. 1993 as cited in (NMFS 2011a). While other surveys have been completed in portions of the North Atlantic since 1989, the survey coverage levels in these studies are not as complete as those done in Cattanach et al. (1993) (Cooke 2018a). As a result, to date, updated abundance estimates for the entire North Atlantic population of sei whales are not available. However, in the western North Atlantic, Palka et al. (2017) has provided a recent abundance estimate for the Nova Scotia stock of sei whales. Based on survey data collected from Halifax, Nova Scotia, to Florida between 2010 and 2013, it is estimated that there are approximately 6,292 sei whales (N_{min}=3,098) (Palka et al. 2017); this estimate is considered the best available for the Nova Scotia stock (Hayes 2019). In the North Pacific, an abundance estimate for the entire North Pacific population of sei whales is not available. However, in the western North Pacific, it is estimated that there are 35,000 sei whales (Cooke 2018a). In the eastern North Pacific (considered east of longitude 180^o), two stocks of sei whales occur in U.S. waters: Hawaii and Eastern North Pacific. Abundance estimates for the Hawaii stock are 391 sei whales (N_{min}=204), and for Eastern North Pacific stock, 519 sei whales (N_{min}=374) (Carretta et al. 2019a). In the Southern Hemisphere, recent abundance of sei whales is estimated at 9,800 to 12,000 whales. Population growth rates for sei whales are not available at this time as there are little to no systematic survey efforts to study sei whales; however, in U.S. waters, NMFS has determined that until additional data is available, the cetacean maximum theoretical net productivity rate of 4.0% will be used for the Hawaii, Eastern North Pacific, and Hawaii stocks of sei whales (Hayes 2019).

Based on genetic analyses, there appears to be some differentiation between sei whale populations in different ocean basins. In an early analysis of genetic variation in sei whales some differences between Southern Ocean and the North Pacific sei whales were detected (Wada and Numachi 1991). However, more recent analyses of mtDNA control region variation show no significant differentiation between Southern Ocean and the North Pacific sei whales, though both appear to be genetically distinct from sei whales in the North Atlantic (Huijser et al. 2018). Within each ocean basin, there appears to be intermediate to high genetic diversity and little genetic differentiation despite there being different managed stocks (Danielsdottir et al. 1991, Kanda et al. 2011, Kanda et al. 2006, Kanda et al. 2013, Kanda et al. 2015).

Status

The sei whale is endangered because of past commercial whaling. Now, only a few individuals are taken each year by Japan; however, Iceland has expressed an interest in targeting sei whales. Current threats include vessel strikes, fisheries interactions (including entanglement), climate change (habitat loss and reduced prey availability), and anthropogenic sound. Given the species' overall abundance, they may be somewhat resilient to current threats. However, trends are largely unknown, especially for individual stocks, many of which have relatively low abundance estimates.

Critical Habitat
No critical habitat has been designated for the sei whale.

Recovery Goals
The 2011 Recovery Plan for the sei whale (NMFS 2011b) indicates that, "because the current population status of sei whales is unknown, the primary purpose of this Recovery Plan is to provide a research strategy to obtain data necessary to estimate population abundance, trends, and structure and to identify factors that may be limiting sei whale recovery." The goal of the Recovery Plan is to promote the recovery of sei whales to the point at which they can be downlisted from Endangered to Threatened status, and ultimately to remove them from the list of Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants, under the provisions of the ESA. The intermediate goal is to reclassify the species from endangered to threatened. The recovery plan incorporates an adaptive management strategy that divides recovery actions into three tiers. Tier I involves: 1) continued international regulation of whaling (i.e., a moratorium on commercial sei whaling); 2) determining population size, trends, and structure using opportunistic data collection in conjunction with passive acoustic monitoring, if determined to be feasible; and 3) continued stranding response and associated data collection.

NMFS completed the most recent five-year review for sei whales in 2021 (NMFS 2021). In that review, NMFS concluded that the listing status should remain unchanged. They also concluded that recovery criteria outlined in the sei whale recovery plan (NMFS 2011) do not reflect the best available and most up-to date information on the biology of the species. The 5-Year review states that currently, there is insufficient data to undertake an assessment of the sei whale's present status due to a number of uncertainties and unknowns for this species: (1) lack of scientifically reliable population estimates for the North Atlantic and Southern Hemisphere; (2) lack of comprehensive information on status and trends; (3) existence of critical knowledge gaps; and (4) emergence of potential new threats. Thus, further research is needed to fill critical knowledge gaps.

5.1.4 Sperm Whale (Physter macrocephalus)

Globally there is one species of sperm whale, *Physeter macrocephalus*. Sperm whales occur in all major oceans of the Northern and Southern Hemispheres (NMFS 2010b)(Figure 5.1.5). For management purposes, in the Northern Hemisphere, the United States recognizes six sperm whale stocks: California/Oregon/Washington, Hawaii, North Pacific, North Atlantic, Northern Gulf of Mexico, and Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands (NMFS 2010b); see NMFS Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Reports: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-mammal-protection/marine-mammal-stock-assessment-reports-species-stock).

Figure 2. Range of the sperm whale

The sperm whale is the largest toothed whale and distinguishable from other whales by its extremely large head, which takes up 25 to 35% of its total body length and a single blowhole asymmetrically situated on the left side of the head near the tip. The sperm whale was originally listed as endangered on December 2, 1970 (35 FR 18319).

Information available from the recovery plan (NMFS 2010b), recent stock assessment reports (Carretta et al. 2018, Hayes et al. 2018b, Muto et al. 2018), status review (NMFS 2015b), as well as the recent IUCN sperm whale assessment (Taylor et al. 2019) were used to summarize the life history, population dynamics and status of the species as follows.

Life History

The average lifespan of sperm whales is estimated to be at least 50 years (Whitehead 2009). They have a gestation period of one to one and a half years, and calves nurse for approximately two years, though they may begin to forage for themselves within the first year of life (Tønnesen et al. 2018). Sexual maturity is reached between 7 and 13 years of age for females with an average calving interval of four to six years. Male sperm whales reach full sexual maturity in their 20s. Sperm whales mostly inhabit areas with a water depth of 1970 ft. (600 m) or more, and are uncommon in waters less than 985 ft. (300 m) deep. They winter at low latitudes, where they calve and nurse, and summer at high latitudes, where they feed primarily on squid; other prey includes octopus and demersal fish (including teleosts and elasmobranchs).

Population Dynamics

Pre-whaling, the global population of sperm whales was estimated to be approximately 1,100,000 animals (Taylor et al. 2019, Whitehead 2002). By 1880, due to whaling, the population was approximately 71% of its original level (Whitehead 2002). In 1999, ten years after the end of large-scale whaling, the population was estimated to be about 32% of its original level (Whitehead 2002).

The most recent global sperm whale population estimate is 360,000 whales (Whitehead 2009). There are no reliable estimates for sperm whale abundance across the entire (North and South) Atlantic Ocean. However, estimates are available for two of three U.S. stocks in the western North Atlantic Ocean; the Northern Gulf of Mexico stock is estimated to consist of 763 individuals (N_{min}=560) (Waring et al. 2016) and the North Atlantic stock is estimated to consist of 4,349 individuals (N_{min}=3,451) (Hayes 2019). There are insufficient data to estimate abundance for the Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands stock. Similar to the Atlantic Ocean, there are no reliable estimates for sperm whale abundance across the entire (North and South)

Pacific Ocean. However, estimates are available for two of three U.S. stocks that occur in (Waring et al. 2010) the eastern Pacific; the California/Oregon/ Washington stock is estimated to consist of 1,997 individuals (N_{min}=1,270; Carretta et al. 2019b), and the Hawaii stock is estimated to consist of 4,559 individuals (N_{min}=3,478) (Carretta et al. 2019a). We are aware of no reliable abundance estimates for sperm whales in other major oceans in the Northern and Southern Hemispheres. Although maximum net productivity rates for sperm whales have not been clearly defined, population growth rates for sperm whale populations are expected to be low (i.e., no more than 1.1% per year) (Whitehead 2002). In U.S. waters, NMFS determined that, until additional data is available, the cetacean maximum theoretical net productivity rate of 4.0% will be used for, among others, the North Atlantic, Northern Gulf of Mexico, and Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands stocks of sperm whales (Carretta et al. 2019a, Carretta et al. 2019b, Hayes 2019, Muto et al. 2019a, Muto et al. 2019b, Waring et al. 2010, Waring et al. 2016).

Ocean-wide genetic studies indicate sperm whales have low genetic diversity, suggesting a recent bottleneck, but strong differentiation between matrilineally related groups (Lyrholm and Gyllensten 1998). Consistent with this, two studies of sperm whales in the Pacific Ocean indicate low genetic diversity (Mesnick et al. 2011, Rendell et al. 2012). Furthermore, sperm whales from the Gulf of Mexico, the western North Atlantic Ocean, the North Sea, and the Mediterranean Sea all have been shown to have low levels of genetic diversity (Engelhaupt et al. 2009). As none of the stocks for which data are available have high levels of genetic diversity, the species may be at some risk to inbreeding and 'allee' effects[16], although the extent to which is currently unknown. Sperm whales have a global distribution and can be found in relatively deep waters in all ocean basins. While both males and females can be found in latitudes less than 40 degrees, only adult males venture into the higher latitudes near the poles.

Status

The sperm whale is endangered as a result of past commercial whaling. Although the aggregate abundance worldwide is probably at least several hundred thousand individuals, the extent of depletion and degree of recovery of populations are uncertain. Commercial whaling is no longer allowed, however, illegal hunting may occur. Continued threats to sperm whale populations include vessel strikes, entanglement in fishing gear, competition for resources due to overfishing, population, loss of prey and habitat due to climate change, and sound. The Deepwater Horizon Natural Resource Damage Assessment Trustees assessed effects of oil exposure on sea turtles and marine mammals. Sperm whales in the Gulf of Mexico were impacted by the oil spill with 3% of the stock estimated to have died (DWH NRDA Trustees 2016). The species' large population size shows that it is somewhat resilient to current threats.

Critical Habitat

No critical habitat has been designated for the sperm whale.

Recovery Goals

The goal of the Recovery Plan is to promote recovery of sperm whales to a point at which they can be downlisted from endangered to threatened status, and ultimately to remove them from the list of Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants, under the provisions of the ESA. The

---

[16] Allee effects are broadly characterized as a decline in individual fitness in populations with a small size or density.

primary purpose of this Recovery Plan is to identify and take actions that will minimize or eliminate effects of human activities that are detrimental to the recovery of sperm whale populations. Immediate objectives are to identify factors that may be limiting abundance/recovery/ productivity, and cite actions necessary to allow the populations to increase. The Recovery Plan includes downlisting and delisting criteria (NMFS 2010).

The most recent Five-Year Review for sperm whales was completed in 2015 (NMFS 2015). In that review, NMFS concluded that no change to the listing status was recommended.

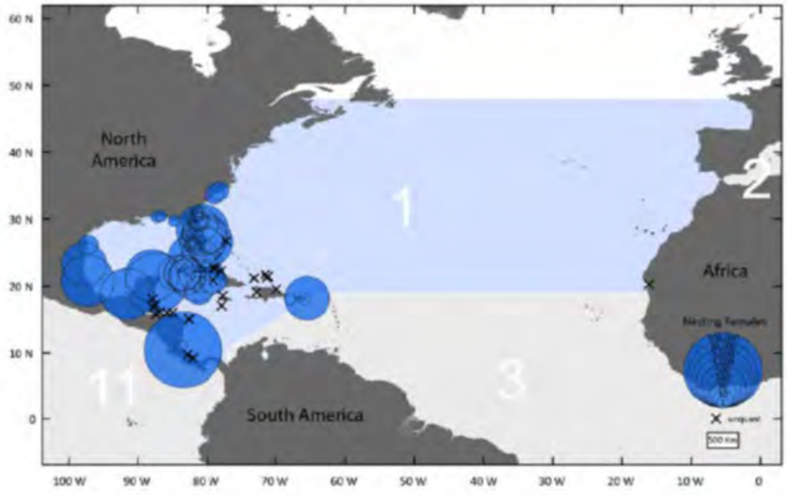
5.2 Sea Turtles

Kemp's ridley and leatherback sea turtles are currently listed under the ESA at the species level; green and loggerhead sea turtles are listed at the DPS level. Therefore, we include information on the range-wide status of Kemp's ridley and leatherback sea turtles to provide the overall status of each species. Information on the status of loggerhead and green sea turtles is for the DPS affected by this action. Additional background information on the range-wide status of these species can be found in a number of published documents, including sea turtle status reviews and biological reports (Conant et al. 2009, Hirth 1997, NMFS and USFWS 1995, Seminoff et al. 2015, TEWG 1998, 2000, 2007, 2009) and recovery plans and five-year reviews for the loggerhead sea turtle (Bolten et al. 2019, NMFS and USFWS 2008), Kemp's ridley sea turtle (NMFS and USFWS 2015, NMFS et al. 2011), green sea turtle (NMFS and USFWS 1991), and leatherback sea turtle (NMFS and USFWS 1992, 1998, 2013).

5.2.1 Green Sea Turtle (North Atlantic DPS)

The green sea turtle has a circumglobal distribution, occurring throughout tropical, subtropical and, to a lesser extent, temperate waters. They commonly inhabit nearshore and inshore waters. It is the largest of the hardshell marine turtles, growing to a weight of approximately 350 lbs. (159 kg) and a straight carapace length of greater than 3.3 ft. (1 m). The species was listed under the ESA on July 28, 1978 (43 FR 32800) as endangered for breeding populations in Florida and the Pacific coast of Mexico and threatened in all other areas throughout its range. On April 6, 2016, NMFS listed 11 DPSs of green sea turtles as threatened or endangered under the ESA (81 FR 20057). The North Atlantic DPS of green turtle is found in the North Atlantic Ocean and Gulf of Mexico (Figure 5.2.1) and is listed as threatened. Green turtles from the North Atlantic DPS range from the boundary of South and Central America (7.5° N, 77° W) in the south, throughout the Caribbean, the Gulf of Mexico, and the U.S. Atlantic coast to New Brunswick, Canada (48° N, 77° W) in the north. The range of the DPS then extends due east along latitudes 48° N and 19° N to the western coasts of Europe and Africa.

Figure 3. Range of the North Atlantic distinct population segment green turtle (1), with location and abundance of nesting females (Seminoff et al. 2015).



We used information available in the 2015 Status Review (Seminoff et al. 2015), relevant literature, and recent nesting data from the Florida Fish and Wildlife Conservation Commission's Fish and Wildlife Research Institute (FWRI) to summarize the life history, population dynamics and status of the species, as follows.

Life History
Costa Rica (Tortuguero), Mexico (Campeche, Yucatan, Quintana Roo), United States (Florida) and Cuba support nesting concentrations of particular interest in the North Atlantic DPS (Seminoff et al. 2015). The largest nesting site in the North Atlantic DPS is in Tortuguero, Costa Rica, which hosts 79% of nesting females for the DPS (Seminoff et al. 2015). In the southeastern United States, females generally nest between May and September (Seminoff et al. 2015, Witherington et al. 2006). Green sea turtles lay an average of three nests per season with an average of one hundred eggs per nest (Hirth 1997, Seminoff et al. 2015). The remigration interval (period between nesting seasons) is two to five years (Hirth 1997, Seminoff et al. 2015). Nesting occurs primarily on beaches with intact dune structure, native vegetation, and appropriate incubation temperatures during the summer months.

Sea turtles are long-lived animals. Size and age at sexual maturity have been estimated using several methods, including mark-recapture, skeletochronology, and marked known-aged individuals. Skeletochronology analyzes growth marks in bones to obtain growth rates and age at sexual maturity estimates. Estimates vary widely among studies and populations, and methods continue to be developed and refined (Avens and Snover 2013). Early mark-recapture studies in Florida estimated the age at sexual maturity 18-30 years (Frazer and Ehrhart 1985, Goshe et al. 2010, Mendonça 1981). More recent estimates of age at sexual maturity are as high as 35–50 years (Avens and Snover 2013, Goshe et al. 2010), with lower ranges reported from known age (15–19 years) turtles from the Cayman Islands (Bell et al. 2005) and Caribbean Mexico (12–20 years) (Zurita et al. 2012). A study of green turtles that use waters of the southeastern United States as developmental habitat found the age at sexual maturity likely ranges from 30 to 44 years (Goshe et al. 2010). Green turtles in the Northwestern Atlantic mature at 2.8-33+ ft. (85–100+ cm) straight carapace lengths (SCL) (Avens and Snover 2013).

Adult turtles exhibit site fidelity and migrate hundreds to thousands of kilometers from nesting beaches to foraging areas. Green sea turtles spend the majority of their lives in coastal foraging grounds, which include open coastlines and protected bays and lagoons. Adult green turtles feed primarily on seagrasses and algae, although they also eat other invertebrate prey (Seminoff et al. 2015).

Population Dynamics

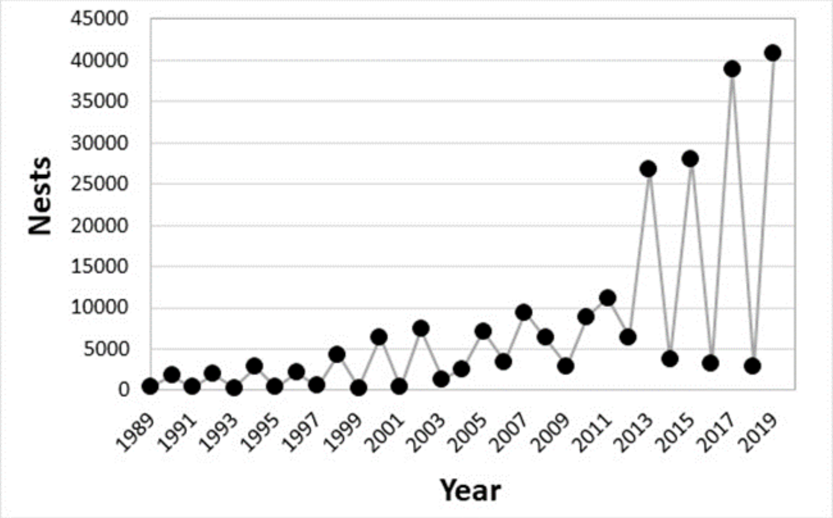
The North Atlantic DPS has a globally unique haplotype, which was a factor in defining the discreteness of the DPS. Evidence from mitochondrial DNA studies indicates that there are at least four independent nesting subpopulations in Florida, Cuba, Mexico and Costa Rica (Seminoff et al. 2015). More recent genetic analysis indicates that designating a new western Gulf of Mexico management unit might be appropriate (Shamblin et al. 2016).
Compared to other DPSs, the North Atlantic DPS exhibits the highest nester abundance, with approximately 167,424 females at seventy-three nesting sites (using data through 2012), and available data indicated an increasing trend in nesting (Seminoff et al. 2015). Counts of nests and nesting females are commonly used as an index of abundance and population trends, even though there are doubts about the ability to estimate the overall population size.

There are no reliable estimates of population growth rate for the DPS as a whole, but estimates have been developed at a localized level. The status review for green sea turtles assessed population trends for seven nesting sites with more 10 years of data collection in the North Atlantic DPS. The results were variable with some sites showing no trend and others increasing. However, all major nesting populations (using data through 2011-2012) demonstrated increases in abundance (Seminoff et al. 2015)).

More recent data is available for the southeastern United States. The FWRI monitors sea turtle nesting through the Statewide Nesting Beach Survey (SNBS) and Index Nesting Beach Survey (INBS). Since 1979, the SNBS had surveyed approximately 215 beaches to collect information on the distribution, seasonality, and abundance of sea turtle nesting in Florida. Since 1989, the INBS has been conducted on a subset of SNBS beaches to monitor trends through consistent effort and specialized training of surveyors. The INBS data uses a standardized data-collection protocol to allow for comparisons between years and is presented for green, loggerhead, and leatherback sea turtles. The index counts represent 27 core index beaches. The index nest counts represent approximately 67% of known green turtle nesting in Florida (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/).

Nest counts at Florida's core index beaches have ranged from less than 300 to almost 41,000 in 2019. The nest numbers show a mostly biennial pattern of fluctuation (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/; Figure 5.2.2).

Figure 5.2.2. Number of green sea turtle nests counted on core index beaches in Florida from 1989-2019 (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/)



Status

Historically, green sea turtles in the North Atlantic DPS were hunted for food, which was the principle cause of the population's decline. Apparent increases in nester abundance for the North Atlantic DPS in recent years are encouraging but must be viewed cautiously, as the datasets represent a fraction of a green sea turtle generation which is between 30 and 40 years (Seminoff et al. 2015). While the threats of pollution, habitat loss through coastal development, beachfront lighting, and fisheries bycatch continue, the North Atlantic DPS appears to be somewhat resilient to future perturbations.

Critical Habitat

Critical habitat for the North Atlantic DPS of green sea turtles surrounds Culebra Island, Puerto Rico (66 FR 20058, April 6, 2016), which is outside the action area.

Recovery Goals

No recovery plan for green sea turtles has been issued since the DPSs were listed in 2016. The goal of the 1991 Recovery Plan for the U.S. population of green sea turtles is delist the species once the recovery criteria are met (NMFS and U.S.FWS 1991). The recovery plan includes criteria for delisting related to nesting activity, nesting habitat protection, and reduction in mortality.

Priority actions to meet the recovery goals include:

1. Providing long-term protection to important nesting beaches.
2. Ensuring at least a 60% hatch rate success on major nesting beaches.
3. Implementing effective lighting ordinances/plans on nesting beaches.
4. Determining distribution and seasonal movements of all life stages in the marine environment.
5. Minimizing commercial fishing mortality.
6. Reducing threat to the population and foraging habitat from marine pollution.

No Five-Year review has been conducted since the 2016 listing.

5.2.2 *Kemp's Ridley Sea Turtle*

The range of Kemp's ridley sea turtles extends from the Gulf of Mexico to the Atlantic coast (Figure 5.2.3). They have occasionally been found in the Mediterranean Sea, which may be due to migration expansion or increased hatchling production (Tomás and Raga 2008). They are the smallest of all sea turtle species, with a nearly circular top shell and a pale yellowish bottom shell. The species was first listed under the Endangered Species Conservation Act (35 FR 18319, December 2, 1970) in 1970. The species has been listed as endangered under the ESA since 1973.

Figure 5.2.3. Range of the Kemp's ridley sea turtle

Life History

Kemp's ridley nesting is essentially limited to the western Gulf of Mexico. Approximately 97% of the global population's nesting activity occurs on a 90-mile (146-km) stretch of beach that includes Rancho Nuevo in Mexico (Wibbels and Bevan 2019). In the United States, nesting occurs primarily in Texas and occasionally in Florida, Alabama, Georgia, South Carolina, and North Carolina (NMFS and USFWS 2015). Nesting occurs from April to July in large arribadas (synchronized large-scale nesting). The average remigration interval is two years, although intervals of 1 and 3 years are not uncommon (NMFS et al. 2011, TEWG 1998, 2000). Females lay an average of 2.5 clutches per season (NMFS et al. 2011). The annual average clutch size is 95 to 112 eggs per nest (NMFS and USFWS 2015). The nesting location may be particularly important because hatchlings can more easily migrate to foraging grounds in deeper oceanic waters, where they remain for approximately two years before returning to nearshore coastal habitats (Epperly et al. 2013, NMFS and USFWS 2015, Snover et al. 2007). Modeling indicates that oceanic-stage Kemp's ridley turtles are likely distributed throughout the Gulf of Mexico into the northwestern Atlantic (Putman et al. 2013). Kemp's ridley nearing the age when recruitment to nearshore waters occurs are more likely to be distributed in the northern Gulf of Mexico, eastern Gulf of Mexico, and the western Atlantic (Putman et al. 2013).

Several studies, including those of captive turtles, recaptured turtles of known age, mark-recapture data, and skeletochronology, have estimated the average age at sexual maturity for Kemp's ridleys between 5 to 12 years (captive only) (Bjorndal et al. 2014), 10 to 16 years (Chaloupka and Zug 1997, Schmid and Witzell 1997, Schmid and Woodhead 2000, Zug et al. 1997), 9.9 to 16.7 years (Snover et al. 2007), 10 and 18 years (Shaver and Wibbels 2007), 6.8 to 21.8 years (mean 12.9 years) (Avens et al. 2017).

During spring and summer, juvenile Kemp's ridleys generally occur in the shallow coastal waters of the northern Gulf of Mexico from south Texas to north Florida and along the U.S. Atlantic coast from southern Florida to the Mid-Atlantic and New England. In addition, the NEFSC caught a juvenile Kemp's ridley during a recent research project in deep water south of Georges Bank (NEFSC, unpublished data). In the fall, most Kemp's ridleys migrate to deeper or more southern, warmer waters and remain there through the winter. As adults, many turtles remain in the Gulf of Mexico, with only occasional occurrence in the Atlantic Ocean (NMFS et al. 2011). Adult habitat largely consists of sandy and muddy areas in shallow, nearshore waters less than 120 feet (37 meters) deep (Seney and Landry 2008, Shaver et al. 2005, Shaver and Rubio 2008), although they can also be found in deeper offshore waters. As larger juveniles and adults, Kemp's ridleys forage on swimming crabs, fish, mollusks, and tunicates (NMFS et al. 2011).

Population Dynamics

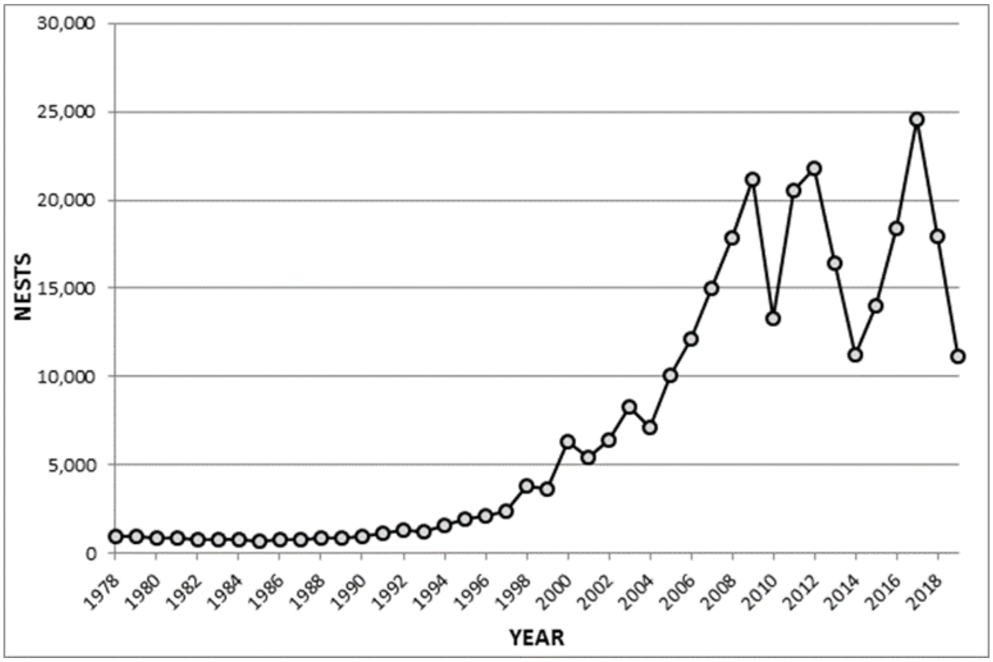
Of the sea turtles species in the world, the Kemp's ridley has declined to the lowest population level. Nesting aggregations at a single location (Rancho Nuevo, Mexico) were estimated at 40,000 females in 1947. By the mid-1980s, the population had declined to an estimated 300 nesting females. From 1980 to 2003, the number of nests at three primary nesting beaches (Rancho Nuevo, Tepehuajes, and Playa Dos) increased at 15% annually (Heppell et al. 2005). However, due to recent declines in nest counts, decreased survival of immature and adult sea turtles, and updated population modeling, this rate is not expected to continue and the overall trend is unclear (Caillouet et al. 2018, NMFS and USFWS 2015). In 2019, there were 11,090 nests, a 37.61% decrease from 2018, and a 54.89% decrease from 2017, which had the highest number (24,587) of nests (Figure 5.2.4; unpublished data). The reason for this recent decline is uncertain.

Using the standard IUCN protocol for sea turtle assessments, the number of mature individuals was recently estimated at 22,341 (Wibbels and Bevan 2019). The calculation took into account the average annual nests from 2016-2018 (21,156), a clutch frequency of 2.5 per year, a remigration interval of 2 years, and a sex ratio of 3.17 females: 1 male. Based on the data in their analysis, the assessment concluded the current population trend is unknown (Wibbels and Bevan 2019). Genetic variability in Kemp's ridley turtles is considered to be high, as measured by nuclear DNA analyses (i.e., microsatellites) (NMFS et al. 2011). If this holds true, rapid increases in population over one or two generations would likely prevent any negative consequences in the genetic variability of the species (NMFS et al. 2011). Additional analysis of the mtDNA taken from samples of Kemp's ridley turtles at Padre Island, Texas, showed six distinct haplotypes, with one found at both Padre Island and Rancho Nuevo (Dutton et al. 2006).

Status

The Kemp's ridley was listed as endangered in response to a severe population decline, primarily the result of egg collection. In 1973, legal ordinances in Mexico prohibited the harvest of sea turtles from May to August, and in 1990, the harvest of all sea turtles was prohibited by presidential decree. In 2002, Rancho Nuevo was declared a Sanctuary. Nesting beaches in Texas have been re-established. Fishery interactions are the main threat to the species. Other threats include habitat destruction, oil spills, dredging, disease, cold stunning, and climate change. The current population trend is uncertain. While the population has increased, recent nesting numbers have been variable. In addition, the species' limited range and low global abundance make it vulnerable to new sources of mortality as well as demographic and environmental randomness, all of which are often difficult to predict with any certainty. Therefore, its resilience to future perturbation is low.

Figure 5.2.4. Kemp's ridley nest totals from Mexican beaches (Gladys Porter Zoo nesting database 2019)



Critical Habitat

Critical habitat has not been designated for Kemp’s ridley sea turtles.

Recovery Goals

As with other recovery plans, the goal of the 2011 Kemp’s ridley recovery plan (NMFS, USFWS, and SEMARNAT 2011) is to conserve and protect the species so that the listing is no longer necessary. The recovery criteria relate to the number of nesting females, hatchling recruitment, habitat protection, social and/or economic initiatives compatible with conservation, reduction of predation, TED or other protective measures in trawl gear, and improved information available to ensure recovery. In 2015, the bi-national recovery team published a number of recommendations including four critical actions (NMFS and USFWS 2015). These include: (a) continue funding by the major funding institutions at a level of support needed to run the successful turtle camps in the State of Tamaulipas, Mexico, in order to continue the high level of hatchling production and nesting female protection; (b) increase turtle excluder device (TED) compliance in U.S. and MX shrimp fisheries; 3 (c) require TEDs in U.S. skimmer trawl fisheries and other trawl fisheries in coastal waters where fishing overlaps with the distribution of Kemp’s ridleys; (d) assess bycatch in gillnets in the Northern Gulf of Mexico and State of Tamaulipas, Mexico, to determine whether modifications to gear or fishing practices are needed.

The most recent Five-Year Review was completed in 2015 (NMFS and USFWS 2015) with a recommendation that the status of Kemp’s ridley sea turtles should remain as endangered. In the Plan, the Services recommend that efforts continue towards achieving the major recovery actions in the 2015 plan with a priority for actions to address recent declines in the annual number of nests.

5.2.3 Loggerhead Sea Turtle (Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS)

Loggerhead sea turtles are circumglobal and are found in the temperate and tropical regions of the Indian, Pacific, and Atlantic Oceans. The loggerhead sea turtle is distinguished from other turtles by its reddish-brown carapace, large head and powerful jaws. The species was first listed as threatened under the Endangered Species Act in 1978 (43 FR 32800, July 28, 1978). On September 22, 2011, the NMFS and USFWS designated nine distinct population segments of loggerhead sea turtles, with the Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS listed as threatened (76 FR 58868). The Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS of loggerheads is found along eastern North America, Central America, and northern South America (Figure 5.2.5).

Figure 5.2.5. Range of the Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS of loggerhead sea turtles

We used information available in the 2009 Status Review (Conant et al. 2009), the final listing rule (76 FR 58868, September 22, 2011), the relevant literature, and recent nesting data from the FWRI to summarize the life history, population dynamics and status of the species, as follows.

Life History

Nesting occurs on beaches where warm, humid sand temperatures incubate the eggs. Northwest Atlantic females lay an average of five clutches per year. The annual average clutch size is 115 eggs per nest. Females do not nest every year. The average remigration interval is three years. There is a 54% emergence success rate (Conant et al. 2009). As with other sea turtles, temperature determines the sex of the turtle during the middle of the incubation period. Turtles spend the post-hatchling stage in pelagic waters. The juvenile stage is spent first in the oceanic zone and later in coastal waters. Some juveniles may periodically move between the oceanic zone and coastal waters (Bolten 2003, Conant et al. 2009, Mansfield 2006, Morreale and Standora 2005, Witzell 2002). Coastal waters provide important foraging, inter-nesting, and migratory habitats for adult loggerheads. In both the oceanic zone and coastal waters, loggerheads are primarily carnivorous, although they do consume some plant matter as well (Conant et al. 2009). Loggerheads have been documented to feed on crustaceans, mollusks, jellyfish and salps, and algae (Bjorndal 1997, Donaton et al. 2019, Seney and Musick 2007). Avens et al. (2015) used three approaches to estimate age at maturation. Mean age predictions associated with minimum and mean maturation straight carapace lengths were 22.5-25 and 36-38 years for females and 26-28 and 37-42 years for males. Male and female sea turtles have similar post-maturation longevity, ranging from 4 to 46 (mean 19) years (Avens et al. 2015).

Loggerhead hatchlings from the western Atlantic disperse widely, most likely using the Gulf Stream to drift throughout the Atlantic Ocean. MtDNA evidence demonstrates that juvenile loggerheads from southern Florida nesting beaches comprise the vast majority (71%-88%) of individuals found in foraging grounds throughout the western and eastern Atlantic: Nicaragua, Panama, Azores and Madeira, Canary Islands and Andalusia, Gulf of Mexico, and Brazil (Masuda 2010). LaCasalla et al. (2013) found that loggerheads, primarily juveniles, caught within the Northeast Distant (NED) waters of the North Atlantic mostly originated from nesting populations in the southeast United States and, in particular, Florida. They found that nearly all loggerheads caught in the NED came from the Northwest Atlantic DPS (mean = 99.2%), primarily from the large eastern Florida rookeries. There was little evidence of contributions from the South Atlantic, Northeast Atlantic, or Mediterranean DPSs (LaCasella et al. 2013). A more recent analysis assessed sea turtles captured in fisheries in the Northwest Atlantic and included samples from 850 (including 24 turtles caught during fisheries research) turtles caught from 2000-2013 in coastal and oceanic habitats (Stewart et al. 2019). The turtles were primarily captured in pelagic longline and bottom otter trawls. Other gears included bottom longline, hook and line, gillnet, dredge, and dip net. Turtles were identified from 19 distinct management units; the western Atlantic nesting populations were the main contributors with little representation from the Northeast Atlantic, Mediterranean, or South Atlantic DPSs (Stewart et al. 2019). There was a significant split in the distribution of small (≤ 2 ft. (63 cm) SCL) and large (> 2 ft. (63 cm) SCL) loggerheads north and south of Cape Hatteras, North Carolina. North of Cape Hatteras, large turtles came mainly from southeast Florida (44%±15%) and the northern United States management units (33%±16%); small turtles came from central east Florida (64%±14%). South of Cape Hatteras, large turtles came mainly from central east Florida (52%±20%) and southeast Florida (41%±20%); small turtles came from southeast Florida (56%±25%). The authors concluded that bycatch in the western North Atlantic would affect the Northwest Atlantic DPS almost exclusively (Stewart et al. 2019).

Population Dynamics

A number of stock assessments and similar reviews (Conant et al. 2009, Heppell et al. 2005, NMFS SEFSC 2001, 2009, Richards et al. 2011, TEWG 1998, 2000, 2009) have examined the stock status of loggerheads in the Atlantic Ocean, but none has been able to develop a reliable estimate of absolute population size. As with other species, counts of nests and nesting females are commonly used as an index of abundance and population trends, even though there are doubts about the ability to estimate the overall population size.

Based on genetic analysis of nesting subpopulations, the Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS is divided into five recovery units: Northern, Peninsular Florida, Dry Tortugas, Northern Gulf of Mexico, and Greater Caribbean (Conant et al. 2009). A more recent analysis using expanded mtDNA sequences revealed that rookeries from the Gulf and Atlantic coasts of Florida are genetically distinct (Shamblin et al. 2014). The recent genetic analyses suggest that the Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS should be considered as ten management units: (1) South Carolina and Georgia, (2) central eastern Florida, (3) southeastern Florida, (4) Cay Sal, Bahamas, (5) Dry Tortugas, Florida, (6) southwestern Cuba, (7) Quintana Roo, Mexico, (8) southwestern Florida, (9) central western Florida, and (10) northwestern Florida (Shamblin et al. 2012). The Northwest Atlantic Ocean's loggerhead nesting aggregation is considered the largest in the world (Casale and Tucker 2017). Using data from 2004-2008, the adult female population size of the DPS was estimated at 20,000 to 40,000 females (NMFS SEFSC 2009). More recently, Ceriani and Meylan (2017) reported a 5-year average (2009-2013) of more than 83,717 nests per year in the southeast United States and Mexico (excluding Cancun (Quintana Roo, Mexico). These estimates included sites without long-term (≥10 years) datasets. When they used data from 86 index sites (representing 63.4% of the estimated nests for the whole DPS with long-term datasets, they reported 53,043 nests per year. Trends at the different index nesting beaches ranged from negative to positive. In a trend analysis of the 86 index sites, the overall trend for the Northwest Atlantic DPS was positive (+2%) (Ceriani and Meylan 2017). Uncertainties in this analysis include, among others, using nesting females as proxies for overall population abundance and trends, demographic parameters, monitoring methodologies, and evaluation methods involving simple comparisons of early and later 5-year average annual nest counts. However, the authors concluded that the subpopulation is well monitored and the data evaluated represents 63.4 % of the total estimated annual nests of the subpopulation and, therefore, are representative of the overall trend (Ceriani and Meylan 2017).

About 80% of loggerhead nesting in the southeast United States occurs in six Florida counties (NMFS and USFWS 2008). The Peninsula Florida Recovery Unit and the Northern Recovery Unit represent approximately 87% and 10%, respectively of all nesting effort in the Northwest Atlantic DPS (Ceriani and Meylan 2017, NMFS and USFWS 2008). As described above, FWRI’s INBS collects standardized nesting data. The index nest counts for loggerheads represent approximately 53% of known nesting in Florida. There have been three distinct intervals observed: increasing (1989-1998), decreasing (1998-2007), and increasing (2007-2019). At core index beaches in Florida, nesting totaled a minimum of 28,876 nests in 2007 and a maximum of 65,807 nests in 2016 (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/). In 2019, more than 53,000 nests were documented. The nest counts in Figure 5.2.6 represent peninsular Florida and do not include an additional set of beaches in the Florida Panhandle and southwest coast that were added to the program in 1997 and more recent years. Nest counts at these Florida Panhandle index beaches have an upward trend since 2010 (Figure 5.2.7).

Figure 5.2.6. Annual nest counts of loggerhead sea turtles on Florida core index beaches in peninsular Florida, 1989-2019 (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/)

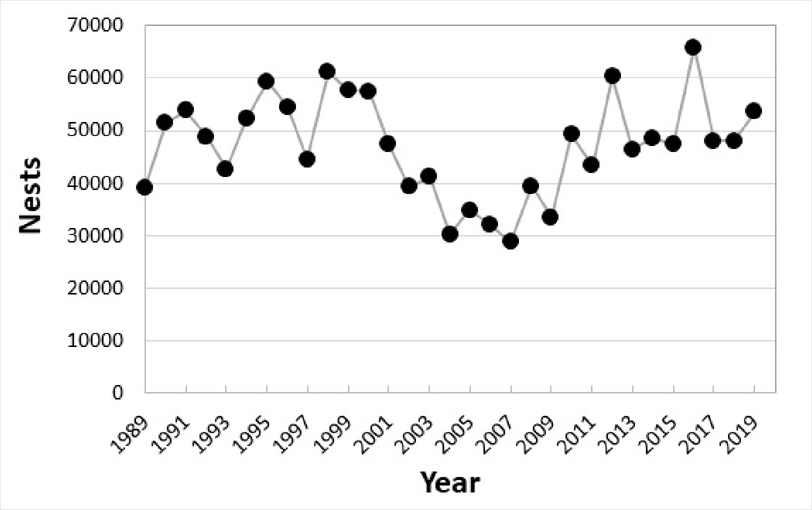
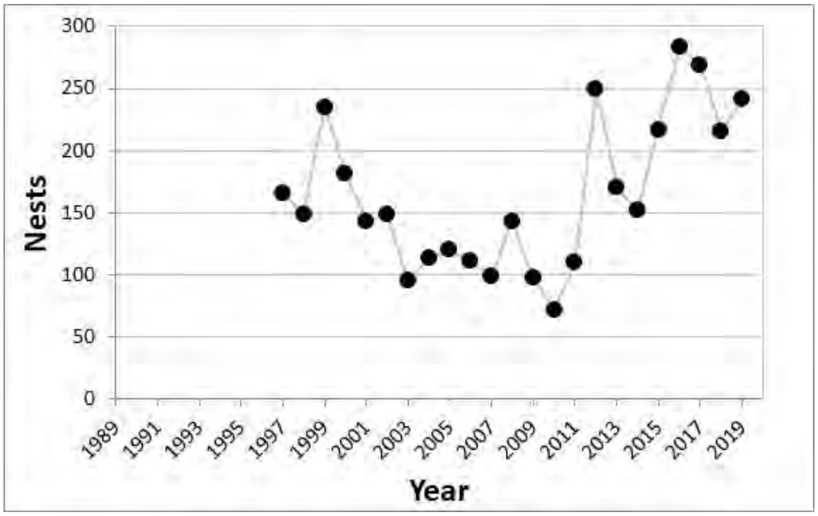


Figure 4. Annual nest counts of loggerhead sea turtles on index beaches in the Florida Panhandle, 1997-2019 (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/)



The annual nest counts on Florida's index beaches fluctuate widely, and we do not fully understand what drives these fluctuations. In assessing the population, Ceriani and Meylan (2017) and Bolten et al. (2019) looked at trends by recovery unit. Trends by recovery unit were variable.

The Peninsular Florida Recovery Unit extends from the Georgia-Florida border south and then north (excluding the islands west of Key West, Florida) through Pinellas County on the west coast of Florida. Annual nest counts from 1989 to 2018 ranged from a low of 28,876 in 2007 to a high of 65,807 in 1998 (Bolten et al. 2019). More recently (2008-2018), counts have ranged from 33,532 in 2009 to 65,807 in 2016 (Bolten et al. 2019). Nest counts taken at index beaches in Peninsular Florida showed a significant decline in loggerhead nesting from 1989 to 2007, most likely attributed to mortality of oceanic-stage loggerheads caused by fisheries bycatch (Witherington et al. 2009). Trend analyses have been completed for various periods. From 2009 through 2013, a 2% decrease for this recovery unit was reported (Ceriani and Meylan 2017). Using a longer time series from 1989-2018, there was no significant change in the number of annual nests (Bolten et al. 2019). It is important to recognize that an increase in the number of nests has been observed since 2007. The recovery team cautions that using short term trends in nesting abundance can be misleading and trends should be considered in the context of one generation (50 years for loggerheads) (Bolten et al. 2019).

The Northern Recovery Unit, ranging from the Florida-Georgia border through southern Virginia, is the second largest nesting aggregation in the DPS. Annual nest totals for this recovery unit from 1983 to 2019 have ranged from a low of 520 in 2004 to a high of 5,555 in 2019 (Bolten et al. 2019). From 2008 to 2019, counts have ranged from 1,289 nests in 2014 to 5,555 nests in 2019 (Bolten et al. 2019). Nest counts at loggerhead nesting beaches in North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia declined at 1.9% annually from 1983 to 2005 (NMFS and USFWS 2008). Recently, the trend has been increasing. Ceriani and Meylan (2017) reported a

35% increase for this recovery unit from 2009 through 2013. A longer-term trend analysis based on data from 1983 to 2019 indicates that the annual rate of increase is 1.3% (Bolten et al. 2019). The Dry Tortugas Recovery Unit includes all islands west of Key West, Florida. A census on Key West from 1995 to 2004 (excluding 2002) estimated a mean of 246 nests per year, or about 60 nesting females (NMFS and USFWS 2008). No trend analysis is available because there was not an adequate time series to evaluate the Dry Tortugas recovery unit (Ceriani et al. 2019, Ceriani and Meylan 2017), which accounts for less than 1% of the Northwest Atlantic DPS (Ceriani and Meylan 2017).

The Northern Gulf of Mexico Recovery Unit is defined as loggerheads originating from beaches in Franklin County on the northwest Gulf coast of Florida through Texas. From 1995 to 2007, there were an average of 906 nests per year on approximately 300 km of beach in Alabama and Florida, which equates to about 221 females nesting per year (NMFS and USFWS 2008). Annual nest totals for this recovery unit from 1997-2018 have ranged from a low of 72 in 2010 to a high of 283 in 2016 (Bolten et al. 2019). Evaluation of long-term nesting trends for the Northern Gulf of Mexico Recovery Unit is difficult because of changed and expanded beach coverage. However, there are now over 20 years of Florida index nesting beach survey data. A number of trend analyses have been conducted. From 1995 to 2005, the recovery unit exhibited a significant declining trend (Conant et al. 2009, NMFS and USFWS 2008). Nest numbers have increased in recent years (Bolten et al. 2019) (see https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/). In the 2009-2013 trend analysis by Ceriani and Meylan (2017), a 1% decrease for this recovery unit was reported, likely due to diminished nesting on beaches in Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas. A longer-term analysis from 1997-2018 found that there has been a non-significant increase of 1.7% (Bolten et al. 2019).

The Greater Caribbean Recovery Unit encompasses nesting subpopulations in Mexico to French Guiana, the Bahamas, and the Lesser and Greater Antilles. The majority of nesting for this recovery unit occurs on the Yucatán Peninsula, in Quintana Roo, Mexico, with 903 to 2,331 nests annually (Zurita et al. 2003). Other significant nesting sites are found throughout the Caribbean, including Cuba, with approximately 250 to 300 nests annually (Ehrhart et al. 2003), and over 100 nests annually in Cay Sal in the Bahamas (NMFS and USFWS 2008). In the trend analysis by Ceriani and Meylan (2017), a 53% increase for this Recovery Unit was reported from 2009 through 2013.

Status

Fisheries bycatch is the highest threat to the Northwest Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles (Conant et al. 2009). Other threats include boat strikes, marine debris, coastal development, habitat loss, contaminants, disease, and climate change. Nesting trends for each of the loggerhead sea turtle recovery units in the Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS are variable. Overall, short-term trends have shown increases, however, over the long-term the DPS is considered stable.

Critical Habitat

Critical habitat for the Northwest Atlantic DPS was designated in 2014 (see section 4).

Recovery Goals

The recovery goal for the Northwest Atlantic loggerhead is to ensure that each recovery unit meets its recovery criteria alleviating threats to the species so that protection under the ESA is not needed. The recovery criteria relate to the number of nests and nesting females, trends in abundance on the foraging grounds, and trends in neritic strandings relative to in-water abundance. The 2008 Final Recovery Plan for the Northwest Atlantic Population of Loggerheads includes the complete downlisting/delisting criteria (NMFS and U.S. FWS 2008). The recovery objectives to meet these goals include:

1. Ensure that the number of nests in each recovery unit is increasing and that this increase corresponds to an increase in the number of nesting females.
2. Ensure the in-water abundance of juveniles in both neritic and oceanic habitats is increasing and is increasing at a greater rate than strandings of similar age classes.
3. Manage sufficient nesting beach habitat to ensure successful nesting.
4. Manage sufficient feeding, migratory and internesting marine habitats to ensure successful growth and reproduction.
5. Eliminate legal harvest.
6. Implement scientifically based nest management plans.
7. Minimize nest predation.
8. Recognize and respond to mass/unusual mortality or disease events appropriately.
9. Develop and implement local, state, federal and international legislation to ensure long-term protection of loggerheads and their terrestrial and marine habitats.
10. Minimize bycatch in domestic and international commercial and artisanal fisheries.
11. Minimize trophic changes from fishery harvest and habitat alteration.
12. Minimize marine debris ingestion and entanglement.
13. Minimize vessel strike mortality.

No Five-Year review has been completed for the Northwest Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles that post-dates the 2008 recovery plan.

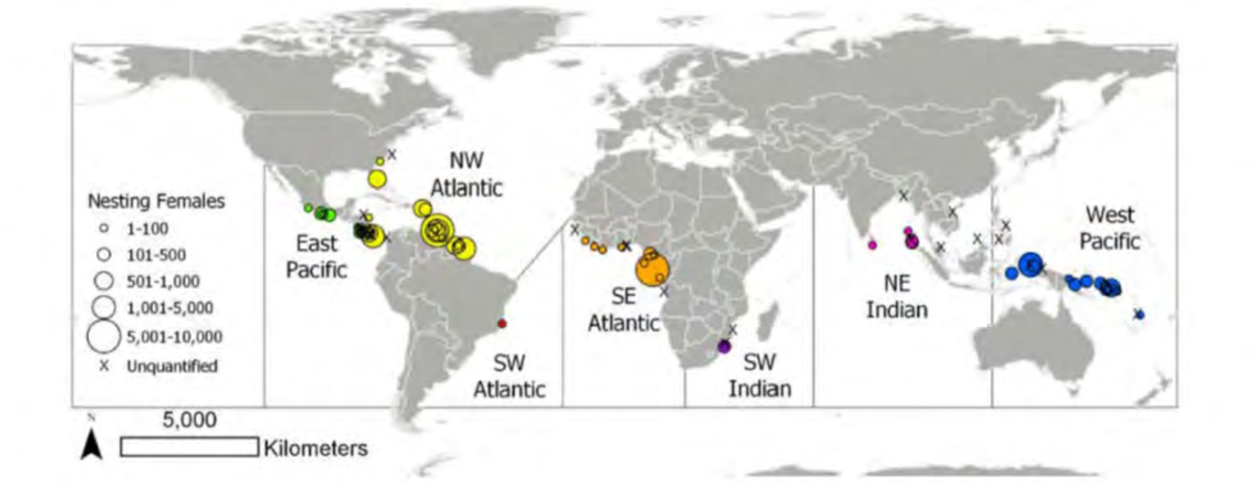
5.2.4 Leatherback Sea Turtle

The leatherback sea turtle is unique among sea turtles for its large size, wide distribution (due to thermoregulatory systems and behavior), and lack of a hard, bony carapace. It ranges from tropical to subpolar latitudes, worldwide (Figure 5.2.8).

Figure 5.2.8. Range of the leatherback sea turtle

Leatherbacks are the largest living turtle, reaching lengths of six feet long, and weighing up to one ton. Leatherback sea turtles have a distinct black leathery skin covering their carapace with pinkish white skin on their plastron. The species was first listed under the Endangered Species Conservation Act (35 FR 8491, June 2, 1970) and has been listed as endangered under the ESA since 1973. In 2020, seven leatherback populations that met the discreteness and significance criteria of the DPS were identified (NMFS and USFWS 2020). The population found within the action is area is the Northwest Atlantic DPS (NW Atlantic DPS) (Figure 5.2.9). NMFS and USFWS concluded that the seven populations, which met the criteria for DPSs, all met the definition of an endangered species. NMFS and USFWS determined that the listing of DPSs was not warranted; leatherbacks continue to be listed at the global level (85 FR 48332, August 10, 2020). Therefore, information is presented on the range-wide status. We used information available in the five-year review (NMFS and USFWS 2013), the critical habitat designation (44 FR 17710, March 23, 1979), the status review (NMFS and USFWS 2020), relevant literature, and recent nesting data from the Florida FWRI to summarize the life history, population dynamics and status of the species, as follows.

Figure 5.2.9. Leatherback sea turtle DPSs and nesting beaches (NMFS and USFWS 2020)



Life History

Leatherbacks are a long-lived species. Preferred nesting grounds are in the tropics; though, nests span latitudes from 34 °S in western Cape, South Africa to 38 °N in Maryland (Eckert et al. 2012, Eckert et al. 2015). Females lay an average of five to seven clutches (range: 1-14 clutches) per season, with 20 to over 100 eggs per clutch (Eckert et al. 2012, Reina et al. 2002, Wallace et al. 2007). The average clutch frequency for the NW Atlantic DPS is 5.5 clutches per season (NMFS and USFWS 2020). In the western Atlantic, leatherbacks lay about 82 eggs per clutch (Sotherland et al. 2015). Remigration intervals are 2-4 years for most populations (range 1-11 years) (Eckert et al. 2015, NMFS and USFWS 2020); the remigration interval for the NW Atlantic DPS is approximately 3 years (NMFS and USFWS 2020). The number of leatherback hatchlings that make it out of the nest on to the beach (i.e., emergence success) is approximately 50% worldwide (Eckert et al. 2012).

Age at sexual maturity has been challenging to obtain given the species physiology and habitat use (Avens et al. 2019). Past estimates ranged from 5-29 years (Avens et al. 2009, Spotila et al. 1996). More recently, Avens et al. (2020) used refined skeleochronology to assess the age at sexual maturity for leatherback sea turtles in the Atlantic and the Pacific. In the Atlantic, the mean age at sexual maturity was 19 years (range 13-28) and the mean size at sexual maturity was 4.2 ft. (129.2 cm) CCL (range (3.7-5 ft. (112.8-153.8 cm)). In the Pacific, the mean age at sexual maturity was 17 years (range 12-28) and the mean size at sexual maturity was 4.2 ft. (129.3 cm) CCL (range 3.6- 5 ft. (110.7-152.3 cm)) (Avens et al. 2019).

Leatherbacks have a greater tolerance for colder waters compared to all other sea turtle species due to their thermoregulatory capabilities (Paladino et al. 1990, Shoop and Kenney 1992, Wallace and Jones 2008). Evidence from tag returns, satellite telemetry, and strandings in the western Atlantic suggests that adult leatherback sea turtles engage in routine migrations between temperate/boreal and tropical waters (Bond and James 2017, Dodge et al. 2015, Eckert et al. 2006, Fossette et al. 2014, James et al. 2005a, James et al. 2005b, James et al. 2005c, NMFS and USFWS 1992). Tagging studies collectively show a clear separation of leatherback movements between the North and South Atlantic Oceans (NMFS and USFWS 2020).

Leatherback sea turtles migrate long, transoceanic distances between their tropical nesting beaches and the highly productive temperate waters where they forage, primarily on jellyfish and tunicates. These gelatinous prey are relatively nutrient-poor, such that leatherbacks must consume large quantities to support their body weight. Leatherbacks weigh about 33% more on their foraging grounds than at nesting, indicating that they probably catabolize fat reserves to fuel migration and subsequent reproduction (James et al. 2005c, Wallace et al. 2006). Studies on the foraging ecology of leatherbacks in the North Atlantic show that leatherbacks off Massachusetts primarily consumed lion's mane, sea nettles, and ctenophores (Dodge et al. 2011). Juvenile and small sub-adult leatherbacks may spend more time in oligotrophic (relatively low plant nutrient usually accompanied by high dissolved oxygen) open ocean waters where prey is more difficult to find (Dodge et al. 2011). Sea turtles must meet an energy threshold before returning to nesting beaches. Therefore, their remigration intervals are dependent upon foraging success and duration (Hays 2000, Price et al. 2004).

Population Dynamics

The distribution is global, with nesting beaches in the Pacific, Atlantic, and Indian Oceans. Leatherbacks occur throughout marine waters, from nearshore habitats to oceanic environments (NMFS and USFWS 2020, Shoop and Kenney 1992). Movements are largely dependent upon reproductive and feeding cycles and the oceanographic features that concentrate prey, such as frontal systems, eddy features, current boundaries, and coastal retention areas (Benson et al. 2011).

Analyses of mtDNA from leatherback sea turtles indicates a low level of genetic diversity (Dutton et al. 1999). Further analysis of samples taken from individuals from rookeries in the Atlantic and Indian Oceans suggest that each of the rookeries represent demographically independent populations (NMFS and USFWS 2013). Using genetic data,, combined with nesting, tagging, and tracking data, researchers identified seven global regional management units (RMU) or subpopulations: Northwest Atlantic, Southeast Atlantic, Southwest Atlantic, Northwest Indian, Southwest Indian, East Pacific, and West Pacific (Wallace et al. 2010). The status review concluded that the RMUs identified by Wallace et al. (2010) are discrete populations and, then, evaluated whether any other populations exhibit this level of genetic discontinuity (NMFS and USFWS 2020).

To evaluate the RMUs and fine-scale structure in the Atlantic, Dutton et al. (2013) conducted a comprehensive genetic re-analysis of rookery stock structure. Samples from eight nesting sites in the Atlantic and one in the southwest Indian Ocean identified seven management units in the Atlantic and revealed fine scale genetic differentiation among neighboring populations. The mtDNA analysis failed to find significant differentiation between Florida and Costa Rica or between Trinidad and French Guiana/Suriname (Dutton et al. 2013). While Dutton et al. (2013) identified fine-scale genetic partitioning in the Atlantic Ocean, the differences did not rise to the level of marked separation or discreteness (NMFS and USFWS 2020). Other genetic analyses corroborate the conclusions of Dutton et al. (2013). These studies analyzed nesting sites in French Guiana (Molfetti et al. 2013), nesting and foraging areas in Brazil (Vargas et al. 2019), and nesting beaches in the Caribbean (Carreras et al. 2013). These studies all support three discrete populations in the Atlantic (NMFS and USFWS 2020). While these studies detected fine-scale genetic differentiation in the NW, SW, and SE Atlantic populations, the status review team determined that none indicated that the genetic differences were sufficient to be considered marked separation (NMFS and USFWS 2020).

Population growth rates for leatherback sea turtles vary by ocean basin. An assessment of leatherback populations through 2010 found a global decline overall (Wallace et al. 2013). Using datasets with abundance data series that are 10 years or greater, they estimated that leatherback populations have declined from 90,599 nests per year to 54,262 nests per year over three generations ending in 2010 (Wallace et al. 2013).

Several more recent assessments have been conducted. The Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group was formed to compile nesting abundance data, analyze regional trends, and provide conservation recommendations. The most recent, published IUCN Red List assessment for the NW Atlantic Ocean subpopulation estimated 20,000 mature individuals and approximately 23,000 nests per year (estimate to 2017) (Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2019). Annual nest counts show high inter-annual variability within and across nesting sites (Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2018). Using data from 24 nesting sites in 10 nations within the NW Atlantic DPS, the leatherback status review estimated that the total index of nesting female abundance for the NW Atlantic DPS is 20,659 females (NMFS and USFWS 2020). This estimate only includes nesting data from recently and consistently monitored nesting beaches. An index (rather than a census) was developed given that the estimate is based on the number of nests on main nesting beaches with recent and consistent data and assumes a 3-year remigration interval. This index provides a minimum estimate of nesting female abundance (NMFS and USFWS 2020). This index of nesting female abundance is similar to other estimates. The TEWG estimated approximately 18,700 (range 10,000 to 31,000) adult females using nesting data from 2004 and 2005 (TEWG 2007). As described above, the IUCN Red List Assessment estimated 20,000 mature individuals (male and female). The estimate in the status review is higher than the estimate for the IUCN Red List assessment, likely due to a different remigration interval, which has been increasing in recent years (NMFS and USFWS 2020).

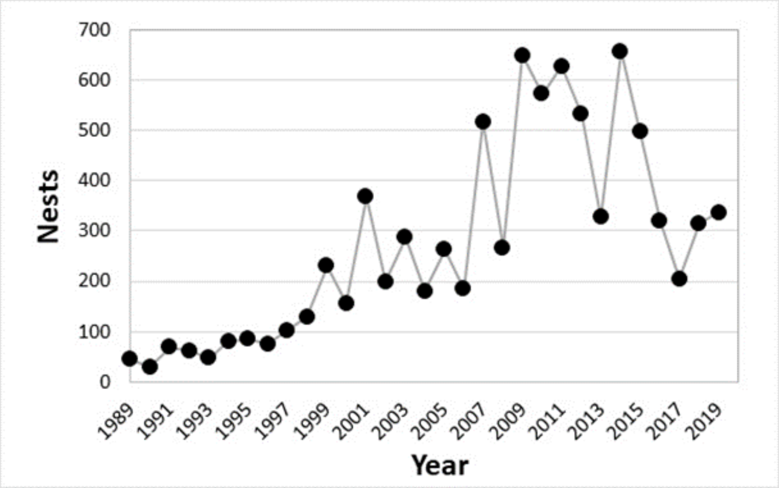
Previous assessments of leatherbacks concluded that the Northwest Atlantic population was stable or increasing (TEWG 2007, Tiwari et al. 2013b). However, based on more recent analyses, leatherback nesting in the Northwest Atlantic is showing an overall negative trend, with the most notable decrease occurring during the most recent period of 2008-2017 (Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2018). The analyses for the IUCN Red List assessment indicate that the overall regional, abundance-weighted trends are negative (Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2018, 2019). The dataset for trend analyses included 23 sites across 14 countries/territories. Three periods were used for the trend analysis: long-term (1990-2017), intermediate (1998-2017), and recent (2008-2017) trends. Overall, regional, abundance-weighted trends were negative across the periods and became more negative as the time-series became shorter. At the stock level, the Working Group evaluated the NW Atlantic – Guianas-Trinidad, Florida, Northern Caribbean, and the Western Caribbean. The NW Atlantic – Guianas-Trinidad stock is the largest stock and declined significantly across all periods, which was attributed to an exponential decline in abundance at Awala-Yalimapo, French Guiana as well as declines in Guyana, Suriname, Cayenne, and Matura. Declines in Awala-Yalimapo were attributed, in part, due to a beach erosion and a loss of nesting habitat (Northwest Atlantic

Leatherback Working Group 2018). The Florida stock increased significantly over the long-term, but declined from 2008-2017. The Northern Caribbean and Western Caribbean stocks also declined over all three periods. The Working Group report also includes trends at the site-level, which varied depending on the site and time period, but were generally negative especially in the recent time period. The Working Group identified anthropogenic sources (fishery bycatch, vessel strikes), habitat loss, and changes in life history parameters as possible drivers of nesting abundance declines (Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2018). Fisheries bycatch is a well-documented threat to leatherback turtles. The Working Group discussed entanglement in vertical line fisheries off New England and Canada as potentially important mortality sinks. They also noted that vessels strikes result in mortality annually in feeding habitats off New England. Off nesting beaches in Trinidad and the Guianas, net fisheries take leatherbacks in high numbers (~3,000/yr.) (Eckert 2013, Lum 2006, Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2018).

Similarly, the leatherback status review concluded that the NW Atlantic DPS exhibits decreasing nest trends at nesting aggregations with the greatest indices of nesting female abundance. Significant declines have been observed at nesting beaches with the greatest historical or current nesting female abundance, most notably in Trinidad and Tobago, Suriname, and French Guiana. Though some nesting aggregations (see status review document for information on specific nesting aggregations) indicated increasing trends, most of the largest ones are declining. The declining trend is considered to be representative of the DPS (NMFS and USFWS 2020). The status review found that fisheries bycatch is the primary threat to the NW Atlantic DPS (NMFS and USFWS 2020).

Within the action area, leatherback sea turtles nest in the southeastern United States. From 1989-2019, leatherback nests at core index beaches in Florida have varied from a minimum of 30 nests in 1990 to a maximum of 657 in 2014 (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/). Leatherback nesting declined from 2014 to 2017. Although slight increases were seen in 2018 and 2019, nest counts remain low compared to the numbers documented from 2008-2015 (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/) (Figure 5.2.10). The status review found that the median trend for Florida from 2008-2017 was a decrease of 2.1% annually (NMFS and USFWS 2020).

Figure 5.2.10. Number of leatherback sea turtle nests on core index beaches in Florida from 1989-2019 (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/)



For the SW Atlantic DPS, the status review estimates the total index of nesting female abundance at approximately 27 females (NMFS and USFWS 2020). This is similar to the IUCN Red List assessment that estimated 35 mature individuals (male and female) using nesting data since 2010. Nesting has increased since 2010 overall, though the 2014-2017 estimates were lower than the previous three years. The trend is increasing, though variable (NMFS and USFWS 2020). The SE Atlantic DPS has an index of nesting female abundance of 9,198 females and demonstrates a declining nest trend at the largest nesting aggregation (NMFS and USFWS 2020). The SE DPS exhibits a declining nest trend (NMFS and USFWS 2020).

Populations in the Pacific have shown dramatic declines at many nesting sites (Mazaris et al. 2017, Santidrián Tomillo et al. 2017, Santidrián Tomillo et al. 2007, Sarti Martínez et al. 2007, Tapilatu et al. 2013). For an IUCN Red List evaluation, datasets for nesting at all index beaches for the West Pacific population were compiled (Tiwari et al. 2013a). This assessment estimated the number of total mature individuals (males and females) at Jamursba-Medi and Wermon beaches to be 1,438 turtles(Tiwari et al. 2013a). Counts of leatherbacks at nesting beaches in the western Pacific indicate that the subpopulation declined at a rate of almost 6% per year from 1984 to 2011 (Tapilatu et al. 2013). More recently, the leatherback status review estimated the total index of nesting female abundance of the West Pacific DPS at 1,277 females, and the DPS exhibits low hatchling success (NMFS and USFWS 2020). The total index of nesting female abundance for the East Pacific DPS is 755 nesting females. It has exhibited a decreasing trend since monitoring began with a 97.4% decline since the 1980s or 1990s, depending on nesting beach (Wallace et al. 2013). The low productivity parameters, drastic reductions in nesting female abundance, and current declines in nesting place the DPS at risk (NMFS and USFWS 2020).

Population abundance in the Indian Ocean is difficult to assess due to lack of data and inconsistent reporting. Available data from southern Mozambique show that approximately 10 females nest per year from 1994 to 2004, and about 296 nests per year were counted in South Africa (NMFS and USFWS 2013). A 5-year status review in 2013 found that, in the southwest Indian Ocean, populations in South Africa are stable (NMFS and USFWS 2013). More recently, the 2020 status review estimated that the total index of nesting female abundance for the SW

Indian DPS is 149 females and that the DPS is exhibiting a slight decreasing nest trend (NMFS and USFWS 2020). While data on nesting in the NE Indian Ocean DPS is limited, the DPS is estimated at 109 females. This DPS has exhibited a drastic population decline with extirpation of the largest nesting aggregation in Malaysia (NMFS and USFWS 2020).

Status

The leatherback sea turtle is an endangered species whose once large nesting populations have experienced steep declines in recent decades. There has been a global decline overall. For all DPSs, including the NW Atlantic DPS, fisheries bycatch is the primary threat to the species (NMFS and USFWS 2020). Leatherback turtle nesting in the Northwest Atlantic showed an overall negative trend through 2017, with the most notable decrease occurring during the most recent time frame of 2008 to 2017 (Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2018). Though some nesting aggregations indicated increasing trends, most of the largest ones are declining. Therefore, the leatherback status review in 2020 concluded that the NW Atlantic DPS exhibits an overall decreasing trend in annual nesting activity (NMFS and USFWS 2020). Threats to leatherback sea turtles include loss of nesting habitat, fisheries bycatch, vessel strikes, harvest of eggs, and marine debris, among others (Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2018). Because of the threats, once large nesting areas in the Indian and Pacific Oceans are now functionally extinct (Tiwari et al. 2013a) and there have been range-wide reductions in population abundance. The species' resilience to additional perturbation both within the NW Atlantic and worldwide is low.

Critical Habitat

Critical habitat has been designated for leatherback sea turtles in the waters adjacent to Sandy Point, St. Croix, U.S. Virgin Islands (44 FR 17710, March 23, 1979) and along the U.S. West Coast (77 FR 4170, January 26, 2012), both of which are outside the action area.

Recovery Goals

There are separate plans for the U.S. Caribbean, Gulf of Mexico, and Atlantic (NMFS and USFWS 1992) and the U.S. Pacific (NMFS and USFWS 1998) populations of leatherback sea turtles. Neither plan has been recently updated. As with other sea turtle species, the recovery plans for leatherbacks includes criteria for considering delisting. These criteria relate to increases in the populations, nesting trends, nesting beach and habitat protection, and implementation of priority actions. Criteria for delisting in the recovery plan for the U.S. Caribbean, Gulf of Mexico, and Atlantic are described here.

Delisting criteria

1. Adult female population increases for 25 years after publication of the recovery plan, as evidenced by a statistically significant trend in nest numbers at Culebra, Puerto Rico; St. Croix, U.S. Virgin Islands; and the east coast of Florida.
2. Nesting habitat encompassing at least 75% of nesting activity in the U.S. Virgin Islands, Puerto Rico, and Florida is in public ownership.
3. All priority-one tasks have been successfully implemented (see the recovery plan for a list of priority one tasks).

Major recovery actions in the U.S. Caribbean, Gulf of Mexico, and Atlantic include actions to:

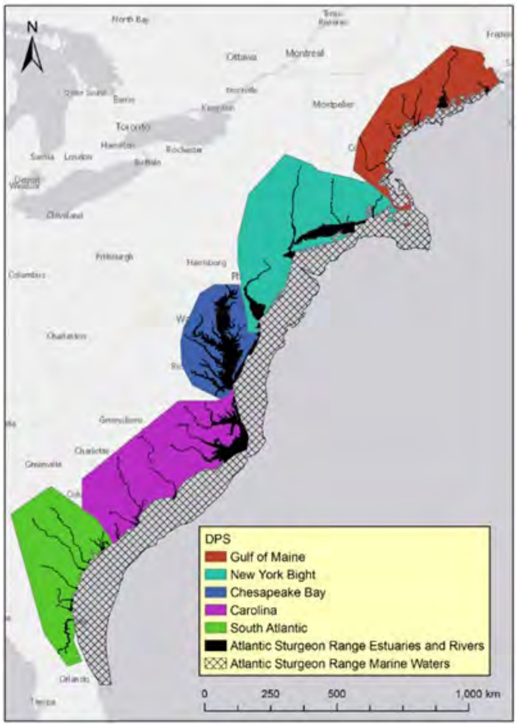
1. Protect and manage terrestrial and marine habitats.
2. Protect and manage the population.
3. Inform and educate the public.
4. Develop and implement international agreements.

The 2013 Five-Year Review (NMFS and USFWS 2013) concluded that the leatherback turtle should not be delisted or reclassified and notes that the 1991 and 1998 recovery plans are dated and do not address the major, emerging threat of climate change.

5.3 Atlantic Sturgeon

An estuarine-dependent anadromous species, Atlantic sturgeon occupy ocean and estuarine waters, including sounds, bays, and tidal-affected rivers from Hamilton Inlet, Labrador, Canada, to Cape Canaveral, Florida (ASSRT 2007) (Figure 5.3.1). On February 6, 2012, NMFS listed five DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon under the ESA: Gulf of Maine (GOM), New York Bight (NYB), Chesapeake Bay (CB), Carolina, and South Atlantic (77 FR 5880 and 77 FR 5914). The Gulf of Maine DPS is listed as threatened, and the New York Bight, Chesapeake Bay, Carolina, and South Atlantic DPSs are listed as endangered.

Figure 5.3.1. U.S. range of Atlantic sturgeon DPSs



Information available from the 2007 Atlantic sturgeon status review (ASSRT 2007), 2017 ASMFC benchmark stock assessment (ASMFC 2017), final listing rules (77 FR 5880 and 77 FR 5914; February 6, 2012), and material supporting the designation of Atlantic sturgeon critical habitat (NMFS 2017a) were used to summarize the life history, population dynamics, and status of the species.

Life History
Atlantic sturgeon are a late maturing, anadromous species (ASSRT 2007, Balazik et al. 2010, Hilton et al. 2016, Sulak and Randall 2002). Sexual maturity is reached between the ages of 5 to 34 years. Sturgeon originating from rivers in lower latitudes (e.g., South Carolina rivers) mature faster than those originating from rivers located in higher latitudes (e.g., Saint Lawrence River) (NMFS 2017a).

Atlantic sturgeon spawn in freshwater (ASSRT 2007, NMFS 2017b) at sites with flowing water and hard bottom substrate (Bain et al. 2000, Balazik et al. 2012b, Gilbert 1989, Greene et al. 2009, Hatin et al. 2002, Mohler 2003, Smith and Clugston 1997, Vladykov and Greeley 1963). Water depths of spawning sites are highly variable, but may be up to 88.5 ft. (27 m) (Bain et al. 2000, Crance 1987, Leland 1968, Scott and Crossman 1973). Based on tagging records, Atlantic sturgeon return to their natal rivers to spawn (ASSRT 2007), with spawning intervals ranging from one to five years in males (Caron et al. 2002, Collins et al. 2000b, Smith 1985) and two to five years in females (Stevenson and Secor 1999, Van Eenennaam et al. 1996, Vladykov and Greeley 1963). Some Atlantic sturgeon river populations may have up to two spawning seasons comprised of different spawning adults (Balazik and Musick 2015, Collins et al. 2000b), although the majority likely have just one, either in the spring or fall.[17] There is evidence of spring and fall spawning for the South Atlantic DPS (77 FR 5914, February 6, 2012, Collins et al. 2000b, NMFS and USFWS 1998b) (Collins et al. 2000b, NMFS and USFWS 1998), spring spawning for the Gulf of Maine and New York Bight DPSs (NMFS 2017a), and fall spawning for the Chesapeake and Carolina DPSs (Balazik et al. 2012a, Smith et al. 1984). While spawning has not been confirmed in the James River (Chesapeake Bay DPS), telemetry and empirical data suggest that there may be two potential spawning runs: a spring run from late March to early May and a fall run around September after an extended staging period in the lower river (Balazik et al. 2012a, Balazik and Musick 2015).

Following spawning, males move downriver to the lower estuary and remain there until outmigration in the fall (Bain 1997, Bain et al. 2000, Balazik et al. 2012a, Breece et al. 2013, Dovel and Berggren 1983a, Greene et al. 2009, Hatin et al. 2002, Ingram et al. 2019, Smith 1985, Smith et al. 1982). Females move downriver and may leave the estuary and travel to other coastal estuaries until outmigration to marine waters in the fall (Bain 1997, Bain et al. 2000, Balazik et al. 2012a, Breece et al. 2013, Dovel and Berggren 1983a, Greene et al. 2009, Hatin et al. 2002, NMFS 2017a, Smith 1985, Smith et al. 1982). Atlantic sturgeon deposit eggs on hard bottom substrate. They hatch into the yolk sac larval stage approximately 94 to 140 hours after deposition (Mohler 2003, Murawski and Pacheco 1977, Smith et al. 1980, Van Den Avyle 1984, Vladykov and Greeley 1963). Once the yolk sac is absorbed (eight to twelve days post-hatching), sturgeon are larvae. Shortly after, they become young of year and then juveniles. The juvenile stage can last months to years in the brackish waters of the natal estuary (ASSRT 2007, Calvo et al. 2010, Collins et al. 2000a, Dadswell 2006, Dovel and Berggren 1983b, Greene et al. 2009, Hatin et al. 2007, Holland and Yelverton 1973, Kynard and Horgan 2002, Mohler 2003,

---

[17] Although referred to as spring spawning and fall spawning, the actual time of Atlantic sturgeon spawning may not occur during the astronomical spring or fall season (Balazik and Musick 2015).

Schueller and Peterson 2010, Secor et al. 2000, Waldman et al. 1996). Upon reaching the sub-adult phase, individuals enter the marine environment, mixing with adults and sub-adults from other river systems (Bain 1997, Dovel and Berggren 1983a, Hatin et al. 2007, McCord et al. 2007) (NMFS 2017a). Once sub-adult Atlantic sturgeon have reached maturity/the adult stage, they will remain in marine or estuarine waters, only returning far upstream to the spawning areas when they are ready to spawn (ASSRT 2007, Bain 1997, Breece et al. 2016, Dunton et al. 2012, Dunton et al. 2015, Savoy and Pacileo 2003).

The life history of Atlantic sturgeon can be divided up into seven general categories as described in Table 5.3.1 below (adapted from ASSRT 2007).

Table 5.3.1. Descriptions of Atlantic sturgeon life history stages

Age Class	Size	Duration	Description
Egg	~2 mm – 3 mm diameter (Van Eenennaam et al. 1996)(p. 773)	Hatching occurs ~3-6 days after egg deposition and fertilization (ASSRT 2007)(p. 4))	Fertilized or unfertilized
Yolk-sac larvae (YSL)	~6mm – 14 mm (Bath et al. 1981)(pp. 714-715))	8-12 days post hatch (ASSRT 2007)(p. 4))	Negative photo-taxic, nourished by yolk sac
Post yolk-sac larvae (PYSL)	~14mm – 37mm (Bath et al. 1981)(pp. 714-715))	12-40 days post hatch	Free swimming; feeding; Silt/sand bottom, deep channel; fresh water
Young of Year (YOY)	0.3 grams <410mm TL	From 40 days to 1 year	Fish that are > 40 days and < one year; capable of capturing and consuming live food
Juveniles	>410mm and <760mm TL	1 year to time at which first coastal migration is made	Fish that are at least age 1 and are not sexually mature and do not make coastal migrations.
Subadults	>760 mm and <1500 mm TL	From first coastal migration to sexual maturity	Fish that are not sexually mature but make coastal migrations
Adults	>1500 mm TL	Post-maturation	Sexually mature fish

Population Dynamics

A population estimate was derived from the NEAMAP trawl surveys.[18] For this Opinion, as we did in the prior 2013 Opinion, we are relying on the population estimates derived from the NEAMAP swept area biomass assuming a 50% catchability (i.e., net efficiency x availability) rate. We consider that the NEAMAP surveys sample an area utilized by Atlantic sturgeon but do not sample all the locations and times where Atlantic sturgeon are present. We also consider that the trawl net captures some, but likely not all, of the Atlantic sturgeon present in the sampling area. Therefore, we assume that net efficiency and the fraction of the population exposed to the NEAMAP surveys in combination result in a 50% catchability (NMFS 2013). The 50% catchability assumption reasonably accounts for the robust, yet not complete, sampling of the Atlantic sturgeon oceanic temporal and spatial ranges and the documented high rates of encounter with NEAMAP survey gear. As these estimates are derived directly from empirical data with fewer assumptions than have been required to model Atlantic sturgeon populations to date, we believe these estimates continue to serve as the best available information. Based on the above approach, the overall abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in U.S. Atlantic waters is estimated to be 67,776 fish (see table16 in Kocik et al. 2013). Based on genetic frequencies of occurrence in the sampled area, this overall population estimate was subsequently partitioned by DPS (Table 5.3.2). Given the proportion of adults to sub-adults in the NMFS NEFSC observer data (approximate ratio of 1:3), we have also estimated the number of adults and sub-adults originating from each DPS. However, this cannot be considered an estimate of the total number of sub-adults because it only considers those sub-adults that are of a size that are present and vulnerable to capture in commercial trawl and gillnet gear in the marine environment.

It is important to note, the NEAMAP-based estimates do not include young-of-the-year (YOY) fish and juveniles in the rivers; however, those segments of the Atlantic sturgeon populations are at minimal risk from the proposed actions since they are rare to absent within the action area. The NEAMAP surveys are conducted in waters that include the preferred depth ranges of sub-adult and adult Atlantic sturgeon and take place during seasons that coincide with known Atlantic sturgeon coastal migration patterns in the ocean. However, the estimated number of sub-adults in marine waters is a minimum count because it only considers those sub-adults that are captured in a portion of the action area and are present in the marine environment, which is only a fraction of the total number of sub-adults. In regards to adult Atlantic sturgeon, the estimated population in marine waters is also a minimum count as the NEAMAP surveys sample only a portion of the action area, and therefore a portion of the Atlantic sturgeon's range.

Table 5.3.2. Calculated population estimates based upon the NEAMAP survey swept area model, assuming 50% efficiency

DPS	Estimated Ocean Population Abundance	Estimated Ocean Population of Adults	Estimated Ocean Population of Sub-adults (of size vulnerable to capture in fisheries)
GOM	7,455	1,864	5,591

---

[18] Since fall 2007, NEAMAP trawl surveys (spring and fall) have been conducted from Cape Cod, Massachusetts to Cape Hatteras, North Carolina in nearshore waters at depths up to 60 ft. (18.3 m). Each survey employs a spatially stratified random design with a total of 35 strata and 150 stations.

DPS	Estimated Ocean Population Abundance	Estimated Ocean Population of Adults	Estimated Ocean Population of Sub-adults (of size vulnerable to capture in fisheries)
NYB	34,566	8,642	25,925
CB	8,811	2,203	6,608
Carolina	1,356	339	1,017
SA	14,911	3,728	11,183
Canada	678	170	509

Precise estimates of population growth rate (intrinsic rates) are unknown for the five listed DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon due to a lack of long-term abundance data. The Commission's 2017 stock assessment referenced a population viability assessment (PVA) that was done to determine population growth rates for the five DPSs based on a few long-term survey programs, but most results were statistically insignificant or utilized a model for which the available did not or poorly fit. In any event, the population growth rates reported from that PVA ranged from -1.8% to 4.9% (ASMFC 2017).

The genetic diversity of Atlantic sturgeon throughout its range has been well-documented (ASSRT 2007, Bowen and Avise 1990, O'Leary et al. 2014, Ong et al. 1996, Waldman et al. 1996, Waldman and Wirgin 1998). Overall, these studies have consistently found populations to be genetically diverse, and the majority can be readily differentiated. Relatively low rates of gene flow reported in population genetic studies (Fritts et al. 2016, Savoy et al. 2017, Wirgin et al. 2002) indicate that Atlantic sturgeon return to their natal river to spawn, despite extensive mixing in coastal waters.

The range of all five listed DPSs extends from Canada through Cape Canaveral, Florida. All five DPSs use the action area. Based on a recent genetic mixed stock analysis (Kazyak et al. 2021; the South Fork project area falls within the "MID Offshore" area described in that paper.), we expect Atlantic sturgeon throughout the action area originate from the five DPSs at the following frequencies: New York Bight (55.3%), Chesapeake (22.9%), South Atlantic (13.6%), Carolina (5.8%), Gulf of Maine (1.6%), and Gulf of Maine (1.6%) DPSs. It is possible that a small fraction (0.7%) of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area may be Canadian origin (Kazyak et al. 2021); Canadian-origin Atlantic sturgeon are not listed under the ESA. This represents the best available information on the likely genetic makeup of individuals occurring in the lease area.

Depending on life stage, sturgeon may be present in marine and estuarine ecosystems. The action area for this Opinion occurs in marine waters; therefore, this section will focus only on the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon life stages (sub-adult and adult) in marine waters; it will not discuss the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon life stages (eggs, larvae, juvenile, sub-adult, adult) in freshwater ecosystems, specifically, their movements into/out of natal river systems. For more information on Atlantic sturgeon distribution in freshwater ecosystems, refer to ASSRT (2007);

77 FR 5880 (February 6, 2012); 77 FR 5914 (February 6, 2012); NMFS (2017); and ASMFC (2017).

The marine range of U.S. Atlantic sturgeon extends from Labrador, Canada, to Cape Canaveral, Florida. As Atlantic sturgeon travel long distances in these waters, all five DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon have the potential to be anywhere in this marine range. Results from genetic studies show that, regardless of location, multiple DPSs can be found at any one location along the Northwest Atlantic coast, although the Hudson River population from the New York Bight DPS dominates (ASMFC 2017, ASSRT 2007, Dadswell 2006, Dovel and Berggren 1983a, Dunton et al. 2012, Dunton et al. 2015, Dunton et al. 2010, Erickson et al. 2011, Kynard et al. 2000, Laney et al. 2007, O'Leary et al. 2014, Stein et al. 2004b, Waldman et al. 2013, Wirgin et al. 2015a, Wirgin et al. 2015b, Wirgin et al. 2012).

Based on fishery-independent, fishery dependent, tracking, and tagging data, Atlantic sturgeon appear to primarily occur inshore of the 164 ft. (50 m) depth contour (Dunton et al. 2012, Dunton et al. 2010, Erickson et al. 2011, Laney et al. 2007, O'Leary et al. 2014, Stein et al. 2004a, b, Waldman et al. 2013, Wirgin et al. 2015a, Wirgin et al. 2015b). However, they are not restricted to these depths and excursions into deeper (e.g., 250 ft. (75 m)) continental shelf waters have been documented (Colette and Klein-MacPhee 2002, Collins and Smith 1997, Erickson et al. 2011, Stein et al. 2004b, Timoshkin 1968). Data from fishery-independent surveys and tagging and tracking studies also indicate that some Atlantic sturgeon may undertake seasonal movements along the coast (Dunton et al. 2010, Erickson et al. 2011, Hilton et al. 2016, Oliver et al. 2013, Post et al. 2014, Wippelhauser 2012). For instance, studies found that satellite-tagged adult sturgeon from the Hudson River concentrated in the southern part of the Mid-Atlantic Bight, at depths greater than 66 ft. (20 m), during winter and spring; while, in the summer and fall, Atlantic sturgeon concentrations shifted to the northern portion of the Mid-Atlantic Bight at depths less than 66 ft. (20 m) (Erickson et al. 2011).

In the marine range, several marine aggregation areas occur adjacent to estuaries and/or coastal features formed by bay mouths and inlets along the U.S. eastern seaboard (i.e., waters off North Carolina; Chesapeake Bay; Delaware Bay; New York Bight; Massachusetts Bay; Long Island Sound; and Connecticut and Kennebec River Estuaries). Depths in these areas are generally no greater than 82 ft. (25 m) (Bain et al. 2000, Dunton et al. 2010, Erickson et al. 2011, Laney et al. 2007, O'Leary et al. 2014, Oliver et al. 2013, Savoy and Pacileo 2003, Stein et al. 2004b, Waldman et al. 2013, Wippelhauser 2012, Wippelhauser and Squiers 2015). Although additional studies are still needed to clarify why Atlantic sturgeon aggregate at these sites, there is some indication that they may serve as thermal refugia, wintering sites, or marine foraging areas (Dunton et al. 2010, Erickson et al. 2011, Stein et al. 2004b).

Status

Atlantic sturgeon were once present in 38 river systems and, of these, spawned in 35 (ASSRT 2007). They are currently present in 36 rivers and are probably present in additional rivers that provide sufficient forage base, depth, and access (ASSRT 2007). The benchmark stock assessment evaluated evidence for spawning tributaries and sub-populations of U.S. Atlantic sturgeon in 39 rivers. They confirmed (eggs, embryo, larvae, or YOY observed) spawning in ten rivers, considered spawning highly likely (adults expressing gametes, discrete genetic composition) in nine rivers, and suspected (adults observed in upper reaches of tributaries, historical accounts, presence of resident juveniles) spawning in six rivers. Spawning in the remaining rivers was unknown (ten) or suspected historical (four) (ASMFC 2017). The decline in abundance of Atlantic sturgeon has been attributed primarily to the large U.S. commercial fishery, which existed for the Atlantic sturgeon through the mid-1990s. Based on management recommendations in the ISFMP, adopted by the Commission in 1990, commercial harvest in Atlantic coastal states was severely restricted and ultimately eliminated from most coastal states (ASMFC 1998a). In 1998, the Commission placed a 20-40 year moratorium on all Atlantic sturgeon fisheries until the spawning stocked could be restored to a level where 20 subsequent year classes of adult females were protected (ASMFC 1998a, b). In 1999, NMFS closed the U.S. EEZ to Atlantic sturgeon retention, pursuant to the ACA (64 FR 9449; February 26, 1999). However, many state fisheries for sturgeon were closed prior to this.

The most significant threats to Atlantic sturgeon are incidental catch, dams that block access to spawning habitat in southern rivers, poor water quality, dredging of spawning areas, water withdrawals from rivers, and vessel strikes. Climate change related impacts on water quality (e.g., temperature, salinity, dissolved oxygen, contaminants) also have the potential to affect Atlantic sturgeon populations using impacted river systems.

In support of the above, the Commission released a new benchmark stock assessment for Atlantic sturgeon in October 2017 (ASMFC 2017). Based on historic removals and estimated effective population size, the 2017 stock assessment concluded that all five Atlantic sturgeon DPSs are depleted relative to historical levels. However, the 2017 stock assessment does provide some evidence of population recovery at the coastwide scale, and mixed population recovery at the DPS scale (ASMFC 2017). The 2017 stock assessment also concluded that a variety of factors (i.e., bycatch, habitat loss, and ship strikes) continue to impede the recovery rate of Atlantic sturgeon (ASMFC 2017).

Despite the depleted status, the Commission's assessment did include signs that the coastwide index is above the 1998 value (95% probability). Total mortality from the tagging model was very low at the coastwide level. Small sample sizes made mortality estimates at the DPS level more difficult. By DPS, the assessment concluded that there was a 51% probability that the Gulf of Maine DPS abundance has increased since 1998 but a 74% probability that mortality for this DPS exceeds the mortality threshold used for the assessment. There is a relatively high (75%) probability that the New York Bight DPS abundance has increased since 1998, and a 31% probability that mortality exceeds the mortality threshold used for the assessment. There is also a relatively high (67%) probability that the Carolina DPS abundance has increased since 1998, and a relatively high probability (75%) that mortality for this DPS exceeds the mortality threshold used in the assessment. However, the index from the Chesapeake Bay DPS (highlighted red) only had a 36% chance of being above the 1998 value and a 30% probability that the mortality for this DPS exceeds the mortality threshold for the assessment. There was not enough information available to assess the abundance for the for the South Atlantic DPS relative to the 1998 moratorium, but the assessment did conclude that there was 40% probability that the mortality for this DPS exceeds the mortality threshold used in the assessment (ASMFC 2017).

5.3.1 Gulf of Maine DPS

The Gulf of Maine DPS includes the following: all anadromous Atlantic sturgeons that are spawned in the watersheds from the Maine/Canadian border and, extending southward, all watersheds draining into the Gulf of Maine as far south as Chatham, MA. Within this range, Atlantic sturgeon historically spawned in the Androscoggin, Kennebec, Merrimack, Penobscot, and Sheepscot Rivers (ASSRT, 2007). Spawning occurs in the Kennebec River. The capture of a larval Atlantic sturgeon in the Androscoggin River below the Brunswick Dam in the spring of 2011 indicates spawning may also occur in that river. There is no evidence of recent spawning in the remaining rivers. Atlantic sturgeons that are spawned elsewhere continue to use habitats within all of these rivers as part of their overall marine range (ASSRT, 2007). The movement of subadult and adult sturgeon between rivers, including to and from the Kennebec River and the Penobscot River, demonstrates that coastal and marine migrations are key elements of Atlantic sturgeon life history for the Gulf of Maine DPS (ASSRT, 2007; Fernandes, *et al.*, 2010).

The current status of the Gulf of Maine DPS is affected by historical and modern fisheries dating as far back as the 1800s (Squiers *et al.*, 1979; Stein *et al.*, 2004; ASMFC 2007). Incidental capture of Atlantic sturgeon in state and Federal fisheries continues today. As explained above, we have estimates of the number of subadults and adults that are killed as a result of bycatch in fisheries authorized under Northeast FMPs. At this time, we are not able to quantify the impacts from other threats or estimate the number of individuals killed as a result of other anthropogenic threats. Habitat disturbance and direct mortality from anthropogenic sources are the primary concerns.

Some of the impacts from the threats that contributed to the decline of the Gulf of Maine DPS have been removed (e.g., directed fishing), or reduced as a result of improvements in water quality and removal of dams (e.g., the Edwards Dam on the Kennebec River in 1999, the Veazie Dam on the Penobscot River). There are strict regulations on the use of fishing gear in Maine state waters that incidentally catch sturgeon. In addition, there have been reductions in fishing effort in state and federal waters, which most likely would result in a reduction in bycatch mortality of Atlantic sturgeon. A significant amount of fishing in the Gulf of Maine is conducted using trawl gear, which is known to have a much lower mortality rate for Atlantic sturgeon caught in the gear compared to sink gillnet gear (ASMFC, 2007). Atlantic sturgeon from the GOM DPS are not commonly taken as bycatch in areas south of Chatham, MA, with only 8 percent (e.g., 7 of the 84 fish) of interactions observed in the Mid Atlantic/Carolina region being assigned to the Gulf of Maine DPS (Wirgin and King, 2011). Tagging results also indicate that Gulf of Maine DPS fish tend to remain within the waters of the Gulf of Maine and only occasionally venture to points south. However, data on Atlantic sturgeon incidentally caught in trawls and intertidal fish weirs fished in the Minas Basin area of the Bay of Fundy (Canada) indicate that approximately 35 percent originated from the Gulf of Maine DPS (Wirgin *et al.*, in draft).

As noted previously, studies have shown that in order to rebuild, Atlantic sturgeon can only sustain low levels of bycatch and other anthropogenic mortality (Boreman, 1997; ASMFC, 2007; Kahnle *et al.*, 2007; Brown and Murphy, 2010). NMFS has determined that the Gulf of Maine DPS is at risk of becoming endangered in the foreseeable future throughout all of its range (i.e., is a threatened species) based on the following: (1) significant declines in population sizes and the protracted period during which sturgeon populations have been depressed; (2) the limited amount of current spawning; and, (3) the impacts and threats that have and will continue to affect recovery.

5.3.2 New York Bight DPS

The New York Bight DPS includes the following: all anadromous Atlantic sturgeon spawned in the watersheds that drain into coastal waters from Chatham, MA to the Delaware-Maryland border on Fenwick Island. Within this range, Atlantic sturgeon historically spawned in the Connecticut, Delaware, Hudson, and Taunton Rivers (Murawski and Pacheco, 1977; Secor, 2002; ASSRT, 2007). Spawning still occurs in the Delaware and Hudson Rivers. There is no recent evidence (within the last 15 years) of spawning in the Taunton River (ASSRT, 2007). Atlantic sturgeon that are spawned elsewhere continue to use habitats within the Connecticut and Taunton Rivers as part of their overall marine range (ASSRT, 2007; Savoy, 2007; Wirgin and King, 2011).

In 2014, several presumed age-0 Atlantic sturgeon were captured in the Connecticut River; the available information indicates that successful spawning took place in 2013 by a small number of adults. Genetic analysis of the juveniles indicates that the adults were likely migrants from the South Atlantic DPS (Savoy et al. 2017). As noted by the authors, this conclusion is counter to prevailing information regarding straying of adult Atlantic sturgeon. As these captures represent the only contemporary records of possible natal Atlantic sturgeon in the Connecticut River and the genetic analysis is unexpected, more information is needed to establish the frequency of spawning in the Connecticut River and whether there is a unique Connecticut River population of Atlantic sturgeon.

The abundance of the Hudson River Atlantic sturgeon riverine population prior to the onset of expanded exploitation in the 1800s is unknown but has been conservatively estimated at 10,000 adult females (Secor, 2002). Current abundance is likely at least one order of magnitude smaller than historical levels (Secor, 2002; ASSRT, 2007; Kahnle *et al.*, 2007). As described above, an estimate of the mean annual number of mature adults (863 total; 596 males and 267 females) was calculated for the Hudson River riverine population based on fishery-dependent data collected from 1985-1995 (Kahnle *et al.*, 2007). Kahnle *et al.* (1998; 2007) also showed that the level of fishing mortality from the Hudson River Atlantic sturgeon fishery during the period of 1985-1995 exceeded the estimated sustainable level of fishing mortality for the riverine population and may have led to reduced recruitment. A decline in the abundance of young Atlantic sturgeon appeared to occur in the mid to late 1970s followed by a secondary drop in the late 1980s (Kahnle *et al.*, 1998; Sweka *et al.*, 2007; ASMFC, 2010). At the time of listing, catch-per-unit-effort (CPUE) data suggested that recruitment remained depressed relative to catches of juvenile Atlantic sturgeon in the estuary during the mid-late 1980s (Sweka *et al.*, 2007; ASMFC, 2010). In examining the CPUE data from 1985-2007, there are significant fluctuations during this time. There appears to be a decline in the number of juveniles between the late 1980s and early 1990s while the CPUE is generally higher in the 2000s as compared to the 1990s. Given the significant annual fluctuation, it is difficult to discern any trend. Despite the CPUEs from 2000-2007 being generally higher than those from 1990-1999, they are low compared to the late 1980s. Standardized mean catch per net set from the NYSDEC juvenile Atlantic sturgeon survey have had a general increasing trend from 2006 – 2015, with the exception of a dip in 2013.

In addition to capture in fisheries operating in Federal waters, bycatch and mortality also occur in state fisheries; however, the primary fishery (shad) that impacted juvenile sturgeon in the Hudson River, has now been closed and there is no indication that it will reopen soon. In the Hudson River, sources of potential mortality include vessel strikes and entrainment in dredges. Individuals are also exposed to effects of bridge construction (including the replacement of the Tappan Zee Bridge). Impingement at water intakes, including the Danskammer, Roseton, and Indian Point power plants has been documented in the past. Recent information from surveys of juveniles (see above) indicates that the number of young Atlantic sturgeon in the Hudson River is increasing compared to recent years, but is still low compared to the 1970s. There is currently not enough information regarding any life stage to establish a trend for the entire Hudson River population.

There is no abundance estimate for the Delaware River population of Atlantic sturgeon. Harvest records from the 1800s indicate that this was historically a large population with an estimated 180,000 adult females prior to 1890 (Secor and Waldman, 1999; Secor, 2002). Sampling in 2009 to target young-of- the year (YOY) Atlantic sturgeon in the Delaware River (i.e., natal sturgeon) resulted in the capture of 34 YOY, ranging in size from 178 to 349 mm TL (Fisher, 2009) and the collection of 32 YOY Atlantic sturgeon in a separate study (Brundage and O'Herron in Calvo *et al.*, 2010). Genetics information collected from 33 of the 2009-year class YOY indicates that at least three females successfully contributed to the 2009-year class (Fisher, 2011). Therefore, while the capture of YOY in 2009 provides evidence that successful spawning is still occurring in the Delaware River, the relatively low numbers suggest the existing riverine population is limited in size.

Some of the impact from the threats that contributed to the decline of the New York Bight DPS have been removed (e.g., directed fishing) or reduced as a result of improvements in water quality since passage of the Clean Water Act (CWA). In addition, there have been reductions in fishing effort in state and federal waters, which may result in a reduction in bycatch mortality of Atlantic sturgeon. Nevertheless, areas with persistent, degraded water quality, habitat impacts from dredging, continued bycatch in state and federally managed fisheries, and vessel strikes remain significant threats to the New York Bight DPS.

In the marine range, New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon are incidentally captured in federal and state managed fisheries, reducing survivorship of subadult and adult Atlantic sturgeon (Stein *et al.*, 2004; ASMFC 2007). As explained above, currently available estimates indicate that at least 4% of adults may be killed as a result of bycatch in fisheries authorized under Northeast FMPs. Based on mixed stock analysis results presented by Wirgin and King (2011), over 40 percent of the Atlantic sturgeon bycatch interactions in the Mid Atlantic Bight region were sturgeon from the New York Bight DPS. Individual-based assignment and mixed stock analysis of samples collected from sturgeon captured in Canadian fisheries in the Bay of Fundy indicated that approximately 1-2% were from the New York Bight DPS. At this time, we are not able to quantify the impacts from other threats or estimate the number of individuals killed as a result of other anthropogenic threats.

Riverine habitat may be impacted by dredging and other in-water activities, disturbing spawning habitat, and altering the benthic forage base. Both the Hudson and Delaware rivers have navigation channels that are maintained by dredging. Dredging is also used to maintain channels in the nearshore marine environment. Dredging outside of Federal channels and in-water construction occurs throughout the New York Bight region. While some dredging projects operate with observers present to document fish mortalities many do not. We have reports of one Atlantic sturgeon entrained during hopper dredging operations in Ambrose Channel, New Jersey, and four fish were entrained in the Delaware River during maintenance and deepening activities in 2017 and 2018. At this time, we do not have any additional information to quantify the number of Atlantic sturgeon killed or disturbed during dredging or in-water construction projects. We are also not able to quantify any effects to habitat.

In the Hudson and Delaware Rivers, dams do not block access to historical habitat. The Holyoke Dam on the Connecticut River blocks further upstream passage; however, the extent that Atlantic sturgeon would historically have used habitat upstream of Holyoke is unknown. Connectivity may be disrupted by the presence of dams on several smaller rivers in the New York Bight region. Because no Atlantic sturgeon occur upstream of any hydroelectric projects in the New York Bight region, passage over hydroelectric dams or through hydroelectric turbines is not a source of injury or mortality in this area.

New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon may also be affected by degraded water quality. In general, water quality has improved in the Hudson and Delaware over the past decades (Lichter *et al.* 2006; EPA, 2008). Both the Hudson and Delaware rivers, as well as other rivers in the New York Bight region, were heavily polluted in the past from industrial and sanitary sewer discharges. While water quality has improved and most discharges are limited through regulations, many pollutants persist in the benthic environment. This can be particularly problematic if pollutants are present on spawning and nursery grounds as developing eggs and larvae are particularly susceptible to exposure to contaminants.

Vessel strikes occur in the Delaware and Hudson rivers. Delaware State University (DSU) collaborated with the Delaware Division of Fish and Wildlife (DDFW) in an effort to document vessel strikes in 2005. Approximately 200 reported carcasses with over half being attributed to vessel strikes based on a gross examination of wounds have been documented through 2019 (DiJohnson 2019). 138 sturgeon carcasses were observed on the Hudson River and reported to the NYSDEC between 2007 and 2015. Of these, 69 are suspected of having been killed by vessel strike. Genetic analysis has not been completed on any of these individuals to date, given that the majority of Atlantic sturgeon in the Hudson River belong to the New York Bight DPS; we assume that the majority of the dead sturgeon reported to NYSDEC belonged to the New York Bight DPS. Given the time of year in which the fish were observed (predominantly May through July), it is likely that many of the adults were migrating through the river to the spawning grounds.

Studies have shown that to rebuild, Atlantic sturgeon can only sustain low levels of anthropogenic mortality (Boreman, 1997; ASMFC, 2007; Kahnle *et al.*, 2007; Brown and Murphy, 2010). There are no empirical abundance estimates of the number of Atlantic sturgeon in the New York Bight DPS. We determined that the New York Bight DPS is currently at risk of extinction due to: (1) precipitous declines in population sizes and the protracted period in which sturgeon populations have been depressed; (2) the limited amount of current spawning; and (3) the impacts and threats that have and will continue to affect population recovery.

5.3.3 Chesapeake Bay DPS

The Chesapeake Bay (CB) DPS includes the following: all anadromous Atlantic sturgeon that spawn or are spawned in the watersheds that drain into the Chesapeake Bay and into coastal waters from the Delaware-Maryland border on Fenwick Island to Cape Henry, Virginia. The marine range of Atlantic sturgeon from the CB DPS extends from Hamilton Inlet, Labrador, Canada, to Cape Canaveral, Florida. The riverine range of the CB DPS and the adjacent portion of the marine range are shown in Figure 5.3.1. Within this range, Atlantic sturgeon historically spawned in the Susquehanna, Potomac, James, York, Rappahannock, and Nottoway Rivers (ASSRT 2007). Based on the review by Oakley (2003), 100% of Atlantic sturgeon habitat is currently accessible in these rivers since most of the barriers to passage (i.e., dams) are located upriver of where spawning is expected to have historically occurred (ASSRT 2007).

At the time of listing, the James River was the only known spawning river for the Chesapeake Bay DPS (ASSRT, 2007; Hager, 2011; Balazik et al., 2012). Since the listing, evidence has been provided of both spring and fall spawning populations for the James River, as well as fall spawning in the Pamunkey River, a tributary of the York River, and fall spawning in Marshyhope Creek, a tributary of the Nanticoke River (Hager et al., 2014; Kahn et al., 2014; Balazik and Musick, 2015; Richardson and Secor, 2016). In addition, detections of acoustically tagged adult Atlantic sturgeon in the Mattaponi and Rappahannock Rivers at the time when spawning occurs in others rivers, and historical evidence for these as well as the Potomac River supports the likelihood of Atlantic sturgeon spawning populations in the Mattaponi, Rappahannock, and potentially the Potomac river.

Several threats play a role in shaping the current status of CB DPS Atlantic sturgeon. Historical records provide evidence of the large-scale commercial exploitation of Atlantic sturgeon from the James River and Chesapeake Bay in the 19th century (Hildebrand and Schroeder 1928; Vladykov and Greeley 1963; ASMFC 1998b; Secor 2002; Bushnoe *et al.* 2005; ASSRT 2007) as well as subsistence fishing and attempts at commercial fisheries as early as the 17th century (Secor 2002; Bushnoe *et al.* 2005; ASSRT 2007; Balazik *et al.* 2010). Habitat disturbance caused by in-river work, such as dredging for navigational purposes, is thought to have reduced available spawning habitat in the James River (Holton and Walsh 1995; Bushnoe *et al.* 2005; ASSRT 2007). At this time, we do not have information to quantify this loss of spawning habitat.

Decreased water quality also threatens Atlantic sturgeon of the CB DPS, especially since the Chesapeake Bay system is vulnerable to the effects of nutrient enrichment due to a relatively low tidal exchange and flushing rate, large surface-to-volume ratio, and strong stratification during the spring and summer months (Pyzik *et al.* 2004; ASMFC 1998a; ASSRT 2007; EPA 2008). These conditions contribute to reductions in dissolved oxygen levels throughout the Bay. The availability of nursery habitat, in particular, may be limited given the recurrent hypoxia (low dissolved oxygen) conditions within the Bay (Niklitschek and Secor 2005, 2010). Heavy industrial development during the 20th century in rivers inhabited by sturgeon impaired water quality and impeded these species' recovery.

Although there have been improvements in the some areas of the Bay's health, the ecosystem remains in poor condition. At this time, we do not have sufficient information to quantify the extent that degraded water quality effects habitat or individuals in the Chesapeake Bay watershed.

Vessel strikes have been observed in the James River (ASSRT 2007). Eleven Atlantic sturgeon were reported to have been struck by vessels from 2005-2007. Several of these were mature individuals. Balazik et al. (2012) found 31 carcasses in tidal freshwater regions of the James River between 2007 and 2010, and approximately 36 between 2013 and 2017 (Balazik, pers comm). Because we do not know the percent of total vessel strikes that the observed mortalities represent, we are not able to quantify the number of individuals likely killed as a result of vessel strikes in the CB DPS on a regular basis. However, Balazik et al. estimates that current monitoring in the James River only captures approximately one third of all mortalities related to vessel interaction.

In the marine and coastal range of the CB DPS from Canada to Florida, fisheries bycatch in federally and state-managed fisheries poses a threat to the DPS, reducing survivorship of subadults and adults and potentially causing an overall reduction in the spawning population (Stein *et al.* 2004b; ASMFC TC 2007; ASSRT 2007).

Areas with persistent, degraded water quality, habitat impacts from dredging, continued bycatch in U.S. state and federally managed fisheries, Canadian fisheries, and vessel strikes remain significant threats to the CB DPS of Atlantic sturgeon. Of the 35% of Atlantic sturgeon incidentally caught in the Bay of Fundy, about 1% were CB DPS fish (Wirgin *et al.* 2012). Studies have shown that Atlantic sturgeon can only sustain low levels of bycatch mortality (Boreman 1997; ASMFC TC 2007; Kahnle *et al.* 2007). The CB DPS is currently at risk of extinction given (1) precipitous declines in population sizes and the protracted period in which sturgeon populations have been depressed; (2) the limited amount of current spawning; and, (3) the impacts and threats that have and will continue to affect the potential for population recovery.

5.3.4 Carolina DPS

The Carolina DPS includes all Atlantic sturgeon that spawn or are spawned in the watersheds (including all rivers and tributaries) from Albemarle Sound southward along the southern Virginia, North Carolina, and South Carolina coastal areas to Charleston Harbor. The marine range of Atlantic sturgeon from the Carolina DPS extends from the Hamilton Inlet, Labrador, Canada, to Cape Canaveral, Florida.

Rivers in the Carolina DPS considered to be spawning rivers include the Neuse, Roanoke, Tar-Pamlico, Cape Fear, and Northeast Cape Fear rivers, and the Santee-Cooper and Pee Dee river (Waccamaw and Pee Dee rivers) systems. Historically, both the Sampit and Ashley Rivers were documented to have spawning populations at one time. However, the spawning population in the Sampit River is believed to be extirpated and the current status of the spawning population in the Ashley River is unknown. We have no information, current or historical, of Atlantic sturgeon using the Chowan and New Rivers in North Carolina. Recent telemetry work by Post et al. (2014) indicates that Atlantic sturgeon do not use the Sampit, Ashley, Ashepoo, and Broad-Coosawhatchie Rivers in South Carolina. These rivers are short, coastal plains rivers that most likely do not contain suitable habitat for Atlantic sturgeon. Fish from the Carolina DPS likely use other river systems than those listed here for their specific life functions.

Historical landings data indicate that between 7,000 and 10,500 adult female Atlantic sturgeon were present in North Carolina prior to 1890 (Armstrong and Hightower 2002, Secor 2002). Secor (2002) estimates that 8,000 adult females were present in South Carolina during that same period. Reductions from the commercial fishery and ongoing threats have drastically reduced the numbers of Atlantic sturgeon within the Carolina DPS. Currently, the Atlantic sturgeon spawning population in at least one river system within the Carolina DPS has been extirpated, with a potential extirpation in an additional system. The ASSRT estimated the remaining river populations within the DPS to have fewer than 300 spawning adults; this is thought to be a small fraction of historic population sizes (ASSRT 2007).

The Carolina DPS was listed as endangered under the ESA as a result of a combination of habitat curtailment and modification, overutilization (i.e., being taken as bycatch) in commercial fisheries, and the inadequacy of regulatory mechanisms in ameliorating these impacts and threats.

The modification and curtailment of Atlantic sturgeon habitat resulting from dams, dredging, and degraded water quality is contributing to the status of the Carolina DPS. Dams have curtailed Atlantic sturgeon spawning and juvenile developmental habitat by blocking over 60 percent of the historical sturgeon habitat upstream of the dams in the Cape Fear and Santee-Cooper River systems. Water quality (velocity, temperature, and dissolved oxygen (DO)) downstream of these dams, as well as on the Roanoke River, has been reduced, which modifies and curtails the extent of spawning and nursery habitat for the Carolina DPS. Dredging in spawning and nursery grounds modifies the quality of the habitat and is further curtailing the extent of available habitat in the Cape Fear and Cooper Rivers, where Atlantic sturgeon habitat has already been modified and curtailed by the presence of dams. Reductions in water quality from terrestrial activities have modified habitat utilized by the Carolina DPS. In the Pamlico and Neuse systems, nutrient-loading and seasonal anoxia are occurring, associated in part with concentrated animal feeding operations (CAFOs). Heavy industrial development and CAFOs have degraded water quality in the Cape Fear River. Water quality in the Waccamaw and Pee Dee rivers have been affected by industrialization and riverine sediment samples contain high levels of various toxins, including dioxins. Additional stressors arising from water allocation and climate change threaten to exacerbate water quality problems that are already present throughout the range of the Carolina DPS. The removal of large amounts of water from the system will alter flows, temperature, and DO. Existing water allocation issues will likely be compounded by population growth and potentially, by climate change. Climate change is also predicted to elevate water temperatures and exacerbate nutrient-loading, pollution inputs, and lower DO, all of which are current stressors to the Carolina DPS.

Overutilization of Atlantic sturgeon from directed fishing caused initial severe declines in Atlantic sturgeon populations in the Southeast, from which they have never rebounded. Further, continued overutilization of Atlantic sturgeon as bycatch in commercial fisheries is an ongoing impact to the Carolina DPS. Little data exists on bycatch in the Southeast and high levels of bycatch underreporting are suspected. Stress or injury to Atlantic sturgeon taken as bycatch but released alive may result in increased susceptibility to other threats, such as poor water quality (e.g., exposure to toxins and low DO). This may result in reduced ability to perform major life functions, such as foraging and spawning, or even post-capture mortality.

As a wide-ranging anadromous species, Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon are subject to numerous Federal (U.S. and Canadian), state and provincial, and inter-jurisdictional laws, regulations, and agency activities. While these mechanisms have addressed impacts to Atlantic sturgeon through directed fisheries, there are currently no mechanisms in place to address the significant risk posed to Atlantic sturgeon from commercial bycatch. Though statutory and regulatory mechanisms exist that authorize reducing the impact of dams on riverine and anadromous species, such as Atlantic sturgeon, and their habitat, these mechanisms have proven inadequate for preventing dams from blocking access to habitat upstream and degrading habitat downstream. Further, water quality continues to be a problem in the Carolina DPS, even with existing controls on some pollution sources. Current regulatory regimes are not necessarily effective in controlling water allocation issues (e.g., no restrictions on interbasin water transfers in South Carolina, the lack of ability to regulate non-point source pollution, etc.)

5.3.5 South Atlantic DPS

The South Atlantic DPS includes all Atlantic sturgeon that spawn or are spawned in the watersheds (including all rivers and tributaries) of the Ashepoo, Combahee, and Edisto Rivers (ACE) Basin southward along the South Carolina, Georgia, and Florida coastal areas to the St. Johns River, Florida.

Rivers known to have current spawning populations within the range of the South Atlantic DPS include the Combahee, Edisto, Savannah, Ogeechee, Altamaha, St. Marys, and Satilla Rivers. Recent telemetry work by Post et al. (2014) indicates that Atlantic sturgeon do not use the Sampit, Ashley, Ashepoo, and Broad-Coosawhatchie Rivers in South Carolina. These rivers are short, coastal plains rivers that most likely do not contain suitable habitat for Atlantic sturgeon. Post et al. (2014) also found Atlantic sturgeon only use the portion of the Waccamaw River downstream of Bull Creek. Due to manmade structures and alterations, spawning areas in the St. Johns River are not accessible and therefore do not support a reproducing population.

Secor (2002) estimates that 8,000 adult females were present in South Carolina prior to 1890. Prior to the collapse of the fishery in the late 1800s, the sturgeon fishery was the third largest fishery in Georgia. Secor (2002) estimated from U.S. Fish Commission landing reports that approximately 11,000 spawning females were likely present in the state prior to 1890. Reductions from the commercial fishery and ongoing threats have drastically reduced the numbers of Atlantic sturgeon within the South Atlantic DPS. Currently, the Atlantic sturgeon spawning population in at least one river system within the South Atlantic DPS has been extirpated. The Altamaha River population of Atlantic sturgeon, with an estimated 343 adults spawning annually, is believed to be the largest population in the Southeast, yet is estimated to be only 6 percent of its historical population size. The ASSRT estimated the abundances of the remaining river populations within the DPS, each estimated to have fewer than 300 spawning adults, to be less than 1 percent of what they were historically (ASSRT 2007).

The South Atlantic DPS was listed as endangered under the ESA as a result of a combination of habitat curtailment and modification, overutilization (i.e., being taken as bycatch) in commercial fisheries, and the inadequacy of regulatory mechanisms in ameliorating these impacts and threats.

The modification and curtailment of Atlantic sturgeon habitat resulting from dredging and degraded water quality is contributing to the status of the South Atlantic DPS. Maintenance dredging is currently modifying Atlantic sturgeon nursery habitat in the Savannah River and modeling indicates that the proposed deepening of the navigation channel will result in reduced DO and upriver movement of the salt wedge, curtailing spawning habitat. Dredging is also modifying nursery and foraging habitat in the St. Johns River. Reductions in water quality from terrestrial activities have modified habitat utilized by the South Atlantic DPS Non-point source inputs are causing low DO in the Ogeechee River and in the St. Marys River, which completely eliminates juvenile nursery habitat in summer. Low DO has also been observed in the St. Johns River in the summer. Sturgeon are more sensitive to low DO and the negative (metabolic, growth, and feeding) effects caused by low DO increase when water temperatures are concurrently high, as they are within the range of the South Atlantic DPS. Additional stressors arising from water allocation and climate change threaten to exacerbate water quality problems that are already present throughout the range of the South Atlantic DPS. Large withdrawals of over 240 million gallons per day mgd of water occur in the Savannah River for power generation and municipal uses. However, users withdrawing less than 100,000 gallons per day (gpd) are not required to get permits, so actual water withdrawals from the Savannah and other rivers within the range of the South Atlantic DPS are likely much higher. The removal of large amounts of water from the system will alter flows, temperature, and DO. Water shortages and “water wars” are already occurring in the rivers occupied by the South Atlantic DPS and will likely be compounded in the future by population growth and potentially by climate change. Climate change is also predicted to elevate water temperatures and exacerbate nutrient-loading, pollution inputs, and lower DO, all of which are current stressors to the South Atlantic DPS.

Overutilization of Atlantic sturgeon from directed fishing caused initial severe declines in Atlantic sturgeon populations in the Southeast, from which they have never rebounded. Further, continued overutilization of Atlantic sturgeon as bycatch in commercial fisheries is an ongoing impact to the South Atlantic DPS. The loss of large subadults and adults as a result of bycatch impacts Atlantic sturgeon populations because they are a long-lived species, have an older age at maturity, have lower maximum fecundity values, and a large percentage of egg production occurs later in life. Little data exist on bycatch in the Southeast and high levels of bycatch underreporting are suspected. Further, a total population abundance for the DPS is not available, and it is therefore not possible to calculate the percentage of the DPS subject to bycatch mortality based on the available bycatch mortality rates for individual fisheries. However, fisheries known to incidentally catch Atlantic sturgeon occur throughout the marine range of the species and in some riverine waters as well. Because Atlantic sturgeon mix extensively in marine waters and may access multiple river systems, they are subject to being caught in multiple fisheries throughout their range. In addition, stress or injury to Atlantic sturgeon taken as bycatch but released alive may result in increased susceptibility to other threats, such as poor water quality (e.g., exposure to toxins and low DO). This may result in reduced ability to perform major life functions, such as foraging and spawning, or even post-capture mortality.

As a wide-ranging anadromous species, Atlantic sturgeon are subject to numerous Federal (U.S. and Canadian), state and provincial, and inter-jurisdictional laws, regulations, and agency activities. While these mechanisms have addressed impacts to Atlantic sturgeon through directed fisheries, there are currently no mechanisms in place to address the significant risk posed to Atlantic sturgeon from commercial bycatch. Though statutory and regulatory mechanisms exist that authorize reducing the impact of dams on riverine and anadromous species, such as Atlantic sturgeon, and their habitat, these mechanisms have proven inadequate for preventing dams from blocking access to habitat upstream and degrading habitat downstream. Further, water quality continues to be a problem in the South Atlantic DPS, even with existing controls on some pollution sources. Current regulatory regimes are not necessarily effective in controlling water allocation issues (e.g., no permit requirements for water withdrawals under 100,000 gpd in Georgia, no restrictions on interbasin water transfers in South Carolina, the lack of ability to regulate non-point source pollution.)

Critical Habitat

Critical habitat has been designated for the five DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon (82 FR 39160, August 17, 2017) in rivers of the eastern United States. See section 4 for more information.

Recovery Goals

A Recovery Plan has not been completed for any DPS of Atlantic sturgeon. In 2018, NMFS published a Recovery Outline to serve as an initial recovery-planning document. In this, the recovery vision is stated, "Subpopulations of all five Atlantic sturgeon DPSs must be present across the historical range. These subpopulations must be of sufficient size and genetic diversity to support successful reproduction and recovery from mortality events. The recruitment of juveniles to the sub-adult and adult life stages must also increase and that increased recruitment must be maintained over many years. Recovery of these DPSs will require conservation of the riverine and marine habitats used for spawning, development, foraging, and growth by abating threats to ensure a high probability of survival into the future." The Outline also includes steps that are expected to serve as an initial recovery action plan. These include protecting extant subpopulations and the species' habitat through reduction of threats; gathering information through research and monitoring on current distribution and abundance; and addressing vessel strikes in rivers, the effects of climate change and bycatch.

6.0 ENVIRONMENTAL BASELINE

The "environmental baseline" represents the current biological and physical conditions of the action area and reflects: the past and present impacts of all federal, state, or private activities; the anticipated impacts of all proposed federal actions that have already undergone Section 7 consultation; and, the impacts of state or private actions that are contemporaneous with the proposed project (50 C.F.R. §402.02).

There are a number of existing activities that regularly occur in various portions of the action area, including operation of vessels and federal and state authorized fisheries. Other activities that occur occasionally or intermittently include scientific research, military activities, and geophysical and geotechnical surveys. There are also environmental conditions caused or exacerbated by human activities (i.e., water quality and noise) that may affect listed species in the action area. Some of these stressors result in mortality or serious injury to individual animals (e.g., vessel strike, fisheries), whereas others result in more indirect or non-lethal impacts. For all of the listed species considered here, the status of the species in the action area is the same as the rangewide status presented in the Status of the Species section of this Opinion, given their extensive movements in and out of the action area and throughout their range as well as the similarities of stressors throughout the action area and other parts of their range. Below, we describe the conditions of the action area, present a summary of the best available information on the use of the action area by listed species, and address the impacts to listed species of federal, state, and private activities in the action area that meet the definition of "environmental baseline." Future offshore windfarms, as well as activities caused by aspects of their development and operation, that are not the subjects of a completed consultation are not in the Environmental Baseline for the South Fork project. Rather, as a Section 7 consultation is completed on a windfarm, the effects of the action associated with that project would be considered in the Environmental Baseline for the next one in line for consultation.

The South Fork project area is located within multiple defined marine areas. The broadest area, the U.S. Northeast Shelf Large Marine Ecosystem, extends from the Gulf of Maine to Cape Hatteras, North Carolina (Kaplan 2011). The WDA is located within the Southern New England sub-region of the Northeast U.S. Shelf Ecosystem, which is distinct from other regions based on differences in productivity, species assemblages and structure, and habitat features (Cook and Auster 2007). The action area also overlaps with the Mid-Atlantic Bight, which is bounded by Cape Cod, MA to the north and Cape Hatteras, NC to the south. The physical oceanography of this region is influenced by the seafloor, freshwater input from multiple rivers and estuaries, large-scale weather patterns, and tropical or winter coastal storm events. Weather-driven surface currents, tidal mixing, and estuarine outflow all contribute to driving water movement through the area (Kaplan 2011). Due to these factors, the Northeast U.S. shelf area experiences one of the largest summer to winter temperature changes of any part of the ocean around the world. The result is a unique ocean feature called the Cold Pool, a band of cold bottom water that extends the length of the Mid-Atlantic Bight from spring through early fall. This temperature-salinity water mass occupies nearshore and offshore regions, including over Nantucket Shoals (east and southeast of Nantucket Island), creating a persistent frontal zone in the area (Kaplan 2011). Additionally, the region has seasonal upwelling and downwelling regimes, influenced by the edge of the continental shelf, which creates a shelf-break front. Marine vertebrates often use these oceanographic fronts for foraging and migration as they can aggregate prey (Scales et al. 2014).

Offshore from Martha's Vineyard and Nantucket, shelf currents flow predominantly toward the southwest, beginning as water from the Gulf of Maine heading south veers around and over Nantucket Shoals. As the water transitions through Nantucket Sound, tidal water masses from nearshore mix with the shelf current, generally following depth contours offshore (Ullman and Cornellion 1999, BOEM 2020).

Water depths range from 33-38m in the lease area where WTGs are proposed to be installed

(Jacobs 2021); sea surface temperatures vary seasonally from approximately 39 °F (4 °C) in winter to 68 °F (20 °C) in summer (BOEM 2021). Site-specific benthic surveys identified three distinct habitat types in the Wind Development Area (WDA): patchy cobbles and boulders on sand; sand with mobile gravel, and sand sheets, with sand of generally fine to coarse grain sizes being the predominant surface sediment (Jacobs 2021). These sediments are mobile, propelled by bottom currents that form ripples on the seafloor, which influence sediment resuspension, deposition, and sorting. This type of motion creates a dynamic habitat supporting mobile plants and animals that are accustomed to a certain degree of natural disturbance and are generally resilient to change. Conversely, the mobile sediment habitat is less conducive to species that live on, or are attached to, the seafloor making their occurrence in the action area uncommon.

6.1 Summary of Information on Listed Large Whale Presence in the Action Area

North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis)
The current known distribution of North Atlantic right whales is largely limited to the western North Atlantic Ocean. In the western North Atlantic, right whales migrate along the North American coast between areas as far south as Florida, and northward to the Gulf of Maine, the Bay of Fundy, the Gulf of St. Lawrence and the Scotian shelf, extending to the waters of Greenland and Iceland (Hayes et al. 2021; 81 FR 4837). The few published sightings of right whales in the Gulf of Mexico (Moore and Clark 1963, Schmidly and Melcher 1974, Ward Geiger et al. 2011) represent either geographic anomalies or a more extensive historic range beyond the sole known calving and wintering ground in the waters of the southeastern U.S. (Waring et al. 2009; 81 FR 4837). The Gulf of Mexico is not considered to be part of the species range (NMFS 2015; 81 FR 4837).

North Atlantic right whales occur in the Northwest Atlantic Ocean from calving grounds in coastal waters of the southeastern United States to feeding grounds in New England waters into Canadian waters and the Canadian Bay of Fundy, Scotian Shelf, and Gulf of St. Lawrence (Hayes et al. 2021). Right whales predominantly occupy waters of the continental shelf, but tagging studies have documented some individuals visiting the deep basins of the Gulf of Maine and the Scotian Shelf (Baumgartner and Mate 2005, Mate et al. 1997). As described in Hayes et al. (2021), Mellinger et al. (2011) reported acoustic detections of right whales near the nineteenth-century whaling grounds east of southern Greenland, but the number of whales and their origin is unknown. Similarly, using passive acoustic monitoring, Davis et al. (2017) detected North Atlantic right whales near Iceland and Greenland from July-October. Sightings off of Europe remain limited to sporadic individuals. Knowlton et al. (1992) and Jacobsen et al. (2004) report eight individual sightings off Europe since 1964. Knowlton et al. (1992) reported several long-distance movements as far north as Newfoundland, the Labrador Basin, and southeast of Greenland. Resightings of photographically identified individuals have been made off Iceland, in the old Cape Farewell whaling ground east of Greenland (Hamilton et al. 2007), in northern Norway (Jacobsen et al. 2004), in the Azores (Silva et al. 2012), and off Brittany in northwestern France (New England Aquarium unpub. Catalog record in Hayes et al. 2021). These long-range matches indicate an extended range for at least some individuals. However, visits to the eastern North Atlantic is rare.

In the late fall months (e.g., October), pregnant female right whales move south to their calving grounds off Georgia and Florida, while the majority of the population likely remains on the feeding grounds or disperses along the eastern seaboard. There is also at least one case of a calf apparently being born in the Gulf of Maine (Patrician et al. 2009), and another newborn was detected in Cape Cod Bay in 2013 (CCS, unpublished data, as cited in Hayes et al. 2020). A review of visual and passive acoustic monitoring data in the western North Atlantic demonstrated nearly continuous year-round presence across their entire habitat range (for at least some individuals), including in locations previously thought of as migratory corridors (e.g., waters off New Jersey and Virginia). This suggests that not all of the population undergoes a consistent annual migration (Bort et al. 2015, Cole et al. 2013, Davis et al. 2017, Hayes et al. 2020, Leiter et al. 2017, Morano et al. 2012, Whitt et al. 2013).

Offshore of the Maine coast, the likelihood of a North Atlantic right whale being present increases with distance from shore (Roberts et al. 2016). Surveys have demonstrated the existence of several areas where North Atlantic right whales congregate seasonally, including the coastal waters of the southeastern U.S.; the Great South Channel; Jordan Basin; Georges Basin along the northeastern edge of Georges Bank; Cape Cod; Massachusetts Bay; and the continental shelf south of New England (Brown et al. 2002, Cole et al. 2013, Hayes et al. 2020, Leiter et al. 2017).

The distribution of right whales is linked to the distribution of their principal zooplankton prey, calanoid copepods (Baumgartner and Mate 2005, NMFS 2005, Waring et al. 2012, Winn et al. 1986). New England waters are important feeding habitats for right whales, where they feed primarily on copepods (Hayes et al. 2020). Right whale calls have been detected by autonomous passive acoustic sensors deployed between 2005 and 2010 at three sites (Massachusetts Bay, Stellwagen Bank, and Jeffreys Ledge) in the southern Gulf of Maine (Morano et al. 2012, Mussoline et al. 2012). Comparisons between detections from passive acoustic recorders and observations from aerial surveys in Cape Cod Bay between 2001 and 2005 demonstrated that aerial surveys found whales on approximately two-thirds of the days during which acoustic monitoring detected whales (Clark et al. 2010).

North Atlantic right whales feed on extremely dense patches of certain copepod species, primarily the late juvenile developmental stage of *C. finmarchicus*. These dense patches can be found throughout the water column depending on time of day and season. They are known to undergo daily vertical migration where they are found within the surface waters at night and at depth during daytime to avoid visual predators. North Atlantic right whales' diving behavior is strongly correlated to the vertical distribution of *C. finmarchicus*. Baumgartner et al. (2017) investigated North Atlantic right whale foraging ecology by tagging 55 whales in six regions of the Gulf of Maine and southwestern Scotian Shelf in late winter to late fall from 2000 to 2010. Results indicated that on average North Atlantic right whales spent 72 percent of their time in the upper 33 feet (10 meters) of water and 15 of 55 whales (27 percent) dove to within 16.5 feet (5 meters) of the seafloor, spending as much as 45 percent of the total tagged time at this depth. While North Atlantic right whales are always at risk of ship strike due to the time spent at the surface to breathe, North Atlantic right whales are particularly vulnerable to ship strike because they spend the vast majority of their time in the top 33 feet (10 meters) of the water column (Baumgartner et al. 2017).

Recent changes in right whale distribution (Kraus et al. 2016) are driven by warming deep waters in the Gulf of Maine (Record et al. 2019). Prior to 2010, right whale movements followed the seasonal occurrence of the late stage, lipid-rich copepod *C. finmarchicus* from the western Gulf of Maine in winter and spring to the eastern Gulf of Maine and Scotian Shelf in the summer and autumn (Beardsley et al. 1996, Mayo and Marx 1990, Murison and Gaskin 1989, Pendleton et al. 2009, Pendleton et al. 2012). Recent surveys (2012 to 2015) have detected fewer individuals in the Great South Channel and the Bay of Fundy, and additional sighting records indicate that at least some right whales are shifting to other habitats, suggesting that existing habitat use patterns may be changing (Weinrich et al. 2000; Cole et al. 2007, 2013; Whitt et al. 2013; Khan et al. 2014). Warming in the Gulf of Maine has resulted in changes in the seasonal abundance of late-stage *C. finmarchicus*, with record high abundances in the western Gulf of Maine in spring and significantly lower abundances in the eastern Gulf of Maine in late summer and fall (Record et al. 2019). Baumgartner et al. (2017) discuss that ongoing and future environmental and ecosystem changes may displace *C. finmarchicus* from the Gulf of Maine and Scotian Shelf. The authors also suggest that North Atlantic right whales are dependent on the high lipid content of calanoid copepods from the Calanidae family (i.e., *C. finmarchicus*, *C. glacialis*, *C. hyperboreus*), and would not likely survive year-round only on the ingestion of small, less nutritious copepods in the area (i.e., *Pseudocalanus* spp., *Centropages* spp., *Acartia* spp., *Metridia* spp.). It is also possible that even if *C. finmarchicus* remained in the Gulf of Maine, changes to the water column structure from climate change may disrupt the mechanism that causes the very dense vertically compressed patches that North Atlantic right whales depend on (Baumgartner et al. 2017). One of the consequences of this has been a shift of right whales out of habitats such as the Great South Channel and the Bay of Fundy, and into areas such as the Gulf of St. Lawrence in the summer and south of New England and Long Island in the fall and winter (NMFS NEFSC, unpublished data), including the area south of Nantucket (which partially overlaps with the action area) where right whales have been documented for the last several winters and are suspected to be foraging.

Quintana-Rizzo et al. (2021) examined aerial survey data collected between 2011−2015 and 2017−2019 to quantify right whale distribution, residency, demography, and movements in the RI/MA and MA wind energy areas, including the South Fork lease area. Considering the study area as a whole, the authors conclude that right whale occurrence increased during the study period with whales sighted in the area nearly every month since 2017; peak sighting rates were between December and May with mean residence time at 13 days. Age and sex ratios of the individuals present in the area are similar to those of the species as a whole, with adult males the most common demographic group. Reported behaviors include animals feeding and socializing. "Hotspots" of higher use within the area varied between years and seasons, likely due to variable distribution of prey. The authors conclude that the mixture of movement patterns within the population and the geographical location of the study area suggests that the area could be a feeding location for whales that stay in the mid-Atlantic and north during the winter−spring months and a stopover site for whales migrating to and from the calving grounds.

The Right Whale Sighting Advisory System (RWSAS) alerts mariners to the presence of right whales, and collects sighting reports from a variety of sources including aerial surveys, shipboard surveys, whale watch vessels, and opportunistic sources (Coast Guard, commercial ships, fishing vessels, and the general public). In 2016, North Atlantic right whales were observed in the shelf waters south of Martha's Vineyard and Nantucket during January, February, and May. In 2017, North Atlantic right whales were observed in the shelf waters south of Martha's Vineyard and Nantucket in every month except January, August, and December. In 2018 and 2019, North Atlantic right whales were observed in the shelf waters south of Martha's Vineyard and Nantucket (i.e., the area between the islands and the Nantucket to Ambrose traffic lane) in every month except October; in 2020, right whales were detected in this area from January to March and July to December. No right whales were detected during aerial surveys of this area in June 2020. Sightings data is not available for April and May 2020 as aerial survey operations were affected by pandemic restrictions (see https://whalemap.org/WhaleMap).

During aerial surveys conducted from 2011-2015 in the MA/RI WEA, including the proposed Project area, the highest number of right whale sightings occurred in March (n=21), with sightings also occurring in December (n=4), January (n=7), February (n=14), and April (n=14), and no sightings in any other months (Kraus et al., 2016). There was not significant variability in sighting rate among years, indicating consistent annual seasonal use of the area by right whales. North Atlantic right whales were acoustically detected in 30 out of the 36 recorded months (Kraus et al., 2016). However, right whales exhibited strong seasonality in acoustic presence, with mean monthly acoustic presence highest in January (mean = 74%), February (mean = 86%), and March (mean = 97%), and the lowest in July (mean = 16%), August (mean = 2%), and September (mean = 12%). Aerial survey results indicate that North Atlantic right whales begin to arrive in the WDA in December and remain in the area through April. However, acoustic detections occurred during all months, with peak number of detections between December and late May (Kraus et al. 2016b; Leiter et al. 2017).

Kraus et al. (2016) observed that NARWs were most commonly present in and near the RI/MA WEA in the winter and spring and absent in the summer and fall. In contrast, Quintana et al. (2018) observed similar occurrence patterns in the winter and spring but an increase in observations in the summer and fall. The change in seasonal occurrence between the 2011-2015 (Kraus et al. 2016) and the 2017 and 2018 (Quintana et al. 2018) aerial surveys is consistent with an increase trend in acoustic detections on the Mid-Atlantic OCS in the summer and autumn (Davis et al. 2017).[19] These data suggest an increasing likelihood of species presence from September through June. NARW SPUE in and near the RI/MA WEA by season in 2017 and 2018 is summarized in Figure 4 of the BA. Seasons are defined as winter = December, January, and February; Spring = March, April, and May; Summer = June, July, and August; and autumn = September, October, and November.

As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA, the best available information regarding marine mammal densities in the project area is provided by habitat-based density models produced by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Laboratory (Roberts *et al.*, 2016, 2017, 2018, 2020). The updated models incorporate additional sighting data, including sightings from the NOAA Atlantic Marine Assessment Program for Protected Species (AMAPPS) surveys from 2010-2016 which included some aerial surveys over the RI/MA & MA WEAs (NEFSC & SEFSC, 2011a, 2011b, 2012, 2014a, 2014b, 2015, 2016). Roberts et al. (2020) further updated

---

[19] Based on frequency of acoustic detections of NARW in Davis et al. (2017) designated monitoring region 7: Southern New England and New York Bight. This monitoring region encompasses the lease area.

model results for North Atlantic right whales by incorporating additional sighting data and implementing three major changes: Increasing spatial resolution, generating monthly estimates on three time periods of survey data, and dividing the study area into five discrete regions. Monthly density estimates used for modeling marine mammal exposures for monopile installation are presented in Table 6.1 and 6.2 (Roberts et al. 2020; Table 13 in NMFS Notice of Proposed IHA). The Notice of Proposed IHA also includes monthly density estimates used for modeling marine mammal exposures for monopile installation, the cofferdam installation and removal (Table 14 in the Notice of Proposed IHA), and the HRG surveys (Table 15 in the Notice of Proposed IHA). Note that Table 14 in the Notice of Proposed IHA (Table 6.1 here) reflects maximum monthly density values while Table 15 in the Notice of Proposed IHA (Table 6.2) reflects average monthly density values; this difference, as well as the slightly different geographic area considered for each table explains the differences in density values by month.

Table 6.1 Estimated densities (animals/km^2) of NARW used for modeling marine mammal exposures for monopile installation (Table 13 in the Notice of Proposed IHA)

Species	May	Jun	July	Aug	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec
North Atlantic right whale	0.00154	0.00011	0.00002	0.00001	0.00001	0.00005	0.00029	0.00151

Table 6.2 Estimated densities (animals/km^2) of NARW within the lease area, export cable route and inter-array cables (Table 15 in the Notice of Proposed IHA)

Species	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	July	Aug	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec	Annual Average*
North Atlantic right whale	0.004	0.005	0.01	0.005	0.002	0.0001	0	0	0	0	0.0003	0.002	0.002

Density estimates indicate that March is the month with the highest density of right whales in the lease area and cable corridor and that overall, North Atlantic right whales are most likely to occur in the lease area from December through May, with the highest probability of occurrence extending from January through April.

Behavioral data associated with sightings within the lease portion of the action area and surrounding waters included surface active groups (SAG, defined as two or more whales rolling and touching at the surface) and feeding as well as adults traveling with calves (Leiter et al. 2017, Kraus et al. 2016). SAGs can be indicative of courtship (Kraus and Hatch 2001; Parks et al. 2007), and feeding. Although mating does not necessarily occur in SAGs, authors suggest that the regular observations of SAGs may indicate that animals are mating in this habitat (Kraus and Hatch 2001, Parks et al. 2007). Feeding behavior was recorded for 39 of 117 (33 percent) sightings, in all years of the study period (2010 to 2015), and occurred exclusively during the months of March and April. North Atlantic right whales were observed skim feeding in the northern portion of the study area. However, the authors suggested that whales might also be feeding sub-surface; without visual detection this could not be confirmed (Leiter et al. 2017).

In summary, we anticipate individual right whales to occur year round in the action area in both coastal, shallower waters as well as offshore, deeper waters. We expect these individuals to be moving throughout the action area, making seasonal migrations, foraging in northern parts of the action area when copepod patches of sufficient density are present, and calving during the winter months in southern waters of the action area. The presence of North Atlantic along the vessel transit routes to Europe outside the Gulf of Maine and Scotian Shelf are expected to be rare and limited to occasional, sporadic individuals. As noted above, no right whales are expected in the Gulf of Mexico.

Nova Scotia Stock of Sei whale (Balaenoptera borealis)

The range of sei whales in the North Atlantic extends from southern Europe/northwestern Africa to Norway in the east, and from the southeastern United States (or occasionally the Gulf of Mexico and Caribbean Sea; Mead 1977) to West Greenland in the west (Gambell 1977; Gambell 1985b; Horwood 1987). Therefore, sei whales may occur along the vessel transit routes used by project vessels transiting to and from ports in Canada and Europe. Sei whales are very rare in the Gulf of Mexico with recent sightings limited to stranded individuals in the northern Gulf of Mexico (NMFS 2011). Sei whales are not documented as inhabitants of the Gulf of Mexico in NMFS' stock assessment reports (Waring 2016) and it is extremely unlikely that they would occur along the routes used by project vessels moving to or from ports in the Gulf of Mexico.

Sei whales occurring in the North Atlantic belong to the Nova Scotia stock (Hayes et al. 2020). They can be found in deeper waters of the continental shelf edge waters of the northeastern United States and northeastward to south of Newfoundland (Hain et al. 1985). NMFS aerial surveys found substantial numbers of sei whales in this region, in particular south of Nantucket, in the spring of 2001. The southern portion of the species' range during spring and summer includes the northern portions of the U.S. EEZ; the Gulf of Maine and Georges Bank (Hayes et al. 2017). Spring is the period of greatest sei whale abundance in New England waters, with sightings concentrated along the eastern margin of Georges Bank and into the Northeast Channel area, and along the southwestern edge of Georges Bank in the area of Hydrographer Canyon (CETAP 1982). NMFS aerial surveys in 1999, 2000 and 2001 found concentrations of sei and right whales along the northern edge of Georges Bank in the spring. In years of greater abundance of copepod prey sources, sei whales are reported in more inshore locations, such as the Great South Channel (in 1987 and 1989) and Stellwagen Bank (in 1986) (Waring et al. 2014).

Sei whales often occur along the shelf edge to feed, but also use shallower shelf waters. Although known to eat fish in other oceans, sei whales off the northeastern U.S. are largely planktivorous, feeding primarily on euphausiids and copepods (Flinn et al. 2002, Hayes et al. 2017). These aggregations of prey are largely influenced by the dynamic oceanographic processes in the region. LaBrecque et al. (2015) defined a May to November feeding BIA for sei whales that extends from the 82-foot (25-m) contour off coastal Maine and Massachusetts east to the 656-foot (200-m) contour in the central Gulf of Maine, including the northern shelf break area of Georges Bank, the Great South Channel, and the southern shelf break area of Georges Bank from 328 to 6,562 feet (100–2,000 m). This feeding BIA does not overlap with the lease area.

Sei whales may be present in the general vicinity of the lease year-round but are most commonly present in the spring and early summer (Davis et al. 2020).[20] Kraus et al. (2016) and Quintana et al. (2018) report observed sei whales in and near the RI/MA WEA from March through June from 2011 through 2015 and in 2017, respectively, with the timing of peak occurrence varying by year. Sei whales were absent from the area from August through February. In the RI/MA WEA in 2017, sightings were generally concentrated to the south and east of the South Fork lease area. This distribution suggests that sei whales are likely to occur in and near the lease area between March and June if recent patterns of habitat use continue. However, no sei whales were observed in the same study area in 2018 (Quintana et al. 2018). Sightings data from 1981 to 2018, indicate that sei whales may occur in the area in relatively moderate numbers during the spring and in low numbers in the summer (North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2018).

Denes et al. (2020a) compiled cetacean density data for the lease area from Roberts et al. (2018) and other available data sources to develop composite monthly density values. The assembled data indicate that sei whale density in the lease area is generally low, peaking in May and June at densities ranging from 0.00013 to 0.00020 individuals/km^2 (1 sei whale in a 5,000-7,692 km^2 area).

In summary, we anticipate individual sei whales to occur in the action area year round, with presence in the nearer shore portions of the action area, including the lease and cable corridors, primarily in the spring and summer months. We expect individuals in the action area to be making seasonal migrations, and to be foraging when krill are present. Foraging adult sei whales are most common in the WDA but adult sei whales with calves have been observed during spring and summer months (Kraus et al. 2016).

North Atlantic Stock of Sperm whale (Physeter macrocephalus)

In the northern Gulf of Mexico (i.e., U.S. Gulf of Mexico), systematic aerial and ship surveys indicate that sperm whales inhabit continental slope and oceanic waters where they are widely distributed and present year round (Hayes et al. 2021). The best abundance estimate (N_{est}) for the northern Gulf of Mexico sperm whale is 1,180 (CV=0.22). This estimate is from summer 2017 and summer/fall 2018 oceanic surveys covering waters from the 200-m isobath to the seaward extent of the U.S. EEZ (Garrison et al. 2020). There were seven sperm whale strandings in the northern Gulf of Mexico during 2014–2018 (NOAA National Marine Mammal Health and Stranding Response Database unpublished data, accessed 21 May 2019 as cited in Hayes et al. 2021). There was evidence of human interaction for one stranding (healed scarring). No evidence of human interaction was detected for one stranding, and for the remaining five strandings it could not be determined if there was evidence of human interaction. An Unusual Mortality Event (UME) was declared for cetaceans in the northern Gulf of Mexico beginning 1 March 2010 and ending 31 July 2014 (Litz et al. 2014; https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-life-distress/2010- 2014-cetacean-unusual-mortality-event-northern-gulf-mexico). It included cetaceans that stranded prior to the Deepwater Horizon (DWH) oil spill, during the spill, and after. Exposure to the DWH oil spill was determined to be the primary underlying cause of the elevated stranding numbers in the northern Gulf of Mexico after the spill (e.g., Schwacke et al.

---

[20] Based on frequency of acoustic detections of sei whales in Davis et al. (2020) designated monitoring region 7: Southern New England and New York Bight. This monitoring region encompasses the lease area. The sei whale detection range of the sensor network extends up to 12.5 miles (20 km).

2014; Venn-Watson et al. 2015; Colegrove et al. 2016; DWH NRDAT 2016 in Hayes et al. 2021). Six sperm whale strandings during 2010–2013 were considered to be part of the UME. Sperm whales in the Gulf of Mexico experienced increased mortality related to oil exposure resulting from the DWH incident (Hayes et al. 2021).

Sperm whales occurring in the North Atlantic belong to the North Atlantic stock (Hayes et al. 2020). Sperm whales are widely distributed throughout the deep waters of the North Atlantic, primarily along the continental shelf edge, over the continental slope, and into mid-ocean regions (Hayes et al., 2020). They are found at higher densities in areas such as the Bay of Biscay, to the west of Iceland, and towards northern Norway (Rogan et al. 2017) as well as around the Azores. This offshore distribution is more commonly associated with the Gulf Stream edge and other features (Waring et al. 1993, Waring et al. 2001). Calving for the species occurs in low latitude waters outside of the action area. Most sperm whales that are seen at higher latitudes are solitary males, with females generally remaining further south.

In the U.S. Atlantic EEZ waters, there appears to be a distinct seasonal distribution pattern (CETAP 1982, Scott and Sadove 1997). In spring, the center of distribution shifts northward to east of Delaware and Virginia and is widespread throughout the central portion of the Mid-Atlantic Bight and the southern portion of Georges Bank. In summer, the distribution of sperm whales includes the area east and north of Georges Bank and into the Northeast Channel region, as well as the continental shelf (inshore of the 100-m isobath) south of New England. In the fall, sperm whale occurrence south of New England on the continental shelf is at its highest level. In winter, sperm whales are concentrated east and northeast of Cape Hatteras.

The average depth of sperm whale sightings observed during the CeTAP surveys was 5,880 ft. (1,792 m) (CETAP 1982). Female sperm whales and young males usually inhabit waters deeper than 3,280 ft. (1,000 m) and at latitudes less than 40° N (Whitehead 2002). Sperm whales feed on larger organisms that inhabit the deeper ocean regions including large- and medium-sized squid, octopus, and medium-and large-sized demersal fish, such as rays, sharks, and many teleosts (NMFS 2018; Whitehead 2002).

Historical sightings data from 1979 to 2018 indicate that sperm whales may occur in and near the RI/MA WEA in the summer and autumn in relatively low to moderate numbers (North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2018). Kraus et al. (2016) recorded four sperm whale sightings in and near the RI/MA WEA between 2011 and 2015. Three of the four sightings occurred in August and September 2012, and one occurred in June 2015. Because of the limited sample size, Kraus et al. (2016) were not able to calculate SPUE or estimate abundance in the action area, and specific sighting locations were not provided. Sperm whale sightings in the region during AMAPPS aerial surveys conducted from 2010 to 2013 are shown in Figure 6 of the BA (BOEM 2021) and do not indicate any observations within the lease area. No adults were observed foraging or with calves during the 2011-2015 aerial surveys (Kraus et al. 2016).

The density maps from Roberts *et al*. (2016, 2017, 2018, 2020) indicate that density of sperm whales in the lease area and along the cable corridor is low year-round, with a density of 0.0001/km^2 for all months (1 sperm whale/100,000 km^2). Denes et al. (2020a) compiled cetacean density data for the lease area from available data sources and developed composite monthly density values. As shown in Table 10 of BOEM's BA, the assembled data indicate that sperm whale density in and near the action area is generally low but with a distinct peak in July and August. Density models developed by Curtice et al. (2018) indicate this species is likely to occur in the lease area at low densities between June and November, with the highest probability of occurrence in July and August.

In summary, individual adult sperm whales are anticipated to occur infrequently in deeper, offshore waters of the North Atlantic portion of the action area primarily in summer and fall months, with a small number of individuals potentially present year round. These individuals are expected to be moving through the MA/RI WEA as they make seasonal migrations, and to be foraging along the shelf break. As sperm whales typically forage at deep depths (500-1,000 m) (NMFS 2018) well beyond that of the lease area, foraging is not expected to occur in the lease area or along the cable corridor. Sperm whales may occur along the vessel transit routes through the Gulf of Mexico and from the project site to Europe and Canada year round.

Western North Atlantic stock of fin whales (Balaenoptera physalus)
Fin whales do not occur in the Gulf of Mexico; presence in the North Atlantic is limited to waters north of Cape Hatteras, NC. In general, fin whales in the central and eastern Atlantic tend to occur most abundantly over the continental slope and on the shelf seaward of the 200 m isobath (Rørvik et al. 1976 in NMFS 2010). In contrast, off the eastern United States they are centered along the 100-m isobath but with sightings well spread out over shallower and deeper water, including submarine canyons along the shelf break (Kenney and Winn 1987; Hain et al. 1992).

Fin whales occurring in the North Atlantic belong to the western North Atlantic stock (Hayes et al. 2019). They are typically found along the 328-foot (100-meter) isobath but also in shallower and deeper water, including submarine canyons along the shelf break (Kenney and Winn 1986). Fin whales are migratory, moving seasonally into and out of feeding areas, but the overall migration pattern is complex and specific routes are unknown (NMFS 2018a). The species occur year-round in a wide range of latitudes and longitudes, but the density of individuals in any one area changes seasonally. Thus, their movements overall are patterned and consistent, but distribution of individuals in a given year may vary according to their energetic and reproductive condition, and climatic factors (NMFS 2010). Fin whales are believed to use the North Atlantic water primarily for feeding and more southern waters for calving. Movement of fin whales from the Labrador/Newfoundland region south into the West Indies during the fall have been reported (Clark 1995). However, neonate strandings along the U.S. Mid-Atlantic coast from October through January indicate a possible offshore calving area (Hain et al. 1992).

The northern Mid-Atlantic Bight represents a major feeding ground for fin whales as the physical and biological oceanographic structure of the area aggregates prey. This feeding area extends in a zone east from Montauk, Long Island, New York, to south of Nantucket (LaBrecque et al. 2015, Kenney and Vigness-Raposa 2010; NMFS 2010a) and is a location where fin whales congregate in dense aggregations and sightings frequently occur (Kenney and Vigness-Raposa 2010). Fin whales in this area feed on krill (*Meganyctiphanes norvegica* and *Thysanoessa inermis*) and schooling fish such as capelin (*Mallotus villosus*), herring (*Clupea harengus*), and sand lance (*Ammodytes* spp.) (Borobia et al. 1995) by skimming the water or lunge feeding. This area is used extensively by feeding fin whales from March to October. Several studies suggest that distribution and movements of fin whales along the east coast of the United States is influenced by the availability of sand lance (Kenney and Winn 1986, Payne 1990).

Aerial survey observations collected by Kraus et al. (2016) from 2011 through 2015 and Quintana et al. (2018) in 2017 and 2018 indicate peak fin whale occurrence in the RI/MA WEA from May to August; however, the species may be present at varying densities during any month of the year. During seasonal aerial and acoustic surveys conducted from 2011-2015 in the MA/RI WEA, fin whales were observed every year, and sightings occurred in every season with the greatest numbers during the spring (n = 35) and summer (n = 49) months (Kraus et al., 2016). Observed behavior included feeding and migrating. Despite much lower sighting rates during the winter, a hydrophone array confirmed fin whales presence throughout the year (Kraus et al. 2016).

Denes et al. (2020a) compiled these and other data to develop monthly density estimates in the action area, which are summarized in Table 10 of the BA. The collective findings of these efforts indicate that fin whales could occur in the action area during every month of the year. Estimated densities during this period range from 0.0020 to 0.0026 animals per km^2 (1 fin whale in 348-500 km^2) (Denes et al. 2020a; Roberts et al. 2018). Kraus et al. (2016) observed fewer individuals from September through March. Fin whale sightings per unit effort (SPUE) in the RI/MA WEA and larger action area in 2017 and 2018 are displayed by season in Figure 3 of the BA (from Quintana et al. 2018). As shown, fin whales are most likely to be present in the lease area during spring and summer, but this and prior surveys (Kraus et al. 2016) have documented occurrence in autumn and winter months. This is consistent with regional occurrence timing derived from regional PAM data, which indicate that this species is present in the region throughout the year with the lowest likelihood of occurrence in May and June (Davis et al. 2020).[21]

In summary, we anticipate individual fin whales to occur in the lease area year-round, with the highest numbers in the spring and summer. We expect these individuals to be making seasonal coastal migrations, and to be foraging during spring and summer months. Fin whales occur year-round in a wide range of latitudes and longitudes, thus they may be present along the vessel transit routes north of Cape Hatteras, NC year round. No fin whales are anticipated in the Gulf of Mexico portion of the action area.

6.2 Summary of Information on Listed Sea Turtles in the Action Area

Four ESA-listed species of sea turtles (Leatherback sea turtles, North Atlantic DPS of green sea turtles, Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS of loggerhead sea turtles, Kemp's ridley sea turtles) make seasonal migrations into the proposed Project area including the coastal waters and offshore waters south of Cape Cod that may be transited by project vessels. Sea turtles are less frequent in U.S. waters north of Cape Cod. Along the vessel transit routes to Canadian ports, only leatherback and loggerheads are likely to occur. In the open ocean area where vessels from Europe will be transiting, all four species may be present (see species specific sections below for more information). All four species also occur in the Gulf of Mexico where vessels may transit from Gulf of Mexico ports to the project area.

---

[21] Based on frequency of acoustic detections of fin whales in Davis et al. (2020) designated monitoring region 7: Southern New England and New York Bight. This monitoring region encompasses the lease area.

The four species of sea turtles considered here are highly migratory. One of the main factors influencing sea turtle presence in mid-Atlantic waters and north is seasonal temperature patterns (Ruben and Morreale 1999) as waters in these areas are not warm enough to support sea turtle presence year round. In general, sea turtles move up the U.S. Atlantic coast from southern wintering areas to foraging grounds as water temperatures warm in the spring. The trend is reversed in the fall as water temperatures cool. By December, sea turtles have passed Cape Hatteras, returning to more southern waters for the winter (Braun-McNeill and Epperly 2002, Ceriani et al. 2012, Griffin et al. 2013, James et al. 2005b, Mansfield et al. 2009, Morreale and Standora 2005, Morreale and Standora 1998, NEFSC and SEFSC 2011, Shoop and Kenney 1992, TEWG 2009, Winton et al. 2018). Water temperatures too low or too high may affect feeding rates and physiological functioning (Milton and Lutz 2003); metabolic rates may be suppressed when a sea turtle is exposed for a prolonged period to temperatures below 8-10° C (George 1997, Milton and Lutz 2003, Morreale et al. 1992). That said, loggerhead sea turtles have been found in waters as low as 7.1-8 ° C (Braun-McNeill et al. 2008, Smolowitz et al. 2015, Weeks et al. 2010). However, in assessing critical habitat for loggerhead sea turtles, the review team considered the water-temperature habitat range for loggerheads to be above 10° C (NMFS 2013). Sea turtles are most likely to occur in the action area when water temperatures are above this temperature, although depending on seasonal weather patterns and prey availability, they could be also present in months when water temperatures are cooler (as evidenced by fall and winter cold stunning records as well as year round stranding records). Given the warmer water temperatures, sea turtles are present in waters off the U.S. south Atlantic and in the Gulf of Mexico year round.

Regional historical sightings, strandings, and bycatch data indicate that loggerhead and leatherback turtles are relatively common in waters of southern New England, while Kemp’s ridley turtles and green turtles are less common (Kenney and Vigness-Raposa 2010). Aerial surveys conducted seasonally, from 2011-2015, in the MA WEA recorded the highest abundance of endangered sea turtles during the summer and fall, with no significant inter-annual variability. For most species of sea turtles, relative density was even throughout the WEA. However, leatherback sea turtles showed an apparent preference for the northeastern corner of the WEA, which is consistent with results from a tagging study on leatherbacks in the area (Kraus et al. 2016, Dodge et al., 2014). These results suggest an important seasonal habitat for leatherbacks in southern New England (Kraus et al. 2016, Dodge et al. 2014) that overlaps with a portion of the action area. Sea turtles in the lease area are adults or juveniles; due to the distance from any nesting beaches, no hatchlings occur in the lease area. Similarly, no reproductive behavior is known or suspected to occur in the lease area.

Sea turtles feed on a variety of both pelagic and benthic prey, and change diets through different life stages. Adult loggerhead and Kemp’s ridley sea turtles are carnivores that feed on crustaceans, mollusks, and occasionally fish, green sea turtles are herbivores and feed primarily on algae, seagrass, and seaweed, and leatherback sea turtles are pelagic feeders that forage throughout the water column primarily on gelatinivores. As juveniles, loggerhead and green sea turtles are omnivores (Wallace et al. 2009, Dodge et al. 2011, BA - Eckert et al. 2012, https://www.seeturtles.org/sea-turtle-diet, Murray et al 2013, Patel et al. 2016). The distribution of pelagic and benthic prey resources is primarily associated with dynamic oceanographic processes, which ultimately affect where sea turtles forage (Polovina et al. 2006). During late-spring, summer, and early-fall months when water temperatures are suitable, the physical and biological structure of both the pelagic and benthic environment in the lease area and cable corridor provide habitat for both the four species of sea turtles in the region as well as their prey.

In addition to the Kraus et al. (2016) survey referenced below, the North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium database also includes SPUE for unidentified sea turtles. Although speciation was not possible, likely due to weather or sea state conditions, the turtles should still be accounted for. From 1998 through 2017, turtles occurred in relatively high numbers (more than 80 turtles per 621.4 miles [1,000 kilometers]) along the OECC route southeast of Martha's Vineyard, and in moderate numbers in and surrounding the WLA in the summer and in relatively high numbers (15 to 80 turtles per 621.4 miles [1,000 kilometers]; North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2018) in the WDA in the fall.

Additional species-specific information is presented below. It is important to note that most of these data sources report sightings data that is not corrected for the percentage of sea turtles that were unobservable due to being under the surface. As such, many of these sources represent a minimum estimate of sea turtles in the area.

Leatherback sea turtles

Leatherbacks are a predominantly pelagic species that ranges into cooler waters at higher latitudes than other sea turtles, and their large body size makes the species easier to observe in aerial and shipboard surveys. The CETAP regularly documented leatherback sea turtles on the OCS between Cape Hatteras and Nova Scotia during summer months in aerial and shipboard surveys conducted from 1978 through 1988. The greatest concentrations were observed between Long Island and the Gulf of Maine (Shoop and Kenney 1992). AMAPPS surveys conducted from 2010 through 2013 routinely documented leatherbacks in the MA/RI WEA and surrounding areas during summer months (NEFSC and SEFSC 2018).

Leatherbacks were the most frequently sighted sea turtle species in monthly aerial surveys of the RI/MA WEA from October 2011 through June 2015. Kraus et al. (2016) recorded 153 observations (161 animals) in monthly aerial surveys, all between May and November, with a strong peak in August. Most of the observations were clustered to the east of the South Fork lease area south of Nantucket Island; however, several summer observations were recorded in immediate proximity to the SFWF. Leatherbacks were sighted in the WDA and OECC area in the summer and fall with sightings per unit effort (SPUE) ranging from 10 to 20 turtles per 621.4 miles [1,000 kilometers] (Kraus et al. 2016b). From 1998 through 2017, SPUE of leatherback turtles were similar, with relatively high numbers (15 to more than 80 turtles per 621.4 miles [1,000 kilometers]) observed just west of the OECC to the southeast of Martha's Vineyard (North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2018). Leatherback turtles were observed over the same time period in the WDA in moderate numbers (15 to 40 turtles per 621.4 miles [1,000 kilometers], during fall; North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2018).

Satellite tagging studies have also been used to understand leatherback sea turtle behavior and movement in the action area (Dodge et al. 2014, Dodge et al. 2015, Eckert et al. 2006, James et al. 2005a, James et al. 2005b, James et al. 2006a). These studies show that leatherback sea turtles move throughout most of the North Atlantic from the equator to high latitudes. Key foraging destinations include, among others, the eastern coast of United States (Eckert et al. 2006). Telemetry studies provide information on the use of the water column by leatherback sea turtles. Based on telemetry data for leatherbacks (n=15) off Cape Cod, Massachusetts, leatherback turtles spent over 60% of their time in the top 33 ft. (10 m) of the water column and over 70% in the top 49 ft. (15 m) (Dodge et al. 2014). Leatherbacks on the foraging grounds moved with slow, sinuous area-restricted search behaviors. Shorter, shallower dives were taken in productive, shallow waters with strong sea surface temperature gradients. They were highly aggregated in shelf and slope waters in the summer, early fall, and late spring. During the late fall, winter, and early spring, they were more widely dispersed in more southern waters and neritic habitats (Dodge et al. 2014). Leatherbacks (n=24) tagged in Canadian waters primarily used the upper 98 ft. (30 m) of the water column and had shallow dives (Wallace et al. 2015).

Leatherbacks tagged off Massachusetts showed a strong affinity to the northeast United States continental shelf before dispersing widely throughout the northwest Atlantic (Dodge et al. 2014). The tagged leatherbacks ranged widely between 39°W and 83°W, and between 9°N and 47°N, over six oceanographically distinct ecoregions defined by Longhurst: the Northwest Atlantic Shelves (n=20), the Gulf Stream (n=16), the North Atlantic Subtropical Gyral West (hereafter referred to as the Subtropical Atlantic, n=15), the North Atlantic Tropical Gyral (the Tropical Atlantic, n=15), the Caribbean (n=6) and the Guianas Coastal (n=7) (Dodge et al. 2014). This data indicates that leatherbacks are present throughout the action area considered here and may be present along the vessel transit routes from Canada, Europe, and the Gulf of Mexico. From the tagged turtles in this study, there was a strong seasonal component to habitat selection, with most leatherbacks remaining in temperate latitudes in the summer and early autumn and moving into subtropical and tropical habitat in the late autumn, winter, and spring. Leatherback turtles might initiate migration when the abundance of their prey declines (Sherrill-Mix et al. 2008).

Dodge et al. (2018) used an autonomous underwater vehicle (AUV) to remotely monitor fine-scale movements and behaviors of nine leatherbacks off Cape Cod, Massachusetts. The “TurtleCam” collected video of tagged leatherback sea turtles and simultaneously sampled the habitat (e.g., chlorophyll, temperature, salinity). Representative data from one turtle was reported in Dodge et al. (2018). During the 5.5 hours of tracking, the turtle dove continuously from the surface to the seafloor (0-66 ft. (0-20 m)). Over a two-hour period, the turtle spent 68% of its time diving, 16% swimming just above the seafloor, 15% at the surface and 17% just below the surface. The animal frequently surfaced (>100 times in ~2 hours). The turtle used the entire water column, feeding on jellyfish from the seafloor to the surface. The turtle silhouetted prey 36% of the time, diving to near/at bottom and looking up to locate prey. The authors note that silhouetting prey may increase entanglement in fixed gear if a buoy of float is mistaken for jellyfish (Dodge et al. 2018).

Sasso et al. (2021) presents information on the use of the Gulf of Mexico by leatherbacks. Individuals are present year round with highest abundance during the summer and early autumn as post-nesting turtles enter the Gulf from Caribbean nesting beaches during the summer and move to the Caribbean in the late fall. The summer and early fall period coincides with the period of greatest abundance of the leatherback’s preferred jellyfish prey. The northeastern Gulf of Mexico off the Florida Panhandle and the southeastern Gulf of Mexico in the Bay of Campeche off the state of Tabasco, Mexico have been identified as primary foraging areas.

Based on the information presented here, we anticipate leatherback sea turtles to occur in the project area (i.e., the lease area and cable corridors) during the warmer months, typically between June and November. Leatherbacks are also expected along the vessel transit routes to Europe and Canada, with seasonal presence dependent on latitude, as well as in the Gulf of Mexico (year round).

Northwest Atlantic DPS of Loggerhead sea turtles

The loggerhead is commonly found throughout the North Atlantic including the Gulf of Mexico, the northern Caribbean, The Bahamas archipelago (Dow et al. 2007), and eastward to West Africa, the western Mediterranean, and the west coast of Europe (NMFS and USFWS 2008). The range of the Northwest Atlantic DPS is the Northwest Atlantic Ocean north of the equator, south of 60° N. Lat., and west of 40° W. Long. Northwest Atlantic DPS loggerheads occur in the oceanic portions of the action area west of 40°W, inclusive of the Gulf of Mexico and the area of the North Atlantic that may be used by vessels transiting to and from Canada and Europe.

Extensive tagging results suggest that tagged loggerheads occur on the continental shelf along the United States Atlantic from Florida to North Carolina year-round but also highlight the importance of summer foraging areas on the Mid-Atlantic shelf which includes the Action Area (Winton et al. 2018). In southern New England, loggerhead sea turtles can be found seasonally, primarily in the summer and autumn months when surface temperatures range from 44.6ºF to 86ºF (7ºC to 30ºC) (Kenney and Vigness-Raposa 2010; Shoop and Kenney 1992). Loggerheads are absent from southern New England during winter months (Kenney and Vigness-Raposa 2010; Shoop and Kenney 1992). Loggerheads may also be present off the Canadian coast in the summer and fall and therefore, could also occur seasonally along the vessel transit route to Canada.

During the CETAP surveys, one of the largest observed aggregations of loggerheads was documented in shallow shelf waters northeast of Long Island (Shoop and Kenney 1992). Loggerheads were most frequently observed in areas ranging from 72 to 160 feet (22 and 49 m) deep. Over 80% of all sightings were in waters less than 262 feet (80 m), suggesting a preference for relatively shallow OCS habitats (Shoop and Kenney 1992). Juvenile loggerheads are prevalent in the nearshore waters of Long Island from July through mid-October (Morreale et al. 1992; Morreale and Standora 1998), accounting for more than 50% of live strandings and incidental captures (Morreale and Standora 1998).

In the summer of 2010, as part of the AMAPPS project, the NEFSC and SEFSC estimated the abundance of juvenile and adult loggerhead sea turtles in the portion of the northwestern Atlantic continental shelf between Cape Canaveral, Florida and the mouth of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, Canada (NMFS 2011b). The abundance estimates were based on data collected from an aerial line-transect sighting survey as well as satellite tagged loggerheads. The preliminary regional abundance estimate was about 588,000 individuals (approximate inter-quartile range of 382,000-817,000) based on only the positively identified loggerhead sightings, and about 801,000 individuals (approximate inter-quartile range of 521,000-1,111,000) when based on the positively identified loggerheads and a portion of the unidentified sea turtle sightings (NMFS 2011b). The loggerhead was the most frequently observed sea turtle species in 2010 to 2013 AMAPPS aerial surveys of the Atlantic continental shelf. Large concentrations were regularly observed in proximity to the RI/MA WEA (NEFSC and SEFSC 2018). Kraus et al. (2016) observed loggerhead sea turtles within the RI/MA WEA in the spring, summer, and autumn, with the greatest density of observations in August and September. Loggerhead SPUE in the RI/MA WEA from 2011 to 2015 are displayed by season in Figure 10 in the BA. Denes et al. (2019a) estimated a species density ranging from 0.35 individuals/km^2 in the spring and autumn and a peak density of 0.38 individuals/km^2 in the summer (Table 11).

Barco et al. (2018) estimated loggerhead sea turtle abundance and density in the southern portion of the Mid-Atlantic Bight and Chesapeake Bay using data from 2011-2012. During aerial surveys off Virginia and Maryland, loggerhead sea turtles were the most common turtle species detected, followed by greens and leatherbacks, with few Kemp's ridleys documented. Density varied both spatially and temporally. Loggerhead abundance and density estimates in the ocean were higher in the spring (May-June) than the summer (July-August) or fall (September-October). Ocean abundance estimates of loggerheads ranged from highs of 27,508-80,503 in the spring months of May-June to lows of 3,005-17,962 in the fall months of September-October (Barco et al. 2018).

AMAPPS data, along with other sources, have been used in recent modelling studies. Winton et al. (2018) modelled the spatial distribution of satellite-tagged loggerhead sea turtles in the Western North Atlantic. The Mid-Atlantic Bight was identified as an important summer foraging area and the results suggest that the area may support a larger proportion of the population, over 50% of the predicted relative density of loggerheads north of Cape Hatteras from June to October (NMFS 2019a, Winton et al. 2018). Using satellite telemetry observations from 271 large juvenile and adult sea turtles collected from 2004 to 2016, the models predicted that overall densities were greatest in the shelf waters of the U.S. Atlantic coast from Florida to North Carolina. Tagged loggerheads primarily occupied the continental shelf from Long Island, New York to Florida, with some moving offshore. Monthly variation in the Mid-Atlantic Bight indicated migration north to the foraging grounds from March to May and migration south from November to December. In late spring and summer, predicted densities were highest in the shelf waters from Maryland to New Jersey. In the cooler months, the predicted densities in the Mid-Atlantic Bight were higher offshore (Winton et al. 2018). South of Cape Hatteras, there was less seasonal variability and predicted densities were high in all months. Many of the individuals tagged in this area remained in the general vicinity of the tagging location. The authors did caution that the model was driven, at least in part, by the weighting scheme chosen, is reflective only of the tagged population, and has biases associated with the non-random tag deployment. Most loggerheads tagged in the Mid-Atlantic Bight were tagged in offshore shelf waters north of Chesapeake Bay in the spring. Thus, loggerheads in the nearshore areas of the Mid-Atlantic Bight may have been under-represented (Winton et al. 2018).

To better understand loggerhead behavior on the Mid-Atlantic foraging grounds, Patel et al. (2016) used a remotely operated vehicle (ROV) to document the feeding habitats (and prey availability), buoyancy control, and water column use of 73 loggerheads recorded from 2008-2014. When the mouth and face were in view, loggerheads spent 13% of the time feeding on non-gelatinous prey and 2% feeding on gelatinous prey. Feeding on gelatinous prey occurred near the surface to depths of 52.5 ft. (16 m). Non-gelatinous prey were consumed on the bottom. Turtles spent approximately 7% of their time on the surface (associated with breathing), 42% in the near surface region, 44% in the water column, 0.4% near bottom, and 6% on bottom. When diving to depth, turtles displayed negative buoyancy, making staying at the bottom easier (Patel et al. 2016).

Patel et al. (2018) evaluated temperature-depth data from 162 satellite tags deployed on loggerhead sea turtles from 2009 to 2017 when the water column is highly stratified (June 1 – October 4). Turtles arrived in the Mid-Atlantic Bight in late May as the Cold Pool formed and departed in early October when the Cold Pool started to dissipate. The Cold Pool is an oceanographic feature that forms annually in late May. During the highly stratified season, tagged turtles were documented throughout the water column from June through September. Fewer bottom dives occurred north of Hudson Canyon early (June) and late (September) in the foraging season (Patel et al. 2018).

Based on the information presented here, we anticipate loggerheads from the Northwest Atlantic DPS to occur in the project area (i.e., the lease area and cable corridors) during the warmer months, typically between June and November. Loggerheads are also expected along the vessel transit routes to Europe and Canada, with seasonal presence dependent on latitude, as well as in the Gulf of Mexico (year round).

Kemp’s ridley sea turtles

Kemp's ridleys are distributed throughout the Gulf of Mexico and U.S. Atlantic coastal waters, from Florida to New England. A few records exist for Kemp's ridleys near the Azores, waters off Morocco, and within the Mediterranean Sea and they are occasionally found in other areas around the Atlantic Basin. Adult Kemp's ridleys primarily occupy nearshore coastal (neritic) habitats in the Gulf of Mexico that include muddy or sandy bottoms where their preferred prey are found.

During spring and summer, juvenile Kemp’s ridleys generally occur in the shallow coastal waters of the northern Gulf of Mexico from south Texas to north Florida and along the United States Atlantic coast from southern Florida to the Mid-Atlantic and New England. In addition, the NEFSC caught a juvenile Kemp’s ridley during a recent research project in deep water south of Georges Bank (NEFSC unpublished data, as cited in NMFS [2020a]). In the fall, most Kemp’s ridleys migrate to deeper or more southern, warmer waters and remain there through the winter (Schmid 1998). As adults, many turtles remain in the Gulf of Mexico, with only occasional occurrence in the Atlantic Ocean (NMFS, USFWS and SEAMARNAT 2011). Adult habitat largely consists of sandy and muddy areas in shallow, nearshore waters less than 120 feet (37 m) deep (Landry and Seney 2008; Shaver et al. 2005; Shaver and Rubio 2008), although they can also be found in deeper offshore waters.

Juvenile and subadult Kemp’s ridley sea turtles are known to travel as far north as Long Island Sound and Cape Cod Bay during summer and autumn foraging (NMFS, USFWS and SEAMARNAT 2011). Visual sighting data are limited because this small species is difficult to observe using aerial survey methods (Kraus et al. 2016), and most surveys do not cover its preferred shallow bay and estuary habitats. However, Kraus et al. (2016) recorded six observations in the RI/MA WEA over 4 years, all in August and September 2012. The sighting data were insufficient for calculating SPUE for this species (Kraus et al. 2016). Other aerial surveys efforts conducted in the region between 1998 and 2017 have observational records of species occurrence in the waters surrounding the RI/ME WEA during the autumn (September to November) at densities ranging from 10 to 40 individuals per 1,000 km (North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2018; NEFSC and SEFSC 2018). Juvenile Kemp's ridley sea turtles represented 66% of 293 cold-stunned turtle stranding records collected in inshore waters of Long Island Sound from 1981 to 1997 (Gerle et al. 1998) and represent the greatest number of sea turtle strandings in most years.

Denes et al. (2020a) estimated that Kemp's ridley sea turtles occur in the lease area at a low density of 0.009 individuals/km^2 (1 Kemp's ridley per 111 km^2) across all months for the purpose of hydroacoustic impact modeling.

Based on the information presented here, we anticipate green sea turtles to occur in the project area (i.e., the lease area and cable corridors) during the warmer months, typically between June and November. Kemp's ridleys are also expected along the vessel transit routes to Europe, with seasonal presence dependent on latitude, as well as in the Gulf of Mexico (year round). Kemp's ridleys are not expected to occur in Canadian waters.

North Atlantic DPS of Green sea turtles

Most green turtles spend the majority of their lives in coastal foraging grounds. These areas include fairly shallow waters both open coastline and protected bays and lagoons. In addition to coastal foraging areas, oceanic habitats are used by oceanic-stage juveniles, migrating adults, and, on some occasions, by green turtles that reside in the oceanic zone for foraging. While green sea turtles occur in the open Ocean, they are expected to be rare along the vessel transit routes from the project area to Europe due to their tendency to remain in coastal foraging grounds. Green sea turtles are not expected to occur in Canadian waters as they are rare north of Massachusetts. Green sea turtles are present year round in the Gulf of Mexico and nesting occurs at some Gulf of Mexico beaches (NMFS and USFWS 2007).

Kenney and Vigness-Raposa (2010) recorded one confirmed sighting within the RI/MA WEA in 2005. Five green turtle sightings were recorded off the Long Island shoreline 10 to 30 miles southwest of the WEA in aerial surveys conducted from 2010 to 2013 (NEFSC and SEFSC 2018), but none were positively identified in multi-season aerial surveys of the RI/MA WEAs from October 2011 to June 2015 (Kraus et al. 2016). However, the aerial survey methods used in the region to date are unable to reliably detect juvenile turtles and do not cover the shallow nearshore habitats most commonly used by this species. Although green turtles are expected to be relatively uncommon, their occurrence is likely underestimated in the lease area and surrounding waters. Denes et al. (2019a) did not attempt to estimate green sea turtle density in the action area to support modeling of hydroacoustic impacts because no accurate estimate is available. As described in the BA, although green sea turtles were not observed in the Kraus et al. (2016b) surveys from October 2011 through June 2015 or identified in the North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium (2018) sightings data from 1998 through 2017, stranding records indicate the presence of green sea turtles in the area and they are expected to occur at least occasionally in the lease area.

Juvenile green sea turtles represented 6% of 293 cold-stunned turtle stranding records collected in inshore waters of Long Island Sound from 1981 to 1997 (Gerle et al. 1998) and represent the lowest number of overall stranding between 1979 and 2016. These and other sources of information indicate that juvenile green turtles occur periodically in shallow nearshore waters of Long Island Sound and the coastal bays of New England (Morreale et al. 1992; Massachusetts Audubon 2012), but their presence offshore in the Lease Area is also possible.

Based on the information presented here, we anticipate green sea turtles to occur in the project area (i.e., the lease area and cable corridors) during the warmer months, typically between June and November. Green sea turtles are also expected along the vessel transit routes to Europe, with seasonal presence dependent on latitude, as well as in the Gulf of Mexico (year round). Green sea turtles are not expected to occur in Canadian waters.

6.3 Summary of Information on Listed Marine Fish Presence in the Action Area

Atlantic sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus)
Adult and subadult (less than 150cm in total length, not sexually mature, but have left their natal rivers) Atlantic sturgeon from all five DPSs undertake seasonal, nearshore (i.e., typically depths less than 50 meters), coastal marine migrations along the United States eastern coastline including in waters of southern New England (Dunton et al. 2010, Erickson et al. 2011). Given their anticipated distribution in depths primarily 50 m and less, Atlantic sturgeon are not expected to occur in the deep, open-ocean portion of the action area that will be transited by project vessels carrying turbine components. Atlantic sturgeon may also occur along the transit routes to the Paulsboro Marine Terminal (transiting Delaware Bay and the lower Delaware River), the Port of Baltimore (MD), Sparrows Point (MD) and Norfolk International Terminal (VA) (transiting channels within the Chesapeake Bay).

Atlantic sturgeon demonstrate strong spawning habitat fidelity and extensive migratory behavior (Savoy et al. 2017). Adults and subadults migrate extensively along the Atlantic coastal shelf (Erickson et al. 2011; Savoy et al. 2017), and use the coastal nearshore zone to migrate between river systems (ASSRT 2007; Eyler et al. 2004). Erickson et al. (2011) found that adults remain in nearshore and shelf habitats ranging from 6 to 125 feet (2 to 38 m) in depth, preferring shallower waters in the summer and autumn and deeper waters in the winter and spring. Data from capture records, tagging studies, and other research efforts (Damon-Randall et al. 2013; Dunton et al. 2010; Stein et al. 2004a, 2004b; Zollett 2009) indicate the potential for occurrence in the action area during all months of the year. Individuals from every Atlantic sturgeon DPS have been captured in the Virginian marine ecoregion (Cook and Auster 2007; Wirgin et al. 2015a, 2015b), which extends from Cape Cod, Massachusetts, to Cape Lookout, North Carolina.

Based on tag data, sturgeon migrate to southern waters (e.g. off the coast of North Carolina and Virginia) during the fall, and migrate to more northern waters (e.g. off the coast of New York, southern New England, as far north as the Bay of Fundy) during the spring (Dunton et al. 2010, Erickson et al. 2011, Wippelhauser et al. 2017). In areas with gravel, sand and/or silt bottom habitats and relatively shallow depths (primarily <50 meters), sturgeon may also be foraging during these trips on prey including mollusks, gastropods, amphipods, annelids, decapods, isopods, and fish such as sand lance (Stein et al. 2004b, Dadswell 2006, Dunton et al. 2010, Erickson et al. 2011).

Atlantic sturgeon aggregate in several distinct areas along the Mid-Atlantic coastline; Atlantic sturgeon are most likely to occur in areas adjacent to estuaries and/or coastal features formed by bay mouths and inlets (Stein *et al.* 2004a; Laney *et. al* 2007; Erickson *et al*. 2011; Dunton *et al*. 2010). These aggregation areas are located within the coastal waters off North Carolina; waters between the Chesapeake Bay and Delaware Bay; the New Jersey Coast; and the southwest shores of Long Island (Laney *et. al* 2007; Erickson *et al*. 2011; Dunton *et al*. 2010). These waters are in the action area but are further inshore than the routes that will be transited by project vessels moving between U.S. ports and the project area. Based on five fishery-independent surveys, Dunton *et al*. (2010) identified several "hotspots" for Atlantic sturgeon captures, including an area off Sandy Hook, New Jersey, and off Rockaway, New York. These "hotspots" are aggregation areas that are most often used during the spring, summer, and fall months (Erickson *et al*. 2011; Dunton *et al*. 2010). These aggregation areas are believed to be where Atlantic sturgeon overwinter and/or forage (Laney *et. al* 2007; Erickson *et al*. 2011; Dunton *et al*. 2010). Areas between these sites are used by sturgeon migrating to and from these areas, as well as to spawning grounds found within natal rivers. Adult sturgeon return to their natal river to spawn in the spring. South of Cape Cod, the nearest rivers to the project area that is known to regularly support Atlantic sturgeon spawning is the Hudson River. Atlantic sturgeon may also at least occasionally spawn in the Connecticut River.

The offshore portion of the action area has not been systematically surveyed for Atlantic sturgeon; however, a number of surveys occur regularly in the action area that are designed to characterize the fish community and use sampling gear that is expected to collect Atlantic sturgeon if they were present in the area. One such survey is the Northeast Area Monitoring and Assessment Program (NEAMAP), which samples from Cape Cod, MA south to Cape Hatteras, NC and targets both juvenile and adult fishes. Atlantic sturgeon are regularly captured in this survey; however, there are few instances of collection in the action area. The area is also sampled in the NEFSC bottom trawl surveys; few Atlantic sturgeon are collected in this area.

Between March 2009 and February 2012, 173 Atlantic sturgeon were documented as bycatch in Federal fisheries by the Northeast Observer Program. Observers operated on fishing vessels from the Gulf of Maine to Cape Hatteras. Observer Program coverage across this entire area for this period was 8% of all trips with the exception that Observer coverage for the New England ground fish fisheries, extending from Maine to Rhode Island, was an additional 18% (26% coverage in total). Despite the highest observer coverage in the ground fish fisheries that overlap with the project area and the regular occurrence of commercial fishing activity in the area, only 2 of the 173 Atlantic sturgeon observed by the observer program in this period were collected in the MA/RI portion of the action area.

Dunton et al. (2015) caught sturgeon as bycatch in waters less than 50 feet deep during the New York summer flounder fishery, and Atlantic sturgeon occurred along eastern Long Island in all seasons except for the winter, with the highest frequency in the spring and fall. The species migrates along coastal New York from April to June and from October to November (Dunton et al. 2015). Ingram et al. (2019) studied Atlantic sturgeon distribution using acoustic tags and determined peak seasonal occurrence in the offshore waters of the OCS from November through January, whereas tagged individuals were uncommon or absent from July to September. The authors reported that the transition from coastal to offshore areas, predictably associated with photoperiod and river temperature, typically occurred in the autumn and winter months. Migratory adults and sub-adults have been collected in shallow nearshore areas of the continental shelf (32.9–164 feet [10–50 m]) on any variety of bottom types (silt, sand, gravel, or clay). Evidence suggests that Atlantic sturgeon orient to specific coastal features that provide foraging opportunities linked to depth-specific concentrations of fauna. Concentration areas of Atlantic sturgeon near Chesapeake Bay and North Carolina were strongly correlated with the coastal features formed by the bay mouth, inlets, and the physical and biological features produced by outflow plumes (Kingsford and Suthers 1994, as cited in Stein et al. 2004a). They are also known to commonly aggregate in areas that presumably provide optimal foraging opportunities, such as the Bay of Fundy, Massachusetts Bay, Rhode Island, New Jersey, and Delaware Bay (Dovel and Berggren 1983; Johnson et al. 1997; Rochard et al. 1997; Kynard et al. 2000; Eyler et al. 2004; Stein et al. 2004a; Dadswell 2006, as cited in ASSRT 2007).

Stein et al. (2004a, 2004b) reviewed 21 years of sturgeon bycatch records in the Mid-Atlantic OCS to identify regional patterns of habitat use and association with specific habitat types. Atlantic sturgeon were routinely captured in waters within and in immediate proximity to the action area, most commonly in waters ranging from 33 to 164 feet (10–50 m) deep. Sturgeon in this area were most frequently associated with coarse gravel substrates within a narrow depth range, presumably associated with depth-specific concentrations of preferred prey fauna.

None of the scientific literature that has examined the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the marine environment has identified the lease area or cable corridor as a “hot spot” or an identified aggregation area (see above). However, given the depths (less than 50m) and the predominantly sandy substrate which are consistent habitat parameters with offshore areas where Atlantic sturgeon are known to occur, and the occasional collection of Atlantic sturgeon in this area in regional surveys and in commercial fisheries, at least some Atlantic sturgeon are likely to be present in the project area. Presence has been confirmed by the collection of three Atlantic sturgeon in South Fork’s gillnet surveys between May and June 2021. Based on the location of spawning rivers both north and south of the project area and the general distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the marine environment, individual Atlantic sturgeon are expected to be moving through the project area during the warmer months of the area and may be foraging opportunistically in areas where benthic invertebrates are present; however, the area is not known to be a preferred foraging area. Spawning, juvenile growth and development, and overwintering are not known to occur in the project area. While individuals may be present year-round, the majority of individual Atlantic sturgeon is expected to be present from April to November. In the lease area and along the cable corridor, the majority of individuals will be from the Gulf of Maine and New York Bight DPSs. Considering the action area as a whole, individuals from all 5 DPSs may be present.

In summary, Atlantic sturgeon occur in most of the action area; with the exception being the Gulf of Mexico and waters transited by project vessels with depths greater than 50m. This means that Atlantic sturgeon will only be present in the nearshore (less than 50 m depth) portion of the vessel transit routes and will not be present in the open ocean areas transited by vessels moving between the lease area and any ports.

6.4 Consideration of Federal, State and Private Activities in the Action Area

Fishing Activity in the Action Area
Commercial and recreational fishing occurs throughout the action area. The lease area and cable corridor occupies a small portion (<1%) of NMFS statistical area 537. The vessel routes to Canadian ports and the area that may be transited by vessels from Europe overlap with a number of offshore statistical areas, while transit routes to southern ports, including those in the Gulf of Mexico overlap with a number of other statistical areas (see, https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/resource/map/greater-atlantic-region-statistical-areas). Commercial fishing in the U.S. EEZ portion of the action area is authorized by the individual states or by NMFS under the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act. Fisheries that operate pursuant to the MSFCMA have undergone consultation pursuant to section 7 of the ESA. These biological opinions are available online (available at: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/new-england-mid-atlantic/consultations/section-7-biological-opinions-greater-atlantic-region).

Given that fisheries occurring in the action area are known to interact with large whales, the past and ongoing risk of entanglement in the action area is considered here. The degree of risk in the future may change in association with fishing practices and accompanying regulations.
It is important to note that in nearly all cases, the location where a whale first encountered entangling gear is unknown and the location reported is the location where the entangled whale was first sighted. The risk of entanglement in fishing gear to fin, sei, and sperm whales in the lease area appears to be low given the low interaction rates in the U.S. EEZ as a whole.

We have reviewed the most recent data available on reported entanglements for the ESA listed whale stocks that occur in the action area (Hayes et al. 2021 and 2020 and Henry et al. 2020). As reported in Hayes et al. 2021, for the most recent 5-year period of review (2014-2018) in the North Atlantic, the minimum rate of serious injury or mortality resulting from fishery interactions as 6.85/year for right whales, 1.55/year for fin whales, 0.4 for sei whales, and 0 for sperm whales. For the Gulf of Mexico, Hayes et al. (2021) reports, the estimated mean annual fishery-related mortality and serious injury for sperm whales during 2014–2018 was 0.2 sperm whales (CV=1.00) due to interactions with the large pelagics longline fishery. In all cases, the authors note that this is a minimum estimate of the amount of entanglement and resultant serious injury or mortality. These data represent only known mortalities and serious injuries; more, undocumented mortalities and serious injuries have likely occurred and gone undetected due to the offshore habitats where large whales occur. Hayes et al. (2020) notes that no confirmed fishery-related mortalities or serious injuries of sei whales have been reported in the NMFS Sea Sampling bycatch database and that a review of the records of stranded, floating, or injured sei whales for the period 2013 through 2017 on file at NMFS found 1 record with substantial evidence of fishery interaction causing serious injury or mortality. Hayes et al. (2020), reports that sperm whales have not been documented as bycatch in the observed U.S. Atlantic commercial fisheries. No confirmed fishery-related mortalities or serious injuries of fin whales have been reported in the NMFS Sea Sampling bycatch database and a review of the records of stranded, floating, or injured fin whales for the period 2013 through 2017 on file at NMFS found no records classified as human interactions (Hayes et al. 2020).

We also reviewed available data that post-dates the information presented in the most recent stock assessment reports. As reported by NMFS[22], in 2017, 12 dead right whales were observed in Canada; all sightings were outside of the action area. Entanglement was identified as the cause of death of two of the six whales where cause of death could be determined. One of the individuals was anchored by the entangling gear in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, the other was also documented in the Gulf of St. Lawrence and the entangling gear was present. Five dead right whales were observed in the U.S. in 2017, of three that could be examined, entanglement was the suspected or probable cause of death. No entangled right whales were observed in Canada in 2018; however, three dead right whales were observed in the U.S. in 2018. Of these, one had gear present and the other two had a cause of death of suspected entanglement. In, 2019, 9 dead right whales were observed in Canada, all in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Of the four whales for which cause of death has been determined, the cause was recorded as suspected or probable blunt force trauma due to vessel strike. Also in 2019, one right whale mortality was recorded in U.S. waters (off Long Island) with the cause of death recorded as probably acute entanglement. In 2020, two right whale mortalities were documented – a calf in New Jersey with a cause of death attributable to vessel strike and a perinatal mortality in North Carolina. To date in 2021, two mortalities have been recorded in the U.S. – a calf in Florida with no cause of death identified to date and an adult (Cottontail) that died due to chronic entanglement.

Given the co-occurrence of fisheries and large whales in the action area, it is assumed that there have been entanglements in the action area in the past and that this risk will persist at some level throughout the life of the project. However, it is important to note that several significant actions have been taken to reduce the risk of entanglement in fisheries that operate in the action area and that new efforts to revise the regulations under the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan are ongoing. As of June 2021, NMFS is in the process of finalizing an Environmental Impact Statement to address measures to reduce entanglements of large whales through modifications to the ALWTRP. The goal of the ALWTRP is to reduce injuries and deaths of large whales due to incidental entanglement in fishing gear. The ALWTRP is an evolving plan that changes as NMFS learns more about why whales become entangled and how fishing practices might be modified to reduce the risk of entanglement. It has several components including restrictions on where and how gear can be set; research into whale populations and whale behavior, as well as fishing gear interactions and modifications; outreach to inform and collaborate with fishermen and other stakeholders; and a large whale disentanglement program that seeks to safely remove entangling gear from large whales whenever possible. Through the current initiative, the risk of entanglement within the action area is expected to decrease over the life of the action due to compliance of state and federal fisheries with new ALWTRP measures. All states that regulate fisheries in the U.S. portion of the action area codify the ALWTRP measures into their state fishery regulations.

Atlantic sturgeon are captured as bycatch in trawl and gillnet fisheries. An analysis of the

---

[22] Information in this paragraph related to the UME is available at: *https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-life-distress/2017-2021-north-atlantic-right-whale-unusual-mortality-event*; last accessed on June 22, 2021

NEFOP/ASM bycatch data from 2000-2015 (ASMFC 2017) found that most trips that encountered Atlantic sturgeon were in depths less than 20 meters and water temperatures between 45-60°F. Average mortality in bottom otter trawls was 4% and mortality averaged 30% in gillnets (ASMFC 2017). The most recent five years of data in the NMFS NEFOP and ASM database were queried for the number of reports of Atlantic sturgeon bycatch in the three statistical areas that overlap with the action area (537, 538, and 539[23]) where Atlantic sturgeon are expected to occur. The NEFOP program samples a percentage of trips from the Gulf of Maine to Cape Hatteras while the ASM program provides additive coverage for the New England ground fish fisheries, extending from Maine to New York. For the most recent five-year period that data are available (2014-2018), a total of 74 Atlantic sturgeon were reported as bycatch in bottom otter trawls and gillnets in these three statistical areas that overlap the action area, this represents approximately 5% of the total bycatch of Atlantic sturgeon in the Maine to Cape Hatteras area where the NEFOP, and Maine to New York area where the ASM program, operates. Note that the action area occupies only a portion of area 538 and 539 and a very small percentage of area 537. Incidental capture of Atlantic sturgeon is expected to continue in the action area at a similar rate over the life of the proposed action. While the rate of encounter is low and survival is relatively high (96% in otter trawls and 70% in gillnets), bycatch is expected to be the primary source of mortality of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area. We note that two Atlantic sturgeon (one in May 2021 and one in June 2021) were collected during gillnet surveys carried out by South Fork in the lease area. Both sturgeon were dead when removed from the net; based on the condition of the fish and the prolonged soak time (approximately 48 hours), we determined that both individuals likely died as a result of entanglement in the gillnet. Atlantic sturgeon do not occur in the Gulf of Mexico. Given their coastal distribution is limited to depths of less than 50m, there are no anticipated interactions in fisheries beyond those considered here that may occur along the vessel transit routes to ports in Canada or Europe.

Sea turtles are vulnerable to capture in trawls as well as entanglement in gillnets and vertical lines. Using the same data source as for Atlantic sturgeon, there were a total of 25 incidents of observed sea turtle bycatch in gillnet, trap/pot, and bottom otter trawl fisheries in areas 537, 538, and 539 (1 green, 2 Kemp's ridley, 3 leatherback, 15 loggerhead and 4 unknown). Leatherback sea turtles are particularly vulnerable to entanglement in vertical lines. Since 2005, over 230 leatherbacks have been reported entangled in vertical lines in Massachusetts alone. In response to high numbers of leatherback sea turtles found entangled in the vertical lines of fixed gear in the Northeast Region, NMFS established the Northeast Atlantic Coast Sea Turtle Disentanglement Network (STDN). Formally established in 2002, the STDN is an important component of the National Sea Turtle Stranding and Salvage Network. The STDN works to reduce serious injuries and mortalities caused by entanglements and is active throughout the action area responding to reports of entanglements. Where possible, turtles are disentangled and may be brought back to rehabilitation facilities for treatment and recovery. This helps to reduce the rate of death from entanglement. The Southeast STDN provides similar services in the South Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico. Sea turtles are also captured in fisheries operating in the Gulf of Mexico and in offshore areas where pelagic fisheries such as the Atlantic Highly Migratory Species (HMS) fishery occurs. Sea turtles are also vulnerable to interactions with fisheries occurring off the U.S. South Atlantic coast including the Atlantic shrimp trawl fishery. For all

---

[23] Map available at: https://www.greateratlantic.fisheries.noaa.gov/educational_resources/gis/gallery/gafostatisticalareas.html

fisheries for which there is a fishery management plan (FMP) or for which any federal action is taken to manage that fishery, the impacts have been evaluated via section 7 consultation. Past consultations have addressed the effects of federally permitted fisheries on ESA-listed species, sought to minimize the adverse impacts of the action on ESA-listed species, and, when appropriate, have authorized the incidental taking of these species. Incidental capture and entanglement of sea turtles is expected to continue in the action area at a similar rate over the life of the proposed action. Safe release and disentanglement protocols help to reduce the severity of impacts of these interactions and these efforts are also expected to continue over the life of the project.

Vessel Operations
The action area are used by a variety of vessels ranging from small recreational fishing vessels to large commercial cargo ships. Commercial vessel traffic in the action area includes research, tug/barge, liquid tankers, cargo, military and search-and-rescue vessels, and commercial fishing vessels. The Gulf of Mexico is known for a high level of commercial shipping activity and many large ports, especially those with transiting bulk carriers (Wiggins et al. 2016). The open ocean portion of the action area that will be transited by vessels moving between the project site and ports in Canada or Europe is used primarily by large cargo and tanker vessels as well as some fishing and research vessels, cruise ships, and military vessels.

In the COP, South Fork Wind reports on vessel traffic in the WDA based on AIS data from 2016 and 2017. Based on this data, the most common type of vessels transiting in the WDA are commercial fishing and recreational vessels. The data show that traffic is most dense through Rhode Island Sound and along the traffic separation zones. The Narragansett Bay traffic separation zone, with commercial traffic transiting north-south, is more than 7 nm (13 km) to the northwest of the action area. To the north, the Buzzards Bay traffic separation zone is more than 4 nm (7.4 km) from the action area and more than 1.5 nm (2.8 km) from the northwestern-most portion of the lease area (Jacobs 2021). AIS data also showed traffic along the general route of the SFEC, but additional analysis indicated that closer to the Long Island and Block Island shorelines, northwest of the action area, this traffic is primarily tug and tow boats, whereas larger cargo vessels transit further offshore away from the SFEC route.

In the vicinity of the lease area, cargo vessels showed greatest traffic density following the Traffic Separation Scheme into Narragansett Bay, with some traffic traversing the area proposed for WTGs. The SFEC - OCS will cross the southern seaward edge of the Narragansett Bay Traffic Separation Scheme and the vessel traffic paths leading to Narragansett Bay. Much of the vessel traffic that transits the SFEC - OCS through the north-south Narragansett Bay traffic Separation Zone will largely be deep draft vessels (cargo/carrier and tankers), and the normal traffic patterns of these transits are not expected to be significantly disrupted by the SFEC. Passenger vessels (ferries, cruise ships) more strictly follow Narragansett Bay inbound and outbound lanes to and from East Passage. As detailed in Appendix X of the COP, passenger vessels in the action area are typically large vessels and, therefore, it is expected that most passenger vessels will transit in the same routes as deep draft vessels. See section 4.6.6.1 and Appendix X of the COP for a detailed description of vessel traffic patterns and statistics.

General vessel traffic in the area surrounding the lease area varies, ranging from thousands of large and small vessel trips in and around major shipping lanes to dozens of vessel trips in the low-traffic areas in the SFWF footprint (DNV GL 2018). DNV GL (2018) analyzed vessel traffic patterns in the WDA to assess navigation safety risks using a two-step analysis. The first step relied on quantification of vessel transits through designated cross sections in proximity to the action area using AIS data for all vessel classes. The second step relied on Vessel Monitoring System (VMS) data for fishing vessels. The VMS system provides location data used by NMFS to monitor fishing activity while maintaining confidentiality.

DNV GL 2018 summarized vessel traffic in the WDA based on automatic identification system (AIS) data from July 18, 2016, through July 18, 2017. AIS is required only for vessels 65’ or larger and is optional for smaller vessels. The data include eight vessel classes: cargo/carrier, fishing, other and unidentified, passenger, pleasure, tanker, tanker – oil, and tug and service. The recorded vessel speed of most vessels was between 8 and 12 knots. A 5-mile buffer around the WDA was used to determine the vessel types transiting in the area; AIS data suggest that only fishing, other and unidentified, and pleasure vessels currently transit within the SFWF. No military vessels operated in this area during this period. In 2016, there were 19,164 vessel crossings of a measurement line between Montauk and Sconticut Neck, located south of New Bedford in Buzzards Bay. Approximately 75% of these crossings were fishing or pleasure vessels. Tug and service vessels accounted for 74% of the 7,209 transits originating from Brooklyn and Staten Island. Fishing and pleasure vessels account for approximately 83% of the vessels that went into the WDA.

Figure 6.1 below (from BOEM’s BA) displays AIS vessel tracks and the 20 analysis cross sections in proximity to the Proposed Action footprint, regional traffic corridors, and port entrances, excluding foreign ports and the Gulf of Mexico. Vessel transits through each cross section during the study period are displayed in Figure 6.2. Vessel classes represented by these results include deep-draft commercial vessels (e.g., cargo/carriers and tankers), tugs/barges, service, fishing, passenger and recreational vessels, and other or unspecified vessel types.

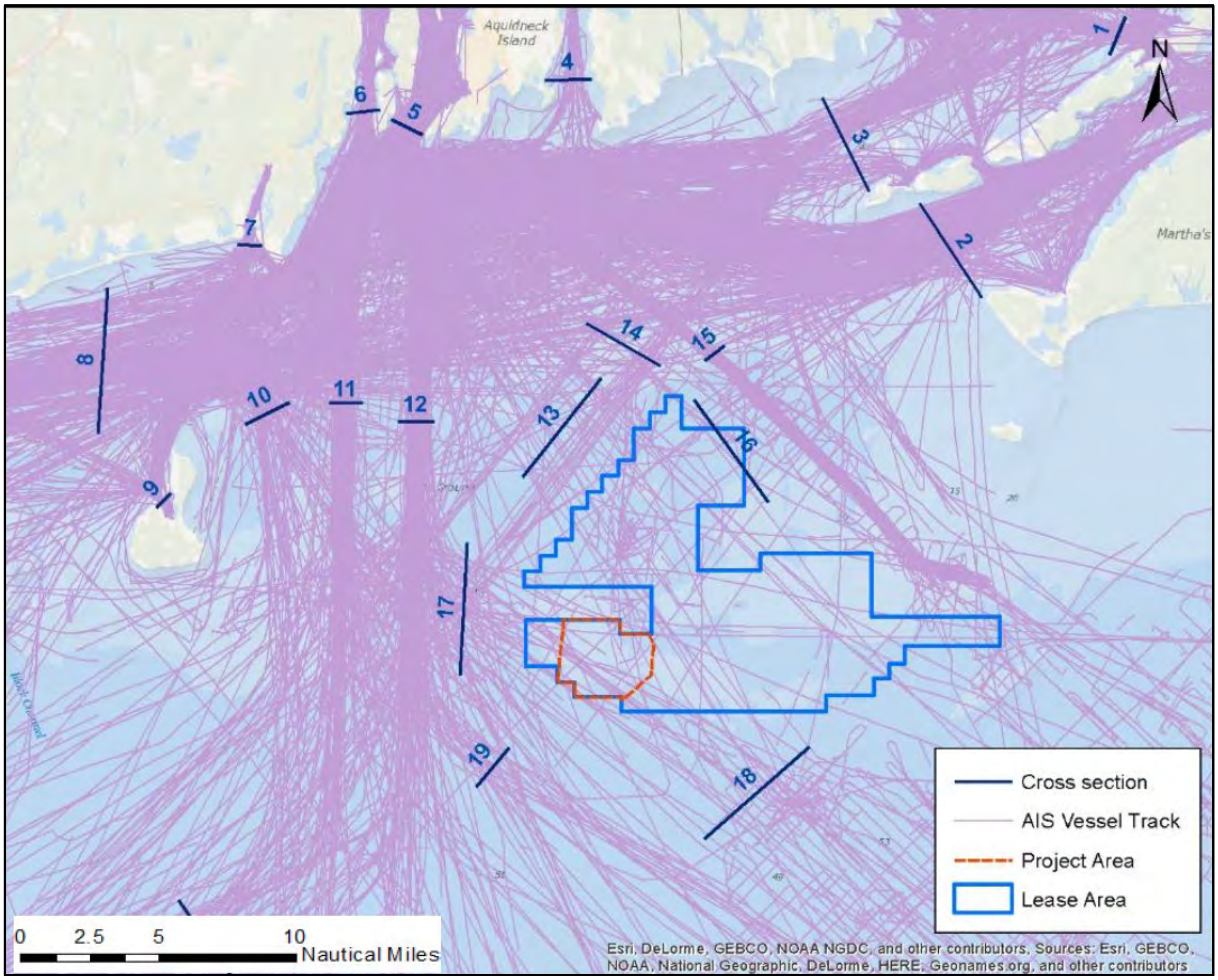


Figure 6.1. Automatic identification system vessel traffic tracks for June 2016 to July 2017 and analysis cross sections used for traffic pattern analysis (DNV GL 2018).

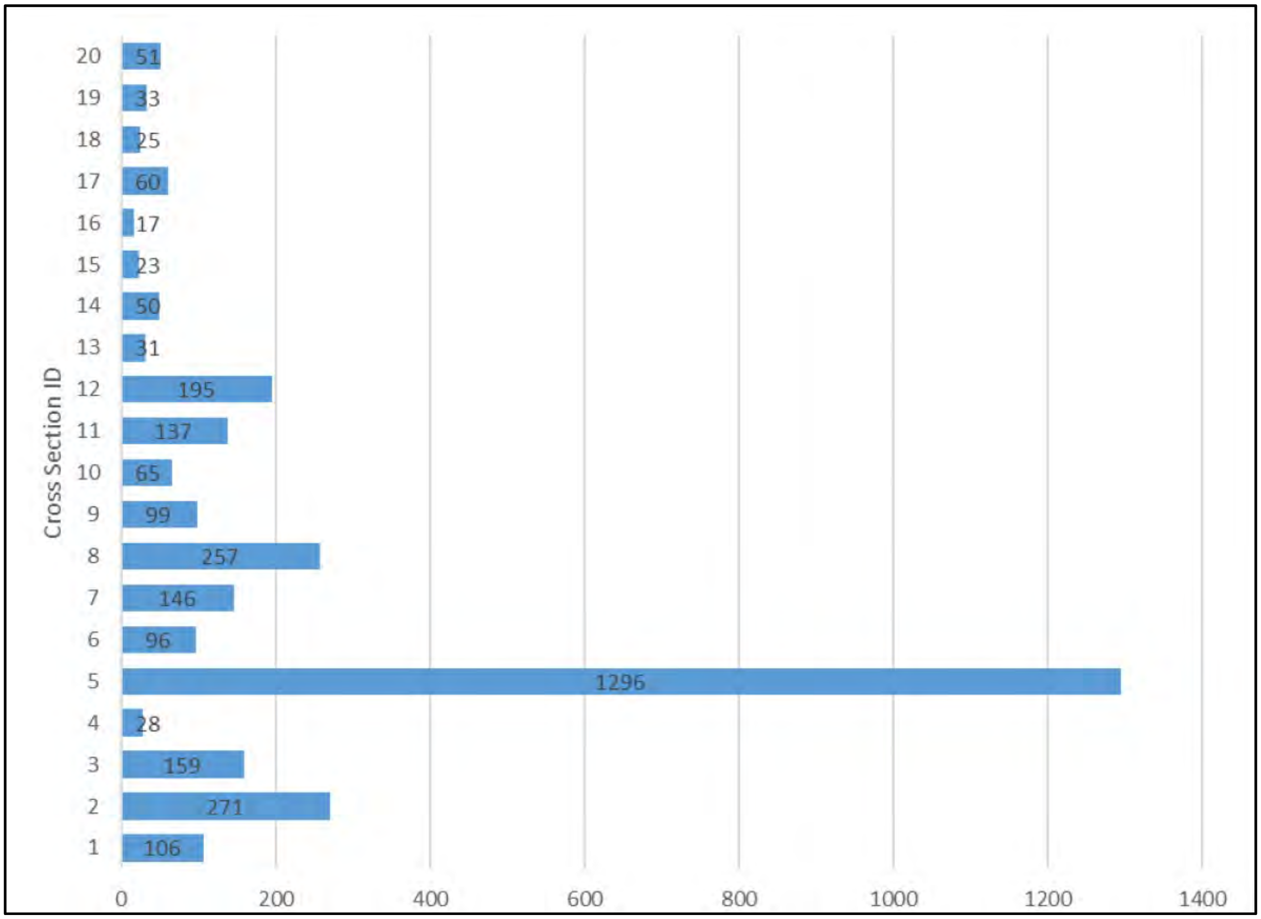


Figure 6.2. Vessel transits from June 2016 to July 2017 by analysis cross section, all vessel classes (DNV GL 2018).

As shown, the cross sections surrounding the Lease Area (13, 16, and 18) have annual traffic counts of less than 30 transits per year. Cross-section 17 has a slightly higher annual traffic count with 60 transits per year. From cross-section 17, many of the tracks are merging into/out of the Buzzards Bay inbound traffic lane and do not cross through the Lease Area. In contrast, the approach to Narraganset Bay (cross-section 5) has a high level of vessel traffic consistent with the presence of several commercial and recreational port facilities and a major naval and coast guard facility. These results do not include commercial fishing traffic, which is underrepresented in the AIS data. Analysis of VMS data for the lease area indicates a high level of commercial fishing activity in and near the WDA. The number of fishing vessels represented in these data is unclear, but likely number in the hundreds based on the 420 fishing vessels active in federal catch share fishery programs in the Mid-Atlantic and New England as of 2016 (NMFS 2018b). Most of these vessels originate from regional ports in Rhode Island, Massachusetts, and Long Island (DNV GL 2018).

Atlantic sturgeon, sea turtles, and ESA listed whales are all vulnerable to vessel strike, although the risk factors and areas of concern are different. Vessels have the potential to affect animals through strikes, sound, and disturbance by their physical presence.

As reported in Hayes et al. 2021, for the most recent 5-year period of review (2014-2018) in the North Atlantic, the minimum rate of serious injury or mortality resulting from vessel interactions is 1.3/year for right whales, 0.80/year for fin whales, 0.8 for sei whales, and 0 for sperm whales. Hayes et al. (2021) reports no vessel strikes have been documented in recent years (2014–2018) for sperm whales in the Gulf of Mexico. Historically, one possible sperm whale mortality due to a vessel strike was documented for the Gulf of Mexico. The incident occurred in 1990 in the vicinity of Grande Isle, Louisiana. Deep cuts on the dorsal surface of the whale indicated the vessel strike was probably pre-mortem (Jensen and Silber 2004). A review of available data on serious injury and mortality determinations for sei, fin, sperm, and right whales for 2000-2020 (Hayes et al. 2021 and 2020, Henry et al. 2020, UME website as cited above), includes three records of fin whales and two records of right whales presumed to have been killed by vessel strike that were first detected in the action area. Hayes et al. (2021) reports three vessel struck sei whales first documented in the U.S. Northeast – all three were discovered on the bow of vessels entering port (two in the Hudson River and one in the Delaware River); no information on where the whales were hit is available. Hayes et al. (2020) reports only four recorded ship strikes of sperm whales. In May 1994 a ship-struck sperm whale was observed south of Nova Scotia (Reeves and Whitehead 1997), in May 2000 a merchant ship reported a strike in Block Canyon, and in 2001 the U.S. Navy reported a ship strike within the EEZ (NMFS, unpublished data). In 2006, a sperm whale was found dead from ship-strike wounds off Portland, Maine. Additionally, a 2012 Florida stranding mortality was classified as a vessel strike mortality. A similar rate of strike is expected to continue in the action area over the life of the project and we expect vessel strike will continue to be a source of mortality for right, sei, fin, and sperm whales in the action area. As outlined below, there are a number of measures that are in place to reduce the risk of vessel strikes to large whales that apply to vessels that operate in the action area.

To comply with the Ship Strike Reduction Rule (50 CFR 224.105), all vessels greater than or equal to 65 ft. (19.8 m) in overall length and subject to the jurisdiction of the United States and all vessels greater than or equal to 65 ft. in overall length entering or departing a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States must slow to speeds of 10 knots or less in seasonal management areas (SMA). The Block Island SMA, overlaps with the portion of the action area where the project will be constructed. All vessels 65 feet or longer that transit the SMA from November 1 – April 30 each year (the period when right whale abundance is greatest) must operate at 10 knots or less. Mandatory speed restrictions of 10 knots or less are required in all of the SMAs along the U.S. East Coast during times when right whales are likely to be present; a number of these SMAs overlap with the portion of the action area that may be used by project vessels. The purpose of this regulation is to reduce the likelihood of deaths and serious injuries to these endangered whales that result from collisions with ships.

Restrictions are in place on how close vessels can approach right whales to reduce vessel-related impacts, including disturbance. NMFS rulemaking (62 FR 6729, February 13, 1997) restricts vessel approach to right whales to a distance of 500 yards. This rule is expected to reduce the potential for vessel collisions and other adverse vessel-related effects in the environmental baseline. The Mandatory Ship Reporting System (MSR) requires ships entering the northeast and southeast MSR boundaries to report the vessel identity, date, time, course, speed, destination, and other relevant information. In return, the vessel receives an automated reply with the most recent right whale sightings or management areas and information on precautionary measures to take while in the vicinity of right whales.

SMAs are supplemented by Dynamic Management Areas (DMAs) that are implemented for 15-day periods in areas in which right whales are sighted outside of SMA boundaries (73 FR 60173; October 10, 2008). DMAs can be designated anywhere along the U.S. eastern seaboard, including the action area, when NOAA aerial surveys or other reliable sources report aggregations of three or more right whales in a density that indicates the whales are likely to persist in the area. DMAs are put in place for two weeks in an area that encompass an area commensurate to the number of whales present. Mariners are notified of DMAs via email, the internet, Broadcast Notice to Mariners (BNM), NOAA Weather Radio, and the Mandatory Ship Reporting system (MSR). NOAA requests that mariners navigate around these zones or transit through them at 10 knots or less. In 2021, NMFS supplemented the DMA program with a new Slow Zone program which identifies areas for recommended 10 knot speed reductions based on acoustic detection of right whales. Together, these zones are established around areas where right whales have been recently seen or heard, and the program provides maps and coordinates to vessel operators indicating areas where they have been detected. Compliance with these zones is voluntary.

NMFS' Sea Turtle Stranding and Salvage Network (STSSN) database provides information on records of stranded sea turtles in the region. The STSSN database was queried for records of stranded sea turtles with evidence of vessel strike throughout the waters of Rhode Island and Massachusetts, south and east of Cape Cod to overlap with the area where the majority of project vessel traffic will occur. Out of the 118 recovered stranded sea turtles in the southern New England region during the most recent three year period for which data was available, there were 33 recorded sea turtle vessel strikes, primarily between the months of August and November. The majority of strikes were of leatherbacks with a smaller number of loggerhead and green; there are no records of Kemp's ridleys struck in the area for which data was obtained. A similar rate of strike is expected to continue in the action area over the life of the project and that vessel strike will continue to be a source of mortality for sea turtles in the action area. Due to the greater abundance of sea turtles in southern portions of the action area, particularly along the Florida coast and in the Gulf of Mexico, vessel strike occurs more frequently in this portion of the action area. Foley et al. (2019) reports that based on stranding numbers, being struck by a vessel causes up to about 30% of the mortality of loggerheads, green turtles, and leatherbacks; and up to about 25% of the mortality of Kemp's ridleys in the nearshore areas of Florida. The authors estimate that overall, strikes by motorized watercraft killed a mean of 1,326–4,334 sea turtles each year in Florida during 2000–2014.

Atlantic sturgeon are struck and killed by vessels in at least some portions of their range. There are no records of vessel strike in the Atlantic Ocean, with all records within rivers and estuaries. Atlantic sturgeon are known to be struck and killed in portions of the action area that will be transited by project vessels including Delaware Bay and the Delaware River. Risk is thought to be highest in areas with reduced opportunity for escape and from vessels operating at a high rate of speed or with propellers large enough to entrain sturgeon.

Offshore Wind Development

The action area includes a number of areas that have been leased by BOEM for offshore wind development or that are being considered for lease issuance. As noted above, in the Environmental Baseline section of an Opinion, we consider the past and present impacts of all federal, state, or private activities and the anticipated impacts of all proposed federal actions that have already undergone Section 7 consultation. In the context of offshore wind development, past and present impacts in the action area are limited to the effects of pre-construction surveys to support site characterization, site assessment, and data collection to support the development of Construction and Operations Plans (COPs). To date, we have completed section 7 consultation to consider the effects of construction, operation, and decommissioning of one commercial scale offshore wind project in the action area (Vineyard Wind 1); to date, construction has not started. We have also completed ESA section 7 consultation on two smaller scale offshore wind projects that occur in the action area, the Block Island project and Dominion's Coastal Virginia Offshore Wind Demonstration Project.

Site Assessment, Site Characterization, and Surveys
A number of geotechnical and geophysical surveys to support wind farm siting have occurred and will continue to occur in the action area. Additionally, data collection buoys have been installed. Effects of these activities on ESA listed species in the action area are related to potential exposure to noise associated with survey equipment, survey vessels, and habitat impacts. Given the characteristics of the noise associated with survey equipment and the use of best management practices to limit exposure of listed species, effects of survey noise on listed species have been determined to be extremely unlikely or insignificant. Similarly, we have not anticipated any adverse effects to habitats or prey and do not anticipate any ESA listed species to be struck by survey vessels; risk is reduced by the slow speeds that survey vessels operate at, the use of lookouts, and incorporation of vessel strike avoidance measures.

Surveys to obtain data on fisheries resources have been undertaken in the action area to support OSW development. Some gear types used, including gillnet, trawl, and trap/pot, can entangle or capture ESA listed sea turtles, fish, and whales. Risk can be reduced through avoiding certain times/areas, minimizing soak and tow times, and using gear designed to limit entanglement or reduce the potential for serious injury or mortality. To date, we have records of three Atlantic sturgeon captured in gillnet surveys (for the South Fork project) in the action area; two of the Atlantic sturgeon were killed. Entanglement and capture in survey gear will continue to be a risk as long as these surveys are undertaken.

Construction, Operation, and Decommissioning of OSW Projects in the Action Area
As noted above, we have completed ESA consultation for three OSW projects in the action area to date. For all three projects we anticipated short term behavioral disturbance of ESA listed sea turtles and whales exposed to pile driving noise. The only injury and mortality that has been anticipated to date is the mortality of a small number of sea turtles expected to be struck and injured or killed by vessels associated with the Vineyard Wind 1 project. Complete information on the assessment of effects of these three projects is found in their respective Biological Opinions (NMFS 2020, NMFS 2016, and NMFS 2014).

Other Activities in the Action Area

Other activities that occur in the action area that may affect listed species include scientific research and geophysical and geotechnical surveys. Military operations in the action area are expected to be restricted to vessel transits, the effects of which are subsumed in the discussion of vessel strikes above.

Scientific Surveys

Numerous scientific surveys, including fisheries and ecosystem surveys carried out by NMFS operate in the action area. Regulations issued to implement section 10(a) (1)(A) of the ESA allow issuance of permits authorizing take of ESA-listed species for the purposes of scientific research. Prior to the issuance of such a permit, an ESA section 7 consultation must take place. No permit can be issued unless the proposed research is determined to be not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of any listed species. Scientific research permits are issued by NMFS for ESA listed whales and Atlantic sturgeon; the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service is the permitting authority for ESA listed sea turtles.

Marine mammals, sea turtles, and Atlantic sturgeon have been the subject of field studies for decades. The primary objective of most of these field studies has generally been monitoring populations or gathering data for behavioral and ecological studies. Research on ESA listed whales, sea turtles, and Atlantic sturgeon has occurred in the action area in the past and is expected to continue over the life of the proposed action. Authorized research on ESA-listed whales includes close vessel and aerial approaches, photographic identification, photogrammetry, biopsy sampling, tagging, ultrasound, exposure to acoustic activities, breath sampling, behavioral observations, passive acoustic recording, and underwater observation. No lethal interactions are anticipated in association with any of the permitted research. ESA-listed sea turtle research includes approach, capture, handling, restraint, tagging, biopsy, blood or tissue sampling, lavage, ultrasound, imaging, antibiotic (tetracycline) injections, laparoscopy, and captive experiments. Most authorized take is sub-lethal with limited amounts of incidental mortality authorized in some permits (i.e., no more than one or two incidents per permit and only a few individuals overall). Authorized research for Atlantic sturgeon includes capture, collection, handling, restraint, internal and external tagging, blood or tissue sampling, gastric lavage, and collection of morphometric information. Most authorized take of Atlantic sturgeon for research activities is sub-lethal with small amounts of incidental mortality authorized (i.e., no more than one or two incidents per permit and only a few individuals overall).

Noise

The ESA-listed species that occur in the action area are regularly exposed to several sources of anthropogenic sounds in the action area. The major source of anthropogenic noise in the action area are vessels. Other sources are minor and temporary including short-term dredging, construction and research activities. As described in the DEIS, typically, military training exercises occur in deeper offshore waters southeast of the lease area, though transit of military vessels may occur throughout the area; therefore, while military operations can be a significant source of underwater noise that is not the case in the action area. ESA-listed species may be impacted by either increased levels of anthropogenic-induced background sound or high intensity, short- term anthropogenic sounds.

Kraus et al. (2016) surveyed the ambient underwater noise environment in the RI/MA WEA as part of a broader study of large whale and sea turtle use of marine habitats in this wind energy development area. The SFWF lies within a dynamic ambient noise environment, with natural background noise contributed by natural wind and wave action, a diverse community of vocalizing cetaceans, and other organisms. Anthropogenic noise sources, including commercial shipping traffic in high-use shipping lanes in proximity to the action area, also contributed ambient sound.

Acoustic monitoring sensor locations in and around the RI/MA WEA are depicted in Figure 11 of Kraus et al. (2016). As shown, sensors RI-1, RI-2, and RI-3 effectively surround the SFWF, whereas the remaining sensor locations are in the more seaward portion of the WEA. Figure 12 (in Kraus et al. 2016) displays 50th percentile power spectral density and cumulative percentile distribution of peak ambient sound levels measured between November 2011 and March 2015. Depending on location, ambient underwater sound levels within the RI/MA WEA varied from 96 to 103 dB in the 70.8- to 224-Hz frequency band at least 50% of the recording time, with peak ambient noise levels reaching as high as 125 dB on the western side of the SFWF in proximity to the Narraganset Bay and Buzzards Bay shipping lanes (Kraus et al. 2016). Low-frequency sound from large marine vessel traffic in these and other major shipping lanes to the east (Boston Harbor) and south (New York) are the dominant sources of underwater noise in the action area.

Short term increases in noise in the action area associated with vessel traffic and other activities, including geotechnical and geophysical surveys that have taken place in the past and will continue in the future in the portions of the action area that overlap with other offshore wind lease areas and/or potential cable routes. Exposure to these noise sources can result in temporary masking or temporary behavioral disturbance; however, in all cases, these effects are expected to be temporary and short term (e.g., the seconds to minutes it takes for a vessel to pass by) and not result in any injury or mortality in the action area. Outside of the Gulf of Mexico, no acoustic surveys using seismic equipment or airguns have been proposed in the action area and none are anticipated to take place in the future, as that equipment is not necessary to support siting of future offshore wind development that is anticipated to occur in the action area. Noise associated with oil and gas exploration is addressed below.

Factors Relevant only for the Gulf of Mexico portion of the Action Area

In addition to fishing activities and vessel operations, oil and gas exploration and extraction activities occur in the Gulf of Mexico as do a number of military activities. The air space over the Gulf of Mexico is used extensively by the Department of Defense for conducting various air-to-air and air-to-surface operations. Nine military warning areas and five water test areas are located within the Gulf of Mexico. The western Gulf of Mexico has four warning areas that are used for military operations. In addition, six blocks in the western Gulf of Mexico are used by the Navy for mine warfare testing and training. The central Gulf of Mexico has five designated military warning areas that are used for military operations. Oil and gas operations on the Gulf of Mexico OCS that have been ongoing for more than 50 years involve a variety of activities that may adversely affect ESA-listed species in the action area. These activities and resulting impacts include vessels making supply deliveries, drilling operations, seismic surveys, fluid spills, oil spills and response, and oil platform removals.

Other Factors

Whales, sea turtles, and Atlantic sturgeon are exposed to a number of other stressors in the action area that are widespread and not unique to the action area which makes it difficult to determine to what extent these species may be affected by past, present, and future exposure within the action area. These stressors include water quality and marine debris. Marine debris in some form is present in nearly all parts of the world's oceans, including the action area. While the action area is not known to aggregate marine debris as occurs in some parts of the world (e.g., The Great Pacific garbage patch, also described as the Pacific trash vortex, a gyre of marine debris particles in the north central Pacific Ocean), marine debris, including plastics that can be ingested and cause health problems in whales and sea turtles is expected to occur in the action area.

The SFWF and SFEC-OCS are located in offshore marine waters where available water quality data are limited. Broadly speaking, ambient water quality in these areas is expected to be generally representative of the regional ocean environment and subject to constant oceanic circulation that disperses, dilutes, and biodegrades anthropogenic pollutants from upland and shoreline sources (BOEM 2013).

The SFEC-NYS is located in coastal marine waters of NYS where available water quality data are also limited. The EPA classified coastal water quality conditions nationally for the 2010 National Coastal Condition Assessment (EPA 2016). The 2010 National Coastal Condition Assessment used physical and chemical indicators to rate water quality, including phosphorus, nitrogen, dissolved oxygen, salinity, water clarity, pH, and chlorophyll *a*. The most recent National Coastal Condition Report rated coastal water quality from Maine to North Carolina as "good" to "fair" (EPA 2012). This survey included four sampling locations near the SFWF and SFEC, all of which were within Block Island Sound. EPA (2016) rated all National Coastal Condition Report parameters in the fair to good categories at all four of these locations.

Water quality conditions in Lake Montauk generally meet state and federal requirements for contact recreation and shellfishing, although portions of the waterbody are closed to shellfish harvest based on proximity to commercial and recreational moorage facilities. Water clarity, nutrient concentration, chlorophyll *a*, and fecal coliform metrics met NYS standards in at least 93% of samples collected in the center of the lake from 1994 through 2011 (NYSDS 2014). Dissolved oxygen met state standards in all samples collected during this period. Fecal coliform levels exceed state standards at specific locations around the lake, associated predominantly with domestic pets and wildlife, with septic systems being a minor source (NYSDS 2014).

Ocean waters beyond 3 miles (4.8 km) offshore typically have low concentrations of suspended particles and low turbidity. TSS in Rhode Island Sound from five studies cited in ACE (2004) ranged from 0.1 to 7.4 milligrams/liter (mg/L) TSS. Bottom currents may re-suspend silt and fine-grained sands, causing higher suspended particle levels in benthic waters. Storm events, particularly frequent intense wintertime storms, may also cause a short-term increase in suspended sediment loads (BOEM 2013). Vinhateiro et al. (2018) assumed that ambient TSS levels in the marine component of the action area were generally low, less than 10 mg/L. However, Inspire Environmental (2018) periodically encountered water column turbidity levels high enough to prevent observation of the benthos during benthic surveys of the Proposed Action area. This occurred throughout the action area, but most commonly in the shallower waters associated with the SFEC-NYS. Based on camera distance to the bed (Inspire Environmental 2018) and observed relationships between TSS and visibility (West and Scott 2016), this suggests that baseline TSS and turbidity in the action area are generally low but could periodically exceed 100 mg/L near the channel bed.

A study conducted by the EPA evaluated over 1,100 coastal locations in 2010, as reported in their National Coastal Condition Assessment (EPA, 2015). The EPA used a Water Quality Index (WQI) to determine the quality of various coastal areas including the northeast coast from Virginia to Maine and assigned three condition levels for a number of constituents: good, fair, and poor. A number of the sample locations overlap with the action area. Chlorophyll a concentrations, an indicator of primary productivity, levels in northeastern coastal waters were generally rated as fair (45%) to good (51%) condition, and stations in the action area were all also fair to good (EPA, 2015). Nitrogen and phosphorous levels in northeastern coastal waters generally rated as fair to good (13% fair and 82% good for nitrogen and 62% and 26% good for phosphorous); stations in the action area were all also fair to good (EPA 2015). Dissolved oxygen levels in northeastern coastal waters are generally rated as fair (14%) to good (80%) condition, with consistent results for the sampling locations in the action area. Based on the available information, water quality in the action area appears to be consistent with surrounding areas. We are not aware of any discharges to the action area that would be expected to result in adverse effects to listed species or their prey. Outside of conditions related to climate change, discussed in section 7.10, water quality is not anticipated to negatively affect negative listed species that may occur in the action area.

7.0 EFFECTS OF THE ACTION

This section of the biological opinion assesses the effects of the proposed action on threatened or endangered species. Effects of the action are all consequences to listed species or critical habitat that are caused by the proposed action, including the consequences of other activities that are caused by the proposed action. A consequence is caused by the proposed action if it would not occur but for the proposed action and it is reasonably certain to occur. Effects of the action may occur later in time and may include consequences occurring outside the immediate area involved in the action (50 CFR §402.02 and § 402.17).

The effects of the issuance of an IHA and other ancillary permits/authorizations, such as the USACE and EPA permits, are considered effects of the action as they are consequences of another activity that is caused by the proposed action (e.g., the proposed construction of the South Fork project causes the need for an IHA); however, they are also separate Federal actions that trigger consultation in their own right. In this consultation, we have worked with NMFS through its Office of Protected Resources as the action agency proposing to authorize marine mammal takes under the MMPA through the IHA, as well as with other Federal agencies aside from BOEM that are proposing to issue permits or other approvals, and we have analyzed the effects of those actions along with the effects of BOEM's proposed action.

The purpose of the South Fork project is to generate electricity. Electricity will travel from the WTGs to the OSS and then by submarine cable to on-land cables in New York. As described in the COP, from this point, electricity generated at the WTGs would be distributed to the Long Island Power Authority (LIPA) electric transmission and distribution system in the town of East Hampton on Long Island, New York. LIPA pools electricity from numerous sources. Power from the project is expected to displace the need to construct new fossil-fuel fired plants or transmission facilities to support the South Fork of Suffolk County, New York (Jacobs 2021). Electricity will then be used to support existing uses. LIPA's Long Island electric system supplies approximately 1.1 million customers. Long Island had a peak electric demand of 4,972 MW in 2017 (NYISO 2018). The maximum electric output of the South Fork project is 180 MW. All of the electricity generated will support existing uses.

Even if we assume the South Fork project will increase overall supply of electricity, we are not aware of any new actions demanding electricity that would not be developed but for the South Fork project specifically. Because the electricity generated by South Fork will be pooled with that of other sources in the power grid, we are unable to trace any particular new use to South Fork Wind's contribution to the grid and, therefore, we cannot identify which impacts, positive or negative, if any, would occur because of the South Fork project. Therefore, there are not any identified consequences associated with South Fork's production of electricity.

Here, we examine the activities associated with the proposed action and determine what the consequences of the proposed action are to listed species or critical habitat. A consequence is caused by the proposed action if it would not occur but for the proposed action and it is reasonably certain to occur. In analyzing effects, we evaluate whether a source of impacts is "likely to adversely affect" listed species/critical habitat or "not likely to adversely affect" listed species/critical habitat. A "not likely to adversely affect" determination is appropriate when an effect is expected to be discountable, insignificant, or completely beneficial. As discussed in the FWS-NMFS Joint Section 7 Consultation Handbook (1998), "[b]eneficial effects are contemporaneous positive effects without any adverse effects to the species. Insignificant effects relate to the size of the impact and should never reach the scale where take occurs. Discountable effects are those extremely unlikely to occur. Based on best judgment, a person would not: (1) be able to meaningfully measure, detect, or evaluate insignificant effects; or (2) expect discountable effects to occur. "Take" means "to harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect or attempt to engage in any such conduct" (ESA §3(19)). "Take" is not anticipated if an effect is beneficial, discountable, or insignificant.

7.1 Underwater Noise

In this section, we provide background information on underwater noise and listed species, establish the underwater noise that listed species are likely to be exposed to, and then establish the expected response of the individuals exposed to that noise. This analysis considers all phases of the proposed action inclusive of construction, operations, and decommissioning.

7.1.1 Background on Noise

This section contains a brief technical background on sound, the characteristics of certain sound types, and metrics used in this consultation inasmuch as the information is relevant to the specified activity and to consideration of the potential effects of the specified activity on listed species found later in this document.

Sound travels in waves, the basic components of which are frequency, wavelength, velocity, and amplitude. Frequency is the number of pressure waves that pass by a reference point per unit of time and is measured in hertz (Hz) or cycles per second. Wavelength is the distance between two peaks or corresponding points of a sound wave (length of one cycle). Higher frequency sounds have shorter wavelengths than lower frequency sounds, and typically attenuate (decrease) more rapidly, except in certain cases in shallower water. Amplitude is the height of the sound pressure wave or the "loudness" of a sound and is typically described using the relative unit of the decibel (dB). A sound pressure level (SPL) in dB is described as the ratio between a measured pressure and a reference pressure (for underwater sound, this is 1 microPascal (μPa)), and is a logarithmic unit that accounts for large variations in amplitude; therefore, a relatively small change in dB corresponds to large changes in sound pressure. The source level (SL) typically represents the SPL referenced at a distance of 1 m from the source, while the received level is the SPL at the listener's position (referenced to 1 μPa).

Root mean square (rms) is the quadratic mean sound pressure over the duration of an impulse. Root mean square is calculated by squaring all of the sound amplitudes, averaging the squares, and then taking the square root of the average (Urick, 1983). Root mean square accounts for both positive and negative values; squaring the pressures makes all values positive so that they may be accounted for in the summation of pressure levels (Hastings and Popper, 2005). This measurement is often used in the context of discussing behavioral effects, in part because behavioral effects, which often result from auditory cues, may be better expressed through averaged units than by peak pressures.

Sound exposure level (SEL; represented as dB re 1 μPa^2-s) represents the total energy in a stated frequency band over a stated time interval or event, and considers both intensity and duration of exposure. The per-pulse SEL is calculated over the time window containing the entire pulse (*i.e.*, 100 percent of the acoustic energy). SEL is a cumulative metric; it can be accumulated over a single pulse, or calculated over periods containing multiple pulses. Cumulative SEL represents the total energy accumulated by a receiver over a defined time window or during an event. Peak sound pressure (also referred to as zero-to-peak sound pressure or 0-pk) is the maximum instantaneous sound pressure measurable in the water at a specified distance from the source, and is represented in the same units as the rms sound pressure.

When underwater objects vibrate or activity occurs, sound-pressure waves are created. These waves alternately compress and decompress the water as the sound wave travels. Underwater sound waves radiate in a manner similar to ripples on the surface of a pond and may be either directed in a beam or beams or may radiate in all directions (omnidirectional sources), as is the case for sound produced by the pile driving activity considered here. The compressions and decompressions associated with sound waves are detected as changes in pressure by aquatic life and man-made sound receptors such as hydrophones.

Even in the absence of sound from the specified activity, the underwater environment is typically loud due to ambient sound, which is defined as environmental background sound levels lacking a single source or point (Richardson *et al*., 1995). The sound level of a region is defined by the total acoustical energy being generated by known and unknown sources. These sources may include physical (*e.g.*, wind and waves, earthquakes, ice, atmospheric sound), biological (*e.g.*, sounds produced by marine mammals, fish, and invertebrates), and anthropogenic (*e.g.*, vessels, dredging, construction) sound. A number of sources contribute to ambient sound, including wind and waves, which are a main source of naturally occurring ambient sound for frequencies between 200 hertz (Hz) and 50 kilohertz (kHz) (Mitson, 1995). In general, ambient sound levels tend to increase with increasing wind speed and wave height. Precipitation can become an important component of total sound at frequencies above 500 Hz, and possibly down to 100 Hz during quiet times. Marine mammals can contribute significantly to ambient sound levels, as can some fish and snapping shrimp. The frequency band for biological contributions is from approximately 12 Hz to over 100 kHz. Sources of ambient sound related to human activity include transportation (surface vessels), dredging and construction, oil and gas drilling and production, geophysical surveys, sonar, and explosions. Vessel noise typically dominates the total ambient sound for frequencies between 20 and 300 Hz. In general, the frequencies of anthropogenic sounds are below 1 kHz and, if higher frequency sound levels are created, they attenuate rapidly.

The sum of the various natural and anthropogenic sound sources that comprise ambient sound at any given location and time depends not only on the source levels (as determined by current weather conditions and levels of biological and human activity) but also on the ability of sound to propagate through the environment. In turn, sound propagation is dependent on the spatially and temporally varying properties of the water column and sea floor, and is frequency-dependent. As a result of the dependence on a large number of varying factors, ambient sound levels can be expected to vary widely over both coarse and fine spatial and temporal scales. Sound levels at a given frequency and location can vary by 10-20 decibels (dB) from day to day (Richardson *et al*., 1995). The result is that, depending on the source type and its intensity, sound from the specified activity may be a negligible addition to the local environment or could form a distinctive signal that may affect a particular species. As noted in the Environmental Baseline, ambient noise within the Lease Area was measured between 96 to 103 dB in the 70.8- to 224-Hz frequency band at least 50% of the recording time, with peak ambient noise levels reaching as high as 125 dB on the western side of the SFWF in proximity to the Narraganset Bay and Buzzards Bay shipping lanes (Kraus et al. 2016).

Sounds are often considered to fall into one of two general types: pulsed and non-pulsed. The distinction between these two sound types is important because they have differing potential to cause physical effects, particularly with regard to hearing (*e.g.*, Ward, 1997 in Southall *et al*., 2007). Non-impulsive sounds can be tonal, narrowband, or broadband, brief or prolonged, and may be either continuous or intermittent (ANSI, 1995; NIOSH, 1998).

Pulsed sound sources (*e.g.*, impact pile driving) produce signals that are brief (typically considered to be less than one second), broadband, atonal transients (ANSI, 1986, 2005; Harris, 1998; NIOSH, 1998; ISO, 2003) and occur either as isolated events or repeated in some succession. Pulsed sounds are all characterized by a relatively rapid rise from ambient pressure to a maximal pressure value followed by a rapid decay period that may include a period of diminishing, oscillating maximal and minimal pressures, and generally have an increased capacity to induce physical injury as compared with sounds that lack these features.

Non-pulsed sounds can be tonal, narrowband, or broadband, brief or prolonged, and may be either continuous or intermittent (ANSI, 1995; NIOSH, 1998). Some of these non-pulsed sounds can be transient signals of short duration but without the essential properties of pulses (*e.g.*, rapid rise time). Examples of non-pulsed sounds include those produced by vessels, aircraft, drilling or dredging, and vibratory pile driving.

Specific to pile driving, the impulsive sound generated by impact hammers is characterized by rapid rise times and high peak levels. Vibratory hammers produce non-impulsive, continuous noise at levels significantly lower than those produced by impact hammers. Rise time is slower, reducing the probability and severity of injury, and sound energy is distributed over a greater amount of time (*e.g.*, Nedwell and Edwards, 2002; Carlson *et al*., 2005).

7.1.2 Summary of Available Information on Sources of Increased Underwater Noise

During the construction phase of the project, sources of increased underwater noise include pile driving, vessel operations, and other underwater construction activities (cable laying, placement of scour protection) as well as HRG surveys. During the operations and maintenance phase of the project, sources of increased underwater noise are limited to WTG operations, vessel operations, and maintenance activities including occasional HRG surveys. During decommissioning, sources of increased underwater noise include removal of project components and associated surveys, as well as vessel operations. Here, we present a summary of available information on these noise sources. More detailed information is presented in the COP (Appendix III-M), acoustic reports produced for the project (Denes et al. 2021), South Fork Wind's Application for an IHA[24], the Notice of Proposed IHA (86 FR 8490; February 5, 2021), and BOEM's BA and July 2021 Supplemental BA.

Impact Pile Driving for Foundations

All monopiles would be installed with a hydraulic impact hammer. Impact pile driving entails the use of a hammer that utilizes a rising and falling piston to repeatedly strike a pile and drive it into the ground. Using a crane, the installation vessel would upend the monopile, place it in the gripper frame, and then lower the monopile to the seabed. The gripper frame would stabilize the monopile's vertical alignment before and during piling. Once the monopile is lowered to the seabed, the crane hook would be released and the hydraulic hammer would be picked up and placed on top of the monopile. A temporary steel cap called a helmet would be placed on top of the pile to minimize damage to the head during impact driving. The largest hammer South Fork Wind expects to use for driving monopiles produces up to 4,000 kilojoules (kJ) of energy (however, required energy may ultimately be far less than 4,000 kJ). South Fork Wind would utilize a sound attenuation device (*e.g.*, bubble curtain) during all impact pile driving.

For the installation schedule, there are two piling scenarios that are considered possible within the current engineering design. Based on BOEM's description of the proposed action, up to 16 days of pile driving may occur between May 1 and December 31; no impact pile driving activities would occur from January 1 through April 30. BOEM and South Fork Wind describe two scenarios for scheduling pile installation.

The standard scenario assumes that a pile is driven every other day such that 16 monopiles would be installed over a 30-day period. A more aggressive schedule is considered for the maximum design scenario in which six piles are driven in a week (7 days) such that the 16 piles are

---

[24] Available at: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/action/incidental-take-authorization-south-fork-wind-llc-construction-south-fork-offshore-wind; last accessed August 30, 2021.

installed over a 20-day period. Only one pile would be driven per 24 hours (hrs), irrespective of the selected scenario. Two pile driving scenarios (for 16 11-m diameter piles), are described by BOEM (in the BA) and South Fork (in the COP) (see Table 7.1.1 below). The standard pile driving scenario would require an estimated 4,500 strikes for the pile to reach the target penetration depth, with an average installation time of 140 minutes for one pile. In the event that a pile location presents denser substrate conditions and requires more strikes to reach the target penetration depth, a difficult-to-drive pile scenario was considered, in which 8,000 strikes and approximately 250 minutes would be required to install 1 pile. BOEM included one difficult to drive pile in the proposed action. The intensity (*i.e.*, hammer energy level) of impact pile driving would be gradually increased based on the resistance that is experienced from the sediments. The strike rate for the monopile foundations is estimated to be 36 strikes per minute.

Table 7.1.1. Summary of impact pile driving activities for SFWF Foundations

Pile driving method	Pile size	Number of piles	Strikes/pile	Duration/pile	Number of days over which pile driving will occur
Impact	11 m monopile	16	Standard pile: 4,500	Standard pile: 140 min	Standard/Most Likely scenario: 30
			Difficult pile: 8,000	Difficult pile: 250 min	Maximum scenario: 20

The BA and supplemental information provided by BOEM present modeling scenarios that predict the underwater noise associated with installation of the various types of piles. This same modeling was used to support NMFS' proposed action of issuing the IHA, and in the IHA application. This modeling (Denes et al. 2021) utilized the following assumptions for modeling for the maximum impact and most likely scenarios:

- 11-m monopile foundation installation:
  - Assumes 1 "difficult" installation scenario requiring 8,000 pile strikes over a 4-hour period for each pile, and 15 "normal" installations requiring 4,000 pile strikes over a 2-hour period, using an impact hammer operating at 4,500 kilojoules.
  - Assumes use of a noise attenuation system achieving a 10-dB reduction in peak noise levels as well as dB rms and SEL.
  - Monopile installation would occur between May 1 and December 31.
  - Aggressive installation scenario: Six piles are driven over 7 days, such that the 16 piles are installed over a 20-day period. Only one pile would be installed per day.

The 11 m (36 ft.) monopile foundation is the largest potential pile diameter proposed for the project; while a smaller diameter pile may ultimately end up being installed, 11 m represents the largest potential diameter (regardless of ultimate turbine capacity). Because driving a smaller pile with equal hammer energy would produce less noise (e.g., peak noise not as great and/or distance to thresholds of concern not as large), using the largest possible pile in the modeling ensures that the modeling scenario is best representative of the maximum impact scenario.

Representative hammering schedules of increasing hammer energy with increasing penetration depth were modeled, resulting in, generally, higher intensity sound fields as the hammer energy and penetration increases (Table 7.1.2).

Table 7.1.2. Hammer energy schedule for monopile installation

Energy level (kilojoule[kJ])	Standard pile strike count (4,500 total)	Difficult pile strike count (8,000 total)	Pile penetration (m)
1,000	500	800	0 - 6
1,500	1,000	1,200	6 – 23.5
2,500	1,500	3,000	23.5 - 41
4,000	1,500	3,000	41 - 45

South Fork Wind is proposing, and BOEM proposes to require through conditions of COP approval, the use of a noise attenuation system designed to minimize the sound radiated from piles by 10 dB. This requirement will be in place for all piles to be installed; as no piles will be driven without a noise attenuation system, compliance will be monitored through ensuring that actual noise does not exceed modeled distances to the isopleths of concern with 10 dB noise attenuation incorporated. Noise attenuation systems, such as bubble curtains, are designed to decrease the sound levels radiated from a source. Bubbles create a local impedance change that acts as a barrier to sound transmission. The size of the bubbles determines their effective frequency band, with larger bubbles needed for lower frequencies. There are a variety of bubble curtain systems, confined or unconfined bubbles, and some with encapsulated bubbles or panels. Attenuation levels also vary by type of system, frequency band, and location. Small bubble curtains have been measured to reduce sound levels but effective attenuation is highly dependent on depth of water, current, and configuration and operation of the curtain (Austin, Denes, MacDonnell, & Warner, 2016; Koschinski & Lüdemann, 2013). Bubble curtains vary in terms of the sizes of the bubbles and those with larger bubbles tend to perform a bit better and more reliably, particularly when deployed with two separate rings (Bellmann, 2014; Koschinski & Lüdemann, 2013; Nehls et al. 2016).

The attenuation system would likely be a single bubble curtain, but may include one of the following or some combination of the following: A double big bubble curtain (BBC), Hydro-sound Damper, and/or Noise Abatement System. South Fork would also have a second back-up attenuation device (e.g., additional bubble curtain or similar) available, if needed, to achieve the targeted reduction in noise levels that would result in the measured Level A harassment and Level B harassment isopleths corresponding to those modeled assuming 10 dB attenuation, pending results of sound field verification testing.

If South Fork Wind uses a bubble curtain, the bubble curtain must distribute air bubbles around 100 percent of the piling perimeter for the full depth of the water column. The lowest bubble ring shall be in contact with the mudline for the full circumference of the ring, and the weights attached to the bottom ring shall ensure 100 percent mudline contact. No parts of the ring or other objects shall prevent full mudline contact. South Fork Wind would require that construction contractors train personnel in the proper balancing of airflow to the bubblers, and would require that construction contractors submit an inspection/performance report for approval by South Fork Wind within 72 hours following the performance test. Corrections to the attenuation device to meet the performance standards would occur prior to impact driving. If South Fork Wind uses a noise attenuation device other than a BBC, similar quality control measures would be required.

Encapsulated bubble systems (e.g., Hydro Sound Dampers (HSDs)), can be effective within their targeted frequency ranges, e.g., 100-800 Hz, and when used in conjunction with a bubble curtain appear to create the greatest attenuation. The literature presents a wide array of observed attenuation results for bubble curtains. The variability in attenuation levels is the result of variation in design, as well as differences in site conditions and difficulty in properly installing and operating in-water attenuation devices. A California Department of Transportation (CalTrans) study tested several systems and found that the best attenuation systems resulted in 10-15 dB of attenuation (Buehler et al., 2015). Similarly, Dähne et al. (2017) found that single bubble curtains that reduced sound levels by 7 to 10 dB reduced the overall sound level by ~12 dB when combined as a double bubble curtain for 6 m steel monopiles in the North Sea. Bellmann et al. (2020) provide a review of the efficacy of using bubble curtains (both single and double) as noise abatement systems in the German EEZ of the North and Baltic Seas. For 8 m diameter monopiles, single bubble curtains achieved an average of 11 dB broadband noise reduction (Bellmann et al., 2020). Caltrans (2020) reports on attenuation achieved at a number of pile driving projects with confined and unconfined bubble systems; reported attenuation ranged from 5 dB to 30 dB. The available data supports conclusions that a 10 dB reduction in noise is a reasonable anticipated result of use of an appropriate sound attenuation system.

As described in section 3.0 of this Opinion, in addition to seasonal restrictions on impact pile driving and requirements for use of a noise attenuation system, there are a number of other measures included as part of the proposed action that are designed to avoid or minimize exposure of ESA listed species to underwater noise. These are discussed in the Effects Analysis below.

Vessel Noise

Vessel noise is considered a continuous noise source that will occur intermittently. Vessels transmit noise through water primarily through propeller cavitation, although other ancillary noises may be produced. The intensity of noise from vessels is roughly related to ship size and speed. Large ships tend to be noisier than small ones, and ships underway with a full load (or towing or pushing a load) produce more noise than unladen vessels. Radiated noise from ships varies depending on the nature, size, and speed of the ship. McKenna et al. (2012b) determined that container ships produced broadband source levels around 188 dB re 1 µPa and a typical fishing vessel radiates noise at a source level of about 158 dB re 1 µPa (Mintz and Filadelfo 2011c; Richardson et al. 1995b; Urick 1983b).

Typical large vessel ship-radiated noise is dominated by tonals related to blade and shaft sources at frequencies below about 50 Hz and by broadband components related to cavitation and flow noise at higher frequencies (approximately around the one-third octave band centered at 100 Hz) (Mintz and Filadelfo 2011c; Richardson et al. 1995b; Urick 1983b). The acoustic signature produced by a vessel varies based on the type of vessel (e.g., tanker, bulk carrier, tug, container ship) and vessel characteristics (e.g., engine specifications, propeller dimensions and number, length, draft, hull shape, gross tonnage, speed). Bulk carrier noise is predominantly near 100 Hz while container ship and tanker noise is predominantly below 40 Hz (McKenna et al. 2012b). Small craft types will emit higher-frequency noise (between 1 kHz and 50 kHz) than larger ships (below 1 kHz). Large shipping vessels and tankers produce lower frequency noise with a primary energy near 40 Hz and underwater SLs for these commercial vessels generally range from 177 to 188 decibels referenced to 1 micropascal at 1 meter (dB re 1 µPa m) (McKenna et al., 2012). Smaller vessels typically produce higher frequency sound (1,000 to 5,000 Hz) at SLs of 150 to 180 dB re 1 µPa m (Kipple and Gabriele, 2003; Kipple and Gabriele, 2004). Dynamic positioning vessels generate more significant underwater noise with continuous SLs ranging from 150 to 180 dB re 1 µPa m (BOEM, 2013; McPherson et al., 2016) depending on operations and thruster use.

As part of various construction related activities, including cable laying and construction material delivery, dynamic positioning thrusters may be utilized to hold vessels in position or move slowly. Sound produced through use of dynamic positioning thrusters is similar to that produced by transiting vessels, and dynamic positioning thrusters are typically operated either in a similarly predictable manner or used for short durations around stationary activities. Acoustic propagation modeling calculations for DP vessel operations were completed by JASCO Applied Sciences, Inc. (JASCO) for two representative locations for pile foundation construction within the SFWF based on a 107 m DP vessel equipped with six thrusters (Denes et al., 2021a). Unweighted root-mean square sound pressure levels (SPLrms) ranged from 166 dB re 1 µPa at 50 m from the vessel (CSA 2021; Appendix P1 to the COP).

Cable Installation

In the BA, BOEM indicates that noise produced during cable laying includes the continuous source from dynamic positioning (DP) thruster use. The sound source-level assumption employed in the underwater acoustic analysis was 177 dB re 1 µPa at 1 meter and a vessel draft of 8 feet (2.5 meters) for placing source depth. Nedwell et al. (2003) reports a sound source level for cable trenching operations in the marine environment of 178 dB re 1µPa at a distance of 1m from the source. Hale (2018) reports on unpublished information for cable jetting operations indicating a comparable sound source level, concentrated in the frequency range of 1 kHz to 15 kHz and notes that the sounds of cable burial were attributed to cavitation bubbles as the water jets passed through the leading edge of the burial plow.

WTG Operations

As described in BOEM's BA, once operational, vibrations from the WTG drivetrain and power generator would be transmitted into the steel monopile foundation generating underwater noise. BOEM notes that much of the currently available information on operational noise from turbines is based on monitoring of existing windfarms in Europe. Although useful for characterizing the general range of WTG operational noise effects, this information is drawn from studies of older generation WTGs that operate with gearboxes and is not necessarily representative of current generation direct-drive systems (Elliot et al. 2019; Tougaard et al. 2020). These studies indicate that the typical noise levels produced by older-generation WTGs with gearboxes range from 110 to 130 dB RMS with 1/3-octave bands in the 12.5- to 500-Hz range, sometimes louder under extreme operating conditions such as higher wind conditions (Betke et al. 2004; Jansen and de Jong 2016; Madsen et al. 2006; Marmo et al. 2013; Nedwell and Howell 2004; Tougaard et al.

2009). Operational noise increases concurrently with ambient noise (from wind and waves), meaning that noise levels usually remain indistinguishable from background within a short distance from the source under typical operating conditions. Tougaard et al. (2020) concluded that operational noise from multiple WTGs could elevate noise levels within a few kilometers of large windfarm operations under very low ambient noise conditions. Tougaard et al. (2020) caution that their analysis is based on monitoring data for older generation WTG designs that are not necessarily representative of the noise levels produced by modern direct-drive systems.

Stober and Thomsen (2021) used modeling to predict underwater operational noise levels associated with 10 MW turbines. The authors compiled available data from 16 offshore wind projects and used calculations to estimate operational source levels and then extrapolated to predict source levels for a 10 MW turbine. Using generic transmission loss calculations, they then predicted distances to 120 dB re 1uPa RMS. The authors note that there is unresolved uncertainty in their methods. Using this methodology, and considering the lower sound levels measured at projects with direct-drive turbines (e.g., Elliot et al. 2019) compared to WTGs with gearboxes, they predicted that a 10 MW direct-drive WTG would produce underwater noise above the 120 dB re 1uPa RMS at a distance of up to 1.4 km from the turbine. However, it is important to note that this is just a prediction and it is not based on in situ evaluation of underwater noise of a 10 MW direct-drive turbine. Further, we note that context is critical to the reported noise levels evaluated in this study as well as for any resulting predictions. Without information on soundscape, water depth, sediment type, wind speed, and other factors, it is not possible to determine the reliability of any predictions from the Stober and Thomsen paper to the South Fork Wind project. We also note that Tougaard et al. (2020) and Stober and Thomsen (2021) both note that operational noise is less than shipping noise; this suggests that in areas with consistent vessel traffic, such as the South Fork lease area, operational noise may not be detectable above ambient noise.

Elliot et al. (2019) summarized findings from hydroacoustic monitoring of operational noise from the Block Island Wind Farm (BIWF). The BIWF is composed of five GE Haliade 150 6-MW direct-drive WTGs on jacketed foundations located approximately 30 km west of the proposed SFWF. We note that Tougaard (2020) reported that in situ assessments have not revealed any systematic differences between noise from turbines with different foundation types (Madsen et al., 2006). Underwater noise monitoring took place from December 20, 2016 – January 7, 2017 and July 15 – November 3, 2017. Elliot et al. (2019) also presents comparing measurements of underwater noise associated with operations of the direct-drive at the BIWF to underwater noise reported at wind farms in Europe using older WTGs with gearboxes and conclude that absent the noise from the gears, the direct-drive models are quieter

In September 2021, BOEM confirmed to us that the WTGs proposed for SFWF will use the newer, direct-drive technology. Therefore, given the similarities in location and the use of direct-drive technology, we expect that the data from the BIWF is a reasonable predictor of noise associated with the operations of the SFWF turbines. Operational noise from the direct-drive WTGs at the BIWF were generally lower than those observed for older generation WTGs, particularly when weighted by the hearing sensitivity of different marine mammal species. Elliot et al. (2019) presented a representative high operational noise scenario at an observed wind speed of 15 m/s (approximately 54 kmh), which is summarized in Table 7.1.3 below (Table 18 from BOEM’s BA). As shown, the BIWF WTGs produced frequency weighted instantaneous noise levels of 103 and 79 dB SEL for the LFC and MFC marine mammal hearing groups in the 10-Hz to 8-kHz frequency band, respectively. Frequency weighted noise levels for the LFC and MFC hearing groups were higher for the 10-Hz to 20-kHz frequency band at 122.5- and 123.3-dB SEL, respectively.

Table 7.1.3. Frequency weighted underwater noise levels, based on NMFS 2018, at 50 m from an operational 6-MW WTG at the Block Island Wind Farm

Species Hearing Group	**Instantaneous dB SEL***		**Cumulative dB SEL†**	
	10 Hz to 8 kHz	10 Hz to 20 kHz	10 Hz to 8 kHz	10 Hz to 20 kHz
Unweighted	121.2	127.1	170.6	176.5
LFC (North Atlantic right whale, fin whale, sei whale)	103.0	122.5	152.4	171.9
MFC (sperm whale)	79.0	123.3	128.4	172.7

Source: Elliot et al. (2019) in BOEM’s January 2021 BA.
* 1-second SEL re 1 μPaS_2 at 15 m/s (33 mph) wind speed. 1sec SEL = RMS
† Cumulative SEL re 1 μPaS_2 assuming continuous 24 exposure at 50 m from WTG foundation operating at 15 m/s.

Elliot et al. (2019) also summarizes sound levels sampled over the full survey duration. These averages used data sampled between 10 PM and 10 AM each day to reduce the risk of sound contamination from passing vessels. The loudest noise recorded was 126 dB re 1uPa at 50 m from the turbine when wind speeds exceeded 56 kmh; at wind speeds of 43.2 km/h and less, measured noise did not exceed 120 dB re 1uPa at 50 m from the turbine.

Table 7.1.4. Summary of unweighted SPL RMS average sound levels (10 Hz to 8 kHz) measured at 50 m (164 ft.) from WTG 5

Wind speed (Km/h)	**Overall average sound level, dB re 1 µPa**
7.2	112.2
14.4	113.1
21.6	114
28.8	115.1
36	116.7
43.2	119.5
46.8	120.6
Average over survey duration	119
Background sound levels in calm conditions	107.4 [30 km from turbine]
	110.2 [50 m from turbine]

Reproduced from Elliot et al. (2019); wind speeds reported as m/s converted to km/h for ease of reference

High-Resolution Geophysical Surveys

South Fork Wind will carry out occasional high-resolution geophysical (HRG) and remotely operated vehicle (ROV) surveys over the life of the project. The HRG surveys would use only electromechanical sources such as boomer, sparker, bubble gun, and chirp subbottom profilers, side-scan sonar, and multibeam depth sounders. No air guns are proposed for use. A number of measures to minimize effects to ESA listed species during HRG operations are proposed to be required by BOEM. Given their operating frequency, acoustic signals from electromechanical sources other than the boomer, bubble gun, and sparker are not likely to be detectable by sea turtles or Atlantic sturgeon. Table A.2 in Appendix B of this Opinion presents the anticipated underwater noise associated with the survey equipment.

All noise producing survey equipment is secured to the survey vessel or towed behind a survey vessel and is only turned on when the vessel is traveling along survey transects; thus, the area ensonified is constantly moving, making survey noise transient and intermittent. The maximum anticipated distances from the HRG sound sources to noise thresholds of concern are presented in table 7.1.6 below.

Consistent with conclusions made by BOEM and by NMFS OPR in the Notice of Proposed IHA, operation of some survey equipment types is not reasonably expected to result in any effects to ESA listed species in the area. Parametric sub-bottom profilers (SBP), also called sediment echosounders, generate short, very narrow-beam (1° to 3.5°) signals at high frequencies (generally around 85-100 kHz). The narrow beamwidth significantly reduces the potential that an individual animal could be exposed to the signal, while the high frequency of operation means that the signal is rapidly attenuated in seawater. Ultra-Short Baseline (USBL) positioning systems produce extremely small acoustic propagation distances in their typical operating configuration. The single beam and Multibeam Echosounders (MBES), side-scan sonar, and the magnetometer/gradiometer that may be used in these surveys all have operating frequencies >180 kHz and are therefore outside the general hearing range of ESA listed species that may occur in the survey area.

BOEM completed a desktop analysis of nineteen HRG sources in Crocker and Fratantonio (2016) to evaluate the distance to thresholds of concern for listed species. Equipment types or frequency settings that would not be used for the survey purposes by the offshore wind industry were not included in this analysis. To provide the maximum impact scenario for these calculations, the highest power levels and most sensitive frequency setting for each hearing group were used when the equipment had the option for multiple user settings. All sources were analyzed at a tow speed of 2.315 m/s (4.5 knots), which is the expected speed vessels will travel while towing equipment. Distances to potential onset of PTS, applying the thresholds identified in NMFS 2018 were calculated for the low-frequency hearing group (sei, fin, and North Atlantic right whales), the mid-frequency group (sperm whales), and for a worst-case exposure scenario of 60 continuous minutes for sea turtles and fish.

Tables 7.1.6 and 7.1.7 describe the greatest distances to PTS thresholds of concern for the various equipment types analyzed by BOEM. It is important to note that as different species groups have different hearing sensitivities, not all equipment operates within the hearing threshold of all species considered here.

Table 7.1.6. Summary of greatest PTS Exposure Distances from mobile HRG Sources at Speeds of 4.5 knots

HRG SOURCE	**PTS DISTANCE (m)**								
	Highest Source Level (dB re 1 µPa)	**Sea Turtles**		**Fish**[b]		**Baleen Whales**		**Sperm Whales**[c]	
Mobile, Impulsive, Intermittent Sources									
		Peak	*SEL*	*Peak*	*SEL*	*Peak*	*SEL*	*Peak*	*SEL*
Boomers, Bubble Guns	176 dB SEL 207 dB RMS 216 PEAK	0	0	3.2	0	0	0.3	0	0
Sparkers	188 dB SEL 214 dB RMS 225 PEAK	0	0	9	0	2	12.7	0	0.2
Chirp Sub-Bottom Profilers	193 dB SEL 209 dB RMS 214 PEAK	NA	NA	NA	NA	0	1.2	0	0.3
Mobile, Non-impulsive, Intermittent Sources									
Multi-beam echosounder (100 kHz)	185 dB SEL 224 dB RMS 228 PEAK	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	0	0.5
Multi-beam echosounder (>200 kHz) (mobile, non-impulsive, intermittent)	182 dB SEL 218 dB RMS 223 PEAK	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Side-scan sonar (>200 kHz) (mobile, non-impulsive, intermittent)	184 dB SEL 220 dB RMS 226 PEAK	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

[a] Sea turtle PTS distances were calculated for 203 cSEL and 230 dB peak criteria from Navy (2017).

[b] Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group (2008).

[c] PTS injury distances for listed marine mammals were calculated with NOAA's sound exposure spreadsheet tool using sound source characteristics for HRG sources in Crocker and Fratantonio (2016)

NA = not applicable due to the sound source being out of the hearing range for the group.

Using the same sound sources for the PTS analysis, BOEM calculated the distances to 175 dB re 1 µPa rms for sea turtles, 160 dB re 1 µPa rms for marine mammals, and 150 dB re 1 µPa rms for fish were calculated using a spherical spreading model (20 LogR) (Table 7.1.7). BOEM has conservatively used the highest power levels for each sound source reported in Crocker and

Fratantonio (2016). Additionally, the spreadsheet and geometric spreading models do not consider the tow depth and directionality of the sources; therefore, these are likely overestimates of actual disturbance distances.

Table 7.1.7. Summary of greatest disturbance distances by equipment type

HRG SOURCE	**DISTURBANCE DISTANCE (m)**			
	Sea Turtles (175 dB re 1uPa rms)	**Fish (150 dB re 1uPa rms)**	**Baleen Whales (160 dB re 1uPa rms)**	**Sperm Whales (160 dB re 1uPa rms)**
Boomers, Bubble Guns	40	708	224	224
Sparkers	90	1,996[a]	502	502
Chirp Sub-Bottom Profilers	2	32	10	10
Multi-beam Echosounder (100 kHz)	NA	NA	NA	<369[b]
Multi-beam Echosounder (>200 kHz)	NA	NA	NA	NA
Side-scan Sonar (>200 kHz)	NA	NA	NA	NA

a – the calculated distance to the 150 dB rms threshold for the Applied Acoustics Dura-Spark is 1,996m; however, the distances for other equipment in this category is significantly smaller

b – this distance was recalculated using the NMFS user spreadsheet following receipt of the BA following identification of an overestimate by BOEM.

NA = not applicable due to the sound source being out of the hearing range for the group.

As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA, additional modeling was carried out, using the source levels described in Crocker and Fratantonio (2016) to estimate distances to the Level A and Level B harassment thresholds (see Table 12 in the Notice of Proposed IHA, reproduced in part as table 7.1.8 below). The distances to thresholds of concern for sparkers are smaller than those described in the BA and in table 7.1.7 above. This appears to be because BOEM used the highest power levels and most sensitive frequency setting and calculations that did not account for tow depth or directionality of the source. As noted above, the BOEM estimates in Table 7.1.6 and Table 7.1.7 likely overestimate distance to the isopleths of concern.

Table 7.1.8 Distance to weighted Level A harassment and unweighted Level B harassment thresholds for each HRG sound source or comparable sound source category for marine mammal hearing groups

Source	**Distance to Level A Threshold (m)**		**Distance to Level B (m)**
	LF (SELcum threshold)	**MF (SELcum threshold)**	**All species (160 dB SPLrms threshold)**
Shallow SBPs			
ET 216 CHIRP	<1	<1	12
ET 424 CHIRP	0	0	4
ET 512i CHIRP	0	0	6
GeoPulse 5430	<1	<1	29
TB CHIRP III	1.5	<1	54
Medium SBPs			
AA Triple plate S-Boom (700/1,000 J)	<1	0	76
AA, Dura-spark UHD (500 J/400 tip)	<1	0	141
AA, Dura-spark UHD 400+400	<1	0	141
GeoMarine, Geo-Source dual 400 tip sparker	<1	0	141

µPa = micropascal; AA = Applied Acoustics; CHIRP = Compressed High-Intensity Radiated Pulse; dB = decibels; ET = EdgeTech; J = joules; LF= low-frequency; MF = mid-frequency; re= referenced to;
Source: Table 12, 86 FR 8490

7.1.3 Effects of Project Noise on ESA-Listed Whales

Background Information – Acoustics and Whales

The *Federal Register* notice prepared for the Proposed IHA (86 FR 8490; February 5, 2021) presents extensive information on the potential effects of underwater sound on marine mammals. Rather than repeat that information, that information is incorporated by reference here. As explained in detail in the *Federal Register* notice, anthropogenic sounds cover a broad range of frequencies and sound levels and can have a range of highly variable impacts on marine life, from none or minor to potentially severe responses, depending on received levels, duration of exposure, behavioral context, and various other factors. Underwater sound from active acoustic sources can have one or more of the following effects: temporary or permanent hearing impairment, non-auditory physical or physiological effects, behavioral disturbance, stress, and masking (Richardson et al., 1995; Gordon et al., 2004; Nowacek et al., 2007; Southall et al., 2007; Götz et al., 2009). The degree of effect is intrinsically related to the signal characteristics, received level, distance from the source, and duration of the sound exposure. In general, sudden, high level sounds can cause hearing loss, as can longer exposures to lower level sounds. Temporary or permanent loss of hearing will occur almost exclusively for noise within an animal's hearing range.

Richardson et al. (1995) described zones of increasing intensity of effect that might be expected to occur, in relation to distance from a source and assuming that the signal is within an animal's hearing range. First is the area within which the acoustic signal would be audible (potentially perceived) to the animal but not strong enough to elicit any overt behavioral or physiological response. The next zone corresponds with the area where the signal is audible to the animal and of sufficient intensity to elicit behavioral or physiological responsiveness. Third is a zone within which, for signals of high intensity, the received level is sufficient to potentially cause discomfort or tissue damage to auditory or other systems. Overlaying these zones to a certain extent is the area within which masking may occur. Masking is when a sound interferes with or masks the ability of an animal to detect a signal of interest that is above the absolute hearing threshold. The masking zone may be highly variable in size.

The expected responses to pile driving noise may include threshold shift, behavioral effects, stress response, and auditory masking. Threshold shift is the loss of hearing sensitivity at certain frequency ranges (Finneran 2015). It can be permanent (PTS), in which case the loss of hearing sensitivity is not fully recoverable, or temporary (TTS), in which case the animal’s hearing threshold would recover over time (Southall et al., 2007). PTS is an auditory injury, which may vary in degree from minor to significant. Behavioral disturbance may include a variety of effects, including subtle changes in behavior (e.g., minor or brief avoidance of an area or changes in vocalizations), more conspicuous changes in similar behavioral activities, and more sustained and/or potentially severe reactions, such as displacement from or abandonment of high-quality habitat. An animal's perception of a threat may be sufficient to trigger stress responses consisting of some combination of behavioral responses, autonomic nervous system responses, neuroendocrine responses, or immune responses (e.g., Seyle, 1950; Moberg, 2000). In many cases, an animal's first and sometimes most economical response in terms of energetic costs is behavioral avoidance of the potential stressor. Autonomic nervous system responses to stress typically involve changes in heart rate, blood pressure, and gastrointestinal activity. These responses have a relatively short duration and may or may not have a significant long-term effect on an animal's fitness. Masking occurs when the receipt of a sound is interfered with by another coincident sound at similar frequencies and at similar or higher intensity, and may occur whether the sound is natural (e.g., snapping shrimp, wind, waves, precipitation) or anthropogenic (e.g., shipping, sonar, seismic exploration) in origin.

Criteria Used for Assessing Effects of Noise Exposure to Sei, Fin, Sperm, and Right Whales

NMFS *Technical Guidance for Assessing the Effects of Anthropogenic Noise on Marine Mammal Hearing* compiles, interprets, and synthesizes scientific literature to produce updated acoustic thresholds to assess how anthropogenic, or human-caused, sound affects the hearing of all marine mammals under NMFS jurisdiction (NMFS 2018[25]). Specifically, it identifies the received levels, or thresholds, at which individual marine mammals are predicted to experience temporary or permanent changes in their hearing sensitivity for acute, incidental exposure to underwater anthropogenic sound sources. As explained in the document, these thresholds represent the best available scientific information. These acoustic thresholds cover the onset of

---

[25] See www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/acoustics/guidelines.htm for more information.

both temporary (TTS) and permanent hearing threshold shifts (PTS).

Table 7.1.9. Impulsive acoustic thresholds identifying the onset of permanent threshold shift and temporary threshold shift for the marine mammal species groups considered in this opinion (NMFS 2018)

Hearing Group	**Generalized Hearing Range**[26]	**Permanent Threshold Shift Onset**[27]	**Temporary Threshold Shift Onset**
Low-Frequency Cetaceans (LF: baleen whales)	7 Hz to 35 kHz	*L*pk,flat: 219 dB *L*E,LF,24h: 183 dB	*L*pk,flat: 213 dB *L*E,LF,24h: 168 dB
Mid-Frequency Cetaceans (MF: sperm whales)	150 Hz to 160 kHz	*L*pk,flat: 230 dB *L*E,MF,24h: 185 dB	*L*pk,flat: 224 dB *L*E,MF,24h: 170 dB

Note: Peak sound pressure level (Lp,0-pk) has a reference value of 1 µPa, and weighted cumulative sound exposure level (LE,p) has a reference value of 1µPa2 s. In this Table, thresholds are abbreviated to be more reflective of International Organization for Standardization standards (ISO 2017). The subscript "flat" is being included to indicate peak sound pressure are flat weighted or unweighted within the generalized hearing range of marine mammals (i.e., 7 Hz to 160 kHz). The subscript associated with cumulative sound exposure level thresholds indicates the designated marine mammal auditory weighting function (LF, MF, and HF cetaceans) and that the recommended accumulation period is 24 hours. The weighted cumulative sound exposure level thresholds could be exceeded in a multitude of ways (i.e., varying exposure levels and durations, duty cycle).

These thresholds are a dual metric for impulsive sounds, with one threshold based on peak sound pressure level (0-pk SPL) that does not incorporate the duration of exposure, and another based on cumulative sound exposure level (SEL_{cum}) that does incorporate exposure duration. The cumulative sound exposure criteria incorporate auditory weighting functions, which estimate a species group's hearing sensitivity, and thus susceptibility to TTS and PTS, over the exposed frequency range, whereas peak sound exposure level criteria do not incorporate any frequency dependent auditory weighting functions.

In using these thresholds to estimate the number of individuals that may experience auditory effects in the context of the MMPA, NMFS classifies any exposure equal to or above the threshold for the onset of PTS as auditory injury (and thus MMPA Level A harassment). As defined under the MMPA, Level A harassment means any act of pursuit, torment, or annoyance that has the potential to injure a marine mammal or marine mammal stock in the wild. NMFS considers exposure to impulsive noise greater than 160 dB re 1uPa rms to result in MMPA Level B harassment. As defined under the MMPA, Level B harassment refers to acts that have the potential to disturb (but not injure) a marine mammal or marine mammal stock in the wild by disrupting behavioral patterns, including, but not limited to, migration, breathing, nursing,

---

[26] Represents the generalized hearing range for the entire group as a composite (i.e., all species within the group), where individual species' hearing ranges are typically not as broad. Generalized hearing range chosen based on approximately 65 dB threshold from normalized composite audiogram, with the exception for lower limits for LF cetaceans (Southall et al. 2007).

[27] *L*pk,flat: unweighted ($_{flat}$) peak sound pressure level (L_{pk}) with a reference value of 1 µPa; *L*E,$_{XF,24h}$: weighted (by species group; $_{LF}$: Low Frequency, or $_{MF}$: Mid-Frequency) cumulative sound exposure level (L_E) with a reference value of 1 µPa^2-s and a recommended accumulation period of 24 hours ($_{24h}$)

breeding, feeding, or sheltering. Among Level B exposures, the Permits and Conservation Division does not distinguish between those individuals that are expected to experience TTS and those that would only exhibit a behavioral response.

The 160 dB re 1uPa rms threshold is based on observations of behavioral responses of mysticetes (Malme et al. 1983; Malme et al. 1984; Richardson et al. 1986; Richardson et al. 1990), but is used for all marine mammal species.

Effects of Project Noise on ESA-Listed Whales
Fin, sei, sperm, and right whales may be exposed to increased underwater noise during construction, operation, and/or decommissioning of the South Fork project. South Fork Wind applied for an Incidental Harassment Authorization (IHA) to authorize Level A harassment of fin and sei whales and Level B harassment of fin, sei, sperm, and right whales expected to result from exposure to pile driving noise (impact driving of monopoles and vibratory driving of a cofferdam) as well as Level B harassment of fin, sei, right, and sperm whales from exposure to HRG surveys. NMFS Office of Protected Resources (OPR) is proposing to authorize this take. South Fork Wind did not apply for an IHA for any other noise sources and OPR is not proposing to authorize MMPA take of any ESA listed whale species for any noise sources other than pile driving noise and one-year of HRG surveys. NMFS OPR erroneously included proposed take authorization for blue whales in the proposed IHA. This will be removed in the final IHA. Based on modelling results, no exposure of blue whales to pile driving noise above the Level A or B harassment thresholds is anticipated.

Here, we consider the effects of exposure and response to underwater noise during construction, operations, and decommissioning in the context of the ESA. Information on the relevant acoustic thresholds and a summary of the best available information on likely responses of whales to underwater noise is presented above. More information on South Fork Wind's IHA application and details of the acoustic modeling is available in the *Federal Register* notice of the proposed IHA (86 FR 8490; Feb. 5, 2021), the IHA application (available at: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/action/incidental-take-authorization-south-fork-wind-llc-construction-south-fork-offshore-wind; last accessed July 15, 2021), and Denes et al. 2021.

Pile Driving
In their IHA application, South Fork Wind estimated exposure of marine mammals known to occur in the WDA to impact and vibratory pile driving noise according to the MMPA definition of take, including consideration of Level A and Level B harassment. South Fork Wind requested authorization for Level A and/or Level B takes as a result of exposure to pile driving noise for several ESA listed species (fin, sei, sperm, and right whales). As part of the response to the MMPA IHA application, OPR conducted their own review of the model reports and determined they were based on the best available information and relied on the model results to develop the proposed IHA.

For the purposes of this ESA section 7 consultation, we evaluated the applicants' and OPR's exposure estimates of the number of ESA-listed cetaceans that would be "taken" relative to the definition of MMPA Level A and Level B harassment and considered this expected MMPA take in light of the ESA definition of take including the NMFS definition of harm (64 FR 60727;

November 8, 1999) and NMFS interim guidance on the definition of harass (see NMFS policy directive 02-110-19[28]). We have adopted OPR's analysis of the number of fin, sei, sperm, and right whales expected to be exposed to pile driving noise because, after our independent review, we determined it utilized the best available information and methods to evaluate exposure to these whale species. Below we describe South Fork Wind and NMFS OPR's exposure analyses for these species.

Acoustic Modeling

The Notice of Proposed IHA and BOEM's BA provides extensive information on the acoustic modeling prepared for the project (Denes et al. 2021 a and b; Appendixes P1 and P2 to the COP). That information is summarized here. As described above, South Fork Wind is proposing to install up to 15 WTGs and one OSS in the SFWF (*i.e.*, a maximum of 16 foundations).

The two monopile installation scenarios considered for construction and modeled are:

1. The "maximum design" consisting of fifteen piles requiring ~4,500 strikes per pile (per 24 hrs), and one difficult to drive pile requiring ~8,000 strikes (per 24 hrs)
2. The "standard design" consisting of sixteen piles requiring ~4,500 strike per pile (per 24 hrs).

Representative hammering schedules of increasing hammer energy with increasing penetration depth were modeled, resulting in, generally, higher intensity sound fields as the hammer energy and penetration increases (Table 7.1.10).

Table 7.1.10. Hammer energy schedule for monopile installation

Energy level (kilojoule[kJ])	Standard pile strike count (4,500 total)	Difficult pile strike count (8,000 total)	Pile penetration (m)
1,000	500	800	0 - 6
1,500	1,000	1,200	6 – 23.5
2,500	1,500	3,000	23.5 - 41
4,000	1,500	3,000	41 - 45

Additional modeling assumptions for the monopiles were as follows:

- One pile installed per day.
- 10.97 m steel cylindrical piling with wall thickness of 10 cm.
- Impact pile driver: IHC S-4000 (4000 kilojoules (kJ) rated energy; 1977 kilonewtons (kN) ram weight).
- Helmet weight: 3234 kN.
- Vertical monopoles driven to a penetration depth of 45 m.

Two locations within the SFWF lease area were selected to provide representative propagation and sound fields for the project area (see Figure 1 in SFWF COP, Appendix J1). The two locations were selected to span the region from shallow to deeper water and varying distances to

---

[28] Available at: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/laws-and-policies/protected-resources-policy-directives. Last accessed June 18, 2021.

dominant bathymetric features (*i.e.*, slope and shelf break). Water depth and environmental characteristics (*e.g.*, bottom-type) are similar throughout the SFWF, and therefore minimal differences were found in sound propagation results for the two sites (Denes *et al.*, 2021). The model also incorporated two different sound velocity profiles (related to in situ measurements of temperature, salinity, and pressure within the water column) to account for variations in the acoustic propagation conditions between summer and winter. The sound propagation modeling incorporated site-specific environmental data that describes the bathymetry, sound speed in the water column, and seabed geoacoustics in the construction area.

South Fork Wind proposes to employ a noise mitigation system during all impact pile driving of monopiles. Noise mitigation systems, such as bubble curtains, are designed to decrease the sound levels radiated from a source. Bubbles create a local impedance change that acts as a barrier to sound transmission. The size of the bubbles determines their effective frequency band, with larger bubbles needed for lower frequencies. There are a variety of bubble curtain systems, confined or unconfined bubbles, and some with encapsulated bubbles or panels. Attenuation levels also vary by type of system, frequency band, and location. Small bubble curtains have been measured to reduce sound levels but effective attenuation is highly dependent on depth of water, current, and configuration and operation of the curtain (Austin, Denes, MacDonnell, & Warner, 2016; Koschinski & Lüdemann, 2013). Bubble curtains vary in terms of the sizes of the bubbles and those with larger bubbles tend to perform a bit better and more reliably, particularly when deployed with two separate rings (Bellmann, 2014; Koschinski & Lüdemann, 2013; Nehls, Rose, Diederichs, Bellmann, & Pehlke, 2016).

Encapsulated bubble systems (*e.g.*, Hydro Sound Dampers (HSDs)), can be effective within their targeted frequency ranges, *e.g.*, 100–800 Hz, and when used in conjunction with a bubble curtain appear to create the greatest attenuation. The literature presents a wide array of observed attenuation results for bubble curtains. The variability in attenuation levels is the result of variation in design, as well as differences in site conditions and difficulty in properly installing and operating in-water attenuation devices. A California Department of Transportation (CalTrans) study tested several systems and found that the best attenuation systems resulted in 10–15 dB of attenuation (Buehler *et al.*, 2015). Similarly, Dähne *et al*. (2017) found that single bubble curtains that reduced sound levels by 7 to 10 dB reduced the overall sound level by ~12 dB when combined as a double bubble curtain for 6 m steel monopiles in the North Sea. Bellmann *et al*. (2020) provide a review of the efficacy of using bubble curtains (both single and double) as noise abatement systems in the German EEZ of the North and Baltic Seas. For 8 m diameter monopiles, single bubble curtains achieved an average of 11 dB broadband noise reduction (Bellmann *et al*., 2020). In modeling the sound fields for South Fork Wind’s proposed activities, hypothetical broadband attenuation levels of 0 dB, 6 dB, 10 dB, 12 dB, and 15 dB were modeled to gauge the effects on the ranges to thresholds given these levels of attenuation. BOEM has incorporated a requirement to achieve 10 dB noise attenuation in the description of the proposed action. South Fork Wind proposes to use a noise mitigation system to produce field measurements of the isopleth distances to the Level A harassment and Level B harassment thresholds that accord with those modeled assuming 10 dB of attenuation.

As noted above, the updated acoustic thresholds for impulsive sounds (such as impact pile driving) contained in the Technical Guidance (NMFS, 2018) were presented as dual metric acoustic thresholds using both $\mathrm{SEL_{cum}}$ and peak sound pressure level metrics (Table 7.1.9). As dual metrics, NMFS considers onset of PTS (MMPA Level A harassment) to have occurred when either one of the two metrics is exceeded (*i.e.*, metric resulting in the largest isopleth). The $\mathrm{SEL_{cum}}$ metric considers both level and duration of exposure, as well as auditory weighting functions by marine mammal hearing group.

Table 7.1.11 and 7.1.12 show the modeled acoustic ranges to the Level A harassment thresholds, with 10 dB sound attenuation incorporated. The Notice of Proposed IHA contains tables showing 0, 6, 10, 12 and 15 dB sound attenuation incorporated. For the peak level, the greatest distances expected within a given hearing group are shown, typically occurring at the highest hammer energy (Table 7.1.11). The $\mathrm{SEL_{cum}}$ Level A harassment threshold is the only metric that is affected by the number of strikes within a 24 hour period; therefore, it is only this acoustic threshold that is associated with differences in range estimates between the standard scenario and the difficult-to drive pile scenario (Table 7.1.12). The maximum distances for the other metric (peak sound pressure level ($\mathrm{SPL_{peak}}$) are equal for both scenarios because this metric is used to define characteristics of a single impulse and does not consider the accumulated energy over the number of strikes (Denes *et al*., 2020a). The radial distances shown in Tables 7.1.11 and 7.1.12 are the 95% range to effect; the 95% range to effect was calculated for both locations using summer and winter sound velocity profiles and those R95% distances were averaged to obtain the mean R95% distance.

As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA, modeled acoustic ranges to threshold levels may overestimate the actual distances at which animals receive exposures meeting the Level A ($\mathrm{SEL_{cum}}$) harassment threshold criterion. Applying animal movement and behavior (Denes *et al*., 2021c) within the propagated noise fields provides the exposure range, which results in a more realistic indication of the distances at which acoustic thresholds are met. For modeled animals that have received enough acoustic energy to exceed a given threshold, the exposure range for each animal is defined as the closest point of approach (CPA) to the source made by that animal while it moved throughout the modeled sound field, accumulating received acoustic energy. The resulting exposure range for each species is the 95th percentile of the CPA distances for all animals that exceeded threshold levels for that species (termed the 95 percent exposure range [$\mathrm{ER_{95percent}}$). Notably, the $\mathrm{ER_{95percent}}$ are species-specific rather than categorized only by hearing group which affords more biologically-relevant data (*e.g.,* dive durations, swim speeds, etc.) to be considered when assessing impact ranges. The $\mathrm{ER_{95percent}}$ for $\mathrm{SEL_{cum}}$ are provided in Table 7.1.14 and are smaller than the acoustic ranges calculated using propagation modeling alone (Table 7.1.11 and 7.1.12). The $\mathrm{ER_{95percent}}$ ranges assuming 10 dB attenuation for a difficult-to-drive pile were used to determine the Level A harassment zones for impact pile driving.

Table 7.1.11. Mean acoustic range ($\mathrm{R_{95\%}}$) to Level A peak sound pressure level ($\mathrm{SPL_{peak}}$) acoustic harassment thresholds for marine mammals due to impact pile driving

Marine Mammal Hearing Group	**Threshold SPLpeak (dB re 1 µPa)**	**Mean distance (m) to threshold**	
		0 dB attenuation	**10 dB attenuation**
Low-frequency cetaceans (baleen whales)	219	87	9

Mid-frequency cetaceans (sperm whales)	230	8	1

dB re 1 µPa = decibel referenced to 1 micropascal.

Table 7.1.12. Mean acoustic range ($R_{95\%}$) to Level A sound exposure level (SEL_{cum}) acoustic harassment thresholds for marine mammals due to impact pile driving of a standard pile (S; 4,500 strikes*) and a difficult to drive pile (D; 8,000 strikes*)

Marine Mammal Hearing Group	Threshold SELcum (dB re 1 µPa2 s)	Mean distance (m) to threshold	
		10 dB attenuation	
		S	D
Low- frequency cetaceans	183	6,085	7,846
Mid- frequency cetaceans	185	27	32

dB re 1 µPa^2 s = decibel referenced to 1 micropascal squared second;
*Approximation

Table 7.1.13 shows the acoustic ranges to the Level B harassment threshold with 10 dB sound attenuation incorporated, consistent with the proposed action. The Notice of Proposed IHA contains tables showing 0, 6, 10, 12 and 15 dB sound attenuation incorporated. Acoustic propagation was modeled at two representative sites in the SFWF as described above. The radial distances shown are the mean distance to the Level B harassment threshold from the piles, derived by averaging the $R_{95percent}$ to the Level B harassment thresholds for summer and winter (see Appendix P2 of the SFWF COP for more details).

Table 7.1.13. Mean acoustic range ($R_{95\%}$) to Level B harassment acoustic threshold (SPL_{rms}) due to impact pile driving

Threshold SPLrms (dB re 1 µPa)	Mean distance (m) to threshold
	10 dB attenuation
160	4,684

dB re 1 µPa = decibel referenced to 1 micropascal.

Table 7.1.14. Exposure-based ranges ($ER_{95\%}$) to Level A sound exposure level (SEL_{cum}) harassment acoustic thresholds due to impact pile driving of a standard pile (S; 4,500 strikes*) and a difficult to drive pile (D; 8,000 strikes*)

Species	ER95% to SELcum thresholds (m)	
	10 dB attenuation	
	S	D
Fin whale	1,451	1,769

Sei whale	1,346	1,756
North Atlantic right whale	1,481	1,621
Sperm whale	0	0

dB re 1 µPa^2 s = decibel referenced to 1 micropascal squared second.
*Approximation

As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA, the best available information regarding marine mammal densities in the project area is provided by habitat-based density models produced by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Laboratory (Roberts *et al*., 2016, 2017, 2018, 2020). The updated models incorporate additional sighting data, including sightings from the NOAA Atlantic Marine Assessment Program for Protected Species (AMAPPS) surveys from 2010-2016 which included some aerial surveys over the RI/MA & MA WEAs (NEFSC & SEFSC, 2011a, 2011b, 2012, 2014a, 2014b, 2015, 2016). Roberts et al. (2020) further updated model results for North Atlantic right whales by incorporating additional sighting data and implementing three major changes: Increasing spatial resolution, generating monthly estimates on three time periods of survey data, and dividing the study area into five discrete regions.

The Notice of Proposed IHA also contains an explanation of how mean monthly densities for marine mammal species were determined for the project area. Table 7.1.15 shows the monthly marine mammal density estimates for each species incorporated in the exposure modeling analysis. To obtain conservative exposure estimates the maximum of the mean monthly (May to December) densities for each species was used to estimate the number of individuals of each species exposed above Level A harassment and Level B harassment thresholds. The maximum densities applied are denoted by an asterisk.

Table 7.1.15. Estimated densities (animals/km^2) used for modeling marine mammal exposures within South Fork Wind Farm

Common Name	**Monthly Density (Animals km^2)**							
	May	**Jun**	**Jul**	**Aug**	**Sep**	**Oct**	**Nov**	**Dec**
Fin whale	0.00201	0.00219	0.00264*	0.00251	0.00217	0.00145	0.00102	0.00105
Sei whale	0.00019*	0.00013	0.00003	0.00002	0.00003	0	0.00001	0.00001
North Atlantic right whale	0.00154*	0.00011	0.00002	0.00001	0.00001	0.00005	0.00029	0.00151
Sperm whale	0.00002	0.00008	0.00031*	0.00024	0.0001	0.00007	0.00007	0.00001

*Denotes the highest monthly density estimated.

The Notice of Proposed IHA contains a complete description of how the information provided above is brought together to produce a quantitative take estimate. In summary, exposures were estimated in the following way:

1. The characteristics of the sound output from the proposed pile-driving activities were modeled using the GRLWEAP (wave equation analysis of pile driving) model and JASCO's PDSM;

2. Acoustic propagation modeling was performed within the exposure model framework using JASCO's MONM and FWRAM that combined the outputs of the source model with the spatial and temporal environmental context (*e.g.*, location, oceanographic conditions, seabed type) to estimate sound fields;
3. Animal movement modeling integrated the estimated sound fields with species-typical behavioral parameters in the JASMINE model to estimate received sound levels for the animals that may occur in the operational area; and
4. The number of potential exposures above Level A and Level B harassment thresholds was calculated for each potential piling scenario (standard, maximum).

All scenarios were modeled with no sound attenuation and 6, 10, 12, and 15 dB sound attenuation and those results are presented in the Notice of Proposed IHA. Here we present the model results incorporating 10 dB sound attenuation as that is the proposed action.

Table 7.1.16. Modeled potential Level A harassment exposures[1] due to impact pile driving using the maximum design scenario with the inclusion of 1 difficult pile and 10dB broadband attenuation

Species	**10 dB attenuation**	
	SELcum	**SPLpeak**
Low-Frequency Cetaceans		
Fin whale	1	<1
Sei whale[3]	<1	<1
North Atlantic right whale[2]	<1	<1
Mid-Frequency Cetaceans		
Sperm whale	<1	<1

dB = decibel; SEL_{cum} = sound exposure level in units of dB referenced to 1 micropascal squared second; SPL_{peak} = peak sound pressure level in units of dB referenced to 1 micropascal.

[1] The maximum density available for any month was used for each species to estimate the maximum potential exposures (*i.e.*, exposure estimates for all species are not for the same month).

[2] Subset of fin whale behaviors used to approximate model parameters

[3] Fin whale used as proxy species for exposure modeling

The estimated exposures of individuals by species to noise above the Level B harassment threshold for the maximum design pile driving schedule are presented here (Table 7.1.17).

Table 7.1.17. Modeled potential Level B harassment exposures[1] due to impact pile driving using the maximum design scenario with 1 difficult pile and 10 dB broadband attenuation

Species	**Level B Exposures by Noise Attenuation Level**
	10 dB attenuation
Low-Frequency Cetaceans	

Fin whale	6
North Atlantic right whale[2]	4
Sei whale[3]	<1
Mid-Frequency Cetaceans	
Sperm whale	<1

dB = decibel.

[1] The maximum density available for any month was used for each species to estimate the maximum potential exposures (*i.e.*, exposure estimates for all species are not for the same).

[2] Subset of fin whale behaviors used to approximate model parameters

[3] Fin whale used as proxy species for exposure modeling

South Fork Wind considers an attenuation level of 10 dB achievable using a single big bubble curtain (BBC), which is the most likely noise mitigation system that will be used during construction of SFWF. Recently reported in situ measurements during installation of large monopiles (~8 m) for more than 150 WTGs in comparable water depths (> 25 m) and conditions in Europe indicate that attenuation levels of 10 dB are achievable (Bellmann, 2019; Bellmann *et al*., 2020) using single BBCs as a noise mitigation system. Designed to gather additional data regarding the efficacy of BBCs, the Coastal Virginia Offshore Wind (CVOW) pilot project systematically measured noise resulting from the impact driven installation of two 7.8 m monopiles, one with a noise mitigation system (double big bubble curtain (dBBC)) and one without (CVOW, unpublished data). Although many factors contributed to variability in received levels throughout the installation of the piles (*e.g.*, hammer energy, technical challenges during operation of the dBBC), reduction in broadband SEL using the dBBC (comparing measurements derived from the mitigated and the unmitigated monopiles) ranged from approximately 9 to 15 dB. The effectiveness of the dBBC as a noise mitigation measure was found to be frequency dependent, reaching a maximum around 1 kHz; this finding is consistent with other studies (e.g., Bellman, 2014; Bellman *et al*., 2020). The noise measurements were incorporated into a dampened cylindrical transmission loss model to estimate distances to Level A and Level B harassment thresholds. The distances to Level A harassment and Level B harassment thresholds estimated for the monopile with the dBBC were more than 90 percent and 74 percent smaller than those estimated for the unmitigated pile, respectively (CVOW). As noted above, BOEM is requiring that the noise mitigation device(s) perform such that measured ranges to the Level A and Level B harassment thresholds are consistent with those modeled assuming 10 dB attenuation, determined via sound source verification

As explained in the Notice of Proposed IHA, modeling did not predict any exposure of sei whales to noise above the Level A thresholds. However, sei whales are known to occur in the lease area and modeling did predict exposure of sei whales to noise above the Level B thresholds. As such, South Fork Wind requested authorization for Level A take of one sei whale. NMFS OPR is proposing to authorize one Level A take of a sei whale. Similarly, modeling did not predict any exposure of sperm whales to noise above the Level A or Level B thresholds. However, as explained in the Notice of Proposed IHA, sperm whales have been documented in the lease area during site characterization surveys. Based on those sightings and the estimated minimum group size of 3 individuals, South Fork Wind requested authorization for Level B take of three sperm whales. NMFS OPR is proposing to authorize those takes (see Table 7.1.18).

Given the small size of the Level A isopleths for MFCs such as sperm whales (<1 m to peak threshold and 0 m for cumulative threshold), no exposure to noise above the Level A threshold is anticipated for any sperm whales.

Table 7.1.18. Proposed Level A harassment and Level B harassment takes of marine mammals resulting from impact pile driving of up to 16, 11-m monopiles with inclusion of a single difficult pile at South Fork Wind Farm using 10 dB broadband noise attenuation

Species	**Proposed Take Authorization**	
	Level A	**Level B**
Fin whale	1	6
Sei whale	1	1
North Atlantic right whale	0	4
Sperm whale	0	3

NMFS OPR concludes that there are a number of reasons why these are not likely to underestimate exposure to Level A and Level B harassment thresholds:

- South Fork Wind conservatively based their exposure modeling on the maximum piling scenario, including one difficult-to-drive monopile (out of 16) and a compressed buildout schedule (16 piles installed over 20 days).
- In addition, the acoustic modeling scenario represents only that which produced the largest harassment zones and does not reflect all the mitigation measures that will be employed during piling operations that will serve to reduce the Zone of Influence (ZOI) or increase mitigation actions, which may reduce take.
- Variability in monthly species densities is not considered in South Fork Wind's take estimates for monopile driving, which are based on the highest mean density value for any month for each species. Given that less than 30 days of pile driving will occur, it is unlikely that maximum monthly densities would be encountered for all species.
- Finally, start delays and shutdowns of pile hammering are not considered in the exposure modeling parameters for monopile driving. However, South Fork Wind will delay pile driving if a North Atlantic right whale is observed within the Level B harassment zone prior to initiating pile driving to avoid take and if a marine mammal is observed entering or within the respective exclusion zones after pile driving has commenced, an immediate shutdown of pile driving will be implemented unless South Fork Wind and/or its contractor determines shutdown is not practicable due to an imminent risk of injury or loss of life to an individual; or risk of damage to a vessel that creates risk of injury or loss of life for individuals. There are two scenarios, approaching pile refusal and pile instability, where this imminent risk could be a factor. These scenarios are considered unlikely and it is expected that shutdowns will predominately be practicable during operations.

7.1.3.1 Proposed Measures to Minimize Exposure of ESA Listed Whales to Pile Driving Noise

Here, we consider the measures that are part of the proposed action, either because they are proposed by South Fork or BOEM and reflected in the proposed action as described to us by

BOEM in the BA, or are proposed to be required through the IHA, and how those measures may serve to minimize exposure of ESA listed whales to pile driving noise. Details of these proposed measures are included in the Description of the Action section above.

Seasonal Restriction on Impact Pile Driving of Foundations
No impact pile driving activities would occur between January 1 and April 30 to avoid the time of year with the highest densities of right whales in the project area. This seasonal restriction is factored into the acoustic modeling that supported the development of the amount of take proposed in the IHA. That is, the modeling does not consider any pile driving in the January 1 – April 30, period. Thus, the take estimates do not need to be adjusted to account for this seasonal restriction.

Sound Attenuation Devices
South Fork would implement sound attenuation technology that would target at least a 10 dB reduction in pile driving noise; BOEM is requiring that the noise mitigation device(s) perform such that measured ranges to the Level A and Level B harassment thresholds are consistent with (i.e., no larger than) those modeled assuming 10 dB attenuation, determined via sound source verification. The 10 dB attenuation was incorporated into the take estimate calculations presented above. Thus, the take estimates do not need to be adjusted to account for the use of sound attenuation. If a reduction greater than 10 dB is achieved, the actual amount or extent of take would be expected to be lower as a result of resulting smaller distances to thresholds of concern.

Clearance Zones
South Fork will use PSOs to establish clearance zones around the pile driving equipment to ensure these zones are clear of marine mammals prior to the start of pile driving. The primary goal is to avoid exposure to the areas with the loudest noise, which is the area closest to the pile being driven. This reduces the potential for injury and may reduce the extent of disturbance. The proposed clearance zones are larger than the modeled distances to the isopleths corresponding to Level A harassment (peak and cumulative) for fin, sei, sperm, and North Atlantic right whales. These zones vary depending on species and are shown in Table 7.1.19. All distances to clearance zones are the radius from the center of the pile. For impact pile driving, clearance zones will be monitored by at least two PSOs at the pile driving platform and at least two PSOs on a dedicated PSO vessel transiting in a radius within the clearance zone. Monitoring will take place from 60 minutes prior to initiation of impact pile driving through 30 minutes post-completion of impact pile driving activity. Pile driving must only commence when the 2,200 m clearance zone is fully visible (i.e., are not obscured by darkness, rain, fog, etc.) for at least 30 minutes. Additionally, impact pile driving activity must be delayed upon observation of a North Atlantic right whale that is visually observed by PSOs at any distance from the pile. Any large whale sighted by a PSO within 1,000 m of the pile that cannot be identified to species must be treated as if it were a North Atlantic right whale.

Table 7.1.19. Proposed Clearance and Shutdown Zones

Impact pile driving of Foundations

Minimum Visibility of 2,200 m required for all impact pile driving		
Species	**Clearance Zone (m)**	**Shutdown Zone (m)**
North Atlantic right whale - PAM	5,000[a]	2,000[a]
North Atlantic right whale – visual detection	Visual detection of a right whale at any distance by a PSO stationed at the pile driving platform or PSO vessel triggers the required clearance or shutdown procedures	
Fin, sei, and sperm whale	2,200[b]	2,000
Pile driving for Cofferdam or Casing Pipe Installation/Removal		
Species	**Clearance Zone (m)**	**Shutdown Zone (m)**
NARW, fin, sei, and sperm whale	1,500	1,500
HRG Surveys		
Species	**Clearance Zone (m)**	**Shutdown Zone (m)**
North Atlantic right whale	500	500
Fin, sei, and sperm whale	100	100

a – The 5,000 m clearance zone and 2,000 m shutdown zone for right whales will be monitored through a combination of visual observers and PAM; PAM detections within these the clearance and shutdown distances will trigger the required clearance and/or shutdown procedures

b – The 2,200 m clearance zone for fin, sei, and sperm whales will be monitored by visual observers and is equivalent to the minimum visibility zone as described in the IHA.

Prior to the start of pile driving activity, the clearance zones will be monitored for 60 minutes to ensure that they are clear of the relevant species of marine mammals. If a marine mammal is observed approaching or entering the relevant clearance zones prior to the start of pile driving operations, pile driving activity will be delayed until either the marine mammal has voluntarily left the respective clearance zone and been visually confirmed beyond that clearance zone, or, 30 minutes have elapsed without re-detection of the animal. Pile driving would only commence once PSOs have declared the respective clearance zones clear of marine mammals. Marine mammals observed within a clearance zone will be allowed to remain in the clearance zone (*i.e.*, must leave of their own volition), and their behavior will be monitored and documented. The clearance zones may only be declared clear, and pile driving started, when the entire clearance zones are visible (*i.e.*, when not obscured by dark, rain, fog, etc.) for a full 30 minutes prior to pile driving.

Pile driving would not be initiated at night, or, when conditions prevent the full extent of all relevant clearance zones to be confirmed to be clear of marine mammals, as determined by the lead PSO on duty. The clearance zones may only be declared clear, and pile driving started, when the full extent of all clearance zones are visible (*i.e.*, when not obscured by dark, rain, fog, etc.) for a full 30 minutes prior to pile driving. To ensure adequate visibility for PSOs, impact pile driving may commence only during daylight hours and no earlier than one hour after civil sunrise. Impact pile driving may not be initiated any later than 1.5 hours before civil sunset and may continue after dark only when the installation of that pile began during daylight hours, and must proceed for human safety or installation feasibility reasons. Pile driving may continue after dark only when the driving of the same pile began during the day when clearance zones were fully visible and it was anticipated that pile installation could be completed before sundown. In those cases, pile driving may only proceed for human safety or installation feasibility reasons.

For impact pile driving, monitoring of the clearance zones by PSOs at the stationary platform and PSO vessel will be supplemented by real-time passive acoustic monitoring (PAM). PAM systems are designed to detect the vocalizations of marine mammals, allowing for detection of the presence of whales underwater or outside of the range where a visual observer may be able to detect the animals. Monitoring with PAM not only allows for potential documentation of any whales exposed to noise above thresholds of concern that were not detected by the visual PSOs but also allows for greater awareness of the presence of whales in the project area. As with the monitoring data collected by the visual PSOs, this information can be used to plan the pile driving schedule to minimize pile driving at times when whales are nearby and may be at risk of exposure to pile driving noise. The PAM system will be designed and established such that calls can be localized within 5 km from the pile driving location and to ensure that the PAM operator is able to review acoustic detections within 15 minutes of the original detection. If the PAM operator has confidence that a vocalization originated from a right whale located within the 5 km radius clearance zone, the appropriate associated clearance or shutdown procedures must be implemented (i.e., delay or stop pile driving).

If a marine mammal is observed entering or within the respective clearance zones (Table 7.1.19) after pile driving has begun, a shutdown must be implemented. Additionally, pile driving must be halted upon visual observation of a North Atlantic right whale by PSOs at any distance from the pile, or upon a confirmed PAM detection of a North Atlantic right whale within the clearance zone. Following shutdown, pile driving may not commence until either the animal has voluntarily left and been visually confirmed beyond the respective clearance zone or 30 minutes have elapsed without subsequent detection.

In situations when shutdown is called for but shutdown is not practicable due to human safety or operational concerns (see Condition 4(e)(v) in the Proposed IHA), reduced hammer energy would be implemented when practicable. After shutdown, pile driving may be initiated once all clearance zones are clear of marine mammals for the minimum species-specific time periods, or, if required to maintain installation feasibility (see Description of the Proposed Action section for more detail).

Consideration of the Effectiveness of Clearance Zones

Sperm Whales

There will be at least two PSOs stationed at an elevated position at or near the pile being driven as well as at least two PSOs stationed on dedicated PSO vessel moving in a radius around the pile between the pile driving vessel and the edge of the NARW clearance zone (5,000 m from the pile); given that PSOs are expected to reasonably be able to detect large whales at distances of approximately 1.5 km from their station (Roberts et al. 2016[29]), we expect that the PSOs will be able to effectively monitor the clearance zone (2,200 m for sperm whales). Given how close a sperm whale would need to be to the pile being driven to be exposed to noise above the Level A peak harassment threshold (see Table 7.1.11; 1 m), we expect that the requirement to maintain the clearance zones will ensure that no sperm whales will be exposed to noise above the Level A harassment peak threshold.

For sperm whales, the distance to the cumulative Level A harassment threshold extends less than 18 m from the pile being driven. Given the ability of a PSO to detect sperm whales at this distance, it is not reasonable to expect that pile driving would be started with a sperm whale at this distance. Further, the cumulative threshold considers that an individual whale is exposed to the total duration of pile driving during a 24-hour period. It is not reasonable to expect that even if a sperm whale swam into the exclusion zone while pile driving was occurring and pile driving could not be halted, that the whale would stay within 18 m of a monopile foundation for the duration of all pile driving during a 24-hour period which would be approximately 2 to 4 hours. Based on this, maintenance of the exclusion zone is expected to result in exposure of sperm whales to noise above the Level A harassment threshold to be extremely unlikely to occur. As such, we conclude that it is extremely unlikely that any sperm whales will experience permanent threshold shift or any other injury.

Sei and Fin Whales

As noted above, modeling estimates the exposure of 1 fin whale and 1 sei whale to noise above the Level A threshold and 6 fin and 1 sei whale above the Level B threshold. Fin and sei whales would need to be within 9 m of the pile to be exposed to noise above the Level A peak threshold, and remain within 1,400 or 1,800 m (depending on whether it was a “standard” or “difficult” pile installation) for the duration of the pile driving activity to be exposed to noise above the Level A cumulative threshold. Sei and fin whales within 4,684 m of the pile would be exposed to noise above the Level B threshold.

As explained above, we expect that the PSO will be able to reliably detect large whales at distances up to 1.5 km from their monitoring station (Roberts et al. 2016). PSOs will be on an elevated platform near the pile driving vessel and on a boat transiting within the exclusion zone. The distance to the peak (9 m) and cumulative (up to 1,769 m for the difficult pile) Level A harassment thresholds is smaller than the exclusion zone (2,200 m). Given the visibility

---

[29] Roberts et al. 2016 reports an effective strip width (a measure of how far animals are seen from the vessel) for North Atlantic right whales (1,309 m) and beaked whales (1,587 m). Detectability from the pile driving platform may be greater given the stability, elevation of the observers, the number of observers used, and the requirement to only install piles during good visibility conditions.

requirements and the ability of the PSOs to monitor the entirety of the 2,200 m clearance zone, it is unlikely that any pile driving would begin with a fin or sei whale within the exclusion zone. Even if a whale that detected the pile driving noise at a distance did not immediately swim away from the source, it is extremely unlikely that a sei or fin whale would get close enough to a pile being driven to be exposed to noise above the peak Level A harassment threshold (within 9 m of the pile). However, we do not expect the clearance and shutdown procedures to be wholly effective at eliminating exposure of all sei and fin whales to noise above the Level A cumulative threshold (i.e., within 1,800 m of the pile). This is because the PSOs may not be able to detect a sei or fin whale as soon as it enters the exclusion zone, particularly if the whale is submerged, pile driving is started late in the day and continues after dark or if there is a sudden change in weather conditions that affects visibility. Even if a fin or sei whale is detected immediately upon entering the exclusion zone, it will take some time to initiate a shutdown, and in rare events a shutdown may not be possible. As such, we expect that even with adherence to the clearance and shutdown requirements, 1 sei and 1 fin whales may be exposed to pile driving noise above the Level A harassment threshold. Similarly, given that the size of the area with noise above the Level B harassment threshold is larger than the exclusion zone, the exclusion and shutdown procedures may limit the duration of exposure to noise above the Level B harassment thresholds but do not eliminate the potential for exposure. Therefore, given the size of the area we cannot reduce or refine the take estimates based on the cumulative noise threshold based on consideration of the effectiveness of the exclusion zone and we anticipate that, as modeled and presented in the Proposed IHA, 6 fin and 1 sei whales may be exposed to noise above the Level B threshold.

Right Whales

The model results indicate that less than one right whale is expected to be exposed to noise above the Level A harassment threshold. This exposure estimate incorporates the time of year restriction (i.e., no pile driving January 1 – April 30) and 10 dB sound attenuation. As a result of several years of aerial surveys and PAM deployments in the area, NMFS has confidence that North Atlantic right whales are expected in the project area predominately during certain times of year, while at other times of year North Atlantic right whales are expected to occur less frequently in the project area. During aerial surveys conducted from 2011-2015 in the project area, North Atlantic right whale sightings occurred only December through April, with no sightings from May through November (Kraus et al., 2016). There was not significant variability in sighting rate among years, indicating consistent annual seasonal use of the area by North Atlantic right whales over the timespan of the surveys (Kraus et al., 2016). However, as described previously, North Atlantic right whale presence is increasingly variable in identified core habitats, including the area south of Martha’s Vineyard and Nantucket islands (northeast of the proposed SFWF) where both visual and acoustic detections of North Atlantic right whales indicate a nearly year-round presence (Oleson et al., 2020), although seasonal trends are still prominent (Hayes et al., 2020).

Due to this seasonal pattern in North Atlantic right whale occurrence in the project area, we expect the most significant measure in minimizing impacts to North Atlantic right whales to be the prohibition on impact pile driving for monopiles from January through April, when North Atlantic right whale abundance in the project area is greatest. A 5 km clearance zone will be maintained for North Atlantic right whales through the use of PAM and PSOs. There are also a number of requirements for monitoring North Atlantic right whale sightings which increases awareness of potential North Atlantic right whales in the lease area.

A North Atlantic right whale would need to be within 9 m of the pile being installed to be exposed to noise above the Level A peak threshold. Given the location of the PSOs, the use of PAM, and the abundance of personnel that will be present near the pile driving vessel, it is extremely unlikely that a North Atlantic right whale could be that close to the pile being driven without being detected. As such, we do not expect any North Atlantic right whale to be exposed to noise above the peak Level A threshold. The clearance zone for North Atlantic right whale (5,000m) is more than three times the size of the area where a North Atlantic right whale would need to stay for the duration of pile driving to be exposed to noise above the Level A cumulative threshold. As noted above, in certain circumstances detection by visual observers may be more difficult. However, the use of PAM significantly increases the detectability of North Atlantic right whale as it does not rely on visual detections. Together, we expect the use of PAM and visual PSOs at two locations to be able to effectively monitor the clearance zone both before and during pile driving. As a result of these mitigation measures, NMFS expects the already small potential for North Atlantic right whales to be exposed to project-related sound above the Level A harassment threshold to be eliminated. As such, we conclude that it is extremely unlikely that any right whales will experience permanent threshold shift or any other injury.

The use of PSOs and PAM to monitor the clearance zone may also reduce the potential for exposure of North Atlantic right whale to noise above the Level B harassment threshold. However, as we expect North Atlantic right whale to avoid this area during pile driving, these effects will not be eliminated.

Soft Start

As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA, the use of a soft start procedure is believed to provide additional protection to marine mammals by warning marine mammals or providing them with a chance to leave the area prior to the hammer operating at full capacity, and typically involves a requirement to initiate sound from the hammer at reduced energy followed by a waiting period. South Fork Wind will utilize soft start techniques for impact pile driving including by performing 4-6 strikes per minute at 10 to 20 percent of the maximum hammer energy (i.e., 400 to 800 KJ), for a minimum of 20 minutes. Soft start would be required at the beginning of each day’s impact pile driving work and at any time following a cessation of impact pile driving of thirty minutes or longer.

Use of a soft start can reduce the cumulative sound exposure if animals respond to a stationary sound source by swimming away from the source quickly (Ainslie et al. 2017). The result of the soft start will be an increase in underwater noise in an area radiating from the pile that is expected to exceed the Level B harassment threshold and therefore, is expected to cause any whales exposed to the noise to swim away from the source. Based on a hammer energy of 1,000 kJ (slightly more than the 400 to 800 kJ anticipated during the soft start), noise above the peak Level A threshold will only be exceeded within 3m of the pile being driven (see Table G-6 in Denes et al. 2021). During the soft start, noise above the Level B threshold will extend about 3,000 m from the pile being driven (see Table G-7 in Denes et al. 2021). The use of the soft start gives whales near enough to the piles to be exposed to the soft start noise a “head start” on escape or avoidance behavior by causing them to swim away from the source. It is possible that some whales may swim out of the noisy area before full force pile driving begins; in this case, the number of whales exposed to noise that exceeds the cumulative Level A harassment threshold may be reduced. It is likely that by eliciting avoidance behavior prior to full power pile driving, the soft start will reduce the duration of exposure to noise that could result in Level A or Level B harassment. However, we are not able to predict the extent to which the soft start will reduce the number of whales exposed to pile driving noise or the extent to which it will reduce the duration of exposure. Therefore, while the soft start is expected to reduce effects of pile driving we are not able to modify the estimated take numbers to account for any benefit provided by the soft start.

Sound Field Verification
South Fork will also conduct hydroacoustic monitoring for a subset of impact-driven piles. As explained above, the differences in conditions (i.e., water depth, temperature, substrate type) across the lease area that could result in variations in noise propagation are minimal; thus, it is expected that any particular pile installation will be representative of other pile locations throughout the lease area. Hydroacoustic monitoring would be performed for at least one pile. Sound field verification will be required for the first monopile, with no additional pile driving taking place until those results are available. South Fork Wind is required to develop and submit a sound field verification protocol to BOEM and NMFS for review by agency acousticians; this plan will be reviewed to ensure that the proposed sound field verification protocol, including number and location of hydrophones and associated equipment is adequate.

In addition to in situ measured distances to the Level A harassment and Level B harassment thresholds, the acoustic monitoring report would include: SPLpeak, SPLrms that contains 90 percent of the acoustic energy , single strike sound exposure level, integration time for SPLrms, SELss spectrum (1/3 octave band or power density spectra). All these levels would be reported in the form of median, mean, max, and minimum. The sound levels reported would be in median and linear average (i.e., taking averages of sound intensity before converting to dB). The acoustic monitoring report would also include a description of the hydrophones used, hydrophone and water depth, distance to the pile driven, and sediment type at the recording location.

The required sound field verification will provide information necessary to confirm that the sound source characteristics predicted by the modeling are reflective of actual sound source characteristics in the field. In the event that sound field verification indicates that characteristics in the field are such that the model is invalid or is determined to underestimate exposure of listed species, reinitiation of this consultation may be necessary.

Cofferdam Installation and Removal
Installation and extraction of the cofferdam are each expected to take 18 hours over 1 to 3 days of vibratory pile driving (total of 36 hours). Noise generated from vibratory pile driving is mostly concentrated at lower frequencies. Rise time is slower, and sound energy is distributed over a great amount of time, reducing the probability and severity of potential injury (Nedwell and Edwards, 2002; Carlson *et al*. 2005). Vibratory hammers produce peak SPLs that may be 180 dB or greater, but are generally 10 to 20 dB lower than SPLs generated during impact pile driving of the same-sized pile (Oestman *et al*., 2009). Measurements from vibratory pile driving

of sheet piles during construction activities for bridges and piers indicate that root mean square sound pressure level SPL_{rms} produced by this activity can range from 130 to 170 dB referenced to 1 micropascal squared seconds (dB re 1 µPa^2 s; re 1 µPa) depending on the measured distance from the source and physical properties of the location (Buehler *et al.*, 2015; Illingworth and Rodkin, Inc., 2017).

When the vibratory hammer is used for cofferdam installation and removal, a clearance zone extending 1,500 m from the sheet pile being installed/removed will be visually monitored. For vibratory pile driving, there must be at least two PSOs on duty on the vibratory pile driving platform, or nearby construction vessel, at all times during vibratory pile driving.

An extensive discussion of the modeling used to predict noise levels associated with the installation and removal of the cofferdams is presented in the Notice of Proposed IHA and is summarized here. For vibratory pile driving (non-impulsive sounds), sound source characteristics were generated by JASCO using GRLWEAP 2010 wave equation model (Pile Dynamics, Inc., 2010). Installation and removal of the cofferdam were modeled from a single location. The radiated sound waves were modeled as discrete point sources over the full length of the pile in the water and sediment (9.1 m [30 ft.] water depth, 9.1 m [30 ft.] penetration) with a vertical separation of 0.1 m (0.32 ft.). Removal of the cofferdam using a vibratory extractor is expected to be acoustically comparable to installation activities. No noise mitigation system will be used during vibratory piling. Summaries of the maximum ranges to Level A harassment thresholds and Level B harassment thresholds resulting from propagation modeling of vibratory pile driving are provided in Table 7.1.20. Peak thresholds were not reached for any marine mammal hearing group.

As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA, the large Level B harassment isopleths resulting from vibratory piling installation and removal are, in part, a reflection of the threshold set for behavioral disturbance from a continuous noise (*i.e.*, 120 dB_{rms}) and likely overestimate the noise that will be experienced. Level B harassment thresholds are highly contextual for species and the isopleth distance does not represent a definitive impact zone or a suggested mitigation zone; rather, the information serves as the basis for assessing potential impacts within the context of the project and potentially exposed species.

Table 7.1.20. Distances to Level A cumulative sound exposure level (SEL_{cum}) harassment acoustic thresholds and Level B root-mean-square sound pressure level (SPL_{rms}) acoustic threshold due to 18 hours of vibratory pile driving

Marine Mammal Hearing Group	Level A Threshold SEL_{cum} (dB re 1 µPa^2 s)	Maximum distance (m) to Level A threshold	Level B Threshold SPL_{rms} (dB re 1 µPa)	Maximum distance (m) to Level B threshold
Low-frequency cetaceans	199	1,470	120	36,766
Mid-frequency cetaceans	198	0	120	36,766

dB re 1 µPa = decibel referenced to 1 micropascal; µPa^2 s = decibel referenced to 1 micropascal squared second.

Densities of marine mammals and their subsequent exposure risk are different for the wind farm area (where impact pile driving for foundations will occur), the near shore export cable area (where vibratory pile driving will occur), and the HRG survey area. Therefore, density blocks

(Roberts *et al*., 2016; Roberts, 2018) specific to each construction area were selected for evaluating the potential takes of the 15 assessed species. The Denes *et al*. (2020c) model analysis utilized North Atlantic right whale densities from the most recent survey time period, 2010-2018, as suggested by Roberts *et al*. (2020).

Animal movement and exposure modeling was not used to determine potential exposures from vibratory pile driving. Rather, the modeled acoustic range distances to isopleths corresponding to the Level A harassment and Level B harassment threshold values were used to calculate the area around the cofferdam predicted to be ensonified daily to levels that exceed the thresholds, or the ZOI. This area was adjusted to account for the portion of the ZOI truncated by the coastline of Long Island, NY. The daily area was then multiplied by the maximum monthly density of a given marine mammal species. Finally, the resulting value was multiplied by the number of proposed activity days which is, for cofferdam installation and removal, conservatively estimated as two days.

Modeling of the Level A harassment exposures resulting from two 18-hour periods of vibratory pile driving resulted in less than one exposure for all species for each month between October 1 and May 31. Modeled potential Level B harassment exposures resulting from installation and extraction of the cofferdam are shown in Table 7.1.21.

Table 7.1.21. Modeled Level B harassment exposures resulting from vibratory pile driving and removal of the cofferdam by month (note that these results are not additive, only 2 days of pile driving/removal are anticipated in total)

Species	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Oct	Nov	Dec
Fin whale	0	0	1	2	1	1	0	0
Sei whale	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
North Atlantic right whale	6	6	5	3	1	0	1	3

Maximum 18-hour periods of vibratory pile driving or removal will be separated by at least 24 hours of no vibratory sound source operating at the cofferdam.

South Fork Wind did not request any Level A take for cofferdam installation or removal and NMFS OPR does not propose authorizing any Level A take. Modeled vibratory pile driving activities (SFWF COP Appendix J1 [Denes *et al.*, 2018]) resulted in mean acoustic ranges to the PTS threshold for low frequency cetaceans, ranging from 742 m for 6 hrs of pile driving to 1,470 m for 18 hrs of pile driving (Denes *et al.*, 2018). Maximum acoustic ranges to PTS thresholds for mid frequency cetaceans (sperm whales) are all under 103 m. As sperm whales are not expected to occur within 103 m of the area where the cofferdam will be installed/removed due to the relatively shallow depths and nearshore location, we do not anticipate any sperm whales to be exposed to noise above the Level A harassment threshold. Similarly, we do not expect any sei, fin, or North Atlantic right whale to be exposed to noise above the Level A harassment thresholds due to the rare and unexpected occurrence of these species in the nearshore area where noise above the Level A threshold may be exceeded and the duration of exposure that would be required (i.e., the length of time an individual whale would need to remain near the pile being installed/removed). The required use of PSOs to visually monitor an exclusion zone extending 1,500 m from the pile being installed and the ability to shutdown pile driving relatively quickly further reduces this already extremely low potential. Based on this, we agree with OPR's assessment that exposure of any ESA listed whales to noise above the Level A harassment threshold during cofferdam installation or removal is extremely unlikely to occur.

As noted in the Notice of Proposed IHA, predicting Level B harassment exposure estimates resulting from vibratory pile driving is complicated by the nearshore location, short duration of cofferdam installation and removal, and static species density data that are not indicative of animals transiting the nearshore environment. Marine mammal densities at the near shore export cable area were estimated from the 10 x 10 km habitat density block from Roberts *et al.* (2016) and Roberts *et al.* (2018) that contained the anticipated location of the temporary cofferdam. However, the density estimates are not provided for the area adjacent to the shoreline, although some density blocks do intersect the shore. Due to this structure, densities are artificially weighted to the nearest 100 km^2 offshore and do not adequately represent the low numbers expected for some groups like large whales (i.e., they result in an overestimate of potential exposure). In addition, the species densities represented in the Roberts *et al*. (2016) and Robert *et al*. (2018) are provided as monthly estimates and are, therefore, not indicative of a single-day distribution of animals within the potential ensonified zone. The modeled behavioral harassment threshold acoustic ranges extend beyond 36 km from the source (Table 7.1.20). Given the possibility that vibratory pile driving could occur anytime between October and May, the maximum modeled exposure for each species (across months) was used to conservatively predict take numbers and assess impacts resulting from vibratory pile driving (Table 7.1.22).

Table 7.1.22. Proposed Level B harassment take resulting from vibratory pile driving

Species/Stock	Proposed Level B Takes
Fin whale	9
Sei whale	1
North Atlantic right whale	6

As noted above, PSOs will be used to maintain a 1,500 m clearance zone during installation and removal of the cofferdam. While this will effectively ensure that no ESA listed whales are exposed to noise above the Level A harassment threshold, given the very large size of the area modeled to have noise above the Level B threshold, the clearance zone requirements are unlikely to result in any reduction in the number of animals exposed to noise above the Level B threshold.

As described in the Notice of Proposed IHA, masking, which occurs when the receipt of a sound is interfered with by a coincident sound at similar frequencies and similar or higher levels, may occur during the short periods of vibratory pile driving; however, this is unlikely to become biologically significant. It is possible that vibratory pile driving resulting from construction and removal of the temporary cofferdam may mask acoustic signals important to low frequency marine mammals, but the short-term duration (approximately 36 hours over 6 non-consecutive days, 18 hours each for installation and removal) would result in limited impacts from masking that would not be able to be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected and are therefore insignificant.

As an alternative to the cofferdam, South Fork Wind may install a 60" diameter steel casing pipe with a pneumatic hammer or similar smaller size hammer through which the 24-inch-diameter conduit would be pulled through. The casing pipe may be used in place of the proposed cofferdam at the same location. The casing pipe may require that temporary support piles be installed to ensure pipe stability. These support piles are anticipated to consist of up to 8 steel sheet piles temporarily driven into the seafloor. Noise associated with installation and removal of the steel sheet piles is consistent with the noise estimates for cofferdam installation and removal above; however, only 8 piles would be needed instead of 100 so the duration of vibratory hammering for installation and removal will be significantly less. Casing pipe installation is anticipated to be accomplished using a small pneumatic impact hammer (e.g., Grundoram Taurus or similar) operating around 18.6 kJ to drive the pipe in the seafloor. No acoustic modeling was carried out for the pneumatic hammer. As reported in BOEM's BA, information is available for installation of 60" diameter steel piles via impact pile driving (Caltrans 2015). Source levels for the pneumatic hammer would be significantly less given the significant difference in hammer energy (18.6 kJ compared to at least 1,000 kJ). Measurements during impact driving of a 60-inch diameter steel pile for bridge construction reported sound levels to be 210 dB re 1Pa RMS peak, SPL 195 dB re 1 µPa RMS and single strike SEL 185 dB re 1 µPa2s at 10 meters (m) from the pile (Caltrans 2015). BOEM used a pile driving noise calculator that assesses transmission loss to estimate the distance to thresholds of concern. Noise will not exceed the Level A harassment thresholds outside the 1,500 clearance zone. Noise will potentially exceed the 160 dB re 1uPa Level B threshold within 2,100 m of the piles being installed for no more than two hours. Given the nearshore location, it is extremely unlikely that any ESA listed whales will be exposed to noise above the Level B threshold during installation of the casing pipe.

7.1.3.2 Effects to ESA-Listed Whales from Exposure to Pile Driving Noise

Effects of Exposure to Noise Above the Level A Harassment Threshold

As explained above, one fin whale and one sei whale are expected to be exposed to impact pile driving noise that is loud enough to result in Level A harassment. Consistent with OPR's determination in the notice of proposed IHA, in consideration of the duration and intensity of noise exposure we expect that the consequences of exposures above the Level A harassment threshold would be in the form of slight permanent threshold shift (PTS), i.e. minor degradation of hearing capabilities within regions of hearing that align most completely with the energy produced by pile driving (i.e. the low-frequency region below 2 kHz), not severe hearing impairment. If hearing impairment occurs, it is most likely that the affected animal would lose a few decibels in its hearing sensitivity, which, given the limited impact to hearing sensitivity, is not likely to meaningfully affect its ability to forage and communicate with conspecifics. No severe hearing impairment or serious injury is expected because of the received levels of noise anticipated and the short duration of exposure. The PTS anticipated is considered a minor auditory injury. The measures designed to minimize exposure or effects of exposure that will be required by NMFS through the terms of the IHA and by BOEM through the conditions of COP approval and implemented by South Fork Wind, make it extremely unlikely that any whale will be exposed to pile driving noise that would result in severe hearing impairment or serious injury. This is because, given sufficient notice through use of soft start, marine mammals are expected to move away from a sound source that is annoying prior to exposure resulting in a serious injury and avoid sound sources at levels that would cause hearing loss (Southall et al. 2007, Southall et al. 2016). The potential for serious injury is also minimized through the use of a sound attenuation system, and the implementation of clearance zones that would facilitate a delay of pile driving if marine mammals were observed approaching or within areas that could be ensonified above sound levels that could result in auditory injury. The proposed requirement that pile driving can only commence when the 2,200 m clearance zone is fully visible to PSOs will ensure a high marine mammal detection capability, enabling a high rate of success in implementation of clearance zones to avoid serious injury.

Effects of Exposure to Noise Above the Level B Harassment Threshold

Considering impact and vibratory pile driving, we anticipate that up to 15 fin, 10 right, 2 sei, and 3 sperm whales will be exposed to noise above the Level B harassment threshold. Potential impacts associated with this exposure would include only low-level, temporary behavioral modifications, most likely in the form of avoidance behavior or potential alteration of vocalizations. In order to evaluate whether or not individual behavioral responses, in combination with other stressors, impact animal populations, scientists have developed theoretical frameworks that can then be applied to particular case studies when the supporting data are available. One such framework is the population consequences of disturbance model (PCoD), which attempts to assess the combined effects of individual animal exposures to stressors at the population level (NAS 2017). Nearly all PCoD studies and experts agree that infrequent exposures of a single day or less are unlikely to impact individual fitness, let alone lead to population level effects (Booth et al. 2016; Booth et al. 2017; Christiansen and Lusseau 2015; Farmer et al. 2018; Harris et al. 2017; Harwood and Booth 2016; King et al. 2015; McHuron et al. 2018; NAS 2017; New et al. 2014; Pirotta et al. 2018; Southall et al. 2007; Villegas-Amtmann et al. 2015).

Since we expect that any exposures would be brief (limited only to the time it takes to swim out of the area with noise above the Level B threshold but never more than 4 hours), and repeat exposures to the same individuals are unlikely (based on abundance, distribution and sightings data), any behavioral responses that would occur due to animals being exposed to pile driving are expected to be temporary, with behavior returning to a baseline state shortly after the acoustic stimuli ceases (i.e., pile driving stops or the animal swims far enough away from the source to no longer be exposed to disturbing levels of noise). Given this, and our evaluation of the available PCoD studies, any such behavioral responses are not expected to impact individual animals' health or have effects on individual animals' survival or reproduction. Specific effects to the different species are considered below.

North Atlantic Right Whales

We expect the behavioral disruption of up to 10 North Atlantic right whales from exposure to pile driving noise. When in the WDA where noise exposure would occur, one of the primary activities North Atlantic right whales are expected to be engaged in is migration. However, we also expect the animals to perform other behaviors, including opportunistic foraging, resting, and socialization (Quintana-Rizzo et al. 2021). If North Atlantic right whales exhibited a behavioral response to the pile driving noise, the normal activity of the animals would be disrupted, and it may pose some energetic cost. However, as noted previously, responses to pile driving noise are anticipated to be short-term (no more than about four hours).

Quintana-Rizzo et al. (2021) reported on observations of right whales in the MA/RI and MA Wind Energy Areas. Feeding was recorded on more occasions (n = 190 occasions) than socializing (n = 59 occasions). Feeding was observed in all seasons and years, whereas social behaviors were observed mainly in the winter and spring and were not observed in 2011 and 2017. No impact pile driving of monopiles will occur in the majority of months defined in that paper as winter (December – February) and spring (March – May); given that social behavior is limited in the time of year that noise that could result in behavioral disturbance is anticipated (May-December), the potential for effects to social behavior is very low. However, even if a whale was engaged in social behavior when pile driving commenced, any disruption is limited to no more than the two to four hours it would take to complete driving the pile.

Right whales are considerably slower than the other whale species in the action area, with maximum speeds of about 9 kilometers per hour (kph). Hatin et al. (2013) report median swim speeds of singles, non mother-calf pairs and mother-calf pairs in the southeastern United States recorded at 1.3 kph, with examples that suggest swim speeds differ between within-habitat movement and migration-mode travel. (Hatin et al. 2013). Studies of marine mammal avoidance of sonar, which like pile driving is an impulsive sound source, demonstrate clear, strong, and pronounced behavioral changes, including sustained avoidance with associated energetic swimming and cessation of feeding behavior (Southall et al. 2016) suggesting that it is reasonable to assume that a whale exposed to noise above the Level B harassment threshold would take a direct path to get outside of the noisy area. During impact pile driving, the area with noise above the Level B harassment threshold extends 4,684 m from the pile being driven. As such, a right whale that was at the pile driving location when pile driving starts (i.e., at the center of the area with a 4.684 km radius that will experience noise above the 160 dB re 1uPa threshold), we would expect a right whale swimming at maximum speed (9 kph) would escape from the area with noise above 160 dB re 1uPa the noise in about 30 minutes, but at the median speed observed in Hatin et al. (1.3 kph, 2013), it would take the animal approximately 3.6 hours to move out of the noisy area. However, given the requirements for ensuring an area extending 5 km from the pile is clear of right whales before pile driving begins, such a scenario is unlikely to occur. Rather, it is far more likely that any exposure and associated disturbance would be for a significantly shorter period of time. In any event, it would not exceed the period of pile driving (two to four hours a day for a monopole installed with an impact hammer). During vibratory pile driving, which is considered a continuous noise source, the area predicted to have noise above the 120 dB re 1uPa threshold extends approximately 37 km from the pile. A right whale located at the edge of the 1,500 m clearance zone would need to swim 35.5 km from the cofferdam being installed to clear the area with noise above the 120 dB re 1uPa threshold. At a speed of 9 kmh, it would need to travel for Depending on where it was located at the start of pile driving, it would take a North Atlantic right whale 4 hours, at 1.3 kmh it would take the whale 27.3 hours, which exceeds the 18 hour duration of the pile driving).

Based on best available information that indicates whales resume normal behavior quickly after the cessation of sound exposure (e.g., Goldbogen et al. 2013a; Melcon et al. 2012), we anticipate that exposed animals will be able to return to normal behavioral patterns (i.e., socializing, foraging, resting, migrating) after the exposure ends. If an animal exhibits an avoidance response, it would experience a cost in terms of the energy associated with traveling away from the acoustic source. That said, migration is not considered a particularly costly activity in terms of energetics (Villegas-Amtmann et al. 2015). Animals may also temporarily experience disruptions to foraging activity in these areas. Goldbogen et al. (2013a) hypothesized that if the temporary behavioral responses due to acoustic exposure interrupted feeding behavior, this could have impacts on individual fitness and eventually, population health. However, for this to be true, we would have to assume that an individual whale could not compensate for this lost feeding opportunity by either immediately feeding at another location once it escapes the noisy area, by feeding shortly after cessation of acoustic exposure, or by feeding at a later time. There is no indication this is the case, particularly since unconsumed prey would likely still be available in the environment following the cessation of acoustic exposure (i.e., the pile driving is not expected to disrupt copepod prey). There would likely be an energetic cost associated with any temporary habitat displacement to find alternative locations for foraging, but unless disruptions occur over long durations or over subsequent days, which we do not expect (disturbance is anticipated for no more than 4 hours for each of the 16 foundations to be installed with an impact hammer and no more than 18 hours each for the cofferdam installation and removal), we do not anticipate this movement to be consequential to the animal over the long term (Southall et al. 2007a). Disruption of resting and socializing may also result in short term stress. Efforts have been made to try to quantify the potential consequences of responses to behavioral disturbance, and frameworks have been developed for this assessment (e.g., Population Consequences of Disturbance). However, models that have been developed to date to address this question require many input parameters and, for most species, there are insufficient data for parameterization (Harris et al. 2017a). Nearly all studies and experts agree that infrequent exposures of a single day or less are unlikely to impact an individual's overall energy budget (Farmer et al. 2018; Harris et al. 2017b; King et al. 2015b; NAS 2017; New et al. 2014; Southall et al. 2007d; Villegas-Amtmann et al. 2015). Based on best available information, we expect this to be the case for North Atlantic right whales exposed to acoustic stressors associated with this project even for animals that may already be in a stressed or compromised state due to factors unrelated to the South Fork project.

Stress responses are also anticipated with each of these instances of disruption. However, the available literature suggests these acoustically induced stress responses will be of short duration (similar to the duration of exposure), and not result in a chronic increase in stress that could result in physiological consequences to the animal. These stress responses are expected to be in contrast to stress responses and associated elevated stress hormone levels that have been observed in North Atlantic right whales that are chronically entangled in fishing gear (Rolland et al. 2017). This is also in contrast to stress level changes observed in North Atlantic right whales due to fluctuations in chronic ocean noise. Rolland et al. (2012) documented that stress hormones in North Atlantic right whales significantly decreased following the events of September 11, 2001 when shipping was significantly restricted. This was thought to be due to the resulting decline in ocean background noise level because of the decrease in shipping traffic. The proposed action is not anticipated to result in detectable changes in ocean background noise due to the periodic nature of noise producing activities. In summary, we do not anticipate long duration exposures to occur and we do not anticipate the associated stress of exposure to result in significant costs to affected individuals.

TTS represents primarily tissue fatigue and is reversible (Southall et al., 2007). In addition, other investigators have suggested that TTS is within the normal bounds of physiological variability and tolerance and does not represent physical injury (*e.g.*, Ward, 1997). Therefore, NMFS does not consider TTS to constitute auditory injury. TTS will resolve within a week of exposure (that is, hearing sensitivity will return to normal) and is not expected to affect the health of any whale or its ability to migrate, forage, breed, or calve (Southall et al. 2007).

Masking occurs when the receipt of a sound is interfered with by another coincident sound at similar frequencies and at similar or higher intensity. Pile driving noise may mask right whale calls and could have effects on mother-calf communication and behavior. If such effects were severe enough to prevent mothers and calves from reuniting or initiating nursing, they may result in missed feeding opportunities for calves, which could lead to reduced growth, starvation, and even death. Any mother-calf pairs in the action area would have left the southern calving grounds and be making northward migrations to northern foraging areas. The available data suggests that North Atlantic right whale mother-calf pairs rarely use vocal communication on the calving grounds and so the two maintain visual contact until calves are approximately three to four months of age (Parks and Clark 2007; Parks and Van Parijs 2015; Root-Gutteridge et al. 2018; Trygonis et al. 2013). Such findings are consistent with data on southern right and humpback whales, which appear to rely more on mechanical stimulation to initiate nursing rather than vocal communication (Thomas and Taber 1984; Videsen et al. 2017). When mother-calf pairs leave the calving grounds and begin to migrate to the northern feeding grounds, if they begin to rely on acoustic communication more, then any masking could interfere with mother-calf reunions. For example, even though humpback whales do not appear to use vocal communication for nursing, they do produce low-level vocalizations when moving that have been suggested to function as cohesive calls (Videsen et al. 2017). However, when calves leave the foraging grounds at around four months of age, they are expected to be more robust and less susceptible to a missed or delayed nursing opportunity. Any masking would only last for the duration of the exposure to pile driving noise, which in all cases would be no more than three hours. As such, even if masking were to interfere with mother-calf communication in the action area, we do not anticipate that such effects would result in fitness consequences given their short-term nature.

Quantifying the fitness consequences of sub-lethal impacts from acoustic stressors is exceedingly difficult for marine mammals and we do not currently have data to conduct a quantitative analysis on the likely consequences of such sub-lethal impacts. While we are unable to conduct a quantitative analysis on how sub-lethal behavioral effects and temporary hearing impacts (i.e., masking) may impact animal vital rates (and therefore fitness), based on the best available information, we expect an increased likelihood of consequential effects when exposures and associated effects are long-term and repeated, occur in locations where the animals are conducting critical activities, and when the animal affected is in a compromised state.

Harris et al. (2017a) summarized the research efforts conducted to date that have attempted to understand the ways in which behavioral responses may result in long-term consequences to individuals and populations. Efforts have been made to try to quantify the potential consequences of such responses, and frameworks have been developed for this assessment (e.g., Population Consequences of Disturbance). However, models that have been developed to date to address this question require many input parameters and, for most species, there are insufficient data for parameterization (Harris et al. 2017a). Nearly all studies and experts agree that infrequent exposures of a single day or less are unlikely to impact an individual's overall energy budget (Farmer et al. 2018; Harris et al. 2017b; King et al. 2015b; NAS 2017; New et al. 2014; Southall et al. 2007d; Villegas-Amtmann et al. 2015). Based on best available information, we expect this to be the case for North Atlantic right whales exposed to pile driving noise even for animals that may already be in a stressed or compromised state due to factors unrelated to the South Fork project. We do not anticipate that instances of behavioral response and any associated energy expenditure or stress will result in fitness consequences to individual North Atlantic right whales.

NMFS Interim Guidance on the ESA Term "Harass" (PD 02-110-19; December 21, 2016[30] provides for a four-step process to determine if a response meets the definition of harassment. The Interim Guidance defines harassment as to "[c]reate the likelihood of injury to wildlife by annoying it to such an extent as to significantly disrupt normal behavioral patterns which include, but are not limited to, breeding, feeding, or sheltering." The guidance states that NMFS will consider the following steps in an assessment of whether proposed activities are likely to harass: 1) Whether an animal is likely to be exposed to a stressor or disturbance (i.e., an annoyance); and, 2) The nature of that exposure in terms of magnitude, frequency, duration, etc. Included in this may be type and scale as well as considerations of the geographic area of exposure (e.g., is the annoyance within a biologically important location for the species, such as a foraging area, spawning/breeding area, or nursery area?); 3) The expected response of the exposed animal to a stressor or disturbance (e.g., startle, flight, alteration [including abandonment] of important behaviors); and 4) Whether the nature and duration or intensity of that response is a significant disruption of those behavior patterns which include, but are not limited to, breeding, feeding, or sheltering, resting or migrating,

Here, we carry out that four-step assessment. For individual right whales exposed to disturbing levels of noise, there will be a significant disruption of their behavior because they may abandon that activity for up to four hours during impact pile driving to install a monopile or up to 18 hours during vibratory installation of the cofferdam while they swim to an alternate area to resume this behavior or they will avoid the area extending approximately 4.6 km from the pile being driven for the two to four hour duration of the impact pile driving or the area extending 32 km from the cofferdam for the 18 hour period for both installation and removal. This means they will need to find an alternate migration route or alternate place for foraging. These whales will also experience masking and TTS, which would affect their ability to detect certain environmental cues for the duration of pile driving and may impact their ability to communicate. Based on this four-step analysis, we find that the 4 right whales exposed to impact pile driving noise louder than 160 dB re 1uPa rms and the 6 right whales exposed to vibratory pile driving noise louder than 120 dB re 1uPa rms are likely to be adversely affected and that effect amounts to harassment. As such, we expect the harassment of 10 right whales as a result of pile driving.

NMFS defines "harm" in the definition of "take" as "an act which actually kills or injures fish or wildlife. Such an act may include significant habitat modification or degradation where it actually kills or injures fish or wildlife by significantly impairing essential behavioral patterns,

---

[30] Available at: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/laws-and-policies/protected-resources-policy-directives

including breeding, spawning, rearing, migrating, feeding or sheltering" (50 CFR §222.102). No right whales will be injured or killed due to exposure to pile driving noise. Further, while exposure to pile driving noise will significantly disrupt behaviors of individual right whales, it will not significantly impair any essential behavioral patterns. This is due to the short term, localized nature of the effects and because we expect these behaviors to resume once the right whale is no longer exposed to the noise. The energetic consequences of the evasive behavior and delay in resting or foraging are not expected affect any individual's ability to successfully obtain enough food to maintain their health, or impact the ability of any individual to make seasonal migrations or participate in breeding or calving. TTS will resolve within a week of exposure and is not expected to affect the health of any whale or its ability to migrate, forage, breed, or calve. Thus, the response of right whales to pile driving noise does not meet the definition of "harm."

Fin, Sei and Sperm Whales

Behavioral responses may impact health through a variety of different mechanisms, but most Population Consequences of Disturbance models focus on how such responses affect an animal's energy budget (Costa et al. 2016c; Farmer et al. 2018; King et al. 2015b; NAS 2017; New et al. 2014; Villegas-Amtmann et al. 2017). Responses that relate to foraging behavior, such as those that may indicate reduced foraging efficiency (Miller et al. 2009) or involve the complete cessation of foraging, may result in an energetic loss to animals. Other behavioral responses, such as avoidance, may have energetic costs associated with traveling (NAS 2017). Important in considering whether or not energetic losses, whether due to reduced foraging or increased traveling, will affect an individual's fitness is considering the duration of exposure and associated response. Nearly all studies and experts agree that infrequent exposures of a single day or less are unlikely to impact an individual's overall energy budget and that long duration and repetitive disruptions would be necessary to result in consequential impacts on an animal (Farmer et al. 2018; Harris et al. 2017b; King et al. 2015b; NAS 2017; New et al. 2014; Southall et al. 2007d; Villegas-Amtmann et al. 2015). We also recognize that aside from affecting health via an energetic cost, a behavioral response could result in more direct impacts to health and/or fitness. For example, if a whale hears the pile driving noise and avoids the area, this may cause it to travel to an area with other threats such as vessel traffic or fishing gear. However, we find such possibilities (i.e., that a behavioral response would lead directly to a ship strike) to be extremely remote and not reasonably certain to occur, and so focus our analysis on the energetic costs associated with a behavioral response.

Quantifying the fitness consequences of sub-lethal impacts from acoustic stressors is exceedingly difficult for marine mammals and we do not currently have data to conduct a quantitative analysis on the likely consequences of such sub-lethal impacts. While we are unable to conduct a quantitative analysis on how sub-lethal behavioral effects and temporary hearing impacts (i.e., masking) may impact animal vital rates (and therefore fitness), based on the best available information, we expect an increased likelihood of consequential effects when exposures and associated effects are long-term and repeated, occur in locations where the animals are conducting critical activities, and when the animal affected is in a compromised state.

We do not have information to suggest that affected sperm, sei, or fin whales are likely to be in a compromised state at the time of exposure. During exposure, affected animals may be engaged in any number of activities including, but not limited to, migration, foraging, or resting. If fin, sei, or sperm whales exhibited a behavioral response to pile driving noise, these activities would be disrupted and it may pose some energetic cost. However, as noted previously, responses to pile driving noise are anticipated to be short term (two to four hours for exposure to impact pile driving and less than 18 hours for vibratory pile driving). Sperm whales normal cruise speed is 5-15 kph, with burst speed of up to 35-45 kph for up to an hour. Fin whales cruise at approximately 10 kph while feeding and have a maximum swim speed of up to 35 kph. Sei whales swim at speeds of up to 55 kph. During impact pile driving, the area with noise above the Level B harassment threshold extends 4,684 m from the pile being driven. Assuming that a whale exposed to noise above the Level B harassment threshold takes a direct path to get outside of the noisy area, a sperm, fin, or sei whale that was at the pile driving location when pile driving starts (i.e., at the center of the area with a 4.684 km radius that will experience noise above the 160 dB re 1uPa threshold), would escape from the area with noise above 160 dB re 1uPa the noise in less than an hour, even at a slow speed of 5 kmh. However, given the requirements for ensuring an area extending 2.2 km from the pile is clear of fin, sei, and sperm whales before pile driving begins, such a scenario is unlikely to occur. Rather, it is far more likely that any exposure and associated disturbance would be for a significantly shorter period of time. In any event, it would not exceed the period of pile driving (two to four hours a day for a monopole installed with an impact hammer). During vibratory pile driving, which is considered a continuous noise source, the area predicted to have noise above the 120 dB re 1uPa threshold extends approximately 37 km from the pile. Given known swim speeds, a whale located even several km from the pile at the start of pile driving may need to swim for a few hours to move out of the area with noise above 120 dB re1uPa. Based on best available information that indicates whales resume normal behavior quickly after the cessation of sound exposure (e.g., Goldbogen et al. 2013a; Melcon et al. 2012), we anticipate that exposed animals will be able to return normal behavioral patterns after this short duration activity ceases.

Goldbogen et al. (2013a) suggested that if the documented temporary behavioral responses interrupted feeding behavior, this could have impacts on individual fitness and eventually, population health. However, for this to be true, we would have to assume that an individual whale could not compensate for this lost feeding opportunity by either immediately feeding at another location, by feeding shortly after cessation of acoustic exposure, or by feeding at a later time. There is no indication this is the case, particularly since unconsumed prey would still be available in the environment following the cessation of acoustic exposure (i.e., the pile driving is not expected to result in a reduction in prey). There would likely be an energetic cost associated with any temporary habitat displacement to find alternative locations for foraging, but unless disruptions occur over long durations or over subsequent days, we do not anticipate this movement to be consequential to the animal over the long-term (Southall et al 2007). Based on the estimated abundance of fin, sei, and sperm whales in the action area, anticipated residency time in the lease area, and the number of instances of behavioral disruption expected, multiple exposures of the same animal are not anticipated. Therefore, we do anticipate repeat exposures, and based on the available literature that indicates infrequent exposures are unlikely to impact an individual's overall energy budget (Farmer et al. 2018; Harris et al. 2017b; King et al. 2015b; NAS 2017; New et al. 2014; Southall et al. 2007d; Villegas-Amtmann et al. 2015), we do not expect this level of exposure to impact the fitness of exposed animals.

For fin and sei whales, little information exists on where they give birth as well as on mother-calf vocalizations. As such, it is difficult to assess whether or not masking could significantly interfere with mother-calf communication in a way that could result in fitness consequences. There is no indication that sperm whale calves occur in the action area. To be conservative, we assume here that some of the sei or fin whales exposed to pile driving noise are mother-calf pairs. Absent data on fin and sei whale mother-calf communication within the action area, we rely on our analysis of the effects of masking to North Atlantic right whales, which given their current status, are considered more vulnerable than fin or sei whales. Based on this analysis, we do not expect that TTS and or masking will affect fin whale mother-calf fitness.

Here, we carry out that four-step assessment to determine if the expected responses to exposure to noise above the behavioral disturbance threshold will result in harassment. For individual whales exposed to disturbing levels of noise, there will be a significant disruption of their behavior because they may abandon that activity for one to six hours while they swim to an alternate area to resume this behavior or they will avoid the area extending approximately 4.68 km from the pile being driven for the two to four hour duration of the impact pile driving as well as an area extending approximately 37 km from the cofferdam for the 18 hour period during both installation and removal. This means they will need to find an alternate migration route or alternate place for foraging or resting. These whales will also experience masking and TTS, which would affect their ability to detect certain environmental cues for the duration of pile driving and may impact their ability to communicate. Based on this four-step analysis, we find that the 6 fin, 1 sei, and 3 sperm whales exposed to pile driving noise louder than 160 dB re 1uPa rms and 2 fin whales likely to be exposed to pile driving noise louder than 120 dB re 1uPa rms during vibratory pile installation/removal for the cofferdams are likely to be adversely affected and that effect amounts to harassment. As such, we expect the harassment of 15 fin, 2 sei, and 3 sperm whales as a result of pile driving.

NMFS defines “harm” as “an act which actually kills or injures fish or wildlife. Such an act may include significant habitat modification or degradation where it actually kills or injures fish or wildlife by significantly impairing essential behavioral patterns, including breeding, spawning, rearing, migrating, feeding or sheltering.” Injury is limited to minor auditory injury, no serious injury or mortality will result from exposure to pile driving noise. Further, while exposure to pile driving noise will significantly disrupt behaviors of individual whales, it will not significantly impair any essential behavioral patterns. This is due to the short term, localized nature of the effects and because we expect these behaviors to resume once the whale is no longer exposed to the noise. The energetic consequences of the evasive behavior and delay in resting or foraging are expected to be minor and will not affect any individual’s ability to successfully obtain enough food to maintain their health, or impact the ability of any individual to make seasonal migrations or participate in breeding or calving. Thus, the response of whales to pile driving noise does not meet the definition of “harm.”

Vessel Noise and Cable Installation

The frequency range for vessel noise (10 to 1000 Hz; MMS 2007) overlaps with the generalized hearing range for sei, fin, and right whales (7 Hz to 35 kHz) and sperm whales (150 Hz to 160 kHz) and would therefore be audible. As described in the BA, vessels without ducted propeller thrusters would produce levels of noise of 150 to 170 dB re 1 µPa-1 meter at frequencies below 1,000 Hz, while the expected sound-source level for vessels with ducted propeller thrusters level is 177 dB (RMS) at 1 meter. For ROVs, source levels may be as high as 160 dB. Given that the noise associated with the operation of project vessels is below the thresholds that could result in injury, no injury is expected. Noise produced during cable installation is dominated by the vessel noise; therefore, we consider these together.

Marine mammals may experience masking due to vessel noises. For example, right whales were observed to shift the frequency content of their calls upward while reducing the rate of calling in areas of increased anthropogenic noise (Parks et al. 2007a) as well as increasing the amplitude (intensity) of their calls (Parks et al. 2011a; Parks et al. 2009). Right whales also had their communication space reduced by up to 84 percent in the presence of vessels (Clark et al. 2009a). Although humpback whales did not change the frequency or duration of their vocalizations in the presence of ship noise, their source levels were lower than expected, potentially indicating some signal masking (Dunlop 2016).

Vessel noise can potentially mask vocalizations and other biologically important sounds (e.g., sounds of prey or predators) that marine mammals may rely on. Potential masking can vary depending on the ambient noise level within the environment, the received level and frequency of the vessel noise, and the received level and frequency of the sound of biological interest. In the open ocean, ambient noise levels are between about 60 and 80 dB re 1 μPa in the band between 10 Hz and 10 kHz due to a combination of natural (e.g., wind) and anthropogenic sources (Urick 1983a), while inshore noise levels, especially around busy ports, can exceed 120 dB re 1 μPa. When the noise level is above the sound of interest, and in a similar frequency band, masking could occur. This analysis assumes that any sound that is above ambient noise levels and within an animal's hearing range may potentially cause masking. However, the degree of masking increases with increasing noise levels; a noise that is just detectable over ambient levels is unlikely to cause any substantial masking.

Vessel noise has the potential to disturb marine mammals and elicit an alerting, avoidance, or other behavioral reaction. These reactions are anticipated to be short-term, likely lasting the amount of time the vessel and the whale are in close proximity (e.g., Magalhaes et al. 2002; Richardson et al. 1995d; Watkins 1981a), and not consequential to the animals. We also note that we do not anticipate any project vessels to occur within close proximity of any ESA listed whales; regulations prohibit vessels from approaching right whales closer than 500m and the vessel strike avoidance measures identified in Table 3.3.1 are expected to ensure no project vessels operate in close proximity to any whales in the action area. Additionally, short-term masking could occur. Masking by passing ships or other sound sources transiting the action area would be short term and intermittent, and therefore unlikely to result in any substantial costs or consequences to individual animals or populations. Areas with increased levels of ambient noise from anthropogenic noise sources such as areas around busy shipping lanes and near harbors and ports may cause sustained levels of masking for marine mammals, which could reduce an animal's ability to find prey, find mates, socialize, avoid predators, or navigate.

Based on the best available information, ESA-listed marine mammals are either not likely to respond to vessel noise or are not likely to measurably respond in ways that would significantly disrupt normal behavior patterns that include, but are not limited to, breeding, feeding or sheltering. Therefore, the effects of vessel noise on ESA-listed marine mammals are insignificant (i.e., so minor that the effect cannot be meaningfully evaluated or detected).

Operation of WTGs

As described above, many of the published measurements of underwater noise levels produced by operating WTGs range are from older geared WTGs and may not be representative of newer direct-drive WTGs, like those that will be installed for the SFWF. Elliot et al. (2019) reports underwater noise monitoring at the BIWF, which has direct-drive GE Haliade 150-6 MW turbines expected to be comparable to the ones proposed for the SFWF. The loudest noise recorded was 126 dB re 1uPa at 50 m from the turbine when wind speeds exceeded 56 kmh; at wind speeds of 43.2 km/h and less, measured noise did not exceed 120 dB re 1uPa at 50 m from the turbine.

Elliot et al. (2019) conclude that based on monitoring of underwater noise at the Block Island site, under worst-case assumptions, no risk of temporary or permanent hearing damage (PTS or TTS) could be projected even if an animal remained in the water at 50 m (164 ft.) from the turbine for a full 24-hour period. As such, we do not expect any PTS, TTS, or other potential injury to result from even extended exposure to the operating WTGs.

Under certain windy conditions (winds over 43.2 km/h), underwater noise associated with the operating WTG could exceed 120 dB re 1uPa at a distance of 50 m from the WTG foundation (Elliot et al. 2019). However, we also note that ambient noise in the lease area as high as 125 dB re 1uPa has been recorded (Kraus et al. 2016). Elliott et al. (2019) notes that the direct-drive turbines measured at BIWF are quieter than older models with gearboxes but are above the background sound levels at the measurement location of 50 m (164 ft.) from the foundation. The authors also conclude that even in quiet conditions (i.e., minimal wind or weather noise, no transiting vessels nearby), operational noise at any frequency would be below background levels within 1 km (0.6 mi) of the foundation. However, given the required windy conditions to result in operational noise above 120 dB re 1uPa, we would expect the potential for operational noise to be above 120 dB re 1uPa during quiet conditions where it would exceed ambient noise levels to be extremely unlikely. Further, based on data from the Nantucket Sound Buoy[31] from April 2010-July 2021, the average wind speed is less than 20 mph and exceeds 40 km/h from 0-3% of the time depending on the month. Given the conditions necessary to result in noise above 120 dB re 1uPa only occur 0-3% of the time per month and even less on an annual basis, and that in such windy conditions ambient noise is also increased, we do not anticipate the underwater noise associated with the operations noise of the direct-drive WTGs to exceed ambient noise at a distance of more than 50m from the WTG foundation. As such, even if ESA-listed marine mammals avoided the area with noise above ambient, any effects would be so small that they could not be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated, and are therefore insignificant.

HRG Survey Equipment

HRG surveys are planned within the lease area and cable routes at various points in the life of the project. Some of the equipment that is described by BOEM for use for surveys to support decommissioning produces underwater noise that can be perceived by ESA listed marine mammals. This may include boomers, chirp sub bottom profilers, sparkers, and bubble guns;

---

[31] https://www.windfinder.com/windstatistics/nantucket_sound_buoy; last accessed September 2, 2021.

higher frequency equipment including certain echosounders can also be perceived by sperm whales. A number of minimization measures for HRG surveys are included as part of the proposed action. This includes maintenance of a 500 m clearance and shutdown zone for North Atlantic right whales and 100 m clearance and shutdown zone for other ESA listed marine mammals during the operations of equipment that operates within the hearing frequency of these species (i.e., less than 180 kHz).

In their IHA application, South Fork Wind requested Level B harassment take of 3 fin, 1 sei, 3 North Atlantic right whales, and 3 sperm whales due to exposure to noise associated with HRG survey equipment during the one-year effective period of the IHA. NMFS OPR is proposing to authorize this take. As described below, we do not expect that exposure of any ESA listed whales to noise resulting from HRG surveys will result in any take as defined by the ESA. That is, we expect all effects to be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur. Extensive information on HRG survey noise and potential effects of exposure to sea turtles is provided in NMFS June 29, 2021 programmatic ESA consultation on certain geophysical and geotechnical survey activities. We summarize the relevant conclusions here.

Considering peak noise levels, the equipment resulting in the greatest isopleth to the marine mammal PTS threshold is the sparker (2.0 m for baleen whales, 0 m for sperm whales; Table 7.1.6). Considering the cumulative threshold (24 hour exposure) and the largest distances presented by BOEM, which likely overestimate this distance, the greatest distance to the PTS threshold is 12.7 m for baleen whales and 0.5 m for sperm whales. Animals in the survey area during the HRG survey are unlikely to incur any hearing impairment due to the characteristics of the sound sources, considering the source levels (176 to 205 dB re 1 µPa-m) and generally very short pulses and duration of the sound. Individuals would have to make a very close approach and also remain very close to vessels operating these sources (<13 m) in order to receive multiple exposures at relatively high levels, as would be necessary to have the potential to result in any hearing impairment. Kremser et al. (2005) noted that the probability of a whale swimming through the area of exposure when a sub-bottom profiler emits a pulse is small—because if the animal was in the area, it would have to pass the transducer at close range in order to be subjected to sound levels that could cause PTS and would likely exhibit avoidance behavior to the area near the transducer rather than swim through at such a close range. Further, the restricted beam shape of many of HRG survey devices planned for use makes it unlikely that an animal would be exposed more than briefly during the passage of the vessel. The potential for exposure to noise that could result in PTS is even further reduced by the clearance zone and the use of PSOs to all for a shutdown of equipment operating within the hearing range of ESA-listed whales should a right whale or unidentified large whale be detected within 500 m or 100 m for an identified sei, fin, or sperm whale (see Table 3.3.1). Based on these considerations, it is extremely unlikely that any ESA-listed whale will be exposed to noise that could result in PTS.

Masking is the obscuring of sounds of interest to an animal by other sounds, typically at similar frequencies. Marine mammals are highly dependent on sound, and their ability to recognize sound signals amid other sounds is important in communication and detection of both predators and prey (Tyack 2000). Although masking is a phenomenon which may occur naturally, the introduction of loud anthropogenic sounds into the marine environment at frequencies important to marine mammals increases the severity and frequency of occurrence of masking. The components of background noise that are similar in frequency to the signal in question primarily determine the degree of masking of that signal. In general, little is known about the degree to which marine mammals rely upon detection of sounds from conspecifics, predators, prey, or other natural sources. In the absence of specific information about the importance of detecting these natural sounds, it is not possible to predict the impact of masking on marine mammals (Richardson et al., 1995). In general, masking effects are expected to be less severe when sounds are transient than when they are continuous. Masking is typically of greater concern for those marine mammals that utilize low-frequency communications, such as baleen whales, because of how far low-frequency sounds propagate. In the Notice of Proposed IHA, NMFS OPR concluded that marine mammal communications would not likely be masked appreciably by the sub-bottom profiler signals given the directionality of the signals for most HRG survey equipment types planned for use for the types of surveys considered here and the brief period when an individual mammal is likely to be within its beam. Based on this, any effects of masking on ESA-listed whales will be insignificant.

For equipment that operates within the functional hearing range (7 Hz to 35 kHz) of baleen whales, the area ensonified by noise greater than 160 dB re: 1uPa rms will extend no further than 502 m from the source (considering the most conservative estimated distance for sparkers; the distance for chirp (10 m) and boomers and bubble guns (224 m) is smaller (Table 7.1.7)). For equipment that operates within the functional hearing range of sperm whales (150 Hz to 160 kHz), the area ensonified by noise greater than 160 dB re: 1uPa rms will extend no further than 369 m from the source (100 kHz Multi-beam echosounder; the distance for sparkers (502 m), boomers and bubble guns (224 m), and chirp (10 m) is smaller; Table 7.1.7).

Given that the distance to the 160 dB re: 1 uPa rms threshold extends beyond the required Shutdown Zone (100 m for sei, fin, and sperm whales; 500 m for right whales), it is possible that ESA-listed whales will be exposed to potentially disturbing levels of noise during the surveys considered here. We have determined that, in this case, the exposure to noise above the MMPA Level B harassment threshold (160 dB re: 1uPa rms) will result in effects that are insignificant. We expect that the result of this exposure would be, at worst, temporary avoidance of the area with underwater noise louder than this threshold, which is a reaction that is considered to be of low severity and with no lasting biological consequences (e.g., Ellison et al. 2007). The noise source itself will be moving. This means that any co-occurrence between a whale, even if stationary, will be brief and temporary. Given that exposure will be short (no more than a few seconds, given that the noise signals themselves are short and intermittent and because the vessel towing the noise source is moving) and that the reaction to exposure is expected to be limited to changing course and swimming away from the noise source only far/long enough to get out of the ensonified area (502 m or less, depending on the noise source), the effect of this exposure and resulting response will be so small that it will not be able to be meaningfully detected, measured or evaluated and, therefore, is insignificant. Further, the potential for disruption to activities such as breeding, feeding (including nursing), resting, and migrating is extremely unlikely given the very brief exposure to any noise (given that the source is traveling and the area ensonified at any given moment is so small). Any brief interruptions of these behaviors are not anticipated to have any lasting effects. Because the effects of these temporary behavioral changes are so minor, it is not reasonable to expect that, under the NMFS' interim ESA definition of harassment, they are equivalent to an act that would "create the likelihood of injury to wildlife by annoying it to such an extent as to significantly disrupt normal behavior patterns which include, but are not limited to, breeding, feeding, or sheltering."

7.1.4 Effects of Project Noise on Sea Turtles

Background Information – Sea Turtles and Noise
Sea turtles are low frequency hearing specialists, typically hearing frequencies from 30 Hz to 2 kHz, with a range of maximum sensitivity between 100 to 800 Hz (Bartol and Ketten 2006, Bartol et al. 1999, Lenhardt 1994, Lenhardt 2002, Ridgway et al. 1969). Below, we summarize the available information on expected responses of sea turtles to noise.

Stress caused by acoustic exposure has not been studied for sea turtles. As described for marine mammals, a stress response is a suite of physiological changes that are meant to help an organism mitigate the impact of a stressor. If the magnitude and duration of the stress response is too great or too long, it can have negative consequences to the animal such as low reproductive rates, decreased immune function, diminished foraging capacity, etc. Physiological stress is typically analyzed by measuring stress hormones (such as cortisol), other biochemical markers, and vital signs. To our knowledge, there is no direct evidence indicating that sea turtles will experience a stress response if exposed to acoustic stressors such as sounds from pile driving. However, physiological stress has been measured for sea turtles during nesting, capture and handling (Flower et al. 2015; Gregory and Schmid 2001; Jessop et al. 2003; Lance et al. 2004), and when caught in entangling nets and trawls (Hoopes et al. 2000; Snoddy et al. 2009). Therefore, based on their response to these other anthropogenic stressors, and including what is known about cetacean stress responses, we assume that some sea turtles will exhibit a stress response if exposed to a detectable sound stressor.

Marine animals often respond to anthropogenic stressors in a manner that resembles a predator response (Beale and Monaghan 2004b; Frid 2003; Frid and Dill 2002; Gill et al. 2001; Harrington and Veitch 1992; Lima 1998; Romero 2004). As predators generally induce a stress response in their prey (Dwyer 2004; Lopez and Martin 2001; Mateo 2007), we assume that sea turtles may experience a stress response if exposed acoustic stressors, especially loud sounds. We expect breeding adult females may experience a lower stress response, as studies on loggerhead, hawksbill, and green turtles have demonstrated that females appear to have a physiological mechanism to reduce or eliminate hormonal response to stress (predator attack, high temperature, and capture) in order to maintain reproductive capacity at least during their breeding season; a mechanism apparently not shared with males (Jessop 2001; Jessop et al. 2000; Jessop et al. 2004). We note that breeding females do not occur in the action area.

Due to the limited information about acoustically induced stress responses in sea turtles, we assume physiological stress responses would occur concurrently with any other response such as hearing impairment or behavioral disruptions. However, we expect such responses to be brief, with animals returning to a baseline state once exposure to the acoustic source ceases. As with cetaceans, such a short, low level stress response may in fact be adaptive and beneficial as it may result in sea turtles exhibiting avoidance behavior, thereby minimizing their exposure duration and risk from more deleterious, high sound levels.

Effects to Hearing
Interference, or masking, occurs when a sound is a similar frequency and similar to or louder than the sound an animal is trying to hear (Clark et al. 2009b; Erbe et al. 2016). Masking can interfere with an individual's ability to gather acoustic information about its environment, such as predators, prey, conspecifics, and other environmental cues (Richardson 1995). This can result in loss of environmental cues of predatory risk, mating opportunity, or foraging options. Compared to other marine animals, such as marine mammals which are highly adapted to use sound in the marine environment, sea turtle hearing is limited to lower frequencies and is less sensitive. Because sea turtles likely use their hearing to detect broadband low-frequency sounds in their environment, the potential for masking would be limited to certain sound exposures. Only continuous anthropogenic sounds that have a significant low-frequency component, are not of brief duration, and are of sufficient received level could create a meaningful masking situation (e.g., long-duration vibratory pile extraction or long term exposure to vessel noise affecting natural background and ambient sounds); this type of noise exposure is not anticipated based on the characteristics of the sound sources considered here.

There is evidence that sea turtles may rely primarily on senses other than hearing for interacting with their environment, such as vision (Narazaki et al. 2013), magnetic orientation (Avens and Lohmann 2003; Putman et al. 2015), and scent (Shine et al. 2004). Thus, any effect of masking on sea turtles could be mediated by their normal reliance on other environmental cues.

Behavioral Responses
To date, very little research has been done regarding sea turtle behavioral responses relative to underwater noise. Popper et al. (2014) describes relative risk (high, moderate, low) for sea turtles exposed to pile driving noise and concludes that risk of a behavioral response decreases with distance from the pile being driven. O'Hara and Wilcox (1990) and McCauley et al. (2000b), who experimentally examined behavioral responses of sea turtles in response to seismic airguns. O'Hara and Wilcox (1990) found that loggerhead turtles exhibited avoidance behavior at estimated sound levels of 175 to 176 dB re: 1 µPa (rms) (or slightly less) in a shallow canal. Mccauley et al. (2000a) experimentally examined behavioral responses of sea turtles in response to seismic air guns. The authors found that loggerhead turtles exhibited avoidance behavior at estimated sound levels of 175 to 176 dB rms (re: 1 µPa), or slightly less, in a shallow canal. Mccauley et al. (2000a) reported a noticeable increase in swimming behavior for both green and loggerhead turtles at received levels of 166 dB rms (re: 1 µPa). At 175 dB rms (re: one µPa), both green and loggerhead turtles displayed increased swimming speed and increasingly erratic behavior (Mccauley et al. 2000a). Based on these data, NMFS assumes that sea turtles would exhibit a significant behavioral response in a manner that constitutes harassment or other adverse behavioral effects, when exposed to received levels of 175 dB rms (re: 1 µPa). This is the level at which sea turtles are expected to begin to exhibit avoidance behavior based on experimental observations of sea turtles exposed to multiple firings of nearby or approaching air guns.

Thresholds Used to Evaluate Effects of Project Noise on Sea Turtles
In order to evaluate the effects of exposure to noise by sea turtles that could result in physical effects, NMFS relies on the available literature related to the noise levels that would be expected to result in sound-induced hearing loss (i.e., TTS or PTS); we relied on acoustic thresholds for PTS and TTS for impulsive sounds developed by the U.S. Navy for Phase III of their

programmatic approach to evaluating the environmental effects of their military readiness activities (U.S. Navy 2017a). At the time of this consultation, we consider these the best available data since they rely on all available information on sea turtle hearing and employ the same methodology to derive thresholds as in NMFS recently issued technical guidance for auditory injury of marine mammals (NMFS 2018). Below we briefly detail these thresholds and their derivation. More information can be found in the U.S. Navy's Technical report on the subject (U.S. Navy 2017a).

To estimate received levels from airguns and other impulsive sources expected to produce TTS in sea turtles, the U.S. Navy compiled all sea turtle audiograms available in the literature in an effort to create a composite audiogram for sea turtles as a hearing group. Since these data were insufficient to successfully model a composite audiogram via a fitted curve as was done for marine mammals, median audiogram values were used in forming the hearing group's composite audiogram. Based on this composite audiogram and data on the onset of TTS in fishes, an auditory weighting function was created to estimate the susceptibility of sea turtles to TTS. Data from fishes were used since there are currently no data on TTS for sea turtles and fishes are considered to have hearing range more similar to sea turtles than do marine mammals (Popper et al. 2014). Assuming a similar relationship between TTS onset and PTS onset as has been described for humans and the available data on marine mammals, an extrapolation to PTS susceptibility of sea turtles was made based on the methods proposed by (Navy 2017). From these data and analyses, dual metric thresholds were established similar to those for marine mammals: one threshold based on peak sound pressure level (0-pk SPL) that does not incorporate the auditory weighting function nor the duration of exposure, and another based on cumulative sound exposure level (SELcum) that incorporates both the auditory weighting function and the exposure duration (Table 7.1.23). The cumulative metric accumulates all sound exposure within a 24-hour period and is therefore different from a peak, or single exposure, metric.

Table 7.1.23. Acoustic thresholds identifying the onset of permanent threshold shift and temporary threshold shift for sea turtles exposed to impulsive sounds (U.S. Navy 2017a)

Hearing Group	Generalized Hearing Range	Permanent Threshold Shift Onset	Temporary Threshold Shift Onset
Sea Turtles	30 Hz to 2 kHz	204 dB re: 1 $Pa^2 \cdot s$ SEL_{cum} 232 dB re: 1 μPa SPL (0-pk)	189 dB re: 1 $\mu Pa^2 \cdot s$ SEL_{cum} 226 dB re: 1 μPa SPL (0-pk)

Based on the studies of behavioral responses of sea turtles to air gun noise summarized above, we expect that sea turtles would exhibit a behavioral response when exposed to received levels of 166 dB re: 1uPa rms and behavioral disruption and avoidance behavior when exposed to received levels of 175 dB re: 1 μPa (rms) and higher.

Effects of Project Noise on Sea Turtles

The BA and the acoustic models produced by South Fork Wind to support the COP (Denes et al. 2020 and 2021) rely on sound exposure guidelines consistent with the Navy 2017 criteria (Table 7.1.23 above). We note that the source is cited in Denes et al. as Blackstock et al. 2017 or 2018 but we have confirmed the thresholds are the same as those noted in Table 7.1.23.

For assessing behavioral effects, BOEM and South Fork Wind used the 175 dB re 1uPa RMS criteria based on McCauley et al. (2000b), consistent with NMFS recommendations. This level is based upon work by Mccauley et al. (2000a), who experimentally examined behavioral responses of sea turtles in response to seismic air guns. The authors found that loggerhead turtles exhibited avoidance behavior at estimated sound levels of 175 to 176 dB rms (re: 1 µPa), or slightly less, in a shallow canal. Mccauley et al. (2000a) reported a noticeable increase in swimming behavior for both green and loggerhead turtles at received levels of 166 dB rms (re: 1 µPa). At 175 dB rms (re: 1 µPa), both green and loggerhead turtles displayed increased swimming speed and increasingly erratic behavior (Mccauley et al. 2000a). Based on these data, NMFS assumes that sea turtles would exhibit a significant behavioral response in a manner that may constitute harassment or other adverse behavioral effects, when exposed to received levels of 175 dB rms (re: 1 µPa). This is the level at which sea turtles are expected to begin to exhibit avoidance behavior based on experimental observations of sea turtles exposed to multiple firings of nearby or approaching air guns. Because data on sea turtle behavioral responses to pile driving is limited, the air gun data set is used to inform potential risk. BOEM's use of the 166 dB rms threshold represents an onset of potential behavioral responses by sea turtles to noise while the 175 dB rms threshold represents an onset of more significant reactions including disruption of behavior and active avoidance.

Pile Driving

Using the same methodology described above for marine mammals, Denes et al. (2021) modeled radial distances to the PTS and TTS thresholds (peak and cumulative) identified in table 7.1.23 above and 175 dB re 1 uPa rms for behavioral disturbance (based on McCauley et al. 2000a).

Table 7.1.24. Radial distance (meters) to acoustic thresholds used to evaluate responses of sea turtles to pile driving noise resulting from modeling of 11 m monopile foundation with 10 dB attenuation. The values presented below are for a "difficult" pile installation, requiring 8,000 strikes over a 4 hour period. The values shown below are the maximum distance of the two locations and seasons modeled (see Table G-10 in Denes et al. 2021).

	Thresholds	Radial distance from pile (m)
Sea turtles – PTS	204 dB re: 1 Pa^2·s SEL$_{cum}$	1,431
	232 dB re: 1 µPa SPL (0-pk)	1
Sea turtles – TTS	189 dB re: 1 Pa^2·s SEL$_{cum}$	7,479
	226 dB re: 1 µPa SPL (0-pk)	3
Sea turtles – behavior	175 re 1uPa RMS	1,716

Denes et al. (2021) used the JASCO Animal Simulation Model Including Noise Exposure (JASMINE) to predict the exposure of animats (virtual sea turtles) to sound arising from sound sources. An individual animat's modeled sound exposure levels are summed over the total simulation duration, such as 24 hours or the entire simulation, to determine its total received energy, and then compared to the assumed threshold criteria. Sea turtle animat exposure probabilities were adjusted by the species' density provided in Table 7.1.25 below (Table 47 in Denes et al. 2021; note that in July 2021 Denes confirmed that there is an error in the density table that resulted from using the Kraus et al. estimates as turtles/km^2 rather than turtles/100km^2. The table below uses the corrected density estimates), to obtain the number of individual sea turtles expected to exceed acoustic criteria.

As described in Denes et al. (2021), there are limited density estimates for sea turtles in the SFWF lease area. For the exposure analysis, sea turtle densities were obtained from the US Navy Operating Area Density Estimate (NODE) database on the Strategic Environmental Research and Development Program Spatial Decision Support System (SERDP-SDSS) portal (DoN 2007, 2012) and the Northeast Large Pelagic Survey Collaborative Aerial and Acoustic Surveys for Large Whales and Sea Turtles (Kraus et al. 2016). These numbers were adjusted by the Sea Mammal Research Unit (SMRU, 2013), available in the Ocean Biogeographic Information System Spatial Ecological Analysis of Megavertebrate Populations (OBIS-SEAMAP) (Halpin et al. 2009). These data are summarized seasonally (winter (December – February), spring (March – May), summer (June – August), and fall (September-November) and provided as a range of potential densities per square kilometer within each grid square. Leatherback and loggerhead sea turtles were the most commonly observed turtle species during aerial surveys by Kraus et al. (2016) in the MA/RI and MA WEAs, with an additional six identified Kemp's ridley sea turtle sightings over five years.   Denes et al. (2021) used averaged seasonal leatherback sea turtle densities from Kraus et al. (2016) for summer and fall, as they provide more recent, non-zero estimates of leatherback density that are more geographically specific than the information in the OBIS database. Loggerhead densities were calculated for summer and fall by scaling the averaged leatherback densities from Kraus et al. (2016) by the ratio of the seasonal sighting rates of the two species during the surveys. Comparing the sightings rate of loggerhead and leatherback sea turtles in Kraus et al. (2016), leatherbacks are 1.16 more abundant than loggerheads in the autumn, 1.14 times more abundant in the spring, and 3.06 times more abundant in the summer.

Table 7.1.25. Sea turtle density estimates for the South Fork Wind Farm (SFWF). Values here are corrected from Denes et al. 2021[b] (table 47)

Common name	**Density (animals/km^2 [0.386 miles^2])** [a]			
	Spring	*Summer*	*Fall*	*Winter*
Kemp's ridley sea turtle	0.00925	0.00925	0.00925	0.00925
Leatherback sea turtle	0.00588	0.00630[b]	0.00873[b]	0.00588
Loggerhead sea turtle	0.035	0.00206[c]	0.00755[c]	0.035
Green sea turtle	0.00925	0.00925	0.00925	0.00925

[a] Density estimates are derived from the Strategic Environmental Research and Development Program - Spatial Decision Support System (Kot et al. 2018) unless otherwise noted. http://seamap.env.duke.edu/serdp

[b] Densities calculated as averaged seasonal densities from 2011 to 2015 (Kraus et al. 2016). Note that an error was detected in Denes et al. (2021), which lists the density as turtles/km^2 rather than leatherback/100km^2. This error has been corrected here.

[c] Densities calculated as the averaged seasonal leatherback sea turtle densities scaled by the relative, seasonal sighting rates of loggerhead and leatherback sea turtles (Kraus et al. 2016). Note that an error was detected in Denes et al. (2021), which lists the density as turtles/km2 rather than loggerheads/100km2. This error has been corrected here.

[d] Kraus et al. (2016) did not observe any green sea turtles in the RI/MA WEA. Densities of Kemp's ridley sea turtles are used as a conservative estimate

Exposure estimates for sea turtles were updated by Denes et al. (2021) after the BA was provided to us. BOEM provided the Denes et al. (2021) reports as a supplement to the BA. Denes et al. (2021) contains a number of tables that present the results of models estimating the number of sea turtles (by species) anticipated to be exposed to pile driving noise above the PTS, TTS, and behavioral disturbance thresholds. These exposure estimates were generated for the maximum impact and most likely scenarios (i.e., with and without a difficult to install pile), with 10 dB attenuation. Given the seasonal differences in sea turtle density and the differences in attenuation modeled by season, exposure estimates are reported by month. The tables relevant to the construction scenarios considered here are Tables 56, 64, 72, 80, 88, and 96; the information in those tables is summarized in tables 7.1.25 and 7.1.26 below. As explained in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, due to seasonal water temperature patterns, sea turtles are most likely to occur in the lease area from June through October, with few sea turtles present in May, November, and early December and turtles absent in the winter months. Kraus et al. (2016) observed no sea turtles in surveys from December – February and very few (5 across 5 years) in the spring (March – May), representing 3% of the turtles sighted in the summer (June-August, 165 individuals). The density estimates used in Denes et al. 2021 for December and May are the mean density estimates for the entire U.S. Atlantic in the winter and spring; as such, they include areas with much higher water temperatures where sea turtles overwinter and would result in a significant overestimate of sea turtle presence in the lease area. This is evidenced by the exposure estimates being higher for May compared to June, and December compared to November. Differences in the sound attenuation model can not account for those differences in the exposure estimates as May and June both use summer conditions and November and December use the winter condition. For these reasons, we do not consider the exposure estimates for May or December to be reasonable and consider the June exposure estimates to be better predictors for May and the November exposure estimates to be better predictors for December.

The tables presented below present the range of modeled exposures by month to the different thresholds considered for sea turtles. We have not included the May or December exposure estimates from Denes et al. in these tables.

Table 7.1.26. Number of sea turtles estimated to experience sound levels above PTS, TTS, and behavioral disturbance thresholds for the Maximum Design scenario, with one difficult to drive pile with 10 dB of attenuation. (Table 56, 64, and 72 Denes et al. 2021)

	PTS peak	PTS cum	TTS peak	TTS cum	Behavioral (175 dB rms)
Kemp's ridley	0	0-0.09	0	3.88-4.34	1.5-1.8
Leatherback	0	0-0.008	0	2.3-3.82	1.2-2.05
Loggerhead	0	0-0.12	0	0.93-3.49	0.42-1.63
Green	0	0-0.09	0	3.88-4.34	1.5-1.8

Table 7.1.27. Number of sea turtles estimated to experience sound levels above PTS, TTS, and behavioral disturbance thresholds for the Most Likely scenario, with one difficult to drive pile with 10 dB of attenuation. (Table 80, 88, and 96 Denes et al. 2021)

	PTS peak	PTS cum	TTS peak	TTS cum	Behavioral (175 dB rms)

Kemp's ridley	0	0	0	4.28-4.6	1.6-2.22
Leatherback	0	0.003-0.01	0	2.64-4.72	1.1-2.56
Loggerhead	0	0-0.08	0	0.94-3.44	0.46-1.68
Green	0	0	0	4.28-4.6	1.6-2.2

The values shown in the two tables above are the minimum and maximum modeled exposure by month. As explained above, the monthly values are influenced by both seasonal differences in density and seasonal differences in noise attenuation related to water temperature and mixing. There are also small differences between the number of modeled exposures in the maximum design and most likely design scenario related to the frequency of pile driving within a 7 day period. While the month to month differences are significant, the differences between modeled exposures for a particular species in the maximum and most likely scenario are less than 1 in all cases. The table below represents the maximum anticipated exposure for each species across months and pile driving scenarios; note that fractions 0.1 or less have been rounded down to zero as we consider modeled exposures at that level extremely unlikely to occur. Fractions above 0.1 have been rounded up to whole animals.

Table 7.1.28. Maximum anticipated exposure for each species across months and pile driving scenarios

	PTS peak	PTS cum	TTS peak	TTS cum	Behavioral (175 dB rms)
Kemp's ridley	0	0	0	5	3
Leatherback	0	0	0	5	3
Loggerhead	0	0	0	4	2
Green	0	0	0	5	3

Based on the sightings data reported in Kraus et al. (2016) surveys of the MA/RI and MA WEAs, which includes the South Fork lease area where pile driving will occur (see table 7.1.29 below), in the summer and fall we expect leatherbacks to be most frequent in the area, followed by loggerheads then Kemp’s ridleys. No green sea turtles were identified by Kraus et al; however, this species is known to occur in the project area. It is also important to note that given their size, leatherbacks are more likely to be identified to species during aerial surveys and that not all sighted sea turtles could be identified to species. The exposure estimates presented above likely overestimate exposure of Kemp’s ridley and green sea turtles as the density estimates used were for the mean of the U.S. Atlantic as whole (because there are no area specific density estimates for use). Based on anticipated abundance by species in the lease area, we would not expect more Kemp’s ridley or green sea turtles to be exposed to pile driving noise than loggerhead sea turtles. As such, we have adjusted the Kemp’s ridley and green sea turtle exposures to match the loggerhead numbers; while this may still be an overestimate we do not have sufficient information on the ratio of loggerheads to Kemp’s or greens from which to make any other adjustments.

We also considered whether sufficient information was available on detection rates from aerial surveys from which we could further adjust the exposure estimates. We reviewed the underlying survey report for the NODE database (Navy 2007) that informed the density estimates and note that it assumes 100% detectability of sea turtles while acknowledging that was not a reasonable assumption as sea turtles can be difficult to detect from aerial surveys due to their size and dive behavior and that it would result in density being underestimated. Kraus et al. (2016) notes that the number of sea turtle sightings was substantially increased by detections in the vertical camera (mounted under the plane) compared to the number observed by observers using binoculars during the aerial survey but does not provide any information on overall sea turtle detectability nor does it adjust observations to account for availability bias. As this is a common problem encountered with deriving sea turtle density estimates from aerial surveys, some studies have concurrently conducted tagging studies to account for availability bias. We reviewed the literature for similar studies conducted in the lease area, however no studies were found. The closest geographic study, NEFSC 2011, estimated regional abundance of loggerhead turtles in Northwestern Atlantic Ocean continental shelf waters using aerial surveys and accounted for availability bias using satellite tags, however the tagging occurred in the Mid-Atlantic (between New Jersey to Delaware). The study notes that none of the tagged loggerheads actually entered the North Atlantic or Mid-Atlantic North strata, which would have overlapped the lease area. As determining availability bias depends on the species and is influenced by habitat, season, sea surface temperature, time of day, and other factors, we determined that while we may be able to identify studies that identified availability bias it would not be reasonable to apply those post-hoc to the density estimates given differences in the study designs, location, habitat, sea surface temperature, etc.

We also considered whether it would be reasonable to adjust the density estimates to account for the percent of time that sea turtles are likely to be at the surface while in the action area and therefore would be available to be detected for such a survey. While we identified studies that characterized the amount of time that loggerheads spend time at the surface in the mid-Atlantic (NEFSC 2011) we did not find any such information for the lease area or New England waters generally and found no relevant information for green or Kemp's ridley sea turtles in the lease area. We did identify relevant information for leatherbacks (Dodge et al. 2014). However, after consulting with subject matter experts we determined it was not reasonable to adjust the density estimates with general observations about the amount of time loggerhead or leatherback sea turtles may be spending at the surface. Therefore, we have determined that there is no information available for us to use that could result in a different estimate of the amount of exposure that is reasonably certain to occur and have not made any further adjustments to the exposure estimates.

We do note that despite the concerns about the underlying density estimates being underestimates, there are several factors that indicate that the number of sea turtles we estimate to be exposed to noise above thresholds of concern is not likely to be exceeded, such as the conservative nature of the acoustic modeling, adjustments we did make for sea turtle estimates as explained above including using the highest per-month density, and rounding up all fractions of sea turtles to whole sea turtles.

Considering this analysis, we anticipate exposure of sea turtles to impact pile driving noise as identified in the Table 7.1.29 below.

Table 7.1.29. Exposure of sea turtles to impact pile driving noise

	PTS peak	PTS cum	TTS peak	TTS cum	Behavioral (175 dB rms)
Kemp's ridley	0	0	0	4	2
Leatherback	0	0	0	5	3
Loggerhead	0	0	0	4	2
Green	0	0	0	4	2

Proposed Measures to Minimize Exposure of Sea Turtles to Pile Driving Noise

Here, we consider the measures that are part of the proposed action, either because they are proposed by South Fork Wind or BOEM and reflected in the proposed action as described to us by BOEM in the BA, or are proposed to be required through the IHA, and how those measures will serve to minimize exposure of ESA listed sea turtles to pile driving noise. Details of these proposed measures are included in the Description of the Action section above. We do not consider use of PAM here; because sea turtles do not vocalize, PAM is not used to monitor sea turtle presence.

Seasonal Restriction on Pile Driving

No impact pile driving activities for monopiles would occur between January 1 and April 30 to avoid the time of year with the highest densities of right whales in the project area. The January 1 – April 30 period overlaps with the period when we do not expect sea turtles to occur in the action area due to cold water temperatures. This seasonal restriction is factored into the acoustic modeling that supported the development of the amount of exposure estimates above. That is, the modeling does not consider any pile driving in the January 1 – April 30, period. Thus, the exposure estimates do not need to be adjusted to account for this seasonal restriction.

Sound Attenuation Devices

DSWF will implement sound attenuation technology that would achieve at least a 10 dB reduction in pile driving noise, as described above. The attainment of a 10 dB reduction in pile driving noise was incorporated into the exposure estimate calculations presented above. Thus, the exposure estimates do not need to be adjusted to account for the use of sound attenuation. If a reduction greater than 10 dB is achieved, the number of sea turtles exposed to pile driving noise could be lower as a result of resulting smaller distances to thresholds of concern.

Clearance Zones

As described in the BA, South Fork Wind would use PSOs to establish clearance zones of 500 m around the pile driving equipment to ensure these zones are clear of sea turtles prior to the start of pile driving. Prior to the start of pile driving activity, the clearance zones will be monitored for 60 minutes for protected species including sea turtles. If a sea turtle is observed approaching or entering the clearance zone prior to the start of pile driving operations, pile driving activity will be delayed until either the sea turtle has voluntarily left the respective clearance zone and been visually confirmed beyond that clearance zone, or, 30 minutes have elapsed without re-detection of the animal. Sea turtles observed within a clearance zone will be allowed to remain in the clearance zone (*i.e.*, must leave of their own volition), and their behavior will be monitored and documented. The clearance zones may only be declared clear, and pile driving started, when the entire clearance zones are visible (*i.e.*, when not obscured by dark, rain, fog, etc.) for a full 30 minutes prior to pile driving.

If a sea turtle is observed entering or within the clearance zone after pile driving has begun, the PSO will request a temporary cessation of pile driving as explained for marine mammals above. There will be at least two PSOs stationed at an elevated position at or near the pile being driven; given that PSOs are expected to reasonably be able to detect sea turtles at a distance of 500 m from their station, we expect that the PSOs will be able to effectively monitor the clearance zone. While visibility of sea turtles in the clearance zone is limited to only sea turtles at or very near the surface, we expect that the use of the clearance zone will reduce the number of times that pile driving begins with a sea turtle closer than 500 m to the pile being driven. The clearance zone is larger than the area within which a sea turtle would need to be to experience PTS or TTS from a single strike of the pile (i.e., 1m for PTS and 3 m for TTS). Thus, this further reduces the already low likelihood of a sea turtle being exposed to noise above the peak threshold for PTS or TTS. The clearance and shutdown requirements may also reduce the number of sea turtles potentially exposed to noise above the cumulative PTS or TTS or behavioral disturbance thresholds but we are not able to estimate the extent of any reduction.

Soft Start

As described above, before full energy pile driving begins, the hammer will operate at 10-20% energy for 20 minutes (400 – 800 kJ). Based on information in Denes et al. 2021 (see Table G-10), considering the IHC-S4000 hammer operating at a hammer energy of 1000 kJ, underwater noise does not exceed the peak threshold for considering PTS or TTS for sea turtles (37.5% of total hammer energy); noise above the 175 dB re 1uPa threshold would extend approximately 700 m from the pile during the soft start period. The use of the soft start gives sea turtles near enough to the piles to be exposed to the soft start noise a “head start” on escape or avoidance behavior by causing them to swim away from the source. This means that sea turtles within 700 m of the pile would be expected to begin to swim away from the noise before full force pile driving begins; in this case, the number of sea turtles exposed to noise that may result in injury would be reduced. It is likely that by eliciting avoidance behavior prior to full power pile driving, the soft start will reduce the duration of exposure to noise that could result in behavioral disturbance. However, we are not able to predict the extent to which the soft start will reduce the number of sea turtles exposed to pile driving noise or the extent to which it will reduce the duration of exposure. Therefore, while the soft start is expected to reduce effects of pile driving we are not able to modify the estimated exposures to account for any benefit provided by the soft start.

Sound Source Verification

As described above, South Fork Wind will also conduct hydroacoustic monitoring for a subset of impact-driven piles. The required sound source verification will provide information necessary to confirm that the sound source characteristics predicted by the modeling are reflective of actual sound source characteristics in the field and that the sound attenuation system is reducing noise to levels modeled with 10dB attenuation. In the event that sound source verification indicates that characteristics in the field are such that the model is invalid or is determined to underestimate exposure of listed species, reinitiation of this consultation may be necessary.

7.1.4.1 Effects to Sea Turtles Exposed to Impact Pile Driving Noise for Foundation Installation

The exposure analysis conducted by Denes et al. (2021), as well as our modifications to that analysis, predicts exposure of no more than tiny fractions of sea turtles to noise above the cumulative PTS thresholds and no exposure to noise above the peak TTS thresholds. Given how close to zero the predicted exposure to noise above the cumulative PTS thresholds is, the use of soft start that would allow for sea turtles to start avoiding the noise before the hammer was used at full energy, and that we expect sea turtles to avoid noise above 175 dB re 1uPa, it is extremely unlikely that any sea turtles will be exposed to noise above the PTS threshold. This already extremely low likelihood is further reduced by the required monitoring of the exclusion zone and the requirements to delay pile driving if any sea turtles are observed within the exclusion zone prior to the start of pile driving and to shut down pile driving operations if a sea turtle is observed in the zone during pile installation. Based on this, no sea turtles are expected to experience permanent hearing loss or any other injury. No mortalities are anticipated due to exposure to pile driving noise.

The exposure analysis also predicts exposure of sea turtles to noise expected to result in TTS and elicit a behavioral response. We expect 5 leatherbacks, 4 loggerheads, and no more than 4 Kemp’s ridley and green sea turtles to be exposed to noise above the TTS thresholds and no more than 3 leatherbacks and 2 loggerheads, and no more than 2 Kemp’s ridley and green sea turtles to be exposed to noise above the behavioral impacts threshold.

Any sea turtles that experienced TTS would experience a temporary, recoverable, hearing loss manifested as a threshold shift around the frequency of the pile driving noise. Because sea turtles do not use noise to communicate, any TTS would not impact communications. We expect that this temporary hearing impairment would affect frequencies utilized by sea turtles for acoustic cues such as the sound of waves, coastline noise, or the presence of a vessel or predator. Sea turtles are not known to depend heavily on acoustic cues for vital biological functions (Nelms et al. 2016; Popper et al. 2014), and instead, may rely primarily on senses other than hearing for interacting with their environment, such as vision (Narazaki et al. 2013) and magnetic orientation (Avens and Lohmann 2003; Putman et al. 2015). As such, it is unlikely that the loss of hearing in a sea turtle would affect its fitness (i.e., survival or reproduction). That said, it is possible that sea turtles use acoustic cues such as waves crashing, wind, vessel and/or predator noise to perceive the environment around them. If such cues increase survivorship (e.g., aid in avoiding predators, navigation), hearing loss may have effects on individual sea turtle fitness. TTS of sea turtles is expect to only last for several days following the initial exposure (Moein et al. 1994). Given this short period of time, and that sea turtles are not known to rely heavily on acoustic cues, we do not anticipate that single TTSs would have any impacts on the fitness of individual sea turtles.

Masking

Sea turtle hearing abilities and known use of sound to detect environmental cues is discussed above. Sea turtles are thought capable of detecting nearby broadband sounds, such as would be produced by pile driving. Thus, environmental sounds, such as the sounds of waves crashing along coastal beaches or other important cues for sea turtles, could possibly be masked for a short duration during pile driving. However, any masking would not persist beyond the period it takes to complete pile driving each day (two to four hours).

Behavioral Response and Stress

Based on prior observations of sea turtle reactions to sound, if a behavioral reaction were to occur, the responses could include increases in swim speed, change of position in the water column, or avoidance of the sound. The area where pile driving will occur is not known to be a breeding area and is over 600 km north of the nearest beach where sea turtle nesting has been documented (Virginia Beach, VA). Therefore, breeding adults and hatchlings are not expected in the area. The expected behavioral reactions would disrupt migration, feeding, or resting. However, that disruption will last for no longer than it takes the sea turtle to swim away from the noisy area or, at the longest, the duration of pile driving (two to four hours). There is no evidence to suggest that any behavioral response would persist beyond the duration of the sound exposure which in this case is the time it takes to drive a pile, two to four hours. For migrating sea turtles, it is unlikely that this temporary disturbance, which would result in a change in swimming direction, would have any consequence to the animal. Resting sea turtles are expected to resume resting once they escape the noise. Foraging sea turtles would resume foraging once suitable forage is located outside the noisy area.

While in some instances, temporary displacement from an area may have significant consequences to individuals or populations this is not the case here. For example, if individual turtles were prevented from accessing nesting beaches and missed a nesting cue or were precluded from a foraging area for an extensive period, there could be impacts to reproduction and the health of individuals, respectively. However, the area where noise may be at disturbing levels is a small portion of the coastal area used for north-south and south-north migrations and is only a fraction of the project area used by foraging sea turtles. We have no information to indicate that any particular portion of the project area is more valuable to sea turtles than another and no information to indicate that resting, foraging and migrating cannot take place in any portion of the project area or that any area is better suited for these activities than any other area. A disruption in migration, feeding, or resting for no more than three hours is not expected to result in any reduction in the health or fitness of any sea turtle. Additionally, significant behavioral responses that result in disruption of important life functions are more likely to occur from multiple exposures within a longer period of time, which are not expected to occur during the pile driving operations for the South Fork project.

Concurrent with the above responses, sea turtles are also expected to experience physiological stress responses. Stress is an adaptive response and does not normally place an animal at risk. Distress involves a chronic stress response resulting in a negative biological consequence to the individual. While all ESA-listed sea turtles that experience TTS and behavioral responses are also expected to also experience a stress response, such responses are expected to be short-term in nature given the duration of pile driving (three hours at a time) and because we do not expect any sea turtles to be exposed to pile driving noise on more than one day. As such, we do not anticipate stress responses would be chronic, involve distress, or have negative long-term impacts on any individual sea turtle's fitness.

All behavioral responses to a disturbance, such as those described above, will have an energetic or metabolic consequence to the individual reacting to the disturbance (e.g., adjustments in migratory movements or disruption/delays in foraging or resting). Short-term interruptions of normal behavior are likely to have little effect on the overall health, reproduction, and energy balance of an individual or population (Richardson *et al.* 1995). As the disturbance will occur for a portion of each day for a period of up to 16 days, with pile driving occurring for no more than 0.67% of the time in the May 1 – November 30 work window or 4.7% of the time in a given 30-day period that pile driving would occur, this exposure and displacement will be temporary and not chronic. Therefore, any interruptions in behavior and associated metabolic or energetic consequences will similarly be temporary. Thus, we do not anticipate any impairment of the health, survivability, or reproduction of any individual sea turtle.

As explained above, the NMFS Interim Guidance on the ESA Term "Harass" (NMFS PD-02-111-XX) provides for a four-step process to determine if a response meets the definition of harassment. Here, we carry out those steps.

Sea turtles occur in the action area during the time of year when pile driving will occur. As explained above, we expect up to 2 Kemp's ridley, 2 green, 3 leatherback and 3 loggerhead sea turtles would be expected to be exposed to noise that would result in behavioral disturbance and 4 Kemp's ridley, 4 green, 5 leatherback, and 4 loggerheads to be exposed to noise that would result in TTS. These turtles could experience TTS, masking, stress, and/or behavioral disturbance. With the exception of TTS which would take several days to recover from, the duration of the other responses are limited to the period of time the animal is exposed to pile driving noise (approximately two to four hours). This exposure is expected to result in disruption of migrating, resting and/or foraging behaviors and stopping their activity and swimming away from the noise source and avoiding the area with disturbing levels of noise.

For individual sea turtles exposed to disturbing levels of noise, there will be a significant disruption of their behavior because they will need to abandon that activity for up to four hours while they swim to an alternate area, to resume this behavior or they will avoid the area extending approximately 1.7 km from the pile being driven for the two to four hour duration of the pile driving. This means they will need to find an alternate migration route or alternate place for foraging or resting. These sea turtles will also experience masking or TTS which would affect their ability to detect certain environmental cues for the duration of pile driving (masking) or for up to several days after (TTS). Based on this four-step analysis, we find that the sea turtles exposed to noise above the TTS and behavioral harassment thresholds are likely to be adversely affected and that effect is harassment. As such, we expect the harassment of up to 6 Kemp's ridley, 6 green, 8 leatherback, and 6 loggerhead sea turtles as a result of pile driving.

NMFS defines "harm" in the definition of "take" as "an act which actually kills or injures fish or wildlife. Such an act may include significant habitat modification or degradation where it actually kills or injures fish or wildlife by significantly impairing essential behavioral patterns, including breeding, spawning, rearing, migrating, feeding or sheltering" (50 CFR §222.102). No sea turtles will be injured or killed due to exposure to pile driving noise. Further, while exposure to pile driving noise will significantly disrupt behaviors of individual sea turtles, it will not significantly impair any essential behavioral patterns. This is due to the short term, localized nature of the effects and because we expect these behaviors to resume once the sea turtle is no longer exposed to the noise. The energetic consequences of the evasive behavior and delay in resting or foraging are not expected affect any individual's ability to successfully obtain enough food to maintain their health, or impact the ability of any individual to make seasonal migrations or participate in breeding or nesting. TTS will resolve within a week of exposure and is not expected to affect the health of any sea turtle or its ability to migrate, forage, breed, or nest. Thus, the response of sea turtles to pile driving noise does not meet the definition of "harm."

Offshore Cable Transition Point - Temporary Cofferdam Installation and Removal
A cofferdam will be constructed to facilitate conducting HDD and splicing the cable at the offshore transition point where the offshore and onshore cables are spliced together. The cofferdam will be constructed by installing sheet piles with vibratory hammer. As described in Denes et al. (2021), noise resulting from vibratory pile driving of the sheet piling at the SFEC landfall was modeled for cofferdam installation. The model assumed the use of an APE 200T vibratory hammer to drive Z-type sheet pile 9 m (30 ft.) into the sediment under 9 m (30 ft.) of water assuming 12 hours of activity producing 185 peak dB SEL re:1 µPa2/Hz/m at 10 m, 50-110 Hz frequency band with no attenuation. The range ($R_{95\%}$ in meters) to unweighted sound pressure levels (L_{p}) of 175 dB for vibratory hammering of the sheet pile was 53 m. The PTS and TTS thresholds for sea turtles are not exceeded at any distance.

Because the PTS and TTS thresholds (peak and cumulative) are not anticipated to be exceeded at any distance from the pile, no sea turtles are anticipated to be exposed to noise that could result in permanent or temporary hearing loss.

Prior to the start of vibratory pile driving, a clearance zone with a 500 m radius around the piles to be driven will be monitored by a PSO for at least 30 minutes. Any visual detection of sea turtles the 500-m clearance zones will trigger a delay in pile installation. Upon a visual detection of a sea turtle entering or within the relevant clearance zone during pile-driving, pile driving will not start until: 1) The lead PSO verifies that the animal(s) voluntarily left and headed away from the clearance area; or 2) 30 minutes have elapsed without re-detection of the sea turtle(s) by the lead PSO. Similarly, if a sea turtle is detected in the clearance zone once pile driving is started, pile driving will stop until the above conditions are met. At a distance of 500 m or less, sea turtles at the surface are expected to be able to be sighted by the PSO; however, submerged sea turtles may not be detected. As such, while the clearance and shutdown requirements are likely to reduce the number of sea turtles potentially exposed to vibratory pile driving noise, these conditions will not eliminate the potential for exposure.

A sea turtle within 53 m of the pile being driven with the vibratory hammer is expected to react by displaying evasive movements and swimming away from the noise source. The furthest a sea turtle would need to swim to avoid disturbing levels of noise is 53 m; these movements would take only seconds. Given the very small area that a sea turtle would potentially be displaced from and the very small distance that it would need to swim to avoid the noise, any effects to sea turtles exposed to vibratory pile driving noise would be so small that they would not be able to be measured, detected, or evaluated. As such, effects are insignificant.

Offshore Cable Transition Point - Casing Pipe

As an alternative to the cofferdam, SFW may install a 60" diameter steel casing pipe with a pneumatic hammer or similar smaller size hammer through which the 24-inch-diameter conduit would be pulled through. The casing pipe may be used in place of the proposed cofferdam at the same location.

The casing pipe may require that temporary support piles be installed to ensure pipe stability. These support piles are anticipated to consist of up to 8 steel sheet piles temporarily driven into the seafloor. Noise associated with installation and removal of the steel sheet piles is consistent with the noise estimates for cofferdam installation and removal above; however, only 8 piles would be needed instead of 100 so the duration of vibratory hammering for installation and removal will be significantly less. Casing pipe installation is anticipated to be accomplished using a small pneumatic impact hammer (e.g., Grundoram Taurus or similar) operating around 18.6 kJ to drive the pipe in the seafloor. No acoustic modeling was carried out for the pneumatic hammer. As reported in BOEM's BA, information is available for installation of 60" diameter steel piles via impact pile driving (Caltrans 2015). Source levels for the pneumatic hammer would be significantly less given the significant difference in hammer energy (18.6 kJ compared to at least 1,000 kJ). Measurements during impact driving of a 60-inch diameter steel pile for bridge construction reported sound levels to be 210 dB re 1Pa RMS peak, SPL 195 dB re 1 μPa RMS and single strike SEL 185 dB re 1 μPa2s at 10 meters (m) from the pile (Caltrans 2015). BOEM used a pile driving noise calculator that assesses transmission loss to estimate the distance to a 187 dB re1Pa2s isopleth at 736m (roughly equivalent to the 189 dB re 1uPa cumulative TTS threshold) and 2,154 m to 160 dB re 1uPa RMS. Pile driving will occur for approximately 2 hours. No estimate to the 175 dB re 1uPa RMS threshold above which we would expect behavioral disturbance is available, but it would be smaller than the distance to the 160 dB threshold.

Noise during casing pile installation will not exceed the PTS threshold. Exposure of any sea turtles to noise above the TTS threshold is extremely unlikely; this is because exposure would require a sea turtle to remain within 736 m of the pile for the entire 2 hour duration of the pile. Given the near shore location of the sea to shore transition, sea turtles are unlikely to occur in the immediate area and even if a sea turtle was present at the time pile driving began, it would be able to quickly swim out of the noisy area. An area less than 2,154 m will be ensonified above the 175 dB re 1uPa threshold for approximately two hours. Given the large size of the area, it is possible that sea turtles could be within 2,154 m of the pile when pile installation begins. However, considering the modeling that was completed for installation of the much larger diameter monopoles and the small number of sea turtles anticipated to be exposed to disturbing levels of pile driving noise during the installation of the 16 monopiles, the shorter duration of noise considered here, the near shore location of the pile being driven, and that the estimate of noise provided in the BA is expected to significantly overestimate the size of the isopleths of concern, we expect that any exposure of sea turtles to potentially disturbing levels of noise would be brief (e.g., a sea turtle may approach the noisy area and divert away from it), and any effects to this brief exposure would be so small that they could not be measured, detected, or evaluated and are therefore insignificant.

Vessel Noise and Cable Installation

The vessels used for the proposed project will produce low-frequency, broadband underwater sound below 1 kHz (for larger vessels), and higher-frequency sound between 1 kHz to 50 kHz (for smaller vessels), although the exact level of sound produced varies by vessel type. Noise produced during cable installation is dominated by the vessel noise; therefore, we consider these together.

ESA-listed turtles could be exposed to a range of vessel noises within their hearing abilities. Depending on the context of exposure, potential responses of green, Kemp's ridley, leatherback, and loggerhead sea turtles to vessel noise disturbance, would include startle responses, avoidance, or other behavioral reactions, and physiological stress responses. Very little research exists on sea turtle responses to vessel noise disturbance. Currently, there is nothing in the available literature specifically aimed at studying and quantifying sea turtle response to vessel noise. However, a study examining vessel strike risk to green sea turtles suggested that sea turtles may habituate to vessel sound and may be more likely to respond to the sight of a vessel rather than the sound of a vessel, although both may play a role in prompting reactions (Hazel et al. 2007). Regardless of the specific stressor associated with vessels to which turtles are responding, they only appear to show responses (avoidance behavior) at approximately 10 m or closer (Hazel et al. 2007).

Therefore, the noise from vessels is not likely to affect sea turtles from further distances, and disturbance may only occur if a sea turtle hears a vessel nearby or sees it as it approaches. These responses appear limited to non-injurious, minor changes in behavior based on the limited information available on sea turtle response to vessel noise.

For these reasons, vessel noise is expected to cause minimal disturbance to sea turtles. If a sea turtle detects a vessel and avoids it or has a stress response from the noise disturbance, these responses are expected to be temporary and only endure while the vessel transits through the area where the sea turtle encountered it. Therefore, sea turtle responses to vessel noise disturbance are considered insignificant (i.e., so minor that the effect cannot be meaningfully evaluated), and a sea turtle would be expected to return to normal behaviors and stress levels shortly after the vessel passes by.

Operation of WTGs

As described above, many of the published measurements of underwater noise levels produced by operating WTGs range are from older geared WTGs and may not be representative of newer direct-drive WTGs, like those that will be installed for the SFWF. Elliot et al. (2019) reports underwater noise monitoring at the Block Island Wind Farm, which has direct-drive GE Haliade turbines expected to be comparable to the ones at SFWF. The loudest noise recorded was 126 dB re 1uPa at a distance of 50 m from the turbine when wind speeds exceeded 56 kmh.

Elliot et al. (2019) conclude that based on monitoring of underwater noise at the Block Island site, under worst-case assumptions, no risk of temporary or permanent hearing damage (PTS or

TTS) could be projected even if an animal remained in the water at 50 m (164 ft.) from the turbine for a full 24-hour period. As underwater noise associated with the operation of the WTGs is below the thresholds for considering behavioral disturbance, and considering that there is no potential for exposure to noise above the peak or cumulative PTS or TTS thresholds, we do not expect any impacts to any sea turtles due to noise associated with the operating turbines.

HRG Surveys
Some of the equipment that is described by BOEM for use for surveys to support decommissioning produces underwater noise that can be perceived by sea turtles. This may include boomers, sparkers, and bubble guns. The maximum distance to the 175 dB re 1uPa behavioral disturbance threshold is 90 meters; the TTS and PTS thresholds are not exceeded at any distance (see table 7.1.6 and 7.1.7). Extensive information on HRG survey noise and potential effects of exposure to sea turtles is provided in NMFS June 29, 2021 programmatic ESA consultation on certain geophysical and geotechnical survey activities. We summarize the relevant conclusions here.

None of the equipment being operated for these surveys that overlaps with the hearing range (30 Hz to 2 kHz) for sea turtles has source levels loud enough to result in PTS or TTS based on the peak or cumulative exposure criteria (Table 7.1.5). Therefore, physical effects are extremely unlikely to occur.

As explained above, we assume that sea turtles would exhibit a behavioral response when exposed to received levels of 175 dB re: 1 µPa (rms) and are within their hearing range (below 2 kHz). For boomers and bubble guns the distance to this threshold is 40 m, and is 90 m for sparkers and 2 m for chirps (Table 7.17). Thus, a sea turtle would need to be within 90 m of the source to be exposed to potentially disturbing levels of noise. We expect that sea turtles would react to this exposure by swimming away from the sound source; this would limit exposure to a short time period, just the few seconds it would take an individual to swim away to avoid the noise.

The risk of exposure to potentially disturbing levels of noise is reduced by the use of PSOs to monitor for sea turtles. A Clearance Zone (500 m in all directions) for ESA-listed species must be monitored around all vessels operating equipment at a frequency of less than 180 kHz. At the start of a survey, equipment cannot be turned on until the Clearance Zone is clear for at least 30 minutes. This condition is expected to reduce the potential for sea turtles to be exposed to noise that may be disturbing. However, even in the event that a sea turtle is submerged and not seen by the PSO, in the worst case, we expect that sea turtles would avoid the area ensonified by the survey equipment that they can perceive. Because the area where increased underwater noise will be experienced is transient and increased underwater noise will only be experienced in a particular area for only seconds, we expect any effects to behavior to be minor and limited to a temporary disruption of normal behaviors, temporary avoidance of the ensonified area and minor additional energy expenditure spent while swimming away from the noisy area. If foraging or migrations are disrupted, we expect that they will quickly resume once the survey vessel has left the area. No sea turtles will be displaced from a particular area for more than a few minutes. While the movements of individual sea turtles will be affected by the sound associated with the survey, these effects will be temporary (seconds to minutes) and localized (avoiding an area no larger than 90 m) and there will be only a minor and temporary impact on foraging, migrating or resting sea turtles. For example, BOEM calculated that for a survey with equipment being towed at 3 knots, exposure of a turtle that was within 90 m of the source would last for less than two minutes.

Given the intermittent and short duration of exposure to any potentially disturbing noise from HRG equipment, effects to individual sea turtles from brief exposure to potentially disturbing levels of noise are expected to be minor and limited to a brief startle, short increase in swimming speed and/or short displacement from an area not exceeding 90 m in diameter, and will be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated; therefore, effects are insignificant.

7.1.5. Effects of Noise on Atlantic sturgeon

Background Information – Atlantic sturgeon and Noise
Impulsive sounds such as those produced by impact pile driving can affect fishes in a variety of ways, and in certain circumstances, have been shown to cause mortality, auditory injury, barotrauma, and behavioral changes. Impulsive sound sources produce brief, broadband signals that are atonal transients (e.g., high amplitude, short-duration sound at the beginning of a waveform; not a continuous waveform). They are generally characterized by a rapid rise from ambient sound pressures to a maximal pressure followed by a rapid decay period that may include a period of diminishing, oscillating maximal and minimal pressures. For these reasons, they generally have an increased capacity to induce physical injuries in fishes, especially those with swim bladders (Casper et al. 2013a; Halvorsen et al. 2012b; Popper et al. 2014). These types of sound pressures cause the swim bladder in a fish to rapidly and repeatedly expand and contract, and pound against the internal organs. This pneumatic pounding may result in hemorrhage and rupture of blood vessels and internal organs, including the swim bladder, spleen, liver, and kidneys. External damage has also been documented, evident with loss of scales, hematomas in the eyes, base of fins, etc. (e.g., Casper et al. 2012c; Gisiner 1998; Halvorsen et al. 2012b; Wiley et al. 1981; Yelverton et al. 1975a). Fishes can survive and recover from some injuries, but in other cases, death can be instantaneous, occur within minutes after exposure, or occur several days later.

Hearing impairment
Research is limited on the effects of impulsive noise on the hearing of fishes, however some research on seismic air gun exposure has demonstrated mortality and potential damage to the lateral line cells in fish larvae, fry, and embryos after exposure to single shots from a seismic air gun near the source (0.01 to 6 m; Booman et al. 1996; Cox et al. 2012). Popper et al. (2005a) examined the effects of a seismic air gun array on a fish with hearing specializations, the lake chub (*Couesius plumbeus*), and two species that lack notable hearing specializations, the northern pike (*Esox lucius*) and the broad whitefish (*Coregonus nasus*), a salmonid species. In this study, the average received exposure levels were a mean peak pressure level of 207 dB re 1 μPa; sound pressure level of 197 dB re 1 μPa; and single-shot sound exposure level of 177 dB re 1 μPa^2-s. The results showed temporary hearing loss for both lake chub and northern pike to both 5 and 20 air gun shots, but not for the broad whitefish. Hearing loss was approximately 20 to 25 dB at some frequencies for both the northern pike and lake chub, and full recovery of

hearing took place within 18-24 hours after sound exposure. Examination of the sensory surfaces of the showed no damage to sensory hair cells in any of the fish from these exposures (Song et al. 2008). Popper et al. (2006) also indicated exposure of adult fish to a single shot from an air gun array (consisting of four air guns) within close range (six meters) did not result in any signs of mortality, seven days post-exposure. Although non-lethal injuries were observed, the researchers could not attribute them to air gun exposure as similar injuries were observed in controlled fishes. Other studies conducted on fishes with swim bladders did not show any mortality or evidence of other injury (Hastings et al. 2008; McCauley and Kent 2012; Popper et al. 2014; Popper et al. 2007; Popper et al. 2005a).

McCauley et al. (2003) showed loss of a small percent of sensory hair cells in the inner ear of the pink snapper (*Pagrus auratus*) exposed to a moving air gun array for 1.5 hours. Maximum received levels exceeded 180 dB re 1 μPa^2-s for a few shots. The loss of sensory hair cells continued to increase for up to at least 58 days post-exposure to 2.7 percent of the total cells. It is not known if this hair cell loss would result in hearing loss since TTS was not examined. Therefore, it remains unclear why McCauley et al. (2003) found damage to sensory hair cells while Popper et al. (2005a) did not. However, there are many differences between the studies, including species, precise sound source, and spectrum of the sound that make it difficult speculate what the caused hair cell damage in one study and no the other.

Hastings et al. (2008) exposed the pinecone soldierfish (*Myripristis murdjan*), a fish with anatomical specializations to enhance their hearing and three species without notable specializations: the blue green damselfish (*Chromis viridis*), the saber squirrelfish (*Sargocentron spiniferum*), and the bluestripe seaperch (*Lutjanus kasmira*) to an air gun array. Fish in cages in 16 ft. (4.9 m) of water were exposed to multiple air gun shots with a cumulative sound exposure level of 190 dB re 1 μPa^2-s. The authors found no hearing loss in any fish following exposures. Based on the tests to date that indicated TTS in fishes from exposure to impulsive sound sources (air guns and pile driving) the recommended threshold for the onset of TTS in fishes is 186 dB SEL_{cum} re 1 μPa^2-s, as described in the 2014 *ANSI Guidelines*.

Physiological Stress

Physiological effects to fishes from exposure to anthropogenic sound are increases in stress hormones or changes to other biochemical stress indicators (e.g., D'amelio et al. 1999; Sverdrup et al. 1994; Wysocki et al. 2006). Fishes may have physiological stress reactions to sounds that they can detect. For example, a sudden increase in sound pressure level or an increase in overall background noise levels can increase hormone levels and alter other metabolic rates indicative of a stress response. Studies have demonstrated elevated hormones such as cortisol, or increased ventilation and oxygen consumption (Hastings and C. 2009; Pickering 1981; Simpson et al. 2015; Simpson et al. 2016; Smith et al. 2004a; Smith et al. 2004b). Although results from these studies have varied, it has been shown that chronic or long-term (days or weeks) exposures of continuous anthropogenic sounds can lead to a reduction in embryo viability (Sierra-Flores et al. 2015) and decreased growth rates (Nedelec et al. 2015).

Generally, stress responses are more likely to occur in the presence of potentially threatening sound sources such as predator vocalizations or the sudden onset of loud and impulsive sound signals. Stress responses are typically considered brief (a few seconds to minutes) if the exposure is short or if fishes habituate or have previous experience with the sound**.** However, exposure to chronic noise sources may lead to more severe effects leading to fitness consequences such as reduced growth rates, decreased survival rates, reduced foraging success, etc. Although physiological stress responses may not be detectable on fishes during sound exposures, NMFS assumes a stress response occurs when other physiological impacts such as injury or hearing loss occur.

Some studies have been conducted that measure changes in cortisol levels in response to sound sources. Cortisol levels have been measured in fishes exposed to vessel noises, predator vocalizations, or other tones during playback experiments**.** Nichols et al. (2015a) exposed giant kelpfish (*Heterostichus rostratus*) to vessel playback sounds, and fish increased levels of cortisol were found with increased sound levels and intermittency of the playbacks. Sierra-Flores et al. (2015) demonstrated increased cortisol levels in fishes exposed to a short duration upsweep (a tone that sweeps upward across multiple frequencies) across 100 to 1,000 Hz. The levels returned to normal within one hour post-exposure, which supports the general assumption that spikes in stress hormones generally return to normal once the sound of concern ceases**.** Gulf toadfish (*Opsanus beta*) were found to have elevated cortisol levels when exposed to low-frequency dolphin vocalization playbacks (Remage-Healey et al. 2006). Interestingly, the researchers observed none of these effects in toadfish exposed to low frequency snapping shrimp “pops,” indicating what sound the fish may detect and perceive as threats. Not all research has indicated stress responses resulting in increased hormone levels. Goldfish exposed to continuous (0.1 to 10 kHz) sound at a pressure level of 170 dB re 1 µPa for one month showed no increase in stress hormones (Smith et al. 2004b). Similarly, Wysocki et al. (2007b) exposed rainbow trout to continuous band-limited noise with a sound pressure level of about 150 dB re 1 µPa for nine months with no observed stress effects. Additionally, the researchers found no significant changes to growth rates or immune systems compared to control animals held at a sound pressure level of 110 dB re 1 µPa.

Masking

As described previously in this biological opinion, masking generally results from a sound impeding an animal’s ability to hear other sounds of interest. The frequency of the received level and duration of the sound exposure determine the potential degree of auditory masking. Similar to hearing loss, the greater the degree of masking, the smaller the area becomes within which an animal can detect biologically relevant sounds such as those required to attract mates, avoid predators or find prey (Slabbekoorn et al. 2010). Because the ability to detect and process sound may be important for fish survival, anything that may significantly prevent or affect the ability of fish to detect, process or otherwise recognize a biologically or ecologically relevant sound could decrease chances of survival. For example, some studies on anthropogenic sound effects on fishes have shown that the temporal pattern of fish vocalizations (e.g., sciaenids and gobies) may be altered when fish are exposed to sound-masking (Parsons et al. 2009). This may indicate fish are able to react to noisy environments by exploiting “quiet windows” (e.g., Lugli and Fine 2003) or moving from affected areas and congregating in areas less disturbed by nuisance sound sources. In some cases, vocal compensations occur, such as increases in the number of individuals vocalizing in the area, or increases in the pulse/sound rates produced (Picciulin et al. 2012). Fish vocal compensations could have an energetic cost to the individual, which may lead to a fitness consequence such as affecting their reproductive success or increase detection by predators (Amorin et al. 2002; Bonacito et al. 2001).

Behavioral Responses

In general, NMFS assumes that most fish species would respond in similar manner to both air guns and impact pile driving. As with explosives, these reactions could include startle or alarm responses, quick bursts in swimming speeds, diving, or changes in swimming orientation. In other responses, fish may move from the area or stay and try to hide if they perceive the sound as potential threat. Other potential changes include reduced predator awareness and reduced feeding effort. The potential for adverse behavioral effects will depend on a number of factors, including the sensitivity to sound, the type and duration of the sound, as well as life stages of fish that are present in the areas affected.

Fish that detect an impulsive sound may respond in “alarm” detected by Fewtrell (2003), or other startle responses may also be exhibited. The startle response in fishes is a quick burst of swimming that may be involved in avoidance of predators. A fish that exhibits a startle response may not necessarily be injured, but it is exhibiting behavior that suggests it perceives a stimulus indicating potential danger in its immediate environment. However, fish do not exhibit a startle response every time they experience a strong hydroacoustic stimulus. A study in Puget Sound, Washington suggests that pile driving operations disrupt juvenile salmon behavior (Feist et al. 1992). Though no underwater sound measurements are available from that study, comparisons between juvenile salmon schooling behavior in areas subjected to pile driving/construction and other areas where there was no pile driving/construction indicate that there were fewer schools of fish in the pile-driving areas than in the non-pile driving areas. The results are not conclusive but there is a suggestion that pile-driving operations may result in a disruption in the normal migratory behavior of the salmon in that study, though the mechanisms salmon may use for avoiding the area are not understood at this time.

Because of the inherent difficulties with conducting fish behavioral studies in the wild, data on behavioral responses for fishes is largely limited to caged or confined fish studies, mostly limited to studies using caged fishes and the use of seismic air guns (Lokkeberg et al. 2012). In an effort to assess potential fish responses to anthropogenic sound, NMFS has historically applied an interim criteria for onset injury of fish from impact pile driving which was agreed to in 2008 by a coalition of federal and non-federal agencies along the West Coast (FHWG 2008). These criteria were also discussed in Stadler and Woodbury (2009), wherein the onset of physical injury for fishes would be expected if either the peak sound pressure level exceeds 206 dB (re 1 μPa), or the $\mathrm{SEL_{cum}}$, (re 1 $\mu\mathrm{Pa}^2$-s) accumulated over all pile strikes occurring within a single day, exceeds 187 dB $\mathrm{SEL_{cum}}$ (re 1 $\mu\mathrm{Pa}^2$-s) for fish two grams or larger, or 183 dB re 1 $\mu\mathrm{Pa}^2$-s for fishes less than two grams. The more recent recommendations from the studies conducted by Halvorsen et al. (2011a), Halvorsen et al. (2012b), and Casper et al. (2012c), and summarized in the 2014 *ANSI Guidelines* are similar to these levels, but also establishes levels based upon fish hearing abilities, the presence of a swim bladder as well as severity of effects ranging from mortality, recoverable injury to TTS. The interim criteria developed in 2008 were developed primarily from air gun and explosive effects on fishes (and some pile driving) because limited information regarding impact pile driving effects on fishes was available at the time.

7.1.5.1. Criteria Used for Assessing Effects of Noise Exposure to Atlantic Sturgeon

There is no available information on the hearing capabilities of Atlantic sturgeon specifically, although the hearing of two species of sturgeon have been studied. While sturgeon have swimbladders, they are not known to be used for hearing, and thus sturgeon appear to only rely directly on their ears for hearing. Popper (2005) reported that studies measuring responses of the ear of European sturgeon (*Acipenser sturio*) using physiological methods suggest sturgeon are likely capable of detecting sounds from below 100 Hz to about 1 kHz, indicating that sturgeon should be able to localize or determine the direction of origin of sound. Meyer and Popper (2002) recorded auditory evoked potentials of varying frequencies and intensities for lake sturgeon (*Acipenser fulvescens*) and found that lake sturgeon can detect pure tones from 100 Hz to 2 kHz, with best hearing sensitivity from 100 to 400 Hz. They also compared these sturgeon data with comparable data for oscar (*Astronotus ocellatus*) and goldfish (*Carassius auratus*) and reported that the auditory brainstem responses for the lake sturgeon were more similar to goldfish (that can hear up to 5 kHz) than to the oscar (that can only detect sound up to 400 Hz); these authors, however, felt additional data were necessary before lake sturgeon could be considered specialized for hearing (Meyer and Popper 2002). Lovell et al. (2005) also studied sound reception and the hearing abilities of paddlefish (*Polyodon spathula*) and lake sturgeon. Using a combination of morphological and physiological techniques, they determined that paddlefish and lake sturgeon were responsive to sounds ranging in frequency from 100 to 500 Hz, with the lowest hearing thresholds from frequencies in a bandwidth of between 200 and 300 Hz and higher thresholds at 100 and 500 Hz; lake sturgeon were not sensitive to sound pressure. We assume that the hearing sensitivities reported for these other species of sturgeon are representative of the hearing sensitivities of all Atlantic sturgeon DPSs.

The Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group (FHWG) was formed in 2004 and consists of biologists from NMFS, USFWS, FHWA, USACE, and the California, Washington and Oregon DOTs, supported by national experts on underwater sound producing activities that affect fish and wildlife species of concern. In June 2008, the agencies signed an MOA documenting criteria for assessing physiological effects of impact pile driving on fish. The criteria were developed for the acoustic levels at which physiological effects to fish could be expected. It should be noted, that these are onset of physiological effects (Stadler and Woodbury, 2009), and not levels at which fish are necessarily mortally damaged. These criteria were developed to apply to all fish species, including listed green sturgeon, which are biologically similar to shortnose and Atlantic sturgeon and for these purposes can be considered a surrogate. The interim criteria are:

- Peak SPL: 206 dB re 1 µPa
- SELcum: 187 B re 1µPa^2-s for fishes 2 grams or larger (0.07 ounces).
- SELcum: 183 dB re 1µPa^2-s for fishes less than 2 grams (0.07 ounces).

At this time, these criteria represent the best available information on the thresholds at which physiological effects to sturgeon are likely to occur. It is important to note that physiological effects may range from minor injuries from which individuals are anticipated to completely recover with no impact to fitness to significant injuries that will lead to death. The severity of injury is related to the distance from the pile being installed and the duration of exposure. The closer to the source and the greater the duration of the exposure, the higher likelihood of significant injury.

Popper et al. (2014) presents a series of proposed thresholds for onset of mortality and potential injury, recoverable injury, and temporary threshold shift for fish species exposed to pile driving noise. This assessment incorporates information from lake sturgeon and includes a category for fish that have a swim bladder that is not involved in hearing (such as Atlantic sturgeon). The criteria included in Popper et al. (2014) are:

- Mortality and potential mortal injury: 210 dB SELcum or >207 dB peak
- Recoverable injury: 203 dB SELcum or >207 dB peak
- TTS: >186 dB SELcum.

While these criteria are not exactly the same as the FHWG criteria, they are very similar. Based on the available information, for the purposes of this Opinion, we consider the potential for physiological effects upon exposure to 206 dB re 1 µPa peak and 187 dB re 1 µPa^2-s cSEL. Use of the 183 dB re 1 µPa^2-s cSEL threshold is not appropriate for this consultation because all sturgeon in the action area will be larger than 2 grams. Physiological effects could range from minor injuries that a fish is expected to completely recover from with no impairment to survival to major injuries that increase the potential for mortality, or result in death.

We use 150 dB re: 1 μPa RMS as a threshold for examining the potential for behavioral responses by individual listed fish to noise with frequency less than 1 kHz. This is supported by information provided in a number of studies (Andersson et al. 2007, Purser and Radford 2011, Wysocki et al. 2007). Responses to temporary exposure of noise of this level is expected to be a range of responses indicating that a fish detects the sound, these can be brief startle responses or, in the worst case, we expect that listed fish would completely avoid the area ensonified above 150 dB re: 1 uPa rms. Popper et al. (2014) does not identify a behavioral threshold but notes that the potential for behavioral disturbance decreases with the distance from the source.

7.1.5.2 Effects of Project Noise on Atlantic sturgeon

Pile Driving

Using the same methodology described above for marine mammals and sea turtles, Denes et al. (2021) modeled radial distances to the 206 dB peak and 187 dB SEL thresholds for considering physiological impacts (FHWG 2008) and 150 dB re 1uPa rms for considering potential behavioral disturbance, as recommended by NMFS. This was done for the impact piling to install monopiles as well as the vibratory hammering that may be used to install and remove the temporary cofferdam at the sea to shore transition.

Table 7.1.30. Radial distance (meters) to acoustic thresholds used to evaluate responses of sturgeon to pile driving noise resulting from modeling of 11 m monopile foundation with 10 dB attenuation. The values presented below are for a “difficult” pile installation, requiring 8,000 strikes over a 4 hour period. The values shown below are the maximum distance of the two locations and seasons modeled (see Table G-10 in Denes et al. 2021).

Threshold		**Impact Distance (m)**
Physiological Effects	206 peak	132

	187 SELcum	10,554
Behavior	150 dB rms	12,746

Table 7.1.31 Radial distance (meters) to acoustic thresholds used to evaluate responses of sturgeon to pile driving noise resulting from modeling of Z-type sheet pile, assuming 12 hours of activity producing 185 peak dB SEL re:1 µPa2/Hz/m at 10 m, 50-110 Hz frequency band with no attenuation.

Threshold		Impact Distance (m)
Physiological Effects	206 peak	N/A
	187 SELcum	N/A
Behavior	150 dB rms	775

A casing pipe may be used in place of the proposed cofferdam at the same location. Noise associated with installation and removal of the 8 steel sheet piles is consistent with the noise estimates for cofferdam installation and removal above. Casing pipe installation is anticipated to be accomplished using a small pneumatic impact hammer (e.g., Grundoram Taurus or similar) operating around 18.6 kJ to drive the pipe in the seafloor. No acoustic modeling was carried out for the pneumatic hammer. As reported in BOEM's BA, information is available for installation of 60" diameter steel piles via impact pile driving (Caltrans 2015). Source levels for the pneumatic hammer would be significantly less given the significant difference in hammer energy (18.6 kJ compared to at least 1,000 kJ). Measurements during impact driving of a 60-inch diameter steel pile for bridge construction reported sound levels to be 210 dB re 1Pa RMS peak, SPL 195 dB re 1 µPa RMS and single strike SEL 185 dB re 1 µPa2s at 10 meters (m) from the pile (Caltrans 2015). BOEM used a pile driving noise calculator that assesses attenuation to estimate the distance to a 187 dB re1Pa2s isopleth at 736m and 10,000 m to 150 dB re 1uPa RMS. The distance to the 206 dB re 1uPa peak threshold is less than 18 m. Pile driving will occur for approximately 2 hours.

No density estimates are available for the action area or for any area that could be used to estimate density in the action area. Therefore, it was not possible to conduct an exposure analysis like was done for marine mammals and sea turtles.

Here, we consider the measures that are part of the proposed action, either because they are proposed by South Fork Wind and reflected in the proposed action as described to us by BOEM in the BA, or are proposed to be required through the IHA, and how those measures may minimize exposure of Atlantic sturgeon to pile driving noise. Details of these proposed measures are included in the Description of the Action section above.

Atlantic sturgeon are not visible to PSOs because they occur near the bottom, and depths in the areas where pile driving is planned would preclude visual observation of fish near the bottom. Therefore, monitoring of clearance zones or areas beyond the clearance zones will not minimize exposure of Atlantic sturgeon to pile driving noise. Because Atlantic sturgeon do not vocalize, PAM can not be used to monitor Atlantic sturgeon presence; therefore, the use of PAM will not reduce exposure of Atlantic sturgeon to pile driving noise.

No impact pile driving activities for monopiles would occur between January 1 and April 30 to avoid the time of year with the highest densities of right whales in the project area. The January 1 – April 30 period overlaps with the period when we expect the abundance of Atlantic sturgeon to be at its lowest, because we do not expect Atlantic sturgeon to overwinter in the WDA. Therefore, the seasonal restriction would not reduce the exposure of Atlantic sturgeon to pile driving noise.

Sound Attenuation Devices
For all impact pile driving of monopiles, South Fork Wind would implement sound attenuation technology that would target at least a 10 dB reduction in pile driving noise, and that must achieve in-field measurements no greater than those modeled and presented in the BA. The attainment of a 10 dB reduction in impact pile driving noise was incorporated into the estimates of the area where injury or behavioral disruption may occur as presented above. If a reduction greater than 10 dB is achieved, the size of the area of impact would be smaller which would likely result in a smaller number of Atlantic sturgeon exposed to pile driving noise.

Soft Start
Soft start procedure is designed to provide a warning to animals or provide them with a chance to leave the area prior to the hammer operating at full capacity. As described above, for impact pile driving before full energy pile driving begins, pile driving will occur at 4-6 strikes per minute at 10 to 20 percent of the maximum hammer energy (i.e., 450 to 900 kJ), for a minimum of 20 minutes. At 1,000 kJ hammer intensity, a sturgeon would need to be within 46 m of the pile to be exposed to be exposed to noise above the 206 dB re 1uPa threshold (see Table G-10 in Denes et al. 2021). Given the dispersed nature of Atlantic sturgeon in the lease area, this co-occurrence is extremely unlikely to occur. We expect that any Atlantic sturgeon close enough to the pile to be exposed to noise above 150 dB re 1uPa rms would experience behavioral disturbance as a result of the soft start and that these sturgeon would exhibit evasive behaviors and swim away from the noise source. At 1,000 kJ, noise will be above 150 dB at a distance of approximately 7.5 km from the pile being driven (see table G-10 in Denes et al. 2021). The use of the soft start is expected to give Atlantic sturgeon near enough to the piles to be exposed to the soft start noise a “head start” on escape or avoidance behavior by causing them to swim away from the source. It is possible that some Atlantic sturgeon would swim out of the noisy area before full force pile driving begins; in this case, the number of Atlantic sturgeon exposed to noise that may result in injury would be reduced. It is likely that by eliciting avoidance behavior prior to full power pile driving, the soft start will reduce the duration of exposure to noise that could result in behavioral disturbance. However, we are not able to predict the extent to which the soft start will reduce the extent of exposure above the 150 dB re 1uPa threshold for considering behavioral impacts.

Sound Source Verification
As described above, South Fork Wind will also conduct hydroacoustic monitoring for a subset of impact-driven piles. The required sound source verification will provide information necessary to confirm that the sound source characteristics predicted by the modeling are reflective of actual sound source characteristics in the field. In the event that sound source verification indicates that characteristics in the field are such that the model is invalid or is determined to underestimate exposure of listed species, reinitiation of this consultation may be necessary.

7.1.5.3 Exposure of Atlantic sturgeon to Noise that May Result in Injury or Behavioral Disturbance

As described in the Environmental Baseline section of this Opinion, the WDA has not been systematically surveyed for Atlantic sturgeon; however, based on the best available information on use of the WDA by Atlantic sturgeon, including the capture of Atlantic sturgeon in gillnet surveys in the lease area, we expect Atlantic sturgeon to occur at least occasionally in the lease area where they could be exposed to pile driving noise. Given the offshore location of the project site outside of any known aggregation areas, we expect use of the action area to be intermittent and limited to transient individuals moving through the WDA during the spring, summer, and fall that may be foraging opportunistically in areas where benthic invertebrates are present. The area is not known to be a preferred foraging area and has not been identified as an aggregation area.

Impact Pile Driving for Foundations

In the scenario considered in the BA, over the course of the potential pile-installation window of May 1 – December 31, pile driving will occur for no more than 64 hours (4 hours per up to 16 monopiles), or approximately 1% of the time (64 hours of pile driving/5,880 total hours). Considering the narrower window within which pile driving is likely to occur (16 piles in 20 or 30 days), pile driving will occur for no more than approximately 9-13% (64 hours of pile driving/480-720 total hours).

In order to be exposed to pile driving noise that could result in injury, an Atlantic sturgeon would need to be within 132 m of a monopile for a single strike (based on the 206 dB peak threshold). Given the dispersed distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the lease area, the potential for co-occurrence in time and space is extremely unlikely given the small area where exposure to peak noise could occur (extending 132 m from the pile). This risk is further reduced by the small amount of time that pile driving will occur (up to four hours at a time and no more than 13% of the time over the planned 20-30 day window within which pile driving is expected to occur). The soft-start, which we expect would result in a behavioral reaction and movement outside the area with the potential for exposure to the peak injury threshold, reduces this risk even further. During the soft start, an Atlantic sturgeon would need to be within 46 meters of the pile being driven to be exposed to peak noise that could result in physiological effects (see table G-10 in Denes et al. 2021). Given these considerations, we do not expect any Atlantic sturgeon to be exposed to noise about the peak injury threshold.

Considering the 187 dB SELcum threshold, an Atlantic sturgeon would need to remain within 10,554 m of the pile for the full duration of pile driving during a 24-hour period (approximately three to four hours for a monopile; only a single pile will be driven per day). Downie and Kieffer (2017) reviewed available information on maximum sustained swimming ability (Ucrit) for a number of sturgeon species. No information was presented on Atlantic sturgeon. Kieffer and May (2020) report that swimming speed of sturgeons is consistent at approximately 2 body lengths/second. Considering that the smallest Atlantic sturgeon in the ocean environment where piles will be driven will be migratory subadults (at least 75 cm length), we can assume a minimum swim speed of 150 cm/second (equivalent to 5.4 km/hour) for Atlantic sturgeon in the lease area. Assuming a straight line escape and the slowest anticipated swim speed (5.4 km/h), even a sturgeon that was close by the pile at the start of pile driving would be able to swim away from the noisy area before being exposed to the noise for a long enough period to meet the 187 dB SELcum threshold. The distance we would expect a sturgeon to cover in the 2 hours it takes to install a "normal pile" is 10.8 km and the distance covered in the 4 hours it would take to install a "difficult pile" is 21.6 km. We expect that the soft-start will mean that the closest a sturgeon is to the pile being driven at the start of full power driving is several hundred meters away which further reduces the duration of exposure to noise that could accumulate to exceed the 187 dB SELcum threshold. Given these considerations, we expect any Atlantic sturgeon that are exposed to pile driving noise will be able to avoid exposure to noise above the levels that could result in exposure to the cumulative injury threshold. Based on this analysis, it is extremely unlikely that any Atlantic sturgeon will be exposed to noise that will result in injury. Therefore, no injury of any Atlantic sturgeon is expected to occur.

Vibratory Pile Driving
As indicated in Table 7.1.31, the installation and removal of the cofferdam with a vibratory hammer does not have the potential to exceed the injury thresholds. As such, there is no potential for injury to result from exposure to vibratory pile installation or removal.

Casing Pipe Installation
Given the near shore location of the pile installation and the small size of the area where peak noise will exceed the threshold for physiological impacts (less than 18 m) we do not anticipate the exposure of any Atlantic sturgeon to noise above this threshold. Exposure of any Atlantic sturgeon to noise above the 187 dB re 1uPa RMS threshold is extremely unlikely; this is because exposure would require an Atlantic sturgeon to remain within 736 m of the pile for the entire two hour duration of the pile. Given the near shore location of the sea to shore transition, Atlantic sturgeon are unlikely to occur in the immediate area and even if an Atlantic sturgeon was present at the time pile driving began, it would be able to quickly swim out of the noisy area and would not be exposed to this noise for more than a few minutes.

7.1.5.4 Effects of Noise Exposure above 150 dB re 1uPa rms

We expect Atlantic sturgeon to exhibit a behavioral response upon exposure to noise louder than 150 dB re 1uPa RMS. This response could range from a startle with immediate resumption of normal behaviors to complete avoidance of the area. The area where pile driving will occur is used for migration of Atlantic sturgeon, with opportunistic foraging expected to occur where suitable benthic resources are present. The area is not an aggregation area, and sustained foraging is not known to occur in this area.

During the two 12-18 hour periods where the cofferdam is installed and removed, the area that will have underwater noise above the 150 dB re 1uPa RMS threshold will extend approximately 775 m from the cofferdam. During the 16 2-4 hour periods where impact pile driving occurs for foundation installation, the area that will have underwater noise above the 150 dB re 1uPa RMS threshold will extend approximately 12.7 km from the pile being installed. In the two hours that the pneumatic hammer is used to install the casing pile, underwater noise above the 150 dB re 1uPa RMS threshold will extend less than 10 km from the single casing pile being installed. In the worst case, Atlantic sturgeon would avoid the entire area where noise is louder than 150 dB re 1uPa RMS. The consequences for an individual sturgeon would be alteration of movements to avoid the noise and temporary cessation of opportunistic foraging.

While in some instances temporary displacement from an area may have significant consequences to individuals or populations, this is not the case here. For example, if individual Atlantic sturgeon were prevented or delayed from accessing spawning or overwintering grounds or were precluded from a foraging area for an extensive period, there could be impacts to reproduction and the health of individuals, respectively. However, as explained above the area where noise may be at disturbing levels is used only for movement between other more highly used portions of the coastal Atlantic Ocean and is used only for opportunistic, occasional foraging.

All behavioral responses to a disturbance, such as those described above, will have an energetic or metabolic consequence to the individual reacting to the disturbance (e.g., adjustments in migratory movements or disruption in opportunistic foraging). Short-term interruptions of normal behavior are likely to have little effect on the overall health, reproduction, and energy balance of an individual or population (Richardson *et al.* 1995). As the disturbance will occur for a portion of each day for a period of up to 18 non-consecutive days (considering impact and vibratory pile installation), with pile driving occurring for no more than 13% of the time in the 20-30 day window that pile driving will take place and even less time during the May 1 – December 31 work window, this exposure and displacement will be temporary and not chronic. Therefore, any interruptions in behavior and associated metabolic or energetic consequences will similarly be temporary. Thus, we do not anticipate any impairment of the health, survivability, or reproduction of any individual Atlantic sturgeon.

Based on this analysis, we have determined that it is extremely unlikely that any Atlantic sturgeon will experience a significant disruption of migration or foraging, the two behaviors that occur in the action area. All effects to Atlantic sturgeon from exposure to impact pile driving noise are expected to be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated and are, therefore, insignificant.

Vessel Noise and Cable Installation

The vessels used for the proposed project will produce low-frequency, broadband underwater sound below 1 kHz (for larger vessels), and higher-frequency sound between 1 kHz to 50 kHz (for smaller vessels), although the exact level of sound produced varies by vessel type. Noise produced during cable installation is dominated by the vessel noise; therefore, we consider these together. Vessels operating with dynamic positioning thrusters produce peak noise of 171 dB SEL peak at a distance of 1 m, with noise attenuating to below 150 dB rms at a distance of 135 m (BOEM 2021, see table 23).

In general, information regarding the effects of vessel noise on fish hearing and behaviors is limited. Some TTS has been observed in fishes exposed to elevated background noise and other white noise, a continuous sound source similar to noise produced from vessels. Caged studies on sound pressure sensitive fishes show some TTS after several days or weeks of exposure to increased background sounds, although the hearing loss appeared to recover (e.g., Scholik and Yan 2002; Smith et al. 2006; Smith et al. 2004b). Smith et al. (2004b) and Smith et al. (2006)

exposed goldfish (a fish with hearing specializations, unlike any of the ESA-listed species considered in this opinion) to noise with a sound pressure level of 170 dB re 1 μPa and found a clear relationship between the amount of TTS and duration of exposure, until maximum hearing loss occurred at about 24 hours of exposure. A short duration (e.g., 10-minute) exposure resulted in 5 dB of TTS, whereas a three-week exposure resulted in a 28 dB TTS that took over two weeks to return to pre-exposure baseline levels (Smith et al. 2004b). Recovery times were not measured by researchers for shorter exposure durations, so recovery time for lower levels of TTS was not documented.

Vessel noise may also affect fish behavior by causing them to startle, swim away from an occupied area, change swimming direction and speed, or alter schooling behavior (Engas et al. 1998; Engas et al. 1995; Mitson and Knudsen 2003). Physiological responses have also been documented for fish exposed to increased boat noise. Nichols et al. (2015b) demonstrated physiological effects of increased noise (playback of boat noise) on coastal giant kelpfish. The fish exhibited acute stress responses when exposed to intermittent noise, but not to continuous noise. These results indicate variability in the acoustic environment may be more important than the period of noise exposure for inducing stress in fishes. However, other studies have also shown exposure to continuous or chronic vessel noise may elicit stress responses indicated by increased cortisol levels (Scholik and Yan 2001; Wysocki et al. 2006). These experiments demonstrate physiological and behavioral responses to various boat noises that have the potential to affect species' fitness and survival, but may also be influenced by the context and duration of exposure. It is important to note that most of these exposures were continuous, not intermittent, and the fish were unable to avoid the sound source for the duration of the experiment because this was a controlled study. In contrast, wild fish are not hindered from movement away from an irritating sound source, if detected, so are less likely to be subjected to accumulation periods that lead to the onset of hearing damage as indicated in these studies. In other cases, fish may eventually become habituated to the changes in their soundscape and adjust to the ambient and background noises.

All fish species can detect vessel noise due to its low-frequency content and their hearing capabilities. Because of the characteristics of vessel noise, sound produced from vessels is unlikely to result in direct injury, hearing impairment, or other trauma to Atlantic sturgeon. Plus, in the near field, fish are able to detect water motion as well as visually locate an oncoming vessel. In these cases, most fishes located in close proximity that detect the vessel either visually, via sound and motion in the water would be capable of avoiding the vessel or move away from the area affected by vessel sound. Thus, fish are more likely to react to vessel noise at close range than to vessel noise emanating from a greater distance away. These reactions may include physiological stress responses, or avoidance behaviors. Auditory masking due to vessel noise can potentially mask biologically important sounds that fish may rely on. However, impacts from vessel noise would be intermittent, temporary, and localized, and such responses would not be expected to compromise the general health or condition of individual fish from continuous exposures. Instead, the only impacts expected from exposure to project vessel noise for Atlantic sturgeon may include temporary auditory masking, physiological stress, or minor changes in behavior.

Therefore, similar to marine mammals and sea turtles, exposure to vessel noise for fishes could result in short-term behavioral or physiological responses (e.g., avoidance, stress). Vessel noise would only result in brief periods of exposure for fishes and would not be expected to accumulate to the levels that would lead to any injury, hearing impairment or long-term masking of biologically relevant cues. For these reasons, exposure to vessel noise is not expected to significantly disrupt normal behavior patterns of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area. Therefore, the effects of vessel noise on Atlantic sturgeon is considered insignificant (i.e., so minor that the effect cannot be meaningfully measured, detected or evaluated).

Operation of WTGs

As described above, many of the published measurements of underwater noise levels produced by operating WTGs range are from older geared WTGs and may not be representative of newer direct-drive WTGs, like those that will be installed for the SFWF. Elliot et al. (2019) reports underwater noise monitoring at the Block Island Wind Farm, which has direct-drive GE Haliade turbines. The loudest noise recorded was 126 dB re 1uPa at a distance of 50 m when wind speeds exceeded 56 kmh. Elliot et al. note that based on monitoring of underwater noise at the Block Island site, the noise levels identified in the vicinity of the turbine are far below any numerical criteria for adverse effects on fish. As underwater noise associated with the operation of the WTGs is below the thresholds for injury or behavioral disturbance for Atlantic sturgeon, we do not expect any impacts to any Atlantic sturgeon due to noise associated with the operating turbines.

HRG Surveys

Some of the equipment that is described by BOEM for use for surveys produces underwater noise that can be perceived by Atlantic sturgeon. This may include boomers, sparkers, and bubble guns. The maximum distance to the injury threshold is 9 m and the maximum distance to the 150 dB re 1uPa behavioral disturbance threshold is 1.9 km for the loudest equipment (sparker). Extensive information on HRG survey noise and potential effects of exposure to Atlantic sturgeon is provided in NMFS June 29, 2021 programmatic ESA consultation on certain geophysical and geotechnical survey activities. We summarize the relevant conclusions here.

As explained above, the available information suggests that for noise exposure to result in physiological impacts to the fish species considered here, received levels need to be at least 206 dB re: 1uPa peak sound pressure level (SPLpeak) or at least 187 dB re: u1Pa cumulative. The peak thresholds are exceeded only very close to the noise source (<3.2 m for the boomers/bubble guns and <9 m for the sparkers (see Table 7.1.7); the cumulative threshold is not exceeded at any distance. As such, in order to be exposed to peak sound pressure levels of 206 dB re: 1uPa from any of these sources, an individual fish would need to be within 9 m of the source. This is extremely unlikely to occur given the dispersed nature of the distribution of ESA-listed fish in the action area, the use of a ramp up procedure, the moving and intermittent/pulsed characteristic of the noise source, and the expectation that ESA-listed fish will swim away, rather than towards the noise source. Based on this, no physical effects to any Atlantic sturgeon, including injury or mortality, are expected to result from exposure to noise from the geophysical surveys.

The calculated distances to the 150 dB re: 1 uPa rms threshold for the boomers/bubble guns, sparkers, and sub-bottom profilers is 708 m, 1,996 m, and 32 m, respectively (Table 7.1.7). It is important to note that these distances are calculated using the highest power levels for each sound source reported in Crocker and Fratantonio (2016); thus, they likely overestimate actual sound fields.

Because the area where increased underwater noise will be experienced is transient (because the survey vessel towing the equipment is moving), increased underwater noise will only be experienced in a particular area for a short period of time. Given the transient and temporary nature of the increased noise, we expect any effects to behavior to be minor and limited to a temporary disruption of normal behaviors, potential temporary avoidance of the ensonified area and minor additional energy expenditure spent while swimming away from the noisy area. If foraging, resting, or migrations are disrupted, we expect that these behaviors will quickly resume once the survey vessel has left the area (i.e., in seconds to minutes, given its traveling speed of 3 – 4.5 knots). Therefore, no fish will be displaced from a particular area for more than a few minutes. While the movements of individual fish will be affected by the sound associated with the survey, these effects will be temporary and localized and these fish are not expected to be excluded from any particular area and there will be only a minimal impact on foraging, migrating, or resting behaviors. Sustained shifts in habitat use or distribution or foraging success are not expected. Effects to individual fish from brief exposure to potentially disturbing levels of noise are expected to be limited to a brief startle or short displacement and will be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated; therefore, effects of exposure to survey noise are insignificant.

7.2 Effects of Project Vessels

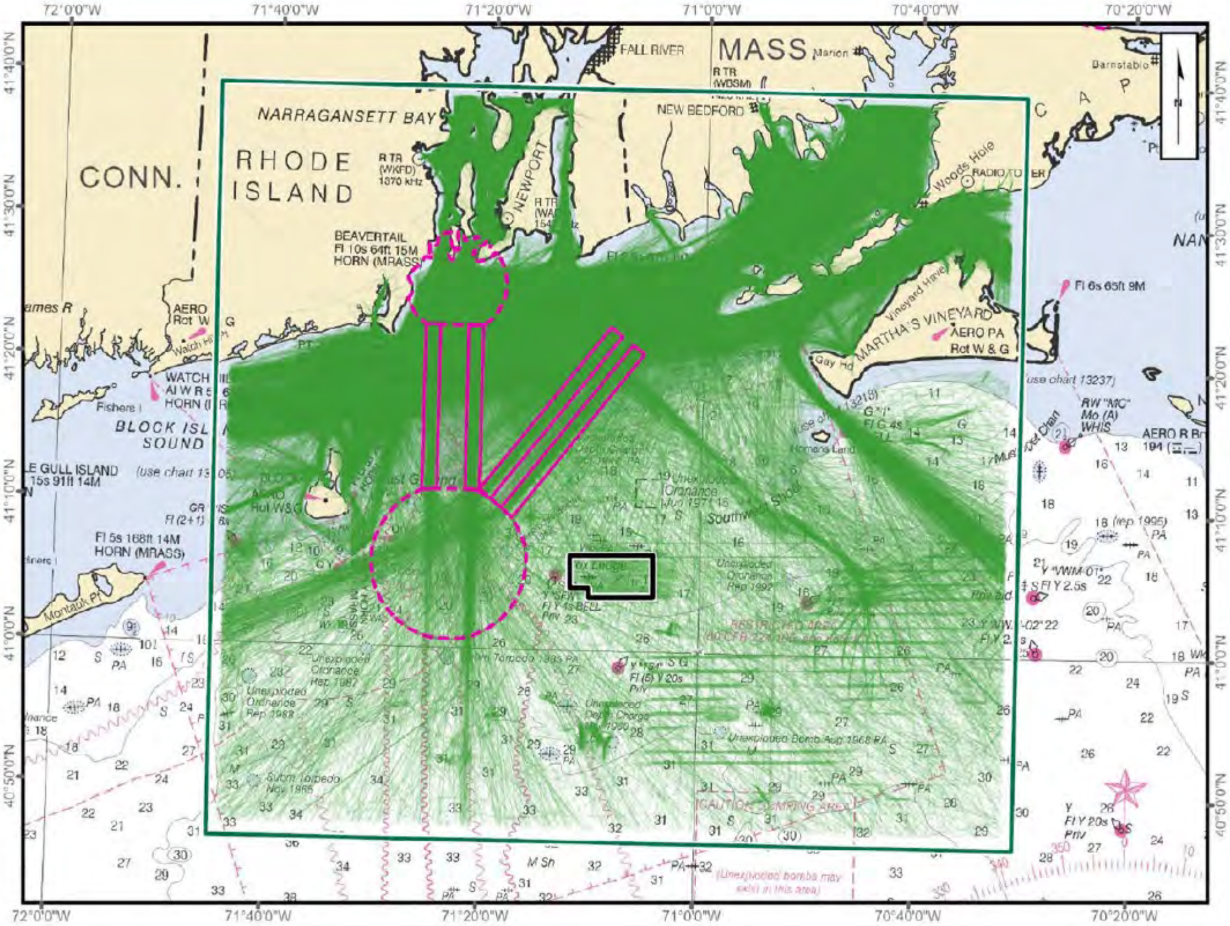
In this section we consider the effects of the operation of project vessels on listed species in the action area, by describing the existing vessel traffic in the action area, estimating the anticipated increase in vessel traffic associated with construction, operations, and decommissioning of the project, and then analyzing risk and determining likely effects to sea turtles, listed whales, and Atlantic sturgeon. We also consider impacts to air quality from vessel emissions. Section 3 of the Opinion describes proposed vessel usage over all phases of the project, and is not repeated here. Effects of vessel noise were considered in section 7.1, above, and are not repeated here. Project vessels will operate in three areas over the life of the project: 1) in and around the lease area and cable corridor and to/from relatively nearby ports in MA, RI, CT, and NY (Montauk and Shinnecock); 2) between the lease area and foreign ports in Canada and Europe; and, 3) between the lease area and ports in NJ, MD, VA, and the Gulf of Mexico requiring vessel transits south of Montauk, Long Island.

7.2.1 Existing Vessel Traffic in the Action Area

Vessel Traffic in the Lease Area and Nearby Ports in MA, RI, CT, NY

Information from a number of sources including the FEIS, Navigational Safety Risk Assessment (NSRA) prepared to support the COP, and the USCG's Massachusetts and Rhode Island Port Access Route Study (MARIPARS) helps to establish the baseline vessel traffic in the WDA and surrounding area. USCG's MARIPARS analyzed Automatic Identification System (AIS) data in the eight BOEM OCS lease areas in the Rhode Island and Massachusetts region and found 13,000 to 46,900 annual vessel transits through the study area. The study concluded that vessel activity in the study area was largely commercial fishing. Fishing vessels primarily originated from several ports in Rhode Island, Massachusetts, or New York and transited the study area to reach fishing ground and other areas southeast of the study area. The SFWF overlaps Cox Ledge and is located 3.5 NM east of the Precautionary Area for the Narragansett Bay and Buzzards Bay Traffic Separation Schemes (TSS), the SFEC passes through the Precautionary Area and runs along the southern shore of Long Island until making landfall. The SFWF and SFEC are within the Narragansett Bay Special Operating Area (OPAREA) Complex boundary, within which national defense training exercises are routinely conducted. The SFWF overlaps part of the Block Island Seasonal Management Area which requires all vessels 65 ft. or longer to travel at 10 knots or less seasonally (November 1 – April 30) to reduce the threat of vessel collisions with North Atlantic right whales.

Figure 7.2.1. AIS vessel tracks in the Study Area from July 1, 2018 – June 30, 2019. Green lines represent vessel tracks, black outline represents OCS-0517 lease area, pink lines represent shipping lanes, blue outline represents study area. Source: SFW COP 2020



Section 2 of the NSRA characterizes the baseline vessel traffic within an approximately 60 NM x 60 NM study area (Figure 7.2.1), which includes the SFWF and surrounding area, according to identified vessel types, their characteristics, operating areas/routes, separation zones, traffic density, and seasonal traffic variability using AIS data for one year (July 1, 2018 - June 30 2019), stakeholder outreach, 2016 Vessel Monitoring System data, Vessel Trip Report data, the MARIPARS, and marine transportation/traffic Nationwide Automatic Identification System data. It should be noted that there are carriage requirements associated with AIS (self-propelled vessels of more than 1,600 gross tons with certain exceptions made for foreign vessels), thus certain vessel classes may be underestimated (i.e. fishing vessels, recreational vessels). Based on AIS data (vessel transits), the vessels operating within the study area most frequently in order of magnitude are pleasure vessels such as recreational vessels, charter fishing vessels, and sailboats, fishing vessels, tug/service vessels, other/unidentified vessels, passenger vessels, cargo vessels, and tankers. The SFEC is mostly trafficked by pleasure craft, passenger ferries, high-speed craft, and commercial fishing vessels, in order of frequency. The SFWF and SFEC receive increased vessel traffic during the summer months. Commercial fishing vessels that were equipped with AIS transited the SFWF, primarily traveling in a north to south direction; some vessels also actively fish in the WDA. Tankers cargo vessels, and tug and towing vessels generally travel in the TSSs to the north and west of the Lease Area. These vessels can approach or exit the Narragansett Bay TSS in a northwest–southeast orientation leading some to transit through the SFWF. Vessel traffic in the vicinity of the portion of the SFEC along Long Island, NY is primarily transited by tugs, towing vessels, fishing vessels, and recreational vessels. Much of the vessel traffic that transits the SFEC through the north-south Narragansett Bay TSS are cargo vessels and tankers.

Vessel Traffic between the Lease Area and Foreign Ports (Canada and Europe)
Vessel traffic between southern New England and the ports in Canada mainly consists of fishing vessels, tankers, container ships, and passenger vessels, and exhibits similar seasonal increases in vessel traffic to the Project Area. Trans-Atlantic vessel traffic mainly consists of tankers, container ships, and passenger vessels. Commercial vessel traffic typically travels along the Nantucket to Ambrose Traffic Separation Scheme if going into ports in southern New England or New York or New Jersey.

Vessel Traffic between the Lease Area and Ports to the South (including Gulf of Mexico)
Vessel traffic between southern New England and ports along the Mid-Atlantic and the Gulf of Mexico mainly consists of tug and barge, fishing vessels, tankers, container ships, and passenger vessels, military vessels also transit the area conducting training and operations. Vessels typically travel offshore before entering a traffic separation scheme heading into port. Traffic generally travels in a north to south or south to north direction. Throughout the Mid-Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico, commercial vessel traffic is significant throughout the year with a number of major U.S. ports located along the coast. These ports include ones in the Chesapeake Bay/Norfolk, VA and the Delaware Bay. Vessel traffic is heaviest in the nearshore waters, near major ports, in the shipping lanes. Recreational vessel traffic is high throughout these areas but is generally close to shore compared to commercial vessel travel.

7.2.2 Project Vessel Descriptions and Increase in Vessel Traffic from Proposed Project

Descriptions of project vessel use and traffic are described in Section 3 of this Opinion and summarized here for reference.

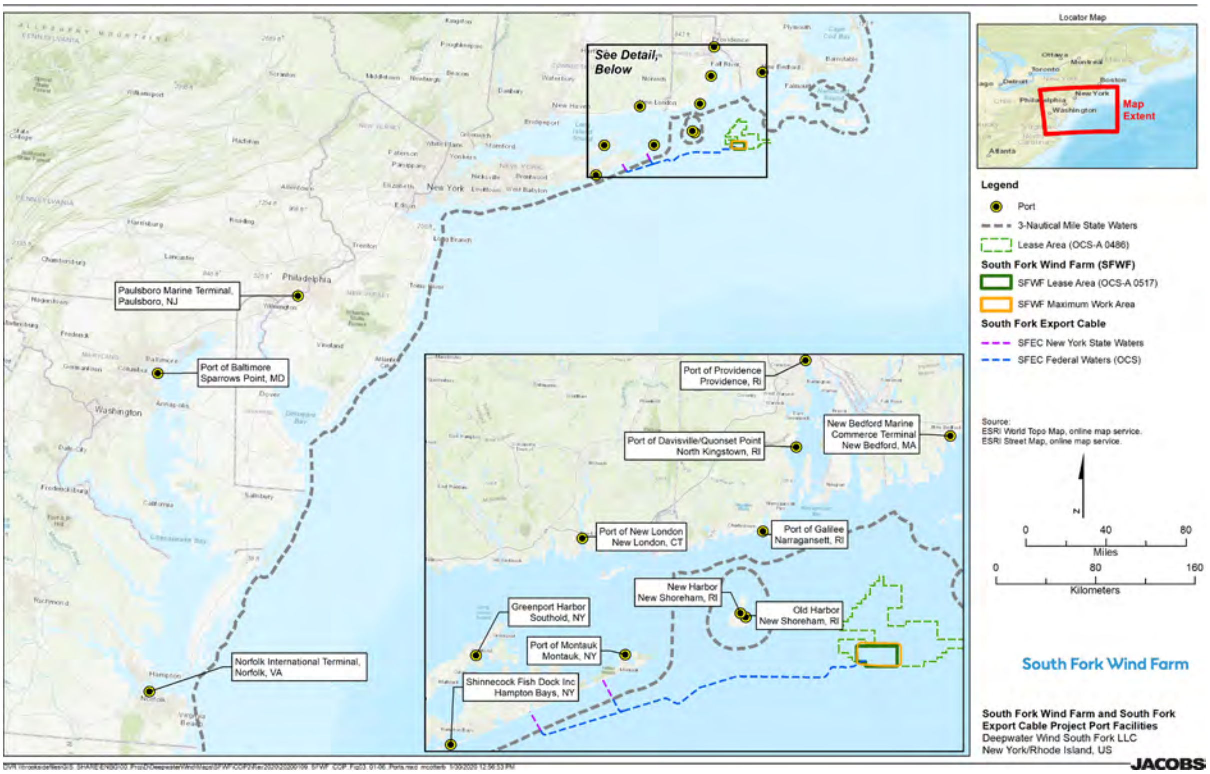
Vessel traffic will be highest during the construction phase of the proposed SFWF and SFEC. Vessel traffic will occur at the SFWF, along the SFEC, and along routes between the SFWF and SFEC and the ports used to support Project construction. Vessel traffic is expected to be highest between regional ports in southern New England and New York (Montauk, New York;

Providence, Rhode Island; New Kingstown, Rhode Island; New Bedford, Massachusetts; New London, Connecticut) and the SFWF lease site during construction. In addition, the following ports may be used as a base for crew transfers, cargo logistics or storage: New Bedford, Massachusetts; New London, Connecticut; Montauk, New York; Hampton Bay, New York; Greenport, New York; New Kingstown, Rhode Island; New Shoreham, Rhode Island; and/or Point Judith, Rhode Island (Figure 7.2.2). The amount of time vessels will transit back and forth to the SFWF and how long they will remain on station is greatly dependent on final design factors, weather, sea conditions, and other natural factors.

Construction of the SFEC will require various vessel types including a DP cable-laying vessel, tugs, barges, and work and transport vessels. Cable installation will begin at the offshore site of the sea-to-shore transition point and proceed to the SFWF OSS. Project components may be transported by vessels from foreign ports in Europe and Canada and the following U.S. ports: Paulsboro Marine Terminal (NJ), Port of Baltimore (MD), Sparrows Point (MD), Norfolk International Terminal (VA), other ports in the Gulf of Mexico (Figure 7.2.2).

The construction phase will feature project-specific construction vessels, which are generally slower moving (<10 knots) installation and transport vessels that range from 325 to 350 feet in length, from 60 to 100 feet in beam, and draft from 16 to 20 feet, as well as smaller and faster moving support vessels. The larger installation vessels, like the floating/jack-up crane and cable-laying vessel, will generally travel to and out of the construction area at the beginning and end of the SFWF construction and not make transits on a regular basis. Many of these larger, Project-specific vessels do not currently exist in the U.S. and will travel from ports in Europe. Tugs and barges transporting construction equipment and materials will make more frequent trips (e.g., weekly) from ports to the project site while smaller support vessels carrying supplies and crew may travel to the SFWF daily. However, we note that construction crews responsible for assembling the WTGs will hotel onboard installation vessels at sea thus limiting the number of crew vessel transits expected during SFWF installation.

Figure 7.2.2. Anticipated ports that may be utilized during construction, operations, and decommissioning of South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable. Note, does not include potential ports in the Gulf of Mexico, Canada, or Europe. Source: SFW COP 2020



Project construction would require an estimated 311 one-way vessel trips (approximately 156 round trips) between construction sites and area ports in Rhode Island or Connecticut, and 66 additional one-way trips from other ports (regional U.S. ports, foreign ports) (Figure 7.2.2). Construction vessels would account for an estimated 153 of these one-way trips, with the remainder comprising CTVs and other small support vessels.

As described in the BA (BOEM 2021), BOEM developed a representative analysis of construction vessel effects on regional traffic volume by evaluating the potential increase in transits across a set of analysis cross sections relative to baseline levels of vessel traffic. These cross sections are shown in Figure 7.2.3.

BOEM assumed that the construction vessel trip estimates summarized above would be evenly divided between cross sections 13, 17, and 20 when leaving the SFWF and SFEC construction areas (cross section 20 is under the scale bar), and all vessels traveling to Rhode Island ports would travel through cross section 5. Applying this assumption, construction vessel activity would result in 51 additional vessel transits through cross section 13 per year (relative to 31 baseline transits), 51 additional vessel trips through cross section 17 (relative to 60 baseline transits), and 51 additional vessel trips through cross section 20 (relative to 51 baseline transits). Once in the shipping lanes, construction vessel traffic would modestly increase annual vessel traffic by 155 trips (relative to 1,296 baseline transits). These estimates are not fully representative, however, as they do not consider all vessel traffic (e.g. vessels without AIS). Project decommissioning would be expected to require similar number vessel transits, similar vessel types, and magnitude of vessels.

As described in the BA, during SFWF O&M, vessel traffic will be limited to routine maintenance visits and non-routine maintenance, as needed, primarily between the Montauk operations and maintenance facility and the Shinnecock Fish Dock and the SFWF. Limited crew and supply runs using crew transfer vessels (CTVs) will be required. Depending on the maintenance activity, larger vessels may be needed; however, very limited vessel usage is expected to be necessary to support operations and maintenance of the SFEC. BOEM indicates that expected vessel traffic is limited to survey vessels and crew transfer vessels tasked with investigating any reported problems.

Additional ports may be required for some maintenance activities, these include ports in Europe, and the Paulsboro Marine Terminal (NJ), Port of Baltimore (MD), Sparrows Point (MD), Norfolk International Terminal (VA), and ports in the Gulf of Mexico. During the 25 year operational phase, it is expected there will be 2,500 vessel trips between the Montauk O&M facility and the SFWF, 50 vessel trips between New London, CT and the SFWF, and 30 trips from Europe to the SFWF (BOEM 2021). The majority of operations and maintenance vessel trips would be conducted by the CTVs, with larger vessels making less frequent trips (an average of four round trips annually) to repair scour protection or replace damaged WTGs on an as needed basis. Additionally, there will be limited vessel traffic that will be associated with the marine resource survey and monitoring activities (fisheries surveys, benthic monitoring) that will occur pre, during, and post-construction, for a period up to six years.

Figure 7.2.3. AIS vessel traffic tracks for June 2016 to July 2017 and analysis cross sections used for traffic pattern analysis.

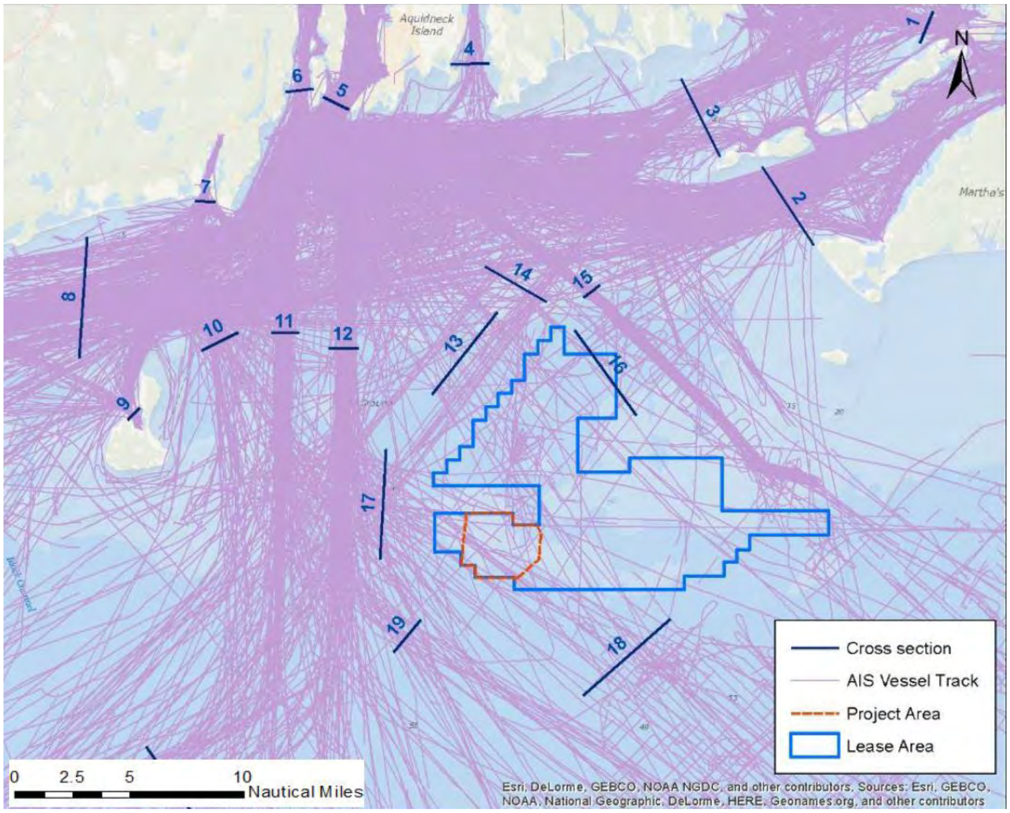


Table 7.2.1. Percent Increase Above Baseline Vessel Traffic in the Project Area Due to South Fork Wind Project Vessels

Phase	Annual Project-Related Vessel Transits	Phase Duration	% Increase in Annual Vessel Transits in the Project Area[d]
Construction	423 [a]	2 years	+ 0.90%
Operation	178 [b]	25 years	+ 0.38%
Decommissioning	339 [c]	2 years	+0.72 %

[a] Source: BOEM BA 2021, pg. 101, plus fisheries surveys vessel transits

[b] Source: South Fork FEIS, pg. 3-76, plus fisheries surveys vessel transits

[c] Source: Decommissioning vessel transits were based on 90% of the 377 vessel transits during construction (not accounting for fisheries surveys as surveys will not occur then)

[d] Source: Baseline vessel traffic in the Project Area is based off 46,900 transits (USCG 2020)

7.2.3 Minimization and Monitoring Measures for Vessel Operations

There are a number of measures that South Fork Wind is proposing to take and/or BOEM is proposing to require as conditions of COP approval that are designed to avoid, minimize, or monitor effects of the action on ESA-listed species during construction, operation, and decommissioning of the project. The IHA to be issued by NMFS also contains requirements for vessel strike avoidance measures for marine mammals; these measures will be implemented only during the construction phase when the IHA is active (1 year from when first valid). The complete list of required measures is provided in section 3.0 (Table 3.3.1). These measures can be grouped into three main categories: vessel speed reductions, animal avoidance, and dedicated lookouts. Specific measures related to vessel speed reduction include that vessels of all sizes will operate at 10 knots or less between November 1 and April 30 in the Block Island SMA and at all times of the year vessels of all sizes will operate at 10 knots or less in any DMA/visually triggered Slow Zone. Additionally, at all times of the year regardless of vessel size, visual observers must monitor a vessel strike avoidance zone and if an animal is spotted the vessel must slow down and take action to transit safely around the animal. Additional requirements for monitoring transit zones with PAM systems are in place for the construction period. These measures are all considered part of the proposed action or are otherwise required by regulation.

7.2.4 Assessment of Risk of Vessel Strike – Construction, Operations and Maintenance, and Decommissioning

Here, we consider the risk of vessel strike to ESA-listed species. This assessment incorporates the strike avoidance measures identified above because they are considered part of the proposed action or are otherwise required by regulation. This analysis is organized by species group (i.e., Atlantic sturgeon, whales, and sea turtles) because the risk factors and effectiveness of strike avoidance measures are different for the different species groups. Within the species groups, the effects analysis is organized around the different geographic areas where project related vessel traffic will be experienced.

7.2.4.1 Atlantic Sturgeon

The distribution of Atlantic sturgeon does not overlap with the entirety of the action area. The marine range of Atlantic sturgeon extends from Hamilton Inlet, Labrador, Canada, to Cape Canaveral, Florida with distribution largely from shore to the 50m depth contour (ASMFC 2006; Stein et al. 2004). Atlantic sturgeon only occur along a portion of the vessel routes described above and are absent from a majority of vessel routes from the Gulf of Mexico, Canada, and Europe given the deep-water offshore routes that will be transited by these vessels. Atlantic sturgeon may occur in nearshore waters (depths less than 50 m) and rivers and bays that may be transited by Project vessels, including the project site (lease area and cable corridors). Additionally, Atlantic sturgeon occur along the vessel transit routes used by vessels transiting Delaware Bay (Paulsboro Marine Terminal, New Jersey) and the Chesapeake Bay (Port of Baltimore and Sparrows Point, Maryland and Norfolk International Terminal, Virginia).

Lease Area Transits from Nearby Ports in MA, RI, CT, NY
While Atlantic sturgeon are known to be struck and killed by vessels in rivers and in estuaries adjacent to spawning rivers (i.e., Delaware Bay), we have no reports of vessel strikes in the marine environment. We have considered whether Atlantic sturgeon are likely to be struck by project vessels or if the increase in vessel traffic is likely to otherwise increase the risk of strike for Atlantic sturgeon in the WDA and during transits to and from nearby ports in MA, RI, CT, NY. As established elsewhere in this Opinion, Atlantic sturgeon use of the area near the SFWF lease area is intermittent and disperse; there are no aggregation areas in the area between the WDA and the identified ports in MA, RI, CT, and NY. Additionally, these transit routes are not adjacent to, or within, any spawning rivers, which would increase the number and concentration of migrating Atlantic sturgeon. The disperse nature of Atlantic sturgeon in this area means that the potential for co-occurrence between a project vessel and an Atlantic sturgeon in time and space is extremely low.

In order to be struck by a vessel, an Atlantic sturgeon needs to co-occur with the vessel hull or propeller in the water column. Given the depths in the vast majority of the this area (with the exception of near shore areas where vessels will dock) and that sturgeon typically occur at or near the bottom while in the marine environment, the potential for co-occurrence of a vessel and a sturgeon in the water column is extremely low even if a sturgeon and vessel co-occurred generally. The areas to be transited by the project vessels are free flowing with no obstructions; therefore, even in the event that a sturgeon was up in the water column such that it could be vulnerable to strike, there is ample room for a sturgeon swim deeper to avoid a vessel or to swim away from it which further reduces the potential for strike. None of the identified nearshore port areas where vessels will enter shallower water and dock are known to be used by Atlantic sturgeon; as such, co-occurrence between any Atlantic sturgeon and any project vessels in areas with shallow water or constricted waterways where the risk of vessel strike is theoretically higher, is extremely unlikely to occur.

We have also considered whether avoiding these project vessels increases the risk of being struck by non-project vessels operating in the lease area and along routes to nearby ports. In order for this to occur, another vessel would have to be close enough to the project vessel such that the animal’s evasive movements made it such that it was less likely to avoid the nearby vessel. Given common navigational safety practices (i.e., not traveling too close to other vessels to minimize the risk of collisions), it is extremely unlikely that another vessel would be close enough such that a sturgeon avoiding a project vessel would not be able to avoid another non-project vessel or that the risk of being struck by another non-project vessel would otherwise increase. Considering this analysis, it is extremely unlikely that any project vessels operating in the South Fork lease area, along the SFEC corridor, or between these areas and the identified ports in MA, RI, CT, or NY will strike an Atlantic sturgeon during any phase of the proposed project.

Trips from Canada and Europe

Here we consider the potential for Atlantic sturgeon to be struck by vessels operating outside of the area illustrated in figure 7.2 above. We expect that vessels transiting between ports in Nova Scotia, Canada and the lease area as well as ports in western Europe and the lease area will transit in offshore waters of the Atlantic Ocean and then, when approaching the project, will enter the Nantucket to Ambrose TSS. Given the deep water depths in this portion of the action area and that Atlantic sturgeon are extremely rare in waters deeper than 50 m, it is extremely unlikely that Atlantic sturgeon will occur in this portion of the action area. As such, any effects to Atlantic sturgeon from vessels operating in this portion of the action are extremely unlikely to occur.

Effects of Vessel Transits South of the Project Area

South Fork Wind only expects up to four vessel trips to ports south of Montauk (i.e., Paulsboro Marine Terminal, Baltimore, Sparrows Point, Norfolk, ports in western Gulf of Mexico) during the construction phase and 30 trips during the entire operational phase (average of one trip per year over the 25-year operational period of the project). Vessels traveling south along the Atlantic coast will transit past a number of Atlantic sturgeon aggregation areas or “hot spots” however, these vessels will be transiting in deeper, more offshore waters and not actually pass through any of these areas. As such, the risk to Atlantic sturgeon from the oceanic portions of these trips is the same as identified for the marine environment above; that is, it is extremely unlikely that any Atlantic sturgeon will be struck by project vessels operating in this part of the action area.

Vessels traveling to Paulsboro will transit through Delaware Bay and a portion of the Delaware River. It is also possible that vessels transiting to Baltimore, Sparrows Point, or Norfolk could also transit through Delaware Bay to the Chesapeake and Delaware (C&D) canal. From the canal, these vessels would transit through the upper Chesapeake Bay to the Sparrows Point facility, located near the mouth of the Patapsco River, or go on to the Port of Baltimore, which is also along the Patapsco River. Vessels traveling to or from the Port of Norfolk would travel from the lower Chesapeake Bay to the Port of Norfolk along the Elizabeth River. Atlantic sturgeon do not occur in the Gulf of Mexico, therefore there is no potential for effects of vessel operations in the Gulf of Mexico on Atlantic sturgeon.

As evidenced by reports and collections of Atlantic sturgeon with injuries consistent with vessel strike (NMFS unpublished data[32]), this species is struck and killed by vessels in the Delaware River. Brown and Murphy (2010) reported that from 2005-2008, 28 Atlantic sturgeon carcasses were collected in the Delaware River; approximately 50% showed signs of vessel interactions.

---

[32] The unpublished data are reports received by NMFS and recorded as part of the sturgeon salvage program authorized under ESA permit 17273.

Delaware Division of Fish and Wildlife has been recording information on suspected vessel strikes since 2005. From May 2005 – March 2016, they recorded a total of 164 carcasses, 44 of which were presumed to have a cause of death attributable to vessel interaction. Estimates indicate that up to 25 Atlantic sturgeon may be struck and killed in the Delaware River annually (Fox, unpublished 2016). DiJohnson (2019) estimates that approximately 400 Atlantic sturgeon have been killed by vessel strikes in the Delaware River from 2005 – 2019, resulting in an average annual mortality of approximately 27 individuals. Several major ports are present along the Delaware River. In 2014, there were 42,398 one-way trips reported for commercial vessels in the Delaware River Federal navigation channel (USACE 2014). In 2020, 2,195 cargo ships visited Delaware River ports[33]. Neither of these numbers include any recreational or other non-commercial vessels, ferries, tug boats assisting other larger vessels or any Department of Defense vessels (i.e., Navy, USCG, etc.). If we assume that any increase in vessel traffic in the Delaware River would increase the risk of vessel strike to Atlantic sturgeon, then we could also assume that this would result in a corresponding increase in the number of sturgeon struck and killed in the Delaware River. Considering only the number of commercial one way trips in a representative year (42,398), an increase of four vessels transiting during construction phase and one vessel during the operational phase in the Delaware River represents an approximately 0.009% (assuming all four trips occur in a single year of construction) and 0.002% increase in vessel traffic in the Delaware River navigation channel in a particular year during the construction and operational phases respectively, of the Project. The actual percent increase in vessel traffic is likely even less considering that commercial traffic is only a portion of the vessel traffic in the river. Even in a worst-case scenario that assumes that all 25 Atlantic sturgeon (DiJohnson 2019) struck and killed in the Delaware River in an average year occurred in the portion of the Delaware River that will be transited by the project vessels transiting from the Paulsboro Terminal, and that any increase in vessel traffic results in a proportionate increase in vessel strikes, this increase in vessel traffic would result in a hypothetical additional 0.0023 Atlantic sturgeon struck and killed in the Delaware River in a given year. Given this very small increase in traffic and the similar very small potential increase in risk of strike and a calculated potential increase in the number of strikes that is very close to zero (despite likely being an overestimate) we conclude that any increase in the number of sturgeon struck in this reach because of the increase in traffic resulting from the South Fork project operating in the Delaware River or Delaware Bay is extremely unlikely. Therefore, effects of this increase in traffic are extremely unlikely. In addition, given the very small increase in risk and the calculated increase in strikes is close to zero, the effect of adding the survey vessels to the baseline cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated; therefore, effects are also insignificant.

Project vessels may also transit the C&D canal to ports along the Patapsco River and the lower Chesapeake Bay to the Port of Norfolk at the mouth of the Elizabeth River. The risk of vessel strike in these areas is considered to be lower than in the Delaware River; thus, any prediction of vessel strike for the Delaware River can be considered a conservative estimate of vessel strike risk in other areas. It is important to note that the four trips anticipated to these ports during the construction phase and the one trip anticipated during the operational phase are comprehensive of all ports – that is, during the construction phase, BOEM anticipates four trips total to one or more of these ports (e.g., four trips to Paulsboro or one trip to Paulsboro and three trips to Norfolk). Based on this analysis, effects of this increase in traffic are extremely unlikely. In addition, given the very small increase in risk and the calculated increase in strikes is close to

---

[33] *https://ajot.com/news/maritime-exchange-reports-2020-ship-arrivals*; last accessed March 24, 2021

zero, the effect of adding the survey vessels to the baseline cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated; therefore, effects are also insignificant.

7.2.4.2 ESA-Listed Whales

Background Information on the Risk of Vessel Strike to ESA-Listed Whales
Vessel strikes of large whales from all sizes of commercial, recreational, and military vessels have resulted in serious injury and fatalities to the ESA listed whales that occur in the action area (Lammers et al. 2003, Douglas et al. 2008, Laggner 2009, Berman-Kowalewski et al. 2010, Calambokidis 2012). Records of collisions date back to the early 17th century, and the worldwide number of collisions appears to have increased steadily during recent decades (Laist et al. 2001, Ritter 2012).

The most vulnerable marine mammals are those that spend extended periods of time at the surface feeding or in order to restore oxygen levels within their tissues after deep dives. Baleen whales, such as the North Atlantic right whale, seem generally unresponsive to vessel sound, making them more susceptible to vessel collisions (Nowacek et al. 2004). In an effort to reduce the likelihood and severity of fatal collisions with right whales, NMFS established vessel speed restrictions in specific locations, primarily at key port entrances, and during certain times of the year, these areas are referred to as Seasonal Management Areas (SMA). A 10-knot speed restriction applies to vessels 65 feet and greater in length operating within any SMA (73 FR 60173, October 10, 2008).

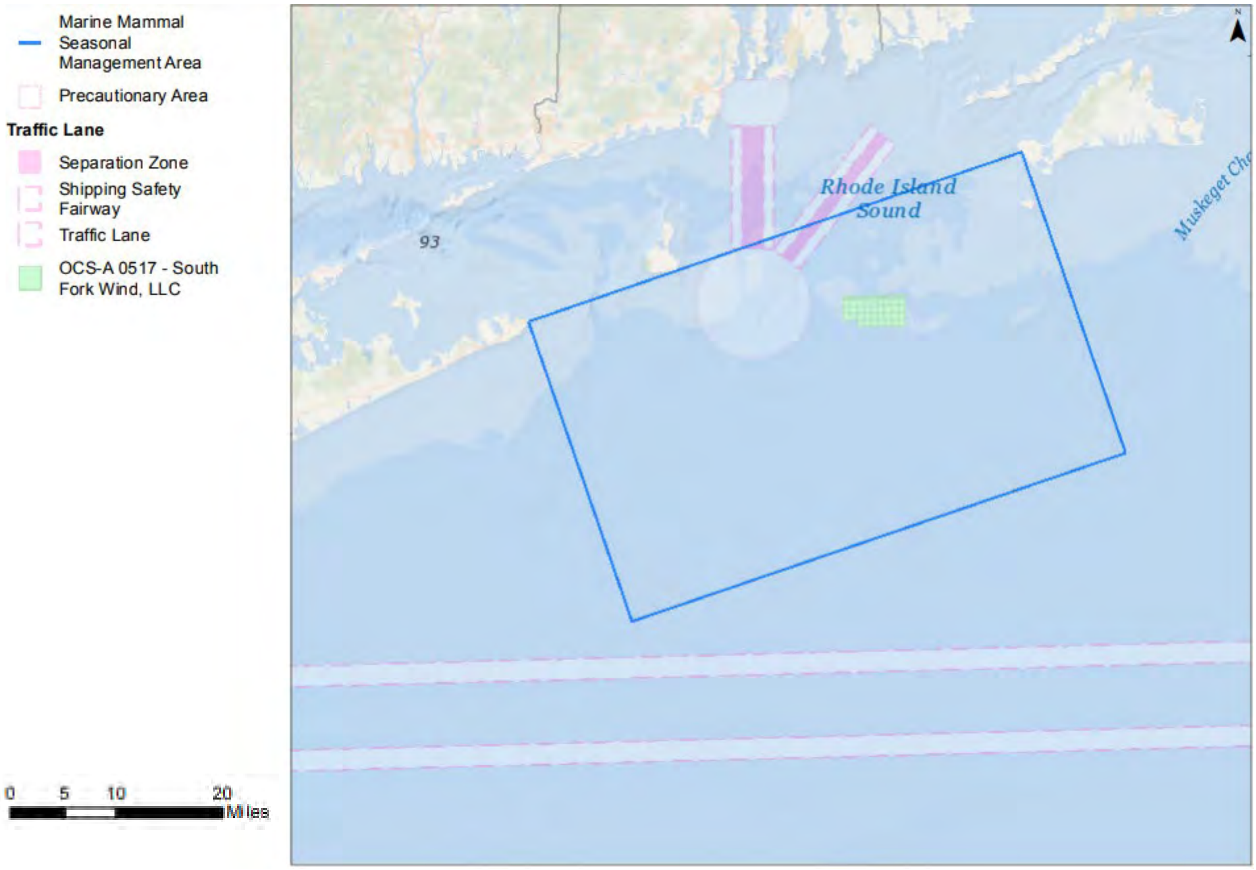
In the same regulations, NMFS also established a DMA program whereby vessels are requested, but not required, to either travel at 10 knots or less or route around locations when certain aggregations of right whales are detected outside SMAs. These temporary protection zones are triggered when three or more whales are visually sighted within 2-3 miles of each other outside of active SMAs. The size of a DMA is larger if more whales are present. A DMA is a rectangular area centered over whale sighting locations and encompasses a 15-nautical mile buffer surrounding the sightings’ core area to accommodate the whales’ movements over the DMA’s 15-day lifespan. The DMA lifespan is extended if three or more whales are sighted within 2-3 miles of each other within its bounds during the second week the DMA is active. Only verified sightings are used to trigger or extend DMAs; however DMAs can be triggered by a variety of sources, including dedicated surveys, or reports from mariners. Acoustically triggered Slow Zones were implemented in 2020 to complement the visually triggered DMAs. The protocol for the current acoustic platforms that are implemented in the Slow Zone program specify that 3 upcalls must be detected (and verified by an analyst) to consider right whales as “present” or “detected” during a specific time period. Acknowledging that visual data and acoustic data differ, experts from NMFS’ right whale Northeast Implementation Team, including NEFSC and Woods Hole Oceanographic Institute staff, developed criteria for accepting detection information from acoustic platforms. To indicate right whale presence acoustically (and be used for triggering notifications), the system must meet the following criteria: (1) evaluation has been published in the peer-reviewed literature, (2) false detection rate is 10% or lower over daily time scales and (3) missed detection rate is 50% or lower over daily time scales. For consistency, acoustically triggered Slow Zones are active for 15 days when right whales are detected and can be extended with additional detections. However, acoustic areas are established by rectangular areas encompassing a circle with a radius of 20 nautical miles around the location of the passive acoustic monitoring system.

In an analytical assessment of when the vessel restrictions were and were not in effect, Conn and Silber (2013) estimated that the speed restrictions required by the ship strike rule reduced total ship strike mortality by 80 to 90%. In 2020, NMFS published a report evaluating the conservation value and economic and navigational safety impacts of the 2008 North Atlantic right whale vessel speed regulations. The report found that the level of mariner compliance with the speed rule increased to its highest level (81%) during 2018-2019. In most SMAs more than 85% of vessels subject to the rule maintained speeds under 10 knots, but in some portions of SMAs mariner compliance is low, with rates below 25% for the largest commercial vessels outside four ports in the southeast. Evaluations of vessel traffic in active SMAs revealed a reduction in vessel speeds over time, even during periods when SMAs were inactive. An assessment of the voluntary DMA program found limited mariner cooperation that fell well short of levels reached in mandatory SMAs. The report examined AIS-equipped vessel traffic (<65 ft. in length, not subject to the rule) in SMAs, in the four New England SMAs, more than 83% of all <65 ft. vessel traffic transited at 10 knots or less, while in the New York, Delaware Bay, and Chesapeake SMAs, less than 50% of transit distance was below 10 knots. The southern SMAs were more mixed with 55-74% of <65 ft. vessel transit distance at speeds under 10 knots (NMFS 2020). The majority of AIS-equipped <65 ft. vessel traffic in active SMAs came from four vessel types; pleasure, sailing, pilot and fishing vessels (NMFS 2020).

The South Fork Wind action area overlaps with all SMAs (when in effect), however, the Block Island SMA, which is in effect from November 1 - April 30 each year, overlaps with a portion of the South Fork Wind Lease block (MA Lease OCS-A 0517) (Figure 7.2.4). Additionally, DMAs and acoustically triggered Slow Zones have been established in response to aggregations of right whales in the waters of southern New England, and may overlap parts of the Project area throughout the year. Historically, many of these DMAs and Slow Zones have been to the south and east of the lease area.

Many studies have been conducted analyzing the impact of vessel strikes on whales; these studies suggest that a greater rate of mortality and serious injury to large whales from vessel strikes correlates with greater vessel speed at the time of a ship strike (Laist et al. 2001, Vanderlaan and Taggart 2007 as cited in (Aerts and Richardson 2008)). Vessels transiting at speeds >10 knots present the greatest potential hazard of collisions (Jensen and Silber 2004, Silber et al. 2009). Vanderlann and Taggart (2007) demonstrated that between vessel speeds of 8.6 and 15 knots, the probability that a vessel strike is lethal increases from 21% to 79%. In assessing records with known vessel speeds, Laist et al. (2001) found a direct relationship between the occurrence of a whale strike and the speed of the vessel involved in the collision. The authors concluded that most deaths occurred when a vessel was traveling in excess of 24.1 km/h (14.9 mph; 13 knots (kn)). Large whales also do not have to be at the water's surface to be struck. In a study that used scale models of a container ship and a right whale in experimental flow tanks designed to characterize the hydrodynamic effects near a moving hull that may cause a whale to be drawn to or repelled from the hull, Silber et al. (2010) found when a whale is below the surface (about one to two times the vessel draft), there is likely to be a pronounced propeller suction effect. This modeling suggests that in certain circumstances, particularly with large, fast moving ships and whales submerged near the ship, this suction effect may draw the whale closer to the propeller, increasing the probability of propeller strikes. Additionally, Kelley et al (2020) found that collisions that create stresses in excess of 0.241 megapascals were likely to cause lethal injuries to large whales and through biophysical modeling that vessels of all sizes can yield stresses higher than this critical level. Growing evidence shows that vessel speed, rather than size, is the greater determining factor in the severity of vessel strikes on large whales.

Figure 7.2.4. Traffic Separation Schemes (TSSs), Season Management Areas (SMAs), South Fork lease area (OCS-A 0517) in the Project Area in southern New England



Source: Northeast Ocean Data

7.2.4.2.1 Exposure Analysis – ESA-Listed Whales

We consider vessel strike of ESA-listed whales in the context of specific project phases because the characteristics and volume of vessel traffic is distinctly different during the three phases of the project. The majority of vessel traffic during construction, operation, and decommissioning phases will occur in varying frequencies in the nearshore and offshore waters of the Project area in southern New England. Vessels trips from other U.S. ports, Canada, and Europe will occur primarily during the construction phase in low numbers (estimated at 6 trips from Europe, 2 from Canada and 4 from other U.S. ports in NJ, MD, VA or the Gulf of Mexico over the 2 year construction period) with a limited number of additional trips during the operations phase (estimated at 30 trips from Europe, 1 from Canada, and 30 from other U.S. ports in NJ, MD, VA or the Gulf of Mexico over the 25 year operational life of the project).

For our risk assessment, we carried out a four step process. First, we used the best available information to establish the number of right, fin, sei, and sperm whales struck annually in the geographic area under consideration; we used the best available information on cryptic mortality (i.e., the number of animals that are killed and never observed) to establish a correction factor to adjust the reported number of vessel struck animals to generate our best estimate of total vessel related mortality for each species in the geographic area. Second, we used the best available information on baseline traffic (i.e., the annual number of vessel transits within a particular geographic area absent the proposed action) and the information provided by BOEM and South Fork on the number of anticipated vessel transits in that area by South Fork project vessels to determine to what extent vessel traffic would increase in the area during each of the three phases of the South Fork project. For example, if baseline traffic in a particular area was 100 trips per year and the South Fork project would result in 10 new trips in that area, we would conclude that traffic was likely to increase by 10%. Third, based on the assumption that risk of vessel strike is related to the amount of vessel traffic (i.e., that more vessels operating in a geographic area would lead to a proportional increase in vessel strike risk), we calculated the increase in baseline vessel strikes by the increase in vessel traffic. For example, if in the baseline conditions we expect a whale to be struck and the project doubled traffic, we would produce an estimate of two strikes (double the baseline number). It is important to note that these steps were carried out without consideration of any measures designed to reduce vessel strike and the assumption that all vessels have the same likelihood of striking a whale. Finally, we considered the risk reduction measures that are part of the proposed action and whether, with those risk reduction measures in place, any vessel strike was reasonably certain to occur. The numbers of baseline vessel transits and Project vessel transits were used to evaluate the effects of vessel traffic on listed species as this provides the most accurate representation of vessel traffic in the region and from the proposed Project. Baseline vessel transits was estimated using vessel AIS density data (number of trips) which provides a quantifiable comparison and approximation to estimate risk to listed species from the increase in Project vessel traffic. We considered an approach using vessel-miles, however we have an incomplete baseline of vessel traffic in the region in the terms of vessel miles as there is significant variability in vessel-mileage between vessel type and activity and no reliable way to obtain vessel miles from the existing baseline data we have access to. While data on the miles that project vessels will travel is partially available, without a robust baseline to compare it to, we are not able to provide an accurate comparison to baseline traffic levels.

Lease Area Transits from Nearby Ports in MA, RI, CT, NY

ESA-listed whales use portions of the action area throughout the year, including the portion of the action area where vessels will transit in the lease area, along the SFEC, and between those locations and identified ports in MA, RI, CT, and NY (see Section 5 and 6 for more information on distribution of whales in the action area). Baseline vessel traffic in the project area is described at the beginning of this section.

From the marine mammal stock assessment reports and serious injury and mortality reports produced by NMFS, for the period of 2000-2018 (the most recent period available) , we identified a total of five records of ESA-listed whales with injuries consistent with vessel strike that were first detected in waters of southern New England (Connecticut, Rhode Island and

Massachusetts, south and east of Cape Cod) and around Long Island, New York which is the best representation of the geographic area representing the lease area, the SFEC corridor, and the area where vessels will transit between these areas and the identified ports in MA, RI, CT, and NY. Of the reported strikes, three were to North Atlantic right whales and two were to fin whales (2017 injury and mortality data - In Press, 2012-2016 – Henry et al. 2021, 2007-2016 injury data - NMFS SARs/Henry et al. 2020, SI/M, 2000-2006 injury data - NMFS unpub. data). A review of available information for 2019 and through August 2021, did not reveal any additional reports of vessel strikes for fin or right whales in the Project area. However, we note that multiple vessel strikes of right whales have occurred between 2019 and 2021 in waters outside the Project area. (https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-life-distress/2017-2021-north-atlantic-right-whale-unusual-mortality-event). We did not identify any records of sei or sperm whales struck in this portion of the action area. These total reported strikes (3 right whales and 2 fin whales) occurred over a 19 year period; this is an annual average of 0.16 right whales and 0.11 fin whales. Stated another way, this is an average strike rate of 1 right whale every 6.25 years and 1 fin whale every 9 years in this portion of the action area.

Though this is a relatively small number of vessel strikes for the time period, detection of carcasses is very difficult given the large open ocean, which means that this could be an underestimate. A time series of observed annual total mortality and serious injury of North Atlantic right whales versus estimated total mortalities is included in the 2020 North Atlantic right whale Stock Assessment Report (see Figure 5 in Hayes 2021). Conversely, the location of a recovered carcass is where it was first detected, not necessarily where the incident occurred, and some of the incidents detected in this area may be whales that were struck outside of the area, which would result in an overestimate of the strikes that occurred in the area. Additionally, depending on cetacean species, carcasses may be more likely to float or sink, they may be carried from where they were struck on the bow of a vessel and only noticed in port, or carried away from the ship strike location by wind, currents, and waves. All of these factors contribute to the difficulty in detecting carcasses, in particular from ship strike (Rockwood et al. 2017).

A number of studies have estimated carcass recovery rates for different cetacean species, including 17% for right whales, 6.5% for killer whales, <5% for grey whales, and 3.4% for sperm whales (Kraus et al. 2005). A recent study used an abundance estimation model to derive estimates of cryptic mortality for North Atlantic right whales and found that observed carcasses accounted for 36% of all estimated deaths during 1990–2017 (Pace et al. 2021). As increased search effort and stranding response in recent years would suggest a higher rate may apply now for right whales, the 36% rate is considered the best available estimate of carcass recovery for the time series considered here (2000-2021). These rates are largely related to how buoyant a species is, thus affecting how likely it will be detected. Right whales are the most buoyant species due to their thick blubber layer, and are most likely to be detected, thus providing a conservative estimate for extrapolation. Sperm whale buoyancy depends on lung inflation at mortality; near the surface they have positive buoyancy, but overall negative tissue buoyancy (Rockwood et al. 2017). To determine an improved recovery rate estimate for other whale species relative to right whales, Rockwood et al. 2017 used an average of the sperm, grey, and killer whale rates. Using the rate of 36% rate for right whales and the 5% rate (mean of sperm, grey, and killer whales) for fin whales, we extrapolated ship strike mortality from the 2000-2018 serious injury/mortality data to produce an estimate of the total number of right and fin whales struck annually in the geographic area under consideration as shown below.

To estimate the annual average vessel strike mortalities corrected for unobserved vessel strike mortalities, we divided the number of observed vessel strike ESA-listed whale mortalities by 0.36 for right whales and 0.05 fin whales. The calculations to produce the resulting, adjusted number of vessel strike mortalities of each species are presented below. Based on these calculations, we would anticipate that an average of 0.44 right whales and 2 fin whales are struck in the Project area (excluding the waters south of Long Island and Canadian and European transit routes), each year.

<u>Number of ESA-Listed Large Whales Struck by Vessels in the Lease Area and Surrounding Areas to be transited by Vessels (to/from MA, RI, CT, and NY ports), accounting for Cryptic Mortality</u>

Right whales: 3 (total whales detected struck)/ 0.36 (percent of total struck) = 8.33 whales struck /19 (years of SI/M data) = 0.44 right whales struck per year

Fin whales: 2 (total whales detected struck)/ 0.05 (percent of total struck) = 40 whales struck / 19 (years of SI/M data) = 2.11 whales struck per year

In spite of being one of the primary known sources of direct anthropogenic mortality to whales, ship strikes remain relatively rare, stochastic events. If we assume that an increase in vessel trips results in a proportional increase in risk of vessel strike, we can then use the calculated percent increase in vessel traffic attributable to the project, to calculate the increase in risk of vessel strike due to project activity (construction, operations, and decommissioning). As illustrated in Table 7.2.1, we expect a 0.90% increase in vessel trips during the two-year construction period over baseline conditions in this area, a 0.38% increase in traffic during the 25-year operations period, and a 0.72% increase in traffic during the two-year decommissioning period. As such, assuming a linear relationship in vessel traffic and whales struck, we could predict a proportional increase in the number of right and fin whales struck in the action area over this period, as illustrated below:

<u>Hypothetical Estimates of ESA-Listed Large Whale Vessel Strikes in the Lease Area and Surrounding Areas to be transited by Vessels (to/from MA, RI, CT, and NY ports), Considering Increase in Vessel Traffic Due to Proposed Action</u>

Construction = 0.90% increase in traffic for 2 years

Right whales: 0.009 (increase in vessel traffic) * 0.44 (baseline vessel strike rate per year) = 0.00396 (*2 years, length of phase) = 0.008 right whales

Fin whales: 0.009 (increase in vessel traffic) * 2.11 (baseline vessel strike rate per year) = 0.02 (*2 years, length of phase) = 0.04 fin whales

Operation = 0.38% increase in traffic for 25 years

Right whales: 0.0038 * 0.44 = 0.002 (*25) = 0.04 right whales

Fin whales: 0.0038 * 2.11 = 0.008 (*25) = 0.20 fin whales

Decommissioning = 0.72% increase in traffic for 2 years
Right whales: 0.0072 * 0.44 = 0.003 (*2) = 0.006 right whales
Fin whales: 0.0072* 2.11 = 0.015(*2) = 0.030 fin whales

As described in these calculations, the theoretical increased risk of vessel strike anticipated to result from the increase in vessel traffic associated with the proposed action is very small and equivalent to 0.008 right whales and 0.04 fin whales during the two year construction period, 0.04 right whales and 0.20 fin whales during the 25 year operational period, and 0.006 right whales and 0.030 fin whales during the two-year decommissioning period. As noted above, these calculations do not take into account any risk avoidance measures that will be required as conditions of the project's approval.

The vessel strike estimates above do not include sei nor sperm whales because there are no records of vessel strike for either species in the Project area from 2000-2017 (2017 injury and mortality data - In Press, 2012-2016 – Henry et al. 2021, 2007-2016 injury data - NMFS SARs/Henry et al. 2020, SI/M, 2000-2006 injury data - NMFS unpub. data). There are records of vessel strike mortality of both species in the greater New England area, however both species tend to occupy deeper waters of the continental shelf, and are likely to exist in small numbers in the action area due to the relatively shallower water depths. In aerial surveys conducted in the Project Area and surrounding waters, sei whales are mostly commonly observed in the spring and early summer and are found in waters in the southeastern portion of the MA/RI WEAs and south of the WEAs while sperm whales have typically been observed in summer months. Both species have lower abundance in the Project area than fin and right whales (MA CEC reports, https://www.masscec.com/marine-mammal-and-sea-turtle-surveys), thus any theoretical increase in risk of strike of sei and sperm whales is even smaller than that calculated for right and fin whales.

There are a number of factors that result in us determining that this hypothetical increase in vessel strike will not occur. As described above in Section 3, a number of measures designed to reduce the likelihood of striking marine mammals including, ESA-listed large whales, particularly North Atlantic right whales, are included as part of the proposed action. These measures include seasonal speed restrictions and enhanced monitoring via PSOs, PAM, and alternative monitoring technologies.

The measures proposed by South Fork Wind and BOEM are in accordance with measures outlined in NMFS Ship Strike Reduction Strategy as the best available means of reducing ship strikes of right whales. Most ship strikes have occurred at vessel speeds of 13-15 knots or greater (Jensen and Silber 2003; Laist et al. 2001). An analysis by Vanderlaan and Taggart (2006) showed that at speeds greater than 15 knots, the probability of a ship strike resulting in death increases asymptotically to 100%. At speeds below 11.8 knots, the probability decreases to less than 50%, and at ten knots or less, the probability is further reduced to approximately 30%. In rulemaking, NMFS has concluded, based on the best available scientific evidence, that a maximum speed of 10 knots, as measured as "speed over ground", in certain times and locations, is the most effective and practical approach to reducing the threat of ship strikes to right whales. Absent any information to the contrary, we assume that a 10-knot speed restriction similarly reduces the risk to other whale species. Substantial evidence (Laist et al., 2001; Jensen and Silber, 2003; Vanderlaan and Taggart, 2007; Kelley et al. 2020) indicates that vessel speed is an important factor affecting the likelihood and lethality of whale/vessel collisions. In a compilation of ship strikes of all large whale species that assessed ship speed as a factor in ship strikes, Laist et al. (2001) concluded that a direct relationship existed between the occurrence of a whale strike and the speed of the vessel. These authors indicated that most deaths occurred when a vessel was traveling at speeds of 14 knots or greater and that, as speeds declined below 14 knots, whales apparently had a greater opportunity to avoid oncoming vessels. Adding to the Laist et al. (2001) study, Jensen and Silber (2003) compiled 292 records of known or probable ship strikes of all large whale species from 1975 to 2002. Vessel speed at the time of the collision was reported for 58 of those cases; 85.5 percent of these strikes occurred at vessel speeds of 10 knots or greater. Effects of vessel speed on collision risks also have been studied using computer simulation models to assess hydrodynamic forces vessels have on a large whale (Knowlton et al., 1995; Knowlton et al., 1998). These studies found that, in certain instances, hydrodynamic forces around a vessel can act to pull a whale toward a ship. These forces increase with increasing speed and thus a whale's ability to avoid a ship in close quarters may be reduced with increasing vessel speed. Related studies by Clyne (1999) found that the number of simulated strikes with passing ships decreased with increasing vessel speeds, but that the number of strikes that occurred in the bow region increased with increasing vessel speeds. Additionally, vessel size has been shown to be less of a significant factor than speed, as biophysical modeling has demonstrated that vessels of all sizes can yield stresses likely to cause lethal injuries to large whales (Kelley et al. 2020). The speed reduction alone provides a significant reduction in risk of vessel strike as it both provides for greater opportunity for a whale to evade the vessel but also ensures that vessels are operating at such a speed that they can make evasive maneuvers in time to avoid a collision.

A number of measures will be in place to maximize the likelihood that during all times of the year and in all weather conditions that if whale is in the vicinity of a project vessel that the whale is detected, the captain can be notified and measures taken to avoid a strike (such as slowing down further and/or altering course). Although some of these measures have been developed to specifically reduce risk of vessel strike with right whales, all of these measures are expected to provide the same protection for other large whales as well. These measures apply regardless of the length of the transit and include dedicated PSOs or lookouts on all Project vessels during all phases to monitor the vessel strike avoidance zone and requirements to slow down less than 10 knots if a whale is spotted, alternative visual detection systems (e.g., thermal cameras) stationed on all transiting vessels that intend to operate at greater than 10 knots, passive acoustic monitoring in vessel transit lanes during the construction period when project vessel traffic is highest to trigger vessel slowdowns if whales are detected, and additional measures as outlined in Section 3. These measures are meant to increase earlier detection of whale presence and subsequently further increase time available to avoid a strike. Awareness of right whales in the area will also be enhanced through monitoring of reports on USCG Channel 16, communication between project vessel operators of any sightings, and monitoring of the NMFS Right Whale Sightings Advisory System.

Here, we explain how these measures will reduce the risk of any project vessel striking a whale. Many of these measures are centered on vessel speed restrictions and increased monitoring. To avoid a vessel strike, a vessel operator both needs to be able to detect a whale and be able to slow down or move out of the way in time to avoid collision. The speed limits and monitoring measures that are part of the proposed action maximize the opportunity for detection and avoidance.

Vessel speed restrictions:
Conditions of project approval will require that all Project vessels must travel at speeds less than 10 knots when transiting active SMAs or DMA/visually triggered Slow Zones and when listed whales are observed within 500m of a vessel (regardless of time of year, location, or length of transit). We note that the Block Island SMA completely overlaps the South Fork lease area and almost the entirety of the vessel cable corridor. The SMA is active from November 1 – April 30, the time when right whales are most likely to occur in the project area. Thus, any project vessels operating in this area, regardless of vessel size or phase of the project, will be transiting at speeds of 10 knots or less. Right and fin whales are not likely to occur in portions of the transit routes inshore of the SMA. DMAs may be established at any time of year and are based on visual sightings documenting the presence of three or more right whales within a discrete area.

During the one-year period that the IHA is effective, which will correspond with the highest period of construction vessel activity, localized detections of North Atlantic right whales, using real-time PAM, would trigger a slow-down to 10 knots or less in the area of detection (zone) for the following 12 hours (hrs.). Each subsequent detection would trigger a 12-hr reset. A slow-down in that zone expires when there has been no further visual or acoustic detection in the past 12 hrs within the triggered zone. This condition would apply to areas or times of year not already covered by the speed reduction requirements in place for SMAs and DMAs.

By reducing speeds below 10 knots, the probability of a lethal ship strike is greatly reduced, additionally reduced speeds provide greater time to react if a PSO/lookout observes an animal in the path of a vessel and therefore reduces the likelihood of any strike occurring at all. Some project vessels are expected to never, or rarely, operate at speeds over 10 knots including during HRG survey activities, cable laying, and survey vessels trawling or hauling gear, these vessels are expected to normally operate at speeds less than 5 knots (for a complete list of vessels and operating speeds see table 3.2.6 in Section 3).

Exceptions to 10 knot speed restriction:
Project vessels may travel at speeds greater than 10 knots at certain times of the year and in certain geographic areas. Due to the requirements for vessels of all sizes to comply with the speed restriction within the SMA, the opportunity for any project vessel to operate at speeds above 10 knots is limited to the area outside of the SMA (year-round) and the area within the SMA from May 1 – October 31, provided that a DMA does not overlap the area being transited. Areas and times where vessels can operate at more than 10 knots will therefore be limited to areas where whales are unlikely to occur (i.e., inshore of the limits of the SMA) or when fewer than three whales have been detected (i.e., outside of a DMA). However, as noted above and further detailed below, during the construction period a PAM detection of a single right whale in a transit corridor will trigger a 10 knot speed restriction. The period of time and areas when vessels can travel at speeds greater than 10 knots are at times when right whales are expected to occur in very low numbers and thus the risk of a vessel strike is significantly

lower. However, in all instances, PSOs/lookouts will be monitoring a vessel strike zone, see below.

PSOs/Lookouts:
A PSO or crew lookout must be posted during all times a vessel is underway (transiting or surveying) to monitor for listed species. These observers will have no other duty than to monitor for listed species and if one is sighted communicate to the vessel captain to slow down and take measures to avoid the sighted animal. These observers are required to monitor for daily information of right whale sightings to inform situational awareness. At all times the lookout will be monitoring for presence of whales and ensuring that the vessel stays at least 500 m away from any right whale or unidentified large whale.

Increased NARW awareness:
All vessel operators must check for information regarding mandatory or voluntary ship strike avoidance (DMAs/Slow Zones and SMAs) and daily information regarding right whale sighting locations. Active monitoring of right whale sightings information provides situational awareness for monitoring of right whales in the area of vessel activities.

PAM:
During the construction period, outside of DMAs, SMAs, and the November 1 through April 30 time period, localized detections of North Atlantic right whales, using real-time PAM in transit corridors, would trigger a vessel slow-down to 10 knots or less in the area of detection (zone) for the following 12 hrs. Each subsequent detection would trigger a 12-hr reset. A slow-down in that zone expires when there has been no further visual or acoustic detection in the past 12 hrs within the triggered zone. This increases detectability beyond the area that an observer can see and enhances the effectiveness of required vessel avoidance measures.

In summary, we expect that despite the increase in vessel traffic that will result from the proposed action, the multi-faceted measures that will be required of all Project vessels will enable the detection of any ESA-listed whale that may be in the path of a Project vessel with enough time to allow for vessel operators to avoid any such whales. Combined with the already very low increased risk of vessel strike anticipated due increased project vessel traffic (close to zero as explained above), we expect that these measures will make it extremely unlikely that a Project vessel will strike a whale.

Effects of Foreign Vessel Transits (Project Site to Canada or Europe)
Due to project component and vessel availability, components and vessels will transit from Europe to the WDA and/or through ports in Canada. These vessels will be specialized construction vessels and cargo vessels, during transit these vessels may travel up to 12.4 knots. BOEM has indicated that during the entire two-year construction period there may be two vessel transits between the WDA and ports in Canada to transport project components and up to six trips from ports in Europe. During the entire operational phase there may be one vessel transit between Canada and the WDA and 30 trips between Europe and the WDA. These vessel trips would be limited to project vessels, barges and/or cargo ships that travel at speeds of 11 knots or less. During decommissioning, a similar amount of traffic to the constructions phase could occur. BOEM has identified Sheet Harbor, in the Port of Halifax as the most likely port in

Canada to be used; the Port of Halifax receives approximately 1,500 cargo vessels a year. Ports in Europe are unidentified at this time, but based on the location of major wind industry suppliers, we anticipate that any vessels would transit from ports in western Europe along the Atlantic coast.

Project vessels will represent an extremely small portion of the vessel traffic traveling to and from foreign ports. Current vessel traffic between the U.S. and Europe is predominantly tankers, container ships, and passenger vessels, which are similar ships in size and speed to the ones that will be used during the construction phase of the project. In this portion of the action area, co-occurrence of project vessels and individual whales is expected to be extremely unlikely; this is due to the dispersed nature of whales in the open ocean and the only intermittent presence of project vessels. Given that these vessels will be in compliance with measures that NMFS has determined minimize the potential for ship strike and given the extremely small increase in vessel traffic in this portion of the action area that these vessels will represent, this makes it extremely unlikely that any ESA-listed whales will be struck by a project vessel.

Effects of Vessel Transits south of the Project Area

South Fork Wind only expects up to four vessel trips to ports south of Montauk (i.e., Paulsboro Marine Terminal, Baltimore, Sparrows Point, Norfolk, ports in western Gulf of Mexico) during the construction phase and 30 trips during the entire operational phase (average of one trip per year over the 25-year operational period of the project). As described in Section 6, ESA-listed whales occur in this area in varying distribution and abundance throughout the year. North Atlantic right whales occur in the area along coastal waters as they migrate through the Mid-Atlantic to the Southeast calving grounds, primarily in the fall and early spring. Fin whales most commonly occur throughout the year in offshore waters of the northern Mid-Atlantic. Sei whales typically are found offshore along the shelf break throughout the year, primarily in northern Mid-Atlantic waters. Sperm whales along the Mid-Atlantic and the Gulf of Mexico are found offshore along the shelf break year-round. In general, ESA-listed whales are expected to be highly dispersed in deeper offshore waters and, given the large area over which Project vessels could potentially transit, the likelihood of co-occurrence is low in offshore waters.

Project vessels have the greatest chance to co-occur with large whales in the nearshore waters, near major ports, in the shipping lanes. However, due to the small number of proposed vessel transits in otherwise heavily trafficked waters, Project vessel transiting south of the Project Area will not measurably increase risk to large whales. Additionally, the multi-faceted measures, including 10 knot speed restrictions in certain areas, which will be required of all Project vessels, will enable the detection of any ESA-listed whale that may be in the path of a Project vessel with enough time to allow for vessel operators to avoid any such whales. We expect that these measures will make it extremely unlikely that a Project vessel will strike a whale.

Based on this analysis, effects of this increase in traffic resulting in vessel strikes of large whales are extremely unlikely given the very small increase in vessel traffic and subsequent risk, the effect of adding the vessels to the baseline cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated; therefore, effects are also insignificant.

In summary, while there is an increase in risk of vessel strike during all phases of the proposed project due to the increase in vessel traffic, the measures that will be in place, particularly the vessel speed restrictions and use of enhanced monitoring measures, we do not expect that this increase in risk will result in a vessel strike caused by the action. Based on the best available information on the risk factors associated with vessel strikes of large whales (i.e., vessel size and vessel speed), and the measures required to reduce risk, it is extremely unlikely that any project vessel will strike a right, fin, sei, or sperm whale during any phase of the proposed project.

7.2.4.3 Sea Turtles

Background Information on the Risk of Vessel Strike to Sea Turtles
Within the action area, project vessel traffic will be heaviest in the nearshore waters of southern New England, and the offshore WDA. Vessel traffic will be heaviest during the construction and decommissioning phases, while transits will be fewer but consistent during operation. Baseline vessel traffic in the region is described in detail in section 7.2.1, and vessel traffic related to the proposed project is described in section 7.2.2.

Sea turtles are vulnerable to vessel collisions because they regularly surface to breathe, and often rest at or near the surface. Sea turtles often congregate close to shorelines during the breeding season, where boat traffic is denser (Schofield et al. 2007; Schofield et al. 2010); however, the lack of nesting beaches in the Project area where vessels may be close to shore makes this factor irrelevant for this analysis. Sea turtles, with the exception of hatchlings and pre-recruitment juveniles, spend a majority of their time submerged (Renaud and Carpenter 1994; Sasso and Witzell 2006). Although, Hazel et al. (2007) demonstrated sea turtles preferred to stay within the three meters of the water's surface, despite deeper water being available. Any of the sea turtle species found in the action area can occur at or near the surface in open-ocean and coastal areas, whether resting, feeding or periodically surfacing to breathe. Therefore, all ESA-listed sea turtles considered in the biological opinion are at risk of vessel strikes.

While research is limited on the relationship between sea turtles, ship collisions and ship speeds, sea turtles are at risk of vessel strike where they co-occur with vessels. A sea turtle's detection of a vessel is likely based primarily on the animal's ability to see the oncoming vessel, which would provide less time to react to as vessel speed increases (Hazel et al. 2007), however, given the low vantage point of a sea turtle at the surface it is unlikely they are readily able to visually detect vessels at a distance. Hazel et al. (2007) examined vessel strike risk to green sea turtles and suggested that sea turtles may habituate to vessel sound and are more likely to respond to the sight of a vessel rather than the sound of a vessel, although both may play a role in eliciting responses (Hazel et al. 2007). Regardless of what specific stressor associated with vessels turtles are responding to, they only appear to show responses (avoidance behavior) at approximately 10 m or closer (Hazel et al. 2007). This is a concern because faster vessel speeds also have the potential to result in more serious injuries (Work et al. 2010). Although sea turtles can move quickly, Hazel et al. (2007) concluded that at vessel speeds above 4 km/hour (2.1 knots) vessel operators cannot rely on turtles to actively avoid being struck. Thus, sea turtles are not considered reliably capable of moving out of the way of vessels moving at speeds greater than 2.1 knots.

Vessel strikes of sea turtles is primary threat to their survival. Stranding networks that keep track of sea turtles that wash up dead or injured have consistently recorded vessel propeller strikes, skeg strikes, and blunt force trauma as a cause or possible cause of death (Chaloupka et al. 2008). Vessel strikes can cause permanent injury or death from bleeding or other trauma, paralysis and subsequent drowning, infection, or inability to feed. Apart from the severity of the physical strike, the likelihood and rate of a turtle's recovery from a strike may be influenced by its age, reproductive state, and general condition at the time of injury. Much of what has been documented about recovery from vessel strikes on sea turtles has been inferred from observation of individual animals for some duration of time after a strike occurs (Hazel et al. 2007; Lutcavage et al. 1997). In the U.S., the percentage of strandings that were attributed to vessel strikes increased from approximately 10 percent in the 1980s to a record high of 20.5 percent in 2004 (USFWS 2007). In 1990, the National Research Council estimated that 50-500 loggerhead and 5-50 Kemp's ridley sea turtles were struck and killed by boats annually in waters of the U.S. (NRC 1990). The report indicates that this estimate is highly uncertain and could be a large overestimate or underestimate. As described in the Recovery Plan for loggerhead sea turtles (NMFS and USFWS 2008), propeller and collision injuries from boats and ships are common in sea turtles. From 1997 to 2005, 14.9% of all stranded loggerheads in the U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico were documented as having sustained some type of propeller or collision injuries although it is not known what proportion of these injuries were post or ante-mortem. The proportion of vessel-struck sea turtles that survive is unknown. In some cases, it is not possible to determine whether documented injuries on stranded animals resulted in death or were post-mortem injuries. However, the available data indicate that post-mortem vessel strike injuries are uncommon in stranded sea turtles. Based on data from off the coast of Florida, there is good evidence that when vessel strike injuries are observed as the principle finding for a stranded turtle, the injuries were both ante-mortem and the cause of death (Foley et al 2019). Foley et al. (2019) found that the cause of death was vessel strike or probable vessel strike in approximately 93% of stranded turtles with vessel strike injuries. Sea turtles found alive with concussive or propeller injuries are frequently brought to rehabilitation facilities; some are later released and others are deemed unfit to return to the wild and remain in captivity. Sea turtles in the wild have been documented with healed injuries so at least some sea turtles survive without human intervention. As noted in NRC 1990, the regions of greatest concern for vessel strike are outside the action area and include areas with high concentrations of recreational-boat traffic such as the eastern Florida coast, the Florida Keys, and the shallow coastal bays in the Gulf of Mexico. In general, the overall risk of strike for sea turtles in the Northwest Atlantic is considered greatest in areas with high densities of sea turtles and small, fast moving vessels such as recreational vessels (NRC 1990). Project vessels may transit through the Gulf of Mexico to the WDA however, these will be large, slow moving cargo vessels that will be operating offshore where sea turtles are more dispersed. In the Project area where smaller, fast moving vessels will transit, sea turtles only seasonally occur in typically small numbers with a dispersed distribution.

Vessel use for the South Fork Wind project could result in physical disturbance and strikes to sea turtles, and would most likely occur in areas that overlap sea turtle habitats, especially in areas with high densities of sea turtles and high-speed vessel transits. In the action area, the species and age classes most likely to be impacted are adults, sub-adults, and juveniles of leatherback sea turtles, the North Atlantic DPS of green sea turtles, Northwest Atlantic Ocean DPS of loggerhead sea turtles, and Kemp's ridley sea turtles. In particular, the leatherback sea turtle is abundant in the southern New England region and may be found in open-ocean habitats and foraging at the surface and throughout the water column (Dodge et al. 2014). Within the action area, coastal foraging habitats exist for all the above sea turtle species over the continental shelf and within inshore waters

7.2.4.3.1 Exposure Analysis – Sea Turtles

We consider vessel strike of ESA-listed sea turtles in context of specific project phases, as a result of all South Fork Wind vessel movement within the action area. The construction, operation, and decommissioning phases will all have varying frequencies of vessel transits in the nearshore and offshore waters of the action area in southern New England. Additionally, offshore vessel movements from Canada, Europe, and other ports in the United States will vary considerably by phase of the project.

Lease Area Transits from Nearby Ports in MA, RI, CT, NY

To estimate the number of vessel strikes of sea turtles due to the proposed action, we relied on 2016-2020 data (the most recent period available) from NMFS' Sea Turtle Stranding and Salvage Network (STSSN) to first establish the annual average number of sea turtles detected with injuries consistent with vessel traffic in the area where most vessel traffic will occur during all phases of the project (MA, RI, CT, NY). We queried the STSSN database for records of general sea turtle cases and cases with evidence of vessel strike in the greater MA, RI, CT, and NY region to understand baseline risk of vessel strike and then analyzed cases more specifically in the geographic area under consideration (throughout the waters of New York (clipped at Gardiners Island in NY), Connecticut (clipped at the Thames River in CT), Rhode Island and Massachusetts, south and east of Cape Cod), as a best reasonable representation of the area where Project-related vessel traffic will be highest through all phases of the project. We note that this area is inclusive of the area where vessels will be transiting from the WDA to ports identified by BOEM in MA, RI, CT, and NY.

While we recognize that some vessel strikes may be post-mortem, the available data indicate that post-mortem vessel strike injuries are uncommon in stranded sea turtles. Based on data from coastal Florida, there is good evidence that when vessel strike injuries are observed as the principle finding for a stranded turtle, the injuries were both ante-mortem and the cause of death (Foley et al. 2019). Out of the 473 reported sea turtle stranding cases (excluding cold stuns) in the MA, RI, CT, and NY region during the five year time period of data, there were a total of 164 records of sea turtles recovered with evidence of vessel strikes. In the geographic area under consideration, 71 turtles with evidence of vessel strike were reported, this included 47 leatherbacks, 23 loggerheads, and 1 green sea turtle (Table 7.2.2); these records primarily occurred between the months of August and October, which is consistent with the time period when sea turtle abundance is greatest in the region. Though no Kemp's ridley sea turtles were recovered with evidence of vessel strike injuries in this time period, they are in the same size class as green sea turtles in this area and occur in the area at the same time. For this analysis, we assume that Kemp's ridley sea turtles are at no higher risk of vessel strike than green turtles.

Table 7.2.2. Preliminary STSSN cases from 2016 to 2020 with evidence of propeller strike or probable vessel collision in the Lease Area and Surrounding Areas to be transited by Vessels (to/from MA, RI, CT, and NY ports). Source STSSN

	Leatherback		**Green**		**Loggerhead**		**Total**
	Alive	Dead	Alive	Dead	Alive	Dead	
Massachusetts	2	36	0	1	1	20	**60**
Rhode Island	0	6	0	0	0	1	**7**
Connecticut	0	1	0	0	0	0	**1**
New York	1	1	0	0	0	1	**3**
Total	**3**	**44**	**0**	**1**	**1**	**22**	**71**

Based on the findings of Foley et al. (2019) that found vessel strike was the cause of death in 93% of strandings with indications of vessel strike, we used 93% of the strandings where the animal was dead and had evidence of propeller strike or probable vessel collision (Table 7.2.2) to estimate the number of interactions where vessel strike was the cause of death. There were approximately 62 cases from 2016 to 2020 combined where cause of death was due to propeller strike or probable vessel collision (Table 7.2.3).

Table 7.2.3. Preliminary STSSN cases from 2016 to 2020 where cause of death was due to propeller strike or probable vessel collision adjusted based on Foley et al. (2019)

	Leatherback	**Green**	**Loggerhead**	**Total**
Massachusetts	33.48	0.93	18.6	**53.01**
Rhode Island	5.58	0	0.93	**6.51**
Connecticut	0.93	0	0	**0.93**
New York	0.93	0	0.93	**1.86**
Total	**40.92**	**0.93**	**20.46**	**62.31**

Importantly, the data in Table 7.2.2 and Table 7.2.3 are only based on observed stranding records, which represent only a portion of the total at-sea mortalities of sea turtles within the action area. Sea turtle carcasses typically sink upon death, and float to the surface only when enough accumulation of decomposition gases causes the body to bloat (Epperly et al., 1996). Though floating, the body is still partially submerged and acts as a drifting object. The drift of a sea turtle carcass depends on the direction and intensity of local currents and winds. As sea turtles are vulnerable to human interactions such as fisheries bycatch and vessel strike, a number of studies have estimated at-sea mortality of marine turtles and the influence of nearshore physical oceanographic and wind regimes on sea turtle strandings. Although sea turtle stranding rates are variable, they usually do not exceed 20 percent of total mortality, as predators, scavengers, wind, and currents prevent carcasses from reaching the shore (Koch et al. 2013). Strandings may represent as low as five percent of total mortalities in some areas (Koch et al. 2013). Strandings of dead sea turtles from fishery interaction have been reported to represent as low as seven percent of total mortalities caused at sea (Epperly et al. 1996). Remote or difficult to access areas may further limit the amount of strandings that are observed. Because of the low probability of stranding under different conditions, determining total vessel strikes directly from raw numbers of stranded sea turtle data would vary between regions, seasons, and other factors such as currents.

To estimate unobserved vessel strike mortalities, we relied on available estimates from the literature. Based on data reviewed in Murphy and Hopkins-Murphy (1989), only six of 22 loggerhead sea turtle carcasses tagged within the South Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico region were reported in stranding records, indicating that stranding data represent approximately 27 percent of at-sea mortalities. In comparing estimates of at-sea fisheries induced mortalities to estimates of stranded sea turtle mortalities due to fisheries, Epperly et al. (1996) estimated that strandings represented 7-13 percent of all at-sea mortalities.

Based on these two studies, both of which include waters of the U.S. East Coast, stranding data likely represent 7-27 percent of all at-sea mortalities. While there are additional estimates of the percent of at-sea mortalities likely to be observed in stranding data for locations outside the action area (e.g., Peckham et al. 2008, Koch et al. 2013), we did not rely on these since stranding rates depend heavily on beach survey effort, current patterns, weather, and seasonal factors among others, and these factors vary greatly with geographic location (Hart et al. 2006). Thus, based on the mid-point between the lower estimate provided by Epperly et al. (1996) of seven percent, and the upper estimate provided by Murphy and Hopkins-Murphy (1989) of 27 percent, we assume that the STSSN stranding data represent approximately 17 percent of all at sea mortalities. This estimate closely aligns with an analysis of drift bottle data from the Atlantic Ocean by Hart et al. (2006), which estimated that the upper limit of the proportion of sea turtle carcasses that strand is approximately 20 percent.

To estimate the annual average vessel strike mortalities corrected for unobserved vessel strike mortalities, we adjusted the observed number with the detection value of 17%. The resulting, adjusted number of vessel strike mortalities of each species within the Project area are below. In using the 17 percent correction factor, we assume that all sea turtle species and at-sea mortalities are equally likely to be represented in the STSSN dataset. That is, sea turtles killed by vessel strikes are just as likely to strand or be observed at sea and be recorded in the STSSN database (i.e., 17 percent) as those killed by other activities, such as interactions with fisheries, and the likelihood of stranding once injured or killed does not vary by species.

<u>Estimate of Number of ESA-listed Sea Turtles Struck and Killed by Vessels in the Lease Area and Surrounding Areas to be Transited by Vessels (to/from MA, RI, CT, and NY ports) Adjusted based on Foley et al. (2019), accounting for Unobserved Mortality</u>

Leatherback sea turtles: 40.92 (93% of those documented by STSSN)/ 0.17 (percent documented) = 240.17 leatherback sea turtles struck /5 (years of STSSN data) = 48.03 leatherback sea turtles struck per year

Green sea turtles: 0.93 (93% of those documented by STSSN)/ 0.17 (percent documented) = 5.47 green sea turtles struck / 5 (years of STSSN data) = 1.09 green sea turtles struck per year

Loggerhead sea turtles: 20.46 (93% of those documented by STSSN)/ 0.17 (percent documented) = 120.35 loggerhead sea turtles struck / 5 (years of STSSN data) = 24.07 loggerhead sea turtles struck per year

Finally, assuming a proportional relationship between vessel strikes and vessel traffic, we considered the phase-specific increase in vessel traffic and increased the number of baseline strikes to account for the increase in project vessel traffic

Hypothetical Estimates of ESA-Listed Sea Turtle Vessel Strikes in the Lease Area and Surrounding Areas to be Transited by Vessels (to/from MA, RI, CT, and NY ports) Considering Increase in Vessel Traffic Due to the Proposed Action

Construction = 0.9% increase in traffic for 2 years

Leatherback sea turtles: 0.009 (increase in vessel traffic) * 48.03 (vessel strike rate per year) = 0.432 (*2 years, length of phase) = 0.86 leatherback sea turtles
Green sea turtles: 0.009 (increase in vessel traffic) * 1.09 (vessel strike rate per year) = 0.01 (*2 years, length of phase) = 0.02 green sea turtles
Loggerhead sea turtles: 0.009 (increase in vessel traffic) * 24.07 (vessel strike rate per year) = 0.217 (*2 years, length of phase) = 0.43 loggerhead sea turtles

Operation = 0.38% increase in traffic for 25 years

Leatherback sea turtles: 0.0038 * 48.03 = 0.183 (*25) = 4.58 leatherback sea turtles
Green sea turtles: 0.0038 * 1.09 = 0.0041 (*25) = 0.10 green sea turtles
Loggerhead sea turtles: 0.0038 * 24.07 = 0.091 (*25) = 2.28 loggerhead sea turtles

Decommissioning = 0.72% increase in traffic for 2 years

Leatherback sea turtles: 0.0072 * 48.03 = 0.346 (*2) = 0.69 leatherback sea turtles
Green sea turtles: 0.0072 * 0.86 = 0.006 (*2) = 0.012 green sea turtles
Loggerhead sea turtles: 0.0072 * 24.07 = 0.173 (*2) = 0.35 loggerhead sea turtles

As explained above in section 7.2.3, South Fork Wind is proposing to take and/or BOEM is proposing to require a number of measures designed to minimize the potential for strike of a protected species that will be implemented over the life of the project. These include reductions in speed in certain areas, including certain times of the year to minimize the risk of vessel strike of large whales, slowing down if a sea turtle is sighted within 100 m of the operating vessel's forward path and if a sea turtle is sighted within 50 m of the forward path of the operating vessel, the vessel operator must shift to neutral when safe to do so and then proceed away from the individual at a speed of 4 knots or less, and seasonally avoiding transiting through areas of visible jellyfish aggregations or floating vegetation (e.g., sargassum lines or mats). While we expect that these measures will help to reduce the risk of vessel strike of sea turtles, individual sea turtles can be difficult to spot from a moving vessel at a sufficient distance to avoid strike due to their low-lying appearance. With this information in mind, we expect that the risk reduction measures that are part of the proposed action will reduce collision risk overall but will not eliminate that risk. We are not able to quantify any reduction in risk that may be realized and expect that any reduction in risk may be small.

No estimate was calculated for Kemp's ridley sea turtles as none were documented in the five-year period of data, however as they are in the same size class and occur in the same area as green turtles, and we know they are also vulnerable to vessel strike, we assume their risk to vessel strike is equal to green sea turtles. To determine the likely total number of sea turtles that will be struck by project vessels, we have rounded up to whole animals the numbers calculated above. As such, based on our analysis, the proposed action is expected to result in vessel strike of sea turtles identified in Table 7.2.4 below:

Table 7.2.4. Estimate of sea turtle vessel strikes as a result of the proposed action.

Species	**Vessel Strike**
NWA DPS Loggerhead sea turtle	3
NA DPS green sea turtle	1
Kemp's ridley sea turtle	1
Leatherback sea turtle	7

While not all strikes of sea turtles are lethal, we have no way of predicting what proportion of strikes will be lethal and what proportion will result in recoverable injury. As such, for the purposes of this analysis, we are assuming that all strikes will result in serious injury or mortality.

Effects of Foreign Vessel Transits (Project Site to Canada or Europe)

Due to project component and vessel availability, components and vessels will transit from Europe to the WDA and/or through ports in Canada. These vessels will be specialized construction vessels and cargo vessels, during transit these vessels may travel up to 12.4 knots. BOEM has indicated that during the entire two-year construction period there may be two vessel transits between the WDA and ports in Canada to transport project components and up to six trips from ports in Europe. During the entire operational phase there may be one vessel transit between Canada and the WDA and 30 trips between Europe and the WDA. These vessel trips would be limited to project vessels, barges and/or cargo ships that travel at speeds of 11 knots or less. During decommissioning, a similar amount of traffic to the constructions phase could occur. BOEM has identified Sheet Harbor, in the Port of Halifax as the most likely port in Canada to be used; the Port of Halifax receives approximately 1,500 cargo vessels a year. Ports in Europe are unidentified at this time, but based on the location of major wind industry suppliers, we anticipate that any vessels would transit from ports in western Europe along the Atlantic coast.

Project vessels will represent an extremely small portion of the vessel traffic traveling to and from foreign ports. Current vessel traffic between the U.S. and Europe is predominantly tankers, container ships, and passenger vessels, which are similar ships in size and speed to the ones that will be used during the construction phase of the project. In this portion of the action area, co-occurrence of project vessels and individual sea turtles is expected to be extremely unlikely; this is due overall low abundance of sea turtles between these ports and the Project area, the dispersed nature of sea turtles in the open ocean, and the only intermittent presence of project vessels. Based on this, it is extremely unlikely that any sea turtles will occur along the vessel transit route at the same time that a project vessel is moving through the area. Additionally, these vessels will be in compliance with measures that BOEM is requiring to help reduce the risk of ship strike. Together, this makes it extremely unlikely that any ESA-listed sea turtles will be struck by a project vessel.

Effects of Vessel Transits south of the Project Area
South Fork Wind only expects up to four vessel trips to ports south of Montauk (i.e., Paulsboro Marine Terminal, Baltimore, Sparrows Point, Norfolk, ports in western Gulf of Mexico) during the construction phase and 30 trips during the entire operational phase (average of one trip per year over the 25-year operational period of the project). Sea turtles occur in greater abundance along the Mid-Atlantic, Southeast, and Gulf of Mexico. During Project vessel transits to ports south of the Project Area, in the deeper offshore waters of the action area, the species and age classes most likely to be impacted are hatchlings and pre-recruitment juveniles of all sea turtle species, all age classes of leatherback sea turtles, and occasionally adult loggerheads. The leatherback turtle is likely to be impacted by these activities, given its preference for open-ocean habitats and its foraging behavior at the surface and throughout the water column. Hatchlings and pre-recruitment juveniles of all sea turtle species may also occur in open-ocean habitats, where they reside among *Sargassum* mats. Sea turtles are expected to be highly dispersed in deeper offshore waters and, given the large area over which Project vessels could potentially transit, the likelihood of co-occurrence is low in deeper offshore waters. Project vessels have the greatest chance to co-occur with sea turtles in the nearshore waters, near major ports, in the shipping lanes. However, due to the small amount of proposed number of vessel transits in otherwise heavily trafficked waters, Project vessel transiting south of the Project Area will not measurable increase risk to sea turtles. Additionally, these vessels will be in compliance with measures that BOEM is requiring to help reduce the risk of ship strike.

Based on this analysis, effects of this increase in traffic resulting in vessel strikes of sea turtles are extremely unlikely given the very small increase in vessel traffic in subsequent risk, the effect of adding the vessels to the baseline cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated; therefore, effects are also insignificant.

7.2.4.4 Consideration of Potential Shifts in Vessel Traffic
Here, we consider how the proposed project may result in shifts or displacement of existing vessel traffic. Any shifts or displacement of vessel traffic are expected to primarily occur in the WDA due to the presence of the WTGs and OSS during the operational phase of the proposed Project. However, as stated in the Navigational Risk Assessment (COP Appendix X), the proposed WTG spacing is sufficient to allow the passage of vessels between the WTGs, and the directional trends of the vessel data are roughly in-line with the direction of the rows of WTGs as currently designed. However, transit through the WDA is a matter of risk tolerance, and up to the individual vessel operators. Theoretically, the presence of the WTGs and OSS is not expected to result in any required re-routing or other shift or displacement in vessel traffic it is possible that it will result in changes to vessel operator preferences and habitats. Currently, vessel traffic in the SFWF is primarily recreational vessels and fishing vessels which transit the area in non-uniform patters. Larger vessels such as cargo, tug, or cruise vessels transit the WDA very infrequently as these larger vessels primarily transit the Nantucket to Ambrose TSS and TSS routes into New Bedford and Buzzards Bay which are south and west of the SFWF, respectively. Depending on final layout, existing vessel traffic may transit within the turbines in the WDA, or operators may avoid the WDA and transit around it. However, this potential shift in traffic does not increase the risk of interaction with listed species as densities of listed species are not incrementally higher outside the WDA such that risk of ship strike would increase. As

such, even if there is a shift in vessel traffic outside of the WDA or any other change in traffic patterns due to the construction and operation of the project, any effects to listed species would be so small that they would not be able to be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected and are therefore, insignificant.

7.2.5 Air Emissions Regulated by the OCS Air Permit

The proposed OCS Air Permit (EPA 2021) considers effects of air emissions from sources that meet the definitions for coverage under the permit as described in the Fact Sheet. As described by EPA, the "potential to emit" for this OCS source includes emissions from vessels installing the WTGs and the Offshore Substation (OSS), engines on the WTGs and OSS, as well as vessels that are at and are traveling within 25 miles to-and-from the windfarm during construction, operations and maintenance of the windfarm. Criteria air pollutant emissions and their precursors generated from the construction and operation of the windfarm include nitrogen oxides, carbon monoxide, sulfur dioxide, particulate matter, and volatile organic compounds. These air pollutants are associated with the combustion of diesel fuel in a vessel's propulsion and auxiliary engines and the engine(s) located on WTGs and OSS.

In the Fact Sheet, EPA notes that the pollutant-emitting activities within the work area (WA) are part of a single plan to construct and operate an offshore windfarm. They also note that it is appropriate and reasonable to aggregate the estimated 15 WTGs, OSS, and OCS source vessels, operating within the WA, into a single OCS facility for purposes of applying the part 55 OCS permitting regulations and a single stationary source for purposes of applying the prevention of significant deterioration (PSD) and nonattainment new source review (NNSR) permit program elements. They also note that once the facility meets the definition of an OCS source, emissions from vessels servicing or associated with any part of the OCS facility are included in the potential emissions from the facility while traveling to and from any part of the OCS facility when within 25 miles of the centroid of the facility. The proposed OCS Air Permit considers emissions only during the construction and operations/maintenance phases of the project. As explained in the Fact Sheet, EPA states, "due to the fact that the decommissioning phase of the windfarm will occur well into the future, the EPA is unable to determine best available control technology (BACT) and lowest achievable emissions rate (LAER) for the decommissioning phase and will not be permitting this phase at this time." Below, we address air quality effects and decommissioning, given decommissioning is part of BOEM's COP approval/disapproval. However, the effects of air emissions during decommissioning are not considered in this consultation with regard to EPA's action because EPA did not include it in its permit. Reinitiation may be necessary in the future to consider these effects once there is sufficient information to determine what the Best Available Control Technology will be during the decommissioning phase and what effects to listed species and/or critical habitat are reasonably certain to occur.

As described in the Fact Sheet developed by EPA to support permit issuance, EPA has determined that the ambient air impact analysis done in support of the proposed OCS Air Permit shows that the impact from the OCS facility operation will not cause or contribute to a violation of applicable national ambient air quality standards (NAAQS) or prevention of significant deterioration (PSD) increments. The NAAQS are health-based standards that the EPA sets to protect public health with an adequate margin of safety. The PSD increments are designed to ensure that air quality in an area that meets the NAAQS does not significantly deteriorate from baseline levels. The analysis also shows that construction phase emissions for both the facility and OECLA will not cause significant impacts for the PSD increments at any Class I area (national parks and wilderness areas). In addition, the air quality impact analysis demonstrated that operation of the facility will not adversely cause impairment to soils, vegetation, or visibility at Class I areas.

Based on the analysis presented by EPA in the Fact Sheet, any effects to air quality from the construction and operations phases of the proposed action are likely to be very small. Given the types of activities and vessels needed for construction and decommissioning (e.g., driving/removing piles, laying/removing cable, etc) are similar, we assume the effects to air quality from decommissioning are similar to those of construction such that the air quality effects from the proposed action as a whole are still likely to be minor. At this time, there is no information on the effects of air quality on listed species that may occur in the action area. However, as the PSD increments are designed to ensure that air quality in the area regulated by the permit do not significantly deteriorate from baseline levels, it is reasonable to conclude that any effects to listed species from these emissions will be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated and therefore are insignificant.

7.3 Effects to Habitat and Environmental Conditions during Construction

Here, we consider the effects to listed species from alterations or disruptions to habitat and environmental conditions during the construction phase of the project. Specifically, we address cable installation, work to develop the Lake Montauk Operations and Maintenance Facility, turbidity resulting from pile driving and installation of scour protection to support installation of the wind turbine generators and offshore substation, and project lighting during construction.

7.3.1 Cable Installation

The South Fork Export Cable (SFEC) is a 138-kV alternating current (AC) electric cable that would connect the South Fork Wind Farm (SFWF) to the mainland electric grid in East Hampton, New York. The SFEC includes both offshore and onshore segments. Offshore, the SFEC would be located in federal waters (SFEC-OCS) and New York State territorial waters (SFEC-NYS). A sea-to-shore transition would connect the SFEC-NYS to the onshore underground segment of the export cable (SFEC-Onshore) via an onshore transition vault located in the town of East Hampton on Long Island, Suffolk County, New York. Detailed specifications of offshore inter-array cables and the export cable are provided in Section 3.2 of the COP.

South Fork Wind is proposing to lay the inter-array cable and offshore export cable using cable installation equipment that could include either a mechanical cutter, mechanical plow (which may include a jetting system), and/or jet plow. The burial method will be dependent on suitable seabed conditions and sediments along the cable route. Installation of the offshore export cable may also include use of a displacement plow, which mechanically displaces materials from the trench so that the cable can be laid in the trench. In addition, the vessel used for burial of the offshore export cable may use a pull-ahead anchor deployed in front of the vessel to assist during cable burial operations. The installation methodologies for the inter-array cables and the offshore export cable are described in the COP sections 3.1.3.3 and 3.2.3.2 respectively. Prior to installation of the cables, geophysical surveys and a pre-lay grapnel run (PLGR) would be performed to locate and clear obstructions such as abandoned fishing gear and other marine debris. Following the PLGR, cable installation trials would occur to test that the installation equipment is working properly and is appropriate for the seabed conditions. Additionally, boulders may be relocated within sections of the corridor for the cable route.

If seabed conditions do not permit burial of inter-array cables, South Fork Wind is proposing to employ other methods of cable protection such as fronded mattresses, rock bags, rock, or engineered concrete mattresses (see Table 3.1-1 of the COP for details). A cable inspection would be developed to confirm the cable burial depth along the route and to identify the need for any further remedial burial activities and/or secondary cable protection. If seabed conditions do not permit burial of the offshore export cable, South Fork Wind is proposing remedial burial using a controlled flow excavator or other methods of cable protection (e.g., rock or engineered concrete mattresses). South Fork Wind would cross other existing telecommunications cables using industry standards, including cable protection and clearing of inactive cables from the burial route, where applicable. Details regarding cable protection at crossings are provided in Tables 3.2-2 and 3.2-3 in the COP.

The sea-to-shore transition connects the SFEC-NYS to the SFEC-Onshore. The sea-to-shore transition will include an onshore transition vault, cable installed using HDD under the beach and intertidal water and may also include a temporary cofferdam located offshore beyond the intertidal zone. If conditions require a cofferdam, South Fork Wind is proposing to use either sheet pile or gravity cell construction. Details for cofferdam installation are provided in Section 3.2.3.4 of the COP; acoustic effects of cofferdam installation are presented in section 7.1 of this Opinion.

7.3.1.1 Pre-lay Grapnel Run and Boulder Relocation

Prior to installation of the cables, a pre-lay grapnel run would be performed to locate and clear obstructions such as abandoned fishing gear and other marine debris. Additionally, large boulders that cannot be avoided would be relocated from the cable path to maintain their habitat value. The pre-lay grapnel run will involve towing a grapnel, via the main cable laying vessel, along the benthos of the cable burial route. During the pre-lay grapnel run, the cable-lay vessel will tow the grapnel at slow speeds (i.e., approximately 1 knot or less) to ensure all debris is removed. Boulder relocation will occur within 65 feet (20 m) on each side of the centerline and will be completed by a towing tug with a towed plow, which forms an extended “V” shaped configuration that forces boulders to the extremities of the plow. Where appropriate, a boulder grab tool deployed from a DP vessel would also be used to relocate isolated or individual boulders. Given the very slow speed of the operation, any listed species in the vicinity are expected to be able to avoid the devices and avoid an interaction. Additionally, as the cable of the grapnel run will remain taught as it is pulled along the benthos, there is no risk for any listed species to become entangled in the cable. For these reasons, any interaction between the pre-lay grapnel run, a plow, or a boulder grab tool and listed species is extremely unlikely to occur.

7.3.1.2 Turbidity from Cable Installation

Installation of the SFEC and inter-array cable would disrupt bottom habitat and suspend sediment in the water column. Vinhaterio et al. (2018) modeled anticipated total suspended solids (TSS) levels and the time required to dissipate those levels to ambient conditions. BOEM indicates in the COP that the installation of the inter-array cable is expected to result in the greatest amount of sediment suspension to and deposition in the SFWF area. The greatest potential impact of turbidity from cable laying would occur if South Fork Wind uses the jet plow, one of three potential types of equipment for cable installation. Modeling of hydrodynamic and sediment transport (COP, Appendix I; Vinhaterio et al. 2018) was completed for the SFWF inter-array cable assuming one pass of the cable-laying equipment between two WTGs within one day as a representative case. Model scenarios considered two seasonal tidal conditions to construct representative cases. As described in the COP, modeling indicates that the maximum predicted TSS concentration from the inter-array cable installation activities is 100 milligrams per liter (mg/L). Modeling predicts that water column concentrations of 100 mg/L will extend up to 131 feet (40 m) from the source and TSS concentrations will return to ambient levels (<10 mg/L) within 0.3 hours from the conclusion of trenching. The maximum predicted deposition thickness is estimated to be 0.4 inch (10 mm) and limited to within 26 feet (8 M) of the burial route, covering an estimated cumulative area of 0.1 acre (0.04 ha). The potential for sedimentation and deposition from the installation of the SFEC-OCS is similar to that explained for the inter-array cable. However, the length and location of the SFEC is different from the inter-array cable. Modeling for the installation of the SFEC-OCS predicts a maximum TSS concentration of 1,347 mg/L. TSS concentrations at or above 100 mg/L are predicted to extend a maximum 1,115 feet (340 m) from the source and TSS concentrations are predicted to remain elevated above ambient levels for 1.4 hours after the conclusion of trenching. The maximum predicted deposition thickness is 0.45 inch (11.4 mm). Sedimentation at or above 0.39 inch (1.0 cm) is predicted to extend a maximum of 29.5 feet (9 m) from the burial route and cover a cumulative area of 4.3 acres (1.74 ha) of the seabed.

Atlantic sturgeon

Atlantic sturgeon are adapted to natural fluctuations in water turbidity through repeated exposure (e.g., high water runoff in riverine habitat, storm events) and are adapted to living in turbid environments (Hastings 1983, ECOPR Consulting 2009). Atlantic sturgeon forage at the bottom by rooting in soft sediments meaning that they are routinely exposed to high levels of suspended sediments. Few data have been published reporting the effects of suspended sediment on sturgeon. Garakouei et al. (2009) calculated Maximum Allowable Concentrations (MAC) for total suspended solids in a laboratory study with *Acipenser stellatus* and *A. persicus* fingerlings (7-10 cm TL). The MAC value for suspended sediments was calculated as 853.9 mg/L for *A. stellatus* and 1,536.7 mg/L for *A. persicus*. All stellate sturgeon exposed to 1,000 and 2,320 mg/L TSS for 48 hours survived. All Persian sturgeon exposed to TSS of 5,000, 7,440, and 11,310 mg/L for 48 hours survived. Given that Atlantic sturgeon occupy similar habitats as these sturgeon species we expect them to be a reasonable surrogate for Atlantic sturgeon. Wilkens et al. (2015) contained young of the year Atlantic sturgeon (100-175 mm TL) for a 3-day period in flow-through aquaria, with limited opportunity for movement, in sediment of varying concentrations (100, 250 and 500 mg L−1 TSS) mimicking prolonged exposure to suspended sediment plumes near an operating dredge. Four-percent of the test fish died; one was exposed to 250 TSS and three to 500 TSS for the full three-day period. The authors concluded that the impacts of sediment plumes associated with dredging are minimal where fish have the ability to move or escape. As tolerance to environmental stressors, including suspended sediment, increases with size and age (ASMFC 2012), we expect that the subadult and adults in the action area would be less sensitive to TSS than the test fish used in both of these studies.

Any Atlantic sturgeon within 40 m of the cable laying operations for the inter-array cable would be exposed to TSS of up to 100 mg/L. These elevated TSS levels are not expected to persist for more than 0.3 hours. Atlantic sturgeon within 340 m of the cable laying operations for the SFEC in federal waters would be exposed to TSS at or above 100 mg/L. Elevated TSS levels associated with SFEC-OCS installation are not expected to persist for more than 1.4 hours. Based on the information summarized above, any exposure to TSS would be below levels that would be expected to result in any effects to the subadult or adult Atlantic sturgeon occurring in the action area. As such, Atlantic sturgeon are extremely unlikely to experience any physiological or behavioral responses to exposure to increased TSS. Effects to Atlantic sturgeon prey are addressed below.

Whales

In a review of dredging impacts to marine mammals, Todd et al. (2015) found that direct effects from turbidity have not been documented in the available scientific literature. Because whales breathe air, some of the concerns about impacts of TSS on fish (i.e., gill clogging or abrasion) are not relevant. Cronin et al. (2017) suggest that vision may be used by North Atlantic right whale to find copepod aggregations, particularly if they locate prey concentrations by looking upwards. However, Fasick et al. (2017) indicate that North Atlantic right whales certainly must rely on other sensory systems (e.g. vibrissae on the snout) to detect dense patches of prey in very dim light (at depths >160 meters or at night). Because ESA listed whales often forage at depths deeper than light penetration (i.e., it is dark), which suggests that vision is not relied on exclusively for foraging, TSS that reduces visibility would not be expected to affect foraging ability. Data are not available regarding whales avoidance of localized turbidity plumes; however, Todd et al. (2015) conclude that since marine mammals often live in turbid waters and frequently occur at depths without light penetration, impacts from turbidity are not anticipated to occur. As such, any effects to ESA listed whales from exposure to increased turbidity during cable installation are extremely unlikely to occur. If turbidity-related effects did occur, they would likely be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected and would therefore be insignificant. Effects on prey are considered below.

Sea Turtles

Similar to whales, because sea turtles breathe air, some of the concerns about impacts of TSS on fish (i.e., gill clogging or abrasion) are not relevant. There is no scientific literature available on the effects of exposure of sea turtles to increased TSS. Michel et al. (2013) indicates that since sea turtles feed in water that varies in turbidity levels, changes in such conditions are extremely unlikely to inhibit sea turtle foraging even if they use vision to forage. Based on the available information, we expect that any effects to sea turtles from exposure to increased turbidity during dredging or cable installation are extremely unlikely to occur. If turbidity-related effects did occur, they would likely be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected and would therefore be insignificant. Effects on prey are considered below.

7.3.1.3 Potential for Entanglement during Cable Laying

The jet plow uses jets of water to liquefy the sediment, creating a trench in which the cable is laid. Cable laying operations proceed at speeds of <1 knot. At these speeds, any sturgeon, sea turtle, or whale is expected to be able to avoid any interactions with the cable laying operation.

Additionally, as the cable will be taut as it is unrolled and laid in the trench, there is no risk of entanglement. Based on this information, entanglement of any species during the cable laying operation is extremely unlikely to occur.

7.3.1.4 Impacts of Cable Installation on Prey

Cable installation could affect prey of Atlantic sturgeon, sea turtles, and whales due to impacts of sediment disturbance during cable laying or exposure to increased TSS. Here, we provide a brief summary of the prey that the various listed species forage on and then consider the effects of cable installation on prey, with the analysis organized by prey type.

Right whales

Right whales feed almost exclusively on copepods, a type of zooplankton. Of the different kinds of copepods, North Atlantic right whales feed especially on late stage Calanus finmarchicus, a large calanoid copepod (Baumgartner et al.. 2007), as well as Pseudocalanus spp. and Centropages spp. (Pace and Merrick 2008). Because a right whale’s mass is ten or eleven orders of magnitude larger than that of its prey (late stage C. finmarchicus is approximately the size of a small grain of rice), right whales are very specialized and restricted in their habitat requirements – they must locate and exploit feeding areas where copepods are concentrated into high-density patches (Pace and Merrick 2008).

Fin whales

Fin whales in the North Atlantic eat pelagic crustaceans (mainly euphausiids or krill, including Meganyctiphanes norvegica and Thysanoessa inerrnis) and schooling fish such as capelin (Mallotus villosus), herring (Clupea harengus), and sand lance (Ammodytes spp.) (NMFS 2010). Fin whales feed by lunging into schools of prey with their mouth open, using their 50 to 100 accordion-like throat pleats to gulp large amounts of food and water. A fin whale eats up to 2 tons of food every day during the summer months.

Sei whales

An average sei whale eats about 2,000 pounds of food per day. They can dive 5 to 20 minutes to feed on plankton (including copepods and krill), small schooling fish, and cephalopods (including squid) by both gulping and skimming.

Sperm whales

Sperm whales hunt for food during deep dives with feeding occurring at depths of 500–1000 m depths (NMFS 2010). Deepwater squid make up the majority of their diet (NMFS 2010). Given the shallow depths of the area where the cable will be installed (less than 50 m), it is extremely unlikely that any sperm whales would be foraging in the area affected by the cable installation and extremely unlikely that any potential sperm whale prey would be affected by cable installation.

Green sea turtles

Green sea turtles feed primarily on sea grasses and may feed on algae. The cable route is designed to avoid areas with sea grasses; therefore, no effects to sea turtle forage are anticipated.

Loggerhead and Kemp’s ridley sea turtles

Loggerhead turtles feed on benthic invertebrates such as gastropods, mollusks, and crustaceans. Diet studies focused on North Atlantic juvenile stage loggerheads indicate that benthic invertebrates, notably mollusks and benthic crabs, are the primary food items (Burke et al. 1993, Youngkin 2001, Seney 2003). Limited studies of adult loggerheads indicate that mollusks and benthic crabs make up their primary diet, similar to the more thoroughly studied neritic juvenile stage (Youngkin 2001). Kemp's ridleys primarily feed on crabs, with a preference for portunid crabs including blue crabs; crabs make up the bulk of the Kemp's ridley diet (NMFS et al. 2011).

Leatherback sea turtles

Leatherback sea turtles feed exclusively on jellyfish. A study of the foraging ecology of leatherbacks off the coast of Massachusetts indicates that leatherbacks foraging off Massachusetts primarily consume the scyphozoan jellyfishes, Cyanea capillata and Chrysaora quinquecirrha, and ctenophores, while a smaller proportion of their diet comes from holoplanktonic salps and sea butterflies (Cymbuliidae) (Dodge et al. 2011).

Atlantic sturgeon

Atlantic sturgeon are opportunistic benthivores that feed primarily on mollusks, polychaete worms, amphipods, isopods, shrimps and small bottom-dwelling fishes (Smith 1985, Dadswell 2006). A stomach content analysis of Atlantic sturgeon captured off the coast of New Jersey indicates that polycheates were the primary prey group consumed; although the isopod Politolana concharum was the most important individual prey eaten (Johnson et al. 2008). The authors determined that mollusks and fish contributed little to the diet and that some prey taxa (i.e., polychaetes, isopods, amphipods) exhibited seasonal variation in importance in the diet of Atlantic sturgeon. Novak et al. (2017) examined stomach contents from Atlantic sturgeon captured at the mouth of the Saco River, Maine and determined that American Sand Lance Ammodytes americanus was the most common and most important prey.

Effects of Cable Installation on the Prey Base of ESA Listed Species in the Action Area

Copepods

Copepods exhibit diel vertical migration; that is, they migrate downward out of the euphotic zone at dawn, presumably to avoid being eaten by visual predators, and they migrate upward into surface waters at dusk to graze on phytoplankton at night (Baumgartner and Fratantoni 2008; Baumgartner et al. 2011). Baugmartner et al. (2011) concludes that there is considerable variability in this behavior and that it may be related to stratification and presence of phytoplankton prey with some copepods in the Gulf of Maine remaining at the surface and some remaining at depth. Because copepods even at depth are not in contact with the substrate, we do not anticipate any burial or loss of copepods during installation of the cable. We were unable to identify any scientific literature that evaluated the effects to marine copepods of exposure to TSS. Based on what we know about effects of TSS on other aquatic life, it is possible that high concentrations of TSS could negatively affect copepods. However, given that: the expected TSS levels are below those that are expected to result in effects to even the most sensitive species evaluated; the sediment plume will be transient and temporary (i.e., persisting in any one area for no more than three hours); elevated TSS is limited to the bottom 3 meters of the water column; and will occupy only a small portion of the WDA at any given time, any effects to copepod availability, distribution, or abundance on foraging whales would be so small that they could not be meaningfully evaluated, measured, or detected. Therefore, effects are insignificant.

Fish

As explained above, elevated TSS will be experienced along the cable corridor during cable installation. Anticipated TSS levels are below the levels expected to result in the mortality of fish that are preyed upon by fin or sei whales or Atlantic sturgeon. In general, fish can tolerate at least short term exposure to high levels of TSS. Wilber and Clarke (2001) reviews available information on the effects of exposure of estuarine fish and shellfish to suspended sediment. In an assessment of available information on sublethal effects to non-salmonids, they report that the lowest observed concentration–duration combination eliciting a sublethal response in white perch was 650 mg/L for 5 d, which increased blood hematocrit (Sherk et al. 1974 in Wilber and Clarke 2001). Regarding lethal effects, Atlantic silversides and white perch were among the estuarine fish with the most sensitive lethal responses to suspended sediment exposures, exhibiting 10% mortality at sediment concentrations less than 1,000 mg/L for durations of 1 and 2 days, respectively (Wilber and Clarke 2001). Forage fish in the action area will be exposed to maximum TSS concentration-duration combinations far less than those demonstrated to result in sublethal or lethal effects of the most sensitive non-salmonids for which information is available. Based on this, we do not anticipate the mortality of any forage fish; therefore we do not anticipate any reduction in fish as prey for fin or sei whales or Atlantic sturgeon.

Benthic Invertebrates

In the BA, BOEM indicates that an area approximately 10-feet wide will be disturbed during cable installation; this is likely to result in the mortality of some benthic invertebrates in the path of the jet plow. Immediately following cable installation, this area will likely be devoid of any benthic invertebrates. However, given the narrow area, we expect recolonization to occur from adjacent areas that were not disturbed; therefore, this reduction in potential forage will be temporary.

As explained above, elevated TSS will be experienced along the cable corridor during cable installation. Because polychaete worms live in the sediment, we do not expect any effects due to exposure to elevated TSS in the water column. Wilbur and Clarke (2001) reviewed available information on effects of TSS exposure on crustacean and report that in experiments shorter than 2 weeks, nearly all mortality of crustaceans occurred with exposure to concentrations of suspended sediments exceeding 10,000 mg/L and that the majority of these mortality levels were less than 25%, even at very high concentrations. Wilbur and Clarke (2001) also noted that none of the crustaceans tested exhibited detrimental responses at dosages within the realm of TSS exposure anticipated in association with dredging. Based on this information, we do not anticipate any effects to crustaceans resulting from exposure to TSS associated with cable installation. Given the thin layer of deposition associated with the settling of TSS out of the water column following cable installation we do not anticipate any effects to benthic invertebrates. Based on this analysis, we expect any impact of the loss of benthic invertebrates to foraging Kemp’s ridley and loggerhead sea turtles and Atlantic sturgeon due to cable installation to be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected and, therefore, are insignificant.

Jellyfish
A literature search revealed no information on the effects of exposure to elevated TSS on jellyfish. However, given the location of jellyfish in the water column and the information presented in the BA that indicates that any sediment plume associated with cable installation will be limited to the bottom 3 meters of the water column, we expect any exposure of jellyfish to TSS to be minimal. Based on this analysis, effects to leatherback sea turtles resulting from effects to their jellyfish prey are extremely unlikely to occur.

7.3.1.5 On Shore Cable Connections

The proposed landfall location is in East Hampton, New York at either Beach Lane or Hither Hills. The transition of the export cable from offshore to onshore would include a new onshore transition vault and would be accomplished by horizontal directional drilling (HDD), which would bring the proposed cable beneath the nearshore area, the tidal zone, beach, and adjoining coastal areas to one of the two proposed landfall sites. The workspace for the HDD and drill entry point would be located at least 650 feet (198 m) onshore from the mean high water line (MHWL) at both Beach Lane and Hither Hills. The HDD (as well as the conduit and the cable) would end at least 1,750 feet (533 m) offshore from the MHWL at both Beach Lane and Hither Hills.

For the construction of the HDD a drilling fluid of bentonite-water-based mud or another non-toxic drilling fluid would be used to cool the drill bit, maintain borehole stability, and control fluid loss during operations. Drilling mud would be injected into the drill pipe onshore using pumps that are located within the HDD workspace. The mud would be jetted through a rotating drill bit attached at the end of the drill pipe. Jetting of the mud would cool the drill bit and suspend drill cuttings within the mud solution. Mud and cuttings would flow back to the surface in the gap between the drill pipe and bore hole, which would stabilize the bore hole. Once the mud flows back to the borehole entry, it would be collected and reused.

HDD allows the cable to transition from the onshore to marine environment under the sediments. Before HDD begins, a temporary cofferdam may be installed where the conduit exits from the seabed to facilitate cable pull-in. Alternatively, the HDD might be installed without a cofferdam. If conditions require a cofferdam, it will be installed as either a sheet piled structure into the sea floor or a gravity cell structure placed on the sea floor using ballast weight. Noise associated with cofferdam installation is addressed in section 7.1 of this Opinion.

If a cofferdam is required, the drill bit would enter the cofferdam under the cofferdam shoreside end wall with sufficient clearance to facilitate the pilot hole, drill head, and HDPE conduit. Once the pilot-hole exits in the cofferdam, the hole would be opened to a diameter of approximately 32 inches (81 cm) to install the conduit. If no cofferdam is used, a small construction vessel would monitor the completion of the HDD drilling. This vessel would ensure that no drilling mud would be released.

The conduit, consisting of a thick-walled HDPE pipe with a maximum diameter of 24 inches (61 cm), would be inserted through the entire length of the bore hole through which the submarine cable would be installed. After installation of the conduit, a transition vault would be installed onshore around the drill pit. A pull line would be placed inside the finished conduit to facilitate pulling the SFEC through the conduit. After the SFEC is pulled through the conduit, the submarine and fiber optic cables would be spliced to the SFEC - Onshore cable within the transition vault.

The only in-water work involved in the transition of the export cable from offshore to onshore would be at the transition site where a temporary cofferdam would be installed. The installation process would be the same at Beach Lane or Hither Hills, although the specific locations of the transition vault and cofferdam would be different at each site. Given the shallow, nearshore location of either transition site, we do not expect any whales, sea turtles, or Atlantic sturgeon to be exposed to any effects of the cofferdam installation or cable pull-in.

As noted in Section 3.1, South Fork is expected to require authorization under the State of New York's SPDES General Permit for Stormwater Discharges from Construction Activity. This requires development of a Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan in accordance with state regulations. With this plan in place, any effects to listed species that may be exposed to discharge from the construction activity will be extremely unlikely to occur or so small that they can not be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated, and are therefore insignificant.

7.3.2 Lake Montauk O&M Facility

The O&M facility would be located in Lake Montauk Harbor, a shallow coastal embayment surrounded by natural and developed shorelines. The facility would be sited in developed harbor areas adjacent to the federally maintained navigation channel and boat basin at the northern end of the bay. Subtidal depths in this area range from -2 to -20 feet MLLW (USACE 2018). The surrounding shorelines are mostly bulkhead, armored, or otherwise modified and intertidal habitats been dredged to provide vessel access.

South Fork Wind is proposing to use a mechanical clamshell working from a barge to dredge up to approximately 2,500 cubic yards of sediment from an approximately 1,500 square foot area to a depth of 12.4 feet below the plane of mean low water, including a 1-foot overdredge. The dredged material would be loaded directly into scows. Once full, the scow may be allowed to settle and decant excess water. The scow would be transported off the beach west of the Montauk Harbor entrance where sediment would be pumped to shore. The sediment would be dewatered in a contained location on the beach, in an approximately 1,200 foot long by 25 foot wide area, landward of the plane of spring high water, then eventually spread as beach nourishment along the beach adjacent to the dewatering area, between the planes of mean high water and spring high water. Additional maintenance dredging events would occur annually over a 10-year period, up to approximately 1,500 cubic yards per event.

7.3.2.1 Mechanical Dredging: Entrapment

Mechanical dredging entails lowering the open bucket or clam shell through the water column, closing the bucket after impact on the bottom, lifting the bucket up through the water column, and emptying the bucket into a barge or truck. The bucket operates without suction or hydraulic intake, moves relatively slowly through the water column, and impacts only a small area of the aquatic bottom at any time. In order to be captured in a dredge bucket, an animal must be on the bottom directly below the dredge bucket as it impacts the substrate and remain stationary as the bucket closes. Species captured in dredge buckets can be injured or killed if entrapped in the bucket or buried in sediment during dredging and/or when sediment is deposited into the dredge scow. Species captured and emptied out of the bucket can suffer stress or injury, which can lead to mortality.

Due to the shallow, near shore location, whales are not expected in the area to be dredged, and even if present are far too large to be susceptible to entrapment by a mechanical dredge. As such, interactions between the dredge and ESA listed whales are extremely unlikely to occur.

Sea turtles are not known to be vulnerable to capture in mechanical dredges, presumably because they are able to avoid the dredge bucket. Thus, if a sea turtle were to be present at the dredge site, it would be extremely unlikely to be captured, injured or killed as a result of dredging operations carried out by a mechanical dredge. Based on this information, interactions between sea turtles and the mechanical dredge are extremely unlikely to occur.

Atlantic Sturgeon

The risk of interactions between sturgeon and mechanical dredges is thought to be highest in areas where large numbers of sturgeon are known to aggregate. The risk of capture may also be related to the behavior of the sturgeon in the area. While foraging, sturgeon are at the bottom interacting with the sediment. This behavior may increase the susceptibility of capture with a dredge bucket. The area to be dredged at the O&M facility is not known to be used by Atlantic sturgeon and given the location and habitat conditions, occurrence of Atlantic sturgeon in this area is expected to be rare. For entrapment to occur, an individual sturgeon would have to be present directly below the dredge bucket at the time of operation. Given the rarity of sturgeon in the area to be dredged, the co-occurrence of an Atlantic sturgeon and the dredge bucket is extremely unlikely. As such, entrapment of sturgeon during the temporary performance of dredging operations is also extremely unlikely.

7.3.2.2 Turbidity associated with Dredging

Suspended sediment levels from conventional mechanical clamshell bucket dredging operations range from 105 mg/L in the middle of the water column to 445 mg/L near the bottom (210 mg/L, depth-averaged) (USACE 2001). A study by Burton (1993) measured turbidity levels 500, 1,000, 2,000 and 3,300 feet from dredge sites in the Delaware River and were able to detect turbidity levels between 15 mg/Land 191 mg/L up to 2,000 feet from the dredge site. Based on these analyses, elevated suspended sediment levels of up to 445 mg/L may be present in the immediate vicinity of the clamshell bucket, and suspended sediment levels of up to 191 mg/L could be present within a 2,000-foot radius from the location of the clamshell dredge.

Effects of increased turbidity on sea turtles

Limited information is available on the effects of increased turbidity on juvenile and adult sea turtles. Sea turtles breathe air, and thus are not subject to the same potential respiratory effects of high turbidity as anadromous fish. Increased turbidity is most likely to affect sea turtles if a plume causes a barrier to normal behaviors or if sediment settles on the bottom affecting sea turtle prey. As sea turtles are highly mobile, they are likely to be able to avoid any sediment plumes caused by dredging near the O&M facility. Any minor movement to avoid a sediment plume will be too small to be meaningfully measured, detected or evaluated, and is therefore, insignificant.

Any far field effects of sedimentation will be temporary and minimal, and benthic resources are likely only to be affected if turbidity levels rise above 390 mg/L (EPA 1986). Leatherback's primary prey item is jellyfish, which occur in the water column; we do not expect jellyfish to be affected by turbidity associated with dredging. Kemp's ridley and loggerhead sea turtles may feed on benthic shellfish or crustaceans, but these species are expected to be able to avoid or uncover themselves from any of the short-term turbidity produced by dredging. Therefore, any effects to sea turtle forage items will be too small to be meaningfully measured, detected or evaluated, and are therefore, insignificant.

Effects of increased turbidity on sturgeon

As explained in the *Turbidity from Cable Installation* section above, Atlantic sturgeon are often documented in turbid water (Dadswell *et al.* 1984). Wilkens et al. (2015) contained young of the year Atlantic sturgeon (100-175 mm TL) for a 3-day period in flow-through aquaria, with limited opportunity for movement, in sediment of varying concentrations (100, 250 and 500 mg L−1 total suspended solids [TSS]) mimicking prolonged exposure to suspended sediment plumes near an operating dredge. Four-percent of the test fish died; one was exposed to 250 TSS and three to 500 TSS for the full three-day period. The authors concluded that the impacts of sediment plumes associated with dredging are minimal where fish have the ability to move or escape. As tolerance to environmental stressors, including suspended sediment, increases with size and age (ASMFC 2012), we expect that the subadult and adults in the action area would be less sensitive to TSS than the test fish used in both of these studies and will be able to swim through or around a sediment plume without experiencing adverse effects. Any such avoidance would be so minor a movement as to be too small to be meaningfully measured, detected or evaluated, and is therefore insignificant.

7.3.2.3 Impacts of Dredging on Prey

While not expected to occur regularly, sea turtles and Atlantic sturgeon could opportunistically forage on benthic invertebrates in the area to be dredged. We do not anticipate any effects to green sea turtle foraging habitat because no submerged aquatic vegetation occurs in or near (within 500 ft.) of the dredge or disposal site and no sea grasses will be affected by the dredging. Dredging would likely disturb no more than approximately 1,500 square feet of bottom substrate in the current and future maintenance dredge cycles, resulting in a short-term loss of benthic organisms and shellfish that could serve as forage for Atlantic sturgeon and sea turtles. Some benthic invertebrates that sturgeon and turtles feed on have limited mobility and could be temporarily buried during disposal options. Some buried animals will be able to migrate upward through the sediment and reestablish themselves. Studies reviewed by Wilbur and Clarke (2007) demonstrate that benthic communities in temperate regions occupying shallow waters with a combination of sand, silt, or clay substrate reported recovery times between 1-11 months after dredging. Thus, we expect benthic communities to recover in less than one year; however, given the frequency of dredging (annually) the benthic community will likely be in a constant state of disturbance and recovery over the 10 year period. Despite this, given that this area is small and use by foraging turtles or sturgeon is expected to be limited to occasional, opportunistic use, effects from the loss of potential forage will be too small to be meaningfully measured, detected or evaluated and, therefore, are insignificant.

7.3.3 Turbidity during WTG and OSS Installation

Pile driving for WTG and OSS installation as well as the deposition of rock for scour protection at the base of these foundations may result in a minor and temporary increase in suspended sediment in the area immediately surrounding the foundation or scour protection being installed. The amount of sediment disturbed during these activities is minimal; thus, any associated increase in TSS will be small and significantly lower than the TSS associated with cable installation addressed above. Given the very small increase in TSS associated with foundation installation and placement of scour protection, any physiological or behavioral responses by ESA listed species from exposure to TSS are extremely unlikely to occur.

7.3.4 Lighting

In general, lights will be required on offshore platforms and structures, vessels, and construction equipment during construction. Construction activities would occur 24 hours a day to minimize the overall duration of activities and the associated period of potential impact on marine species. Although not anticipated, South Fork Wind expects that pile driving that was started during daylight could continue after dark or in low visibility conditions. Construction and support vessels would be required to display lights when operating at night and deck lights would be required to illuminate work areas. However, lights would be down shielded to illuminate the deck, and would not intentionally illuminate surrounding waters. If sea turtles, Atlantic sturgeon, whales, or their prey are attracted to the lights, it could increase the potential for interaction with equipment or associated turbidity. However, due to the nature of project activities and associated seafloor disturbance, turbidity, and noise, listed species and their prey are not likely to be attracted by lighting because they are disturbed by these other factors. As such, we have determined that any effects of project lighting on sea turtles, sturgeon, or whales are extremely unlikely.

Lighting may also be required at on shore areas, such as where the cables will make landfall. Many of the onshore areas used for staging will be part of an industrial port where artificial lighting already exists. Sea turtle hatchlings are known to be attracted to lights and artificial beach lighting is known to disrupt proper orientation towards the sea. However, due to the distance from the nearest nesting beach to the project area (the straight line distance through the Atlantic Ocean from Virginia Beach, VA, the northernmost area where successful nesting has occurred, and the WDA is more than 600 km), there is no potential for project lighting to impact the orientation of any sea turtle hatchlings.

7.4 Effects to Habitat and Environmental Conditions during Operation

Here, we consider the effects to listed species from alterations or disruptions to habitat and environmental conditions during the operations phase of the project. Specifically, we address electromagnetic fields and heat during cable operation, project lighting during operations, and the effects of project structures.

7.4.1 Electromagnetic Fields and Heat during Cable Operation

Electromagnetic fields (EMF) are generated by current flow passing through power cables during operation and can be divided into electric fields (called E-fields, measured in volts per meter, V/m) and magnetic fields (called B-fields, measured in μT) (Taormina et al. 2018). Buried cables reduce, but do not entirely eliminate, EMF (Taormina et al. 2018). When electric energy is transported, a certain amount is lost as heat by the Joule effect, leading to an increase in temperature at the cable surface and a subsequent warming of the sediments immediately surrounding the cable; for buried cables, thermal radiation can warm the surrounding sediment in direct contact with the cable, even at several tens of centimeters away from it (Taormina et al. 2018).

To minimize EMF generated by cables, all cabling would be contained in grounded metallic shielding to prevent detectable direct electric fields. South Fork Wind would also bury cables to a target burial depth of approximately 4 – 6 feet (1.2 – 1.8 meters) below the surface or utilize cable protection (e.g., rock or concrete mattresses). The metallic shielding and sediments used for burial are expected to completely contain the electrical field (Bevelhimer et al. 2013). However, magnetic field emissions cannot be reduced by shielding, although multiple-stranded cables can be designed so that the individual strands cancel out a portion of the fields emitted by the other strands. Normandeau et al. (2011) compiled data from a number of existing sources, including 19 undersea cable systems in the U.S., to characterize EMF associated with cables consistent with those proposed for wind farms. The dataset considers cables consistent with those proposed by South Fork Wind (i.e., 34.5 kV and 138 kV). In the paper, the authors present information indicating that the maximum anticipated magnetic field would be experienced directly above the cable (i.e., 0 m above the cable and 0 m lateral distance), with the strength of the magnetic field dissipating with distance. Based on this data, the maximum anticipated magnetic field would be 7.85 µT at the source, dissipating to 0.08 µT at a distance of 10 m above the source and 10 m lateral distance. By comparison, the Earth's geomagnetic field strength ranges from approximately 20 to 75 µT (Bochert and Zettler 2006).

When electric energy is transported, a certain amount gets lost as heat, leading to an increased temperature of the cable surface and subsequent warming of the surrounding environment (OSPAR 2009). As described in Taormina et al. (2018), the only published field measurement study results are from the 166 MW Nysted wind energy project in the Baltic Sea (maximal production capacity of about 166 MW), in the proximity of two 33 and 132 kV AC cables buried approximately 1 m deep in a medium sand area. In situ monitoring showed a maximal temperature increase of about 2.5 ºC at 50 cm directly below the cable and did not exceed 1.4°C in 20 cm depth above the cable (Meißner et al., 2007). Taormina et al. caution that application of these results to other locations is difficult, considering the large number of factors impacting thermal radiation including cable voltage, sediment type, burial depth, and shielding. The authors note that the expected impacts of submarine cables would be a change in benthic community makeup with species that have higher temperature tolerances becoming more common. Taormina et al. conclude at the end of their review of available information on thermal effects of submarine cables that considering the narrowness of cable corridors and the expected weakness of thermal radiation, impacts are not considered to be significant. Based on the available information summarized here, and lacking any site-specific predictions of thermal radiation from the SFWF inter-array cable and SFEC, we expect that any impacts will be limited to a change in species composition of the infaunal benthic invertebrates immediately surrounding the cable corridor. As such, we do not anticipate thermal radiation to change the abundance, distribution, or availability of potential prey for any species. As any increase in temperature will be limited to areas within the sediment around the cable where listed species do not occur, we do not anticipate any exposure of listed species to an increase in temperature associated with the cable.

Atlantic sturgeon

Sturgeons are electrosensitive and use electric signals to locate prey. Information on the impacts of magnetic fields on fish is limited. A number of fish species, including sturgeon, are suspected of being sensitive to such fields because they have magnetosensitive or electrosensitive tissues, have been observed to use electrical signals in seeking prey, or use the Earth's magnetic field for navigation during migration (EPRI 2013). Atlantic sturgeon have specialized electrosensory organs capable of detecting electrical fields on the order of 0.5 millivolts per meter (mV/m) (Normandeau et al. 2011). Exponent Engineering, P.C. (2018) calculated that the maximum induced electrical field strength from the SFWF inter-array cable and the SFEC would be below the detection threshold for this species. However, this analysis only considered EMF from cable segments buried 6 feet below the surface. Based on relative magnetic field strength, the induced electrical field in cable segments that are covered by armoring blankets is expected to exceed the 0.5-mV/m threshold. This suggests that Atlantic sturgeon would be able to detect the induced electrical fields in immediate proximity to those cable segments.

Bevelhimer *et al*. 2013 examined the behavioral responses of Lake Sturgeon to electromagnetic fields. The authors also report on a number of studies, which examined magnetic fields associated with AC cables consistent with the characteristics of the cables proposed by South Fork Wind and report that in all cases magnetic field strengths are predicted to decrease to near-background levels at a distance of 10 m from the cable. Like Atlantic sturgeon, Lake Sturgeon are benthic oriented species that can utilize electroreceptor senses to locate prey; therefore, they are a reasonable surrogate for Atlantic sturgeon in this context. Bevelhimer et al. 2013 carried out lab experiments examining behavior of individual lake sturgeon while in tanks with a continuous exposure to an electromagnetic source mimicking an AC cable and examining behavior with intermittent exposure (i.e., turning the magnetic field on and off). Lake sturgeon consistently displayed altered swimming behavior when exposed to the variable magnetic field. By gradually decreasing the magnet strength, the authors were able to identify a threshold level (average strength ~ 1,000–2,000 μT) below which short-term responses disappeared. The anticipated maximum exposure of an Atlantic sturgeon to the proposed cable would range from 13.7 to 76.6 milligauss (mG) (1.37 to 7.66 μT) on the bed surface above the buried and exposed SFEC cable, and 9.1 to 65.3 mG (.91 to 6.53 μT) above the buried and exposed inter-array cable, respectively. This is several orders of magnitude below the levels that elicited a behavioral response in the Bevelhimer et al. (2013) study. Induced field strength would decrease effectively to 0 mG within 25 feet of each cable (Exponent Engineering, P.C. 2018). By comparison, the earth's natural magnetic field is more than five times the maximum potential EMF effect from the Project. Background magnetic field conditions would fluctuate by 1 to 10 mG from the natural field effects produced by waves and currents. As such, it is extremely unlikely that there will be any effects to Atlantic sturgeon due to exposure to the magnetic field from the proposed cable.

ESA-Listed Whales

The current literature suggests that cetaceans can sense the Earth's geomagnetic field and use it to navigate during migrations but not for directional information (Normandeau et al. 2011). It is not clear whether they use the geomagnetic field solely or in addition to other regional cues. It is also not known which components of the geomagnetic field cetaceans are sensing (i.e. the horizontal or vertical component, field intensity or inclination angle). Marine mammals appear to have a detection threshold for magnetic intensity gradients (i.e. changes in magnetic field levels with distance) of 0.1 percent of the earth's magnetic field or about 0.05 microtesla (µT) (Kirschvink 1990). Assuming a 50-mG (5 µT) sensitivity threshold (Normandeau 2011), marine mammals could theoretically be able to detect EMF effects from the inter-array and SFEC cables, but only in close proximity to cable segments lying on the bed surface. Individual marine mammals would have to be within 3 feet or less of those cable segments to encounter EMF above the 50-mG detection threshold.

As described in Normandeau et al. (2011), there is no scientific evidence as to what the response to exposures to the detectable magnetic field would be. However, based on the evidence that magnetic fields have a role in navigation it is reasonable to expect that any effects would be related to migration and movement. Given the limited distance from the cable that the magnetic field will be detectable, the potential for effects is extremely limited. Even if listed whales did avoid the corridor along the cable route in which the magnetic field is detectable, the effects would be limited to minor deviations from normal movements. As such, any effects are likely to be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated and are therefore insignificant.

Sea Turtles

Sea turtles are known to possess geomagnetic sensitivity (but not electro sensitivity) that is used for orientation, navigation, and migration. They use the Earth's magnetic fields for directional or compass-type information to maintain a heading in a particular direction and for positional or hemap-type information to assess a position relative to a specific geographical destination (Lohmann et al. 1997). Multiple studies have demonstrated magneto sensitivity and behavioral responses to field intensities ranging from 0.0047 to 4000 µT for loggerhead turtles, and 29.3 to 200 µT for green turtles (Normandeau et al. 2011). While other species have not been studied, anatomical, life history, and behavioral similarities suggest that they could be responsive at similar threshold levels. For purposes of this analysis, we will assume that leatherback and Kemp's ridley sea turtles are as sensitive as loggerhead sea turtles.

Sea turtles are known to use multiple cues (both geomagnetic and nonmagnetic) for navigation and migration. However, conclusions about the effects of magnetic fields from power cables are still hypothetical as it is not known how sea turtles detect or process fluctuations in the earth's magnetic field. In addition, some experiments have shown an ability to compensate for "miscues," so the absolute importance of the geomagnetic field is unclear.

Based on the demonstrated and assumed magneto sensitivity of sea turtle species that occur in the action area, we expect that loggerhead, leatherback, and Kemp's ridley sea turtles will be able to detect the magnetic field. As described in Normandeau et al. (2011), there is no scientific evidence as to what the response to exposures to the detectable magnetic field would be. However, based on the evidence that magnetic fields have a role in navigation it is reasonable to expect that effects would be related to migration and movement; however, the available information indicates that any such impact would be very limited in scope. As noted in Normandeau (2011), while a localized perturbation in the geomagnetic field caused by a power cable could alter the course of a turtle, it is likely that the maximum response would be some, probably minor, deviation from a direct route to their destination. Based on the available information, effects to sea turtles from the magnetic field associated with the SFWF inter-array cable and SFEC are expected to be so small that they can not be meaningfully measured, detected or evaluated and are, therefore, insignificant.

Effects to Prey

Magnetic fields associated with the operation of the transmission line could impact benthic organisms that serve as sturgeon and sea turtle prey. Effects to forage fish, jellyfish, copepods, and krill are extremely unlikely to occur given the limited distance into the water column that any magnetic field associated with the transmission line is detectable. Information presented in the BA summarizes a number of studies on the effects of exposure of benthic resources to magnetic fields. According to these studies, the survival and reproduction of benthic organisms are not thought to be affected by long-term exposure to static magnetic fields (Bochert and Zettler 2004, Normandeau *et al*. 2011). Results from the 30-month post-installation monitoring for the Cross Sound Cable Project in Long Island Sound indicated that the benthos within the transmission line corridor for this project continues to return to pre-installation conditions. The presence of amphipod and worm tube mats at a number of stations within the transmission line corridor suggest construction and operation of the transmission line did not have a long-term negative effect on the potential for benthic recruitment to surface sediments (Ocean Surveys 2005). Therefore, no impacts (short-term or long-term) of magnetic fields on sturgeon or sea turtle prey are expected.

7.4.2 Lighting and Marking of Structures

To comply with FAA and USCG regulations, the WTGs and OSS will be marked with distinct lettering/numbering scheme and with lighting. The USCG requires that offshore wind lessees obtain permits for private aids to navigation (PATON, see 33 CFR part 67) for all structures located in or near navigable waters of the United States (see 33 CFR part 66) and on the OCS. PATON regulations require that individuals or organizations mark privately owned marine obstructions or other similar hazards. No additional buoys or markers will be installed in association with the PATON.

In general, lights will be required on offshore platforms and structures, vessels, and construction equipment during O&M and decommissioning of the SFWF. O&M and support vessels would be required to display lights when operating at night and deck lights would be required to illuminate work areas. However, lights would be down shielded to illuminate the deck, and would not intentionally illuminate surrounding waters. If sea turtles, Atlantic sturgeon, whales, or their prey are attracted to the lights, it could increase the potential for interaction with equipment or associated turbidity. However, due to the nature of project activities and associated seafloor disturbance, turbidity, and noise, listed species and their prey are not likely to be attracted by lighting because they are disturbed by these other factors. As such, we have determined that any effects of project lighting on sea turtles, sturgeon, or whales are extremely unlikely.

In addition to vessel lighting, the WTGs will be lit for navigational and aeronautical safety. Lighting may also be required at on shore areas, such as where the cables will make landfall.

Many of the onshore areas used for staging will be part of an industrial port where artificial lighting already exists. Sea turtle hatchlings are known to be attracted to lights and artificial beach lighting is known to disrupt proper orientation towards the sea. However, due to the distance from the nearest nesting beach to the project area (the straight line distance through the Atlantic Ocean from Virginia Beach, VA, the northernmost area where successful nesting has occurred, and the WDA is more than 600 km), there is no potential for project lighting to impact the orientation of any sea turtle hatchlings.

7.4.3 WTG and OSS Foundations

7.4.3.1 Effects of the Physical Presence of Structures on Listed Species

The physical presence of structures in the water column has the potential to disrupt the movement of listed species but also serve as an attractant for prey resources and subsequently listed species. Structures may also provide a water flow refuge habitat. The SFWF will contain up to 16 monopiles (15 WTGs and 1 OSS) with a diameter up to 36-ft (11-m) and are proposed to be laid out in a grid-like pattern with of approximately 1.15 mile (1.8 km, 1 nm) by 1.15 mile (1.8 km, 1 nm) spacing that aligns with other proposed adjacent offshore wind projects in the MA/RI WEAs (COP Volume 1).

Listed whales are the largest species that may encounter the foundations in the water column, all other listed species (sea turtles and sturgeon) in the WDA are smaller. Of the listed whales, fin whales are the largest species at 75-85 ft. Based on the spacing of the foundations (1 x 1 nm grid) relative to the sizes of the listed species that may be present in the WDA, we anticipate that ESA-listed whales, sea turtles, and Atlantic sturgeon would move freely through the area and that the foundations would not create a barrier or restrict the movement of any listed species from moving through the area freely.

The only wind turbines currently in operation in U.S. waters are the five WTGs that make up the Block Island Wind Farm and the two WTGs that are part of the Coastal Virginia Offshore Wind pilot project. We have no information to indicate that the presence of these WTGs has resulted in any change in distribution of any marine species; however, the available information is very limited. It is also not clear whether any monitoring results from such small wind farms may be used to predict responses to the larger scale project currently under consideration here.

Because Atlantic sturgeon carry out portions of their life history in rivers, they are frequently exposed to structures in the water such as bridge piers and pilings. There is ample evidence demonstrating that sturgeon routinely swim around and past large and small structures in waterways, often placed significantly closer together than even the minimum distance of the closest WTGs (e.g., AKRF 2012). As such, we do not anticipate that the presence of the WTGs or the OSS will affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area or their ability to move through the action area.

Given their distribution largely in the open ocean, whales and sea turtles may rarely encounter large fixed structures in the water column such as the turbine foundations; thus, there is little information to use to evaluate the effects that these structures will have on the use of the area by these species. Sea turtles are often sighted around oil and gas platforms and fishing piers in the

Gulf Of Mexico which demonstrates they do not have an aversion to structures and may utilize them to forage or rest (Lohoefener 1990, Rudloe and Rudloe 2005). Given the monopiles' large size (11 m diameter) and presence above and below water, we expect that whales and sea turtles will be able to visually detect the structures and, as a result, we do not expect whales or sea turtles to collide with the stationary foundations.

Data is available for monitoring of harbor porpoises before, during, and after construction of three offshore wind projects in Europe. Monitoring of harbor porpoises occurred before, during and after construction of the Horns Rev offshore wind project in the North Sea. Horns Rev 1 consists of 80 WTGs laid out as an oblique rectangle of 5 km x 3.8 km (8 horizontal and 10 vertical rows). The distance between turbines is 560 m in both directions. The project was installed in 2002 (Tougaard et al. 2006). It is also important to note that the turbines used at the Horns Rev 1 project were older geared WTGs and not more modern direct-drive turbines which are quieter. The Horns Rev 1 project is much larger (80 foundations) than the proposed SFWF project and turbine spacing is closer together (0.5 km compared to at least 1.4 km). Pre-construction baseline data was collected with acoustic recorders and with ship surveys beginning in 1999; post-construction acoustic and ship surveys continued until the spring of 2006. In total, there were seven years of visual/ship surveys and five years of acoustic data. Both sets of data indicate a weak negative effect on harbor porpoise abundance and activity during construction, which has been tied to localized avoidance behavior during pile driving, and no effects on activity or abundance linked to the operating wind farm (Tougaard et al. 2006). Teilmann et al. (2007) reports on continuous acoustic harbor porpoise monitoring at the Nysted wind project before, during, and after construction. The results show that echolocation activity significantly declined inside Nysted Offshore Wind Farm since the pre-construction baseline during and immediately after construction. Teilmann and Carstensen (2012) update the dataset to indicate that echolocation activity continued to increase as time went by after operations began. Scheidat et al. (2011) reported results of acoustic monitoring of harbor porpoise activity for one year prior to construction and for two years during operation of the Dutch offshore wind farm Egmond aan Zee. The results show an overall increase in acoustic activity from baseline to operation, which the authors note is in line with a general increase in porpoise abundance in Dutch waters over that period. The authors also note that acoustic activity was significantly higher inside the wind farm than in the reference areas, indicating that the occurrence of porpoises in the wind farm area increased during the operational period, possibly due to an increase in abundance of prey in this area or as refuge from heavy vessel traffic outside of the wind farm area. Teilmann and Carstensen (2012) discuss the results of these three studies and are not able to determine why harbor porpoises reacted differently to the Nysted project. One suggestion is that as the area where the Nysted facility occurs is not particularly important to harbor porpoises, animals may be less tolerant of disturbance associated with the operations of the wind farm. It is important to note that the only ESA listed species that may occur within the lease area that uses echolocation is the sperm whale. Baleen whales, which includes North Atlantic right whales, fin, and sei whales do not echolocate. Sperm whales use echolocation primarily for foraging (NMFS 2010, NMFS 2015, Miller et al. 2004, Watwood et al. 2006); sperm whale foraging is not expected in the lease area because sperm whale prey occurs in deeper offshore waters (500-1,000m; NMFS 2010). Therefore, even if there was a potential for the presence of the WTGs or foundations to impact echolocation, it is extremely unlikely that this would have any effect on sperm whales.

Absent any information on the effects of wind farms or other foundational structures on the local abundance or distribution of whales and sea turtles, and given the conflicting results from studies of harbor porpoises, it is difficult to predict how listed whales and sea turtles will respond to the presence of the turbines. However, given the spacing between the turbines and our determination that operational noise will not disturb or displace whales or sea turtles, that operational noise will not result in masking of any whale communications, and that any effects of operational noise will be extremely unlikely and insignificant, we do not expect that the physical presence of the foundations will affect the distribution of whales or sea turtles in the action area or affect how these animals move through the area. If prey abundance increases in the WDA due to the reef effect, it is possible that there could be an increase in use of the WDA by listed whales and sea turtles; however, given the degree of effect anticipated for prey species, we do not expect that to result in a significant increase in the use of the WDA by foraging whales or sea turtles.

7.4.3.2 Habitat Conversion and Reef Effect Due to the Presence of Physical Structures

As described in the BA, long-term habitat alteration would result from the installation of the foundations, scour protection around the WTG and OSS foundations, as well as cable protection along any portions of the inter-array and export cables that could not be buried to depth. The footprint of 15 WTGs foundations and an OSS foundation and associated scour protection in the form of boulders and concrete mats would modify approximately 28.1 acres of seabed. Approximately 12.5 acres of scour protection would be required where boulder substrates prevent burial of the inter-array cable. In areas where boulders or other hard substrates are present on or immediately below the bed surface, an estimated 24.4 acres of scour protection would be required for portions of the SFEC cable route where cable burial is not possible (21.1 and 1.3 acres in the SFEC-OCS and SFEC-NYS, respectively). The addition of the WTGs and an OSS, spaced 1.0 nautical mile apart, is expected to result in a habitat shift in the area immediately surrounding each monopile from soft sediment, open water habitat system to a structure-oriented system, including an increase in fouling organisms. Overall, construction of the SFWF and scour protection would transform 33.3 acres (0.13 km^2) of soft bottom habitat into coarse, hard bottom habitat. Over time (weeks to months), the areas with scour protection are likely to be colonized by sessile or mobile organisms (e.g., sponges, hydroids, crustaceans). This results in a modification of the benthic community in these areas from primarily infaunal organisms (e.g., amphipods, polychaetes, bivalves).

Hard-bottom and vertical structures in a soft-bottom habitat can create artificial reefs, thus inducing the ‘reef’ effect (Taormina et al. 2018). The reef effect is usually considered a beneficial impact, associated with higher densities and biomass of fish and decapod crustaceans (Taormina et al. 2018) which may provide a potential increase in available forage items for sea turtles compared to the surrounding soft-bottoms. In the North Sea, Coolen et al. (2018) sampled epifouling organisms at offshore oil and gas platforms and compared data to samples from the Princess Amalia Wind Farm (PAWF) and natural rocky reef areas. The 60 PAWF monopile turbine foundations with rock scour protection were deployed between November 2006 and March 2007 and surveys were carried out in October 2011 and July 2013. This study demonstrated that the WTG foundations and rocky scour protection acted as artificial reef with a rich abundance and diversity of epibenthic species, comparable to that of a natural rocky reef. Stenburg et al. (2015) studied the long-term effects of the Horns Rev 1 offshore wind farm

(North Sea) on fish abundance, diversity, and spatial distribution. Gillnet surveys were conducted in September 2001, before the WTGs were installed, and again in September 2009, 7 years post-construction at the wind farm site and at a control site 6 km away. The three most abundant species in the surveys were whiting (*Merlangius merlangus*), dab (*Limanda limanda*), and sand lance (*Ammodytidae spp*.). Overall fish abundance increased slightly in the area where the wind farm was established but declined in the control area 6 km away. None of the key fish species or functional fish groups showed signs of negative long-term effects due to the wind farm. Whiting and the fish group associated with rocky habitats showed different distributions relative to the distance to the artificial reef structures introduced by the turbines. Rocky habitat fishes were most abundant close to the turbines while whiting was most abundant away from them. The authors also note that the wind farm development did not appear to affect the sand-dwelling species dab and sand lance, suggesting that that the direct loss of habitat (<1% of the area around the wind farm) and indirect effects (e.g. sediment composition) were too low to influence their abundance. Species diversity was significantly higher close to the turbines. The authors conclude that the results indicate that the WTG foundations were large enough to attract fish species with a preference for rocky habitats, but not large enough to have adverse negative effects on species inhabiting the original sand bottom between the turbines.

Methartta and Dardick (2019) carried out a meta-analysis of studies that examined finfish abundance inside windfarms compared to nearby reference sites. The overall effect size was positive and significantly different from zero, indicating greater abundance of fish inside of wind farms.

For the South Fork Wind project, effects to listed species from the loss of soft bottom habitat and conversion of soft bottom habitat to hard bottom habitat may occur if this habitat shift resulted in changes in use of the area (considered below) by listed species or resulted in changes in the availability, abundance, or distribution of forage species.

The only forage fish species we expect to be impacted by these habitat alterations would be sand lance (*Ammodytes spp.).* As sand lance are strongly associated with sandy substrate, and the project would result in a loss of such soft bottom, there would be a reduction in availability of habitat for sand lance that theoretically could result in a localized reduction in the abundance of sand lance in the action area. However, even just considering the action area, which is dominated by sandy substrate, the loss or conversion of soft bottom habitat is very small, less than 0.0001% of the action area. The results from Stenburg et al. (2015; summarized above) suggest that this loss of habitat is not great enough to impact abundance in the area and that there may be an increase in abundance of sand lance despite this small loss of habitat. However, even in a worst case scenario assuming that the reduction in the abundance of sand lance in the action area is directly proportional to the amount of soft substrate lost, we would expect a 0.0001% reduction in the sand lance available as forage for fin and sei whales and Atlantic sturgeon in the action area. Given this small, localized reduction in sand lance and that sand lance are only one of many species the fin and sei whales and Atlantic sturgeon may feed on in the action area, any effects to these species are expected to be so small that they can not be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected and are, therefore, insignificant.

Atlantic sturgeon would experience a reduction in infaunal benthic organisms, such as polychaete worms, in areas where soft substrate is lost or converted to hard substrate. As explained above, the action area is not an aggregation area or otherwise known to be a high use area for foraging. Any foraging by Atlantic sturgeon is expected to be limited to opportunistic occurrences. Similar to the anticipated reduction in sand lance, the conversion of soft substrate to hard substrate may result in a proportional reduction in infaunal benthic organisms that could serve as forage for Atlantic sturgeon. Assuming that the reduction in the abundance of infanual benthic organisms in the action area is directly proportional to the amount of soft substrate lost, we would expect a 0.0001% reduction in the abundance of these species as forage for Atlantic sturgeon in the action area. Given this small, localized, patchy reduction in infaunal benthic organisms, and that the action area is not an area that sturgeon are expected to be dependent on for foraging, any effects to Atlantic sturgeon are expected to be so small that they can not be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected and are, therefore, insignificant. Also, to the extent that epifaunal species richness is increased in the WDA due to the reef effect of the WTGs and their scour protection, and to the extent that sturgeon may feed on some of these benthic invertebrates, any negative effects may be offset.

The available information suggests that the prey base for Kemp's ridley and loggerhead sea turtles may increase in the action area due to the reef effect of the WTGs and associated scour protection and an increase in crustaceans and other forage species. However, given the small size of the area impacted and any potential resulting increase in available forage, any effects are likely to be so small that they can not be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected. No effects to the forage base of green sea turtles are anticipated as no effects on marine vegetation are anticipated. Also based on the available information, we expect that there may be an increase in abundance of schooling fish that sei or fin whales may prey on but that this increase will be so small that the effects to sei or fin whales can not be meaningfully measured, evaluated or detected. A similar effect is anticipated for the gelatinous organism prey of leatherback sea turtles. Because we do not expect sperm whales to forage in the WDA (due to the shallow depths), we do not expect any impacts to the forage base for sperm whales.

None of the available studies examined distribution or abundance of copepods in association with wind farms built to date. In section 7.4.3.3 below, we explain how the physical presence of the foundations may affect the distribution, abundance, or availability of copepods due to the distance between the foundations and that these effects to right whales will be insignificant.

7.4.3.3 Effects to Oceanic and Atmospheric Conditions due to Presence of Structures and Operation of WTGs

As explained in section 6.0 (*Environmental Baseline*), the proposed Project area is located within the Southern New England sub-region of the U.S. Northeast Shelf Large Marine Ecosystem, and the northern end of the Mid-Atlantic Bight. The region is a dynamic area between southward flowing cool arctic waters and northward flowing warm tropical waters, with complex seasonal physical dynamics, which support a diverse marine ecosystem. The physical oceanography of this region is influenced by local bathymetry, freshwater input from multiple rivers and estuaries, large-scale atmospheric patterns, and tropical and winter coastal storm events. Weather-driven surface currents, fronts, upwelling, tidal mixing, and estuarine outflow all contribute to driving water movement both at local and regional scales (Kaplan 2011). These dynamic regional ocean properties support a diverse and productive ecosystem that undergoes variability across multiple time scales. Here, we consider the best available information on how the presence and operation of WTGs and the OSS from the proposed SFWF project may affect the oceanographic and atmospheric conditions in the action area and whether there will be any consequences to listed species.

Background Information on Oceanic and Atmospheric Conditions in the Project Area

A variety of existing oceanographic research and monitoring is conducted in the region by state and federal agencies, academic institutions, and non-governmental organizations using an array of platforms including ships, autonomous vehicles, buoys, moorings, and satellites. Research and monitoring efforts include measuring the physical and biological structure of the ocean environment including variables such as temperature, chlorophyll, and salinity at a range of depths as well as long-term shelf-wide surveys that provide data used to estimate spawning stock biomass, overall fish biodiversity, zooplankton abundance, information on the timing and location of spawning events, and insight to detect changes in the environment. In the waters of the WDA and further south and east along the continental shelf, the broad, year-round pattern of currents are generally understood. Water flows south along the western margins of the Gulf of Maine due to a cyclonic gyre before splitting at the northern part of the Great South Channel (east of Cape Cod), and flowing northeast towards Georges Bank, and west over Nantucket Shoals and the continental shelf region of southern New England. This westward non-tidal circulation flow is constant with little variability between seasons (Bigelow 1927, Kraus, Kenney & Thomas 2019).

On a seasonal scale, the greater Mid-Atlantic Bight region experiences one of the largest transitions in stratification in the entire ocean (Castelao, Glenn, and Schofield, 2010). Starting in the late spring, a strong thermocline develops at approximately 20 m depth across the middle to outer shelf, and forms a thermally isolated body of water known as the “cold pool” which shifts annually but generally extends from the waters of southern New England (in some years, the WDA is on the northern edge of the cold pool) to Cape Hatteras. Starting in the fall, the cold pool breaks down and transitions to cold and well-mixed conditions that last through the winter (Houghton et al. 1982). The cold pool is particularly important to a number of demersal and pelagic fish and shellfish species in the region, but also influences regional biological oceanography as wind-assisted transport and stratification have been documented to be important components of plankton transport in the region (Checkley et al. 1988, Cowen at al. 1993, Hare et al. 1996, Grothues et al. 2002, Sullivan et al. 2006, Narvaez et al. 2015, Munroe et al. 2016).

The region also experiences upwelling in the summer driven by southwest winds associated with the Bermuda High (Glenn & Schofield 2003; Glenn et al. 2004). Cold nutrient-rich water from the cold pool can be transported by upwelling events to surface and nearshore waters. At the surface, this cold water can form large phytoplankton blooms, which support many higher trophic species (Sha et al. 2015).

The cold pool supports prey species for ESA-listed species, both directly through providing habitat and indirectly through its influence on regional biological oceanography, which supports a productive ecosystem (Kane 2005, Chen et al. 2018, Winton et al. 2018). Lower-trophic plankton species are well adapted to take advantage of the variable seasonality of the regional ecosystem, and support the upper food web for species such as pelagic fish, sea turtles, and marine mammals (Kenney and Vigness-Raposa 2010, Pershing and Stamieszkin 2019). Though plankton exhibit movement behavior, physical and oceanographic features (e.g. tidal mixing fronts, thermal fronts, freshwater plumes, internal waves, stratification, horizontal and vertical currents, and bathymetry) are the primary drivers that control aggregations and concentrate them by orders of magnitude (Pershing and Stamieszkin 2019, Kraus et al. 2019).

Many marine species including fish, sea turtles, and marine mammals forage around these physical and oceanographic features where prey is concentrated. ESA-listed species in the southern New England region primarily feed on five prey resources - zooplankton, pelagic fish, gelatinous organisms, marine vegetation, and benthic mollusks. Of the listed species in the area, North Atlantic right whales are the only obligate zooplanktivores. Many listed and protected species have been observed foraging in both the Rhode Island and Massachusetts WEA and Massachusetts WEA, including the area where the proposed SFWF project will be constructed (Leiter et al. 2017). High densities of North Atlantic right whales and leatherback sea turtles are often observed around Nantucket Shoals, a bathymetric feature that may support frontal zones and trap prey (Dodge et al. 2014, Kraus et al. 2016, Leiter et al. 2017, Stone et al. 2017, Quintana-Rizzo et al. 2021). The influence of this bathymetric feature on prey is particularly relevant to North Atlantic right whales and leatherback sea turtles as their prey is planktonic (calanoid copepods and gelatinous organisms), as described above physical and oceanographic features are the primary drivers that control aggregations and concentrations of plankton. Other listed species, which eat fish, cephalopods, crustaceans, and marine vegetation, are not as closely tied to physical oceanographic features that concentrate prey, given those species' prey are either more stationary on the seafloor or are more able to move independent of typical ocean currents.

North Atlantic right whales have been increasingly sighted between the western edge of Nantucket Shoals and the eastern edge of the MA WEA as well as inside the eastern portion of the MA WEA during winter months. However, in recent years right whales have been observed in the Nantucket Shoal region starting in August and staying through the winter. They shift their distribution to the northern and western portions of the RI/MA and MA WEAs in the spring, with observations including feeding behavior and surface active groups throughout (Kraus et al. 2016, Leiter et al. 2017, Quintana-Rizzo et al. 2021). The Nantucket Shoals area does not overlap with the South Fork lease area, given the lease area is farther south and west. These high use areas (hotspots) are primarily nearby, but outside, the footprint of the WDA, except for during the spring (Quintana-Rizzo et al. 2021). During spring (March-May) seasons in 2011-2015 and 2017-2019, the WDA has been a high use area for right whales, with both feeding and socializing activities observed (Leiter et al. 2017, Quintana-Rizzo et al. 2021). A species distribution model, which incorporated the primary prey of North Atlantic right whales (*Calanus finmarchicus*) and environmental covariates, predicted areas of high foraging habitat suitability for right whales in southern New England waters (Pendelton et al. 2012, Roberts et al. 2020).

As mentioned above, currents flow into southern New England waters from the Gulf of Maine, likely transporting *Calanus* sp. especially in the spring. Oceanographic and physical features in the region can act to concentrate *Calanus* sp. However, it is not clear what is driving the transportation of *Calanus* sp. in winter months (Record et al. 2019). Little is known about the specific oceanographic processes driving right whale feeding habitat in the southern New

England region, but right whale movement, and possibly leatherback movement within the area may be linked to the movement and availability of planktonic prey based on currents and oceanographic conditions. Sei and fin whales have been often observed during the spring and summer throughout the WEAs, with feeding behavior observed during both periods (Kraus et al. 2016), however both species eat small schooling fish as well as plankton and cephalopods.

Summary of Available Information on the Effects of Offshore Wind Farms on Environmental Conditions

A number of theoretical, model-based, and observational studies have been conducted to help inform the potential effects offshore wind farms may have on the oceanic and atmospheric environment; summaries of several of these studies are described in this section. In general, most of these studies discuss local scale effects (within the area of the windfarm) and are focused in Europe where commercial-scale offshore wind farms are already in operation. At various scales, documented effects include increased turbulence, changes in sedimentation, reduced water flow, and changes in wind fields, stratification, water temperature, nutrient upwelling and primary productivity (van Berkel et al. 2020).

Two turbines were recently installed offshore Virginia in the summer of 2020 where the weather and hydrodynamic conditions were measured during the installation period; however, no additional reports or literature about oceanographic or atmospheric impacts during operation has been published (HDR 2020). We are also not aware of any available information or reports of any changes in conditions associated with, or nearby, the Block Island wind project.

The only information from the U.S. is a recent modeling study conducted in the Great Lakes region of the U.S. to simulate the impact of 432 9.5 MW (4.1 GW total) offshore wind turbines on Lake Erie’s dynamic and thermal structure. Model results showed that the wind farms did have an impact on the area they were built in by reducing wind speed and wind stress, which led to less mixing, lower current speeds and higher surface water temperature (Afsharian et al. 2020). Though modeled in a lake environment, these results may be informative for predicting effects in the marine environment as the presence of structures and interactions with wind and water may act similarly; however, given the scale of the model and specificity of the modeled conditions and outputs to Lake Erie it is not possible to directly apply the results to an offshore wind project in the action area generally or the South Fork project in particular. The model demonstrated reduced wind speed and stress leading to less mixing, lower current speeds and higher surface water temperatures (1-2.8°C, depending on the month). No changes to temperatures below the surface are reported. The authors note that these impacts were limited to the vicinity of the wind farm. As noted above, the modeling was specific to the thermal conditions in Lake Erie; given that, and the scale of the model (4,104 MW, about 23 times bigger than the 180 MW South Fork project), it is not possible to use these results to predict any potential change in water temperature at the South Fork project. However, it is important to note that even at the scale modeled, effects were localized to the area of the windfarm, we note that the study did not consider potential impacts beyond Lake Erie to the broader or regional environment.

Studies have examined the wind wakes produced by turbines and the subsequent turbulence and reductions in wind speed, both in the atmosphere and at the ocean surface. Abroad, a study on the effect of large offshore wind farms (~ 80 turbines) on the local wind climate using satellite synthetic aperture radar found that a decrease of the mean wind speed is found as the wind flows through the wind farms, leaving a velocity deficit of 8–9% on average, immediately downstream of the wind turbine arrays. Wind speed was found to recover to within 2% of the free stream velocity over a distance of 5–20 km past the wind farm, depending on the ambient wind speed, the atmospheric stability, and the number of turbines in operation (Christiansen & Hasager 2005). Using an aircraft to measure wind speeds around turbines, Platis et al. (2018) found a reduction in wind speed within 10km of the turbine.

The disturbance of wind speed and wind wakes from wind farms can cause oceanic responses. According to Broström (2008), a windfarm can cause a divergence/convergence in the upper ocean due to a strong horizontal shear in the wind stress and resulting curl of the wind stress. This divergence and convergence of wind wakes can cause upwelling and downwelling. Upwelling can have significant impacts on local ecosystems due to the influx of nutrient rich, cold, deep, water that increases biological productivity and forms the basis of the lower trophic level. The induced upwelling by a wind farm will likely increase primary production, which may affect the local ecosystem (Broström 2008). Utilizing analytical models to determine wind farm effects, it can be expected to find a circulation and an associated upwelling pattern when the size of the wind farm is comparable in size to the 'Rossby radius of deformation', defined as the length scale at which rotational effects become as important as buoyancy or gravity wave effects in the evolution of the flow about some disturbance (Broström 2008). We note here that the footprint of the SFWF project is nowhere near the size of the Rossby radius of deformation (estimated at 200-300 km) and therefore is not large enough to cause such disruption.

Using remote sensing, Vanhellemont and Ruddick (2014), showed that offshore wind farms can have impacts on suspended sediments. Wakes of turbidity from individual foundations were observed to be in the same direction as tidal currents, extending 30–150 m wide, and several km in length. However, the authors indicate the environmental impact of these wakes and the source of the suspended material were unknown. Potential effects could include decreased underwater light field, sediment transport, and downstream sedimentation (Vanhellemont and Ruddick 2014).

Modeling experiments have demonstrated that the introduction of monopiles could have an impact on the M2 amplitude (semidiurnal tidal component due to the moon) and phase duration. Modeling showed the amplitude increased between 0.5-7% depending on the preexisting amphidrome, defined as the geographical location which has zero tidal amplitude for one harmonic constituent of the tide. Changes in the tidal amplitude may increase the chances of coastal flooding in low-lying areas. The M2 tidal constituent in nearby Massachusetts Bay and Cape Cod Bay has relatively high amplitudes thus coastal flooding is not a potential impact (Irish and Signell 1992); however, the greater shelf region of southern New England corresponds to a regional minimum in tidal energy, which rises steeply to the north approaching Georges Bank. We have no information to suggest that any potential effects on M2 amplitude would have any effects on ESA-listed species.

A number of studies have investigated the impacts of offshore wind farms on stratification and turbulence (Carpenter et al. 2016, Schultz et al. 2020). As water move past wind turbine foundations they generate a turbulent wake that will contribute to a mixing of a stratified water column or may disperse aggregations of plankton. These studies have demonstrated decreased flow and increased turbulence extending hundreds of meters from turbine foundations. However, the magnitude is highly dependent to the local conditions (e.g. current speed, tides, and wind speed), with faster flow causing greater turbulence and extending farther from the foundation. Carpenter et al. (2016) used a combination of numerical models and in situ measurements from two windfarms (Bard 1 and Global Tech 1) to conduct an analysis of the impact of increased mixing in the water column due to the presence of offshore wind structures on the seasonal stratification of the North Sea. Based off the model results and field measurements, estimates of the time scale for how long a complete mixing of the stratification takes was found to be longer, though comparable to, the summer stratification period in the North Sea. The authors concluded that it is unlikely the two windfarms would alter seasonal stratification dynamics in the region. The estimates of mixing were found to be influenced by the pycnocline thickness and drag of the foundations of the wind turbines. For there to be a significant impact on stratification, large regions (length of 100 km) of the North Sea would need to be covered with wind farms; however the actual threshold was not defined (Carpenter et al. 2016). Schultz et al. 2020 found similar results in the same area of the German Bight of the North Sea.

Monopiles were found to increase localized vertical mixing due to the turbulence from the wakes generated from monopiles, which in turn could decrease localized seasonal stratification and could affect nutrient cycling on a local basis. Using both observational and modeling methods to study impacts of turbines on turbulence, Schultze et al. (2020) found through modeling simulations that turbulent effects remained within the first 100 m of the turbine foundation under a range of stratified conditions. Field measurements at the OWF DanTysk in the German Bight of the southern North Sea, observed a wake area 70 m wide and 300 m long from a single monopile foundation during weak stratification (0.5°C surface-to bottom temperature difference). No wake or turbulence was detected in stronger thermal stratifcation (~3°C surface-to-bottom temperature difference) (Schultze et al. 2020). The OWF DanTysk is composed of 6 m diameter monopiles. Similarly, a laboratory study measured peak turbulence within 1 monopile diameter distance from the foundation and that downstream effects (greater than 5% of background) persisted for 8–10 monopile diameters distances from the foundation (Miles, Martin, and Goddard 2017).

Impacts on stratification and turbulence could lead to changes in the structure, productivity, and circulation of the oceanic regions; however, the scale and degree of those effects is dependent in part on location. If wind farms are constructed in areas of tidal fronts, the physical structure of wind turbine foundations may alter the structure of fronts and subsequently the marine vertebrates that use these oceanic structures for foraging (Cazenave et al. 2016). As areas of frontal activity are often pelagic biodiversity hotspots, altering their structure may decrease efficient foraging opportunities for listed species. In an empirical bio-physical study, Floeter et al. (2017) used a remotely operated vehicle to record conductivity, temperature, depth, oxygen, and chlorophyll-a measurements of an offshore wind farm. Vertical mixing was found to be increased within the wind farm, leading to a doming of the thermocline and a subsequent transport of nutrients into the surface mixed layer. Though discerning a wind farm-induced relationship from natural variability is difficult, wind farms may cause enhanced mixing, and due to the interaction between turbulence levels and the growth of phytoplankton, this could have cascading effects on nutrient levels, ecosystems, and marine vertebrates (Carpenter et al. 2016, Floeter et al. 2017). Water flowing around turbine foundations may also cause eddies to spawn, potentially resulting in more retention of plankton in the region when combined daily vertical migration of the plankton (Chen et al. 2016, Nagel et al. 2018). However, it is important to note that these conclusions from Chen et al. (2016) are hypothesized based on a modeling study and not observed in the region.

We note here that comments were filed on the SFWF DEIS stating that the proposed project would result in increased temperatures that would cause stress on marine populations, citing Miller and Keith 2018. The authors developed a model to better understand climatic impacts due to wind power extraction. The model input included 0.46 Terawatts of wind power, which required enough wind turbines to cover the middle one-third of the continental U.S. The authors found that in this modeled condition, average surface temperatures over the continental U.S. would increase by 0.24°C. As stated in the paper, this results from redistribution of heat that is already in the atmosphere as the turbines affect the movement of air in the lower portion of the atmosphere. The authors note that the modeled condition resulted in daytime surface temperatures on the U.S. east coast being 0.1-0.5°C cooler than the condition without the wind power. The paper provides no information on any potential warming of ocean waters and provides no information as to whether the results from this land based model are transferable to the marine environment. We also note that the scale of the wind turbine scenario used in the model is massive; 0.46 TW is 2,555 times more than the 180 MW maximum project capacity identified in the South Fork PDE. While the authors do not indicate if potential increases in surface temperature are proportional to electrical generation, if they were, a 0.24°C temperature increase from 0.46TW (or 460,000 MW) of wind energy would translate to a 0.00009°C temperature increase from 180 MW. As noted in the Miller and Keith paper, the surface temperature change around the turbines is not a result of adding energy to the entire climate system, but results from redistributing heat that is already in the atmosphere. We also note that modeling reported by Wang and Prinn (2010 and 2011) that was carried out to simulate the potential climatic effects of onshore and offshore wind power installations, found that while models of large scale onshore wind projects resulted in localized increases in surface temperature (consistent with the pattern observed in the Miller and Keith paper), the opposite was true for models of offshore wind projects. The authors found a local cooling effect, of up to 1°C, from similarly sized offshore wind installations. The authors provide an explanation for why onshore and offshore turbines would result in different localized effects. We note that neither set of authors addressed any changes to water temperatures. We are not aware of any studies that have identified effects of offshore wind turbines on increases in ocean water temperatures, which would be the relevant consideration for effects to ESA-listed whales, sea turtles, and fish from the potential elevation of temperatures due to WTG operations.

Van Berkel et al (2020) investigated available information on the effects of offshore wind farms on hydrodynamics and implications for fish. The authors report that changes in the demersal community have been observed close to wind farms (within 50 m) and that those changes are related to structure-based communities at the wind farm foundations (e.g., mussels). The authors also report on long term studies of fish species at the Horns Reef project (North Sea) and state that no significant changes in abundance or distribution patterns of pelagic and demersal fish have been documented between control sites and wind farm sites or inside/between the foundations at wind farm sites. They report that any observed changes in density were consistent with changes in the general trend of species reflected in larger scale stock assessment reports (see also Stenberg et al. 2015).

Consideration of Potential Effects of the South Fork Wind Farm

In general, the studies referenced above describe varying scales of impacts on the oceanographic and atmospheric processes as a resultant effect of offshore wind turbine development. These impacts include increased turbulence generated by the presence of turbine foundations, extraction of wind by turbine operations reducing surface wind stress and altering water column turbulence, and upwelling and downwelling caused by the divergence and convergence of wind wakes (Miles et al. 2021). Oceanographic and atmospheric effects are possible at a range of temporal and spatial scales, based on regional and local oceanographic and atmospheric conditions as well as the size and locations of wind farms. However, discerning a wind farm-induced relationship from natural variability is difficult and very specific to local environmental conditions where the wind farm is located. As described above, the particular effects and magnitudes can vary based on a number of parameters, including model assumptions and inputs, study site, oceanographic and atmospheric conditions, turbine size, and wind farm size and orientation (Miles et al. 2021). Here, we consider the information presented above, incorporate the layout and parameters of the SFWF and local oceanographic and atmospheric conditions and evaluate effects to ESA-listed species. We note that while we are using the best available information to assess effects of the South Fork project, there is significant uncertainty about how offshore wind farms in the action area may alter oceanographic processes and the biological systems that rely on them. The available information suggests that significant impacts require very large scale wind development before they would be realized; as such, we note that the conclusions reached here are specific to the small scope of the South Fork project (16 foundations, 15 WTGs, total capacity not to exceed 180 MW) and may not be reflective of the consequences of larger scale development in the region.

As noted above, the footprint of the SFWF project is nowhere near the size of the Rossby radius of deformation (estimated at 200-300 km) and therefore is not large enough to cause such disruption. We also don’t anticipate any effects to listed species from any potential effects to tidal amplitude. Based on the available information, we also do not see any evidence that installation of the 15 South Fork wind turbines would lead to ocean warming that could affect ESA-listed whales, sea turtles or fish or that there is the potential for the South Fork project to contribute to or exacerbate warming ocean conditions.

When applying studies conducted outside the Mid-Atlantic Bight region to our consideration of the potential effects of the SFWF project on environmental conditions, it should be noted that the seasonal stratification over the summer, particularly in the studies conducted in the North Sea, is much less than the peak stratification seen in the summer over the Mid-Atlantic Bight. The conditions in the North Sea are more representative of weaker stratification, similar to conditions seen in the Mid-Atlantic Bight during the spring or fall. Because of the weaker stratification during the spring and fall, the Mid-Atlantic Bight ecosystem may be more susceptible to changes in hydrodynamics due to the presence of structures during the spring and fall than during highly stratified conditions in the summer.

Offshore wind energy development has the potential to alter the atmospheric and the physical and biological oceanographic environment due to the influence of the wind turbines on the wind stress at the ocean surface and the physical presence of the in-water turbine foundations could influence the flow and mixing of water. Resultant, increased stratification could affect the timing and rate of breakdown of the cold pool in the fall, which could have cascading effects on species in the region. However, as described above, the available information (Carpenter et al. 2016, Schultz et al. 2020) indicates that in order to see significant impacts on stratification, large regions (length of 100 km) had to be covered by wind turbines. Given the very small scale of the SFWF (16 foundations), any effects of stratification are not expected to be significant or reach the scale that they would affect the timing and rate of breakdown of the cold pool in the fall.

Due to the linkages between oceanography and food webs, lower-tropic level prey species that support protected species may also be affected by changes in stratification and vertical mixing. Information on which to base an assessment of the degree that the proposed project will result in any such impacts is limited. No utility scale offshore wind farms exist in the region nor along either coast of the United States to evaluate potential impacts of the proposed Project, thus we primarily have results from research conducted on offshore wind projects in other countries available to evaluate potential impacts on the oceanographic and atmospheric environment, and potential subsequent effects on protected species and their prey.

Results of in-situ research, and modeling and simulation studies, show that offshore wind farms can reduce wind speed and wind stress which can lead to less mixing, lower current speeds, and higher surface water temperature (Afsharian et al. 2020); increase localized vertical mixing due to the turbulence from the wakes produced from water flowing around turbine foundations (Miles, Martin, and Goddard 2017, Schultz et al. 2020); cause wind wakes that will result in detectable changes in vertical motion and/or structure in the water column (upwelling and downwelling) (Christiansen & Hasager 2005, Broström 2008); and result in detectable sediment wakes downstream from a wind farm by increased turbidity (Vanhellemont and Ruddick, 2014). We have considered if these factors could result in disruption of prey aggregations, primarily of planktonic organisms transported by currents such as copepods and gelatinous organisms (salps, ctenophores, and jellyfish medusa).

This possible effect is primarily relevant to North Atlantic right whales and leatherback sea turtles as their planktonic prey (calanoid copepods and gelatinous organisms) are the only listed species' prey in the region whose aggregations are primarily driven by hydrodynamic processes. As aggregations of plankton, which provide a dense food source for listed species (e.g. right whales and leatherback sea turtles) to efficiently feed upon, are concentrated by physical and oceanographic features, increased mixing may disperse aggregations and may decrease efficient foraging opportunities for listed species. Potential effects of hydrodynamic changes in prey aggregations are specific to listed species that feed on plankton, whose movement is largely controlled by water flow, as opposed to other listed species which eat fish, cephalopods, crustaceans, and marine vegetation, which are either more stationary on the seafloor or are more able to move independent of typical ocean currents. Prey aggregations may also be influenced by the physical presence of turbine foundations and subsequent reef effect, this is considered in Section 7.4.3.2.

As water flows around turbine and OSS foundations there is the potential that aggregations of planktonic prey may be dispersed due to the increased mixing caused by water moving around foundations; however, it is also possible that foundations act to trap prey if eddies form in the wake of turbine foundations or concentrate prey in a convergent current situation. However, decreased mixing could also cause increased stratification and subsequently impact the exchange of nutrients, heat, and also trap prey.

Relative to the southern New England region and Mid-Atlantic Bight as a whole, the scale of the proposed Project (no more than 16 foundations) and the footprint of the WDA (13,700 acres with project foundations occupying only a small fraction of that) is small. Based on the available information, we do not expect the scope of hydrodynamic effects to be large enough to influence regional conditions that could affect the distribution of prey, mainly plankton, or conditions that aggregate prey in the local southern New England region or broader Mid-Atlantic Bight.

Although uncertainty remains as to the magnitude and intensity of effects offshore wind farms may have on altering oceanographic processes, studies demonstrate increased turbulence may occur in the wake of turbine (and OSS) foundations. These wakes have been detected up to 300 m from the turbine foundation (Miles, Martin, and Goddard 2017, Schultz et al. 2020). Peak turbulence area is expected within the distance equivalent to the diameter of a single monopole, with turbulence measurable (greater than 5% above background) within a distance equivalent to 8-10 times the diameter of a single monopole (Miles, Martin and Goddard 2017). We would expect that any effects on the distribution of prey would be limited to the area where changes in turbulence would be experienced. These anticipated localized changes at the WDA and waters within a few hundred meters downcurrent of the foundations of the wind turbines could result in localized changes in plankton distribution and abundance. Given the available information, we expect these changes to be limited to the area within 300 m of any single foundation with measurable disturbance limited to approximately 110 m from the foundation (i.e., the distance equivalent to up to 10x the 11m diameter). Based on the spacing of the turbines (1x1 nm), these areas will not interact or overlap. Thus, the disruption of plankton distribution will be limited spatially and will be patchy throughout the project footprint. This localized and patchy disruption in distribution will not result in a reduction in overall abundance of plankton in the WDA, because the oceanographic forces transporting zooplankton into the area are much greater than the limited changes expected from the SFWF project and the consequences of the impact will be too localized to change the overall abundance measurably. Thus, we do not anticipate any higher trophic level impacts; that is, we do not anticipate any reductions in gelatinous organisms, pelagic fish, or benthic invertebrates that depend on plankton as forage. Therefore, local changes in distribution of prey around turbine foundations may occur, but we do not expect any reduction in the abundance of prey species that listed species that forage on. This is because any effects to hydrodynamics that could result in disruptions to the distribution of plankton are expected to be limited to an area within a few hundred meters of individual turbines (Miles, Martin, and Goddard 2017, Schultz et al. 2020).

Specifically considering right whales, they are the only ESA-listed obligate zooplanktivores in the project area, feeding exclusively on copepods, which are primarily aggregated by physical and oceanographic features. The monopiles could disrupt the distribution of copepods in the WDA footprint; however, there would not be a reduction in measurable abundance, and disruptions to distribution would be limited to small areas that are expected to extend no more than 300 meters from each foundation (Miles, Martin, and Goddard 2017, Schultz et al. 2020). Similarly, we do not expect any changes in the abundance of leatherback sea turtle's jellyfish prey, and we anticipate any changes in distribution to be limited to the area extending no more than 300 m from each foundation.

Given the small, localized, and patchy effects anticipated to the distribution and aggregation of prey and that we do not expect any overall reduction in the amount of prey in the action area, any effects to foraging individual right whales or leatherback sea turtles are expected to be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected and are therefore, insignificant. Additionally, as Atlantic sturgeon in the marine environment primarily feed on benthic invertebrates and small fish such as sand lance, which are either free swimming or live on the seafloor, hydrodynamic effects are not likely to impact the distribution or availability of their prey, and any effects to Atlantic sturgeon are extremely unlikely to occur. Effects to the benthic prey base of green, Kemp's ridley, and loggerhead sea turtles are also extremely unlikely to occur. As sperm whales are found primarily in deeper waters and forage on large cephalopods, which would not being impacted by hydrodynamic effects due to their swimming ability. As a result, any effects to sperm whales are extremely unlikely to occur.

We note that as the scale of offshore wind development in the Mid-Atlantic Bight increases and the area occupied by wind turbines increases, the scope and scale of potential hydrodynamic impacts may also increase and influence the environmental baselines for future projects. Such impacts may require additional research and analysis to support future assessments. However, this consultation considers the effects of the proposed SFWF project in the context of, among other things, section 6 (*Environmental Baseline*), which includes the effects of Federal actions that have already undergone section 7 consultation. This includes the Vineyard Wind 1 project that will consist of up to 100 WTGs and be located approximately 22 nm from the proposed SFWF. A separate Biological Opinion for the Vineyard Wind 1 Project assessed the construction, operation, and decommissioning of the project and concluded that there may be localized changes at the Vineyard Wind 1 wind farm and waters within a few hundred meters downcurrent of the foundations of the wind turbines. Given the distance between the Vineyard Wind 1 project and the proposed SFWF project (about 40 km) it is not likely any oceanographic or atmospheric effects from the two projects would be magnified, interact, or overlap, prior to any other wind farms being built between them.

7.5 Effects of Marine Resource Survey and Monitoring Activities

In this section we consider the effects of the marine resource survey and monitoring activities on listed species in the action area by describing the effects of interactions between listed species, and proposed fishing gear (trawl, trap/pot, and sink gillnet) and the other sampling methodologies (benthic sampling, PAM), and then analyze risk and determine likely effects to sea turtles, listed whales, and Atlantic sturgeon. Activities will be conducted in Federal and New York State waters and will include: gillnet, trap, pot, and trawl surveys to characterize fisheries resources in the WDA; a trawl survey to characterize fisheries resources along the SFEC; benthic monitoring to document the disturbance and recovery of marine benthic habitat and communities resulting from the construction and installation of Project components in the WDA and along the SFEC; moored PAM systems and mobile PAM platforms such as towed arrays, autonomous surface vehicles (ASVs), and autonomous underwater vehicles (AUVs) to characterize the presence of protected species, specifically marine mammals. Activities will be conducted for a six year period: two years pre-construction following issuance of the record of decision (ROD), during the year of construction, and up to three years post-construction. Section 3 of the Opinion describes the proposed activities over all phases of the project in detail and is not repeated here. Effects of Project vessels, including the ones that will be used for survey and monitoring activities are considered in section 7.2, above, and are not repeated here.

In addition to the surveys noted above, an acoustic telemetry study will be conducted to evaluate the fine-scale movements and behavior of previously tagged teleost and elasmobranch species in the near-field environment around the SFEC. No listed species will be tagged. Operationally, these devices just record the presence of nearby tagged animals. The proposed SFEC array system consists of four components to record migratory and fine-scale movement in the approach field and cable regions. The design consists of four arrays (east approach, west approach, cable, and fine-scale positional arrays) and will consist of 41 VR2AR-X acoustic release omnidirectional hydrophones (receivers). The receivers will be placed 1.2 km apart, except in the fine-scaled positional array where they will be approximately 550 m apart. The acoustic receivers are equipped with acoustic release mechanisms that allow instrument retrieval without the need for surface buoys. The acoustic receivers are moored with a subsurface float that is approximately 2 meters off the seafloor, and the acoustic release technology means that surface buoys are not needed to retrieve and download the gear, which minimizes the risk for interactions or entanglement with listed species. The deployment and operation of acoustic telemetry receivers will have no effect on ESA-listed species as the scope of the mooring system (2 meters) is too short to pose an entanglement risk for listed whales; for sea turtles, the size of the mooring system is too big for smaller hard shell turtles (green or Kemp's) to get entangled. Leatherback sea turtles do not occur along the bottom and would not be at risk of entanglement given the length and size of the mooring system. Loggerhead sea turtles may feed on the bottom and thus occur near the receivers, however given the mooring configuration any entanglement is extremely unlikely. Additionally, the same model receivers and mooring systems have been deployed in other nearby areas (Ingram et al. 2019) with no reports for entanglement by any species. Sturgeon are not at risk of entanglement given the small size and mooring configuration. Therefore, there are no impacts to listed species from the proposed action other than general vessel operations which are considered in section 7.2 above.

7.5.1 Assessment of Effects of Benthic Sampling and PAM

Benthic Sampling

South Fork Wind is proposing to conduct benthic monitoring to document the disturbance and recovery of marine benthic habitat and communities resulting from the construction and installation of Project components, including WTG scour protection as well as the inter-array cabling and offshore export cable corridor from the WDA to shore. Monitoring will be conducted using a combination of high-resolution acoustic, video, and photographic imaging methods suited for each habitat type. In addition, 10 monitoring sites may be surveyed for sand lance using nighttime benthic grabs. All survey equipment will be deployed from contracted scientific research vessels. Sediment profile and plan view imaging (SPI/PV) will be used to characterize existing conditions and changes in soft-bottom benthic habitat prior to and following construction. The SPI/PV equipment consists of a camera frame that is lowered onto the seabed by a cable, penetrating the bed surface to collect a plan view image of subsurface substrate composition. Following construction, high-resolution imaging collected by remotely operated vehicle (ROV) will be used to monitor changes in benthic community composition on introduced hard surfaces within each SFWF monopile transect. A multibeam echosounder and side-scan sonar will also be used to create detailed maps of hard-bottom benthic habitat structure and community composition in the inter-array cable survey frames prior to and following construction.

The benthic grab and SPI/PV will result in temporary disturbance of the benthos and a potential temporary loss of benthic resources. The grab and SPI/PV samples will affect an extremely small area at each sampling location, with sampling locations between ten and several hundred meters apart. The benthic grab will take a portion of the benthos that will then be brought onto the ship; because of the small size of the sample and the nature of the removal there is little to no sediment plume associated with the sampling. Once lowered to the seafloor, the frame of the SPI/PV will rest on the seafloor while the camera will penetrate the seafloor to capture a profile image; because of the small size of the frame (~1.5 m^2) and the nature of the image capture (i.e., shallow penetration of the camera) there is little disturbance to the seafloor and little chance for any increase in suspended sediment to result from the activity. While there may be some loss of benthic and bentho-pelagic species at the sample sites, including potential forage items for listed species that feed on benthic and pelagic resources, the amount of resources potentially lost will be extremely small. Any loss of benthic resources will be small, temporary, and localized. These temporary, isolated reductions in the amount of benthic resources are not likely to have a measurable effect on any foraging activity or any other behavior of listed species; this is due to the small size of the affected areas and the temporary nature of any disturbance. As effects to listed species will be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated, effects are insignificant.

The underwater noise effects generated by the proposed multibeam echosounder and side-scan sonar methods used for habitat monitoring are assessed in section 7.1 of the Opinion; as noted there, the operating frequencies of this equipment mean that no effects to ESA listed species are likely even if individuals are exposed to the noise associated with the surveys.

Passive Acoustic Monitoring

Passive acoustic monitoring (PAM) is used to measure, monitor, record, and determine the sources of sound in underwater environments. Moored PAM systems and mobile PAM platforms such as towed PAM, autonomous surface vehicles (ASVs), or autonomous underwater vehicles (AUVs) will be used prior to, during, and following SFWF construction. PAM will be used to characterize the presence of marine mammals through passive detection of vocalizations, and will be used to record ambient noise, project vessel noise, pile driving noise, and WTG operational noise. Moored PAM systems are stationary and may include platforms that reside completely underwater with no surface expression (i.e., HARPs, high-frequency acoustic recording packages) or may consist of buoys (at the surface) connected via a data and power cable to an anchor or bottom lander on the seafloor. Moored PAM systems will use the best available technology to reduce any potential risks of entanglement and deployment will comply with best management practices designed to reduce the risk of entanglement in anchored monitoring gear (see Appendix B of NMFS 2021a as appended to this Opinion). For moored PAM systems, there are cables connecting the hydrophones and/or buoy to the anchor or lander; however, entanglement is extremely unlikely to occur. The cables associated with moored systems have a minimum bend radius that minimizes entanglement risks and does not create loops during deployments, further minimizing entanglement risks. There are no records of any entanglement of listed species in moored PAM systems, and we do not anticipate any such entanglement will occur.

Mobile systems may include ASVs (i.e. wave gliders) that operate at the surface and AUVs (i.e. Slocum gliders) that operate throughout the water column. These vehicles produce virtually no self-generated noise and travel at slow operational speeds as they collect data. Towed hydrophone arrays may also be employed which consist of a series of hydrophones that are towed behind a vessel while it is moving along a survey trackline at slow speeds. Moored and mobile systems will be deployed and retrieved by vessels, maintenance will also be carried out from vessels. Potential effects of vessel traffic for all activities considered in this consultation are addressed in section 7.2.

The small size and slow operational speeds of mobile PAM systems make the risk of a collision between the system and a listed species extremely unlikely to occur. Even in the extremely unlikely event that a whale, sea turtle, or Atlantic sturgeon bumped into the mobile PAM system, it is extremely unlikely that there would be any consequences to the individual because of the relative light weight of the mobile PAM system, slow operating speeds, small size and rounded shape. Based on the analysis herein, it is extremely unlikely that any ESA-listed species will interact with any PAM system; any effects to ESA listed species of the PAM monitoring are extremely unlikely to occur.

7.5.2 Sink Gillnet Surveys

Sink gillnets will be used in the WDA to primarily assess monkfish and winter skate, two species targeted by an active gillnet fishery. Sampling will occur in the spring and fall; the gillnets will be set and hauled twice per month from April to June and again from October to December on one-day survey trips for a total of 12 sampling days per year (two survey days in April, May, June, October, November, and December). The timing of the survey coincides with the majority of commercial gillnet activity, as monkfish and skates migrate through the area in spring and fall. Gillnet sampling began in spring 2021 and will occur over a period of six years encompassing the pre-, during, and post-construction time periods. Considering the six year survey period, there will be a total of 72 sampling days.

The gillnet survey will be conducted using gillnets that are typical of the commercial fishery in Rhode Island and Massachusetts. The survey areas are located in NMFS Statistical Areas 537 and 539. Gillnets will be set and sampled on a rotational schedule between a survey site inside the SFWF lease area (within Fisheries Statistical Area 537) and two reference survey areas outside the lease area (within Fisheries Statistical Areas 537 and 539). Each gillnet string will consist of six 300-foot net panels of 12-inch mesh with a hanging ratio of 1/2 (50%) and using net tie-downs. Five gillnet lines per area will be randomly selected for each of the three sampling locations, resulting in 15 gillnet strings conducted per sampling event and a total of 30 vertical lines. The five gillnet strings per area are subsamples, and catches will be averaged to estimate the catch per unit effort per area per sampling event, which will be used in the analyses. No wet storage of gillnet gear is proposed; that is, the gillnets will be removed from the water between survey days/events. We note that South Fork has contracted with commercial fishermen to undertake this survey work; as such, the gillnets being used for this survey are not increasing fishing effort or the number of nets or vertical lines in the area as the gear would be used for regular fishing activities if it wasn't being used for the surveys. Therefore, these surveys will not result in any additional vertical lines or nets being set within Fisheries Statistical Areas 537/539 above the environmental baseline (i.e., the conditions absent the proposed action).

The survey plan established a standard soak time of approximately 48 hours to maximize catch and standardize catch rates while also ensuring the gear fishes properly during the soak (i.e., not collapsed from saturation), to minimize depredation of the catch, and to improve the logistics of the survey. However, South Fork Wind has determined that reduced soak time of 24 hours can accomplish the goals of the survey. Therefore, future gillnet survey effort is planned with 24 hour soak times.

Below, we consider the potential for interactions between listed species and the gillnet gear. The gillnet surveys began in May 2021. To date, no interactions with listed sea turtles or whales have been reported from the South Fork Wind gillnet surveys; however, three Atlantic sturgeon (one live, two dead) were reported to us during the surveys that took place in May and June 2021.

ESA-Listed Whales

Factors Affecting Interactions and Existing Information on Interactions

Theoretically, any line in the water column, including line resting on or floating above, the seafloor set in areas where whales occur, has the potential to entangle a whale (Hamilton et al. 2018, Hamilton et al. 2019, Johnson et al. 2005). Entanglements may involve the head, flippers, or fluke; effects may range from no apparent injury to death. Large whales are vulnerable to entanglement in vertical or ground lines associated with sink gillnet gear as well as the net panels of gillnet gear (Johnson et al. 2005). Additional information on listed whale interactions with fishing gear can be found in Consultation No. GARFO-2017-00031 (https://doi.org/10.25923/cfsq-qn06).

The general scenario that leads to a whale becoming entangled in gear begins with a whale encountering gear. It may move along the line until it comes up against something such as a buoy or knot. When the animal feels the resistance of the gear, it is likely to thrash, which may cause it to become further entangled in the lines associated with gear. The buoy may become caught in the whale's baleen, against a pectoral fin, or on some other body part. It is thought that the weak links (areas with lower breaking strengths) allow the buoy to break away to reduce further risk of entanglement and trailing gear an animal may carry. Similarly, the use of weak rope or weak insertions engineered to break at 1,700 pounds or less may allow large whales to break free from the ropes and avoid a life-threatening entanglement.

Consistent with the best available information on gear configurations to reduce entanglement risk, weak links and line with 1,700 pound breaking strength or less are incorporated into the survey plan and will be implemented in all gillnet sets. Risk reduction measures will be consistent with the requirements of the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan: Northeast Trap/Pot Fisheries Requirements and Management Areas for the Northeast gillnet fishery, and all applicable gear modifications and amendments to the regulations implementing the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan (50 CFR Parts 229 and 697) for the Northeast lobster and Jonah crab trap/pot fisheries will implemented. These measures include weak rope insertions, project-specific gear marking, and sinking groundlines. Additionally, all gillnet gear will be removed from the water between survey periods further reducing the risk of interaction.

The overlap of the gillnet gear and large whales in space and time also influences the likelihood that gear entanglement will occur. As established in previous sections of this Opinion, North Atlantic right, fin, sei, and sperm whales occur at least occasionally in the action area, including the WDA and portions of NMFS Statistical Area 537 and 539 where the gillnet survey will take place.

Sei and Sperm Whales

Records of observed sei and sperm whale entanglements are limited due to their offshore distribution; while this may reduce the potential for observations it also reduces the overlap between many fisheries and these species. Between 2009-2017, in the western North Atlantic there were two (one M/SI) documented interactions with sei whales in fishing gear from unknown country of origin and no documented interactions between fishing gear and sperm whales.

Sei and sperm whales typically occur in deep, offshore waters near or beyond the continental shelf break; this is well offshore of where the gillnet surveys will take place. Based on the density information in Roberts et al. (2020), sperm whales are rare in the survey area year-round but most likely to occur in July – September, which is outside the time of year that the gillnet surveys are planned. During the April – June and October – December period, densities of sperm whales are reported at 0.00001 – 0.00008 animals/km^2; this translates to one individual for every 12,500 – 100,000 km^2 surveyed. Sei whales are also infrequent in this area. The highest monthly density reported in Roberts et al. (2020) is in May (0.00019 sei whales/km^2 or one sei whale for every 5,263 km^2 surveyed); during the fall survey period (October – December), density estimates range from 0 to 0.00001 sei whales/km^2 or no more than one sei whale for every 100,000 km^2 surveyed.

In order for a sei or sperm whale to be vulnerable to entanglement in the gillnet survey gear, the whale would have to first co-occur in time and space with that gear, that is it would need to be in the same area that the gillnets are set on the same day that they are set. Given the rarity of sei and sperm whales in the survey area, the small amount of gear (5 gillnets at 3 survey locations), the short soak time (24 hours), and the small number of survey days (total of 72 over 6 years), it is extremely unlikely that a sei or sperm whale would encounter this gear. The risk of entanglement is further reduced by the use of weak links and line with 1,700 pound breaking strength or less. We also note that as these surveys will not increase the number of gill nets or vertical lines that would be present in the survey area absent the proposed action, the survey will not increase risk of entanglement beyond what is considered in the Environmental Baseline.

Fin and Right Whales

Fin and right whales may occur year round in the area where the surveys will take place. Fin whales are most likely to occur in the area in the summer (June – September). During the months that gillnet surveys will take place, density of fin whales ranges from 0.00102 fin whales/km^2 (November) to 0.00219 fin whales/km^2 (June) (Roberts et al. 2020). Density estimates indicate that March is the month with the highest density of right whales in the survey area and that overall, North Atlantic right whales are most likely to occur in the area from December through June, with the highest probability of occurrence extending from January through April. Monthly density estimates for the months that the gillnet surveys will take place range from 0.0005 (October) to 0.005 (April) right whales/km^2 (Roberts et al. 2020). The majority of gillnet activity (May, June, October, November) will occur at the time of year when the lowest numbers of right whales occur in the survey area.

The Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) prepared for the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan (ALWTRP EIS, NOAA 2021b) determined that entanglement in commercial fisheries gear represents the highest proportion of all documented serious and non-serious incidents reported for North Atlantic right and fin whales. However, entanglement remains a relatively rare event, with approximately 8 entanglements a year of right whales estimated along the entire U.S. and Canada Atlantic coast (Hayes et al. 2020).

Recent tools developed by the Northeast Fisheries Science Center (NEFSC), in support of the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Team (ALWTRT), have helped inform the spatiotemporal distribution of gillnet gear and the spatiotemporal overlap of this gear with large whales. This assessment of gillnet gear uses the information and results obtained from the NEFSC's Decision Support Tool (DST), version 3.1.0. For more information on the DST and the input data used for trap/pot gear, assumptions, and uncertainty please see Volume II, Chapter 3 Appendices in the ALWTRP Final Environmental Impact Statement, https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/new-england-mid-atlantic/marine-mammal-protection/atlantic-large-whale-take-reduction-plan. Note, this EIS focused on trap/pot gear but contains information about the DST relevant to its use to asses impacts of gillnets.

The DST provides information on the spatiotemporal overlap between gear and North Atlantic right whales in Fisheries Statistical Areas 537 and 539, by month. Review of the data shows North Atlantic right whales are likely to occur, in greatest numbers, in Statistical Area 537 and 539 from December through May; this is consistent with the density information reported above and presented in section 5 of this Opinion. Although we cannot discount the potential for right whales to be present in these Fisheries Statistical Areas outside of the December through May timeframe, given the best available information, the number of right whales in statistical area 537 and 539 is likely to be at its lowest from June through November. Based on this, the proposed gillnet surveys will predominantly occur over a period of time in which North Atlantic right whales are likely to be present at their lowest numbers in this area of southern New England. Based on the number of vertical lines in Fisheries Statistical Areas 537 and 539 under normal operating conditions of the gillnet fishery provided below, as well as the best available information on North Atlantic right whales occurrence in these Fisheries Statistical Areas, the DST showed that the highest entanglement risk to right whales in Fisheries Statistical Areas 537 and 539 occurred from December through May (vertical lines present + high numbers of whales=high co-occurrence), and the lowest entanglement risk occurred from June through November (vertical lines present + low whale presence=low co-occurrence).

In Fisheries Statistical Area 537, there are approximately 4,024 (total) gillnet vertical lines set each year; in Fisheries Statistical Area 539, there are approximately 1,698 (total) gillnet vertical lines set each year. Though variable by month, these vertical lines, in general, remain in the water column throughout the year. Reviewing the data by month, over the period of April to June and again from October to December, when the proposed South Fork Wind gillnet surveys will occur, there are approximately 425 to 704 vertical lines in the water from April to June and 166 to 478 vertical lines in the water from October to December in Fisheries Statistical Area 537, and approximately 247 to 299 vertical lines in the water from April to June and 59 to 178 vertical lines in the water in October to December in Fisheries Statistical Area 539. These numbers are only vertical lines associated with gillnet gear. There is uncertainty in estimating total number of vertical lines in this and other regions of New England. Relative to current operating conditions in the gillnet fishery, the additional vertical lines the South Fork Wind survey proposes to place in the water is within the range of uncertainty and, therefore, may not necessarily equate to an increase in vertical lines within these Fisheries Statistical Area. We also note that as South Fork has partnered with commercial fishermen to carry out this work, the gear used for the surveys would otherwise be fished in these areas and is displacing or replacing commercial fisheries effort on the survey days.

Despite the general concerns about the risk of right and fin whale entanglements in vertical lines, we have determined that entanglement or capture of fin or right whales in South Fork Wind gillnet gear is extremely unlikely to occur. This is because the small amount of gear (5 gillnet strings at 3 survey locations for a total of 30 vertical lines), the short soak time (24 hours), and the small number of survey days (total of 72 over 6 years) make it extremely unlikely that a right or fin whale would encounter this gear. The risk is also lowered by the time of year the surveys will take place as the majority of gill net sets will occur during the months when right whale density is lowest and when their distribution is typically further east and when fin whale density is lowest. Risk reduction measures including the short soak times (24 hours), the high frequency of which gear will be tended, and the gear modifications that will be employed as part of the South Fork Wind gillnet survey further reduce risk. We also note that as these surveys will not increase the number of gill nets or vertical lines that would be present in the survey area absent the proposed action, the survey will not increase risk of entanglement beyond what is considered in the Environmental Baseline.

Effects to Prey

It is extremely unlikely that the gillnet survey activities will have any effects on the availability of prey for right, fin, sei, and sperm whales. Right whales and sei whales feed on copepods (Perry et al. 1999). Copepods are very small organisms that will pass through gillnet gear rather than being captured in it. Fin whales feed on krill and small schooling fish (e.g., sand lance, herring, mackerel) (Aguilar 2002). The gillnet gear used in the South Fork Wind survey activities operates on or very near the bottom, while many of the small, schooling fish such as herring and mackerel that fin whales feed on, occur higher in the water column. Additionally, the mesh size is too large to capture any fish that may be prey for fin whales, including sand lance. Sperm whales feed in waters far deeper than those where the gillnet surveys will occur, primarily on squid, octopus and demersal fish which do not overlap with the study area where gillnet activities will occur.

Sea Turtles

Factors Affecting Interactions and Existing Information on Interactions

The primary factors affecting sea turtle interactions with sink gillnet gear are: (1) overlap in time and space, (2) the behavior of sea turtles in the presence of gear, and (3) oceanographic features. Intensity of biological activity in the Northwest Atlantic has been associated with oceanographic fronts, including nutrient fluxes and biological productivity (Townsend et al. 2006). There may be an increased risk of interactions between sea turtles and fishing gear in areas where oceanographic features such as fronts occur simply because there are possibly more sea turtles and more fishing gear present, which increases the potential for interactions. However, due to the current state of information on sea turtle distribution in the Southern New England region we are unable to determine if any of these oceanographic features affect the likelihood of interactions between sea turtles and gillnet gear used in the South Fork Wind survey activities. Variables such as latitude, bottom depth, and sea surface temperature have been correlated with sea turtle interaction rates with gillnet gear in the Mid-Atlantic (Murray 2018). As described in section 5, the occurrence of loggerhead, leatherback, Kemp’s ridley, and green sea turtles in the WDA is primarily temperature dependent; as such, presence is limited to the June to November period. Given the gillnet survey periods (April – June, October – December), there is only the potential for sea turtle presence in half the survey period (June, October, November).

Sea turtle interactions with gillnet gear can result in entanglements of the head, limbs, or carapace or captures of the animal. Captures of sea turtles in gillnets are a severe type of interaction as they often result in injury and death. Drowning may occur due to forced submergence from the weight of the gear or, at a later time, if the sea turtle is carrying line and the trailing gear becomes lodged between rocks and ledges below the surface. Although drowning due to forced submergence is the most serious risk to sea turtles in gillnet gear, constriction of a sea turtle’s flippers can lead to infection or amputation of limbs, which may result in mortality or impaired foraging or swimming ability. Sea turtles that do escape often retain pieces of gear that can inhibit their foraging or survival. If the turtle is released or escapes with line attached, the flipper may eventually become occluded, infected, and necrotic (Upite et al. 2013, Upite et al. 2019).

There are few studies on the effects of forced submergence in gillnets. However, the risk of a sea turtle drowning as a result of entanglement in gillnet gear is related to the period of time that the gillnet is set (i.e., longer soak times increase the risk that an entangled turtle will not be able to surface for air before the gillnet is removed from the water). Soak times for sink gillnet fisheries primarily targeting monkfish, skates, or spiny dogfish in the Mid-Atlantic and Georges Bank regions in which sea turtles were captured from 2012-2016 ranged between 0.2 and 264 hours (Murray 2018). From 2012-2016, total estimated bycatch of sea turtles in sink gillnet gear in the Georges Bank and Mid-Atlantic regions was 705 loggerheads (of which 557 were mortalities), 145 Kemp's ridleys (115 mortalities), 27 leatherbacks (21 mortalities), and 112 unidentified hard-shelled turtles (88 mortalities) (Murray 2018).

Bycatch estimates are available for commercial sink gillnet gear. From 2012-2016 (the most recent 5-year period that has been statistically analyzed for gillnets), fisheries observers reported a total of 27 loggerhead, 8 Kemp's ridley, 2 green, 2 leatherback, and 9 unidentified hard-shelled sea turtles incidentally caught in U.S. Mid-Atlantic and Georges Bank gillnet gear. Most (93 percent) of the loggerhead interactions occurred between 40º N and 41.5º N during June through September. For reference, the area where South Fork Wind sink gillnet gear will be set is about 41º N, thus most interactions have occurred south of where the survey area is. In this same region, 5 Kemp's ridley interactions occurred during July through November. In addition, 3 Kemp's ridley interactions occurred around 35º N in April, June, and December, which is considerably south of the area where the South Fork gillnet surveys will occur. Both green sea turtle interactions occurred inside North Carolina sounds, one in March and the other in September; this area is outside the area where the South Fork gillnet surveys will occur. Both leatherbacks were observed around 40° N in November and December. Unidentified hard-shelled turtle interactions occurred between 35º N and 41.6º N from May to September (Murray 2018); this area overlaps with the area where the South Fork gillnet surveys will occur. It is important to note that these numbers represent only observed sea turtles, and observers are on onboard only a fraction of commercial fishing trips, at-sea monitors and Northeast Fisheries Observer Program trips comprised 26% and 74%, respectively, of the trips used in the above analysis (Murray 2018).

There are no bycatch estimates for green sea turtles in U.S. Mid-Atlantic and Georges Bank gillnet gear. The very low number of observed green sea turtle interactions in gillnet gear suggests that interactions with this species within the action area, and more specifically within the South Fork study area where survey activities will occur, are rare.

Potential sea turtle interactions with sink gillnets are most likely to occur with hard-shelled sea turtles (i.e., not leatherbacks) since these species are more likely to be found near the bottom where the netting of the gear is found. However, pelagic leatherbacks may also become entangled in the gear. Sea turtles are unlikely to be able to break free of entangling fishing gear and are thus vulnerable to drowning from forced submergence, although some have been recovered alive in sink gillnets.

Estimating Interactions with and Mortality of Sea Turtles

As the South Fork Wind gillnet survey activities will use similar gear to the commercial monkfish and skate fisheries which overlaps the South Fork Wind study area, a query of sink gillnet extra-large mesh vessel landings in Fisheries Statistical Area 537 was conducted. Fisheries Statistical Area 537 overlaps the South Fork lease area and primary areas where gillnet survey activities will be conducted and where commercial gillnet activity occurs. This query produced landings data (metric tons) and number of trips per year from 2010-2020 from the sink gillnet fishery. To estimate annual sea turtle interactions by species with South Fork Wind gillnet gear we applied the stratified interaction rates (r) (EPU: MA North, Depth: large) from Linden (2020) to the landings data. Linden (2020) estimated turtle interactions (e.g., bycatch) in the bottom sink gillnet fleet (2012–2016) using effort data from Vessel Trip Reports (VTRs) and estimated rates from the Northeast Fisheries Science Center (NEFSC). Consideration of the months that the surveys will occur (April – June and October – December) was factored into the analysis. We consider this the best available information to estimate sea turtle interactions with the South Fork Wind gillnet survey activities because the data is from the area where the surveys will take place, the time of year the surveys will take place, and is for comparable fishing gear and fishing practices.

In Fisheries Statistical Area 537, there are approximately 4,024 (total) gillnet vertical lines set each year; in Fisheries Statistical Area 539, there are approximately 1,698 (total) gillnet vertical lines set each year. Though variable by month, these vertical lines, in general, remain in the water column throughout the year. Reviewing the data by month, over the period of April to June and again from October to December, when the proposed South Fork Wind gillnet gear will occur, there are approximately 425 to 704 vertical lines April to June and 166 to 478 vertical lines October to December in Fisheries Statistical Area 537, and approximately 247 to 299 vertical lines April to June and 59 to 178 vertical lines October to December in Fisheries Statistical Area 539. There is, however, uncertainty in estimating total number of vertical lines in this and other regions of New England. Relative to current operating conditions in the gillnet fishery, the additional vertical lines the South Fork Wind survey proposes to place in the water is within the range of uncertainty and, therefore, may not necessarily equate to an increase in vertical lines within these Fisheries Statistical Area. We also note that as these surveys will not increase the number of gill nets or vertical lines that would be present in the survey area absent the proposed action, the survey is not likely to increase risk of entanglement beyond what is considered in the Environmental Baseline.

Mortality percentages are calculated over a rolling 5-year period. The range of mortality rates for sea turtles in gillnet fishing gear for the four most recent 5-year periods which overlap with the data used to estimate bycatch above, is from 64 to 78% (Upite et al. 2019, and Upite Pers. Comm. PRD). For this Opinion, the highest percentage for the four most recent 5-year periods which overlap with the data used to estimate bycatch is 78%, 2012-2016. We note that the soak time used for commercial fisheries can be significantly longer than the 24 hours proposed for use in the South Fork surveys. Murray (2009) reports no mortality of sea turtles in gillnets with soak times less than 20 hours and less than 30% mortality in gillnets with soak times between 20 and 39.9 hours; this data is from large mesh gillnets fishing in the U.S. Mid-Atlantic. Based on this information, we expect mortality of sea turtles to range between 30 and 78%.

Table 7.5.1 Estimated captures of sea turtles by species from South Fork Wind’s gillnet survey

Species	Captures per Year
Loggerhead	0.054
Kemp’s ridley	0.027
Leatherback	0.027
Unknown	0.027

Data from query of sink gillnet extra-large mesh vessel landings in Fisheries Statistical Area 537, Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office

Based on these calculated annual capture rates (Table 7.5.1) and the six year period over which the surveys will take place, we would calculate a total capture of 0.324 loggerheads, and 0.081

Kemp’s ridley and leatherback sea turtles and an additional 0.081 “unknown” sea turtle (i.e., any species). As we expect green sea turtles to be less abundant in the survey area than Kemp’s ridleys, we can use the Kemp’s ridley estimate as a conservative estimate of the anticipated interactions with green sea turtles. Even adding the “unknown” sea turtle to the estimate of leatherback, Kemp’s ridley, and green sea turtles we end with an estimate of 0.162 leatherback, Kemp’s ridley and green sea turtle interactions over the six year survey period.

We have rounded up these fractions of sea turtles to whole animals. This results in an estimated interaction rate of 1 loggerhead, 1 leatherback, 1 Kemp’s ridley, 1 green sea turtle over the six year study period. Considering the estimated 30-78% mortality rate, we expect that three of four total sea turtles will die; however, we are unable to determine which individuals will die, therefore, we assume that no more than 1 loggerhead, 1 leatherback, 1 Kemp’s ridley, and 1 green sea turtle will be captured and killed during the six years of gillnet surveys carried out for the South Fork project.

Effects to Prey

Of the prey items sea turtles feed on (fish, crabs, whelks, salps, jellyfish), fish may be the only ones removed from the marine environment as bycatch in the gillnet gear, however, due to the large mesh size it is unlikely that any fish that sea turtles may target as prey would get caught in the gillnet. Given this, it is extremely unlikely the gillnet surveys will have an effect on sea turtle prey.

Atlantic Sturgeon

Factors Affecting Interactions and Existing Information on Interactions

As described in section 6, adult and sub-adult Atlantic sturgeon may be present in the action area year-round. While migrating, Atlantic sturgeon are typically traveling near the bottom but may be present throughout the water column. Atlantic sturgeon interactions with gillnet gear are likely at times when and in areas where their distribution overlaps with the operation of the fisheries. For sink gillnets, higher levels of Atlantic sturgeon bycatch have been associated with depths of less than 131 ft (40 m), mesh sizes of greater than 10 inches (25 cm), and the months of April and May (ASMFC 2007). Fishing records collected by onboard observers for 1989-2000 showed that, at that time, the highest levels of bycatch occurred in fisheries using sink gillnets (targeting spiny dogfish, monkfish, and Atlantic cod) (Stein et al. 2004a). It is important to note that observer coverage, on which this data is based, varies across fisheries. However, some patterns did emerge among the factors associated with mortality in sink gillnets: tie-downs, mesh sizes, water temperature, and soak times (ASMFC 2007). Tie-downs increase the mesh to area ratio within a given space by reducing the vertical profile of the net and create “bags” in the gear between each vertical line (ASMFC 2007). As reported in ASMFC (2007), water temperature and soak time duration affect survival of sturgeons through physiological constraints regardless of capture method. Across the range of temperatures, incidence of death increased with rising temperatures. A clear relationship was apparent between increasing mortality and soak times, with soak times >24 hours resulting in a 40% incidence of death and those <24 hours resulting in a 14% incidence of death (ASMFC 2007).

Estimating Interactions with and Mortality of Sturgeon

Presence of Atlantic sturgeon have been confirmed in the area where gillnet surveys will occur as three Atlantic sturgeon were incidentally caught in South Fork Wind's gillnet surveys between May and June 2021.

Northeast Fisheries Observer Program (NEFOP) data from Miller and Shepherd (2011) indicates that mortality rates of Atlantic sturgeon caught in gillnet gear is approximately 20 percent. As explained in the Status of Species section, the range of all five DPSs overlaps and extends from Canada through Cape Canaveral, Florida. Atlantic sturgeon originating from all five DPSs use the area where gillnets will be set. We have considered the best available information from a recent mixed stock analysis done by Kazyak et al. (2021) to determine from which DPSs individuals in the action area are likely to have originated. The authors used 12 microsatellite markers to characterize the stock composition of 1,704 Atlantic sturgeon encountered across the U.S. Atlantic Coast and provide estimates of the percent of Atlantic sturgeon in a number of geographic areas that belong to each DPS. The South Fork survey area falls within the "MID Offshore" area described in that paper. Using that data, we expect that Atlantic sturgeon in the area of the WDA where gillnet surveys will occur likely originate from the five DPSs at the following frequencies: New York Bight (55.3%), Chesapeake (22.9%), South Atlantic (13.6%), Carolina (5.8%), Gulf of Maine (1.6%), and Gulf of Maine (1.6%) DPSs (Table 7.5.2). It is possible that a small fraction (0.7%) of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area may be Canadian origin (Kazyak et al. 2021); Canadian-origin Atlantic sturgeon are not listed under the ESA. This represents the best available information on the likely genetic makeup of individuals occurring throughout the action area.

We considered the available information from which to develop an estimate of future captures of Atlantic sturgeon in the gillnet surveys. We did not identify any similar surveys that are carried out by state or federal agencies. We also determined that with the available information it was not possible to accurately downscale annual take estimates from commercial fisheries where such take estimates are available (i.e., in NMFS biological opinions on gillnet fisheries that overlap the survey area; see NMFS 2021c). Therefore, we determined that the best available information from which to estimate future interactions was from the gillnet surveys that have occurred for the South Fork project in the spring of 2021. During this time, gillnets were set on six survey days and three Atlantic sturgeon were captured. Based on this interaction rate, and the remaining 66 survey days, we would anticipate the capture of 33 Atlantic sturgeon over the remainder of the six year survey period. We note that the soak times (48 hours) were longer than is currently proposed for the remainder of the survey period (24 hours); however, we have no way to adjust the interaction rate based on the soak time. We have factored the reduced soak time into our estimate of mortality provided below. We also recognize that the data do not represent the spring and fall sampling periods; however, we have no information that would indicate a higher anticipated catch rate in the fall and note that Stein et al. (2004) reports similar bycatch rates of Atlantic sturgeon in commercial fisheries from the April – June and October-December period. ASMFC (2007) reports the highest bycatch in April and May.

Northeast Fisheries Observer Program (NEFOP) data from Miller and Shepherd (2011) indicates that mortality rates of Atlantic sturgeon caught in gillnet gear is approximately 20 percent. ASMFC (2017) reports an average mortality rate in gillnet gear of 30 percent. Stein et al. (2004) reports mortality rates of 22% for Atlantic sturgeon caught in commercial gillnets. As noted above, mortality increases with soak time. ASMFC (2007) reports mortality rates of 14% with soak times of 24 hours or less. This is the best estimate of mortality for the 24 hour soak times to be implemented for the South Fork gillnet surveys.

Table 7.5.2. Estimated capture and mortality of Atlantic sturgeon by DPS in South Fork Wind's gillnet survey. DPS percentages listed are the percentage values representing the genetics mixed stock analysis results (Kazyak et al. 2021). Fractions are rounded up to whole animals.

Sink Gillnets	**Captures over 6 year Survey Duration**	**Estimated Total Mortalities[1] over the 6 year Survey Duration**
Total	33	5
New York Bight (55.3%)	18	3
Chesapeake (22.9%)	8	2
South Atlantic (13.6%)	4	1
Carolina (5.8%)	2	1
Gulf of Maine (1.6%)	1	1

[1] ASMFC (2007) reports a 14% mortality rate for gillnets set for 24 hours or less. Mortalities are a subset of the total captures. Total estimated mortalities are 5, with the DPS specific estimates not to be exceeded.

Effects to Prey

Diets of adult and sub-adult Atlantic sturgeon, which are the only life stages that occur in the area where the gillnet surveys will take place, include mollusks, gastropods, amphipods, annelids, decapods, isopods, and fish such as sand lance (ASSRT 2007, Bigelow and Schroeder 1953a, Guilbard et al. 2007, Savoy 2007). Sink gillnets are anchored to the bottom and fish in the lower one-third of the water column. Given the small size of the footprint of the nets on the bottom and the minimal impact on benthic resources, any effects to benthic resources, if any, are expected to extremely small. As such, any effects to Atlantic sturgeon from these extremely small, temporary, impacts on potential prey items, will be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated and are therefore insignificant.

7.5.3 Assessment of Risk of Interactions with Trap and Pot Gear

Ventless trap gear will be used to assess lobster and crab resources in the WDA and ventless fish pots will be used to assess structure-associated species like black sea bass, scup, and tautog.

Fish pot sampling began in summer 2021 in the WDA and will be conducted once per month (June to December) over a period of six years encompassing the pre-, during, and post-construction time periods. Eight turbine locations will be randomly selected for sampling and the eight survey locations will remain fixed for the duration of the pre-construction and post-construction survey effort. Each trawl will be 900 m in length and comprise a total of 18 pots, the first five of which will be spaced at 10-m intervals from its respective foundation, and the remaining 13 pots will be spaced at 65-m intervals, extending from 115 to 900 m from the foundation. The targeted soak time for the trawl of pots is 24 hours. The fish pot sampling will result in a total of eight additional fish pot trawls, each consisting of 18 ventless pots, being deployed in Fisheries Statistical Area 537, this will equate to 16 additional vertical lines being placed in Fisheries Statistical Area 537 on 7 days (one day each, June through December) for six years.

Lobster/crab trap sampling began in fall 2020 in the WDA and will be conducted twice per month from May through November over a period of six years encompassing the pre-, during, and post-construction time periods. The targeted standard soak time for each trap is five nights, which will remain consistent throughout the duration of the survey to the extent practicable. At the start of each monthly sampling event, the traps will be set and baited. After the 5-day soak period, the traps will be hauled in and the catch will be processed for sampling; then the traps will be rebaited for another 5-night soak. Within the WDA and two reference areas, ten trawls with 10 traps will be deployed for a total sampling intensity of 30 trawls (300 traps) per bimonthly sampling event. This will result in a total of 60 additional vertical lines (two per trawl) within Fisheries Statistical Areas 537/539 that may not have been deployed by a commercial fishery otherwise.

No wet storage of trap/pot gear is proposed; as such, the gear will be removed from the water between survey periods. Trap/pot gear will be the same equipment and methods used by the respective commercial fisheries targeting the same species. To date, no interactions with listed species have been reported from the South Fork Wind trap and pot surveys that have occurred since fall 2020.

ESA-Listed Whales

Factors Affecting Interactions and Existing Information on Interactions

As described in the discussion of gillnets above, theoretically, any line in the water column, including line resting on or floating above, the seafloor set in areas where whales occur, has the potential to entangle a whale (Hamilton et al. 2018, Hamilton et al. 2019, Johnson et al. 2005). Entanglements may involve the head, flippers, or fluke; effects range from no apparent injury to death. Large whales are vulnerable to entanglement in vertical and ground lines associated with trap/pot gear.

The general scenario that leads to a whale becoming entangled in gear begins with a whale encountering gear. It may move along the line until it comes up against something such as a buoy or knot. When the animal feels the resistance of the gear, it is likely to thrash, which may cause it to become further entangled in the lines associated with gear. The buoy may become caught in the whale’s baleen, against a pectoral fin, or on some other body part. It is thought that the weak links (areas with lower breaking strengths) allow the buoy to break away to reduce further risk of entanglement and trailing gear an animal may carry. Similarly, the use of weak rope or weak insertions engineered to break at 1,700 pounds or less may allow large whales to break free from the ropes and avoid a life-threatening entanglement. Weak links and 1,700 pound or less breaking strength line is built into the proposed survey plan.

Consistent with the best available information on gear configurations to reduce entanglement risk, weak links and line with 1,700 pound breaking strength or less is incorporated into the survey plan and will be implemented in all lobster and pot gear. All applicable gear modifications and amendments and risk reduction measures will be consistent with the requirements and regulations implementing the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan (50 CFR Parts 229 and 697) for the Northeast lobster and Jonah crab trap/pot fisheries. These measures include weak rope insertions, project-specific gear marking, and sinking groundlines.

Additionally, all trap and pot gear will be removed from the water between survey periods further reducing the risk of interaction.

The overlap of the trap/pot gear and large whales in space and time also influences the likelihood that gear entanglement will occur. As established in previous sections of this Opinion, North Atlantic right, fin, sei, and sperm whales occur at least occasionally in the action area, including the WDA and portions of NMFS Statistical Area 537 and 539 where the trap and pot surveys will take place.

Sei and Sperm Whales

As described above, records of observed sei and sperm whale entanglements are limited due to their offshore distribution, while this may reduce the potential for observations it also reduces the overlap between many fisheries and these species. Between 2009-2017, in the western North Atlantic there were two (one M/SI) documented interactions with sei whales in fishing gear from unknown country of origin and no documented interactions between fishing gear and sperm whales.

Sei and sperm whales typically occur in deep, offshore waters near or beyond the continental shelf break; this is well offshore of where the trap and pot surveys will take place. Based on the density information in Roberts et al. (2020), sperm whales are rare in the survey area year-round but most likely to occur in July – September. During the May – December period when the trap or pot surveys are planned, densities of sperm whales are reported at 0.00001 – 0.00031 animals/km^2; this translates to one individual for every 3,225 – 100,000 km^2 surveyed. Sei whales are also infrequent in this area. The highest monthly density reported in Roberts et al. (2020) is in May (0.00019 sei whales/km^2 or one sei whale for every 5,263 km^2 surveyed); over the May to December period, monthly density estimates range from 0 to 0.00019 sei whales/km^2 or no more than one sei whale for every 5,263 km^2 surveyed.

In order for a sei or sperm whale to be vulnerable to entanglement in the trap or pot survey gear, the whale would have to first co-occur in time and space with that gear, that is it would need to be in the same area that the traps or pots are being fished. Given the rarity of sei and sperm whales in the survey area, the small amount of gear (8 fish pot trawls set for one 24-hour period and 30 lobster trawls at 3 survey locations), the short soak time (24 hours for fish pots, 5 days for lobster), and the small number of survey days (49 over 6 years for the pot survey and 14 trap sampling events annually for 6 years), it is extremely unlikely that a sei or sperm whale would encounter this gear. The risk of entanglement is further reduced by the use of weak links and line with 1,700 pound breaking strength or less. We also note that the increase in the number of pots/traps and associated vertical lines that would be present in the survey area absent the proposed action is so small that it is within the anticipated daily variability and any effect of this increase to the risk of entanglement considered in the Environmental Baseline will be so small that it can not be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected.

Fin and Right Whales

Fin and right whales may occur year round in the area where the surveys will take place. Fin whales are most likely to occur in the area in the summer (June – September). During the months that pot and trap surveys will take place, density of fin whales ranges from 0.00102 fin whales/km^2 (November) to 0.00219 fin whales/km^2 (June) (Roberts et al. 2020). Density estimates indicate that March is the month with the highest density of right whales in the survey area that overall, North Atlantic right whales are most likely to occur in the area from December through June, with the highest probability of occurrence extending from January through April. Monthly density estimates for the months that the trap/pot surveys will take place range from 0.0001 (August and September) to 0.00154 right whales/km^2 (Roberts et al. 2020). The majority of the lobster trap survey activity (May – November) and all the fish pot survey activity (June – November) will occur at the time of year when the lowest numbers of right whales occur in the survey area.

The Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) prepared for the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan (ALWTRP EIS, NOAA 2021b) determined that entanglement in commercial fisheries gear represents the highest proportion of all documented serious and non-serious incidents reported for North Atlantic right and fin whales. However, entanglement remains a relatively rare event, with approximately 8 entanglements a year of right whales estimated along the entire U.S. and Canada Atlantic coast (Hayes et al. 2020).

Recent tools developed by the NEFSC, in support of the ALWTRT, have helped inform and understand the spatiotemporal distribution of pot/trap gear and the spatiotemporal overlap of this gear with large whales. This assessment of trap/pot gear uses the information and results obtained from the NEFSC's DST version 3.1.0. For more information on the DST and the input data, assumptions, and uncertainty please see Volume II, Chapter 3 Appendices, in the ALWTRP Final Environmental Impact Statement, https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/new-england-mid-atlantic/marine-mammal-protection/atlantic-large-whale-take-reduction-plan.

The DST provides information on the spatiotemporal overlap between gear and North Atlantic right whales in Fisheries Statistical Areas 537 and 539, by month. Review of the data shows North Atlantic right whales are likely to occur, in greatest numbers, in Fisheries Statistical Area 537 and 539 from December through May this is consistent with the density information reported above and presented in section 5 of this Opinion. Although we cannot discount the potential for right whales to be present in these Fisheries Statistical Areas outside of the December through May timeframe, given the best available information, the number of right whales in Fisheries Statistical Areas 537 and 539 is likely to be at its lowest from June through November. Based on this, the proposed trap and pot surveys will predominantly occur over a period of time in which North Atlantic right whales are likely to be present at their lowest numbers in this area of southern New England. Based on the number of vertical lines in Fisheries Statistical Areas 537 and 539 under normal operating conditions of the trap/pot fisheries provided above, as well as the best available information on North Atlantic right whales occurrence in these Fisheries Statistical Areas, the DST showed that the highest entanglement risk to right whales in Fisheries Statistical Areas 537 and 539 occurred from March through May (vertical lines present + high numbers of whales=high co-occurrence), and the lowest entanglement risk occurred from June through February (vertical lines present + low whale presence=low co-occurrence).
In Fisheries Statistical Area 537, there are approximately 22,539 (total) vertical lines set each year; in Fisheries Statistical Area 539, there are approximately 39,236 (total) vertical lines set each year. These numbers represent only vertical lines associated with trap or pot gear and are in

addition to vertical lines described for gillnets above. These vertical lines, in general, remain in the water column throughout the year. Reviewing the data by month, over the period of May through November, when the proposed South Fork Wind trap and pot surveys are scheduled to occur, there are approximately 1,579 to 2,636 vertical lines in Fisheries Statistical Area 537, and approximately 2,636 to 5,621 vertical lines in Fisheries Statistical Area 539. Outside of this timeframe (December through April), there are approximately 982-1,628 vertical lines in Fisheries Statistical Area 537, and approximately 990-2,528 vertical lines in Fisheries Statistical Area 539. There is, however, uncertainty in estimating total number of vertical lines in this and other regions of New England. Relative to current operating conditions in the lobster fishery, the additional vertical lines the South Fork Wind survey proposes to place in the water is within the range of uncertainty and, therefore, may not necessarily equate to an increase in vertical lines within these Fisheries Statistical Areas.

Despite the general concerns about the risk of right and fin whale entanglements in vertical lines, we have determined that entanglement or capture of fin or right whales in South Fork Wind trap or pot gear is extremely unlikely to occur. This is because the small amount of gear (8 fish pot trawls set for one 24-hour period and 30 lobster trawls at 3 survey locations), the short soak time (24 hours for fish pots, 5 days for lobster), and the small number of survey days (49 over 6 years for the pot survey and 14 trap sampling events annually for 6 years), make it extremely unlikely that a right or fin whale would encounter this gear. The risk is also lowered by the time of year the surveys will take place as the majority of survey work will occur during the months when right whale density is lowest and when their distribution is typically further east and when fin whale density is lowest. Risk reduction measures including the high frequency of which gear will be tended, the gear modifications that will be employed as part of the South Fork Wind trap and pot surveys further reduce risk. We also note that the increase in the number of pots/traps and associated vertical lines that would be present in the survey area absent the proposed action is so small that it is within the anticipated daily variability and any effect of this increase to the risk of entanglement considered in the Environmental Baseline will be so small that it can not be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected.

Effects to Prey

The proposed trap and pot survey activities will not have any effects on the availability of prey for right, fin, sei, and sperm whales. Right whales and sei whales feed on copepods (Perry et al. 1999). Copepods are very small organisms that will pass through trap/pot gear rather than being captured in it. Similarly, fin whales feed on krill and small schooling fish (e.g., sand lance, herring, mackerel) (Aguilar 2002). The size of the trap/pot gear is too large to capture any fish that may be prey for listed whales. Sperm whales feed on deep water species that do not overlap with the study area where trap and pot activities will occur.

Sea Turtles

Factors Affecting Interactions and Existing Information on Interactions

Available entanglement data for sea turtles indicate they may be vulnerable to entanglement in trap/pot gear. Sea turtles in the survey area are too big to be caught in the pots or traps themselves since the vents/openings leading inside are far smaller than any of these species. The most commonly documented turtle entanglements are with the vertical lines of fishing gear.

However, sea turtles also entangle in groundlines or surface system lines of trap/pot gear. Given data documented in the GAR STDN database, leatherback sea turtles seem to be the most vulnerable turtle to entanglement in vertical lines of fixed fishing gear in the action area. Long pectoral flippers may make leatherback sea turtles more vulnerable to entanglement. Leatherbacks entangled in fixed gear are often restricted with the line wrapped tightly around the flippers multiple times suggesting entangled leatherbacks are typically unable to free themselves from the gear (Hamelin et al. 2017). Leatherback entanglements in trap/pot gear may be more prevalent at certain times of the year when they are feeding on jellyfish in nearshore waters (i.e., Cape Cod Bay) where trap/pot fishing gear is concentrated. Hard-shelled turtles also entangle in vertical lines of trap/pot gear. Due to leatherback sea turtles large size, they likely have the strength to wrap fixed fishing gear lines around themselves, whereas small turtles such as Kemp's ridley or smaller juvenile hard-shelled turtles likely do not.

Records of stranded or entangled sea turtles show entanglement of trap/pot lines around the neck, flipper, or body of the sea turtle; these entanglements can severely restrict swimming or feeding (Balazs 1985). Constriction of a sea turtle’s neck or flippers can lead to severe injury or mortality. While drowning is the most serious consequence of entanglement, constriction of a sea turtle’s flippers can amputate limbs, also leading to death by infection or to impaired foraging or swimming ability. If the turtle escapes or is released from the gear with line attached, the flipper may eventually become occluded, infected, and necrotic. Entangled sea turtles can also be more vulnerable to collision with boats, particularly if the entanglement occurs at or near the surface (Lutcavage et al. 1997).

Estimating Interactions with Sea Turtles

As noted above, in Fisheries Statistical Area 537, there are approximately 22,539 (total) vertical lines set each year; in Fisheries Statistical Area 539, there are approximately 39,236 (total) vertical lines set each year. These lines represent only vertical lines associated with trap and pot gear. These vertical lines, in general, remain in the water column throughout the year. Reviewing the data by month, over the period of May through November, when the proposed South Fork Wind trap surveys will occur, there are approximately 1,579 to 2,636 vertical lines in Fisheries Statistical Area 537, and approximately 2,636 to 5,621 vertical lines in Fisheries Statistical Area 539. Outside of this timeframe (December through April), there are approximately 982-1,628 vertical lines in Fisheries Statistical Area 537, and approximately 990-2,528 vertical lines in Fisheries Statistical Area 539. There is, however, uncertainty in estimating total number of vertical lines in this and other regions of New England. Relative to current operating conditions in the lobster fishery, the additional vertical lines the South Fork Wind survey proposes to place in the water is within the range of uncertainty and, therefore, may not necessarily equate to an increase in vertical lines within these Fisheries Statistical Areas.

We queried the STSSN database for records from 2016-2020 of sea turtles entangled in vertical lines throughout the waters of Rhode Island, Massachusetts (south and west of Cape Cod), New York, and Connecticut, as a best reasonable representation of the greater waters where South Fork Wind survey activities will occur. Of note, these are all vertical line cases, not necessarily attributed to a specific fishery as the gear is not always identifiable. From 2016-2020, there were 30 records of sea turtle entanglements in vertical lines, at an average of 5 entanglement records each year. All of these records were in waters of Massachusetts and Rhode Island and primarily in nearshore waters (Nantucket Sound, Buzzards Bay, Rhode Island Sound).

As noted above, the Statistical Areas that these entanglement records overlap (537 and 539), have between 4,215 and 8,257 vertical lines associated with trap/pot gear at any given time during the months that sea turtles may be present. Entanglement in fixed gear is a relatively rare event and requires that a sea turtle not only occur at the exact place and time when and where the gear is located but also physically interact with the gear and become entangled. While sea turtles occur in these Statistical Areas, they are dispersed. Kraus et al. (2016) reports on sea turtle observations during aerial surveys of the MA/RI and MA WEAs from 2011-2015. Leatherbacks were the most frequently observed sea turtle during the surveys at a sighting rate of 4.65 individuals/1,000 km surveyed (an average of one individual sighted for every 215 km of the transect); loggerheads were sighted at an average rate of one individual for every 251 km of the transect. We have determined that entanglement of a sea turtle in any of the trap/pot survey gear is extremely unlikely to occur because of: the general rarity of entanglements (i.e., average of 5 records a year in an area with at least 4,215 vertical lines for trap/pot gear alone), the location of most sea turtle interactions with trap/pot gear in nearshore waters (Nantucket Sound, Buzzards Bay, Rhode Island Sound) whereas South Fork Wind trap/pot gear will set in offshore waters, the low density of sea turtles in the area (Kraus et al. 2016), the small number of vertical lines associated with these surveys (16 for the fish pot and 60 for the crab/lobster traps), and the limited duration of these surveys (6 24-hour sets a year for the fish trap at two 5-day sets, May – November, for the trap/pot). We also note that the increase in the number of pots/traps and associated vertical lines that would be present in the survey area absent the proposed action is so small that it is within the anticipated daily variability and any effect of this increase to the risk of entanglement considered in the Environmental Baseline will be so small that it can not be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected; this is because the number of vertical lines is so small that it is well within the variability in the amount of gear set on a day to day basis due to normal fishing practices.

Effects to Prey

Sea turtle prey items such as horseshoe crabs, other crabs, whelks, and fish may be removed from the marine environment as bycatch in trap/pot gear. None of these are typical prey species of leatherback sea turtles or of neritic juvenile or adult green sea turtles. Therefore, the South Fork Wind trap and pot surveys will not affect the availability of prey for leatherback and green sea turtles in the action area. Neritic juveniles and adults of both loggerhead and Kemp’s ridley sea turtles are known to feed on these species that may be caught as bycatch in the trap/pot gear. However, all bycatch is expected to be returned to the water alive, dead, or injured to the extent that the organisms will shortly die. Injured or deceased bycatch would still be available as prey for sea turtles, particularly loggerheads, which are known to eat a variety of live prey as well as scavenge dead organisms. Given this information, any effects on sea turtles from collection of potential sea turtle prey in the trap/pot gear will be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated and, therefore, effects are insignificant.

Atlantic Sturgeon

Factors Affecting Interactions and Existing Information on Interactions

Entanglement or capture of Atlantic sturgeon in trap/pot gear is extremely unlikely. A review of all available information resulted in several reported captures of Atlantic sturgeon in trap/pot gear in Chesapeake Bay as part of a reward program for reporting Atlantic sturgeon in Maryland, yet all appeared to be juveniles no greater than two feet in length. Juvenile Atlantic sturgeon do not occur in the area where the South Fork surveys will take place. In addition, there has been one observed interaction, in 2006, on a trip where the top landed species was blue crab (NEFSC observer/sea sampling database, unpublished data). No incidents of trap/pot gear captures or entanglements of sturgeon have been reported in ten federal fisheries ((1) American lobster, (2) Atlantic bluefish, (3) Atlantic deep-sea red crab, (4) mackerel/squid/butterfish, (5) monkfish, (6) Northeast multispecies, (7) Northeast skate complex, (8) spiny dogfish, (9) summer flounder/scup/black sea bass, and (10) Jonah crab fisheries), the proposed surveys conducted by South Fork Wind are aimed to replicate a number of these fisheries to assess the impact of offshore wind development in the WDA. Based on this information, it is extremely unlikely that Atlantic sturgeon from any DPS will be captured or entangled in the pot/trap gear deployed as part of the proposed surveys.

Effects to Prey

The trap and pot gear that will be used to assess lobster and crab species and structure-associated fish species are considered to have low impact to bottom habitat, and is unlikely to incidentally capture Atlantic sturgeon prey. Given this information, it is extremely unlikely the trap/pot activities conducted by South Fork Wind will have an effect on Atlantic sturgeon prey.

7.5.4 Assessment of Risk of Interactions with Beam and Otter Trawl Gear

Beam and otter trawls will be used in the WDA and along the SFEC to sample a range of demersal fish and benthic invertebrates that are common to the waters of New England and the mid-Atlantic including sea scallops, summer flounder, windowpane flounder, winter flounder, fourspot flounder, winter skate, little skate, lobster, Jonah crabs, rock crabs, and silver hake.

A beam trawl operates similar to a bottom otter trawl, however a beam trawl is smaller and more maneuverable than otter trawls. Beam trawl sampling began in fall 2020 in the WDA and will be conducted on monthly 1-day survey trips over a period of six years encompassing the pre-, during, and post-construction time periods. During each survey trip, participating vessels will complete a total of nine tows, this will total nine tows completed per month. Vessels will use a 3-m beam trawl with a 4.75-inch mesh codend (or similar as equivalent to the Northeast Area Monitoring and Assessment Program (NEAMAP) codend), a 1-inch knotless codend liner, and rock chains. Each tow will be conducted during daylight hours and will last for 20 minutes at a target speed of 4 knots. To date, no interactions with ESA listed species have been reported.

Otter trawl sampling will begin fall 2021 and will occur seasonally (e.g. winter, spring, summer and fall) along parts of the SFEC. South Fork Wind anticipates five days of surveying each season with 30 to 40 tows per season for a period of six years encompassing the pre-, during, and post-construction time periods. Consistent with the NEAMAP protocols, the participating vessel will use a 400 x 12cm, three-bridle four seam trawl, with a 12 cm codend and a 2.54 cm (1 inch) knotless liner. The net has a 3-inch cookie sweep and Thyboron Type IV 66” doors. Trawls will take place during daylight hours with a target tow duration of 20 minutes at a target speed of 2.9-3.3 knots.

ESA-Listed Whales

Factors Affecting Interactions and Existing Information on Interactions
Entanglement or capture of ESA-listed North Atlantic right whales, fin whales, sei whales, and sperm whales in beam or bottom otter trawl gear is extremely unlikely. While these species may occur in the study area where survey activities will take place, beam and bottom otter trawl gear is not expected to directly affect right, fin, sei, and sperm whales given that these large cetaceans have the speed and maneuverability to get out of the way of oncoming gear which is towed behind a slow moving vessel (less than 4 knots). There have been no observed or reported interactions of right, fin, sei or sperm whales with beam or bottom otter trawl gear (NEFSC observer/sea sampling database, unpublished data; GAR Marine Animal Incident database, unpublished data). The slow speed of the trawl gear being towed and the short tow times to be implemented further reduce the potential for entanglement or any other interaction. As a result, we have determined that it is extremely unlikely that any large whale would interact with the trawl survey gear.

Effects to Prey
The proposed bottom trawl survey activities will not have any effects on the availability of prey for right, fin, sei, and sperm whales. Right whales and sei whales feed on copepods (Perry et al. 1999). Copepods are very small organisms that will pass through trawl gear rather than being captured in it. In addition, copepods will not be affected by turbidity created by the gear moving through the water. Fin whales feed on krill and small schooling fish (e.g., sand lance, herring, mackerel) (Aguilar 2002). The trawl gear used in the South Fork Wind survey activities operates on or very near the bottom, while schooling fish such as herring and mackerel occur higher in the water column. Sand lance inhabit both benthic and pelagic habitats, however, they typically burry into the benthos and would not be caught in the trawl. Sperm whales feed on deep water species that do not occur in the area to be surveyed.

Sea Turtles

Factors Affecting Interactions and Existing Information on Interactions
Sea turtles forcibly submerged in any type of restrictive gear can eventually suffer fatal consequences from prolonged anoxia and/or seawater infiltration of the lung (Lutcavage and Lutz 1997; Lutcavage et al. 1997). A study examining the relationship between tow time and sea turtle mortality in the shrimp trawl fishery showed that mortality was strongly dependent on trawling duration, with the proportion of dead or comatose sea turtles rising from 0% for the first 50 minutes of capture to 70% after 90 minutes of capture (Henwood and Stuntz 1987). Following the recommendations of the NRC to reexamine the association between tow times and sea turtle deaths, the data set used by Henwood and Stuntz (1987) was updated and re-analyzed (Epperly et al. 2002; Sasso and Epperly 2006). Seasonal differences in the likelihood of mortality for sea turtles caught in trawl gear were apparent. For example, the observed mortality exceeded 1% after 10 minutes of towing in the winter (defined in Sasso and Epperly (2006) as the months of December-February), while the observed mortality did not exceed 1% until after 50 minutes in the summer (defined as March-November; Sasso and Epperly 2006). In general, tows of short duration (<10 minutes) in either season have little effect on the likelihood of

mortality for sea turtles caught in the trawl gear and would likely achieve a negligible mortality rate (defined by the NRC as <1%). Longer tow times (up to 200 minutes in summer and up to 150 minutes in winter) result in a rapid escalation of mortality, and eventually reach a plateau of high mortality, but will not equal 100%, as a sea turtle caught within the last hour of a long tow will likely survive (Epperly et al. 2002; Sasso and Epperly 2006). However, in both seasons, a rapid escalation in the mortality rate did not occur until after 50 minutes (Sasso and Epperly 2006) as had been found by Henwood and Stuntz (1987). Although the data used in the NRC reanalysis were specific to bottom otter trawl gear in the U.S. south Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico shrimp fisheries, the authors considered the findings to be applicable to the impacts of forced submergence in general (Sasso and Epperly 2006).

Sea turtle behaviors may influence the likelihood of them being captured in bottom trawl gear. Video footage recorded by the NMFS, Southeast Fisheries Science Center (SEFSC), Pascagoula Laboratory indicated that sea turtles will keep swimming in front of an advancing shrimp trawl, rather than deviating to the side, until they become fatigued and are caught by the trawl or the trawl is hauled up (NMFS 2002). Sea turtles have also been observed to dive to the bottom and hunker down when alarmed by loud noise or gear (Memo to the File, L. Lankshear, December 4, 2007), which could place them in the path of bottom gear such as a bottom otter trawl. There are very few reports of sea turtles dying during research trawls. Based on the analysis by Sasso and Epperly (2006) and Epperly et al. (2002) as well as information on captured sea turtles from past state trawl surveys and the NEAMAP and NEFSC bottom trawl surveys, tow times less than 30 minutes are expected to eliminate the risk of death from forced submergence for sea turtles caught in the beam and bottom otter trawl survey gear.

During the spring and fall bottom trawl surveys conducted by the NEFSC from 1963-2017, a total of 85 loggerhead sea turtles were captured. Only one of the 85 loggerheads suffered injuries (cracks to the carapace) causing death. All others were alive and returned to the water unharmed. One leatherback and one Kemp's ridley sea turtle have also been captured in the NEFSC bottom trawl surveys and both were released alive and uninjured. NEFSC bottom trawl survey tows are approximately 30 minutes in duration. All 20 loggerhead, 28 Kemp's ridley, and one green sea turtles captured in the NEAMAP surveys since 2007 have also been released alive and uninjured. NEAMAP surveys operate with a 20-minute tow time. Swimmer et al. (2014) indicates that there are few reliable estimates of post-release mortality for sea turtles because of the many challenges and costs associated with tracking animals released at sea. We assume that post-release mortality for sea turtles in bottom otter trawl gear where tow times are short (less than 30 minutes) is minimal to non-existent unless the turtle is already compromised to begin with. In that case, however, the animal would likely be retained onboard the vessel and transported to a rehabilitation center rather than released back into the water.

Estimating Interactions with and Mortality of Sea Turtles

As the proposed South Fork Wind trawl survey activities will use similar gear to the NEAMAP surveys which have historically overlapped the South Fork Wind study area, the historic NEAMAP data was used for bycatch estimation. The NEFSC and Virginia Institute of Marine Science (VIMS) have recorded all sea turtle interactions since the NEFSC and NEAMAP bottom trawl survey programs began, which allows us to predict future interactions as demonstrated in Tables 7.9.3 and 7.9.4. Data from 2008-2019 from the NEAMAP Near Shore Trawl Program –

Southern Segment was used to estimate a capture rate of sturgeon per tow that was then applied to the operations of the proposed South Fork Wind trawl surveys in the WDA and along the SFEC to create a capture estimate. We estimate up to 0.900 loggerhead sea turtles, 0.960 Kemp's ridley sea turtles, 0.030 green sea turtles, and 0 leatherback sea turtles will be incidentally caught in the trawl survey activities in the WDA. For the trawl survey activity along the SEFC we estimate up to 1.333 loggerhead sea turtles, 1.422 Kemp's ridley sea turtles, 0.044 green sea turtles, and 0 leatherback sea turtles will be incidentally caught.

Based on the analysis by Sasso and Epperly (2006) and Epperly et al. (2002) discussed previously, as well as information on captured sea turtles from past state trawl surveys and the NEAMAP and NEFSC trawl surveys, a 20-minute tow time for the bottom otter/beam trawl gear to be used in the proposed South Fork Wind surveys is expected to eliminate the risk of serious injury and mortality from forced submergence for sea turtles caught in the bottom otter trawl survey gear. We do not anticipate any serious injuries or mortalities of captured sea turtles.

Table 7.5.3 Estimated captures of sea turtles by species from South Fork Wind's proposed WDA trawl survey.

Species	Captures per Year
Loggerhead	0.900
Kemp's ridley	0.960
Green	0.030
Leatherback	0

Data from NEAMAP Near Shore Trawl Program – Southern Segment

Table 7.5.4 Estimated captures of sea turtles by species from South Fork Wind's proposed SFEC trawl survey.

Species	Captures per Year
Loggerhead	1.333
Kemp's ridley	1.422
Green	0.044
Leatherback	0

Data from NEAMAP Near Shore Trawl Program – Southern Segment

Using these annual estimates and the six year remaining duration of the trawl surveys, and rounding up any fractions of sea turtles to whole animals, we estimate the following captures over the entirety of the remaining survey period (Table 7.5.5). We anticipate that all sea turtles will be returned to the water alive and without injury.

Table 7.5.5 Estimated captures of sea turtles by species from south fork wind's proposed trawl surveys over the six year duration.

Species	Total Estimated Captures over the 6-year survey period	
	WDA Trawl Survey	SFEC Trawl Survey

Loggerhead	6	8
Kemp's ridley	6	9
Green	1	1
Leatherback	0	0

Effects to Prey
Sea turtle prey items such as horseshoe crabs, other crabs, whelks, and fish are removed from the marine environment as bycatch in bottom trawls. None of these are typical prey species of leatherback sea turtles or of neritic juvenile or adult green sea turtles. Therefore, the South Fork Wind trawl surveys will not affect the availability of prey for leatherback and green sea turtles in the action area. Neritic juveniles and adults of both loggerhead and Kemp's ridley sea turtles are known to feed on these species that may be caught as bycatch in the bottom trawls. However, all bycatch is expected to be returned to the water alive, dead, or injured to the extent that the organisms will shortly die. Injured or deceased bycatch would still be available as prey for sea turtles, particularly loggerheads, which are known to eat a variety of live prey as well as scavenge dead organisms. Given this information, any effects on sea turtles from collection of potential sea turtle prey in the trap/pot gear will be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, detected, or evaluated and, therefore, effects are insignificant.

Atlantic Sturgeon

Factors Affecting Interactions and Existing Information on Interactions
While migrating, Atlantic sturgeon may be present throughout the water column and could interact with trawl gear while it is moving through the water column. Atlantic sturgeon interactions with beam and bottom trawl gear are likely at times when and in areas where their distribution overlaps with the operation of the gear. Adult and subadult Atlantic sturgeon may be present in the action area year-round. In the marine environment, Atlantic sturgeon are most often captured in depths less than 50 meters. Some information suggests that captures in otter trawl gear are most likely to occur in waters with depths less than 30 meters (ASMFC TC 2007). The capture of Atlantic sturgeon in otter trawls used for commercial fisheries is well documented (see for example, Stein et al. 2004b and ASMFC TC 2007).

NEFOP data from Miller and Shepherd (2011) indicates that mortality rates of Atlantic sturgeon caught in otter trawl gear is approximately 5 percent. Atlantic sturgeon are also captured incidentally in trawls used for scientific studies, including the standard Northeast Fisheries Science Center bottom trawl surveys and both the spring and fall NEAMAP bottom trawl surveys. The shorter tow durations and careful handling of any sturgeon once on deck during fisheries research surveys is likely to result in an even lower potential for mortality, as commercial fishing trawls tend to be significantly longer in duration. None of the hundreds of Atlantic and shortnose sturgeon captured in past state ocean, estuary, and inshore trawl surveys have had any evidence of serious injury and there have been no recorded mortalities. Both the NEFSC and NEAMAP surveys have recorded the capture of hundreds of Atlantic sturgeon since the inception of each. To date, there have been no recorded serious injuries or mortalities. In the Hudson River, a trawl survey that incidentally captures shortnose and Atlantic sturgeon has been ongoing since the late 1970s. To date, no serious injuries or mortalities of any sturgeon have been recorded in those surveys.

Estimating Interactions with and Mortality of Sturgeon
As the proposed South Fork Wind trawl survey activities will use similar gear to the NEAMAP surveys which have historically overlapped the South Fork Wind study area, the historic NEAMAP data was used for bycatch estimation. The NEFSC and Virginia Institute of Marine Science have recorded all Atlantic sturgeon interactions since the NEFSC and NEAMAP bottom trawl survey programs began, which allows us to predict future interactions as demonstrated in Tables 7.9.5 and 7.9.6. Data from 2008-2019 from the NEAMAP Near Shore Trawl Program – Southern Segment was used to estimate a capture rate of sturgeon per tow that was then applied to the operations of the proposed South Fork Wind trawl surveys in the WDA and along the SFEC to create a capture estimate.

As explained in the *Status of Species* section, the range of all five DPSs overlaps and extends from Canada through Cape Canaveral, Florida. Atlantic sturgeon originating from all five DPSs use the area where trawl gear will be set. We have considered the best available information from a recent mixed stock analysis done by Kazyak et al. (2021) to determine from which DPSs individuals in the action area are likely to have originated. The authors used 12 microsatellite markers to characterize the stock composition of 1,704 Atlantic sturgeon encountered across the U.S. Atlantic Coast and provide estimates of the percent of Atlantic sturgeon in a number of geographic areas that belong to each DPS. The South Fork survey area falls within the “MID Offshore” area described in that paper. Using that data, we expect that Atlantic sturgeon in the area of the WDA where trawl surveys will occur likely originate from the five DPSs at the following frequencies: New York Bight (55.3%), Chesapeake (22.9%), South Atlantic (13.6%), Carolina (5.8%), Gulf of Maine (1.6%), and Gulf of Maine (1.6%) DPSs. It is possible that a small fraction (0.7%) of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area may be Canadian origin (Kazyak et al. 2021); Canadian-origin Atlantic sturgeon are not listed under the ESA. This represents the best available information on the likely genetic makeup of individuals occurring throughout the action area. Based on the information presented above, we do not anticipate the mortality of any Atlantic sturgeon captured in the trawl gear. The DPS breakdown for annual captures for the trawl surveys in the WDA are provided in table 7.5.6 and in table 7.9.7 for the trawl surveys along the SEFC.

Table 7.5.6 Estimated capture of Atlantic sturgeon by DPS in South Fork Wind’s Proposed WDA Beam Trawl Survey. DPS percentages listed are the percentage values representing the genetics mixed stock analysis results (Kazyak et al. 2021). Fractions of animals are rounded up to whole animals to generate the total estimate.

Beam Trawl	**Captures per Year**	**Total Estimated Captures Over Six Years**
Total	9.75	59
New York Bight (55.3%)	5.392	33
Chesapeake (22.9%)	2.233	14
South Atlantic (13.6%)	1.326	8
Carolina (5.8%)	0.566	4
Gulf of Maine (1.6%)	0.156	1

Data from NEAMAP Near Shore Trawl Program – Southern Segment

Table 7.9.7 Estimated capture of Atlantic sturgeon by DPS in South Fork Wind's SFEC Otter Trawl Survey. DPS percentages listed are the percentage values representing the genetics mixed stock analysis results (Kazyak et al. 2021). Fractions of animals are rounded up to whole animals to generate the total estimate.

Otter Trawl	**Captures per Year**	**Estimated Total Capture Captures Over Six Years**
Total	14.44	87
New York Bight (55.3%)	7.988	48
Chesapeake (22.9%)	3.308	20
South Atlantic (13.6%)	1.964	12
Carolina (5.8%)	0.838	5
Gulf of Maine (1.6%)	0.231	2

Data from NEAMAP Near Shore Trawl Program – Southern Segment

Effects to Prey

The effects of bottom trawls on benthic community structure have been the subject of a number of studies. In general, the severity of the impacts to bottom communities is a function of three variables: (1) energy of the environment, (2) type of gear used, and (3) intensity of trawling. High-energy and frequently disturbed environments are inhabited by organisms that are adapted to this stress and/or are short-lived and are unlikely to be severely affected, while stable environments with long-lived species are more likely to experience long-term and significant changes to the benthic community (Johnson 2002, Kathleen A. Mirarchi Inc. and CR Environmental Inc. 2005, Stevenson et al. 2004). While there may be some changes to the benthic communities on which Atlantic sturgeon feed as a result of bottom trawling, there is no evidence the bottom trawl activities will have a negative impact on availability of Atlantic sturgeon prey; therefore, effects to Atlantic sturgeon are extremely unlikely to occur.

7.5.5 Impacts to Habitat

Here we consider any effects of the proposed marine resource survey and monitoring activities on habitat of listed species. The fish and lobster traps will be set on the ocean floor which could result in disturbance of benthic resources. Similarly, the gillnets will be anchored to the bottom. Moored PAM systems may include a lander or anchor that would rest on the seafloor. However, the size of the area that would be disturbed by setting this gear is extremely small and any effects to benthic resources would be limited to temporary disturbance of the bottom in the immediate area where the gear is set. Although sink gillnets are anchored to the seafloor, several studies have found that gillnet gear has little or low impact on bottom habitat (GBCHS 2008, Morgan and Chuenpagdee 2003, Northeast Region Essential Fish Habitat Steering Committee 2002). In an analysis of effects to habitat from fishing gears, mud and sand habitats were found to recover more quickly than courser substrates (see Appendix D in NEFMC 2016, NEFMC 2020). Any negative effect from gillnets would vary between fishing habitats, with very low levels of damage on sand, some damage lasting a few days on mud, and more lasting damage on hard bottom clay habitats (Northeast Region Essential Fish Habitat Steering Committee 2002). No effects to any ESA listed species are anticipated to result from this small, temporary, intermittent, disturbance of the bottom sediments.

An assessment of fishing gear impacts found that mud, sand, and cobble features are more susceptible to disturbance by trawl gear, while granule-pebble and scattered boulder features are less susceptible (see Appendix D in NEFMC 2016, NEFMC 2020). Geological structures generally recovered more quickly from trawling on mud and sand substrates than on cobble and boulder substrates; while biological structures (i.e. sponges, corals, hydroids) recovered at similar rates across substrates. Susceptibility was defined as the percentage of habitat features encountered by the gear during a hypothetical single pass event that had their functional value reduced, and recovery was defined as the time required for the functional value to be restored (see Appendix D in NEFMC 2016, NEFMC 2020). The benthic sampling and bottom trawl gear will also interact with the ocean floor and may affect bottom habitat in the areas surveyed. However, given the infrequent survey effort, the limited duration of the surveys, and the very small footprint, any effects to ESA listed species resulting from these minor effects to benthic habitat will be so small that they can not be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected.

7.6 Consideration of Potential Shifts or Displacement of Fishing Activity

As described in section 7.2 (*Effects of Project Vessels*) the WDA (i.e. SFWF lease area) and the area along the SFEC support moderate levels of commercial and recreational fishing activity throughout the year. Fishing activity includes a variety of fixed gear (e.g. gillnets, pot/traps) and mobile gear fisheries (e.g. trawl, hook and line), including lobster, Atlantic herring, Atlantic sea scallop, bluefish, Jonah crab, mackerel, squid, butterfish, skates, monkfish, summer flounder, scup, black sea bass, Northeast multispecies, shark species, spiny dogfish, tilefish, and tuna (DOC 2021). Fishing effort is highly variable due to factors including target species distribution and abundance, environmental conditions, season, and market value. As addressed in sections 5 (*Status of the Species*) and 6 (*Environmental Baseline*) of this Opinion, interactions between fishing gear (e.g. bycatch, entanglement) and listed whales, sea turtles, and Atlantic sturgeon occur throughout their range and may occur in the action area.

Here, we consider how the potential shift or displacement of fishing activity from the WDA and along the SFEC, as a result of the proposed project, may affect ESA-listed whales, sea turtles, and Atlantic sturgeon. As described in section 3.5.1 of the FEIS, potential impacts to fishing activities in the WDA and along the SFEC during the construction phase of the proposed project primarily are related to accessibility in the WDA and along the SFEC (DOI 2021). Potential effects include displacement of vessel transit routes and shifts in fishing effort due to disruption in access to fishing grounds in the WDA and along the SFEC due to the presence of Project vessels and construction activities.

While changes in distribution and abundance of species targeted by commercial fisheries could occur during construction due to exposure to increased sediment, noise, and vibration, these effects are anticipated to be short-term and localized and not result in any changes in abundance or distribution of target species that would result in changes in patterns of fishing activity. To the extent that construction has negative effects on the reproductive success of commercial fish species (e.g., cod spawning), there is the potential for a decrease in fish abundance and future consequences on fishing activity. Impacts during the decommissioning phase of the Project are expected to be similar. Due to these potential impacts, displacement of fishing vessels and shifts in operations during the construction and decommissioning phases are expected; though the magnitude of the shifts is unknown based on the naturally variability of the fisheries, it is likely to be limited given the small geographic area (18,936.3 acres – footprint of WTGs, inter-array cable, vessel anchoring, and offshore export cable) impacted by construction or decommissioning and short construction and decommissioning periods (1-2 years each) (DOI 2021).

During the operational phase of the project, the potential impacts to fishing activity are anticipated to relate to potential accessibility issues due to the presence and spacing of WTGs and the OSS as well as potential avoidance of the cable route due to concerns related to avoiding the potential for snags or other interactions with the cable or cable protection. While there are no restrictions proposed for fishing activity in the WDA, the presence and spacing of structures (1x1 nautical miles) may impede fishing operations for certain gear types. Additionally, as explained in section 7.4, the structures will provide new hard bottom habitat in the WDA creating a "reef effect" that may attract fish and, as a result, fishermen, particularly recreational anglers and party/charter vessels.

The potential for shifts in fishing effort due to the proposed project is expected to vary by gear type and vessel size. Of the gear types that fish within the WDA, bottom tending mobile gear is more likely to be displaced than fixed gear, with larger fishing vessels using small mesh bottom-trawl gear and mid-water trawl gear more likely to be displaced, compared to smaller fishing vessels using similar gear types that may be easier to maneuver. However, even without any area use restrictions, there may be different risk tolerances among vessel captains that could lead to at least a temporary reduction in fishing effort in the WDA. Space use conflicts due to displacement of fishing activity from the WDA to surrounding waters could cause a temporary or permanent reduction in fishing activities within the WDA, but an increase in fishing activities elsewhere. Additionally, there could be increased potential for gear conflicts within the WDA as commercial fisheries and for-hire and private recreational fishing compete for space between turbines, especially if there is an increase in recreational fishing for structure-affiliated species attracted to the foundations (e.g. black sea bass). Fixed gear fisheries, such as the lobster fishery, may resume or even increase fishing activity in the WDA and along the SFEC shortly after construction because these fisheries are relatively static and target species with an affinity for new structure that would be created by WTGs and the OSS, though there may be small shifts in gear placement to avoid areas very close to project infrastructure. Mobile fisheries, such as sea scallop and squid trawl fisheries may take longer to resume fishing activity within the WDA or along the SFEC as the physical presence of the new Project infrastructure may alter the habitat, behavior of fishing vessels, and target species. However, for all fisheries, any changes in fishing location are expected to be limited to moves to nearby, geographically-adjacent areas given the relatively small footprint of the project, the distribution of target species, and distance from home ports, all of which limit the potential for significant geographic shifts in distribution of fishing effort. For example, if fishing effort were to shift for longfin squid, effort may shift northeast or southwest outside of the WDA to other areas of similar squid availability south of Martha's Vineyard/Nantucket and Long Island.

Fishing vessel activity (transit and active fishing) is high throughout the southern New England region and Mid-Atlantic Bight as a whole, with higher levels of effort occurring outside of the WDA than within the WDA. The scale of the proposed Project (no more than 16 foundations) and the footprint of the WDA (13,700 acres, with project foundations occupying only a small fraction of that) relative to the size of available fishing area are small. Fishing activity will not be restricted within the WDA and the proposed spacing of the turbines could allow for fishing activity to occur, depending on the risk tolerance of the operator and weather conditions. Any reduction in fishing effort in the WDA would reduce the potential for interactions between listed species and fishing gear in the WDA, yet any beneficial effect would be expected to be so small that it cannot be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected. Similarly, any effects to listed species from shifts of fishing effort to areas outside of the WDA are also expected to be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected. This is because any potential shifts are expected to be limited to small changes in geographic area where the risk of interaction between fishing gear and listed species is not any different than it is in the WDA.

As explained in Section 7.4 above, the presence of new structures (e.g. WTGs and OSS foundations) may also act as artificial reefs and could theoretically attract a range of species, including listed species such as sea turtles and sturgeon if the foundations serve to aggregate their prey. As explained in section 7.4, any changes in biomass around the foundations are expected to be so small and localized that they would have insignificant effects on the distribution, abundance, and use of the WDA by listed sea turtles or Atlantic sturgeon. We do not expect that any reef effect would result in any increase in species preyed on by North Atlantic right, fin or sei whales and note that sperm whales are not expected to forage in the shallow waters of the WDA. As noted previously, we do not expect any effects on the distribution, abundance, or use of the WDA by ESA listed whales that would be attributable to the physical presence of the foundations.

This potential increase in biomass around the new structures of the SFWF may result in an increase in recreational anglers targeting structure affiliated fish species and subsequently may increase incidental interactions between recreational anglers and listed species. At the Block Island Wind Farm, located approximately 13 nautical miles from the proposed SFWF (and other offshore wind farms in Europe), recreational fishermen have expressed a generally positive sentiment about the wind farm as an enhanced fishing location due to the structures as there are no other offshore structures or artificial reefs in surrounding waters (Hooper, Hattam & Austern 2017, ten Brink & Dalton 2018, Smythe, Bidwell & Tyler 2021). Interactions between listed species, particularly sea turtles, and recreational fishing do occur, especially in areas where target species and listed species co-occur (Rudloe & Rudloe 2005, Seney 2016, Swingle et al. 2017, Cook, Dunch & Coleman 2020). Listed sea turtles may be attracted to the structures of the SFWF to forage and seek refuge and also may be attracted to bait used by anglers, depending on species.

The proposed SFWF is planned to be built on Cox Ledge, an area with complex habitat that already supports moderate to high levels of recreational fishing activity, primarily in the summer (DOC 2021). If there is an increase in recreational fishing in the WDA, it is likely that this will represent a shift in fishing effort from areas outside the WDA to within the WDA and/or an increase in overall effort. Given the limited number of turbines (16) proposed to be installed and vessel safety concerns regarding being too close to foundations and other vessels, the likelihood of a significant number of recreational fishermen aggregating around the same turbine foundation at the same time is low. It is not likely that targeted recreational fishing pressure will increase to a point of causing a heightened risk of negative impact for any listed species.

Additionally, it is not likely that the proposed Project would increase the risk of whales colliding with vessels due to the presence of turbine foundations causing reduced maneuverability and the potential increase of vessels in and around the WDA. Whales colliding/hitting vessels, primarily recreational vessels engaged in fishing activities is uncommon to begin with, but can happen[34], primarily when prey of whales and species targeted by fishermen co-occur. As mentioned in section 7.4.3.1, it is expected whales will be able to transit the WDA freely given the spacing between turbine foundations and as explained in section 7.4.3.2, turbine foundations are not expected to cause an increase in prey that would then result in greater co-occurrence of prey, target species, whales, and vessels and thus risk of whales colliding with vessels engaged in fishing. We expect the risk posed to protected species from any shifts and/or displacement of recreational fishing effort caused by the action to be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected and are therefore, insignificant.

In summary, we expect the risks of entanglement, bycatch, or incidental hooking interactions due to any potential shifts or displacement of recreational or commercial fishing activity due to the proposed Project be so small that they cannot be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected.

7.7 Repair and Maintenance Activities

South Fork Wind personnel conducting O&M activities would access the SFWF on an as-needed basis. With no personnel living offshore, the WTGs and OSS would be remotely monitored and controlled by the Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) system which connects the WTGs to the OSS and the OSS to the SFEC-Interconnection Facility with fiber optic cables that would be embedded in the inter-array and export cables. Personnel would not be required to be present except to inspect equipment and conduct repairs. Effects of vessel traffic associated with repairs and maintenance during the operations phase is considered in the *Effects of Project Vessels* section above. Effects of noise associated with project vessels and aircraft are addressed in the acoustics section above; these effects were determined to be insignificant.

Project components would be inspected within a 5-year timeframe. Underwater inspection would include visuals and eddy current tests conducted by divers or remotely operated vehicles. Effects of inspections and associated surveys are considered in sections 7.1 and 7.5 above. South Fork Wind expects that each WTG will require approximately one week of planned maintenance during the summer and one week of unplanned maintenance per year to address issues that cannot be resolved remotely.

BOEM has indicated that given the burial depth of the inter-array cable and the SFEC-Offshore, displacement, or damage by vessel anchors or fishing gear is unlikely. Mechanical inspections of the SFEC would include a cable burial assessment and debris field inspection. South Fork Wind would perform mechanical inspections on a 5-year basis or following a storm event that may necessitate an unplanned inspection. In the event that cable repair was necessary due to mechanical damage, it could be necessary to remove a portion of the cable and splice in a new section. We determined that acoustic and habitat based effects of cable installation would be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur; as any cable repair will essentially follow the same

---

[34] https://boston.cbslocal.com/2021/07/13/block-island-whale-boat-rescue/

process as cable installation except in only a small portion of the cable route and for a shorter period of time, we expect that the effects will be the same or less and therefore would also be insignificant.

Based on our review of the planned repair and maintenance activities described in the BA, DEIS, ad COP (Jacobs et al. 2021), no additional effects beyond those considered in the previous sections of this Opinion are anticipated to result from repair and maintenance activities over the life of the project.

7.8 Unexpected/Unanticipated Events

In this section, we consider the "low probability events" that were identified by South Fork Wind in the DEIS (section 2.2). These events, while not part of the proposed action, include collisions between vessels, allisions (defined as a strike of a moving vessel against a stationary object) between vessels and WTGs or the OSS, and accidental spills. Additionally, we consider the planned activities related to identifying and managing munitions and unexploded ordinance that may be present at the project site.

7.8.1 Vessel Collision/Allision with Foundation

A vessel striking a wind turbine theoretically could result in a spill or catastrophic failure/collapse of the turbine. However, there are several measures in place that ensure such an event is extremely unlikely to occur and not reasonably certain to occur. These include: inclusion of project components on nautical charts which would limit the likelihood of a vessel operator being unaware of the project components while navigating in the area; compliance with lighting and marking required by the USCG which is designed to allow for detection of the project components by vessels in the area; and, spacing of turbines to allow for safe navigation through the project area. Because of these measures, a vessel striking a turbine foundation or the OSS is extremely unlikely to occur. The Navigational Risk Assessment prepared for the project reaches similar conclusions and determined that it is highly unlikely that a vessel will strike a foundation and even in the unlikely event that such a strike did occur, the collapse of the foundation is highly unlikely even considering the largest/heaviest vessels that could transit the WDA. Therefore, based on this information, any effects to listed species that could theoretically result from a vessel collision/allision are extremely unlikely and not reasonably certain to occur.

7.8.2 Failure of WTGs due to Weather Event

As explained in the COP (Jacobs 2021) and DEIS (section 2.2), South Fork Wind designed the proposed Project components to withstand severe weather events. The WTGs are equipped with safety devices to ensure safe operation during their lifetime. These safety devices may vary depending on the WTG selected and may include vibration protection, over speed protection, and aerodynamic and mechanical braking systems, as well as electrical protection devices.

Few hurricanes pass through New England, but the area is subjected to frequent Nor'easters that form offshore between Georgia and New Jersey, and typically reach maximum intensity in New England. These storms are usually characterized by winds from the Northeast, heavy precipitation, wind, storm surges, and rough seas. As described in the Navigational Risk Assessment (DNV GL 2021), a 17.5-year time series of hourly wind speed indicates a mean wind speed of 14.1 knots (7.2 m/s) at 33 feet (10 m) with the highest wind speeds occurring between November and February. DNV GL found this to be consistent with other wind speed data sets reviewed in this region. Although hurricanes are relatively infrequent in New England, waves in the region generally average between 3.3 and 9.8 feet (1 and 3 m). Wave heights up to 30 feet (9 m) were recorded south of Block Island (Scripps Buoy 44097) during Hurricane Sandy in 2012 (NOAA 2012). South Fork Wind does not foresee hazard to the integrity of WTGs due to ice accumulation because should ice accumulate on WTG blades, the weight and center of mass of the blade would change causing an imbalance in the rotor. Should the rotor continue to rotate, it would vibrate, and vibrational sensors installed in the WTG would automatically trigger the WTG to shut down.

BOEM has indicated that the proposed WTGs will meet design criteria to withstand extreme weather conditions that may be faced in the future and include consideration of 50 and 100-year 10 minute wind speed values and ocean forces. The 50-year 10 minute wind speed is estimated to be 96 knots and the 100-year 10 minute wind speed is estimated to be 105 knots. (A 100-year 10-minute wind speed means there is a 1-percent chance of that event occurring in any given year, similarly a 50-year wind speed means there is a 2% chance of that happening in any given year.). The design will also be in accordance with various standards including International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) 61400-1 and 61400-3. These standards require designs to withstand forces based on a 50-year return interval for the turbines, and 100-year return interval for electrical substation platforms. The requirements for extreme metocean loading are based on 50-yr return interval site-specific conditions for most operating load cases with a 500-yr abnormal "robustness" load case check (a 500-year event has a 0.2% chance of occurring in any given year). In the FEIS, BOEM states that the design standards are adequate even considering the predicted increase in hurricane activity that is anticipated to result from climate change (Knutson et al. 2015 and Knutson et al. 2020).

Given that the project components are designed to endure wind and wave conditions that are far above the maximum wind and wave conditions recorded at the nearest weather monitoring buoy to the project, and exceed conditions for which there is only a 1% chance of occurring in any year (100-year event), it is not reasonable to conclude that project components will experience a catastrophic failure due to a weather event over the next 25 years. In other words, project components have been designed to withstand conditions that are not expected to occur more than once over the next 100 years (e.g., exceeding 100-year 10 minute wind speed values and ocean forces). As a catastrophic failure would require conditions that are extremely unlikely to occur, even considering projections of increased hurricane activity related to climate change projections over the next 25 years, any associated potential impacts to listed species are also extremely unlikely and not reasonably certain to occur.

7.8.3 Oil Spill/Chemical Release

As explained in the Oil Spill Response Plan (OSRP) (COP, Appendix D), the most probable worst-case scenario within the area of operations would be if all fuel and oils from the contracted support facility were discharged. There are 2,582.5 gallons of oil or product which could create a sheen within the vicinity of the WTGs and OSS. The toppling of all the WTGs and the OSS could hypothetically result in a release of 2,722.5 gallons of products (e.g., grease, lubrication oil, hydraulic oil, and/or general oil). The risk of a spill in the extremely unlikely event of a collapse is limited by the containment built into the structures. As explained above, catastrophic loss of any of the structures is not reasonably certain to occur; therefore, the spill of oil from these structures is also not reasonably certain to occur. Modeling presented by BOEM in the BA (from Bejarano et al. 2013) indicates that there is a .01% chance of a "catastrophic release" of oil from the wind facility in any given year. Given the 25-year life of this project, the modeling supports our determination that such a release is not reasonably certain to occur.

The Bejarano et al. (2013) modeling indicates the only incidents calculated to occur within the life of the Proposed Action are spills of up to 90 to 440 gallons (340.7 to 1,665.6 liters) of WTG fluid or a diesel fuel spill of up to 2,000 gallons (7,570.8) with model results suggesting that such spills would occur no more frequently than once in 10 years and once in 10-50 years, respectively. However, this modeling assessment does not account for any of the spill prevention plans that will be in place for the project which are designed to reduce risk of accidental spills/releases. Considering the predicted frequency of such events (i.e., no more than 3 WTG fluid spills over the 25-year life of the WTGs and no more than one diesel spill over the life of the project), and the reduction in risk provided by adherence to USCG and BSEE requirements as well as adherence to the spill prevention plan both of which are designed to eliminate the risk of a spill of any substance to the marine environment, we have determined that any fuel or WTG fluid spill is extremely unlikely and not reasonably certain to occur; as such, any exposure of listed species to any such spill is also extremely unlikely and not reasonably certain to occur.

We also note that in the unlikely event that there was a spill, if a response was required by the US EPA or the USCG, there would be an opportunity for NMFS to conduct a consultation with the lead Federal agency on the oil spill response which would allow NMFS to consider the effects of any oil spill response on listed species in the action area.

7.8.4 Unexploded Ordinance

As described in section 3.0 of the Opinion, prior to seafloor preparation, cable routing, and micrositing of all assets, a MEC/UXO Risk Assessment with Risk Mitigation Strategy will be implemented. Work will be carried out to identify any potential sources of MEC/UXO and all efforts will be made to avoid any identified MEC/UXO. BOEM has determined that it is very unlikely that following these efforts that any MEC/UXO will be encountered, and we concur that an encounter is not reasonably certain. In the unlikely event that MEC/UXO is identified during construction and can not be avoided, BOEM and South Fork will implement an emergency response plan. It is expected that this plan would use a "Lift and Shift" strategy to move the MEC/UXO to another suitable location. The response plan will be developed in coordination with multiple agencies, including NMFS. As it is very unlikely that any MEC/UXO will be encountered, and even less likely that the emergency response would result in any action other than a move to another suitable location, effects to ESA listed species from the response to MEC/UXO are extremely unlikely and not reasonably certain to occur. This risk is even further reduced by the requirement to develop a mitigation strategy with multiple agencies that would take into consideration the presence of marine resources, including ESA listed species.

7.9 Project Decommissioning

According to 30 CFR Part 585 and other BOEM requirements, South Fork Wind would be required to remove or decommission all installations and clear the seabed of all obstructions created by the proposed Project within 2 years of the termination of its lease. All facilities would need to be removed 15 feet (4.6 meters) below the mudline (30 CFR § 585.910(a)). The portion buried below 15 feet (4.6 meters) would remain, and the depression refilled with the temporarily removed sediment. BOEM expects that WTGs and the OSS would be disassembled and the piles cut below the mudline. South Fork Wind would clear the area after all components have been decommissioned to ensure that no unauthorized debris remains on the seabed. A cable-laying vessel would be used to remove as much of the inter-array and SFEC transmission cables from the seabed as practicable to recover and recycle valuable metals. Cable segments that cannot be easily recovered would be left buried below the seabed or rock armoring.

Information on the proposed decommissioning is very limited and the information available to us in the BA, DEIS, and COP limits our ability to carry out a thorough assessment of effects on listed species. Here, we evaluate the information that is available on the decommissioning. We note that prior to decommissioning, South Fork Wind would be required to submit a decommissioning plan to BOEM. According to BOEM, this would be subject to an approval process that is independent of the proposed COP approval. BOEM indicates in the DEIS that the approval process will include an opportunity for public comment and consultation with municipal, state, and federal management agencies. South Fork Wind would need to obtain separate and subsequent approval from BOEM to retire any portion of the Proposed Action in place. Given that approval of the decommissioning plan will be a discretionary Federal action, albeit one related to the present action, we anticipate that a determination will be made based on the best available information at that time whether reinitiation of this consultation is necessary to consider effects of decommissioning that are different from those considered here.

As described in section 4.3 of the COP, it is anticipated that the equipment and vessels used during decommissioning will likely be similar to those used during construction and installation (Deepwater Wind, LCC 2020). For offshore work, vessels would likely include cable laying vessels, crane barges, jack-up barges, larger support vessels, tugboats, crew transfer vessels, and possibly a vessel specifically built for erecting WTG structures. Effects of the vessel traffic anticipated for decommissioning are addressed in the vessel effects section of this Opinion. As described below, we have determined that all other effects of decommissioning will be insignificant.

As described in the COP (Section 4.4; Deepwater Wind, LCC 2020), if cable removal is required, the first step of the decommissioning process would involve disconnecting the inter-array 66kV cables from the WTGs. Next, the inter-array cables would be pulled out of the J-tubes or similar connection and extracted from their embedded position in the seabed. In some places, in order to remove the cables, it may be necessary to jet plow the cable trench to fluidize the sandy sediments covering the cables. Then, the cables will be reeled up onto barges. Lastly, the cable reels will then be transported to the port area for further handling and recycling. The same general process will likely be followed for the 138 kV offshore export cable. If protective concrete mattresses or rocks were used for portions of the cable run, they will be removed prior to recovering the cable. We determined that acoustic and habitat based effects of cable installation would be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur; as the cable removal will essentially follow the same process as cable installation except in reverse, we expect that effects will be the same and therefore would also be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur.

Prior to dismantling the WTGs, they would be properly drained of all lubricating fluids, according to the established operations and maintenance procedures and the OSRP. Removed fluids would be brought to the port area for proper disposal and/or recycling. Next, the WTGs would be deconstructed (down to the transition piece at the base of the tower) in a manner closely resembling the installation process. The blades, rotor, nacelle, and tower would be sequentially disassembled and removed to port for recycling using vessels and cranes similar to those used during construction. It is anticipated that almost all of the WTG will be recyclable, except possibly for any fiberglass components. After removing the WTGs, the steel transition pieces and foundation components would be decommissioned.

Sediments inside the monopile could be suctioned out and temporarily stored on a barge to allow access for cutting. Because this sediment removal would occur within the hollow base of the monopile, no listed species would be exposed to effects of this operation. The foundation and transition piece assembly is expected to be cut below the seabed in accordance with the BOEM's removal standards (30 C.F.R. 250.913). The portion of the foundation below the cut will likely remain in place. Depending upon the available crane's capacity, the foundation/transition piece assembly above the cut may be further cut into several more manageable sections to facilitate handling. Then, the cut piece(s) would be lifted out of the water and placed on a barge for transport to an appropriate port area for recycling.

The steel foundations would likely be cut below the mudline using one or a combination of: underwater acetylene cutting torches, mechanical cutting, or a high pressure water jet. The OSS foundation piles will likely be removed according to the same procedures used in the removal of the WTG foundations.

BOEM did not provide any estimates of underwater noise associated with pile cutting, and we did not identify any reports of underwater noise monitoring of pile cutting with the proposed methods. Hinzmann et al. (2017) reports on acoustic monitoring of removal of a met-tower monopile associated with the Amrumbank West offshore wind project in the North Sea off the coast of Germany. Internal jet cutting (i.e., the cutter was deployed from inside the monopile) was used to cut the monopile approximately 2.5 m below the mudline. The authors report that the highest sound levels were between 250 and 1,000 Hz. Frequent stopping and starting of the noise suggests that this is an intermittent, rather than continuous noise source. The authors state that values of 160 dB SELcum and 190 dB Peak were not exceeded during the jet cutting process. At a distance of 750 m from the pile, noise attenuated to 150.6 dB rms. For purposes of this consultation, and absent any other information to rely on, we assume that these results are predictive of the underwater noise that can be expected during pile removal during project decommissioning. As such, using these numbers, we would not expect any injury to any listed species because the expected noise levels are below the injury thresholds for whales, sea turtles, and Atlantic sturgeon. We also do not expect any exposure to noise that could result in behavioral disturbance of sea turtles or whales because the noise is below the levels that may result in behavioral disturbance.

Any Atlantic sturgeon within 750 m of the pile being cut would be exposed to underwater noise that is expected to elicit a behavioral response. Exposure to that noise could result in short-term behavioral or physiological responses (e.g., avoidance, stress). Exposure would be brief, just long enough to detect and swim away from the noise, and consequences limited to avoidance of the area within 750 m of the pile during. As such, effects to Atlantic sturgeon will be so small that they can not be meaningfully measured, evaluated, or detected, and would be insignificant.

The sediments previously removed from the inner space of the pile would be returned to the depression left once the pile is removed. To minimize sediment disturbance and turbidity, a vacuum pump and diver or ROV-assisted hoses would likely be used. This, in combination with the removal of the stones used for scour protection and any concrete mattresses used along the cable route, would reverse the conversion of soft bottom habitat to hard bottom habitat that would occur as a result of project construction. Removal of the foundations would remove the potential for reef effects in the WDA. As we determined that effects of habitat conversion due to construction would be insignificant, we expect the reverse to also be true and would expect that effects of habitat conversion back to pre-construction conditions would also be insignificant.

7.10 Consideration of the Effects of the Action in the Context of Predicted Climate Change due to Past, Present, and Future Activities

Climate change is relevant to the Status of the Species, Environmental Baseline, Effects of the Action, and Cumulative Effects sections of this Opinion. In the Status of the Species section, climate change as it relates to the status of particular species is addressed. Rather than include partial discussion in several sections of this Opinion, we are synthesizing our consideration of the effects of the proposed action in the context of anticipated climate change here.

In general, waters in the Northeast are warming and are expected to continue to warm over the 25-to-30-year life of the South Fork project. However, waters in the North Atlantic Ocean have warmed more slowly than the global average or slightly cooled. This is because of the Gulf Stream's role in the Atlantic Meridional Overturning Circulation (AMOC). Warm water in the Gulf Stream cools, becomes dense, and sinks, eventually becoming cold, deep waters that travel back equatorward, spilling over features on the ocean floor and mixing with other deep Atlantic waters to form a southward current approximately 1500 m beneath the Gulf Stream (IPCC 2021). Globally averaged surface ocean temperatures are projected to increase by approximately 0.7 °C by 2030 and 1.4 °C by 2060 compared to the 1986-2005 average (IPCC 2014), with increases of closer to 2°C predicted for the geographic area that includes the WDA. Data from the two NOAA weather buoys closest to the WDA (44020 and 44097) collected from 2009-2016 indicate a mean temperature range from a low of 5.9°C in the winter to a high of 21.8°C in the summer. Based on current predictions (IPCC 2014[35]), this could shift to a range of 7.9°C in the winter to 23.8°C in the summer. Ocean acidification is also expected to increase over the life of the project (Hare et. al 2016) which may affect the prey of a number of ESA listed species. Ocean acidification is contributing to reduced growth or the decline of zooplankton and other invertebrates that have calcareous shells (Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory [PMEL] 2020).

---

[35] IPCC 2014 is used as a reference here consistent with NMFS 2016 Revised Guidance for Treatment of Climate Change in NMFS Endangered Species Act Decisions (Available at: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/endangered-species-conservation/endangered-species-act-guidance-policies-and-regulations, last accessed September 2, 2020).

We have considered whether it is reasonable to expect ESA listed species whose northern distribution does not currently overlap with the action area to occur in the action area over the project life due to a northward shift in distribution. We have determined that it is not reasonable to expect this to occur. This is largely because water temperature is only one factor that influences species distribution. Even with warming waters we do not expect hawksbill sea turtles to occur in the action area because there will still not be any sponge beds or coral reefs that hawksbills depend on and are key to their distribution (NMFS and USFWS 2013). We also do not expect giant manta ray or oceanic whitetip shark to occur in the lease area. Oceanic whitetip shark are a deep-water species (typically greater than 184 m) that occurs beyond the shelf edge on the high seas (Young et al. 2018). Giant manta ray also occur in deeper, offshore waters and occurrence in shallower nearshore waters is coincident with the presence of coral reefs that they rely on for important life history functions (Miller et al. 2016). Smalltooth sawfish do not occur north of Florida. Their life history depends on shallow estuarine habitats fringed with vegetation, usually red mangroves (Norton et al. 2012); such habitat does not occur in the lease area and would not occur even with ocean warming over the course of the proposed action. As such, regardless of the extent of ocean warming that may be reasonably expected in the action area over the life of the project, the habitat will remain inconsistent with habitats used by ESA listed species that currently occur south of the lease area. Therefore, we do not anticipate that any of these species will occur in the lease area over the life of the proposed action.

We have also considered whether climate change will result in changes in the use of the action area by Atlantic sturgeon or the ESA listed turtles and whales considered in this consultation. In a climate vulnerability analysis, Hare et al. (2016) concluded that Atlantic sturgeon are relatively invulnerable to distribution shifts. Given the extensive range of the species along nearly the entire U.S. Atlantic Coast and into Canada, it is unlikely that Atlantic sturgeon would shift out of the action area over the life of the project. If there were shifts in the abundance or distribution of sturgeon prey, it is possible that use of WDA by foraging sturgeon could become more or less common. However, even if the frequency and abundance of use of the WDA by Atlantic sturgeon increased over time, we would not expect any different effects to Atlantic sturgeon than those considered based on the current distribution and abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area.

Use of the action area by sea turtles is driven at least in part by sea surface temperature, with sea turtles absent from the WDA from the late fall through mid-spring due to colder water temperatures. An increase in water temperature could result in an expansion of the time of year that sea turtles are present in the action area and could also increase the frequency and abundance of sea turtles in the action area. However, even with a 2°C increase in water temperatures, winter and early spring mean sea surface temperatures in the WDA are still too cold to support sea turtles. Therefore, any expansion in annual temporal distribution in the action area is expected to be small and on the order of days or potentially weeks, but not months. Any changes in distribution of prey would also be expected to affect distribution and abundance of sea turtles and that could be a negative or positive change. It has been speculated that the nesting range of some sea turtle species may shift northward as water temperatures warm. Currently, nesting in the mid-Atlantic is extremely rare, and no nesting has ever been documented in New England. In order for nesting to be successful, fall and winter temperatures need to be warm enough to support the successful rearing of eggs and sea temperatures must be warm enough for hatchlings to survive when they enter the water. Predicted increases in water temperatures over the life of the project are not great enough to allow successful rearing of sea turtle hatchlings in the action area. Therefore, we do not expect that over the time-period considered here, that there would be any nesting activity or hatchlings in the action area. Based on the available information, we expect that any increase in the frequency and abundance of use of the WDA by sea turtles due to increases in mean sea surface temperature would be small. Regardless of this, we would not expect any different effects to sea turtles than those considered based on the current distribution and abundance of sea turtles in the action area. Further, given that any increase in frequency or abundance of sea turtles in the action area is expected to be small we do not expect there to be an increase in risk of vessel strike above what has been considered based on current known distribution and abundance.

The distribution, abundance and migration of baleen whales reflects the distribution, abundance and movements of dense prey patches (e.g., copepods, euphausiids or krill, amphipods, shrimp), which have in turn been linked to oceanographic features affected by climate change (Learmonth et al. 2006). Changes in plankton distribution, abundance, and composition are closely related to ocean climate, including temperature. Changes in conditions may directly alter where foraging occurs by disrupting conditions in areas typically used by species and can result in shifts to areas not traditionally used that have lower quality or lower abundance of prey.

Climate change is unlikely to affect the frequency or abundance of sperm whales in the action area. The species rarity in the WDA is expected to continue over the life of the project due to the depths in the area being shallower than the open ocean deep-water areas typically frequented by sperm whales and their prey. Two of the significant potential prey species for fin whales in the WDA are sand lance and Atlantic herring. Hare et al. (2016) concluded that climate change is likely to negatively impact sand lance and Atlantic herring but noted that there was a high degree of uncertainty in this conclusion. The authors noted that higher temperatures may decrease productivity and limit habitat availability. A reduction in small schooling fish such as sand lance and Atlantic herring in the WDA could result in a decrease in the use of the area by foraging fin whales. The distribution of copepods in the North Atlantic, including in the WDA is driven by a number of factors that may be impacted by climate change. Record et al. (2019) suggests that recent changes in the distribution of North Atlantic right whales are related to recent rapid changes in climate and prey and notes that while right whales may be able to shift their distribution in response to changing oceanic conditions, the ability to forage successfully in those new habitats is also critically important. Warming in the deep waters of the Gulf of Maine is negatively impacting the abundance of *Calanus finmarchicus,* a primary prey for right whales. *C. finmarchicus* is vulnerable to the effects of global warming, particularly on the Northeast U.S. Shelf, which is in the southern portion of its range (Grieve et al. 2017). Grieve et al. (2017) used models to project *C. finmarchicus* densities into the future under different climate scenarios considering predicted changes in water temperature and salinity. Based on their results, by the 2041–2060 period, 22 – 25% decreases in *C. finmarchicus* density are predicted across all regions of the Northeast U.S. shelf. A decrease in abundance of right whale prey in the WDA could be expected to result in a similar decrease in abundance of right whales in the WDA over the same time scale; however, whether the predicted decline in density in *C.*

finmarchicus density is great enough to result in a decrease in right whale presence in the action area over the life of the project is unknown.

Right whale calving occurs off the coast of the Southeastern U.S. In the final rule designating critical habitat, the following features were identified as essential to successful calving: (1) calm sea surface conditions associated with Force 4 or less on the Beaufort Scale, (2) sea surface temperatures from 7 °C through 17 °C; and, (3) water depths of 6 to 28 meters where these features simultaneously co-occur over contiguous areas of at least 231 km^2 during the months of November through April. Even with a 2°C shift in mean sea surface temperature, waters off of New England in the November to April period will not be warm enough to support calving. While there could be a northward shift in calving over this period, it is not reasonable to expect that over the life of the project that calving would occur in the WDA. Further, given the thermal tolerances of young calves (Garrison 2007) we do not expect that the distribution of young calves would shift northward into the action area such that there would be more or younger calves in the action area.

Based on the available information, it is difficult to predict how the use of the action area by large whales may change over the operational life of the project. However, we do not expect changes in use by sperm whales. Changes in use by sei, fin, and right whales may be related to a northward shift in distribution due to warming waters and a decreased abundance of prey. However, it is also possible that reductions in prey in other areas, including the Gulf of Maine, result in persistence of foraging in the WDA over time. Based on the information available at this time, it seems most likely that the use of the WDA by large whales will decrease or remain stable. As such, we do not expect any changes in abundance or distribution that would result in different effects of the action than those considered in the Effects of the Action section of this Opinion. To the extent new information on climate change, listed species and their prey becomes available in the future, reinitiation of this consultation may be necessary.

8.0 CUMULATIVE EFFECTS

“Cumulative effects” are those effects of future state or private activities, not involving Federal activities, that are reasonably certain to occur within the action area of the Federal action subject to consultation (50 C.F.R. §402.02). Future Federal actions that are unrelated to the proposed action are not considered in this section because they require separate consultation pursuant to section 7 of the ESA. It is important to note that the ESA definition of cumulative effects is not equivalent to the definition of “cumulative impacts” as described in the South Fork DEIS and FEIS. As noted in section 1.7 of the DEIS and FEIS, “Cumulative impacts are the incremental effects of the Proposed Action on the environment when added to other past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions, regardless of which agency or person undertakes the actions (see 40 CFR 1508.7).”

We reviewed the list of cumulative impacts identified by BOEM in the DEIS and FEIS and determined that most (other offshore wind energy development activities; undersea transmission lines, gas pipelines, and other submarine cables (e.g., telecommunications); tidal energy projects; marine minerals use and ocean-dredged material disposal; military use; Federal fisheries use and management, and, oil and gas activities) do not meet the ESA definition of cumulative effects because we expect that if any of these activities were proposed in the action area, or proposed elsewhere yet were to have future effects inside the action area, they would require at least one Federal authorization or permit and would therefore require their own ESA section 7 consultation. BOEM identifies global climate change as a cumulative impact in the DEIS and FEIS. Because global climate change is not a future state or private activity, we do not consider it a cumulative effect for the purposes of this consultation. Rather, future state or private activities reasonably certain to occur and contribute to climate change's effects in the action area are relevant. However, given the difficulty of parsing out climate change effects due to past and present activities from those of future state and private activities, we discussed the effects of the action in the context of climate change due to past, present, and future activities in the Effects of the Action section above. The remaining cumulative impacts identified in the DEIS and FEIS (other offshore wind energy development activities; marine transportation, coastal development, and state and private fisheries use and management) are addressed below.

In the DEIS and FEIS, BOEM presented a cumulative activities scenario that identified the possible extent of reasonably foreseeable offshore wind development on the Atlantic OCS. As a result of this process, BOEM has assumed that approximately 22 gigawatts of Atlantic offshore wind development are reasonably foreseeable along the east coast. As defined by BOEM in the DEIS and FEIS, reasonably foreseeable development includes approximately 20 projects with 32 construction phases. The level of development expected to fulfill 25 gigawatts of offshore wind energy would result in the construction of as many as 2,169 wind turbines over a 10-year period on the Atlantic OCS, with currently available technology. It is important to note that because any future offshore wind project will require section 7 consultation, these future wind projects do not fit within the ESA definition of cumulative effects and none of them are considered in this Opinion. However, in each successive consultation, the effects on listed species of other offshore wind projects under construction or completed would be considered to the extent they influence the status of the species and/or environmental baseline according to the best available scientific information.

During this consultation, we searched for information on future state, tribal, local, or private (non-Federal) actions reasonably certain to occur in the action area or have effects in the action area. We did not find any information about non-Federal actions other than what has already been described in the *Environmental Baseline*. The primary non-Federal activities that will continue to have effects in the action area are: Recreational fisheries, fisheries authorized by states, use of the action area by private vessels (i.e., marine transportation), discharge of wastewater and associated pollutants, and coastal development authorized by state and local governments. Any coastal development that requires a Federal authorization, inclusive of a permit from the USACE, would require future section 7 consultation and would not be considered a cumulative effect. We do not have any information to indicate that effects of these activities over the life of the proposed action will have different effects than those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change.

9.0 INTEGRATION AND SYNTHESIS OF EFFECTS

The *Integration and Synthesis* section is the final step in our assessment of the risk posed to species as a result of implementing the proposed action. In this section, we add the *Effects of the Action* (Section 7) to the *Environmental Baseline* (Section 6) and the *Cumulative Effects* (Section

8), while also considering effects in context of climate change and the status of the species (Section 5), to formulate the agency's biological opinion as to whether the proposed action is likely to reduce appreciably the likelihood of both the survival and recovery of an ESA-listed species in the wild by reducing its numbers, reproduction, or distribution. The purpose of this analysis in this Opinion is to determine whether the action is likely to jeopardize the continued existence of North Atlantic right, fin, sei or sperm whales, five DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon, the Northwest Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles, North Atlantic DPS of green sea turtles, or leatherback or Kemp's ridley sea turtles.

Below, for the listed species that may be affected by the action and *all* effects on them are not extremely unlikely and/or insignificant, we summarize the status of the species and consider whether the action will result in reductions in reproduction, numbers, or distribution of these species. We then consider whether any reductions in reproduction, numbers, or distribution resulting from the action would reduce appreciably the likelihood of both the survival and recovery of these species, as those terms are defined for purposes of the federal Endangered Species Act.

In the NMFS/USFWS Section 7 Handbook, for the purposes of determining whether jeopardy is likely, survival is defined as, "the species' persistence as listed or as a recovery unit, beyond the conditions leading to its endangerment, with sufficient resilience to allow for the potential recovery from endangerment. Said in another way, survival is the condition in which a species continues to exist into the future while retaining the potential for recovery. This condition is characterized by a species with a sufficient population, represented by all necessary age classes, genetic heterogeneity, and number of sexually mature individuals producing viable offspring, which exists in an environment providing all requirements for completion of the species' entire life cycle, including reproduction, sustenance, and shelter." Recovery is defined as, "Improvement in the status of listed species to the point at which listing is no longer appropriate under the criteria set out in Section 4(a)(1) of the Act."

9.1 Atlantic sturgeon

Atlantic sturgeon from any of the five DPSs may be present in the action area (Kazyak et al. 2021) and exposed to effects of the proposed action as described in section 7.0 of this Opinion. As described in the most recent stock assessment (ASMFC 2017), at the coastwide and DPS levels, Atlantic sturgeon are depleted relative to historical levels. However, there are signs the populations have started a slow recovery relative to 1998 levels, and there is a high probability that the coastwide index is above the 1998 value (ASMFC 2017). Indices from the Gulf of Maine DPS, New York Bight DPS, and Carolina DPS all had a greater than 50% chance of being above their 1998 value. The index from the Chesapeake Bay DPS only had a 36% chance of being above the 1998 value. There were no representative indices from the South Atlantic DPS, therefore, its abundance status is unknown (ASMFC 2017).

We have determined that, with the exception of interactions with gillnet and trawl surveys, all effects of the proposed action on Atlantic sturgeon will be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur. While exposure to pile driving noise may result in a behavioral response from individuals close enough to the pile to be disturbed, that response will not significantly disrupt normal behavior patterns and effects will be insignificant. We determined that all effects to habitat and prey will be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur and determined that vessel strike was extremely unlikely to occur. We anticipate the capture of 146 Atlantic sturgeon in trawls over the six year survey period; we do not anticipate any serious injury or mortality. We anticipate the capture of 33 Atlantic sturgeon in gillnets over the six year survey period; we anticipate the mortality of 5 of those 33 Atlantic sturgeon. All captures and mortalities will be subadults or adults as those are the only life stages that occur in the survey area. All effects of project operations, including operational noise and the physical presence of the turbine foundations and electric cable, are extremely unlikely to occur or insignificant.

9.1.1 Gulf of Maine DPS of Atlantic sturgeon

The Gulf of Maine DPS is listed as threatened. While Atlantic sturgeon occur in several rivers in the Gulf of Maine DPS, recent spawning has only been documented in the Kennebec River. There are no abundance estimates for the Gulf of Maine DPS or for the Kennebec River spawning population. NMFS estimated adult and subadult abundance of the Gulf of Maine DPS based on available information for the genetic composition and the estimated abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in marine waters (Damon-Randall et al. 2013, Kocik et al. 2013) and concluded that subadult and adult abundance of the Gulf of Maine DPS was 7,455 sturgeon (NMFS 2013). This number encompasses many age classes since, across all DPSs, subadults can be as young as one year old when they first enter the marine environment, and adults can live as long as 64 years (Balazik et al. 2012a; Hilton et al. 2016).

Very few data sets are available that cover the full, multi-decade, potential life span of an Atlantic sturgeon which could be as much as 64 years. The ASMFC concluded for the Stock Assessment that it could not estimate abundance of the Gulf of Maine DPS or otherwise quantify the trend in abundance because of the limited available information. However, the Stock Assessment was a comprehensive review of the available information, and used multiple methods and analyses to assess the status of the Gulf of Maine DPS and the coast wide stock of Atlantic sturgeon. For example, the Stock Assessment Subcommittee defined a benchmark, the mortality threshold, against which mortality for the coast wide stock of Atlantic sturgeon as well as for each DPS were compared[36] to assess whether the current mortality experienced by the coast wide stock and each DPS is greater than what it can sustain.

In the Stock Assessment, ASMFC concluded that abundance of the Gulf of Maine DPS is "depleted" relative to historical levels, but that there is a 51 percent probability that abundance of the Gulf of Maine DPS has increased since implementation of the 1998 fishing moratorium. The ASMFC also concluded that there is a relatively high likelihood (74 percent probability) that mortality for the Gulf of Maine DPS exceeds the mortality threshold used for the Stock Assessment (ASMFC 2017).

The effects of the action are in addition to ongoing threats in the action area, which include incidental capture in state and federal fisheries, boat strikes, coastal development, habitat loss, contaminants, and climate change. Entanglement in fishing gear and vessel strikes as described

---

[36] The analysis considered both a coast wide mortality threshold and a region-specific mortality threshold to evaluate the sensitivity of the model to differences in life history parameters among the different DPSs (e.g., Atlantic sturgeon in the northern region are slower growing, longer lived; Atlantic sturgeon in the southern region are faster growing, shorter lived).

in the *Environmental Baseline*, may occur in the action area over the life of the proposed action. As noted in the Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different from those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action due to in the context of anticipated climate change. As noted in the Environmental Baseline, the Vineyard Wind project is also proposed for construction in the action area. In our ESA consultation on that project, we concluded that it was not likely to adversely affect the Gulf of Maine DPS. Based on project schedules we do not anticipate that construction of these two projects would occur concurrently; therefore, we do not anticipate the potential for pile driving to occur on the same day for both projects. We also note that these lease areas are about 30 km apart at their closest points; this is enough separation to ensure no overlap of sound fields even in the extremely unlikely event that pile driving occurred for the two projects at the same time.

We have considered effects of the South Fork project over the construction, operations, and decommissioning periods. With the exception of capture in the two trawl surveys and the gillnet surveys, we determined that all effects of the proposed action will be extremely unlikely to occur and/or insignificant. We do not anticipate any adverse effects to result from exposure to pile driving or operational noise and do not expect any Atlantic sturgeon to be struck by any project vessels. We do not expect the operation or existence of the turbines and other facilities, including the electric cables, to result in any changes in the abundance or distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area.

We expect the capture of 1 Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl survey in the WDA and 2 Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl survey along the SFEC. We do not anticipate the mortality of any Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl surveys. We anticipate the capture of 1 Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the gillnet surveys, and expect that individual may die. In total, we anticipate the proposed action will result in the mortality of one Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the next six years.

Live sturgeon captured and released in trawl and gillnet surveys may have minor injuries (i.e., scrapes, abrasions); however, they are expected to make a complete recovery without any impairment to future fitness. Capture will temporarily prevent these individuals from carrying out essential behaviors such as foraging and migrating. However, these behaviors are expected to resume as soon as the sturgeon are returned to the water; for trawls the length of capture will be no more than 20 minutes and for gillnets it will be no more than 24 hours. The capture of live sturgeon will not reduce the numbers of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area or the numbers of Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon as a whole. Similarly, as the capture of live Atlantic sturgeon will not affect the fitness of any individual, no effects to reproduction are anticipated. The capture of live Atlantic sturgeon is also not likely to affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area or affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon throughout their range. As any effects to individual live Atlantic sturgeon removed from the trawl or gillnet gear will be minor and temporary there are not anticipated to be any population level impacts.

We anticipate that 14% of Atlantic sturgeon captured in gillnets will be killed. Therefore, because we only anticipate the capture of 1 Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the gillnet survey, we anticipate it could be alive or dead. As only subadult and adult Atlantic sturgeon occur in the area where surveys will take place, this mortality will be a subadult or adult. The mortality of 1 subadult or adult Atlantic sturgeon from the Gulf of Maine DPS over the 6 year survey period represents a very small percentage of the Gulf of Maine DPS. While this mortality will reduce the number of Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon compared to the number that would have been present absent the proposed action, it is not likely that this reduction in numbers will change the status of this species as this loss represents a very small percentage of the Gulf of Maine DPS population of subadults and an even smaller percentage of the overall DPS as a whole. Considering the estimate of 7,544 subadults and adults, this loss would represent only 0.013% of the subadults and adults in the DPS. The percentage would be much less if we also considered the number of young of the year, juveniles, adults, and other subadults not included in the NEAMAP-based oceanic population estimate.

The reproductive potential of the Gulf of Maine DPS will not be affected in any way other than through a reduction in numbers of individuals (one). The proposed action will not affect the spawning grounds within the Kennebec River where Gulf of Maine DPS fish spawn. The action will also not create any barrier to pre-spawning sturgeon accessing the overwintering sites or the spawning grounds. The loss of one female subadult or adult would have the effect of reducing the amount of potential reproduction as any dead Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon would have no potential for future reproduction. This small reduction in potential future spawners is expected to result in an extremely small reduction in the number of eggs laid or larvae produced in future years and similarly, an extremely small consequence on the strength of subsequent year classes. Even considering the potential future spawners that would be produced by the individual that would be killed as a result of the proposed action, any consequence to future year classes is anticipated to be extremely small and would not change the status of this species. The loss of a male subadult or adult may have less of an impact on future reproduction as other males are expected to be available to fertilize eggs in a particular year. For Atlantic sturgeon that are not killed, we have determined that any impacts to behavior will be minor and temporary and that there will not be any delay or disruption of any normal behavior including spawning; there will also be no reduction in individual fitness or any future reduction in numbers of individuals.

The proposed action is not likely to reduce distribution because the action will not impede Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon from accessing any seasonal aggregation areas, including foraging, spawning or overwintering grounds. Any consequences to distribution will be minor and temporary and limited to the temporary avoidance of areas with increased noise during pile driving.

Based on the information provided above, the death of no more than 1 Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the 6 year survey period will not appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival of the Gulf of Maine DPS (*i.e.*, it will not decrease the likelihood that the species will continue to persist into the future with sufficient resilience to allow for the potential recovery from endangerment). The action will not affect Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon in a way that prevents the species from having a sufficient population, represented by all necessary age classes, genetic heterogeneity, and number of sexually mature individuals producing viable offspring, and it will not result in consequences to the environment which would prevent Atlantic sturgeon from completing their entire life cycle or completing essential behaviors including reproducing, foraging and sheltering. This is the case because: (1) the death of 1 subadult or adult Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon represents an extremely small percentage of the species; (2) the death of this Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon will not change the status or trends of the species as a whole; (3) the loss of this Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon is not likely to have a consequence on the levels of genetic heterogeneity in the population; (4) the loss of one Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon is likely to have such a small consequence on reproductive output that the loss of these individuals will not change the status or trends of the species; (5) the action will have only a minor and temporary consequence on the distribution of Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the action area and no consequence on the distribution of the species throughout its range; and, (6) the action will have only an insignificant effect on individual foraging or sheltering Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon.

In rare instances, an action that does not appreciably reduce the likelihood of a species' survival might appreciably reduce its likelihood of recovery. As explained above, we have determined that the proposed action will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that the Gulf of Maine DPS of Atlantic sturgeon will survive in the wild, which includes consideration of recovery potential. Here, we consider whether the action will appreciably reduce the likelihood of recovery from the perspective of ESA Section 4. As noted above, recovery is defined as the improvement in status such that listing under Section 4(a) as "in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range" (endangered) or "likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range…" (threatened) is no longer appropriate. Thus, we have considered whether the proposed action will appreciably reduce the likelihood that Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon can rebuild to a point where the Gulf of Maine DPS of Atlantic sturgeon is no longer likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range.

No Recovery Plan for the Gulf of Maine DPS has been published. The Recovery Plan will outline the steps necessary for recovery and the demographic criteria which once attained would allow the species to be delisted. In January 2018, we published a Recovery Outline for the five DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon (NMFS 2018[37]). This outline is meant to serve as an interim guidance document to direct recovery efforts, including recovery planning, until a full recovery plan is developed and approved. The outline provides a preliminary strategy for recovery of the species. We know that in general, to recover, a listed species must have a sustained positive trend of increasing population over time. To allow that to happen for sturgeon, individuals must have access to enough habitat in suitable condition for foraging, resting and spawning. Conditions must be suitable for the successful development of early life stages. Mortality rates must be low enough to allow for recruitment to all age classes so that successful spawning can continue over time and over generations. There must be enough suitable habitat for spawning, foraging, resting and migrations of all individuals. For Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon, habitat conditions must be suitable both in the natal river and in other rivers and estuaries where foraging by subadults and adults will occur and in the ocean where subadults and adults migrate, overwinter and forage. Habitat connectivity must also be maintained so that individuals can migrate

---

[37] Available online at: https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/dam-migration/ats_recovery_outline.pdf; last accessed Sept. 17, 2021

between important habitats without delays that impact their fitness. As described in the vision statement in the Recovery Outline, subpopulations of all five Atlantic sturgeon DPSs must be present across the historical range. These subpopulations must be of sufficient size and genetic diversity to support successful reproduction and recovery from mortality events. The recruitment of juveniles to the sub-adult and adult life stages must also increase and that increased recruitment must be maintained over many years. Recovery of these DPSs will require conservation of the riverine and marine habitats used for spawning, development, foraging, and growth by abating threats to ensure a high probability of survival into the future. Here, we consider whether this proposed action will affect the Gulf of Maine DPS likelihood of recovery.

This action will not change the status or trend of the Gulf of Maine DPS. The proposed action will not affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon across the historical range. The proposed action will result in a small amount of mortality (1 subadult or adults from a population estimated to have more than 7,500 subadults and adults) and a subsequent small reduction in future reproductive output. However, this reduction in numbers will be small and it will not affect abundance in a way that would impair resiliency or genetic diversity. The impact on reproduction and future year classes will also be small enough not to affect recruitment or the strength of any future year class. The proposed action will have only insignificant effects on habitat and forage and will not impact habitat in a way that makes additional growth of the population less likely, that is, it will not reduce the habitat's carrying capacity. This is because impacts to forage will be insignificant or extremely unlikely and the area that sturgeon may avoid is small and any avoidance will be temporary and limited to the period of time when pile driving is occurring. The proposed action will not result in any permanent loss of habitat. For these reasons, the action will not reduce the likelihood that the Gulf of Maine DPS can recover. Therefore, the proposed action will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that the Gulf of Maine DPS of Atlantic sturgeon can be brought to the point at which they are no longer listed as threatened. Based on the analysis presented herein, the proposed action, is not likely to appreciably reduce the survival and recovery of this species.

9.1.2 New York Bight DPS of Atlantic sturgeon

The New York Bight DPS is listed as endangered. While Atlantic sturgeon occur in several rivers in the New York Bight DPS, only the Hudson and Delaware rivers are known to support spawning populations. At least occasional spawning is also now suspected in the Connecticut River; however, significant questions remain. There are no abundance estimates for the entire New York Bight DPS or for the entirety of the (i.e., all age classes) Hudson River or Delaware River populations. We also have no estimate of any potential spawning population in the Connecticut River. Recent analyses suggest that the abundance of juvenile Atlantic sturgeon belonging to the Hudson River spawning population has increased, with double the average catch rate for the period from 2012-2019 compared to the previous eight years, from 2004-2011 (Pendleton and Adams 2021).

Estimates of effective population size (see section 5.0) as well as a study that used samples from juvenile Atlantic sturgeon captured in the Delaware from 2009-2019 to infer annual run size estimates, and new genetic analyses for sturgeon collected in mixed aggregations continue to support that the New York Bight DPS is primarily comprised of Atlantic sturgeon that originate from the Hudson River. The data analysis for annual run size estimates for the Delaware River spawning population is incomplete but the preliminary results suggest that the spawning population is very small (D. Kazyak, USGS, pers. comm.). The results of the coast wide mixed stock analysis and the Delaware River Estuary genetic analysis both indicate that the number of sturgeon that originated from the Delaware River spawning population was approximately one-third of those that originated from the Hudson River (Wirgin et al. 2015a; Wirgin et al. 2015b; Kazyak et al. 2021).

NMFS estimated adult and subadult abundance of the New York Bight DPS based on available information for the genetic composition and the estimated abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in marine waters (Damon-Randall et al. 2013, Kocik et al. 2013) and concluded that subadult and adult abundance of the New York Bight DPS was 34,566 sturgeon (NMFS 2013). This number encompasses many age classes since, across all DPSs, subadults can be as young as one year old when they first enter the marine environment, and adults can live as long as 64 years (Balazik et al. 2012a; Hilton et al. 2016).

Very few data sets are available that cover the full potential life span of an Atlantic sturgeon. The ASMFC concluded for the Stock Assessment that it could not estimate abundance of the New York Bight DPS or otherwise quantify the trend in abundance because of the limited available information. However, the Stock Assessment was a comprehensive review of the available information, and used multiple methods and analyses to assess the status of the New York Bight DPS and the coast wide stock of Atlantic sturgeon. For example, the Stock Assessment Subcommittee defined a benchmark, the mortality threshold, against which mortality for the coast wide stock of Atlantic sturgeon as well as for each DPS were compared[38] to assess whether the current mortality experienced by the coast wide stock and each DPS is greater than what it can sustain. This information informs the current trend of the New York Bight DPS.

In the Stock Assessment, the ASMFC concluded that abundance of the New York Bight DPS is "depleted" relative to historical levels but, there is a relatively high probability (75 percent) that the New York Bight DPS abundance has increased since the implementation of the 1998 fishing moratorium, and a 69 percent probability that mortality for the New York Bight DPS does not exceed the mortality threshold used for the assessment (ASMFC 2017).

The effects of the action are in addition to ongoing threats in the action area, which include incidental capture in state and federal fisheries, boat strikes, coastal development, habitat loss, contaminants, and climate change. Entanglement in fishing gear and vessel strikes as described in the *Environmental Baseline*, may occur in the action area over the life of the proposed action. As noted in the Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different from those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the

---

[38] The analysis considered both a coast wide mortality threshold and a region-specific mortality threshold to evaluate the sensitivity of the model to differences in life history parameters among the different DPSs (e.g., Atlantic sturgeon in the northern region are slower growing, longer lived; Atlantic sturgeon in the southern region are faster growing, shorter lived).

context of anticipated climate change. As noted in the Environmental Baseline, the Vineyard Wind project is also proposed for construction in the action area. In our ESA consultation on that project, we concluded that it was not likely to adversely affect the New York Bight DPS. Based on project schedules we do not anticipate that construction of these two projects would occur concurrently; therefore, we do not anticipate the potential for pile driving to occur on the same day for both projects. We also note that these lease areas are about 30 km apart at their closest points; this is enough separation to ensure no overlap of sound fields even in the extremely unlikely event that pile driving occurred for the two projects at the same time.

No total population estimates are available for any river population or the DPS as a whole. As discussed in section 5, we have estimated a total of 34,566 New York Bight DPS adults and subadults in the ocean (8,642 adults and 25,925 subadults) (NMFS 2013). This estimate is the best available at this time and represents only a percentage of the total New York Bight DPS population as it does not include young of the year or juveniles and does not include all adults and subadults. New York Bight origin Atlantic sturgeon are affected by numerous sources of human induced mortality and habitat disturbance throughout the riverine and marine portions of their range. There is currently not enough information to establish a trend for any life stage or for the DPS as a whole.

We have considered effects of the South Fork project over the construction, operations, and decommissioning periods. With the exception of capture in the two trawl surveys and the gillnet surveys, we determined that all effects of the proposed action will be extremely unlikely to occur and/or insignificant. We do not anticipate any adverse effects to result from exposure to pile driving or operational noise and do not expect any Atlantic sturgeon to be struck by any project vessels. We do not expect the operation or existence of the turbines and other facilities, including the electric cables, to result in any changes in the abundance or distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area.

We expect the capture of 33 New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl survey in the WDA and 48 New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl survey along the SFEC. We do not anticipate the mortality of any Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl surveys. We anticipate the capture of 18 New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the gillnet surveys, and expect 3 of those will die. In total, we anticipate the proposed action will result in the mortality of up to three New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the next six years.

Live sturgeon captured and released in trawl and gillnet surveys may have minor injuries (i.e., scrapes, abrasions); however, they are expected to make a complete recovery without any impairment to future fitness. Capture will temporarily prevent these individuals from carrying out essential behaviors such as foraging and migrating. However, these behaviors are expected to resume as soon as the sturgeon are returned to the wild. The capture of live sturgeon will not reduce the numbers of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area or the numbers of New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon as a whole. Similarly, as the capture of live Atlantic sturgeon will not affect the fitness of any individual, no effects to reproduction are anticipated. The capture of live Atlantic sturgeon is also not likely to affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area or affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon throughout their range. As any effects to individual live Atlantic sturgeon removed from the trawl or gillnet gear will be minor and temporary there are not anticipated to be any population level impacts.

We anticipate that 14% of Atlantic sturgeon captured in gillnets will be killed. Therefore, of the 18 captures, we anticipate 3 will die. As only subadult and adult Atlantic sturgeon occur in the area where surveys will take place, these mortalities will be subadults or adults. The mortality of 3 subadult or adult Atlantic sturgeon from the New York Bight DPS over a 6 year period represents a very small percentage of the New York Bight DPS. We expect an average mortality rate of less than one per year. There are an estimated combined 34,566 New York Bight DPS subadults and adults. The total DPS population includes those individuals, plus all of the juveniles, young of the year and subadults that are not in the ocean. While the death of these 3 Atlantic sturgeon will reduce the number of New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon compared to the number that would have been present absent the proposed action, it is not likely that this reduction in numbers will change the status of this species as this loss represents a very small percentage of the overall population of the DPS (juveniles, subadults and adults combined). For New York Bight DPS subadults and adults, this loss represents no more than 0.008% of the DPS.

The reproductive potential of the New York Bight DPS will not be affected in any way other than through a reduction in numbers of individuals. The proposed action will not affect the spawning grounds within the Hudson or Delaware River where New York Bight DPS fish spawn. The action will also not create any barrier to pre-spawning sturgeon accessing the overwintering sites or the spawning grounds. We expect the loss of up to three New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the six year period. The loss of subadult or adult would have the effect of reducing the amount of potential reproduction as any dead New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon would have no potential for future reproduction. This small reduction in potential future spawners is expected to result in an extremely small reduction in the number of eggs laid or larvae produced in future years and similarly, an extremely small consequence on the strength of subsequent year classes. Even considering the potential future spawners that would be produced by the individuals that would be killed as a result of the proposed action, any consequence to future year classes is anticipated to be extremely small and would not change the status of this species. The loss of male juveniles or a subadult or adult may have less of an impact on future reproduction as other males are expected to be available to fertilize eggs in a particular year. For Atlantic sturgeon that are not killed, we have determined that any impacts to behavior will be minor and temporary and that there will not be any delay or disruption of any normal behavior including spawning; there will also be no reduction in individual fitness or any future reduction in numbers of individuals.

The proposed action is not likely to reduce distribution because the action will not impede New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon from accessing any seasonal concentration areas, including foraging, spawning or overwintering grounds. Any consequences to distribution will be minor and temporary and limited to the temporary avoidance of areas with increased noise during pile driving. Further, the action is not expected to reduce the river by river distribution of Atlantic sturgeon.

Based on the information provided above, the death of three New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon over a 6-year period will not appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival of the New

York Bight DPS (*i.e.*, it will not decrease the likelihood that the species will continue to persist into the future with sufficient resilience to allow for the potential recovery from endangerment). The action will not affect New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon in a way that prevents the species from having a sufficient population, represented by all necessary age classes, genetic heterogeneity, and number of sexually mature individuals producing viable offspring, and it will not result in consequences to the environment which would prevent Atlantic sturgeon from completing their entire life cycle or completing essential behaviors including reproducing, foraging and sheltering. This is the case because: (1) the death of these New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon represents an extremely small percentage of the species; (2) the death of these New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon will not change the status or trends of the species as a whole; (3) the loss of these New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon is not likely to have a consequence on the levels of genetic heterogeneity in the population; (4) the loss of these sturgeon will not result in the loss of any age class; (5) the loss of these New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon is likely to have such a small consequence on reproductive output that the loss of these individuals will not change the status or trends of the species; (6) the action will have only a minor and temporary consequence on the distribution of New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the action area and no consequence on the distribution of the species throughout its range; and, (7) the action will have no consequences on the ability of New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon to shelter and only an insignificant effect on individual foraging New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon.

In rare instances, an action that does not appreciably reduce the likelihood of a species' survival might appreciably reduce its likelihood of recovery. As explained above, we have determined that the proposed action will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that the New York Bight DPS of Atlantic sturgeon will survive in the wild, which includes consideration of recovery potential. Here, we consider whether the action will appreciably reduce the likelihood of recovery from the perspective of ESA Section 4. As noted above, recovery is defined as the improvement in status such that listing under Section 4(a) as "in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range" (endangered) or "likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range…" (threatened) is no longer appropriate. Thus, we have considered whether the proposed action will appreciably reduce the likelihood that shortnose sturgeon can rebuild to a point where the New York Bight DPS of Atlantic sturgeon is no longer in danger of extinction through all or a significant part of its range.

No Recovery Plan for the New York Bight DPS has been published. The Recovery Plan will outline the steps necessary for recovery and the demographic criteria which once attained would allow the species to be delisted. In January 2018, we published a Recovery Outline for the five DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon (NMFS 2018). This outline is meant to serve as an interim guidance document to direct recovery efforts, including recovery planning, until a full recovery plan is developed and approved. The outline provides a preliminary strategy for recovery of the species. We know that in general, to recover, a listed species must have a sustained positive trend of increasing population over time. To allow that to happen for sturgeon, individuals must have access to enough habitat in suitable condition for foraging, resting and spawning. Conditions must be suitable for the successful development of early life stages. Mortality rates must be low enough to allow for recruitment to all age classes so that successful spawning can continue over time and over generations. There must be enough suitable habitat for spawning, foraging, resting and migrations of all individuals. For New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon, habitat conditions must be suitable both in the natal river and in other rivers and estuaries where foraging by subadults and adults will occur and in the ocean where subadults and adults migrate, overwinter and forage. Habitat connectivity must also be maintained so that individuals can migrate between important habitats without delays that impact their fitness. As described in the vision statement in the Recovery Outline, subpopulations of all five Atlantic sturgeon DPSs must be present across the historical range. These subpopulations must be of sufficient size and genetic diversity to support successful reproduction and recovery from mortality events. The recruitment of juveniles to the sub-adult and adult life stages must also increase and that increased recruitment must be maintained over many years. Recovery of these DPSs will require conservation of the riverine and marine habitats used for spawning, development, foraging, and growth by abating threats to ensure a high probability of survival into the future. Here, we consider whether this proposed action will affect the New York Bight DPS likelihood of recovery.

This action will not change the status or trend of the New York Bight DPS. The proposed action will not affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon across the historical range. The proposed action will result in a small amount of mortality (three subadult or adults from a population estimated to have more than 34,566 subadults and adults) and a subsequent small reduction in future reproductive output. However, this reduction in numbers will be small and it will not affect abundance in a way that would impair resiliency or genetic diversity. The impact on reproduction and future year classes will also be small enough not to affect recruitment or the strength of any future year class. The proposed action will have only insignificant effects on habitat and forage and will not impact habitat in a way that makes additional growth of the population less likely, that is, it will not reduce the habitat’s carrying capacity. This is because impacts to forage will be insignificant or extremely unlikely and the area that sturgeon may avoid is small and any avoidance will be temporary and limited to the period of time when pile driving is occurring. The proposed action will not result in any permanent loss of habitat. For these reasons, the action will not reduce the likelihood that the New York Bight DPS can recover. Therefore, the proposed action will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that the New York Bight DPS of Atlantic sturgeon can be brought to the point at which they are no longer listed as threatened. Based on the analysis presented herein, the proposed action, is not likely to appreciably reduce the survival and recovery of this species.

9.1.3 Chesapeake Bay DPS of Atlantic sturgeon

The Chesapeake Bay DPS is listed as endangered. While Atlantic sturgeon occur in several rivers in the Chesapeake Bay DPS, at the time of listing spawning was only known to occur in the James River. Since the listing, there is evidence of additional spawning populations for the Chesapeake Bay DPS, including the Pamunkey River, a tributary of the York River, and in Marshyhope Creek, a tributary of the Nanticoke River (Hager et al. 2014; Kahn et al. 2014; Richardson and Secor 2016; Secor et al. 2021). New detections of acoustically-tagged adult Atlantic sturgeon along with historical evidence suggests that Atlantic sturgeon belonging to the Chesapeake Bay DPS may be spawning in the Mattaponi and Rappahannock rivers as well (Hilton et al. 2016; ASMFC 2017; Kahn et al. 2019). However, information for these populations is limited and the research is ongoing.

There are no abundance estimates for the entire Chesapeake Bay DPS or for the spawning populations in the James River or the Nanticoke River system. Based on research captures of tagged adults, an estimated 75 Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon spawned in the Pamunkey River in 2013 (Kahn et al. 2014). More recent information provided annual run estimates for the Pamunkey River from 2013 to 2018. The results suggest a spawning run of up to 222 adults but with yearly variability, likely due to spawning periodicity (Kahn et al. 2019). New information for the Nanticoke River system suggests a small adult population based on a small total number of captures (i.e., 26 sturgeon) and the high rate of recapture across several years of study (Secor et al. 2021). By comparison, a total of 369 adult-sized Atlantic sturgeon were captured in the James River from 2010 through spring 2014 (Balazik and Musick 2015). This is a minimum count of the number of adult Atlantic sturgeon in the James River during the time period because capture efforts did not occur in all areas and at all times when Atlantic sturgeon were present in the river.

NMFS estimated adult and subadult abundance of the Chesapeake Bay DPS based on available information for the genetic composition and the estimated abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in marine waters (Damon-Randall et al. 2013, Kocik et al. 2013) and concluded that subadult and adult abundance of the Chesapeake Bay DPS was 8,811 sturgeon (NMFS 2013). This number encompasses many age classes since, across all DPSs, subadults can be as young as one year old when they first enter the marine environment, and adults can live as long as 64 years (Balazik et al. 2012c; Hilton et al. 2016).

Very few data sets are available that cover the full potential life span of an Atlantic sturgeon. The ASMFC concluded for the Stock Assessment that it could not estimate abundance of the Chesapeake Bay DPS or otherwise quantify the trend in abundance because of the limited available information. However, the Stock Assessment was a comprehensive review of the available information, and used multiple methods and analyses to assess the status of the Chesapeake Bay DPS and the coast wide stock of Atlantic sturgeon. For example, the Stock Assessment Subcommittee defined a benchmark, the mortality threshold, against which mortality for the coast wide stock of Atlantic sturgeon as well as for each DPS were compared[39] to assess whether the current mortality experienced by the coast wide stock and each DPS is greater than what it can sustain. This information informs the current trend of the Chesapeake Bay DPS.

In the Stock Assessment, the ASMFC concluded that abundance of the Chesapeake Bay DPS is "depleted" relative to historical levels and there is a relatively low probability (37 percent) that abundance of the Chesapeake Bay DPS has increased since the implementation of the 1998 fishing moratorium. However, the ASMFC also concluded that there is a relatively high likelihood (70 percent probability) that mortality for the Chesapeake Bay DPS does not exceed the mortality threshold used for the Stock Assessment (ASMFC 2017).

The effects of the action are in addition to the ongoing threats in the action area, which include incidental capture in state and federal fisheries, boat strikes, coastal development, habitat loss,

---

[39] The analysis considered both a coast wide mortality threshold and a region-specific mortality threshold to evaluate the sensitivity of the model to differences in life history parameters among the different DPSs (e.g., Atlantic sturgeon in the northern region are slower growing, longer lived; Atlantic sturgeon in the southern region are faster growing, shorter lived).

contaminants, and climate change. Entanglement in fishing gear and vessel strikes as described in the *Environmental Baseline*, may occur in the action area over the life of the proposed action. As noted in the Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different from those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the context of anticipated climate change. As noted in the Environmental Baseline, the Vineyard Wind project is also proposed for construction in the action area. In our ESA consultation on that project, we concluded that it was not likely to adversely affect the New York Bight DPS. Based on project schedules we do not anticipate that construction of these two projects would occur concurrently; therefore, we do not anticipate the potential for pile driving to occur on the same day for both projects. We also note that these lease areas are about 30 km apart at their closest points; this is enough separation to ensure no overlap of sound fields even in the extremely unlikely event that pile driving occurred for the two projects at the same time.

We have considered effects of the South Fork project over the construction, operations, and decommissioning periods. With the exception of capture in the two trawl surveys and the gillnet surveys, we determined that all effects of the proposed action will be extremely unlikely to occur and/or insignificant. We do not anticipate any adverse effects to result from exposure to pile driving or operational noise and do not expect any Atlantic sturgeon to be struck by any project vessels. We do not expect the operation or existence of the turbines and other facilities, including the electric cables, to result in any changes in the abundance or distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area.

We expect the capture of 14 Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl survey in the WDA and 20 Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl survey along the SFEC. We do not anticipate the mortality of any Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl surveys. We anticipate the capture of 8 Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the gillnet surveys, and expect that two of those individuals may die. In total, we anticipate the proposed action will result in the mortality of two Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the six years that surveys take place.

Live sturgeon captured and released in trawl and gillnet surveys may have minor injuries (i.e., scrapes, abrasions); however, they are expected to make a complete recovery without any impairment to future fitness. Capture will temporarily prevent these individuals from carrying out essential behaviors such as foraging and migrating. However, these behaviors are expected to resume as soon as the sturgeon are returned to the wild. The capture of live sturgeon will not reduce the numbers of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area or the numbers of Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon as a whole. Similarly, as the capture of live Atlantic sturgeon will not affect the fitness of any individual, no effects to reproduction are anticipated. The capture of live Atlantic sturgeon is also not likely to affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area or affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon throughout their range. As any effects to individual live Atlantic sturgeon removed from the trawl or gillnet gear will be minor and temporary there are not anticipated to be any population level impacts.

We anticipate that 14% of Atlantic sturgeon captured in gillnets will be killed. Therefore, of the 8 Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon we expect to be captured in the gillnet survey, we anticipate 2 could die. As only subadult and adult Atlantic sturgeon occur in the area where surveys will take place, these mortalities will be subadults or adults. The mortality of 2 subadult or adult Atlantic sturgeon from the Chesapeake Bay DPS over a 6 year period represents a very small percentage of the Chesapeake Bay DPS. While this mortality will reduce the number of Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon compared to the number that would have been present absent the proposed action, it is not likely that this reduction in numbers will change the status of this species as this loss represents a very small percentage of the Chesapeake Bay DPS population of subadults and an even smaller percentage of the overall DPS as a whole. Considering the estimate of 8,811 subadults and adults, this loss would represent only 0.02% of the subadults and adults in the DPS. The percentage would be much less if we also considered the number of young of the year, juveniles, adults, and other subadults not included in the NEAMAP-based oceanic population estimate.

The reproductive potential of the Chesapeake Bay DPS will not be affected in any way other than through a reduction in numbers of individuals. The proposed action will not affect the spawning grounds within any of the rivers where Chesapeake Bay DPS fish spawn. The action will also not create any barrier to pre-spawning sturgeon accessing the overwintering sites or the spawning grounds. We expect the loss of two Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the six year period. The loss of two subadult or adult sturgeon would have the effect of reducing the amount of potential reproduction as any dead Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon would have no potential for future reproduction. This small reduction in potential future spawners is expected to result in an extremely small reduction in the number of eggs laid or larvae produced in future years and similarly, an extremely small consequence on the strength of subsequent year classes. Even considering the potential future spawners that would be produced by the individuals that would be killed as a result of the proposed action, any consequence to future year classes is anticipated to be extremely small and would not change the status of this species. The loss of a male subadult or adult may have less of an impact on future reproduction as other males are expected to be available to fertilize eggs in a particular year. For Atlantic sturgeon that are not killed, we have determined that any impacts to behavior will be minor and temporary and that there will not be any delay or disruption of any normal behavior including spawning; there will also be no reduction in individual fitness or any future reduction in numbers of individuals.

The proposed action is not likely to reduce distribution because the action will not impede Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon from accessing any seasonal concentration areas, including foraging, spawning or overwintering grounds. Any consequences to distribution will be minor and temporary and limited to the temporary avoidance of areas with increased noise during pile driving.

Based on the information provided above, the death of no more than 2 subadult or adult Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the 6-year survey period will not appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival of the Chesapeake Bay DPS (*i.e.*, it will not decrease the likelihood that the species will continue to persist into the future with sufficient resilience to allow for the potential recovery from endangerment). The action will not affect Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon in a way that prevents the species from having a sufficient population, represented by all necessary age classes, genetic heterogeneity, and number of sexually mature individuals producing viable offspring, and it will not result in consequences to the environment which would prevent Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon from completing their entire life cycle or completing essential behaviors including reproducing, foraging and sheltering. This is the case because: (1) the death of 2 subadult or adult Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon represents an extremely small percentage of the species; (2) the death of these Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon will not change the status or trends of the species as a whole; (3) the loss of these Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon is not likely to have an effect on the levels of genetic heterogeneity in the population; (4) the loss of these subadult Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon is likely to have such a small effect on reproductive output that the loss of these individuals will not change the status or trends of the species; (5) the action will have only a minor and temporary effect on the distribution of Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the action area and no consequences on the distribution of the species throughout its range; and, (6) the action will have only an insignificant effect on individual foraging or sheltering Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon.

In rare instances, an action that does not appreciably reduce the likelihood of a species' survival might appreciably reduce its likelihood of recovery. As explained above, we have determined that the proposed action will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that the Chesapeake Bay DPS of Atlantic sturgeon will survive in the wild, which includes consideration of recovery potential. Here, we consider whether the action will appreciably reduce the likelihood of recovery from the perspective of ESA Section 4. As noted above, recovery is defined as the improvement in status such that listing under Section 4(a) as "in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range" (endangered) or "likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range…" (threatened) is no longer appropriate. Thus, we have considered whether the proposed action will appreciably reduce the likelihood that Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon can rebuild to a point where the Chesapeake Bay DPS of Atlantic sturgeon is no longer in danger of extinction through all or a significant part of its range.

No Recovery Plan for the Chesapeake Bay DPS has been published. The Recovery Plan will outline the steps necessary for recovery and the demographic criteria which once attained would allow the species to be delisted. In January 2018, we published a Recovery Outline for the five DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon (NMFS 2018). This outline is meant to serve as an interim guidance document to direct recovery efforts, including recovery planning, until a full recovery plan is developed and approved. The outline provides a preliminary strategy for recovery of the species. We know that in general, to recover, a listed species must have a sustained positive trend of increasing population over time. To allow that to happen for sturgeon, individuals must have access to enough habitat in suitable condition for foraging, resting and spawning. Conditions must be suitable for the successful development of early life stages. Mortality rates must be low enough to allow for recruitment to all age classes so that successful spawning can continue over time and over generations. There must be enough suitable habitat for spawning, foraging, resting and migrations of all individuals. For Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon, habitat conditions must be suitable both in the natal river and in other rivers and estuaries where foraging by subadults and adults will occur and in the ocean where subadults and adults migrate, overwinter and forage. Habitat connectivity must also be maintained so that individuals can migrate between important habitats without delays that impact their fitness. As described in the vision statement in the Recovery Outline, Subpopulations of all five Atlantic sturgeon DPSs must be present across the historical range. These subpopulations must be of sufficient size and genetic diversity to support successful reproduction and recovery from mortality events. The recruitment of juveniles to the sub-adult and adult life stages must also increase and that increased recruitment must be maintained over many years. Recovery of these DPSs will require conservation of the riverine and marine habitats used for spawning, development, foraging, and growth by abating threats to ensure a high probability of survival into the future. Here, we consider whether this proposed action will affect the Chesapeake Bay DPS likelihood of recovery.

This action will not change the status or trend of the Chesapeake Bay DPS. The proposed action will not affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon across the historical range. The proposed action will result in a small amount of mortality (2 subadult or adults from a population estimated to have more than 8,000 subadults and adults) and a subsequent small reduction in future reproductive output. However, this reduction in numbers will be small and it will not affect abundance in a way that would impair resiliency or genetic diversity. The impact on reproduction and future year classes will also be small enough not to affect recruitment or the strength of any future year class. The proposed action will have only insignificant effects on habitat and forage and will not impact habitat in a way that makes additional growth of the population less likely, that is, it will not reduce the habitat's carrying capacity. This is because impacts to forage will be insignificant or extremely unlikely and the area that sturgeon may avoid is small and any avoidance will be temporary and limited to the period of time when pile driving is occurring. The proposed action will not result in any permanent loss of habitat. For these reasons, the action will not reduce the likelihood that the Chesapeake Bay DPS can recover. Therefore, the proposed action will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that the Chesapeake Bay DPS of Atlantic sturgeon can be brought to the point at which they are no longer listed as threatened. Based on the analysis presented herein, the proposed action, is not likely to appreciably reduce the survival and recovery of this species.

9.1.4 Carolina DPS of Atlantic sturgeon

The Carolina DPS is listed as endangered. Atlantic sturgeon from the Carolina DPS spawn in the rivers of North Carolina south to the Cooper River, South Carolina. There are currently seven spawning subpopulations within the Carolina DPS: Roanoke River, Tar-Pamlico River, Neuse River, Northeast Cape Fear and Cape Fear Rivers, Waccamaw and Great Pee Dee Rivers, Black River, Santee and Cooper Rivers. NMFS estimated adult and subadult abundance of the Carolina DPS based on available information for the genetic composition and the estimated abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in marine waters (Damon-Randall et al. 2013, Kocik et al. 2013) and concluded that subadult and adult abundance of the Carolina DPS was 1,356 sturgeon (NMFS 2013). This number encompasses many age classes since, across all DPSs, subadults can be as young as one year old when they first enter the marine environment, and adults can live as long as 64 years (Balazik et al. 2012c; Hilton et al. 2016).

Very few data sets are available that cover the full potential life span of an Atlantic sturgeon. The ASMFC concluded for the Stock Assessment that it could not estimate abundance of the Carolina DPS or otherwise quantify the trend in abundance because of the limited available information. However, the Stock Assessment was a comprehensive review of the available information, and used multiple methods and analyses to assess the status of the Carolina DPS and the coast wide stock of Atlantic sturgeon. For example, the Stock Assessment Subcommittee defined a benchmark, the mortality threshold, against which mortality for the coast wide stock of Atlantic sturgeon as well as for each DPS were compared[40] to assess whether the current mortality experienced by the coast wide stock and each DPS is greater than what it can sustain. This information informs the current trend of the Carolina DPS.

In the Stock Assessment, the ASMFC concluded that abundance of the Carolina DPS is "depleted" relative to historical levels and there is a relatively low probability (36 percent) that abundance of the Carolina DPS has increased since the implementation of the 1998 fishing moratorium. The ASMFC also concluded that there is a relatively low likelihood (25 percent probability) that mortality for the Carolina DPS does not exceed the mortality threshold used for the Stock Assessment (ASMFC 2017).

The effects of the action are in addition to the ongoing threats in the action area, which include incidental capture in state and federal fisheries, boat strikes, coastal development, habitat loss, contaminants, and climate change. Entanglement in fishing gear and vessel strikes as described in the *Environmental Baseline*, may occur in the action area over the life of the proposed action. As noted in the Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different from those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the context of anticipated climate change. As noted in the Environmental Baseline, the Vineyard Wind project is also proposed for construction in the action area. In our ESA consultation on that project, we concluded that it was not likely to adversely affect the Carolina DPS. Based on project schedules we do not anticipate that construction of these two projects would occur concurrently; therefore, we do not anticipate the potential for pile driving to occur on the same day for both projects. We also note that these lease areas are about 30 km apart at their closest points; this is enough separation to ensure no overlap of sound fields even in the extremely unlikely event that pile driving occurred for the two projects at the same time.

We have considered effects of the South Fork project over the construction, operations, and decommissioning periods. With the exception of capture in the two trawl surveys and the gillnet surveys, we determined that all effects of the proposed action will be extremely unlikely to occur and/or insignificant. We do not anticipate any adverse effects to result from exposure to pile driving or operational noise and do not expect any Atlantic sturgeon to be struck by any project vessels. We do not expect the operation or existence of the turbines and other facilities, including the electric cables, to result in any changes in the abundance or distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area.

---

[40] The analysis considered both a coast wide mortality threshold and a region-specific mortality threshold to evaluate the sensitivity of the model to differences in life history parameters among the different DPSs (e.g., Atlantic sturgeon in the northern region are slower growing, longer lived; Atlantic sturgeon in the southern region are faster growing, shorter lived).

We expect the capture of 4 Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl survey in the WDA and 5 Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl survey along the SFEC. We do not anticipate the mortality of any Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl surveys. We anticipate the capture of 2 Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the gillnet surveys, and expect that 1 of those individuals may die. In total, we anticipate the proposed action will result in the mortality of 1 Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the six years that surveys take place.

Live sturgeon captured and released in trawl and gillnet surveys may have minor injuries (i.e., scrapes, abrasions); however, they are expected to make a complete recovery without any impairment to future fitness. Capture will temporarily prevent these individuals from carrying out essential behaviors such as foraging and migrating. However, these behaviors are expected to resume as soon as the sturgeon are returned to the wild. The capture of live sturgeon will not reduce the numbers of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area or the numbers of Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon as a whole. Similarly, as the capture of live Atlantic sturgeon will not affect the fitness of any individual, no effects to reproduction are anticipated. The capture of live Atlantic sturgeon is also not likely to affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area or affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon throughout their range. As any effects to individual live Atlantic sturgeon removed from the trawl or gillnet gear will be minor and temporary there are not anticipated to be any population level impacts.

We anticipate that 14% of Atlantic sturgeon captured in gillnets will be killed. Therefore, of the 2 Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon we expect to be captured in the gillnet survey, we anticipate 1 could die. As only subadult and adult Atlantic sturgeon occur in the area where surveys will take place, these mortalities will be subadults or adults. The mortality of 1 subadult or adult Atlantic sturgeon from the Carolina DPS over a 6 year period represents a very small percentage of the Carolina DPS. While this mortality will reduce the number of Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon compared to the number that would have been present absent the proposed action, it is not likely that this reduction in numbers will change the status of this species as this loss represents a very small percentage of the Carolina DPS population of subadults and an even smaller percentage of the overall DPS as a whole. Considering the estimate of 1,356 subadults and adults, this loss would represent only 0.07% of the subadults and adults in the DPS. The percentage would be much less if we also considered the number of young of the year, juveniles, adults, and other subadults not included in the NEAMAP-based oceanic population estimate.

The reproductive potential of the Carolina DPS will not be affected in any way other than through a reduction in numbers of individuals. The proposed action will not affect the spawning grounds within any of the rivers where Carolina DPS fish spawn. The action will also not create any barrier to pre-spawning sturgeon accessing the overwintering sites or the spawning grounds. We expect the loss of one Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the six year period. The loss of one subadult or adult sturgeon would have the effect of reducing the amount of potential reproduction as any dead Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon would have no potential for future reproduction. This small reduction in potential future spawners is expected to result in an extremely small reduction in the number of eggs laid or larvae produced in future years and similarly, an extremely small consequence on the strength of subsequent year classes. Even considering the potential future spawners that would be produced by the individuals that would be killed as a result of the proposed action, any consequence to future year classes is anticipated to be extremely small and would not change the status of this species. The loss of a male subadult or adult may have less of an impact on future reproduction as other males are expected to be available to fertilize eggs in a particular year. For Atlantic sturgeon that are not killed, we have determined that any impacts to behavior will be minor and temporary and that there will not be any delay or disruption of any normal behavior including spawning; there will also be no reduction in individual fitness or any future reduction in numbers of individuals.

The proposed action is not likely to reduce distribution because the action will not impede Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon from accessing any seasonal concentration areas, including foraging, spawning or overwintering grounds. Any consequences to distribution will be minor and temporary and limited to the temporary avoidance of areas with increased noise during pile driving.

Based on the information provided above, the death of no more than 1 subadult or adult Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the 6 year survey period, will not appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival of the Carolina DPS (*i.e.*, it will not decrease the likelihood that the species will continue to persist into the future with sufficient resilience to allow for the potential recovery from endangerment). The action will not affect Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon in a way that prevents the species from having a sufficient population, represented by all necessary age classes, genetic heterogeneity, and number of sexually mature individuals producing viable offspring, and it will not result in consequences to the environment which would prevent Atlantic sturgeon from completing their entire life cycle or completing essential behaviors including reproducing, foraging and sheltering. This is the case because: (1) the death of 1 subadult or adult Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon represents an extremely small percentage of the species; (2) the death of these Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon will not change the status or trends of the species as a whole; (3) the loss of this Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon is not likely to have a consequence on the levels of genetic heterogeneity in the population; (4) the loss of this subadult Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon is likely to have such a small consequence on reproductive output that the loss of this individual will not change the status or trends of the species; (5) the action will have only a minor and temporary consequence on the distribution of Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the action area and no consequence on the distribution of the species throughout its range; and, (6) the action will have only an insignificant effect on individual foraging or sheltering Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon.

In rare instances, an action that does not appreciably reduce the likelihood of a species' survival might appreciably reduce its likelihood of recovery. As explained above, we have determined that the proposed action will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that the Chesapeake Bay DPS of Atlantic sturgeon will survive in the wild, which includes consideration of recovery potential. Here, we consider whether the action will appreciably reduce the likelihood of recovery from the perspective of ESA Section 4. As noted above, recovery is defined as the improvement in status such that listing under Section 4(a) as "in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range" (endangered) or "likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range…" (threatened) is no longer appropriate. Thus, we have considered whether the proposed action will appreciably reduce the likelihood that Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon can rebuild to a point where the Chesapeake Bay

DPS of Atlantic sturgeon is no longer in danger of extinction through all or a significant part of its range.

No Recovery Plan for the Carolina DPS has been published. The Recovery Plan will outline the steps necessary for recovery and the demographic criteria which once attained would allow the species to be delisted. In January 2018, we published a Recovery Outline for the five DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon (NMFS 2018). This outline is meant to serve as an interim guidance document to direct recovery efforts, including recovery planning, until a full recovery plan is developed and approved. The outline provides a preliminary strategy for recovery of the species. We know that in general, to recover, a listed species must have a sustained positive trend of increasing population over time. To allow that to happen for sturgeon, individuals must have access to enough habitat in suitable condition for foraging, resting and spawning. Conditions must be suitable for the successful development of early life stages. Mortality rates must be low enough to allow for recruitment to all age classes so that successful spawning can continue over time and over generations. There must be enough suitable habitat for spawning, foraging, resting and migrations of all individuals. For Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon, habitat conditions must be suitable both in the natal river and in other rivers and estuaries where foraging by subadults and adults will occur and in the ocean where subadults and adults migrate, overwinter and forage. Habitat connectivity must also be maintained so that individuals can migrate between important habitats without delays that impact their fitness. As described in the vision statement in the Recovery Outline, Subpopulations of all five Atlantic sturgeon DPSs must be present across the historical range. These subpopulations must be of sufficient size and genetic diversity to support successful reproduction and recovery from mortality events. The recruitment of juveniles to the sub-adult and adult life stages must also increase and that increased recruitment must be maintained over many years. Recovery of these DPSs will require conservation of the riverine and marine habitats used for spawning, development, foraging, and growth by abating threats to ensure a high probability of survival into the future. Here, we consider whether this proposed action will affect the Carolina DPS likelihood of recovery.

This action will not change the status or trend of the Carolina DPS. The proposed action will not affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon across the historical range. The proposed action will result in a small amount of mortality (subadult or adult from a population estimated to have more than 1,356 subadults and adults) and a subsequent small reduction in future reproductive output. However, this reduction in numbers will be small and it will not affect abundance in a way that would impair resiliency or genetic diversity. The impact on reproduction and future year classes will also be small enough not to affect recruitment or the strength of any future year class. The proposed action will have only insignificant effects on habitat and forage and will not impact habitat in a way that makes additional growth of the population less likely, that is, it will not reduce the habitat's carrying capacity. This is because impacts to forage will be insignificant or extremely unlikely and the area that sturgeon may avoid is small and any avoidance will be temporary and limited to the period of time when pile driving is occurring. The proposed action will not result in any permanent loss of habitat. For these reasons, the action will not reduce the likelihood that the Carolina DPS can recover. Therefore, the proposed action will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that the Carolina DPS of Atlantic sturgeon can be brought to the point at which they are no longer listed as threatened. Based on the analysis presented herein, the proposed action, is not likely to appreciably reduce the survival and recovery of this species.

9.1.5 South Atlantic DPS of Atlantic sturgeon

The South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon is listed as endangered. The South Atlantic DPS historically supported eight spawning subpopulations. At the time of listing only six spawning subpopulations were believed to have existed: the Combahee River, Edisto River, Savannah River, Ogeechee River, Altamaha River, and Satilla River. The two remaining spawning subpopulations in the Broad-Coosawatchie River and St. Marys River were believed to be extinct. However, new information provided from the capture of juvenile Atlantic sturgeon suggests the spawning subpopulation in the St. Marys River is not extinct and continues to exist, albeit at very low levels. Two of the spawning subpopulations in the South Atlantic DPS are relatively robust and are considered the second (Altamaha River) and third (Combahee/Edisto River) largest spawning subpopulations across all five DPSs. There are an estimated 343 adults that spawn annually in the Altamaha River and less than 300 adults spawning annually (total of both sexes) in the river systems where spawning still occurs. No census of the number of Atlantic sturgeon in any of the other spawning rivers or for the DPS as a whole is available. NMFS estimated adult and subadult abundance of the South Atlantic DPS based on available information for the genetic composition and the estimated abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in marine waters (Damon-Randall et al. 2013, Kocik et al. 2013) and concluded that subadult and adult abundance of the South Atlantic DPS was 14,911 sturgeon (NMFS 2013). This number encompasses many age classes since, across all DPSs, subadults can be as young as one year old when they first enter the marine environment, and adults can live as long as 64 years (Balazik et al. 2012c; Hilton et al. 2016).

Very few data sets are available that cover the full potential life span of an Atlantic sturgeon. The ASMFC concluded for the Stock Assessment that it could not estimate abundance of the South Atlantic DPS or otherwise quantify the trend in abundance because of the limited available information. However, the Stock Assessment was a comprehensive review of the available information, and used multiple methods and analyses to assess the status of the South Atlantic DPS and the coast wide stock of Atlantic sturgeon. For example, the Stock Assessment Subcommittee defined a benchmark, the mortality threshold, against which mortality for the coast wide stock of Atlantic sturgeon as well as for each DPS were compared[41] to assess whether the current mortality experienced by the coast wide stock and each DPS is greater than what it can sustain. This information informs the current trend of the South Atlantic Bay DPS.

In the Stock Assessment, the ASMFC concluded that abundance of the South Atlantic DPS is "depleted" relative to historical levels; there was insufficient information from which to determine the probability that abundance of the South Atlantic DPS has increased since the implementation of the 1998 fishing moratorium. However, the ASMFC also concluded that there is a relatively high likelihood (60 percent probability) that mortality for the South Atlantic DPS does not exceed the mortality threshold used for the Stock Assessment (ASMFC 2017).

---

[41] The analysis considered both a coast wide mortality threshold and a region-specific mortality threshold to evaluate the sensitivity of the model to differences in life history parameters among the different DPSs (e.g., Atlantic sturgeon in the northern region are slower growing, longer lived; Atlantic sturgeon in the southern region are faster growing, shorter lived).

The effects of the action are in addition to the ongoing threats in the action area, which include incidental capture in state and federal fisheries, boat strikes, coastal development, habitat loss, contaminants, and climate change. Entanglement in fishing gear and vessel strikes as described in the *Environmental Baseline*, may occur in the action area over the life of the proposed action. As noted in the Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different from those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the context of anticipated climate change. As noted in the Environmental Baseline, the Vineyard Wind project is also proposed for construction in the action area. In our ESA consultation on that project, we concluded that it was not likely to adversely affect the South Atlantic DPS. Based on project schedules we do not anticipate that construction of these two projects would occur concurrently; therefore, we do not anticipate the potential for pile driving to occur on the same day for both projects. We also note that these lease areas are about 30 km apart at their closest points; this is enough separation to ensure no overlap of sound fields even in the extremely unlikely event that pile driving occurred for the two projects at the same time.

We have considered effects of the South Fork project over the construction, operations, and decommissioning periods. With the exception of capture in the two trawl surveys and the gillnet surveys, we determined that all effects of the proposed action will be extremely unlikely to occur and/or insignificant. We do not anticipate any adverse effects to result from exposure to pile driving or operational noise and do not expect any Atlantic sturgeon to be struck by any project vessels. We do not expect the operation or existence of the turbines and other facilities, including the electric cables, to result in any changes in the abundance or distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area.

We expect the capture of 8 South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl survey in the WDA and 12 South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl survey along the SFEC. We do not anticipate the mortality of any Atlantic sturgeon in the trawl surveys. We anticipate the capture of 4 South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the gillnet surveys, and expect that 1 of those individuals may die. In total, we anticipate the proposed action will result in the mortality of 1 South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the six years that surveys take place.

Live sturgeon captured and released in trawl and gillnet surveys may have minor injuries (i.e., scrapes, abrasions); however, they are expected to make a complete recovery without any impairment to future fitness. Capture will temporarily prevent these individuals from carrying out essential behaviors such as foraging and migrating. However, these behaviors are expected to resume as soon as the sturgeon are returned to the wild. The capture of live sturgeon will not reduce the numbers of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area or the numbers of South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon as a whole. Similarly, as the capture of live Atlantic sturgeon will not affect the fitness of any individual, no effects to reproduction are anticipated. The capture of live Atlantic sturgeon is also not likely to affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the action area or affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon throughout their range. As any effects to individual live Atlantic sturgeon removed from the trawl or gillnet gear will be minor and temporary there are not anticipated to be any population level impacts.

We anticipate that 14% of Atlantic sturgeon captured in gillnets will be killed. Therefore, of the 4 South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon we expect to be captured in the gillnet survey, we anticipate 1 could die. As only subadult and adult Atlantic sturgeon occur in the area where surveys will take place, these mortalities will be subadults or adults. The mortality of 1 subadult or adult Atlantic sturgeon from the South Atlantic DPS over a 6 year period represents a very small percentage of the South Atlantic DPS. While this mortality will reduce the number of South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon compared to the number that would have been present absent the proposed action, it is not likely that this reduction in numbers will change the status of this species as this loss represents a very small percentage of the South Atlantic DPS population of subadults and an even smaller percentage of the overall DPS as a whole. Considering the estimate of 14,911 subadults and adults, this loss would represent only 0.007% of the subadults and adults in the DPS. The percentage would be much less if we also considered the number of young of the year, juveniles, adults, and other subadults not included in the NEAMAP-based oceanic population estimate.

The reproductive potential of the South Atlantic DPS will not be affected in any way other than through a reduction in numbers of individuals. The proposed action will not affect the spawning grounds within any of the rivers where South Atlantic DPS fish spawn. The action will also not create any barrier to pre-spawning sturgeon accessing the overwintering sites or the spawning grounds. We expect the loss of one South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the six year period. The loss of one subadult or adult sturgeon would have the effect of reducing the amount of potential reproduction as any dead South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon would have no potential for future reproduction. This small reduction in potential future spawners is expected to result in an extremely small reduction in the number of eggs laid or larvae produced in future years and similarly, an extremely small consequence on the strength of subsequent year classes. Even considering the potential future spawners that would be produced by the individuals that would be killed as a result of the proposed action, any consequence to future year classes is anticipated to be extremely small and would not change the status of this species. The loss of a male subadult or adult may have less of an impact on future reproduction as other males are expected to be available to fertilize eggs in a particular year. For Atlantic sturgeon that are not killed, we have determined that any impacts to behavior will be minor and temporary and that there will not be any delay or disruption of any normal behavior including spawning; there will also be no reduction in individual fitness or any future reduction in numbers of individuals.

The proposed action is not likely to reduce distribution because the action will not impede South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon from accessing any seasonal concentration areas, including foraging, spawning or overwintering grounds. Any consequences to distribution will be minor and temporary and limited to the temporary avoidance of areas with increased noise during pile driving.

Based on the information provided above, the death of no more than 1 subadult or adult South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon over the 6 year survey period, will not appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival of the South Atlantic DPS (*i.e.*, it will not decrease the likelihood that the species will continue to persist into the future with sufficient resilience to allow for the potential recovery from endangerment). The action will not affect South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon in a way that prevents the species from having a sufficient population, represented by all necessary age classes, genetic heterogeneity, and number of sexually mature individuals producing viable offspring, and it will not result in consequences to the environment which would prevent Atlantic sturgeon from completing their entire life cycle or completing essential behaviors including reproducing, foraging and sheltering. This is the case because: (1) the death of 1 subadult or adult South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon represents an extremely small percentage of the species; (2) the death of this South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon will not change the status or trends of the species as a whole; (3) the loss of this South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon is not likely to have an consequence on the levels of genetic heterogeneity in the population; (4) the loss of this subadult South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon is likely to have such a small consequence on reproductive output that the loss of these individuals will not change the status or trends of the species; (5) the action will have only a minor and temporary consequence on the distribution of South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon in the action area and no consequence on the distribution of the species throughout its range; and, (6) the action will have only an insignificant effect on individual foraging or sheltering South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon.

In rare instances, an action that does not appreciably reduce the likelihood of a species' survival might appreciably reduce its likelihood of recovery. As explained above, we have determined that the proposed action will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that the South Atlantic DPS of Atlantic sturgeon will survive in the wild, which includes consideration of recovery potential. Here, we consider whether the action will appreciably reduce the likelihood of recovery from the perspective of ESA Section 4. As noted above, recovery is defined as the improvement in status such that listing under Section 4(a) as "in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range" (endangered) or "likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range…" (threatened) is no longer appropriate. Thus, we have considered whether the proposed action will appreciably reduce the likelihood that South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon can rebuild to a point where the South Atlantic DPS of Atlantic sturgeon is no longer in danger of extinction through all or a significant part of its range.

No Recovery Plan for the South Atlantic DPS has been published. The Recovery Plan will outline the steps necessary for recovery and the demographic criteria which once attained would allow the species to be delisted. In January 2018, we published a Recovery Outline for the five DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon (NMFS 2018). This outline is meant to serve as an interim guidance document to direct recovery efforts, including recovery planning, until a full recovery plan is developed and approved. The outline provides a preliminary strategy for recovery of the species. We know that in general, to recover, a listed species must have a sustained positive trend of increasing population over time. To allow that to happen for sturgeon, individuals must have access to enough habitat in suitable condition for foraging, resting and spawning. Conditions must be suitable for the successful development of early life stages. Mortality rates must be low enough to allow for recruitment to all age classes so that successful spawning can continue over time and over generations. There must be enough suitable habitat for spawning, foraging, resting and migrations of all individuals. For South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon, habitat conditions must be suitable both in the natal river and in other rivers and estuaries where foraging by subadults and adults will occur and in the ocean where subadults and adults migrate, overwinter and forage. Habitat connectivity must also be maintained so that individuals can migrate between important habitats without delays that impact their fitness. As described in the vision statement in the Recovery Outline, subpopulations of all five Atlantic sturgeon DPSs must be present across the historical range. These subpopulations must be of sufficient size and genetic diversity to support successful reproduction and recovery from mortality events. The recruitment of juveniles to the sub-adult and adult life stages must also increase and that increased recruitment must be maintained over many years. Recovery of these DPSs will require conservation of the riverine and marine habitats used for spawning, development, foraging, and growth by abating threats to ensure a high probability of survival into the future. Here, we consider whether this proposed action will affect the South Atlantic DPS likelihood of recovery.

This action will not change the status or trend of the South Atlantic DPS. The proposed action will not affect the distribution of Atlantic sturgeon across the historical range. The proposed action will result in a small amount of mortality (1 subadult or adult from a population estimated to have more than 14,911 subadults and adults) and a subsequent small reduction in future reproductive output. However, this reduction in numbers will be small and it will not affect abundance in a way that would impair resiliency or genetic diversity. The impact on reproduction and future year classes will also be small enough not to affect recruitment or the strength of any future year class. The proposed action will have only insignificant effects on habitat and forage and will not impact habitat in a way that makes additional growth of the population less likely, that is, it will not reduce the habitat's carrying capacity. This is because impacts to forage will be insignificant or extremely unlikely and the area that sturgeon may avoid is small and any avoidance will be temporary and limited to the period of time when pile driving is occurring. The proposed action will not result in any permanent loss of habitat. For these reasons, the action will not reduce the likelihood that the South Atlantic DPS can recover. Therefore, the proposed action will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that the South Atlantic DPS of Atlantic sturgeon can be brought to the point at which they are no longer listed as threatened. Based on the analysis presented herein, the proposed action, is not likely to appreciably reduce the survival and recovery of this species.

9.2 Marine Mammals

Our effects analysis determined that pile driving is likely to adversely affect ESA-listed marine mammals in the action area and cause temporary threshold shift (TTS), behavioral response, and stress in a small number of individual North Atlantic right, fin, sei, and sperm whales. Pile driving is also likely to result in permanent threshold shift (PTS; auditory injury) in one fin and one sei whale. Animals exposed to sufficiently intense sound exhibit an increased hearing threshold (i.e., poorer sensitivity) for some period of time following exposure; this is called a noise-induced threshold shift (TS). The magnitude of TS normally decreases over time following cessation of the noise exposure, TS that eventually returns to zero (i.e., the threshold returns to the pre-exposure value), is called TTS (Southall et al. 2007). TTS represents primarily tissue fatigue and is reversible (Southall et al., 2007). In addition, other investigators have suggested that TTS is within the normal bounds of physiological variability and tolerance and does not represent physical injury (*e.g.*, Ward, 1997). Therefore, NMFS does not consider TTS to constitute auditory injury.

No non-auditory injury, serious injury of any kind, or mortality is anticipated. We determined that exposure to other project noise will have effects that are insignificant or are extremely unlikely to occur. We also determined that effects to habitat and prey are also insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur and concluded that with the incorporation of vessel strike risk reduction measures that are part of the proposed action, strike of an ESA listed whale by a project vessel is extremely unlikely to occur and that entanglement or capture in fisheries surveys is extremely unlikely to occur. In this section, we discuss the likely consequences of these effects to the individual whales that have been exposed, the populations those individuals represent, and the species those populations comprise.

Our analyses identified the likely effects of the South Fork project, which requires authorizations from a number of federal agencies as described in section 3 of this Opinion, on the ESA-listed individuals that will be exposed to these actions. We measure effects to individuals of endangered or threatened marine mammals using changes in the individual's "fitness" or the individual's growth, survival, annual reproductive success, and lifetime reproductive success. When we do not expect listed marine mammals exposed to an action's effects to experience reductions in fitness, we would not expect the action to impact that animal's health or future reproductive success. Therefore, we would not expect adverse consequences on the overall reproduction, abundance, or distribution of the populations those individuals represent or the species those populations comprise. As a result, if we conclude that listed animals are not likely to experience reductions in their fitness, we would conclude our assessment. If, however, we conclude that listed animals are likely to experience reductions in their fitness, we would assess the consequences of those fitness reductions for the population or populations the individuals in an action area represent.

As documented in section 7 of this Opinion, the adverse effects anticipated on North Atlantic right, fin, sei, and sperm whales resulting from the proposed action are from sounds produced during pile driving in the action area. While this Opinion relies on the best available scientific and commercial information, our analysis and conclusions include uncertainty about the basic hearing capabilities of some marine mammals; how these animals use sounds as environmental cues; how they perceive acoustic features of their environment; the importance of sound to the normal behavioral and social ecology of species; the mechanisms by which human-generated sounds affect the behavior and physiology (including the non-auditory physiology) of exposed individuals; and the circumstances that could produce outcomes that have adverse consequences for individuals and populations of exposed species. Based on the best available information, we expect most exposures and potential responses of ESA-listed cetaceans to acoustic stressors associated with the South Fork project to have little effect on the exposed animals. As is evident from the available literature cited herein, responses are expected to be short-term, with the animal returning to normal behavior patterns shortly after the exposure is over (e.g., Goldbogen et al. 2013a; Silve et al. 2015). However, Southall et al. (2016) suggested that even minor, sub-lethal behavioral changes may still have significant energetic and physiological consequences given sustained or repeated exposure. We do not expect such sustained or repeated exposure of any individuals in this case.

9.2.1 North Atlantic Right Whales

As described in the Status of the Species, the endangered North Atlantic right whale is currently in decline in the western North Atlantic (Pace et al. 2017b; Pace et al. 2021) and experiencing an unusual mortality event (Daoust et al. 2017). The population estimate in the most recent Stock Assessment Report (Hayes 2021) is 412 individuals (95% CI: 403-424); this is based on information through January 2018. The most recent population estimate (Pace 2021) is 368 right whales in the western North Atlantic. Modeling indicates that low female survival, a male-biased sex ratio, and low calving success are contributing to the population's current decline (Pace et al. 2017b). The species has low genetic diversity, as would be expected based on its low abundance, and the species' resilience to future perturbations is expected to be very low (Hayes et al. 2018). Vessel strikes and entanglement of right whales in U.S. and Canadian waters continue to occur. Furthermore, entanglement in fishing gear appears to have had substantial health and energetic costs that affect both survival and reproduction of right whales (van der Hoop et al. 2017a). Due to the declining status of North Atlantic right whales, the resilience of this population to stressors that would impact the distribution, abundance, and reproductive potential of the population is low. The species faces a high risk of extinction and the population size is small enough for the death of any individuals to have measurable effects in the projections on its population status, trend, and dynamics.

As described in the *Environmental Baseline* and *Climate Change* sections, ongoing effects in the action area (e.g., global climate change, decreased prey abundance, vessel strikes, and entanglements in U.S. state and federal fisheries) have contributed to concern for the species' persistence. Sublethal effects from entanglement cannot be separated out from other stressors (e.g., prey abundance, climate variation, reproductive state, vessel collisions) which co-occur and affect calving rates. Entanglement in fishing gear and vessel strikes are currently understood to be the most significant threats to the species and, as described in the *Environmental Baseline*, may occur in the action area over the life of the proposed action. As noted in the Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different than those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change is expected to negatively affect right whales throughout their range, including in the action area, over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the context of anticipated climate change. As noted in the Environmental Baseline, the Vineyard Wind project is also proposed for construction in the action area. In our ESA consultation on that project, we concluded that it may adversely affect but was not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of North Atlantic right whales. Adverse effects were limited to the harassment of a number of right whales due to exposure to pile driving noise. Based on project schedules we do not anticipate that construction of these two projects would occur concurrently; therefore, we do not anticipate the potential for pile driving to occur on the same day for both projects. We also note that these lease areas are about 30 km apart at their closest points; this is enough separation to ensure no overlap of sound fields even in the extremely unlikely event that pile driving occurred for the two projects at the same time.

The distribution of right whales overlaps with some parts of the vessel transit routes that will be used through the 29-year life of the project. A number of measures designed to reduce the risk of vessel strike, including deploying lookouts and traveling at reduced speeds in areas where right whales are most likely to occur, are part of the proposed action. As explained above, we have determined that strike of a right whale by a project vessel is extremely unlikely to occur. No injury (auditory or other) or mortality is expected due to exposure to any aspect of the proposed action during the construction, operations, or decommissioning phases of the project.

A number of measures that are part of the proposed action, including a seasonal restriction of pile driving and clearance and shutdown measures during pile driving, reduce the potential for exposure of right whales to pile driving noise. No right whales are expected to be exposed to pile driving noise that could result in PTS or any other injury. However, even with these minimization measures in place, we expect up to 4 North Atlantic right whales to experience TTS, behavioral disturbance, and physiological stress in the action area during the construction period due to exposure to impact pile driving noise and 6 North Atlantic right whales to experience TTS, behavioral disturbance, and physiological stress due to exposure to vibratory pile driving noise during cofferdam installation and removal. As explained in the Effects of the Action section, all of these impacts, including TTS, are expected to be temporary with normal behaviors resuming quickly after the noise ends (see Goldbogen et al. 2013a; Melcon et al. 2012) and TTS resolving within weeks (see Southall et al. 2007). Exposure to potentially disturbing levels of noise will only occur during pile driving; the effects of exposure to WTG operational noise and noise associated with other project activities is expected to be insignificant. Masking is not anticipated as result of any exposure to project noise other than pile driving. As right whales do not echolocate, there is no potential for noise or other project effects to affect echolocation.

When in the WDA, one of the primary activities North Atlantic right whales are expected to be engaged in is migration (that is, we expect that right whales will be in the project area while migrating along the Atlantic coast). However, we also expect the animals to perform other behaviors, including foraging, socializing, and resting. Based on the best available information that indicates whales resume normal behavior quickly after the cessation of sound exposure (e.g., Goldbogen et al. 2013a; Melcon et al. 2012), we anticipate that the up to 10 right whales exposed to harassing levels of pile driving noise will return to normal behavioral patterns after the exposure ends. A single impact pile driving event will take no more than two to four hours; therefore, even in the event that a right whale was exposed to disturbing levels of noise for the entirety of a pile driving event, that disturbance would last no more than four hours. Noise will be elevated above the Level B harassment threshold for approximately 18 hours (spread out over one to three days) for cofferdam installation and removal; the disturbance would last no more than the length of vibratory pile installation/removal on a given day. Of the anticipated exposures, we expect six to be during vibratory installation or removal of the cofferdam and four during impact pile driving to install the WTG and OSS foundations. If an animal exhibits an avoidance response, it would experience a cost in terms of the energy associated with traveling away from the acoustic source. There would likely be an energetic cost associated with any temporary habitat displacement to find alternative locations for foraging, but unless disruptions occur over long durations or over subsequent days, which we do not expect, we do not anticipate this movement to be consequential to the animal over the long term (see Southall et al. 2007a). The energetic consequences of the evasive behavior and delay in resting or foraging are not expected affect any individual’s ability to successfully obtain enough food to maintain their health, or impact the ability of any individual to make seasonal migrations or participate in future breeding or calving. TTS will resolve within a week of exposure (that is, hearing sensitivity will return to normal) and is not expected to affect the health of any whale or its ability to migrate, forage, breed, or calve (Southall et al. 2007). These conclusions also apply to any mother-calf pairs that may be exposed to pile driving noise. Pile driving noise may mask right whale calls and could have effects on mother-calf communication and behavior. However, we do not anticipate that such effects would result in fitness consequences given their short-term nature. As noted in the Effects of the Action section, when calves leave the foraging grounds off the coast of the southeastern U.S. at around four months of age, they are expected to be more robust and less susceptible to a missed or delayed nursing opportunity. Any masking of communications or any delays in nursing due to swimming away from the pile driving noise would only last for the duration of the exposure to pile driving noise, which in all cases would be no more than two to four hours. This temporary disruption is not expected to have any health consequences to the calf or mother due to its short-term duration and the ability to resume normal behaviors as soon as they are out of range of the disturbance.

Stress responses are also anticipated with each of these instances of disruption. However, the available literature suggests these acoustically induced stress responses will be of short duration (similar to the duration of exposure), and not result in a chronic increase is stress that could result in physiological consequences to the animal (Southall et al. 2007). Given the short period of time during which elevated noise will be experienced (i.e., two to hour fours a day for 16 days of impact pile driving and up to 18 hours over up to three days for vibratory pile driving), we do not anticipate long duration exposures to occur, and we do not anticipate the associated stress of exposure to result in significant costs to affected individuals**.**

As described in section 7.1, up to 10 right whales are expected to be exposed to pile driving noise and respond in a way that meets NMFS' interim definition of harassment under the ESA (inclusive of TTS, behavioral disturbance, and stress). Because we do not expect the same animal to be exposed more than once, we expect there to be harassment of 10 different whales. We do not anticipate harassment to result from exposure to any other noise source. No harm, injury, or mortality is expected. No vessel strikes of North Atlantic right whales are anticipated and no entanglement of right whales in gear used for fisheries surveys/monitoring is anticipated.

As described in greater detail in Section 7.1, we do not anticipate these instances of TTS and behavioral harassment to result in fitness consequences to individual North Atlantic right whales. Our analysis considered the overall number of exposures to acoustic stressors that are expected to result in harassment, inclusive of behavioral responses, TTS, and stress, the duration and scope of the proposed activities expected to result in such impacts, the expected behavioral state of the animals at the time of exposure, and the expected condition of those animals. Instances of North Atlantic right whale exposure to acoustic stressors are expected to be short-term, not exceeding four hours, with the animal returning to its previous behavioral state shortly thereafter. As described previously, information is not available to conduct a quantitative analysis to determine the likely fitness consequences of these exposures and associated responses because we do not have information from wild cetaceans that links short-term behavioral responses to vital rates and animal health. Harris et al. (2017a) summarized the research efforts conducted to date that have attempted to understand the ways in which behavioral responses may result in long-term consequences to individuals and populations. Efforts have been made to try to quantify the potential consequences of such responses, and frameworks have been developed for this assessment (e.g., Population Consequences of Disturbance). However, models that have been developed to date to address this question require many input parameters and, for most species, there are insufficient data for parameterization (Harris et al. 2017a). Nearly all studies and experts agree that infrequent exposures of a single day or less are unlikely to impact an individual's overall energy budget (Farmer et al. 2018; Harris et al. 2017b; King et al. 2015b; NAS 2017; New et al. 2014; Southall et al. 2007d; Villegas-Amtmann et al. 2015). Based on best available information, we expect this to be the case for North Atlantic right whales exposed to acoustic stressors associated with this project even for animals that may already be in a stressed or compromised state due to factors unrelated to the South Fork project.

We do not expect any serious injury or mortality of any right whale to result from the proposed action. We also do not anticipate fitness consequences to any individual North Atlantic right whales. Because we do not anticipate any reduction in fitness, we do not anticipate any future effects on reproductive success. While many right whales in the action area are in a stressed state that is thought to contribute to a decreased calving interval, the short-term (no more than a few hours) exposure to pile driving noise experienced by a single individual is not anticipated to have any lingering effects and is not expected to have any effect on future reproductive output. As such, we do not expect any reductions in reproduction. Any effects to distribution will be limited to short-term alterations to normal movements by individuals to avoid disturbing levels of noise. Pile driving noise will be short-term and intermittent, with impact pile driving occurring for 2-4 hours at a time on up to 16 days and vibratory driving occurring for 18 hours over 1 to 3 days for cofferdam installation and removal. Operational noise is not expected to impact the distribution of right whales and neither is the existence of the turbine foundations. Effects to distribution will be limited to avoiding the area with disturbing levels of noise during pile driving. There will be no change to the overall distribution of right whales in the action area or throughout their range.

The proposed action is not likely to affect the recovery potential of North Atlantic right whales. The 2005 Recovery Plan (NMFS 2005) states that North Atlantic right whales may be considered for reclassifying to threatened when all of the following have been met: 1) The population ecology (range, distribution, age structure, and gender ratios, etc.) and vital rates (age-specific survival, age-specific reproduction, and lifetime reproductive success) of right whales are indicative of an increasing population; 2) The population has increased for a period of 35 years at an average rate of increase equal to or greater than 2% per year; 3) None of the known threats to Northern right whales (summarized in the five listing factors) are known to limit the population's growth rate; and, 4) Given current and projected threats and environmental conditions, the right whale population has no more than a 1% chance of quasi-extinction in 100 years. The proposed action will not result in any condition that impacts the time it will take to reach these goals or the likelihood that these goals will be met. This is because the proposed action will not affect the trend of the species or prevent or delay it from achieving an increasing population or otherwise affect its growth rate and will not affect the chance of quasi-extinction.

For these reasons, the effects of the proposed action are not expected to cause an appreciable reduction in the likelihood of survival and recovery of North Atlantic right whales in the wild. These conclusions were made in consideration of the endangered status of North Atlantic right whales, other stressors that individuals are exposed to within the action area as described in the Environmental Baseline and Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, and any anticipated effects of climate change on the abundance and distribution of right whales in the action area.

9.2.2 Fin Whales

The best available current abundance estimate for fin whales in the North Atlantic stock is 6,802 (CV=0.24), sum of the 2016 NOAA shipboard and aerial surveys and the 2016 NEFSC and Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada (DFO) surveys; the minimum population estimate for the western North Atlantic fin whale is 5,573 (Hayes et al. 2021). Fin whales in the North Atlantic compromise one of the three to seven stocks in the North Atlantic. According to the latest NMFS stock assessment report for fin whales in the Western North Atlantic, information is not available to conduct a trend analysis for this population (Hayes et al. 2021). Rangewide, there are over 100,000 fin whales occurring primarily in the North Atlantic Ocean, North Pacific Ocean, and Southern Hemisphere.

Entanglement in fishing gear and vessel strikes as described in the *Environmental Baseline*, may occur in the action area over the life of the proposed action. As noted in the Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different from those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of fin whales in the action area over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the context of anticipated climate change.

Up to 15 fin whales are expected to experience harassment (inclusive of TTS, behavioral disturbance, and stress) over the construction period due to exposure to pile driving noise. One fin whale is expected to experience PTS during the construction period due to exposure to impact pile driving noise. Based on the best available information as detailed in Section 7, no harm, non-auditory injury or mortality to fin whales is reasonably certain to occur. No vessel strikes or entanglement in fisheries survey gear of fin whales are anticipated.

As described in greater detail in Section 7.1, we do not anticipate that instances of TTS and behavioral harassment will result in fitness consequences to individual fin whales. When in the WDA, one of the primary activity fin whales are expected to be engaged in is migration. However, we also expect the animals to perform other behaviors, including opportunistic foraging and resting. Based on best available information that indicates whales resume normal behavior quickly after the cessation of sound exposure (e.g., Goldbogen et al. 2013a; Melcon et al. 2012), we anticipate that exposed animals will be able to return to normal behavioral patterns after the exposure ends. A single impact pile driving event will take no more than two to four hours; therefore, even in the event that a fin whale was exposed to disturbing levels of noise for the entirety of a pile driving event, that disturbance would last no more than four hours. Noise will be elevated above the Level B harassment threshold for approximately 18 hours (spread out over one to three days) for cofferdam installation and removal; the disturbance would last no more than the length of vibratory pile installation/removal on a given day. Of the anticipated exposures that will result in harassment, we expect 9 to be during vibratory installation or removal of the cofferdam and 6 during impact pile driving to install the WTG and OSS foundations.

If an animal exhibits an avoidance response, it would experience a cost in terms of the energy associated with traveling away from the acoustic source. There would likely be an energetic cost associated with any temporary habitat displacement to find alternative locations for foraging, but unless disruptions occur over long durations or over subsequent days, which we do not expect, we do not anticipate this movement to be consequential to the animal over the long term (see Southall et al. 2007a). The energetic consequences of the evasive behavior and delay in resting or foraging are not expected affect any individual's ability to successfully obtain enough food to maintain their health, or impact the ability of any individual to make seasonal migrations or participate in breeding or calving. TTS will resolve within a week of exposure and is not expected to affect the health of any whale or its ability to migrate, forage, breed, or calve (Southall et al. 2007). Pile driving noise may mask fin whale calls and could impact mother-calf communication and behavior. However, we do not anticipate that such effects would result in fitness consequences given their short-term nature (i.e., limited only to the period of noise exposure). Because we do not anticipate fitness consequences to individual fin whales to result from instances of TTS and behavioral harassment due to acoustic stressors, we do not expect these stressors to cause reductions in overall reproduction, abundance, or distribution of the fin whale population in the North Atlantic or rangewide.

Unlike TTS, PTS is permanent meaning the effects of PTS last well beyond the duration of the proposed action and outside of the action area as animals migrate. As such, PTS has the potential to affect aspects of affected animal's life functions that do not overlap in time and space with the proposed action. We expects that the one fin whale that is estimated to be exposed to pile driving noise above the Level A harassment threshold would experience slight PTS, *i.e.* minor degradation of hearing capabilities within regions of hearing that align most completely with the energy produced by pile driving (*i.e.* the low-frequency region below 2 kHz), not severe hearing impairment. If hearing impairment occurs, it is most likely that the affected animal would lose a few decibels in its hearing sensitivity, which in most cases is not likely to meaningfully affect its ability to forage and communicate with conspecifics, much less impact reproduction or survival (NMFS 2021). No severe hearing impairment or serious injury is expected because of the received levels of noise anticipated and the short duration of exposure. The PTS anticipated is considered a minor auditory injury. As discussed previously in Section 7.1, permanent hearing impairment has the potential to affect individual whale survival and reproduction, although data are not readily available to evaluate how permanent hearing threshold shifts directly relate to individual whale fitness. Our exposure and response analyses indicate that no more than one fin whale would experience PTS, but this PTS is expected to be minor. With this minor degree of PTS, even though one individual whale is expected to experience a minor reduction in fitness, we would not expect such impacts to have meaningful effects at the population level given what is known about the current status of the fin whale population that will be exposed. That is, one individual fin whale could be less efficient at locating conspecifics or have decreased ability to detect threats at long distances, but this animal is still expected to be able to locate conspecifics to socialize and reproduce, and will still be able to detect threats with enough time to avoid injury. For this reason, we do not anticipate that instances of PTS will result in changes in the number, distribution, or reproductive potential of fin whales in the North Atlantic.

The proposed action will not result in any reduction in the abundance or reproduction of fin whales. Any effects to distribution will be limited to short-term alterations to normal movements by individuals to avoid disturbing levels of noise. Pile driving noise will be short-term and intermittent, with impact pile driving occurring for 2-4 hours at a time on up to 16 days and vibratory driving occurring for 18 hours over 1 to 3 days for cofferdam installation and removal. Operational noise is not expected to impact the distribution of fin whales and neither is the existence of the turbine foundations. Effects to distribution will be limited to avoiding the area with disturbing levels of noise during pile driving. There will be no change to the overall distribution of fin whales in the action area or throughout their range.

The proposed action is not likely to affect the recovery potential of fin whales. The 2010 Recovery Plan for fin whales included two criteria for consideration for reclassifying the species from endangered to threatened: 1. Given current and projected threats and environmental conditions, the fin whale population in each ocean basin in which it occurs (North Atlantic, North Pacific and Southern Hemisphere) satisfies the risk analysis standard for threatened status (has no more than a 1% chance of extinction in 100 years) and has at least 500 mature, reproductive individuals (consisting of at least 250 mature females and at least 250 mature males) in each ocean basin. Mature is defined as the number of individuals known, estimated, or inferred to be capable of reproduction. Any factors or circumstances that are thought to substantially contribute to a real risk of extinction that cannot be incorporated into a Population Viability Analysis will be carefully considered before downlisting takes place; and, 2. None of the known threats to fin whales are known to limit the continued growth of populations. Specifically, the factors in 4(a)(l) of the ESA are being or have been addressed: A) the present or threatened destruction, modification or curtailment of a species' habitat or range; B) overutilization for commercial, recreational or educational purposes; C) disease or predation; D) the inadequacy of existing regulatory mechanisms; and E) other natural or manmade factors. The proposed action will not result in any condition that impacts the time it will take to reach these goals or the likelihood that these goals will be met. This is because the proposed action will not affect the trend of the species or prevent or delay it from achieving an increasing population or otherwise affect the number of individuals or the species growth rate and will not affect the chance of extinction.

Based on this analysis, the proposed action is not likely to result in an appreciable reduction in the likelihood of survival and recovery of fin whales in the wild. These conclusions were made in consideration of the endangered status of fin whales, other stressors that individuals are exposed to within the action area as described in the Environmental Baseline and Cumulative Effects, and any anticipated effects of climate change on the abundance and distribution of fin whales in the action area.

9.2.3 Sei Whales

The average spring 2010–2013 abundance estimate of 6,292 (CV=1.015) is considered the best available for the Nova Scotia stock of sei whales because it was derived from surveys covering the largest proportion of the range (Halifax, Nova Scotia to Florida), during the season when they are the most prevalent in U.S. waters (in spring), using only recent data (2010–2013), and correcting aerial survey data for availability bias (Hayes et al. 2021). However, as described in Hayes et al. 2021 (the most recent stock assessment report), there is considerable uncertainty in this estimate. As described in the Status of the Species, the most recent abundance estimate we are aware of for sei whales is 25,000 individuals worldwide (Braham 1991). According to the latest NMFS stock assessment report for sei whales in the western North Atlantic, there are insufficient data to determine population trends for sei whales (Hayes et al. 2021). Across its range, it is estimated that there are over 50,000 sei whales. In the North Pacific, an abundance estimate for the entire North Pacific population of sei whales is not available. However, in the western North Pacific, it is estimated that there are 35,000 sei whales (Cooke 2018a). In the eastern North Pacific (considered east of longitude 180°), two stocks of sei whales occur in U.S. waters: Hawaii and Eastern North Pacific. Abundance estimates for the Hawaii stock are 391 sei whales (Nmin=204), and for Eastern North Pacific stock, 519 sei whales (Nmin=374) (Carretta et al. 2019a). In the Southern Hemisphere, recent abundance of sei whales is estimated at 9,800 to 12,000 whales.

Entanglement in fishing gear and vessel strikes as described in the *Environmental Baseline*, may occur in the action area over the life of the proposed action. As noted in the Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different than those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of sei whales in the action area over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the context of anticipated climate change.

Sei whales exposed to pile driving noise are expected to experience TTS, behavioral disturbance, and physiological stress. As described in the Effects of the Action section, no more than one sei whale is expected to be exposed to impact pile driving noise that could result in PTS and no more than two sei whales are expected to be exposed to impact pile driving noise that could result in harassment (inclusive of TTS, significant behavioral disturbance, and stress) during the construction period. This PTS will result in minor auditory injury. No vessel strikes or interactions between survey gear and sei whales are anticipated. No sei whales are expected to be exposed to potentially disturbing levels of noise during vibratory pile driving due to the nearshore location of the noisy area.

As described in greater detail in Section 7.1, we do not anticipate that instances of TTS and behavioral harassment will result in fitness consequences to individual sei whales. When in the WDA, the primary activity sei whales are expected to be engaged in is migration. However, we also expect the animals to perform other behaviors, including opportunistic foraging and resting. Based on best available information that indicates whales resume normal behavior quickly after the cessation of sound exposure (e.g., Goldbogen et al. 2013a; Melcon et al. 2012), we anticipate that exposed animals will be able to return to normal behavioral patterns after the exposure ends. A single impact pile driving event will take no more than two to four hours; therefore, even in the event that a sei whale was exposed to disturbing levels of noise for the entirety of a pile driving event, that disturbance would last no more than four hours. Noise will be elevated above the Level B harassment threshold for approximately 18 hours (spread out over one to three days) for cofferdam installation and removal; the disturbance would last no more than the length of vibratory pile installation/removal on a given day. Of the anticipated exposures that will result in harassment, we expect 1 to be during vibratory installation or removal of the cofferdam and 1 during impact pile driving to install the WTG and OSS foundations. If an animal exhibits an avoidance response, it would experience a cost in terms of the energy associated with traveling away from the acoustic source. There would likely be an energetic cost associated with any temporary habitat displacement to find alternative locations for foraging, but unless disruptions occur over long durations or over subsequent days, which we do not expect, we do not anticipate this movement to be consequential to the animal over the long term (see Southall et al. 2007a). The energetic consequences of the evasive behavior and delay in resting or foraging are not expected affect any individual's ability to successfully obtain enough food to maintain their health, or impact the ability of any individual to make seasonal migrations or participate in breeding or calving. TTS will resolve within a week of exposure and is not expected to affect the health of any whale or its ability to migrate, forage, breed, or calve. Pile driving noise may mask sei whale calls and could have effects on mother-calf communication and behavior. However, we do not anticipate that such effects would result in fitness consequences given their short-term nature.

Stress responses are also anticipated with each of these instances of disruption. However, the available literature suggests these acoustically induced stress responses will be of short duration (similar to the duration of exposure), and not result in a chronic increase is stress that could result in physiological consequences to the animal. We do not anticipate long duration exposures to occur and we do not anticipate the associated stress of exposure to result in significant costs to affected individuals**.**

Because we do not anticipate fitness consequences to individual sei whales to result from instances of TTS and behavioral harassment due to acoustic stressors, we do not expect these stressors to cause reductions in overall reproduction, abundance, or distribution of the sei whale population in the North Atlantic or rangewide.

Unlike TTS, PTS is permanent meaning the effects of PTS last well beyond the duration of the proposed action and outside of the action area as animals migrate. As such, PTS has the potential to effect aspects of the affected animal's life functions that do not overlap in time and space with the proposed action. This slight PTS will be a minor degradation of hearing capabilities within regions of hearing that align most completely with the energy produced by pile driving (i.e. the low-frequency region below 2 kHz) and not severe hearing impairment. We expect this hearing impairment to mean that the affected animal would lose a few decibels in its hearing sensitivity, which is not likely to meaningfully affect its ability to forage, communicate with conspecifics, or detect and react to threats. Our exposure and response analyses indicate that one sei whale would experience PTS, but this PTS is expected to be minor. With this minor degree of PTS, even though an individual whale is expected to experience a minor reduction in fitness (e.g., less efficient ability to locate conspecifics; decreased ability to detect threats at long distance); we would not expect such impacts to have meaningful effects at the population level. That is, while one sei whale could be less efficient at locating conspecifics or have decreased ability to detect threats at long distances, these animals are still expected to be able to locate conspecifics to socialize and reproduce, and will still be able to detect threats with enough time to avoid injury. For this reason, we do not anticipate that instances of PTS will result in changes in the number, distribution, or reproductive potential of sei whales in the North Atlantic.

The proposed action will not result in any reduction in the abundance or reproduction of sei whales. Any effects to distribution will be limited to short-term alterations to normal movements by individuals to avoid disturbing levels of noise. Pile driving noise will be short-term and intermittent, with impact pile driving occurring for 2-4 hours at a time on up to 16 days and vibratory driving occurring for 18 hours over 1 to 3 days for cofferdam installation and removal. Operational noise is not expected to impact the behavior or distribution of sei whales and neither is the existence of the turbine foundations. Any effects to distribution will be limited to short-term alterations to normal movements by individuals to avoid disturbing levels of noise. There will be no change to the overall distribution of sei whales in the action area or throughout their range.

The proposed action is not likely to affect the recovery potential of sei whales. The 2011 Recovery Plan for sei whales included two criteria for consideration for reclassifying the species from endangered to threatened:
1. Given current and projected threats and environmental conditions, the sei whale population in each ocean basin in which it occurs (North Atlantic, North Pacific and Southern Hemisphere) satisfies the risk analysis standard for threatened status (has no more than a 1% chance of extinction in 100 years) and the global population has at least 1,500 mature, reproductive individuals (consisting of at least 250 mature females and at least 250 mature males in each ocean basin). Mature is defined as the number of individuals known, estimated, or inferred to be capable of reproduction. Any factors or circumstances that are thought to substantially contribute to a real risk of extinction that cannot be incorporated into a Population Viability Analysis will be carefully considered before downlisting takes place. And,
2. None of the known threats to sei whales are known to limit the continued growth of populations. Specifically, the factors in 4(a)(l) of the ESA are being or have been addressed: A) the present or threatened destruction, modification or curtailment of a species' habitat or range; B) overutilization for commercial, recreational or educational purposes; D) the inadequacy of existing regulatory mechanisms; and E) other natural or manmade factors (there are no criteria for Factor C, disease or predation). The proposed action will not result in any condition that impacts the time it will take to reach these goals or the likelihood that these goals will be met. This is because the proposed action will not affect the trend of the species or prevent or delay it from achieving an increasing population or otherwise affect the number of individuals or the species growth rate and will not affect the chance of extinction.

In summary, the impacts expected to occur and affect sei whales are not anticipated to result in reductions in overall reproduction, abundance, or distribution of the sei whale population in the North Atlantic. Because we do not anticipate impacts to the sei whale population in the North Atlantic, we also do not anticipate reductions in overall reproduction, abundance, or distribution of the sei whale population rangewide. For this reason, the effects of the proposed action are not expected to cause an appreciable reduction in the likelihood of survival and recovery of sei whales in the wild. These conclusions were made in consideration of the endangered status of sei whales, other stressors that individuals are exposed to within the action area as described in the Environmental Baseline and Cumulative Effects sections of this Opinion, and any anticipated effects of climate change on the abundance and distribution of fin whales in the action area.

9.2.4 Sperm Whales

As described in further detail in the Status of the Species, the most recent estimate indicated a global population of between 300,000 and 450,000 individuals (Whitehead 2009). The higher estimates may be approaching population sizes prior to commercial whaling, the reason for ESA listing. No other more recent rangewide abundance estimates are available for this species (Waring et al. 2015). Hayes et al. (2020) reports that several estimates from selected regions of sperm whale habitat exist for select time periods, however, at present there is no reliable estimate of total sperm whale abundance for the entire North Atlantic. Sightings have been almost exclusively in the continental shelf edge and continental slope areas, however there has been little or no survey effort beyond the slope. The best recent abundance estimate for sperm whales is the sum of the 2016 surveys— 4,349 (CV=0.28) (Hayes et al. 2020).

Entanglement in fishing gear and vessel strikes as described in the *Environmental Baseline*, may occur in the action area over the life of the proposed action. As noted in the Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different than those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of sperm whales in the overall action area over the life of this project, but given the shallow depths of the lease area, any change in distribution of sperm whales over time is not expected to result in any change in use of the lease area. We have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the context of anticipated climate change.

As described in the Effects of the Action section, up to three sperm whales are likely to experience harassment (inclusive of TTS, significant behavioral disturbance, and stress) over the construction period due to exposure to impact pile driving noise. Impact pile driving will take place for two to four hours a day on up to 16 days. Behavior of sperm whales in the area where they could be exposed to disturbing levels of noise is expected to be limited to migration and resting. The depths in this area are significantly shallower than areas where sperm whales forage (500 – 1,000 m); as such, we do not anticipate any disruption of foraging activity. As explained in section 7.1, sperm whales use echolocation to support foraging, noise associated with the project is not anticipated to affect sperm whale echolocation, however, even if it did, no effects to sperm whales are anticipated as foraging does not occur in the area where noise exposure will occur. Based on best available information that indicates whales resume normal behavior quickly after the cessation of sound exposure (e.g., Goldbogen et al. 2013a; Melcon et al. 2012), we anticipate that exposed animals will be able to return to normal behavioral patterns after the exposure ends. If an animal exhibits an avoidance response, it would experience a cost in terms of the energy associated with traveling away from the acoustic source. There would likely be an energetic cost associated with any temporary habitat displacement to find alternative locations for foraging, but unless disruptions occur over long durations or over subsequent days, which we do not expect, we do not anticipate this movement to be consequential to the animal over the long term (see Southall et al. 2007a). Exposure to potentially disturbing levels of noise is limited to the two to four hours it takes to install a monopile foundation (no sperm whales are expected to be exposed to vibratory hammer noise due to the nearshore location of the area where increased noise will be experienced). The energetic consequences of the evasive behavior and delay in resting or foraging are not expected affect any individual's ability to successfully obtain enough food to maintain their health, or impact the ability of any individual to make seasonal migrations or participate in breeding or calving . TTS will resolve within a week of exposure and is not expected to affect the health of any whale or its ability to migrate, forage, breed, or calve. Pile driving noise is not expected to mask sperm whale calls.

Stress responses are also anticipated with each of these instances of disruption. However, the available literature suggests these acoustically induced stress responses will be of short duration (similar to the duration of exposure), and not result in a chronic increase is stress that could result in physiological consequences to the animal (Southall et al. 2007). We do not anticipate long duration exposures to occur and we do not anticipate the associated stress of exposure to result in significant costs to affected individuals**.**

We do not expect any serious injury or mortality of any sperm whale to result from the proposed action. We also do not anticipate fitness consequences to any individual sperm whales. Because we do not anticipate any reduction in fitness, we do not anticipate any future effects on reproductive success. Any effects to distribution will be limited to short-term alterations to normal movements by individuals to avoid disturbing levels of noise. Impact pile driving noise that could result in harassment of sperm whales will be short-term (two to four hours at a time) and intermittent (occurring only on 16 days). Operational noise is not expected to impact the distribution or behavior of sperm whales and neither is the existence of the turbine foundations. Effects to distribution will be limited to avoiding the area with disturbing levels of noise during pile driving. There will be no change to the overall distribution of sperm whales in the action area or throughout their range.

The proposed action is not likely to affect the recovery potential of sperm whales. The 2010 Recovery Plan states that sperm whales may be considered for reclassifying to threatened when all of the following have been met: 1. Given current and projected threats and environmental conditions, the sperm whale population in each ocean basin in which it occurs (Atlantic Ocean/Mediterranean Sea, Pacific Ocean, and Indian Ocean) satisfies the risk analysis standard for threatened status (has no more than a 1% chance of extinction in 100 years) and the global population has at least 1,500 mature, reproductive individuals (consisting of at least 250 mature females and at least 250 mature males in each ocean basin). Mature is defined as the number of individuals known, estimated, or inferred to be capable of reproduction. Any factors or circumstances that are thought to substantially contribute to a real risk of extinction that cannot be incorporated into a Population Viability Analysis will be carefully considered before downlisting takes place; and, 2. None of the known threats to sperm whales is known to limit the continued growth of populations. Specifically, the factors in 4(a)(l) of the ESA are being or have been addressed: A) the present or threatened destruction, modification or curtailment of a species' habitat or range; B) overutilization for commercial, recreational or educational purposes; C) disease or predation; D) the inadequacy of existing regulatory mechanisms; and E) other natural or manmade factors. The proposed action will not result in any condition that impacts the time it will take to reach these goals or the likelihood that these goals will be met. This is because the proposed action will not affect the trend of the species or prevent or delay it from achieving an increasing population or otherwise affect its growth rate and will not affect the chance of extinction

For these reasons, the effects of the proposed action are not expected to cause an appreciable reduction in the likelihood of survival and recovery of sperm whales in the wild. These conclusions were made in consideration of the endangered status of sperm whales, other stressors that individuals are exposed to within the action area as described in the Environmental Baseline and Cumulative Effects, and any anticipated effects of climate change on the abundance and distribution of sperm whales in the action area.

9.3 Sea Turtles

Our effects analysis determined that pile driving is likely to adversely affect a number of individual ESA-listed sea turtles in the action area and cause temporary and permanent threshold shift, behavioral response, and stress but that no serious injury or mortality is anticipated. We determined that exposure to other project noise will have effects that are insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur. We expect that project vessels will strike and kill no more than 7 leatherback, 3 loggerhead, 1 green, and 1 Kemp's ridley sea turtle over the 29-year life of the project, inclusive of the construction, operation, and decommissioning period. We expect that a number of sea turtles will be captured in the trawl surveys and be released alive and that 1 leatherback, 1 loggerhead, 1 green, and 1 Kemp's ridley sea turtle will be captured in the gillnet survey and that these individuals may die. We do not expect the entanglement or capture of any sea turtles in the trap/pot surveys. We also determined that effects to habitat and prey are also insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur. In this section, we discuss the likely consequences of these effects to individual sea turtles, the populations those individuals represent, and the species those populations comprise.

While this biological opinion relies on the best available scientific and commercial information, our analysis and conclusions include uncertainty about the basic hearing capabilities of sea turtles, such as how they use sound to perceive and respond to environmental cues, and how temporary changes to their acoustic soundscape could affect the normal physiology and behavioral ecology of these species. Vessel strikes are expected to result in more significant effects on individuals than other stressors considered in this Opinion because these strikes are expected to result in serious injury or mortality. Those that are killed and removed from the population would decrease reproductive rates, and those that sustain non-lethal injuries and permanent hearing impairment could have fitness consequences during the time it takes to fully recover, or have long lasting impacts if permanently harmed. Temporary hearing impairment and significant behavioral disruption from harassment could have similar effects, but given the duration of exposures, these impacts are expected to be temporary and a sea turtle's hearing is expected to return back to normal shortly after the exposure ends. Therefore, these temporary effects are expected to exert significantly less adverse effects on any individual than severe injuries and permanent non-lethal injuries.

In this, section we assess the likely consequences of these effects to the sea turtles that have been exposed, the populations those individuals represent, and the species those populations comprise. Section 5.2 described current sea turtle population statuses and the threats to their survival and recovery. Most sea turtle populations have undergone significant to severe reduction by human harvesting of both eggs and sea turtles, loss of beach nesting habitats, as well as severe bycatch pressure in worldwide fishing industries. The *Environmental Baseline* identified actions expected to generally continue for the foreseeable future for each of these species of sea turtle that may affect sea turtles in the action area. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in a northward distribution of sea turtles, which could result in a small change in the abundance, and seasonal distribution of sea turtles in the action area over the 29-year life of the South Fork project. However, as described there, given the cool winter water temperatures in the action area and considering the amount of warming that is anticipated, any shift in seasonal distribution is expected to be small (potential additional weeks per year, not months) and any increase in abundance in the action area is expected to be small. As noted in the *Cumulative Effects* section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different than those considered in the *Status of the Species* and *Environmental Baseline* sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change.

9.3.1 Northwest Atlantic DPS of Loggerhead Sea Turtles

The Northwest Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles is listed as threatened. Based on nesting data and population abundance and trends at the time, NMFS and USFWS determined in 2011 that the Northwest Atlantic DPS should be listed as threatened and not endangered based on: (1) the large size of the nesting population, (2) the overall nesting population remains widespread, (3) the trend for the nesting population appears to be stabilizing, and (4) substantial conservation efforts are underway to address threats (76 FR 58868, September 22, 2011).

It takes decades for loggerhead sea turtles to reach maturity. Once they have reached maturity, females typically lay multiple clutches of eggs within a season, but do not typically lay eggs every season (NMFS and USFWS 2008). There are many natural and anthropogenic factors affecting the survival of loggerheads prior to their reaching maturity as well as for those adults who have reached maturity. As described in the *Status of the Species, Environmental Baseline,* and *Cumulative Effects* sections above, loggerhead sea turtles in the action area continue to be affected by multiple anthropogenic impacts including bycatch in commercial and recreational fisheries, habitat alteration, vessel interactions, and other factors that result in mortality of individuals at all life stages. Negative impacts causing death of various age classes occur both on land and in the water. Many actions have been taken to address known negative impacts to loggerhead sea turtles. However, others remain unaddressed, have not been sufficiently addressed, or have been addressed in some manner but whose success cannot be quantified.

There are five subpopulations of loggerhead sea turtles in the western North Atlantic (recognized as recovery units in the 2008 recovery plan for the species). These subpopulations show limited evidence of interbreeding. As described in the *Status of the Species,* recent assessments have evaluated the nesting trends for each recovery unit. Nesting trends are based on nest counts or nesting females; they do not include non-nesting adult females, adult males, or juvenile males or females in the population.

Estimates of the total loggerhead population in the Atlantic are not currently available. However, there is some information available for portions of the population. From 2004-2008, the loggerhead adult female population for the Northwest Atlantic ranged from 20,000 to 40,000 or more individuals (median 30,050), with a large range of uncertainty in total population size

(NMFS SEFSC 2009). The estimate of Northwest Atlantic adult loggerhead females was considered conservative for several reasons. The number of nests used for the Northwest Atlantic was based primarily on U.S. nesting beaches. Thus, the results are a slight underestimate of total nests because of the inability to collect complete nest counts for many non-U.S. nesting beaches within the DPS. In estimating the current population size for adult nesting female loggerhead sea turtles, the report simplified the number of assumptions and reduced uncertainty by using the minimum total annual nest count (i.e., 48,252 nests) over the five years. This was a particularly conservative assumption considering how the number of nests and nesting females can vary widely from year to year (e.g., the 2008 nest count was 69,668 nests, which would have increased the adult female estimate proportionately to between 30,000 and 60,000). In addition, minimal assumptions were made about the distribution of remigration intervals and nests per female parameters, which are fairly robust and well known. A loggerhead population estimate using data from 2001-2010 estimated the loggerhead adult female population in the Northwest Atlantic at 38,334 individuals (SD =2,287) (Richards et al. 2011).

The AMAPPS surveys and sea turtle telemetry studies conducted along the U.S. Atlantic coast in the summer of 2010 provided preliminary regional abundance estimate of about 588,000 loggerheads along the U.S. Atlantic coast, with an inter-quartile range of 382,000-817,000 (NMFS 2011c). The estimate increases to approximately 801,000 (inter-quartile range of 521,000-1,111,000) when based on known loggerheads and a portion of unidentified sea turtle sightings (NMFS 2011c). Although there is much uncertainty in these population estimates, they provide some context for evaluating the size of the likely population of loggerheads in the Atlantic.

The impacts to loggerhead sea turtles from the proposed action are expected to result in the serious injury or mortality of 3 individuals due to vessel strike over the 29-year construction, operations and decommissioning period; the harassment (inclusive of TTS) of 6 individuals due to exposure to impact pile driving noise; the capture of up to 14 loggerheads over the 6-year survey period in the two trawl surveys, we expect these individuals will be released alive with only minor, recoverable injuries (minor scrapes and abrasions); and, the capture of 1 loggerhead over the 6-year survey period in the gillnet survey and expect that individual may die. We determined that all other effects of the action would be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur. In total, we expect the proposed action to result in the mortality of 4 loggerheads over the 29-year life of the project.

The 6 loggerhead sea turtles that experience harassment could suffer temporary hearing impairment (TTS), and we also assume these turtles would have physiological stress. These temporary conditions are expected to return to normal over a short period of time. TTS will resolve within one week while behavioral disturbance and stress will cease after exposure to pile driving noise ends (no more than two to four hours). These temporary alterations in behavior are not likely to reduce the overall fitness of individual turtles. The energetic consequences of the evasive behavior and delay in resting or foraging are not expected to affect any individual's ability to successfully obtain enough food to maintain their health, or impact the ability of any individual to make seasonal migrations or participate in breeding or nesting. In general, based upon what we know about sound effects on sea turtles, we do not anticipate exposure to these acoustic stressors to have long-term effects on an individual nor alter critical life functions.

Therefore, we do not anticipate loggerhead sea turtles to have population level consequences from acoustic stressors.

The mortality of 6 loggerhead sea turtles in the action area over the 29 year life of the project (inclusive of 2 years of construction, 25 years of operations, and 2 years of decommissioning) would reduce the number of loggerhead sea turtles from the recovery unit of which they originated as compared to the number of loggerheads that would have been present in the absence of the proposed actions (assuming all other variables remained the same). We expect that the majority of loggerheads in the action area originated from the Northern Recovery Unit (NRU) or the Peninsular Florida Recovery Unit (PFRU).

The Northern Recovery Unit, from the Florida-Georgia border through southern Virginia, is the second largest nesting aggregation in the DPS, with an average of 5,215 nests from 1989-2008, and approximately 1,272 nesting females (NMFS and U.S. FWS 2008). For the Northern recovery unit, nest counts at loggerhead nesting beaches in North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia declined at 1.9% annually from 1983 to 2005 (NMFS and U.S. FWS 2007a). In the trend analysis by Ceriani and Meylan (2017), a 35% increase for this Recovery Unit was reported. In 2019, record numbers of loggerhead nests have been reported in Georgia and the Carolinas (https://www.cbsnews.com/news/rare-sea-turtles-smash-nesting-records-in-parts-of-southeast-georgia-south-carolina-north-carolina/; July 14, 2019). A longer- term trend analysis based on data from 1983 to 2019 indicates that the annual rate of increase is 1.3 percent (Bolten et al. 2019).

Annual nest totals for the PFRU averaged 64,513 nests from 1989-2007, representing approximately 15,735 females per year (NMFS and USFWS 2008). Nest counts taken at index beaches in Peninsular Florida showed a significant decline in loggerhead nesting from 1989 to 2007, most likely attributed to mortality of oceanic-stage loggerheads caused by fisheries bycatch (Witherington et al. 2009). From 2009 through 2013, a 2 percent decrease for the Peninsular Florida Recovery Unit was reported (Ceriani and Meylan 2017). Using a longer time series from 1989-2018, there was no significant change in the number of annual nests; however, an increase in the number of nests was observed from 2007 to 2018 (Bolten et al. 2019).

The loss of 4 loggerheads over the 29 years of the project, at a rate of no more than 1 per year represents an extremely small percentage of the number of sea turtles in the PFRU or NRU. Even if the total population of the PFRU was limited to 15,735 loggerheads (the number of nesting females), the loss of 4 individuals would represent approximately 0.03% of the population. If the total NRU population was limited to 1,272 sea turtles (the number of nesting females), and all 4 individuals originated from that population, the loss of those individuals would represent approximately 0.3% of the population. Even just considering the number of adult nesting females this loss is extremely small and would be even smaller when considered for the total recovery unit and represents an even smaller percentage of the DPS as a whole.

As noted in the *Environmental Baseline*, the status of loggerhead sea turtles in the action area is expected to be the same as that of each recovery unit over the life of the project (stable to increasing). The loss of such a small percentage of the individuals from any of these recovery units represents an even smaller percentage of the DPS as a whole. Considering the extremely small percentage of the populations that will be killed, it is unlikely that these deaths will have a detectable effect on the numbers and population trends of loggerheads in these recovery units or the number of loggerheads in the Northwest Atlantic DPS. We make this conclusion in consideration of the status of the species as a whole, the status of loggerhead sea turtles in the action area, and in consideration of the threats experienced by loggerheads in the action area as described in the *Environmental Baseline* and *Cumulative Effects* sections of this Opinion. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of loggerheads in the action area over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the context of anticipated climate change.

Any effects on reproduction are limited to the future reproductive output of the individuals that die. Even assuming that all of these losses were reproductive female (which is unlikely given the expected even sex ratio in the action area), given the number of nesting adults in each of these populations, it is unlikely that the expected loss of loggerheads would affect the success of nesting in any year. Additionally, this extremely small reduction in potential nesters is expected to result in a similarly small reduction in the number of eggs laid or hatchlings produced in future years and similarly, an extremely small effect on the strength of subsequent year classes with no detectable effect on the trend of any recovery unit or the DPS as a whole. The proposed actions will not affect nesting beaches in any way or disrupt migratory movements in a way that hinders access to nesting beaches or otherwise delays nesting. Additionally, given the small percentage of the species that will be killed as a result of the proposed actions, there is not likely to be any loss of unique genetic haplotypes and no loss of genetic diversity.

The proposed action is not likely to reduce distribution because while the action will temporarily affect the distribution of individual loggerheads through behavioral disturbance changes in distribution will be temporary and limited to movements to nearby areas in the WDA. As explained in section 7, we expect the project to have insignificant effects on use of the action area by loggerheads.

While generally speaking, the loss of a small number of individuals from a subpopulation or species may have an appreciable reduction on the numbers, reproduction and distribution of the species this is likely to occur only when there are very few individuals in a population, the individuals occur in a very limited geographic range or the species has extremely low levels of genetic diversity. This situation is not likely in the case of loggerheads because: the species is widely geographically distributed, it is not known to have low levels of genetic diversity, there are several thousand individuals in the population and the number of loggerheads is likely to be stable or increasing over the time period considered here.

Based on the information provided above, the death of 4 loggerheads over the 29 year life span of the project will not appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival (i.e., it will not decrease the likelihood that the species will continue to persist into the future with sufficient resilience to allow for recovery and eventual delisting). The actions will not affect loggerheads in a way that prevents the species from having a sufficient population, represented by all necessary age classes, genetic heterogeneity, and number of sexually mature individuals producing viable offspring and it will not result in effects to the environment which would prevent loggerheads from completing their entire life cycle, including reproduction, sustenance, and shelter. This is the case because: (1) the death of 4 loggerheads represents an extremely small percentage of the species as a whole; (2) the death of 4 loggerheads will not change the status or trends of any recovery unit or the DPS as a whole; (3) the loss of 4 loggerheads is not likely to have an effect on the levels of genetic heterogeneity in the population; (4) the loss of 4 loggerheads is likely to have an extremely small effect on reproductive output that will be insignificant at the recovery unit or DPS level; (5) the actions will have only a minor and temporary effect on the distribution of loggerheads in the action area and no effect on the distribution of the species throughout its range; and, (6) the actions will have no effect on the ability of loggerheads to shelter and only an insignificant effect on individual foraging loggerheads.

In certain instances, an action may not appreciably reduce the likelihood of a species survival (persistence) but may affect its likelihood of recovery or the rate at which recovery is expected to occur. As explained above, we have determined that the proposed actions will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that loggerhead sea turtles will survive in the wild. Here, we consider the potential for the actions to reduce the likelihood of recovery. As noted above, recovery is defined as the improvement in status such that listing is no longer appropriate. Thus, we have considered whether the proposed actions will affect the likelihood that the NWA DPS of loggerheads can rebuild to a point where listing is no longer appropriate. In 2008, NMFS and the USFWS issued a recovery plan for the Northwest Atlantic population of loggerheads (NMFS and USFWS 2008). The plan includes demographic recovery criteria as well as a list of tasks that must be accomplished. Demographic recovery criteria are included for each of the five recovery units. These criteria focus on sustained increases in the number of nests laid and the number of nesting females in each recovery unit, an increase in abundance on foraging grounds, and ensuring that trends in neritic strandings are not increasing at a rate greater than trends in in-water abundance. The recovery tasks focus on protecting habitats, minimizing and managing predation and disease, and minimizing anthropogenic mortalities.

Loggerheads have a stable trend; as explained above, the loss of 4 loggerheads over the life span of the proposed actions will not affect the population trend. The number of loggerheads likely to die as a result of the proposed actions is an extremely small percentage of any recovery unit or the DPS as a whole. This loss will not affect the likelihood that the population will reach the size necessary for recovery or the rate at which recovery will occur. As such, the proposed actions will not affect the likelihood that the demographic criteria will be achieved or the timeline on which they will be achieved. The action area does not include nesting beaches; all effects to habitat will be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur; therefore, the proposed actions will have no effect on the likelihood that habitat based recovery criteria will be achieved. The proposed actions will also not affect the ability of any of the recovery tasks to be accomplished.

The effects of the proposed actions will not hasten the extinction timeline or otherwise increase the danger of extinction; further, the actions will not prevent the species from growing in a way that leads to recovery and the actions will not change the rate at which recovery can occur. This is the case because while the actions may result in a small reduction in the number of loggerheads and a small reduction in the amount of potential reproduction due to the loss of this individual, these effects will be undetectable over the long-term and the actions are not expected to have long term impacts on the future growth of the DPS or its potential for recovery. Therefore, based on the analysis presented above, the proposed actions will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that the NWA DPS of loggerhead sea turtles can be brought to the point at which they are no longer listed as threatened.

Based on the analysis presented herein, the proposed actions are not likely to appreciably reduce the survival and recovery of the NWA DPS of loggerhead sea turtles. These conclusions were made in consideration of the threatened status of NWA DPS loggerhead sea turtles, other stressors that individuals are exposed to within the action area as described in the *Environmental Baseline* and *Cumulative Effects*, and any anticipated effects of climate change on the abundance and distribution of loggerhead sea turtles in the action area.

9.3.2 North Atlantic DPS of Green Sea Turtles

The North Atlantic DPS of green sea turtles is listed as threatened under the ESA. As described in the *Status of the Species*, the North Atlantic DPS of green sea turtles is the largest of the 11 green turtle DPSs with an estimated abundance of over 167,000 adult females from 73 nesting sites. All major nesting populations demonstrate long-term increases in abundance (Seminoff et al. 2015b). Green sea turtles face numerous threats on land and in the water that affect the survival of all age classes. While the threats of pollution, habitat loss through coastal development, beachfront lighting, and fisheries bycatch continue for this DPS, the DPS appears to be somewhat resilient to future perturbations. As described in the *Environmental Baseline* and *Cumulative Effects*, green sea turtles in the action area are exposed to pollution and experience vessel strike and fisheries bycatch. As noted in the *Cumulative Effects* section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different than those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of green sea turtles in the action area over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the context of anticipated climate change.

There are four regions that support high nesting concentrations in the North Atlantic DPS: Costa Rica (Tortuguero), Mexico (Campeche, Yucatan, and Quintana Roo), United States (Florida), and Cuba. Using data from 48 nesting sites in the North Atlantic DPS, nester abundance was estimated at 167,528 total nesters (Seminoff et al. 2015). The years used to generate the estimate varied by nesting site but were between 2005 and 2012. The largest nesting site (Tortuguero, Costa Rica) hosts 79 percent of the estimated nesting. It should be noted that not all female turtles nest in a given year (Seminoff et al. 2015). Nesting in the area has increased considerably since the 1970s, and nest count data from 1999-2003 suggested that 17,402-37,290 females nested there per year (Seminoff et al. 2015). In 2010, an estimated 180,310 nests were laid at Tortuguero, the highest level of green sea turtle nesting estimated since the start of nestingtrack surveys in 1971. This equated to somewhere between 30,052 and 64,396 nesters in 2010 (Seminoff et al. 2015). Nesting sites in Cuba, Mexico, and the United States were either stable orincreasing (Seminoff et al. 2015). More recent data is available for the southeastern United States. Nest counts at Florida’s core index beaches have ranged from less than 300 to almost 41,000 in 2019. The Index Nesting Beach Survey (INBS) is carried out on a subset of beaches surveyed during the Statewide Nesting Beach Survey (SNBS) and is designed to measure trends in nest numbers. The nest trend in Florida shows the typical biennial peaks in abundance and has been increasing (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea- turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/).

The SNBS is broader but is not appropriate for evaluating trends. In 2019, approximately 53,000 green turtle nests were recorded in the SNBS (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/). Seminoff et al. (2015) estimated total nester abundance for Florida at 8,426 turtles.

NMFS recognizes that the nest count data available for green sea turtles in the Atlantic indicates increased nesting at many sites. However, we also recognize that the nest count data, including data for green sea turtles in the Atlantic, only provides information on the number of females currently nesting, and is not necessarily a reflection of the number of mature females available to nest or the number of immature females that will reach maturity and nest in the future.

The impacts to green sea turtles from the proposed action are expected to result in the harassment (inclusive of TTS) of 6 individuals due to exposure to pile driving noise; the serious injury or mortality of 1 individual due to vessel strike over the 29-year life of the project inclusive of construction, operations, and decommissioning; the capture of up to 2 green sea turtles in the two trawl surveys, we expect these individuals will be released alive with only minor, recoverable injuries (minor scrapes and abrasions); and, the capture of 1 green sea turtle in the gillnet survey, we expect that individual may die. We determined that all other effects of the action would be insignificant or extremely unlikely. In total, we anticipate the proposed action will result in the mortality of two green sea turtles over the 29-year life of the project.

The 6 green sea turtles that experience harassment could suffer temporary hearing impairment (TTS), and we also assume these turtles would have physiological stress. These temporary conditions are expected to return to normal over a short period of time. TTS will resolve within one week while behavioral disturbance and stress will cease after exposure to pile driving noise ends (no more than two to four hours). These temporary alterations in behavior are not likely to reduce the overall fitness of individual turtles. The energetic consequences of the evasive behavior and delay in resting or foraging are not expected to affect any individual's ability to successfully obtain enough food to maintain their health, or impact the ability of any individual to make seasonal migrations or participate in breeding or nesting.

The death of two green sea turtles, whether males or females, immature or mature, would reduce the number of green sea turtles as compared to the number of green that would have been present in the absence of the proposed actions assuming all other variables remained the same. The loss of two green sea turtles represents a very small percentage of the species as a whole. Even compared to the number of nesting females (17,000-37,000), which represent only a portion of the number of greens worldwide, the mortality of two green represents less than 0.006% of the nesting population. The loss of these sea turtles would be expected to reduce the reproduction of green sea turtles as compared to the reproductive output of green sea turtles in the absence of the proposed action. As described in the "Status of the Species" section above, we consider the trend for green sea turtles to be stable. As noted in the Environmental Baseline, the status of green sea turtles in the action area is expected to be the same as that of each recovery unit over the life of the project. As explained below, the death of these green sea turtles will not appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival for the species for the reasons outlined below. We make this conclusion in consideration of the status of the species as a whole, the status of green sea turtles in the action area, and in consideration of the threats experienced by green sea turtles in the action area as described in the Environmental Baseline and Cumulative Effects sections of this Opinion.

While generally speaking, the loss of a small number of individuals from a subpopulation or species may have an appreciable reduction on the numbers, reproduction and distribution of the species this is likely to occur only when there are very few individuals in a population, the individuals occur in a very limited geographic range or the species has extremely low levels of genetic diversity. This situation is not likely in the case of greens because: the species is widely geographically distributed, it is not known to have low levels of genetic diversity, there are several thousand individuals in the population and the number of greens is likely to be increasing and at worst is stable. These actions are not likely to reduce distribution of greens because the actions will not cause more than a temporary disruption to foraging and migratory behaviors.

Based on the information provided above, the death of two green sea turtles over the 29 year life of the project, will not appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival (i.e., it will not decrease the likelihood that the species will continue to persist into the future with sufficient resilience to allow for the potential recovery from endangerment). The action will not affect green sea turtles in a way that prevents the species from having a sufficient population, represented by all necessary age classes, genetic heterogeneity, and number of sexually mature individuals producing viable offspring and it will not result in effects to the environment which would prevent green sea turtles from completing their entire life cycle, including reproduction, sustenance, and shelter. This is the case because: (1) the species' nesting trend is increasing; (2) the death of 2 green sea turtles represents an extremely small percentage of the species as a whole; (3) the loss of 2 green sea turtles will not change the status or trends of the species as a whole; (4) the loss of 2 green sea turtles is not likely to have an effect on the levels of genetic heterogeneity in the population; (5) the loss of 2 green sea turtles is likely to have an undetectable effect on reproductive output of the species as a whole; (6) the action will have insignificant and temporary effects on the distribution of greens in the action area and no effect on its distribution throughout its range; and (7) the action will have no effect on the ability of green sea turtles to shelter and only an insignificant effect on individual foraging green sea turtles.

In rare instances, an action may not appreciably reduce the likelihood of a species survival (persistence) but may affect its likelihood of recovery or the rate at which recovery is expected to occur. As explained above, we have determined that the proposed actions will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that green sea turtles will survive in the wild. Here, we consider the potential for the actions to reduce the likelihood of recovery. As noted above, recovery is defined as the improvement in status such that listing is no longer appropriate. Thus, we have considered whether the proposed actions will affect the likelihood that the species can rebuild to a point where listing is no longer appropriate. A Recovery Plan for Green sea turtles was published by NMFS and USFWS in 1991. The plan outlines the steps necessary for recovery and the criteria, which, once met, would ensure recovery. In order to be delisted, green sea turtles must experience sustained population growth, as measured in the number of nests laid per year, over time. Additionally, "priority one" recovery tasks must be achieved and nesting habitat must be protected (through public ownership of nesting beaches) and stage class mortality must be reduced. Here, we consider whether this proposed actions will affect the population size and/or trend in a way that would affect the likelihood of recovery.

The proposed actions will not appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival of green sea turtles. Also, it is not expected to modify, curtail or destroy the range of the species since it will result in an extremely small reduction in the number of green sea turtles in any geographic area and since it will not affect the overall distribution of green sea turtles other than to cause minor temporary adjustments in movements in the action area. As explained above, the proposed actions are likely to result in the mortality of two green sea turtles; however, as explained above, the loss of these individuals over this time period is not expected to affect the persistence of green sea turtles or the species trend. The actions will not affect nesting habitat and will have only an extremely small effect on mortality. The effects of the proposed actions will not hasten the extinction timeline or otherwise increase the danger of extinction; further, the actions will not prevent the species from growing in a way that leads to recovery and the actions will not change the rate at which recovery can occur. This is the case because while the actions may result in a small reduction in the number of greens and a small reduction in the amount of potential reproduction due to the loss of one individual, these effects will be undetectable over the long-term and the actions is not expected to have long term impacts on the future growth of the population or its potential for recovery. Therefore, based on the analysis presented above, the proposed actions will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that green sea turtles can be brought to the point at which they are no longer listed as endangered or threatened.

Despite the threats faced by individual green sea turtles inside and outside of the action area, the proposed actions will not increase the vulnerability of individual sea turtles to these additional threats and exposure to ongoing threats will not increase susceptibility to effects related to the proposed actions. We have considered the effects of the proposed actions in light of the status of the species rangewide and in the action area, the environmental baseline, cumulative effects explained above, including climate change, and has concluded that even in light of the ongoing impacts of these activities and conditions; the conclusions reached above do not change. Based on the analysis presented herein, the proposed actions, resulting in the mortality of 2 green sea turtles over 29 years, is not likely to appreciably reduce the survival and recovery of this species.

9.3.3 Leatherback Sea Turtles

Leatherback sea turtles are listed as endangered under the ESA. Leatherbacks are widely distributed throughout the oceans of the world and are found in waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans, the Caribbean Sea, Mediterranean Sea, and the Gulf of Mexico (Ernst and Barbour 1972). Leatherback nesting occurs on beaches of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans as well as in the Caribbean (NMFS and USFWS 2013). Leatherbacks face a multitude of threats that can cause death prior to and after reaching maturity. Some activities resulting in leatherback mortality have been addressed.

The most recent published assessment, the leatherback status review, estimated that the total index of nesting female abundance for the Northwest Atlantic population of leatherbacks is 20,659 females (NMFS and USFWS 2020). This abundance estimate is similar to other estimates. The TEWG estimate approximately 18,700 (range 10,000 to 31,000) adult females using nesting data from 2004 and 2005 (TEWG 2007). The IUCN Red List assessment for the

NW Atlantic Ocean subpopulation estimated 20,000 mature individuals (male and female) and approximately 23,000 nests per year(data through 2017) with high inter-annual variability in annual nest counts within and across nesting sites (Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2019). The estimate in the status review is higher than the estimate for the IUCN Red List assessment, likely due to a different remigration interval, which has been increasing in recent years (NMFS and USFWS 2020). For this analysis, we found that the status review estimate of 20,659 nesting females represents the best available scientific information given that it uses the most comprehensive and recent demographic trends and nesting data.

In the 2020 status review, the authors identified seven leatherback populations that met the discreteness and significance criteria of DPSs (NMFS and USFWS 2020). These include the Northwest Atlantic, Southwest Atlantic, Southeast Atlantic, Southwest Indian, Northeast Indian, West Pacific, and East Pacific. The population found within the action is area is that identified in the status review as the Northwest Atlantic DPS. While NMFS and USFWS concluded that seven populations met the criteria for DPSs, the species continues to be listed at the global level (85 FR 48332, August 10, 2020). Therefore, this analysis considers the range-wide status.

Previous assessments of leatherbacks concluded that the Northwest Atlantic population was stable or increasing (TEWG 2007, Tiwari et al. 2013b). However, as described in the *Status of the Species*, more recent analyses indicate that the overall trends are negative (NMFS and USFWS 2020, Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2018, 2019). At the stock level, the Working Group evaluated the NW Atlantic – Guianas-Trinidad, Florida, Northern Caribbean, and the Western Caribbean stocks. The NW Atlantic – Guianas-Trinidad stock is the largest stock and declined significantly across all periods evaluated, which was attributed to an exponential decline in abundance at Awala-Yalimapo, French Guiana as well as declines in Guyana; Suriname; Cayenne, French Guiana; and Matura, Trinidad. Declines in Awala-Yalimapo were attributed, in part, due to beach erosion and a loss of nesting habitat (Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2018). The Florida stock increased significantly over the long-term, but declined from 2008-2017 (Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group 2018). Slight increases in nesting were seen in 2018 and 2019, however, nest counts remain low compared to 2008-2015 (https://myfwc.com/research/wildlife/sea-turtles/nesting/beach-survey-totals/). The Northern Caribbean and Western Caribbean stocks have also declined. The Working Group report also includes trends at the site-level, which varied depending on the site and time period, but were generally negative especially in the recent period.

Similarly, the leatherback status review concluded that the Northwest Atlantic DPS exhibits decreasing nest trends at nesting aggregations with the greatest indices of nesting female abundance. Though some nesting aggregations indicated increasing trends, most of the largest ones are declining. This trend is considered to be representative of the DPS (NMFS and USFWS 2020). Data also indicated that the Southwest Atlantic DPS is declining (NMFS and USFWS 2020).

Populations in the Pacific have shown dramatic declines at many nesting sites (Mazaris et al. 2017, Santidrián Tomillo et al. 2017, Santidrián Tomillo et al. 2007, Sarti Martínez et al. 2007, Tapilatu et al. 2013). The IUCN Red List assessment estimated the number of total mature individuals (males and females) at Jamursba-Medi and Wermon beaches to be 1,438 turtles

(Tiwari et al. 2013a). More recently, the leatherback status review estimated the total index of nesting female abundance of the West Pacific DPS at 1,277 females for the West Pacific DPS and 755 females for the East Pacific DPS (NMFS and USFWS 2020). The East Pacific DPS has exhibited a decreasing trend since monitoring began with a 97.4 percent decline since the 1980s or 1990s, depending on nesting beach (Wallace et al. 2013). Population abundance in the Indian Ocean is difficult to assess due to lack of data and inconsistent reporting. Most recently, the 2020 status review estimated that the total index of nesting female abundance for the SW Indian DPS is 149 females and that the DPS is exhibiting a slight decreasing nest trend (NMFS and USFWS 2020). While data on nesting in the Northeast Indian Ocean DPS is limited, the DPS is estimatedat 109 females. This DPS has exhibited a drastic population decline with extirpation of the largest nesting aggregation in Malaysia (NMFS and USFWS 2020).

The primary threats to leatherback sea turtles include fisheries bycatch, harvest of nesting females, and egg harvesting; of these, as described in the *Environmental Baseline* and *Cumulative Effects*, fisheries bycatch occurs in the action area. Leatherback sea turtles in the action area are also at risk of vessel strike. As noted in the Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different than those considered in the *Status of the Species* and *Environmental Baseline* sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of leatherback sea turtles in the action area over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the context of anticipated climate change.

The impacts to leatherback sea turtles from the proposed action are expected to result in the harassment of 8 individuals due to exposure to impact pile driving noise. We expect the capture of 1 leatherback sea turtle in the gillnet survey and expect that individual may die. We do not expect the capture of any leatherbacks in the trawl surveys. We also expect that 7 leatherbacks will be struck and seriously injured or killed by a project vessel over the 29-year life of the project inclusive of construction, operations, and decommissioning. We determined that all other effects of the action would be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur. In total, we anticipate the proposed action will result in the mortality of 8 leatherbacks over the 29-year life of the project.

The seven leatherback sea turtles that experience harassment would experience behavioral disturbance and could suffer temporary hearing impairment (TTS); we also assume these turtles would have physiological stress. These temporary conditions are expected to return to normal over a short period of time. TTS will resolve within one week while behavioral disturbance and stress will cease after exposure to pile driving noise ends (no more than two to four hours to install a single pile). These temporary alterations in behavior are not likely to reduce the overall fitness of individual turtles. The energetic consequences of the evasive behavior and delay in resting or foraging are not expected to affect any individual’s ability to successfully obtain enough food to maintain their health, or impact the ability of any individual to make seasonal migrations or participate in breeding or nesting.

The death of 8 leatherbacks over the life span of the project represents an extremely small percentage of the number of leatherbacks in the North Atlantic, just 0.04% even considering the lowest population estimate of nesting females (20,659; NMFS and USFWS 2020) and an even smaller percentage of the species as a whole. Considering the extremely small percentage of the population that will be killed, it is unlikely that these deaths will have a detectable effect on the numbers and population trends of leatherbacks in the North Atlantic or the species as a whole.

Any effects on reproduction are limited to the future reproductive output of the individuals killed. Even assuming that the mortalities were all reproductive females, given the number of nesting females in this population (20,659), it is unlikely that the expected loss of no more than one leatherback per year would affect the success of nesting in any year. Additionally, this extremely small reduction in potential nesters is expected to result in a similarly small reduction in the number of eggs laid or hatchlings produced in future years and similarly, an extremely small effect on the strength of subsequent year classes with no detectable effect on the trend of any nesting beach or the population as a whole. The proposed action will not affect nesting beaches in any way or disrupt migratory movements in a way that hinders access to nesting beaches or otherwise delays nesting. Additionally, given the small percentage of the species that will be killed as a result of the proposed action, there is not likely to be any loss of unique genetic haplotypes and no loss of genetic diversity.

The proposed action is not likely to reduce distribution because while the action will temporarily affect the distribution of individual leatherbacks through behavioral disturbance, changes in distribution will be temporary and limited to movements to nearby areas in the WDA. As explained in section 7, we expect the project to have insignificant effects on use of the action area by leatherbacks.

While generally speaking, the loss of a small number of individuals from a subpopulation or species may have an appreciable reduction on the numbers, reproduction and distribution of the species this is likely to occur only when there are very few individuals in a population, the individuals occur in a very limited geographic range or the species has extremely low levels of genetic diversity. This situation is not likely in the case of leatherbacks because: the species is widely geographically distributed, it is not known to have low levels of genetic diversity, there are several thousand individuals in the population and the number of leatherbacks is likely to be stable or increasing over the period considered here.

Based on the information provided above, the death of 8 leatherbacks over the 29-year life of the project will not appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival (i.e., it will not decrease the likelihood that the species will continue to persist into the future with sufficient resilience to allow for recovery and eventual delisting). The actions will not affect leatherbacks in a way that prevents the species from having a sufficient population, represented by all necessary age classes, genetic heterogeneity, and number of sexually mature individuals producing viable offspring and it will not result in effects to the environment which would prevent leatherbacks from completing their entire life cycle, including reproduction, sustenance, and shelter. This is the case because: (1) the death of 8 leatherbacks represents an extremely small percentage of the Northwest Atlantic population and an even smaller percentage of the species as a whole; (2) the death of 8 leatherbacks will not change the status or trends of any nesting beach, the Northwest Atlantic population or the species as a whole; (3) the loss of 8 leatherbacks is not likely to have an effect on the levels of genetic heterogeneity in the population; (4) the loss of 8 leatherbacks is likely to have an extremely small effect on reproductive output that will be insignificant at the nesting beach, population, or species level; (5) the actions will have only a minor and temporary effect on the distribution of leatherbacks in the action area and no effect on the distribution of the species throughout its range; and, (6) the actions will have no effect on the ability of leatherbacks to shelter and only an insignificant effect on individual foraging leatherbacks.

In certain instances, an action may not appreciably reduce the likelihood of a species survival (persistence) but may affect its likelihood of recovery or the rate at which recovery is expected to occur. As explained above, we have determined that the proposed actions will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that leatherback sea turtles will survive in the wild. Here, we consider the potential for the actions to reduce the likelihood of recovery. As noted above, recovery is defined as the improvement in status such that listing is no longer appropriate. Thus, we have considered whether the proposed actions will affect the likelihood that leatherbacks can rebuild to a point where listing is no longer appropriate. In 1992, NMFS and the USFWS issued a recovery plan for leatherbacks in the U.S. Caribbean, Atlantic, and Gulf of Mexico (NMFS and USFWS 1992). The plan includes three recovery objectives:

1) The adult female population increases over the next 25 years, as evidenced by a statistically significant trend in the number of nests at Culebra, Puerto Rico, St. Croix, USVI, and along the east coast of Florida.
2) Nesting habitat encompassing at least 75 percent of nesting activity in USVI, Puerto Rico and Florida is in public ownership.
3) All priority one tasks have been successfully implemented.

The recovery tasks focus on protecting habitats, minimizing and managing predation and disease, and minimizing anthropogenic mortalities.

Because the death of 8 leatherbacks over the 29-year life of the project is such a small percentage of the population and is not expected to affect the status or trend of the species, it will not affect the likelihood that the adult female population of loggerheads increases over time. This loss will not affect the likelihood that the population will reach the size necessary for recovery or the rate at which recovery will occur. As such, the proposed actions will not affect the likelihood that the demographic criteria will be achieved or the timeline on which they will be achieved. The action area does not include nesting beaches; all effects to habitat will be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur; therefore, the proposed actions will have no effect on the likelihood that habitat based recovery criteria will be achieved. The proposed actions will also not affect the ability of any of the recovery tasks to be accomplished.

The effects of the proposed actions will not hasten the extinction timeline or otherwise increase the danger of extinction; further, the actions will not prevent the species from growing in a way that leads to recovery and the actions will not change the rate at which recovery can occur. This is the case because while the actions may result in a small reduction in the number of leatherbacks and a small reduction in the amount of potential reproduction due to the loss of tis individual, these effects will be undetectable over the long-term and the actions are not expected to have long term impacts on the future growth of the species or its potential for recovery. Therefore, based on the analysis presented above, the proposed actions will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that leatherback sea turtles can be brought to the point at which they are no longer listed as endangered Despite the threats faced by individual leatherback sea turtles inside and outside of the action area, the proposed actions will not increase the vulnerability of individual sea turtles to these additional threats and exposure to ongoing threats will not increase susceptibility to effects related to the proposed actions. We have considered the effects of the proposed actions in light of the status of the species rangewide and in the action area, the environmental baseline, cumulative effects explained above, including climate change, and have concluded that even in light of the ongoing impacts of these activities and conditions; the conclusions reached here do not change.

Based on the analysis presented herein, the proposed actions are not likely to appreciably reduce the survival and recovery of leatherback sea turtles. These conclusions were made in consideration of the endangered status of leatherback sea turtles, other stressors that individuals are exposed to within the action area as described in the Environmental Baseline and Cumulative Effects, and any anticipated effects of climate change on the abundance and distribution of leatherback sea turtles in the action area.

9.3.4 Kemp's Ridley Sea Turtles

Kemp's ridley sea turtles are listed as a single species classified as endangered under the ESA. They occur in the Atlantic Ocean and Gulf of Mexico, the only major nesting site for Kemp's ridleys is a single stretch of beach near Rancho Nuevo, Tamaulipas, Mexico (Carr 1963,NMFS and USFWS 2015, USFWS and NMFS 1992).

Nest count data provides the best available information on the number of adult females nesting each year. As is the case with other sea turtles species, nest count data must be interpreted with caution given that these estimates provide a minimum count of the number of nesting Kemp's ridley sea turtles. In addition, the estimates do not account for adult males or juveniles of either sex. Without information on the proportion of adult males to females and the age structure of the population, nest counts cannot be used to estimate the total population size (Meylan 1982, Ross 1996). Nevertheless, the nesting data does provide valuable information on the extent of Kemp's ridley nesting and the trend in the numberof nests laid. It is the best proxy we have for estimating population changes.

Following a significant, unexplained one-year decline in 2010, Kemp's ridley sea turtle nests in Mexico reached a record high of 21,797 in 2012 (Gladys Porter Zoo nesting database, unpublished data). In 2013 and 2014, there was a second significant decline in Mexico nests, with only 16,385 and 11,279 nests recorded, respectively. In 2015, nesting in Mexico improved to 14,006 nests, and in 2016 overall numbers increased to 18,354 recorded nests. There was a record high nesting season in 2017, with 24,570 nests recorded (J. Pena, pers. comm. to NMFS SERO PRD, August 31, 2017 as cited in NMFS 2020c) and decreases observed in 2018 and again in 2019 (Figure 39). In 2019, there were 11,140 nests in Mexico. It is unknown whether this decline is related to resource fluctuation, natural population variability, effects of catastrophic events like the Deepwater Horizon oil spill affecting the nesting cohort, or some other factor. A small nesting population is also emerging in the United States, primarily in Texas. From 1980-1989, there were an average of 0.2 nests/year at Padre Island National Seashore (PAIS), rising to 3.4 nests/year from 1990-1999, 44 nests/year from 2000-2009, and 110 nests per year from 2010-2019. There was a record high of 353 nests in 2017 (NPS 2020). It is worth noting that nesting in Texas has paralleled the trends observed in Mexico, characterized by a significant decline in 2010, followed by a second decline in 2013-2014, but with a rebound in 2015-2017 (NMFS 2020c) and decreases in nesting in 2018 and 2019 (NPS 2020).

Estimates of the adult female nesting population reached a low of approximately 250-300 in 1985 (NMFS and USFWS 2015, TEWG 2000). Gallaway et al. (2016) developed a stock assessment model for Kemp's ridley to evaluate the relative contributions of conservation efforts and other factors toward this species' recovery. Terminal population estimates for 2012 summed over ages 2 to 4, ages 2+, ages 5+, and ages 9+ suggest that the respective female population sizes were 78,043 (SD = 14,683), 152,357 (SD = 25,015), 74,314 (SD =10,460), and 28,113 (SD = 2,987) (Gallaway et al. 2016). Using the standard IUCN protocol for sea turtle assessments, the number of mature individuals was recently estimated at 22,341 (Wibbels and Bevan 2019). The calculation took into account the average annual nests from 2016-2018 (21,156), a clutch frequency of 2.5 per year, a remigration interval of 2 years, and a sex ratio of 3.17 females: 1 male. Based on the data in their analysis, the assessment concluded the current population trend is unknown (Wibbels and Bevan 2019). However, some positive outlooks for the species include recent conservation actions, including the expanded TED requirements in the shrimp fishery (84 FR 70048, December 20, 2019) and a decrease in the amount of shrimping off the coast of Tamaulipas and in the Gulf of Mexico (NMFS and USFWS 2015).

Genetic variability in Kemp's ridley turtles is considered to be high, as measured by nuclear DNA analyses (i.e., microsatellites) (NMFS et al. 2011). If this holds true, then rapid increases in population over one or two generations would likely prevent any negative consequences in the genetic variability of the species (NMFS et al. 2011). Additional analysis of the mtDNA taken from samples of Kemp's ridley turtles at Padre Island, Texas, showed six distinct haplotypes, with one found at both Padre Island and Rancho Nuevo (Dutton et al. 2006).

Fishery interactions are the main threat to the species. The species' limited range and low global abundance make its resilience to future perturbation low. The status of Kemp's ridley sea turtles in the action area is the same as described in the Status of the Species. As described in the Environmental Baseline and Cumulative Effects, fisheries bycatch and vessel strike are likely to continue to occur in the action area over the life of the project. As noted in the Cumulative Effects section of this Opinion, we have not identified any cumulative effects different than those considered in the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline sections of this Opinion, inclusive of how those activities may contribute to climate change. As described in section 7.10, climate change may result in changes in the distribution or abundance of Kemp's ridley sea turtles in the action area over the life of this project; however, we have not identified any different or exacerbated effects of the action in the context of anticipated climate change.

The impacts to Kemp's ridley sea turtles from the proposed action are expected to result in the harassment of 6 individuals due to exposure to impact pile driving noise and one serious injury or mortality resulting from vessel strike. We expect the capture of up to 15 Kemp's ridley sea turtles in the two trawl surveys; we expect these individuals will be released alive with only minor, recoverable injuries (minor scrapes and abrasions). We expect the capture of 1 Kemp's ridley sea turtle in the gillnet survey and expect that individual may die. We determined that all other effects of the action would be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur. In total, we expect the proposed action to result in the mortality of two Kemp's ridley sea turtles over the 29-year life of the project.

The 6 Kemp's ridley sea turtles that experience harassment could suffer temporary hearing impairment (TTS), and we also assume these turtles would have physiological stress. These temporary conditions are expected to return to normal over a short period of time. TTS will resolve within one week while behavioral disturbance and stress will cease after exposure to pile driving noise ends (no more than the two to four hours it takes to install a pile). These temporary alterations in behavior are not likely to reduce the overall fitness of individual turtles. The energetic consequences of the evasive behavior and delay in resting or foraging are not expected to affect any individual's ability to successfully obtain enough food to maintain their health, or impact the ability of any individual to make seasonal migrations or participate in breeding or nesting.

The mortality of two Kemp's ridleys over a 29 year time period represents a very small percentage of the Kemp's ridleys worldwide. Even taking into account just nesting females (7-8,000), the death of two Kemp's ridley represents less than 0.028% of the population. While the death of two Kemp's ridley will reduce the number of Kemp's ridleys compared to the number that would have been present absent the proposed actions, it is not likely that this reduction in numbers will change the status of this species or its stable to increasing trend as this loss represents a very small percentage of the population. Reproductive potential of Kemp's ridleys is not expected to be affected in any other way other than through a reduction in numbers of individuals.

A reduction in the number of Kemp's ridleys would have the effect of reducing the amount of potential reproduction as any dead Kemp's ridleys would have no potential for future reproduction. In 2006, the most recent year for which data is available, there were an estimated 7-8,000 nesting females. While the species is thought to be female biased, there are likely to be several thousand adult males as well. Given the number of nesting adults, it is unlikely that the loss of two Kemp's ridley over 29 years would affect the success of nesting in any year. Additionally, this small reduction in potential nesters is expected to result in a small reduction in the number of eggs laid or hatchlings produced in future years and similarly, a very small effect on the strength of subsequent year classes. Even considering the potential future nesters that would be produced by the individuals that would be killed as a result of the proposed actions, any effect to future year classes is anticipated to be very small and would not change the stable to increasing trend of this species. Additionally, the proposed actions will not affect nesting beaches in any way or disrupt migratory movements in a way that hinders access to nesting beaches or otherwise delays nesting.

The proposed actions are not likely to reduce distribution because the actions will not impede Kemp's ridleys from accessing foraging grounds or cause more than a temporary disruption to other migratory behaviors. Additionally, given the small percentage of the species that will be killed as a result of the proposed actions, there is not likely to be any loss of unique genetic haplotypes and no loss of genetic diversity.

While generally speaking, the loss of a small number of individuals from a subpopulation or species may have an appreciable reduction on the numbers, reproduction and distribution of the species this is likely to occur only when there are very few individuals in a population, the individuals occur in a very limited geographic range or the species has extremely low levels of genetic diversity. This situation is not likely in the case of Kemp's ridleys because: the species is widely geographically distributed, it is not known to have low levels of genetic diversity, there are several thousand individuals in the population and the number of Kemp's ridleys is likely to be increasing and at worst is stable.

Based on the information provided above, the death of two Kemp's ridley sea turtles over 29 years will not appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival (i.e., it will not decrease the likelihood that the species will continue to persist into the future with sufficient resilience to allow for the potential recovery from endangerment). The actions will not affect Kemp's ridleys in a way that prevents the species from having a sufficient population, represented by all necessary age classes, genetic heterogeneity, and number of sexually mature individuals producing viable offspring and it will not result in effects to the environment which would prevent Kemp's ridleys from completing their entire life cycle, including reproduction, sustenance, and shelter. This is the case because: (1) the species' nesting trend is increasing; (2) the death of two Kemp's ridleys represents an extremely small percentage of the species as a whole; (3) the death of two Kemp's ridleys will not change the status or trends of the species as a whole; (4) the loss of these Kemp's ridleys is not likely to have an effect on the levels of genetic heterogeneity in the population; (5) the loss of these Kemp's ridleys is likely to have such a small effect on reproductive output that the loss of this individual will not change the status or trends of the species; (5) the actions will have only a minor and temporary effect on the distribution of Kemp's ridleys in the action area and no effect on the distribution of the species throughout its range; and, (6) the actions will have no effect on the ability of Kemp's ridleys to shelter and only an insignificant effect on individual foraging Kemp's ridleys.

In rare instances, an action may not appreciably reduce the likelihood of a species survival (persistence) but may affect its likelihood of recovery or the rate at which recovery is expected to occur. As explained above, we have determined that the proposed actions will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that Kemp's ridley sea turtles will survive in the wild. Here, we consider the potential for the actions to reduce the likelihood of recovery. As noted above, recovery is defined as the improvement in status such that listing is no longer appropriate. Thus, we have considered whether the proposed actions will affect the likelihood that Kemp's ridleys can rebuild to a point where listing is no longer appropriate. In 2011, NMFS and the USFWS issued a recovery plan for Kemp's ridleys (NMFS et al. 2011). The plan includes a list of criteria necessary for recovery. These include:

1. An increase in the population size, specifically in relation to nesting females[42];
2. An increase in the recruitment of hatchlings[43];

---

[42] A population of at least 10,000 nesting females in a season (as measured by clutch frequency per female per season) distributed at the primary nesting beaches in Mexico (Rancho Nuevo, Tepehuajes, and Playa Dos) is attained in order for downlisting to occur; an average of 40,000 nesting females per season over a 6-year period by 2024 for delisting to occur

[43] Recruitment of at least 300,000 hatchlings to the marine environment per season at the three primary nesting beaches in Mexico (Rancho Nuevo, Tepehuajes, and Playa Dos).

3. An increase in the number of nests at the nesting beaches;
4. Preservation and maintenance of nesting beaches (i.e. Rancho Nuevo, Tepehuajes, and Playa Dos); and,
5. Maintenance of sufficient foraging, migratory, and inter-nesting habitat.

Kemp’s ridleys have an increasing trend; as explained above, the loss of two Kemp’s ridleys over the 29-year life of the project will not affect the population trend. The number of Kemp’s ridleys likely to die as a result of the proposed actions is an extremely small percentage of the species. This loss will not affect the likelihood that the population will reach the size necessary for recovery or the rate at which recovery will occur. As such, the proposed actions will not affect the likelihood that criteria one, two or three will be achieved or the timeline on which they will be achieved. The action area does not include nesting beaches; therefore, the proposed actions will have no effect on the likelihood that recovery criteria four will be met. All effects to habitat will be insignificant or extremely unlikely to occur; therefore, the proposed actions will have no effect on the likelihood that criteria five will be met.

The effects of the proposed actions will not hasten the extinction timeline or otherwise increase the danger of extinction. Further, the actions will not prevent the species from growing in a way that leads to recovery and the actions will not change the rate at which recovery can occur. This is the case because while the actions may result in a small reduction in the number of Kemp’s ridleys and a small reduction in the amount of potential reproduction due to the average loss of one individual per year, these effects will be undetectable over the long-term and the actions are not expected to have long term impacts on the future growth of the population or its potential for recovery. Therefore, based on the analysis presented above, the proposed actions will not appreciably reduce the likelihood that Kemp’s ridley sea turtles can be brought to the point at which they are no longer listed as endangered or threatened.

Despite the threats faced by individual Kemp’s ridley sea turtles inside and outside of the actions area, the proposed actions will not increase the vulnerability of individual sea turtles to these additional threats and exposure to ongoing threats will not increase susceptibility to effects related to the proposed actions. We have considered the effects of the proposed actions in light of the status of the species, Environmental Baseline and cumulative effects explained above, including climate change, and have concluded that even in light of the ongoing impacts of these activities and conditions; the conclusions reached above do not change. Based on the analysis presented herein, the proposed actions, resulting in the mortality of two Kemp’s ridleys, is not likely to appreciably reduce the survival and recovery of this species. These conclusions were made in consideration of the endangered status of Kemp’s ridley sea turtles, other stressors that individuals are exposed to within the action area as described in the Environmental Baseline and Cumulative Effects, and any anticipated effects of climate change on the abundance and distribution of Kemp’s ridleys in the action area.

10.0 CONCLUSION

After reviewing the current status of the ESA-listed species, the environmental baseline within the action area, the effects of the proposed action, and cumulative effects, it is our biological opinion that the proposed action is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of fin, sei, sperm, or North Atlantic right whales or the Northwest Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles, North Atlantic DPS of green sea turtles, Kemp’s ridley or leatherback sea turtles, or any DPS of Atlantic sturgeon. As described in section 4 of this Opinion, we find that the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect blue whales, Rice's whales, giant manta ray, hawksbill sea turtles, smalltooth sawfish, gulf sturgeon, Nassau grouper, Oceanic whitetip sharks, the Northeast Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles, six species of ESA listed corals or shortnose sturgeon. We find that the proposed action will have no effect on critical habitat designated for the North Atlantic right whale, the New York Bight or Chesapeake Bay DPS of Atlantic sturgeon or the Northwest Atlantic DPS of loggerhead sea turtles.

11.0 INCIDENTAL TAKE STATEMENT – amended November 1, 2021

Section 9 of the ESA and Federal regulations pursuant to section 4(d) of the ESA prohibit the take of endangered and threatened species, respectively, without a special exemption. In the case of threatened species, section 4(d) of the ESA leaves it to the Secretary's discretion whether and to what extent to extend the statutory 9(a) ''take'' prohibitions, and directs the agency to issue regulations it considers necessary and advisable for the conservation of the species.

"Take" is defined as to harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture or collect, or to attempt to engage in any such conduct. Harm is further defined by regulation to include significant habitat modification or degradation that results in death or injury to ESA-listed species by significantly impairing essential behavioral patterns, including breeding, feeding, or sheltering. NMFS has not yet defined "harass" under the ESA in regulation, but has issued interim guidance on the term "harass," defining it as to "create the likelihood of injury to wildlife by annoying it to such an extent as to significantly disrupt normal behavior patterns which include, but are not limited to, breeding, feeding, or sheltering" (NMFS PD 02-110-19) We considered NMFS' interim definition of harassment in evaluating whether the proposed activities are likely to result in harassment of ESA-listed species. Incidental take statements serve a number of functions, including providing reinitiation triggers for all anticipated take, providing exemptions from the Section 9 prohibitions against take, and identifying reasonable and prudent measures that will minimize the impact of anticipated incidental take and monitor incidental take that occurs.

When an action will result in incidental take of ESA-listed marine mammals, ESA section 7(b)(4) requires that such taking be authorized under the MMPA section 101(a)(5) before the Secretary can issue an Incidental Take Statement (ITS) for ESA-listed marine mammals and that an ITS specify those measures that are necessary to comply with Section 101(a)(5) of the MMPA. Section 7(b)(4), section 7(o)(2), and ESA regulations provide that taking that is incidental to an otherwise lawful activity conducted by an action agency or applicant is not considered to be prohibited taking under the ESA if that activity is performed in compliance with the terms and conditions of this ITS, including those specified as necessary to comply with the MMPA, Section 101(a)(5). Accordingly, the terms of this ITS and the exemption from Section 9 of the ESA become effective only upon the issuance of MMPA authorization to take the marine mammals identified here. Absent such authorization, this ITS is inoperative for ESA-listed marine mammals.

The measures described below are non-discretionary, and must be undertaken by the action agency so that they become binding conditions for the exemption in section 7(o)(2) to apply. BOEM has a continuing duty to regulate the activity covered by this ITS. If BOEM (1) fails to assume and implement the terms and conditions or (2) fails to require the project sponsor or their contractors to adhere to the terms and conditions of the ITS through enforceable terms that are added to grants, permits and/or contracts as appropriate, the protective coverage of section 7(o)(2) may lapse. In order to monitor the impact of incidental take, BOEM or South Fork must report the progress of the action and its impact on the species to us as specified in the ITS [50 CFR §402.14(i)(3)] (See U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and National Marine Fisheries Service's Joint Endangered Species Act Section 7 Consultation Handbook (1998) at 4-49).

11.1 Amount or Extent of Take

Section 7 regulations require NMFS to specify the impact of any incidental take of endangered or threatened species; that is, the amount or extent of such incidental taking on the species (50 C.F.R. §402.14(i)(1)(i)). As explained in the Effects of the Action section, we anticipate pile driving during construction to result in the harassment of North Atlantic right, fin, sperm, and sei whales and NWA DPS loggerhead, NA DPS green, Kemp's ridley, and leatherback sea turtles. We also anticipate pile driving during construction to result in the injury (PTS) of fin and sei whales. We anticipate the serious injury or mortality of NWA DPS loggerhead, NA DPS green, Kemp's ridley, and leatherback sea turtles due to vessel strikes during construction, operation, and decommissioning phases of the project. We also anticipate the capture, injury, and mortality of NWA DPS loggerhead, NA DPS green, Kemp's ridley, and leatherback sea turtles and Atlantic sturgeon from the Gulf of Maine, New York Bight, Chesapeake Bay, Carolina, and South Atlantic DPSs in trawl and gillnet surveys of fisheries resources. No other sources of incidental take are anticipated. There is no incidental take anticipated to result from EPA's proposed issuance of an Outer Continental Shelf Air Permit or the USCG's proposed issuance of a Private Aids to Navigation (PATON) authorization. We anticipate no more than the amount and type of take described below to result from the construction, operation, and decommissioning of the South Fork project as proposed for approval by BOEM and pursuant to other permits, authorizations, and approvals by BSEE, USACE, and NMFS.

Vessel Strike

We calculated the number of sea turtles likely to be struck by project vessels based on the anticipated increase in vessel traffic during the construction, operations, and decommissioning phases of the project. The following amount of incidental take is exempted over the 29-year life of the project, inclusive of all three phases:

Species	**Vessel Strike**
	Serious Injury or Mortality
NA DPS green sea turtle	1
Kemp's ridley sea turtle	1
Leatherback sea turtle	7
NWA DPS Loggerhead sea turtle	3

Surveys of Fisheries Resources

We calculated the number of sea turtles and Atlantic sturgeon likely to be captured in trawl and gillnet gear over the period that the surveys are planned based on available information on capture and injury/mortality rates in similar surveys. Note that the total anticipated mortality of

Atlantic sturgeon in gillnet surveys is 5, with mortalities from individual DPSs not to exceed the numbers identified in this table.

The following amount of incidental take is exempted over the 6-year duration of the planned surveys:

Species	Trawl Surveys		Gillnet Survey	
	Capture, Minor Injury	**Serious Injury/Mortality**	**Capture, Minor Injury**	**Serious Injury/Mortality (subset of captures)**
Gulf of Maine DPS Atlantic sturgeon	3	None Anticipated (NA)	1	1
New York Bight DPS Atlantic sturgeon	81	NA	18	3
Chesapeake Bay DPS Atlantic sturgeon	34	NA	8	2
South Atlantic DPS Atlantic sturgeon	20	NA	4	1
Carolina DPS Atlantic sturgeon	9	NA	2	1
NA DPS green sea turtle	2	NA	1	1
Kemp’s ridley sea turtle	15	NA	1	1
Leatherback sea turtle	NA	NA	1	1
NWA DPS Loggerhead sea turtle	14	NA	1	1

If any additional surveys are planned or the survey terms are extended, consultation may need to be reinitiated.

Pile Driving

We calculated the number of whales and sea turtles likely to be injured or harassed due to exposure to pile driving noise based on the maximum impact scenario (i.e., 16 total monopiles, with one difficult installation, installed in 20 days, meeting the isopleth distances identified for 10 dB attenuation). The numbers below are the amount of take anticipated in consideration of that maximum impact scenario. This represents the maximum amount of take that is anticipated and is consistent with the amount of Level A and Level B harassment from impact and vibratory pile driving that NMFS is proposing to authorize through the MMPA IHA:

Species	Take due to Exposure to Pile Driving Noise		
	Vibratory Pile Driving	Impact Pile Driving	
	Harassment (TTS/Behavior)	Injury (PTS)	Harassment (TTS/Behavior)
North Atlantic right whale	6	None anticipated (NA)	4
Fin whale	9	1	6
Sei Whale	1	1	1
Sperm whale	NA	NA	3
NA DPS green sea turtle	NA	NA	6
Kemp's ridley sea turtle	NA	NA	6
Leatherback sea turtle	NA	NA	8
NWA DPS Loggerhead sea turtle	NA	NA	6

Following BOEM's approval of the Construction and Operations Plan, BOEM and BSEE review the applicant's Facility Design Report (FDR) and Fabrication and Installation Report (FIR). Within 5 days of approving the FIR (but at least 30 days prior to the initiation of pile driving), BOEM must notify us of the total number of foundations to be installed as well as confirm the construction methodology for the sea to shore transition. If at that time it is determined that the amount or extent of incidental take is likely to exceed the maximum amount for each source and type of take considered in this ITS, consultation may need to be reinitiated.

11.2 Effects of the Take

In this opinion, we determined that the amount or extent of anticipated take, coupled with other effects of the proposed action, is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of any ESA-listed species under NMFS' jurisdiction.

11.3 Reasonable and Prudent Measures

Section 7(b)(4) of the ESA requires that when a proposed agency action is found to be consistent with section 7(a)(2) of the ESA and the proposed action is likely to incidentally take individuals of ESA-listed species, NMFS will issue a statement that specifies the impact of any incidental taking of endangered or threatened species. To minimize such impacts, reasonable and prudent measures, and terms and conditions to implement the measures, must be provided. Only incidental take resulting from the agency actions and any specified reasonable and prudent measures and terms and conditions identified in the ITS are exempt from the taking prohibition of section 9(a), provided that, pursuant to section 7(o) of the ESA, such taking is in compliance with the terms of the ITS. This ITS is effective upon issuance, and the action agency and applicant may receive the benefit of the take exemption as long as they are complying with the relevant terms and conditions.

Reasonable and prudent measures (RPMs) are measures to minimize the impact (i.e., amount or extent) of incidental take (50 C.F.R. §402.02). The RPMs and terms and conditions are specified as required by 50 CFR 402.14 (i)(1) to minimize the impact of incidental take of ESA-listed species by the proposed action, to document and report that incidental take and to specify the procedures to be used to handle or dispose of any individuals of a species actually taken. The RPMs are nondiscretionary, and must be undertaken by the appropriate Federal agency so that they become binding conditions for the exemption in section 7(o)(2) to apply.

The RPMs identified here are necessary and appropriate to minimize impacts of incidental take that might otherwise result from the proposed action, to document and report incidental take that does occur, to specify the procedures to be used to handle or dispose of any individual listed species taken. Specifically, these RPMs and their implementing terms and conditions are designed to: minimize the exposure of ESA-listed whales and sea turtles to pile driving noise or reduce the extent of that exposure; minimize the risk to sea turtles of vessel strike; or minimize the amount or extent of take of sea turtles and Atlantic sturgeon during fisheries surveys. These RPMs and terms and conditions also require that all incidental take that occurs is documented and reported to NMFS in a timely manner and that any incidentally taken individual specimens are properly handled, resuscitated if necessary, transported for additional care or reporting, and/or returned to the sea.

Please note that these reasonable and prudent measures and terms and conditions are in addition to the measures that South Fork has committed to, the additional measures that BOEM has indicated they will require, and the mitigation measures identified in the proposed IHA issued by NMFS as all these are considered part of the proposed action (see Section 3 above). All of the conditions identified in Table 3.3.1 are considered part of the proposed action and not repeated here. For example, the prohibition on impact pile driving from January 1 – April 30 is considered part of the proposed action, and it is not repeated here as an RPM or term and condition. However, in some cases, the RPMs and Terms and Conditions provide additional detail or clarity to measures that are part of the proposed action. We consider that a failure to implement the measures identified as part of the proposed action in Section 3 of this Opinion would be a change in the action that may necessitate reinitiation of consultation and may render the take exemption inapplicable to the activities that are carried out.

All of the RPMs and Terms and Conditions are reasonable and prudent and necessary and appropriate to minimize or document and report the level of incidental take associated with the proposed action. None of the RPMs and the terms and conditions that implement them alter the basic design, location, scope, duration, or timing of the action and all of them involve only minor changes (50 CFR§ 402.14(i)(2)). A copy of this ITS should be on board all survey vessels and PSO platforms.

We have determined the following reasonable and prudent measures are necessary and appropriate to minimize, document, and report the impacts of incidental take of threatened and endangered species during the proposed action:

1. Effects to ESA-listed whales and sea turtles must be minimized during pile driving. This includes adherence to the mitigation measures specified in the final MMPA IHA.
2. Effects to ESA-listed sea turtles must be minimized during all vessel transits during all phases of the proposed action.
3. Effects to ESA-listed sea turtles and Atlantic sturgeon must be minimized during survey/monitoring activities of fisheries resources.

4. Effects to ESA-listed whales and sea turtles must be documented during all phases of the proposed action and all incidental take must be reported to NMFS.

11.4 Terms and Conditions

To be exempt from the prohibitions of section 9 of the ESA, BOEM, BSEE, USACE, NMFS Office of Protected Resources, and NMFS Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office must comply with the relevant terms and conditions, which implement the RPMs above. These include the take minimization, monitoring and reporting measures required by the section 7 regulations (50 C.F.R. §402.14(i)). These terms and conditions are non-discretionary. If the Federal agencies fail to ensure compliance with these terms and conditions and the RPMs they implement, the protective coverage of section 7(o)(2) may lapse.

1. To implement the requirements of RPM 1, the measures required by the final MMPA IHA must be incorporated into any project authorizations/approvals and the relevant Federal agency must monitor their compliance:
    a. BOEM must require, through an enforceable condition of their approval of South Fork's Construction and Operations Plan, that South Fork comply with any measures in the final MMPA IHA that are revised from, or in addition to, measures included in the proposed IHA, which have been incorporated into the proposed action.
    b. NMFS' OPR must ensure that all mitigation measures as prescribed in the final IHA are implemented by South Fork.
    c. The USACE must require, through an enforceable condition of any permit issued to South Fork, compliance with any measures in the final MMPA IHA that are revised from, or in addition to, measures included in the proposed IHA, which have been incorporated into the proposed action.
2. To implement the requirements of RPM 1, BOEM and USACE must ensure that South Fork prepares a *Passive Acoustic Monitoring Plan* that describes all proposed equipment, deployment locations, detection review methodology and other procedures, and protocols related to the required use of PAM for monitoring. This plan must be submitted to NMFS and BOEM for review and concurrence at least 90 days prior to the planned start of pile driving and must address all uses of PAM described in Table 3.3.1.
3. To implement the requirements of RPM 1, South Fork must prepare and submit a *Pile Driving Monitoring Plan* to NMFS for review and concurrence at least 90 days before start of pile driving. The plan must detail all plans and procedures for sound attenuation as well as for monitoring ESA-listed whales and sea turtles during all impact and vibratory pile driving required in Table 3.3.1. The plan must also describe how BOEM and South Fork will determine the number of whales exposed to noise above the Level B harassment threshold during pile driving with the vibratory hammer to install the cofferdam or casing pipe at the sea to shore transition. South Fork must obtain NMFS' concurrence with this plan prior to starting any pile driving.
4. To implement the requirements of RPM 1, BOEM and USACE must ensure that PSO coverage is sufficient to reliably detect whales and sea turtles at the surface in the identified clearance and shutdown zones (Table 3.3.2) to execute any pile driving delays

or shutdown requirements. If, at any point prior to or during construction, the PSO coverage that is included as part of the proposed action is determined not to be sufficient to reliably detect ESA-listed whales and sea turtles within the clearance and shutdown zones (see Table 3.14), additional PSOs and/or platforms must be deployed. Determinations prior to construction will be based on review of the Pile Driving Monitoring Plan. Determinations during construction will be based on review of the weekly pile driving reports and other information, as appropriate.

5. To implement the requirements of RPM 1, BOEM and USACE must ensure that if following sound field verification as described in Table 3.13, the clearance and/or shutdown zones are expanded, PSO coverage is sufficient to reliably monitor the expanded clearance and/or shutdown zones. Additional observers must be deployed on additional platforms for every 1,500 m that a clearance or shutdown zone is expanded beyond the distances included in Table 3.3.2 in Section 3 of the Opinion.
6. To implement the requirements of RPM 1, BOEM and USACE must ensure that following sound field verification as described in Table 3.13, the shutdown zone for sei, fin, and sperm whales is not reduced to less than 1,000 m. Given the already small size of the clearance and shutdown zone for sea turtles (500 m), no reductions in these zone sizes will be considered. We do not anticipate considering any reductions in the clearance or shutdown zones for North Atlantic right whales. As explained in the requirements outlined in Table 3.13, reductions in clearance and shutdown zones will only be considered following sound field verification of a minimum of three piles.
7. To implement the requirements of RPM 1, BOEM and USACE must ensure that South Fork monitors the full extent of the area where noise will exceed the 175 dB rms threshold for turtles for the full duration of all pile driving activities and for 30 minutes following the cessation of pile driving activities and record all observations in order to ensure that all take that occurs is documented.
8. To implement the requirements of RPM 2, BOEM must ensure that:
    a. For all vessels operating north of the Virginia/North Carolina border, between June 1 and November 30[44], South Fork has a trained lookout posted on all vessel transits during all phases of the project to observe for sea turtles. The trained lookout will communicate any sightings, in real time, to the captain so that the requirements in (e) below can be implemented.
    b. For all vessels operating south of the Virginia/North Carolina border, year-round, South Fork must have a trained lookout posted on all vessel transits during all phases of the project to observe for sea turtles. The trained lookout must communicate any sightings, in real time, to the captain so that the requirements in (e) below can be implemented. This requirement is in place year-round for any vessels transiting south of Virginia, as sea turtles are present year round in those waters.

---

[44] Note that the proposed action includes these requirements, but they are limited to the June 1 – Oct 30 period only.

c. The trained lookout must monitor https://seaturtlesightings.org/ prior to each trip and report any observations of sea turtles in the vicinity of the planned transit to all vessel operators/captains and lookouts on duty that day.

d. The trained lookout must maintain a vigilant watch and monitor a Vessel Strike Avoidance Zone (500 m) at all times to maintain minimum separation distances from ESA-listed species. Alternative monitoring technology (e.g., night vision, thermal cameras, etc.) must be available to ensure effective watch at night and in any other low visibility conditions. If the trained lookout is a vessel crew member, this must be their designated role and primary responsibility while the vessel is transiting. Any designated crew lookouts must receive training on protected species identification, vessel strike minimization procedures, how and when to communicate with the vessel captain, and reporting requirements.

e. If a sea turtle is sighted within 100 m or less of the operating vessel's forward path, the vessel operator must slow down to 4 knots (unless unsafe to do so) and then proceed away from the turtle at a speed of 4 knots or less until there is a separation distance of at least 100 m at which time the vessel may resume normal operations. If a sea turtle is sighted within 50 m of the forward path of the operating vessel, the vessel operator must shift to neutral when safe to do so and then proceed away from the turtle at a speed of 4 knots. The vessel may resume normal operations once it has passed the turtle.

f. Vessel captains/operators must avoid transiting through areas of visible jellyfish aggregations or floating sargassum lines or mats. In the event that operational safety prevents avoidance of such areas, vessels must slow to 4 knots while transiting through such areas.

g. All vessel crew members must be briefed in the identification of sea turtles and in regulations and best practices for avoiding vessel collisions. Reference materials must be available aboard all project vessels for identification of sea turtles. The expectation and process for reporting of sea turtles (including live, entangled, and dead individuals) must be clearly communicated and posted in highly visible locations aboard all project vessels, so that there is an expectation for reporting to the designated vessel contact (such as the lookout or the vessel captain), as well as a communication channel and process for crew members to do so.

h. The only exception to the requirements in Term and Condition 8 is when the safety of the vessel or crew necessitates deviation from these requirements on an emergency basis. If any such incidents occur, they must be reported to NMFS within 24 hours.

i. If a vessel is carrying a PSO or trained lookout for the purposes of maintaining watch for North Atlantic right whales, an additional lookout is not required and this PSO or trained lookout must maintain watch for whales and sea turtles.

9. To implement the requirements of RPM 3, all sampling gear will be hauled at least once every 30 days, and all gear will be removed from the water and stored on land between survey seasons to minimize risk of entanglement.

10. To implement the requirements of RPM 3, to facilitate identification of gear on any entangled animals, all trap/pot and gillnet gear used in the surveys must be uniquely marked to distinguish it from other commercial or recreational gear. Using yellow and black striped duct tape, place a 3 foot long mark within 2 fathoms of a buoy. In addition, using black and white paint or duct tape, place 3 additional marks on the top, middle and bottom of the line. These gear marking colors were chosen as they are not gear markings used in other fisheries and are therefore distinct. Any changes in marking will not be made without notification and approval from NMFS.

11. To implement the requirements of RPM 3, all gillnet soaks must be limited to no more than 24 hours to reduce mortality of entangled sea turtles and sturgeon (compared to the 48 hour soak times in the survey plans). If weather or other safety concerns prevent retrieval of the gear within 24 hours of it being set, NMFS must be notified (nmfs.gar.incidental-take@noaa.gov) and the gear must be retrieved as soon as it is safe to do so.

12. To implement the requirements of RPM 3, if any survey gear is lost, all reasonable efforts that do not compromise human safety must be undertaken to recover the gear. All lost gear must be reported to NMFS (nmfs.gar.incidental-take@noaa.gov) within 24 hours of the documented time of missing or lost gear. This report must include information on any markings on the gear and any efforts undertaken or planned to recover the gear.

13. ***(revised)*** To implement the requirements of RPM 3, at least one of the survey staff onboard the trawl surveys and ventless trap surveys must have completed NEFOP-observer training (within the last 5 years) or other training in protected species identification and safe handling (inclusive of taking genetic samples from Atlantic sturgeon). Reference materials for identification, disentanglement, safe handling, and genetic sampling procedures must be available on board each survey vessel. BOEM will ensure that South Fork prepares a training plan that addresses how this requirement will be met and that the plan is submitted to NMFS in advance of any trawl or trap surveys. This requirement is in place for any trips where gear is set or hauled.

14. To implement the requirements of RPM 3, vessels deploying fixed gear (e.g., gillnets, pots/traps) must have adequate disentanglement equipment (i.e., knife and boathook) onboard. Any disentanglement must occur consistent with the *Northeast Atlantic Coast STDN Disentanglement Guidelines* at https://www.reginfo.gov/public/do/DownloadDocument?objectID=102486501 and the procedures described in "Careful Release Protocols for Sea Turtle Release with Minimal Injury" (NOAA Technical Memorandum 580; https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/3773).

15. To implement the requirements of RPM 3, any sea turtles or Atlantic sturgeon caught and/or retrieved in any fisheries survey gear must first be identified to species or species group. Each ESA-listed species caught and/or retrieved must then be properly documented using appropriate equipment and data collection forms. Biological data, samples, and tagging must occur as outlined below. Live, uninjured animals should be returned to the water as quickly as possible after completing the required handling and documentation.

a. *The Sturgeon and Sea Turtle Take Standard Operating Procedures* must be followed (https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/dam-migration/sturgeon_&_sea_turtle_take_sops_external.pdf).

b. Survey vessels must have a passive integrated transponder (PIT) tag reader onboard capable of reading 134.2 kHz and 125 kHz encrypted tags (e.g., Biomark GPR Plus Handheld PIT Tag Reader) and this reader be used to scan any captured sea turtles and sturgeon for tags. Any recorded tags must be recorded on the take reporting form (see below).

c. Genetic samples must be taken from all captured Atlantic sturgeon (alive or dead) to allow for identification of the DPS of origin of captured individuals and tracking of the amount of incidental take. This must be done in accordance with the *Procedures for Obtaining Sturgeon Fin Clips* (https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/dam-migration/sturgeon_genetics_sampling_revised_june_2019.pdf).

    i. Fin clips must be sent to a NMFS approved laboratory capable of performing genetic analysis and assignment to DPS of origin. To the extent authorized by law, BOEM is responsible for the cost of the genetic analysis. Arrangements must be made for shipping and analysis in advance of submission of any samples; these arrangements must be confirmed in writing to NMFS within 60 days of the receipt of this ITS. Results of genetic analysis, including assigned DPS of origin must be submitted to NMFS within 6 months of the sample collection.

    ii. Subsamples of all fin clips and accompanying metadata form must be held and submitted to the Atlantic Coast Sturgeon Tissue Research Repository on a quarterly basis. The *Sturgeon Genetic Sample Submission Form* is available for download at: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/new-england-mid-atlantic/consultations/section-7-take-reporting-programmatics-greater-atlantic).

d. All captured sea turtles and Atlantic sturgeon must be documented with required measurements and photographs. The animal's condition and any marks or injuries must be described. This information must be entered as part of the record for each incidental take. A *NMFS Take Report Form* must be filled out for each individual sturgeon and sea turtle (download at: https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/2021-07/Take%20Report%20Form%2007162021.pdf?null) and submitted to NMFS as described below.

16. To implement the requirements of RPM 3, any sea turtles or Atlantic sturgeon caught and retrieved in gear used in fisheries surveys must be handled and resuscitated (if unresponsive) according to established protocols and whenever at-sea conditions are safe for those handling and resuscitating the animal(s) to do so. Specifically:

a. Priority must be given to the handling and resuscitation of any sea turtles or sturgeon that are captured in the gear being used, if conditions at sea are safe to do so. Handling times for these species should be minimized (i.e., kept to 15 minutes or less) to limit the amount of stress placed on the animals.

b. All survey vessels must have copies of the sea turtle handling and resuscitation requirements found at 50 CFR 223.206(d)(1) prior to the commencement of any on-water activity (download at: https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/dam-migration/sea_turtle_handling_and_resuscitation_measures.pdf). These handling and resuscitation procedures must be carried out any time a sea turtle is incidentally captured and brought onboard the vessel during the proposed actions.

c. If any sea turtles that appear injured, sick, or distressed, are caught and retrieved in fisheries survey gear, survey staff must immediately contact the Greater Atlantic Region Marine Animal Hotline at 866-755-6622 for further instructions and guidance on handling the animal, and potential coordination of transfer to a rehabilitation facility. If unable to contact the hotline (e.g., due to distance from shore or lack of ability to communicate via phone), the USCG should be contacted via VHF marine radio on Channel 16. If required, hard-shelled sea turtles (i.e., non-leatherbacks) may be held on board for up to 24 hours following handling instructions provided by the Hotline, prior to transfer to a rehabilitation facility.

d. Attempts must be made to resuscitate any Atlantic sturgeon that are unresponsive or comatose by providing a running source of water over the gills as described in the *Sturgeon Resuscitation Guidelines* (https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/dam-migration-miss/Resuscitation-Cards-120513.pdf).

e. Provided that appropriate cold storage facilities are available on the survey vessel, following the report of a dead sea turtle or sturgeon to NMFS, and if NMFS requests, any dead sea turtle or Atlantic sturgeon must be retained on board the survey vessel for transfer to an appropriately permitted partner or facility on shore as safe to do so.

f. Any live sea turtles or Atlantic sturgeon caught and retrieved in gear used in any fisheries survey must ultimately be released according to established protocols and whenever at-sea conditions are safe for those releasing the animal(s) to do so.

17. To implement the requirements of RPM 4, GARFO PRD must be notified as soon as possible of all observed takes of sea turtles, and Atlantic sturgeon occurring as a result of any fisheries survey considered in this Opinion. Specifically:

a. GARFO PRD must be notified within 24 hours of any interaction with a sea turtle or sturgeon (nmfs.gar.incidental-take@noaa.gov). The report must include at a minimum: (1) survey name and applicable information (e.g., vessel name, station number); (2) GPS coordinates describing the location of the interaction (in decimal degrees); (3) gear type involved (e.g., bottom trawl, gillnet, longline); (4) soak time, gear configuration and any other pertinent gear information; (5) time and date of the interaction; and (6) identification of the animal to the species level. Additionally, the e-mail must transmit a copy of the *NMFS Take Report*

Form (download at: https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/2021-07/Take%20Report%20Form%2007162021.pdf?null) and a link to or acknowledgement that a clear photograph or video of the animal was taken (multiple photographs are suggested, including at least one photograph of the head scutes). If reporting within 24 hours is not possible due to distance from shore or lack of ability to communicate via phone, fax, or email, reports must be submitted as soon as possible; late reports must be submitted with an explanation for the delay.

   b. At the end of each survey season, a report must be sent to NMFS that compiles all information on any observations and interactions with ESA-listed species. This report must also contain information on all survey activities that took place during the season including location of gear set, duration of soak/trawl, and total effort. The report on survey activities must be comprehensive of all activities, regardless of whether ESA-listed species were observed.

18. To implement the requirements of RPM 4, BOEM must ensure that South Fork Wind implements the following reporting requirements necessary to document the amount or extent of take that occurs during all phases of the proposed action:
    a. All reports identified in Table 3.13 and in these RPMs must be sent to: nmfs.gar.incidental-take@noaa.gov.
    b. During the construction phase and for the first year of operations, South Fork must compile and submit monthly reports that include a summary of all project activities carried out in the previous month, including vessel transits (number, type of vessel, and route), and piles installed, and all observations of ESA-listed species. Monthly reports are due on the 15th of the month for the previous month.
    c. Beginning in year 2 of operations, South Fork must compile and submit annual reports that include a summary of all project activities carried out in the previous year, including vessel transits (number, type of vessel, and route), repair and maintenance activities, survey activities, and all observations of ESA-listed species. These reports are due by April 1 of each year (i.e., the 2026 report is due by April 1, 2027). Upon mutual agreement of NMFS and BOEM, the frequency of reports can be changed.

19. To implement the requirements of RPM 4 and to facilitate monitoring of the incidental take exemption for sea turtles, through the first year of operations, BOEM and NMFS must meet twice annually to review sea turtle observation records. These meetings/conference calls will be held in September (to review observations through August of that year) and December (to review observations from September to November) and will use the best available information on sea turtle presence, distribution, and abundance, project vessel activity, and observations to estimate the total number of sea turtle vessel strikes in the action area that are attributable to project operations. These meetings will continue on an annual basis following year 1 of operations. Upon mutual agreement of NMFS and BOEM, the frequency of these meetings can be changed.

As explained above, reasonable and prudent measures are nondiscretionary measures to minimize the amount or extent of incidental take (50 C.F.R. §402.02). The reasonable and prudent measures and terms and conditions are specified as required by 50 CFR 402.14 (i)(1)(ii), (iii) and (iv) to document the incidental take by the proposed action, minimize the impact of that take on ESA-listed species and, in the case of marine mammals, specify those measures that are necessary to comply with section 101(a)(5) of the Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972 and applicable regulations with regard to such taking. We document our consideration of these requirements for reasonable and prudent measures and terms and conditions here. We have determined that all of these RPMs and associated terms and conditions are reasonable, and necessary or appropriate, to minimize or document take and that they all comply with the minor change rule. That is, none of these RPMs or their implementing terms and conditions alter the basic design, location, scope, duration, or timing of the action, and all involve only minor changes.

RPM 1/Term and Condition 1

The proposed IHA includes a number of general conditions and specific mitigation measures that are considered part of the proposed action. The final IHA issued under the MMPA may have modified or additional measures that clarify or enhance the measures identified in the proposed IHA. Compliance with those measures is necessary and appropriate to minimize and document incidental take of North Atlantic right, sperm, sei, and fin whales. As such, the terms and conditions that require BOEM, USACE, and NMFS to ensure compliance with the conditions and mitigation measures of the final IHA are necessary and appropriate to minimize the extent of take of these species due to exposure to pile driving noise and to ensure that take is documented.

RPM 1/Term and Condition 2

The proposed action includes the use of Passive Acoustic Monitoring (PAM), which can detect vocalizing whales and provide notification that whales are present in the area of detection. The PAM system provides an important supplement to the PSO's visual observations of visible whales. We are requiring that South Fork prepare a *Passive Acoustic Monitoring Plan* that describes all equipment, procedures, and protocols related to the required use of PAM for monitoring. This will ensure that the PAM protocols are appropriate to achieve the stated goals of PAM.

RPM 1/Term and Conditions 3, 4, and 5

The proposed action includes the use of noise attenuation during impact pile driving and the use of Protected Species Observers (PSOs) to visually monitor sea turtles and ESA listed whales during pile driving. Visual observations will be complemented and enhanced by PAM monitoring of vocalizing whales. We are requiring that South Fork prepare a *Pile Driving Monitoring Plan* that describes all equipment, procedures, and protocols related to the required use of noise attenuation and for monitoring ESA listed whales and sea turtles. The requirements of Term and Condition 4 and 5 ensure that there are enough PSOs and/or PSO platforms to ensure adequate coverage of the areas required for monitoring. This will ensure that monitoring during pile driving is adequate to effectively implement the clearance and shutdown requirements incorporated in the proposed action and to document take that occurs.

RPM 1/Term and Condition 6

The proposed action includes a requirement for sound field verification (i.e., documenting actual underwater noise during pile driving). The proposed action allows South Fork to request modification of the clearance and shutdown zones based on results of monitoring at least three foundations if the monitoring indicates that the isopleths of concern are smaller than those identified in this Opinion and in the IHA. This Term and Condition identifies requirements for minimum sizes of any modified clearance zones which provides advance notice to South Fork related to any potential modifications resulting from sound field verification.

RPM 1/Term and Condition 7
Monitoring the amount or extent of actual take compared to the amount or extent of take exempted is an important component of this ITS. As such, it is necessary to identify sea turtles exposed to noise above the 175 dB re 1uPa rms. Thus, we are requiring BOEM and South Fork to document exposure of sea turtles to noise above this threshold. We are not dictating a specific methodology for monitoring those larger areas around the piles, rather we are providing the standards for what that monitoring must achieve which will provide BOEM and South Fork flexibility to design a monitoring protocol that is feasible and appropriate to meet those standards.

RPM 2/Term and Condition 8
We anticipate that sea turtles will be struck and killed by project vessels. The proposed action incorporates a number of measures designed to minimize the risk of vessel strike; however, the requirements are limited to June 1 – October 30 annually. Sea turtles may occur in the action area north of the Virginia/North Carolina border through November and may occur in the action area south of the Virginia/North Carolina border year round. While detection of sea turtles from a moving vessel may not always be possible, the use of a trained lookout on all vessel transits during the June to November period when sea turtles occur in the project area is expected to increase detectability and provide an alert to the vessel operator that could facilitate avoidance of the individual and reduce the potential for strike. Requiring vessel operators to slow down when a sea turtle is sighted reduces the likelihood that the vessel will strike that turtle by increasing the likelihood that the vessel operator or the turtle can avoid the collision. Sea turtles are seasonally present in the action area; certain habitat features, including concentrations of jellyfish and the presence of floating sargassum lines or mats, can serve as indicators of an increased potential of sea turtle presence. By requiring that vessel operators avoid such areas, or if they are unavoidable slow down while transiting through them, we expect to reduce the likelihood of vessel strike. By expanding these requirements to the full time period that sea turtles occur in the different parts of the action area, we expect to reduce the amount or extent of take compared to what would occur if the requirements were limited to June 1 – October 30 throughout the action area.

RPM 3/Term and Conditions 9-12
Incidental take of sea turtles and Atlantic sturgeon is expected to result from capture or entanglement in the trawl and gillnet surveys. The measures identified here are designed to minimize the time that survey gear is in the water, we expect this will reduce the amount or extent of take. Requirements for uniquely marking gear that will be used in the fisheries survey facilitates identification of that gear should it becomes lost or breaks free; this may assist in documenting any take that occurs.

RPM 3/Term and Conditions 13-16

Proper identification and handling of any sturgeon and sea turtles that are captured in the survey gear is essential for documenting take and to minimize the extent of that take (i.e., reducing the potential for further stress, injury, or mortality). The measures identified here are consistent with established best practices for proper handling and documentation of these species. Identifying existing tags helps to monitor take by identifying individual animals. Requiring genetic samples (fin clips) from all Atlantic sturgeon and that those samples be analyzed to determine the DPS of origin is essential for monitoring actual take as genetic analysis is the only way to identify the DPS of origin for subadult and adult Atlantic sturgeon captured in the ocean. Taking fin clips is not expected to increase stress or result in any injury of Atlantic sturgeon.

RPM 4/Term and Conditions 17-18

Documenting take that occurs is essential to ensure that reinitiation of consultation occurs if the amount or extent of take identified in the ITS is exceeded. Some measures for documenting and reporting take are included in the proposed action. The requirements of Term and Conditions 17-18 enhance or clarify those requirements. Incidental take of right, fin, sei, and sperm whales is expected to result from exposure to pile driving noise. Incidental take of sea turtles is expected to result from exposure to pile driving noise, from being struck by project vessels, and from capture or entanglement in the trawl and gillnet surveys. Incidental take of Atlantic sturgeon is expected to result from capture or entanglement in the trawl and gillnet surveys. Documentation and timely reporting of observations of whales and sea turtles is important to monitoring the amount or extent of actual take compared to the amount or extent of take exempted. The reporting requirements included here will allow us to track the progress of the action and associated take.

RPM 4/Term and Condition 19

We recognize that documenting sea turtles that were struck by project vessels may be difficult given their small size and the factors that contribute to cryptic mortality addressed in the *Effects of the Action* section of this Opinion. Therefore, we are requiring that BOEM and South Fork document any and all observations of dead or injured sea turtles over the course of the project and that we meet twice annually to review that data and determine which, if any, of those sea turtles have a cause of death that is attributable to project operations. We expect that we will consider the factors reported with the particular turtle (i.e., did the lookout suspect the vessel struck the turtle), the state of decomposition, any observable injuries, and the extent to which project vessel traffic contributed to overall traffic in the area at the time of detection.

12.0 CONSERVATION RECOMMENDATIONS

Section 7(a)(1) of the ESA directs Federal agencies to use their authorities to further the purposes of the ESA by carrying out conservation programs for the benefit of the threatened and endangered species. Conservation recommendations are discretionary agency activities to minimize or avoid adverse effects of a proposed action on ESA-listed species or critical habitat, to help implement recovery plans or develop information (50 C.F.R. §402.02).

We make the following conservation recommendations, which would provide information for future consultations related to offshore wind that may affect ESA-listed species or would minimize or avoid adverse effects of the proposed action. BOEM, USACE, USCG, U.S. EPA, and/or BSEE should use their authorities to:

- Support research and development to aid in minimization of risk of vessel strikes on marine mammals and sea turtles.
- Support development of regional monitoring of cumulative impacts of this and future projects through the Regional Wildlife Science Entity (RWSE).
- Work with the NEFSC to support robust monitoring and study design with adequate sample sizes, appropriate spatial and temporal coverage, and proper design allowing the detection of potential impacts of offshore wind projects on a wide range of environmental conditions including protected species distribution, prey distribution, and habitat usage.
- Support research into understanding and modeling effects of offshore wind on regional oceanic and atmospheric conditions and potential impacts on protected species, their habitats, and distribution of zooplankton and other prey.
- Support the continuation of aerial surveys for post-construction monitoring of listed species in the lease area and surrounding waters; contribute all sightings of North Atlantic right whales to the NMFS Sighting Advisory System.
- Support research on construction and operational impacts to protected species distribution, particularly the North Atlantic right whale and other listed whales. Conduct monitoring pre/during/post construction, including long-term monitoring during the operational phase, including sound sources associated with turbine maintenance (e.g., service vessels), to understand any changes in protected species distribution and habitat use in RI/MA and MA WEAs/southern New England.
- Develop an acoustic telemetry array in the WDA and support research for the tracking of sturgeon and deployment of acoustic tags on sea turtles as well as other acoustically tagged species.
- Conduct research regarding the abundance and distribution of Atlantic sturgeon in the wind lease area and surrounding region in order to understand the distribution and habitat use and aid in density modeling efforts, including the use of acoustic telemetry networks to monitor for tagged fish.
- Submit all acoustic telemetry data to the Mid-Atlantic Acoustic Telemetry Observation System (MATOS) database for coordinated tracking of marine species over broader spatial scales in US Animal Tracking Network and Ocean Tracking Network.
- Conduct long-term ecological monitoring to document the changes to the ecological communities on, around, and between wind turbine generator foundations and other benthic areas disturbed by the proposed Project.
- Conduct research to monitor noise levels during construction and operation. Record ambient noise in the WDA for three years prior to construction and three years post-construction to understand how wind turbine generators, including sound sources associated with turbine maintenance (e.g., service vessels) and turbine operations, may influence the acoustic soundscape. See NOAA/BOEM PAM Recommendations for specific details. Resulting data products should be provided according to the NOAA/BOEM PAM recommendations.
- Develop a PAM array in the WDA to monitor use of the area by baleen whales during the life of the Project, including construction, and to detect small scale changes at the scale of the WDA. Bottom mounted recorders should be deployed at a maximum of 20 km distance from each other throughout the given study area in order to ensure near to

complete coverage of the area over which North Atlantic right whales and other baleen whales can be heard (see Figure 12.1 for example in lease area OCS-A-0517 and Figure 12.2 for regional example). See NOAA/BOEM PAM Recommendations for specific details. Resulting data products should be provided according to the NOAA/BOEM PAM recommendations.

- Support the development of a regional PAM network across lease areas to monitor long-term changes in baleen whale distribution and habitat use. A regional PAM network should consider adequate array/hydrophone design, equipment, and data evaluation to understand changes over the spatial scales that are relevant to these species for the duration of these projects, as well as the storage and dissemination of these data.
- Monitor changes in commercial fishing activity to detect changes in bycatch or entanglement rates of protected species, particularly the North Atlantic right whale, and support the adaptation of ropeless fishing practices where necessary.
- Support investigations into the feasibility of carrying out fish pot and lobster trap surveys associated with wind farm development with ropeless technology.

Figure 12.1. Example of 20 km array of bottom mounted recorders in lease area OCS-A-0517.

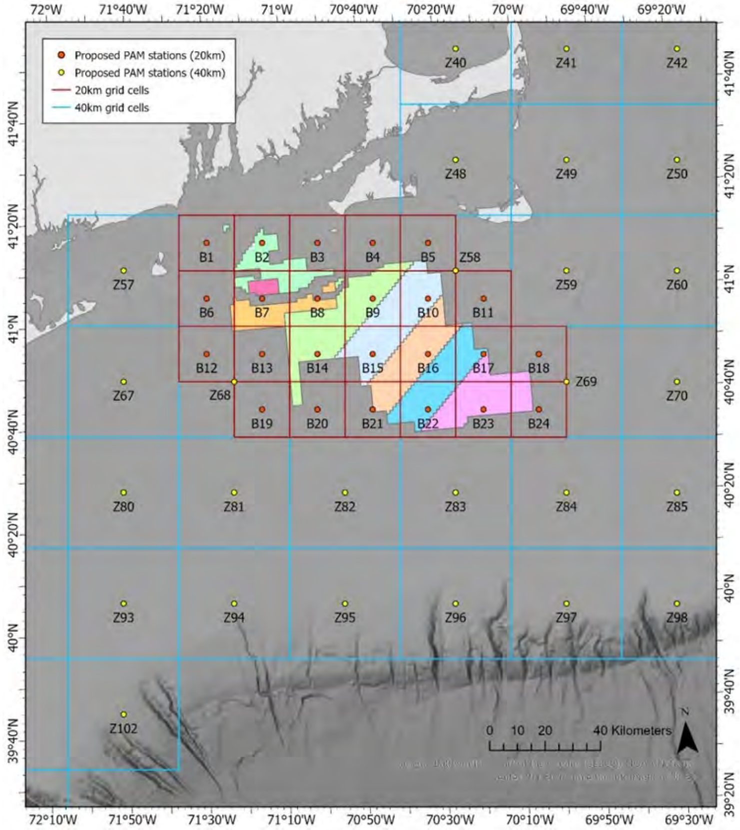
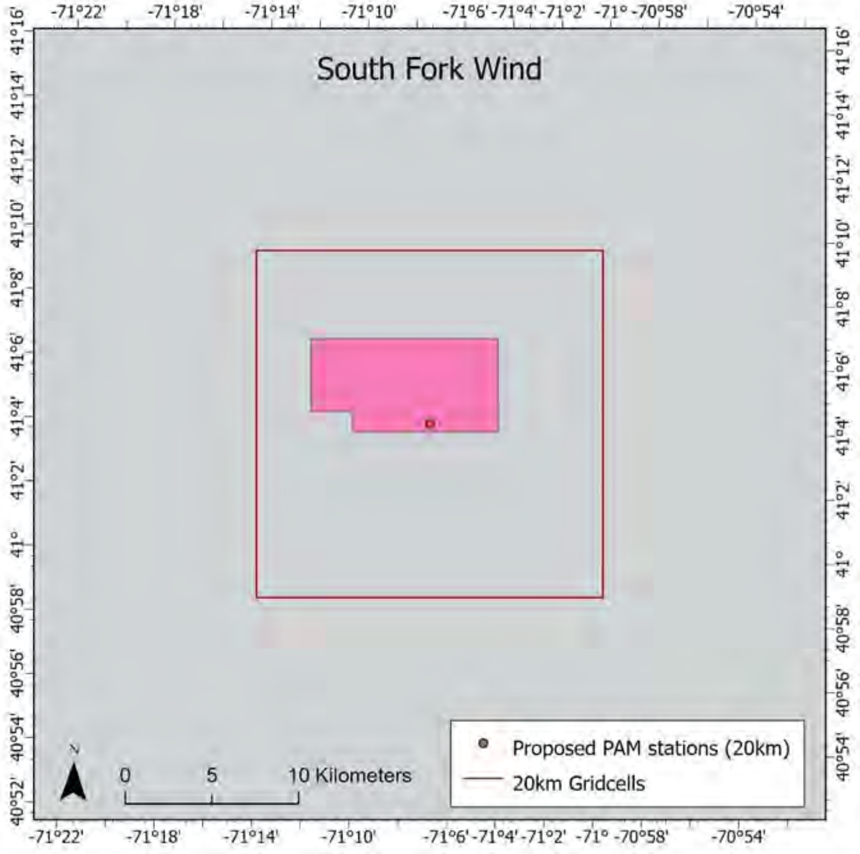


Figure 12.2. Example of 20 km and 40km array of bottom mounted recorders in the RI/MA and MA WEAs.



13.0 REINITIATION NOTICE

This concludes formal consultation for the proposed authorizations associated listed herein for the South Fork offshore energy project. As 50 C.F.R. §402.16 states, reinitiation of formal consultation is required where discretionary Federal agency involvement or control over the action has been retained (or is authorized by law) and if:

1. The amount or extent of taking specified in the ITS is exceeded.
2. New information reveals effects of the agency action that may affect ESA-listed species or critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not previously considered.
3. The identified action is subsequently modified in a manner that causes an effect to ESA- listed species or designated critical habitat that was not considered in this opinion.
4. A new species is listed or critical habitat designated under the ESA that may be affected by the action.

14.0 LITERATURE CITED

Note: citations are organized by section of the Biological Opinion in the heading below; citations that appear in more than one section may appear more than once in this list

1.0 Introduction, 2.0 Consultation History, and 3.0 Description of the Proposed Action

Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM). 2021a. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Draft Environmental Impact Statement. OCS EIS/EA BOEM 2020-057. *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/SFWF-DEIS_0.pdf*

Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM). 2021b. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Final Environmental Impact Statement. OCS EIS/EA BOEM 2020-057. *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/state-activities/SFWF%20FEIS.pdf*

BOEM. 2021. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Biological Assessment, January 2021, for the National Marine Fisheries Service. *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/state-activities/SFWF-BA-NMFS.pdf*

BOEM. 2021. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Biological Assessment Supplement, July 2021. Prepared by SWCA Environmental Consultants. *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/state-activities/SFWF-BA-NMFS.pdf*

CSA Ocean Sciences, Inc for South Fork Wind LLC. 2021. Request for an Incidental Harassment Authorization to Allow Harassment of Marine Mammals Incidental to Activities Associated with South Fork Wind Farm and Export Cable Construction. BOEM Lease OCS-A 0517. *https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/2021-02/SouthForkWind_2021proposedIHA_App_OPR1.pdf?null=*

Denes., S.L., D.G. Zeddies, and M.M. Weirathmueller. 2020. Turbine Foundation and Cable Installation at South Fork Wind Farm: Underwater Acoustic Modeling of Construction Noise. Document 01584, Version 4.0. Technical report by JASCO Applied Sciences for Jacobs Engineering Group Inc. 5 February 2020

Denes, S.L., M.M. Weirathmueller, and D.G. Zeddies. 2020c. Foundation Installation at South Fork Wind Farm: Animal Exposure Modelling. Document 01726, Version 2.0. Technical report by JASCO Applied Sciences for Jacobs Engineering Group Inc. 5 February 2020

Jacobs Engineering Group, Inc. 2021. Construction and Operations Plan, South Fork Wind Farm. Last Updated May 2021 (originally submitted June 2018). *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/South-Fork-Construction-Operations-Plan.pdf*

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2018. 2018 Revisions to: Technical Guidance for Assessing the Effects of Anthropogenic Sound on Marine Mammal Hearing (Version 2.0): Underwater Thresholds for Onset of Permanent and Temporary Threshold Shifts. U.S. Dept. of Commerce., NOAA. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-59, 167 p. *https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/resources/documents*

NMFS. 2020. Interim Recommendation for Sound Source Level and Propagation Analysis for High Resolution Geophysical (HRG) Sources. Office of Protected Resources, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS. 2021. Draft Incidental Harassment Authorization for South Fork Wind. *https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/2021-02/SouthForkWind_2021proposedIHA_draftIHA_OPR1.pdf?null=*

NOAA (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration). 2018. *Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan: Northeast Trap/Pot Fisheries Requirements and Management Areas*. Available at: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/new-england-mid-atlantic/marine-mammal-protection/atlantic-large-whale-take-reduction-plan.

South Fork Wind and Inspire Environmental. South Fork Wind Fisheries Research and Monitoring Plan. September 2020. 123 pp. *http://www.crmc.ri.gov/windenergy/dwsouthfork/SFW01_Fisheries_Monitoring_Plan_2020-09-30.pdf*

86 Federal Register 8490. Notice of Proposed IHA. Takes of Marine Mammals Incidental to Specified Activities; Taking Marine Mammals Incidental to Construction of the South Fork Offshore Wind Project. *https://www.federalregister.gov/documents/2021/02/05/2021-02263/takes-of-marine-mammals-incidental-to-specified-activities-taking-marine-mammals-incidental-to*

4.0 Species and Critical Habitat Not Considered Further in This Opinion

Afsharian, Soudeh & Taylor, Peter & Momayez, Ladan. 2020. Investigating the potential impact of wind farms on Lake Erie. Journal of Wind Engineering and Industrial Aerodynamics. 198. 104049. 10.1016/j.jweia.2019.104049.

Baines, Mick & Reichelt, Maren. 2014. Upwellings, canyons and whales: An important winter habitat for balaenopterid whales off Mauritania, northwest Africa. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management. 14. 57-67.

Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM). 2021. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Draft Environmental Impact Statement. OCS EIS/EA BOEM 2020-057. https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/SFWF-DEIS_0.pdf

Broström, Göran. 2008. On the influence of large wind farms on the upper ocean circulation. Journal of Marine Systems. 74. 10.1016/j.jmarsys.2008.05.001.

CETAP, 1982. A characterization of marine mammals and turtles in the mid- and North Atlantic areas of the U.S. outer continental shelf, final report, Cetacean and Turtle Assessment Program, University of Rhode Island. Bureau of Land Management, Washington, DC. #AA551-CT8-48: 576.

Charif RA, Clark CW. 2009. Acoustic monitoring of large whales in deep waters north and west of the British Isles: 1996–2005. Cornell Laboratory of Ornithology Bioacoustics Research Program Tech Rep 08-07. Cornell University Lab of Ornithology Bioacoustics Research Program, Ithaca, NY

Christiansen, M.; Hasager, C. 2005. Wake Effects of Large Offshore Wind Farms Identified from Satellite SAR. Remote Sensing of Environment, 98(2-3), 251–268. DOI: 10.1016/j.rse.2005.07.009

Coles RJ. 1916. Natural history notes on the devil-fish, Manta birostris (Walbaum) and Mobula olfersi (Muller)

Comtois, S., Savenkoff, C., Bourassa, M.-N., Brêthes, J.-C., and Sears, R. 2010. Regional distribution and abundance of blue and humpback whales in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 2877: viii + 38 p.

Couturier LI, Marshall AD, Jaine FR, Kashiwagi T, Pierce SJ, Townsend KA, Weeks SJ, Bennett MB, Richardson AJ (2012) Biology, ecology and conservation of the Mobulidae. Journal of fish biology 80: 1075-1119 doi 10.1111/j.1095- 8649.2012.03264.x

Deakos MH, Baker JD, Bejder L (2011) Characteristics of a manta ray Manta alfredi population off Maui, Hawaii, and implications for management. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 429: 245-260 doi 10.3354/meps09085

Dionne, P.E., Zydlewski, G.B., Kinnison, M.T., Zydlewski, J. and Wippelhauser, G.S., 2013. Reconsidering residency: characterization and conservation implications of complex migratory patterns of shortnose sturgeon (Acispenser brevirostrum). *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, *70*(1), pp.119-127.

DiJohnson, AM. 2019. Atlantic Sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus) Behavioral Responses to Vessel Traffic. Thesis Submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of Master of Science in the Natural Resource Graduate Program of Delaware State University and Habitat Use in the Delaware River, USA. https://desu.dspacedirect.org/bitstream/handle/20.500.12090/442/DiJohnson_desu_1824M_10122.pdf

Farmer, N. et al. (2021). The Distribution of Giant Manta Rays In The Western North Atlantic Ocean Off The Eastern United States. 10.21203/rs.3.rs-677529/v1.

Fay, Clemon W et al. 2006. "Status review for anadromous atlantic salmon (Salmo salar) in the United States." Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service and U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 294 p. https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/resource/document/status-review-anadromous-atlantic-salmon-salmo-salar-united-states

Hayes, S.A., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, P.E. Rosel (eds). (2020). US Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments - 2019 U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, MA. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-264, July 2020. 479 pp.

Jacobs Engineering Group, Inc. 2021. Construction and Operations Plan, South Fork Wind Farm. Last Updated May 2021 (originally submitted June 2018). https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/South-Fork-Construction-Operations-Plan.pdf

Jensen, A.S. and G.K. Silber. 2003. Large Whale Ship Strike Database. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum. NMFS-OPR- , 37 pp.

Laist, D.W., A.R. Knowlton, J.G. Mead, A.S. Collet, and M. Podesta. 2001. "Collisions between ships and whales." Marine Mammal Science. 17(1):35-75

Lesage, V., Omrane, A., Doniol-Valcroze, T., Mosnier, A. 2017. Increased proximity of vessels reduces feeding opportunities of blue whales in the St. Lawrence Estuary, Canada. Endang. Species Res. 32: 351-361.

Miller, L.M. and Keith, D.W., 2018. Climatic impacts of wind power. *Joule*, *2*(12), pp.2618-2632.

Miller, M.H. and C. Klimovich. 2017. Endangered Species Act Status Review Report: Giant Manta Ray (Manta birostris) and Reef Manta Ray (Manta alfredi). Report to National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD. September 2017. 128 Pp

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2009. Recovery Plan for Smalltooth Sawfish (Pristis pectinata). Prepared by the Smalltooth Sawfish Recovery Team for the National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, Maryland. https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/15983

NMFS 2013. Nassau Grouper, Epinephelus striatus (Bloch 1792) Biological Report. https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/16285

NMFS 2018. Nassau Grouper Recovery Outline. https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/dam-migration/nassau-grouper-recovery-outline.pdf

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2018. Oceanic Whitetip Shark – Recovery Outline. *https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/resource/document/oceanic-whitetip-shark-recovery-outline*

NMFS. 2018. Smalltooth Sawfish (Pristis pectinata) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation of the U.S. Distinct Population Segment of Smalltooth Sawfish. https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/19253

NMFS and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1993. Recovery Plan for Hawksbill Turtles in the U.S. Caribbean Sea, Atlantic Ocean, and Gulf of Mexico. National Marine Fisheries Service, St. Petersburg, Florida.

NMFS and USFWS 2021. Loggerhead Sea Turtle (Caretta caretta) North Indian Ocean DPS, Southwest Indian Ocean DPS, Southeast Indo-Pacific Ocean DPS, South Pacific Ocean DPS, South Atlantic Ocean DPS, Northeast Atlantic Ocean DPS, and Mediterranean Sea DPS 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/2021-02/508-foreign-loggerhead-5yr-signed.pdf?VersionId=null

Nieukirk, S. L., Stafford, K. M., Mellinger, D. K., Dziak, R. P., and Fox, C. G. 2004. “Low-frequency whale and seismic airgun sounds recorded in the mid-Atlantic Ocean,” J. Acoust. Soc. Am.0001-4966 https://doi.org/10.1121/1.1675816 115, 1832–1843.

Rosel, P. E., P. Corkeron, L. Engleby, D. Epperson, K. D. Mullin, M. S. Soldevilla, B. L. Taylor. 2016. Status Review of Bryde’s Whales (Balaenoptera edeni) in the Gulf of Mexico under the Endangered Species Act. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-692

Sears, R. and J. Calambokidis. 2002. COSEWIC Assessment and update status report on the blue whale Balaenoptera musculus, Atlantic population and Pacific poulation, in Canada. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada, Ottawa 38 pp.

Sears, R. and F. Larsen. 2002. Long range movements of a blue whale (Balaenoptera musculus) between the Gulf of St. Lawrence and West Greenland. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 18(1): 281-285.

Shortnose Sturgeon Status Review Team. 2010. A Biological Assessment of shortnose sturgeon (Acipenser brevirostrum). Report to National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Regional Office. November 1, 2010. 417 pp.

United States Army Corps of Engineers (USACE). 2014. Waterborne Commerce of the United States (WCUS) Waterways and Harbors on the Atlantic Coast (Part 1). Available at: *http://www.navigationdatacenter.us/wcsc/webpub14/webpubpart-1.htm*

USFWS and NMFS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service & the National Marine Fisheries Service). 2009. Gulf sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus desotoi) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Southeast Regional Office, Saint Petersburg, Florida. Available at: https://repository.library.noaa.gov/ view/noaa/17043.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and NMFS. 2018. Recovery plan for the Gulf of Maine Distinct Population Segment of Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar). 74 pp.

Vanderlaan, A.S.M. and C.T. Taggart. 2007. Vessel Collisions with Whales: The Probability of Lethal Injury Based on Vessel Speed. Marine Mammal Science 23(1): 144-156.

Vanhellemont Q., Ruddick K. 2014. 2014. Turbid wakes associated with offshore wind turbines observed with Landsat 8 Remote Sens. Environ., 145, pp. 105-115

Visser et al. 2011. Timing of migratory baleen whales at the Azores in relation to the North Atlantic spring bloom. Marine Ecology Progress Series. 2011;440:267–279. doi: 10.3354/meps09349.

Wang, C. and Prinn, R.G., 2010. Potential climatic impacts and reliability of very large-scale wind farms. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics, 10(4), pp.2053-2061.

Wang, C. and Prinn, R.G., 2011. Potential climatic impacts and reliability of large-scale offshore wind farms. Environmental Research Letters, 6(2), p.025101.

Waring, G. et al. 2010. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments - 2010 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration National Marine Fisheries Service Northeast Fisheries Science Center Woods Hole, Massachusetts December 2010NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-219. https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/3831

Welsh, Stuart & Mangold, Michael & Skjeveland, Jorgen & Spells, Albert. (2002). Distribution and movement of shortnose sturgeon (Acipenser brevirostrum) in the Chesapeake Bay. Estuaries. 25. 101-104. 10.1007/BF02696053.

Wenzel, F., D. K. Mattila and P. J. Clapham 1988. Balaenoptera musculus in the Gulf of Maine. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 4(2): 172-175.

Young, C.N., Carlson, J., Hutchinson, M., Hutt, C., Kobayashi, D., McCandless, C.T., Wraith, J. 2018. Status review report: oceanic whitetip shark (Carcharhinius longimanus). Final Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources. December 2017. 170pp

Zydlewski, G.B., Kinnison, M.T., Dionne, P.E., Zydlewski, J. and Wippelhauser, G.S. (2011), Shortnose sturgeon use small coastal rivers: the importance of habitat connectivity. Journal of Applied Ichthyology, 27: 41-44. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1439-0426.2011.01826.x

65 Federal Register 15674. Endangered and Threatened Species; Final Endangered Status for a Distinct Population Segment of Smalltooth Sawfish (Pristis pectinate)

76 Federal Register 58867 September 22, 2011. Endangered and Threatened Species; Determination of Nine Distinct Population Segments of Loggerhead Sea Turtles as Endangered or Threatened

79 Federal Register 39855. July 10, 2014. Endangered and Threatened Species: Critical Habitat for the Northwest Atlantic Ocean Loggerhead Sea Turtle Distinct Population Segment (DPS) and Determination Regarding Critical Habitat for the North Pacific Ocean Loggerhead DPS

79 Federal Register 53851. September 10, 2014. Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants: Final Listing Determinations on Proposal To List 66 Reef-Building Coral Species and To Reclassify Elkhorn and Staghorn Corals

81 Federal Register 4837. Endangered and Threatened Species; Critical Habitat for Endangered North Atlantic Right Whale. January 27, 2016. https://www.federalregister.gov/documents/2016/01/27/2016-01633/endangered-and-threatened-species-critical-habitat-for-endangered-north-atlantic-right-whale

81 Federal Register 42268. June 29, 2016. Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants: Final Listing Determination on the Proposal To List the Nassau Grouper as Threatened Under the Endangered Species Act

82 Federal Register. 39160. August 17, 2017. Endangered and Threatened Species; Designation of Critical Habitat for the Endangered New York Bight, Chesapeake Bay, Carolina and South Atlantic Distinct Population Segments of Atlantic Sturgeon and the Threatened Gulf of Maine Distinct Population Segment of Atlantic Sturgeon

86 Federal Register 47022. August 23, 2021. Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants; Technical Corrections for the Bryde's Whale (Gulf of Mexico Subspecies).

5.0 Status of the Species

Fin Whales

Allison C. 2017. International Whaling Commission Catch Data Base v. 6.1. As cited in Cooke, J.G. 2018. Balaenoptera physalus. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2018:e.T2478A50349982. http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T2478A50349982.en.

Archer, F.I, et al. 2013. Mitogenomic phylogenetics of fin whales (Balaenoptera physalus spp.): Genetic evidence for revision of subspecies. PLoS ONE 8(5): e63396. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0063396.

Carretta, J. V., and coauthors. 2018. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2017, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-602.

Carretta, J. V., and coauthors. 2019. Sources of human-related injury and mortality for U.S. Pacific west coast marine mammal stock assessments, 2013-2017, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-616.

Carretta, J. V., and coauthors. 2019. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2018, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-617.

Charif, R. A., D. K. Mellinger, K. J. Dunsmore, K. M. Fristrup, and C. W. Clark. 2002.

Estimated source levels of fin whale (Balaenoptera physalus) vocalizations: Adjustments for surface interference. Marine Mammal Science 18(1):81-98.

Clark, C. W., and R. A. Charif. 1998. Acoustic monitoring of large whales to the west of Britain and Ireland using bottom mounted hydrophone arrays, October 1996-September 1997. JNCC Report No. 281.

Clark, C. W., J. F. Borsani, and G. Notarbartolo-Di-Sciara. 2002. Vocal activity of fin whales, Balaenoptera physalus, in the Ligurian Sea. Marine Mammal Science 18(1):286-295.

Cooke, J.G. 2018. Balaenoptera physalus. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2018:e.T2478A50349982. http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T2478A50349982.en.

Cranford, T. W., and P. Krysl. 2015. Fin whale sound reception mechanisms: Skull vibration enables low-frequency hearing. PLoS One 10(1):e116222.

Croll, D. A., and coauthors. 2002. Only male fin whales sing loud songs. Nature 417:809.

Donovan, G. P. 1991. “A review of IWC stock boundaries,” Rep. Int. Whal. Comm. 13, 39–68.

Edds, P. L. 1988. Characteristics of finback Balaenoptera physalus vocalizations in the St. Lawrence estuary. Bioacoustics 1:131-149.

Edds-Walton, P. L. 1997. Acoustic communication signals of mysticete whales. Bioacoustics-the International Journal of Animal Sound and Its Recording 8:47-60.

Erbe, C. 2002. Underwater noise of whale-watching boats and potential effects on killer whales (Orcinus orca), based on an acoustic impact model. Marine Mammal Science 18(2):394-418.

Garcia, H.A. et al. 2018. Temporal–spatial, spectral, and source level distributions of fin whale vocalizations in the Norwegian Sea observed with a coherent hydrophone array. ICES J. Mar. Sci., 76, 268–283.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2018. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2017 Second Edition. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-245.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2019. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2018. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-258.

International Whaling Commission (IWC). 1979. Report of the sub committee on protected species. Annex G., Appendix I. Reports of the International Whaling Commission 29: 84 86

IWC. 2017. Strategic Plan to Mitigate the Impacts of Ship Strikes on Cetacean Populations: 2017-2020. IWC.

Ketten, D. R. 1997. Structure and function in whale ears. Bioacoustics 8:103-135.

Muto, M. M., et al. 2019. Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2018. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-393, 390 p.

Nadeem, K., J. E. Moore, Y. Zhang, and H. Chipman. 2016. Integrating population dynamics models and distance sampling data: A spatial hierarchical state-space approach. Ecology 97(7):1735-1745.

NMFS. 2010. Recovery plan for the fin whale (Balaenoptera physalus). U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS. 2019. Fin Whale (Balaenoptera physalus) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD, February 2019. 40 pp. https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/resource/document/fin-whale-5-year-review

NOAA. 2018. 2018 Revision to: Technical Guidance for Assessing the Effects of Anthropogenic Sound on Marine Mammal Hearing (Version 2.0).

Ohsumi, S., and S. Wada. 1974. Status of whale stocks in the North Pacific, 1972. Report of the International Whaling Commission 24:114-126.

Palka, D. 2012. Cetacean abundance estimates in US northwestern Atlantic Ocean waters from summer 2011 line transect survey. Northeast Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Reference Document 12-29, Woods Hole, Massachusetts.

Palka, D.L., et al. 2017. Atlantic Marine Assessment Program for Protected Species: 2010-2014. US Dept. of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Atlantic OCS Region, Washington, DC. OCS Study BOEM 2017-071.

Patterson, B., and G. R. Hamilton. 1964. Repetitive 20 cycle per second biological hydroacoustic signals at Bermuda. Marine Bio-acoustics, W N Tavolga ed. Pergamon Press Oxford. p.125-145. Proceedings of a Symposium held at the Lerner Marine Laboratory Bimini Bahamas April.

Payne, R., and D. Webb. 1971. Orientation by means of long range acoustic signaling in baleen whales. Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences 188(1):110-141.

Richardson, W. J. 1995. Marine mammal hearing. Pages 205-240 in C. R. W. J. G. J. Richardson, C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thomson, editors. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Sergeant, D. 1977. Stocks of fin whales (Balaenoptera physalus) in the North Atlantic Ocean. Report of the International Whaling Commission 35:357-362.

Sirovic, A., J. A. Hildebrand, and S. M. Wiggins. 2007. Blue and fin whale call source levels and propagation range in the Southern Ocean. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 122(2):1208-1215.

Thomas, P. O., R. R. Reeves, and R. L. Brownell, Jr. 2016. Status of the world's baleen whales. Marine Mammal Science 32:682–734.

Thompson, P. O., L. T. Findley, and O. Vidal. 1992. 20-Hz pulses and other vocalizations of fin whales, Balaenoptera physalus, in the Gulf of California, Mexico. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 92(6):3051-3057.

Tyack, P. L. 1999. Communication and cognition. Pages 287-323 in J. E. Reynolds III, and S. A. Rommel, editors. Biology of Marine Mammals. Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington.

U.S. Navy. 2010. Annual Range Complex Exercise Report 2 August 2009 to 1 August 2010 U.S. Navy Southern California (SOCAL) Range Complex and Hawaii Range Complex (HRC)

U.S. Navy. 2012. Marine Species Monitoring for the U.S. Navy's Southern California Range Complex- Annual Report 2012. U.S. Pacific Fleet, Environmental Readiness Division, U.S. Department of the Navy, Pearl Harbor, HI.

Wada, S., and K. Numachi. 1991. Allozyme analyses of genetic differentiation among the populations and species of the Balaenoptora. Report of the International Whaling Commission Special Issue 13:125-154.-Genetic Ecology of Whales and Dolphins).

Watkins, W. A. 1981b. Activities and underwater sounds of fin whales (Balaenoptera physalus). Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute Tokyo 33:83-118.

Watkins, W. A., P. Tyack, K. E. Moore, and J. E. Bird. 1987. The 20-Hz signals of finback whales (Balaenoptera physalus). Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 82(6):1901-1912.

Weirathmueller, M. J., W. S. D. Wilcock, and D. C. Soule. 2013. Source levels of fin whale 20 Hz pulses measured in the Northeast Pacific Ocean. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 133(2):741-749.

North Atlantic Right Whale

Best, P. B., J. Bannister, R. L. Brownell, and G. Donovan. 2001. Right whales: Worldwide status. The Journal of Cetacean Research and Management (Special Issue) 2.

Bort, J., S. M. V. Parijs, P. T. Stevick, E. Summers, and S. Todd. 2015. North Atlantic right whale Eubalaena glacialis vocalization patterns in the central Gulf of Maine from October 2009 through October 2010. Endangered Species Research 26(3):271-280.

Charif, R.A., Shiu, Y., Muirhead, C.A., Clark, C.W., Parks, S.E. and Rice, A.N., 2020. Phenological changes in North Atlantic right whale habitat use in Massachusetts Bay. *Global change biology*, *26*(2), pp.734-745.

Christiansen, F., et al. 2020. Population comparison of right whale body condition reveals poor state of the North Atlantic right whale. Marine Ecology Progress Series **640**: 1-16.

Cole, T. V. N., and coauthors. 2013. Evidence of a North Atlantic right whale Eubalaena glacialis mating ground. Endangered Species Research 21(1):55-64.

Corkeron, P. et al. 2018. The recovery of North Atlantic right whales, Eubalaena glacialis, has been constrained by human-caused mortality. R. Soc. open sci.5180892 http://doi.org/10.1098/rsos.180892

Daoust, P.-Y., E. L. Couture, T. Wimmer, and L. Bourque. 2017. Incident Report: North Atlantic Right Whale Mortality Event in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, 2017. Collaborative Report Produced by: Canadian Wildlife Health Cooperative, Marine Animal Response Society, and Fisheries and Oceans Canada., http://www.cwhcrcsf.ca/docs/technical_reports/Incident%20Report%20Right%20Whales%20EN.pdf.

Davies, K. T. A. and S. W. Brillant. 2019. Mass human-caused mortality spurs federal action to protect endangered North Atlantic right whales in Canada. Marine Policy **104**: 157-162.

Davis, G. E., and coauthors. 2017. Long-term passive acoustic recordings track the changing distribution of North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis) from 2004 to 2014. Scientific Reports 7(1):13460.

Devine, L., Scarratt, M., Plourde, S., Galbraith, P. S., Michaud, S. and Lehoux, C. 2017. Chemical and biological oceanographic conditions in the estuary and Gulf of St. Lawrence during 2015. DFO Can. Sci. Advis. Sec. Res. Doc, 2017/034. v + 48 pp.

DFO. 2013. Gulf of St. Lawrence Integrated Management Plan. Department of Fisheries and Ocean Canada, Quebec, Gulf and Newfoundland and Labrador Regions No. DFO/2013-1898. Available from: http://dfo-mpo.gc.ca/oceans/management-gestion/gulf-golfe-eng.html.

DFO. 2014. Recovery strategy for the North Atlantic right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in Atlantic Canadian Waters [Final]. Department of Fisheries and Ocean Canada, Ottawa. Species at Risk Act Recovery Strategy Series. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa. pp. Available from: https://www.canada.ca/en/environment-climate-change/services/species-risk-public-registry.html.

DFO. 2020. Action Plan for the North Atlantic right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in Canada [Proposed]. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa. Species at Risk Act Action Plan Series. Available from: https://www.canada.ca/en/environment-climate-change/services/species-risk-public-registry.html.

Fortune, S. M. E., A. W. Trites, C. A. Mayo, D. A. S. Rosen, and P. K. Hamilton. 2013. Energetic requirements of North Atlantic right whales and the implications for species recovery. Marine Ecology Progress Series 478:253-272.

Fortune, S. M. E., and coauthors. 2012. Growth and rapid early development of North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis). Journal of Mammalogy 93(5):1342-1354.

Frasier, T. R., and coauthors. 2013. Postcopulatory selection for dissimilar gametes maintains heterozygosity in the endangered North Atlantic right whale. Ecology and Evolution 3(10):3483-94.

Fujiwara, M., and H. Caswell. 2001. Demography of the endangered North Atlantic right whale. Nature 414(6863):537-541.

Hamilton, P. K., A. R. Knowlton, M. K. Marx, and S. D. Kraus. 1998. Age structure and longevity in North Atlantic right whales Eubalaena glacialis and their relation to reproduction. Marine Ecology Progress Series 171:285-292.

Hamilton, PK et al. 2007. Right whales tell their own stories: The photo-identification catalog. Pages 75–104 in S. D. Kraus and R. M. Rolland, eds. The urban whale: North Atlantic right whales at the crossroads. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA

Hatch, L. T., C. W. Clark, S. M. V. Parijs, A. S. Frankel, and D. W. Ponirakis. 2012. Quantifying loss of acoustic communication space for right whales in and around a US. National Marine Sanctuary. Conservation Biology 26(6):983-994.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2018. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2017 Second Edition. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-245.

Hayes, S. A., et al. 2019. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments - 2018. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science 426 Center, Woods Hole, Massachusetts, June. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE -258. Available from: https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/20611.

Hayes, S. A., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. E. Rosel. 2020. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments - 2019. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, Massachusetts. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-264.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2021. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2020. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-271. *https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/2021-07/Atlantic%202020%20SARs%20Final.pdf?null%09*

Hodge, K. B., C. A. Muirhead, J. L. Morano, C. W. Clark, and A. N. Rice. 2015. North Atlantic right whale occurrence near wind energy areas along the mid-Atlantic U.S. coast: Implications for management. Endangered Species Research 28(3):225-234.

Hunt, K. E., C. J. Innis, C. Merigo, and R. M. Rolland. 2016. Endocrine responses to diverse stressors of capture, entanglement and stranding in leatherback turtles (*Dermochelys coriacea*). Conservation Physiology **4**(1): 1-12.

Jacobsen, K., M. Marx, and N. Ølien. 2004. Two-way trans-Atlantic migration of a North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis). Marine Mammal Science 20(1):161–166.

Johnson, C., E. Devred, B. Casault, E. Head, and J. Spry. 2017. Optical, chemical, and biological oceanographic conditions on the Scotian Shelf and in the Eastern Gulf of Maine in 2015. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottowa, Canada. DFO Can. Sci. Advis. Sec. Res. Doc. 2017/012.

Kenney, R. D. 2009. Right whales: Eubalaena glacialis, E. japonica, and E. australis. Pages 962-972 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, and J. G. M. Thewissen, editors. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals, Second edition. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Kenney, R. D., H. E. Winn, and M. C. Macaulay. 1995. Cetaceans in the Great South Channel, 1979-1989: Right whale (Eubalaena glacialis). Continental Shelf Research 15(4/5):385-414.

Kenney RD. 2018. What if there were no fishing? North Atlantic right whale population trajectories without entanglement mortality. Endang Species Res 37:233-237. https://doi.org/10.3354/esr00926

Knowlton, A.R., J. Sigurjonsson, J.N. Ciano, and S.D. Kraus. 1992. Long distance movements of North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis). Mar. Mamm. Sci. 8(4): 397 405.

Knowlton, A. R., S. D. Kraus, and R. D. Kenney. 1994. Reproduction in North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis). Canadian Journal of Zoology 72(7):1297-1305.

Kraus S.D., R. M. Pace III and T.R. Frasier. 2007. High Investment, Low Return: The Strange Case of Reproduction in Eubalaena Glacialis. Pp 172-199. In: S.D. Kraus and R.M. Rolland (eds.) The Urban Whale. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, London, England. vii-xv + 543pp

Kraus, S.D., et al., 2020. Reproductive parameters of the North Atlantic right whale. *J. Cetacean Res. Manage.*, pp.231-236.

Kraus, S. and J. J. Hatch. 2001. Mating strategies in the North Atlantic right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis)*. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management **2**: 237-244.

Krzystan AM, Gowan TA, Kendall WL, Martin J and others. 2018. Characterizing residence patterns of North Atlantic right whales in the southeastern USA with a multistate open robust design model. Endang Species Res 36:279-295. https://doi.org/10.3354/esr00902

Lockyer, C. 1984. Review of baleen whale (Mysticeti) reproduction and implications for management. Report of the International Whaling Commission Special Issue 6:27-50.

Lysiak, N.S., et al. 2018. Characterizing the Duration and Severity of Fishing Gear Entanglement on a North Atlantic Right Whale (Eubalaena glacialis) Using Stable Isotopes, Steroid and Thyroid Hormones in Baleen. Frontiers in Marine Science. Vol 5. P. 168. https://www.frontiersin.org/article/10.3389/fmars.2018.00168

Malik, S., and coauthors. 1999. Assessment of mitochondrial DNA structuring and nursery use in the North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis). Canadian Journal of Zoology 77(8):1217-1222

Matthews, J. N., and coauthors. 2001. Vocalisation rates of the North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis). Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 3(3):271–282.

Matthews, L. P., J. A. McCordic, and S. E. Parks. 2014. Remote acoustic monitoring of North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis) reveals seasonal and diel variations in acoustic behavior. PLoS One 9(3):e91367.

Mayo, C. A., Ganley, L., Hudak, C. A., Brault, S., Marx, M. K., Burke, E., et al. 2018. Distribution, demography, and behavior of North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis) in Cape Cod Bay, Massachusetts, 1998-2013. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 34, 979–996. doi: 10.1111/mms.12511

McDonald, M. A., and S. E. Moore. 2002. Calls recorded from North Pacific right whales (Eubalaena japonica) in the eastern Bering Sea. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 4(3):261-266.

McLeod, BA and BN White. 2010. “Tracking mtDNA Heteroplasmy through Multiple Generations in the North Atlantic Right Whale (Eubalaena glacialis)” Journal of Heredity, Volume 101, Issue 2, March-April 2010, Pages 235–239, https://doi.org/10.1093/jhered/esp098

McCordic, J. A., H. Root-Gutteridge, D. A. Cusano, S. L. Denes, and S. E. Parks. 2016. Calls of North Atlantic right whales Eubalaena glacialis contain information on individual identity and age class. Endangered Species Research 30:157-169.

McLeod, B. A., M. W. Brown, T. R. Frasier, and B. N. White. 2010. DNA profile of a sixteenth century western North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis). Conservation Genetics 11(1):339-345.

McLeod, B. A., and B. N. White. 2010. Tracking mtDNA heteroplasmy through multiple generations in the North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis). Journal of Heredity 101(2):235-239.

Mellinger, DK. et al. 2007. Seasonal occurrence of North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis) vocalizations at two sites on the Scotian Shelf. Marine Mammal Science 23:856–867

Mellinger, D. et al. 2011. Confirmation of right whales near a nineteenth-century whaling ground east of southern Greenland. Biology letters. 7. 411-3. 10.1098/rsbl.2010.1191.

Meyer-Gutbrod, E., and C. Greene. 2014. Climate-Associated Regime Shifts Drive Decadal-Scale Variability in Recovery of North Atlantic Right Whale Population. Oceanography 27(3).

Meyer-Gutbrod, E. L., and C. H. Greene. 2018. Uncertain recovery of the North Atlantic right whale in a changing ocean. Global Change Biology 24(1):455–464.

Meyer-Gutbrod, E.L., Greene, C.H., Davies, K.T. and Johns, D.G., 2021. Ocean regime shift is driving collapse of the North Atlantic right whale population. *Oceanography*, *34*(3), pp.22-31.

Monsarrat S, et al. 2016. A spatially explicit estimate of the prewhaling abundance of the endangered North Atlantic right whale. Conserv Biol. 2016 Aug;30(4):783-91. doi: 10.1111/cobi.12664. Epub 2016 Mar 15. PMID: 26632250.

Moore, M.J., Rowles, T.K., Fauquier, D.A., Baker, J.D., Biedron, I., Durban, J.W., Hamilton, P.K., Henry, A.G., Knowlton, A.R., McLellan, W.A. and Miller, C.A., 2021. REVIEW Assessing North Atlantic right whale health: threats, and development of tools critical for conservation of the species. *Diseases of Aquatic Organisms*, *143*, pp.205-226.

Morano, J. L., and coauthors. 2012. Acoustically detected year-round presence of right whales in an urbanized migration corridor. Conservation Biology 26(4):698-707.

Mussoline, S. E., and coauthors. 2012. Seasonal and diel variation in North Atlantic right whale up-calls: Implications for management and conservation in the northwestern Atlantic Ocean. Endangered Species Research 17(1-Jan):17-26.

NMFS. 2017b. North Atlantic Right Whale (Eubalaena glacialis) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Gloucester, Massachusetts.

NOAA. 2018. 2018 Revision to: Technical Guidance for Assessing the Effects of Anthropogenic

Sound on Marine Mammal Hearing (Version 2.0).

Pace, R. M. 2021. Revisions and further evaluations of the right whale abundance model: improvements for hypothesis testing. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, Massachusetts. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE 269.

Pace III, R. M., Williams, R., Kraus, S. D., Knowlton, A. R., & Pettis, H. M. (2021). Cryptic mortality of North Atlantic right whales. Conservation Science and Practice, 3(2), e346.

Pace III, R. M., Corkeron, P. J., & Kraus, S. D. (2017). State–space mark–recapture estimates reveal a recent decline in abundance of North Atlantic right whales. Ecology and Evolution, 7(21), 8730-8741.

Parks, S. E., and C. W. Clark. 2007. Acoustic communication: Social sounds and the potential impacts of noise. Pages 310-332 in S. D. Kraus, and R. M. Rolland, editors. The Urban Whale: North Atlantic Right Whales at the Crossroads. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts.

Parks, S. E., and P. L. Tyack. 2005. Sound production by North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis) in surface active groups. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 117(5):3297-3306.

Parks, S. E., and S. M. Van Parijs. 2015. Acoustic Behavior of North Atlantic Right Whale (Eubalaena glacialis) Mother-Calf Pairs. Office of Naval Research, https://www.onr.navy.mil/reports/FY15/mbparks.pdf.

Parks, S. E., C. W. Clark, and P. L. Tyack. 2007a. Short- and long-term changes in right whale calling behavior: The potential effects of noise on acoustic communication. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 122(6):3725-3731.

Parks, S. E., D. R. Ketten, J. T. O'malley, and J. Arruda. 2007b. Anatomical predictions of hearing in the North Atlantic right whale. The Anatomical Record 290(6):734-44.

Parks, S. E., I. Urazghildiiev, and C. W. Clark. 2009. Variability in ambient noise levels and call parameters of North Atlantic right whales in three habitat areas. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 125(2):1230-1239.

Parks, S. E., and coauthors. 2011b. Sound production behavior of individual North Atlantic right whales: Implications for passive acoustic monitoring. Endangered Species Research 15(1):63-76.

Parks, S. E., M. Johnson, D. Nowacek, and P. L. Tyack. 2011a. Individual right whales call louder in increased environmental noise. Biology Letters 7(1):33-35.

Parks, S. E., M. P. Johnson, D. P. Nowacek, and P. L. Tyack. 2012b. Changes in vocal behavior of North Atlantic right whales in increased noise. Pages 4 in A. N. Popper, and A.

Hawkins, editors. The Effects of Noise on Aquatic Life. Springer Science.

Pettis, H. M., and P. K. Hamilton. 2015. North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2015 Annual Report Card. North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium, http://www.narwc.org/pdf/2015%20Report%20Card.pdf.

Pettis, H. M., and P. K. Hamilton. 2016. North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2016 Annual Report Card. North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium, http://www.narwc.org/pdf/2016%20Report%20Card%20final.pdf.

Pettis, H. M., R. M. I. Pace, R. S. Schick, and P. K. Hamilton. 2017a. North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2017 Annual Report Card. North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium, http://www.narwc.org/pdf/2017%20Report%20CardFinal.pdf.

Pettis, H. M., and coauthors. 2017b. Body condition changes arising from natural factors and fishing gear entanglements in North Atlantic right whales Eubalaena glacialis. Endangered Species Research 32:237-249.

Pettis, H.M. et al. 2018. North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2018 Annual Report Card. Report to the North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium, https://www.narwc.org/uploads/1/1/6/6/116623219/2018report_cardfinal.pdf

Pettis, H. M., R. M. Pace, III, and P. K. Hamilton. 2020. North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2019 annual report card. Report to the North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium. Available from: www.narwc.org.

Pettis, H. M., R. M. Pace, III, and P. K. Hamilton. 2021. North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2020 annual report card. Report to the North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium. Available from: www.narwc.org.

Quintana-Rizzo, et al. 2021. Residency, demographics, and movement patterns of North Atlantic right whales Eubalaena glacialis in an offshore wind energy development area in southern New England, USA. Endangered Species Research. Vol 45: 251-268. DOI: https://doi.org/10.3354/esr01137

Radvan, S. 2019. “Effects of inbreeding on fitness in the North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis).” A Thesis Submitted to Saint Mary’s University, Halifax, Nova Scotia in Partial Fulfillment of the Requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science, Major and Honours Certificate in Biology. April 2019, Halifax, Nova Scotia. http://library2.smu.ca/bitstream/handle/01/28821/Radvan_Sonya_Honours_2019.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

Rastogi, T. et al. 2004. Genetic analysis of 16th-century whale bones prompts a revision of the impact of Basque whaling on right and bowhead whales in the western North Atlantic. Canadian Journal of Zoology. 82. 10.1139/z04-146.

Reeves R. Rolland R. Clapham P. (eds.). 2001. Causes of reproductive failure in North Atlantic right whales: new avenues for research. Report of a workshop held 26–28 April 2000, Falmouth, Massachusetts. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, Massachusetts, Reference Document 01–16:1–46.

Reeves R. R. Smith T. D. Josephson E. A.. 2007. Near-annihilation of a species: right whaling in the North Atlantic. Pp. 39–74 in The urban whale: North Atlantic right whales at the crossroads (Kraus S. D. Rolland R. R., eds.). Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts.

Robbins, J., A. R. Knowlton, and S. Landry. 2015. Apparent survival of North Atlantic right whales after entanglement in fishing gear. Biological Conservation 191:421-427.

Rodrigues, A. et al. 2018. Forgotten Mediterranean calving grounds of grey and North Atlantic right whales: evidence from Roman archaeological records. Proc. R. Soc. B.28520180961 http://doi.org/10.1098/rspb.2018.0961

Rolland, R. M., and coauthors. 2017. Fecal glucocorticoids and anthropogenic injury and mortality in North Atlantic right whales Eubalaena glacialis. Endangered Species Research 34:417-429.

Rolland, R. M., and coauthors. 2012. Evidence that ship noise increases stress in right whales. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London Series B Biological Sciences 279(1737):2363-2368.

Rolland, R. M., and coauthors. 2016. Health of North Atlantic right whales Eubalaena glacialis over three decades: From individual health to demographic and population health trends. Marine Ecology Progress Series 542:265-282.

Root-Gutteridge, H., Cusano, D. A., Shiu, Y., Nowacek, D. P., Van Parijs, S. M., and Parks, S. E. 2018. “ A lifetime of changing calls: North Atlantic right whales, Eubalaena glacialis, refine call production as they age,” Anim. Behav. 137, 1–34. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.anbehav.2017.12.016

Salisbury, D. P., C. W. Clark, and A. N. Rice. 2016. Right whale occurrence in the coastal waters of Virginia, U.S.A.: Endangered species presence in a rapidly developing energy market. Marine Mammal Science 32(2):508-519.

Schaeff, C. M., and coauthors. 1997. Comparison of genetic variability of North and South Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena), using DNA fingerprinting. Canadian Journal of Zoology 75(7):1073-1080.

Soldevilla, M. S., A. N. Rice, C. W. Clark, and L. P. Garrison. 2014. Passive acoustic monitoring on the North Atlantic right whale calving grounds. Endangered Species Research 25(2):115-140.

Stone, K.M., et al. 2017. “Distribution and Abundance of Cetaceans in a Wind Energy Development Area Offshore of Massachusetts and Rhode Island.” Journal of Coastal Conservation 21: 527–543.

Surrey-Marsden, C., and coauthors. 2017. North Atlantic Right Whale Calving Area Surveys: 2015/2016 Results. Southeast Regional Office, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, St. Petersburg, Florida.

Tennessen, J., and S. Parks. 2016a. Acoustic propagation modeling indicates vocal compensation in noise improves communication range for North Atlantic right whales. Endangered Species Research, 30, 225–237.

Tennessen, J. B., and S. E. Parks. 2016b. Acoustic propagation modeling indicates vocal compensation in noise improves communication range for North Atlantic right whales. Endangered Species Research 30:225-237.

Trygonis, V., E. Gerstein, J. Moir, and S. McCulloch. 2013. Vocalization characteristics of North Atlantic right whale surface active groups in the calving habitat, southeastern United States. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 134(6):4518.

Tyson, R. B., D. P. Nowacek, and P. J. O. Miller. 2007. Nonlinear phenomena in the vocalizations of North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis) and killer whales (Orcinus orca). Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 122(3):1365-1373.

van der Hoop, J., P. Corkeron, and M. Moore. 2017. Entanglement is a costly life-history stage in large whales. Ecol Evol 7(1):92-106.

Vanderlaan, A. S. M., A. E. Hay, and C. T. Taggart. 2003. Characterization of North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis) sounds in the Bay of Fundy. IEEE Journal of Oceanic Engineering 28(2):164-173.

Waldick, R. C., Kraus, S. S., Brown, M., & White, B. N. 2002. Evaluating the effects of historic bottleneck events: An assessment of microsatellite variability in the endangered, North Atlantic right whale. Molecular Ecology, 11(11), 2241– 2250. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1365-294X.2002.01605.x

Whitt, A. D., K. Dudzinski, and J. R. Laliberte. 2013. North Atlantic right whale distribution and seasonal occurrence in nearshore waters off New Jersey, USA, and implications for management. Endangered Species Research 20(1):59-69.

81 Federal Register 54389. August 15, 2016. Fish and Fish Product Import Provisions of the Marine Mammal Protection Act. Document Number: 2016-19158. https://www.federalregister.gov/documents/2016/08/15/2016-19158/fish-and-fish-product-import-provisions-of-the-marine-mammal-protection-act

Sei Whales

Allison C. 2017. International Whaling Commission Catch Data Base v. 6.1. As cited in Cooke, J.G. 2018. Balaenoptera physalus. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2018:e.T2478A50349982. http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T2478A50349982.en.

Baker, C. S., M. L. Dalebout, N. Funahashi, M. Yu, D. Steel, and S. Lavery. 2004. Market surveys of whales, dolphins and porpoises in Japan and Korea, 2003-2004, with reference to stock identity of sei whales. Unpublished paper to the IWC Scientific Committee. 8 pp. Sorrento, Italy, July (SC/56/BC3)

Braham, H. W. 1991. Endangered Whales: A Status Update. National Marine Mammal Laboratory, Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, Seattle, Washington. 56.

Carretta, J. V., and coauthors. 2018. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2017, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-602.

Carretta, J. V., and coauthors. 2019. Sources of human-related injury and mortality for U.S. Pacific west coast marine mammal stock assessments, 2013-2017, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-616.

Carretta, J. V., and coauthors. 2019. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2018, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-617.

Cattanach, K. L., J. Sigurjonsson, S. T. Buckland, and T. Gunnlaugsson. 1993. Sei whale abundance in the North Atlantic, estimated from NASS-87 and NASS-89 data. (Balaenoptera borealis). Report of the International Whaling Commission SC/44/Nab10 43:315-321.

Cooke, J.G. 2018. Balaenoptera borealis. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2018: e.T2475A130482064. http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T2475A130482064.en.

Danielsdottir, A. K., E. J. Duke, P. Joyce, and A. Arnason. 1991. Preliminary studies on genetic variation at enzyme loci in fin whales (Balaenoptera physalus) and sei whales (Balaenoptera borealis) form the North Atlantic. Report of the International Whaling Commission Special Issue 13:115-124.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2018. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2017 Second Edition. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-245.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2019. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2018. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-258.

Huijser, L.A.E., Bérubé, M., Cabrera, A.A. et al. 2018. Population structure of North Atlantic and North Pacific sei whales (Balaenoptera borealis) inferred from mitochondrial control region DNA sequences and microsatellite genotypes. Conservation Genetics. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10592-018-1076-5

Kanda, N., M. Goto, and L. A. Pastene. 2006. Genetic characteristics of western North Pacific sei whales, Balaenoptera borealis, as revealed by microsatellites. Marine Biotechnology 8(1):86-93.

Kanda, N., M. Goto, H. Matsuoka, H. Yoshida, and L. A. Pastene. 2011. Stock identity of sei whales in the central North Pacific based on microsatellite analysis of biopsy samples obtained from IWC/Japan joint cetacean sighting survey in 2010. International Whaling Commission, Tromso, Norway. IWC Scientific Committee, SC/63/IA12.

Kanda, N., H. Matsuoka, H. Yoshida, and L. A. Pastene. 2013. Microsatellite DNA analysis of sei whales obtained from the 2010-2012 IWC-POWER. International Whaling Commission, .Jeju, Koreaf. IWC Scientific Committee, SC/65a/IA05

Kanda, N., K. Matsuoka, M. Goto, and L. A. Pastene. 2015. Genetic study on JARPNII and IWC-POWER samples of sei whales collected widely from the North Pacific at the same time of the year. International Whaling Commission, San Diego, California. IWC Scientific Committee, SC/66a/IA/8.

Ketten, D. R. 1997. Structure and function in whale ears. Bioacoustics 8:103-135.

McDonald, M. A., et al. 2005. Sei whale sounds recorded in the Antarctic. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 118(6):3941-3945.

Mizroch, S. A., D. W. Rice, and J. M. Breiwick. 1984. The sei whale, Balaenoptera borealis. Marine Fisheries Review 46(4):25-29.

Muto, M. M., et al. 2019. Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2018. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-393, 390 p.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2011. Final Recovery Plan for the Sei Whale (Balaenoptera borealis). National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD. 108 pp.

NMFS. 2012. Sei Whale (Balaenoptera borealis) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD. 21 pp.

NOAA. 2018. 2018 Revision to: Technical Guidance for Assessing the Effects of Anthropogenic Sound on Marine Mammal Hearing (Version 2.0).

NMFS. 2021. Sei Whale (Balaenoptera borealis) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD, August 2021. 57 pp. https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/32073

Richardson, W. J. 1995. Marine mammal hearing. Pages 205-240 in C. R. W. J. G. J. Richardson, C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thomson, editors. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Thomson, D. H., and W. J. Richardson. 1995. Marine mammal sounds. Pages 159-204 in W. J. Richardson, C. R. J. Greene, C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thomson, editors. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego.

Tillman, M. F. 1977. Estimates of population size for the North Pacific sei whale. (Balaenoptera borealis). Report of the International Whaling Commission Special Issue 1(Sc/27/Doc 25):98-106.

Weirathmueller, M. J., W. S. D. Wilcock, and D. C. Soule. 2013. Source levels of fin whale 20 Hz pulses measured in the Northeast Pacific Ocean. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 133(2):741-749.

Sperm Whales

André, M., M. Terada, and Y. Watanabe. 1997. Sperm whale (Physeter macrocephalus) behavioural responses after the playback of artificial sounds. Report of the International Whaling Commission 47:499-504.

Carder, D. A., and S. Ridgway. 1990. Auditory brainstem response in a neonatal sperm whale. Journal of the Acoustic Society of America 88(Supplement 1):S4.

Carretta, J. V., and coauthors. 2018. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2017, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-602.

Carretta, J. V., and coauthors. 2019. Sources of human-related injury and mortality for U.S. Pacific west coast marine mammal stock assessments, 2013-2017, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-616.

Carretta, J. V., and coauthors. 2019. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2018, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-617.

Croll, D. A., B. R. Tershy, A. Acevedo, and P. Levin. 1999. Marine vertebrates and low frequency sound. Technical report for LFA EIS, 28 February 1999. Marine Mammal and Seabird Ecology Group, Institute of Marine Sciences, University of California Santa Cruz. 437p.

DWH Trustees (Deepwater Horizons Trustees). 2016. Deepwater Horizon Oil Spill: Final Programmatic Damage Assessment and Restoration Plan and Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement.

Engelhaupt, D., et al. 2009. Female philopatry in coastal basins and male dispersion across the North Atlantic in a highly mobile marine species, the sperm whale (Physeter macrocephalus). Molecular Ecology 18:4193-4205.

Frantzis, A., and P. Alexiadou. 2008. Male sperm whale (Physeter macrocephalus) coda production and coda-type usage depend on the presence of conspecifics and the behavioural context. Canadian Journal of Zoology 86(1):62-75.

Goold, J. C. 1999. Behavioural and acoustic observations of sperm whales in Scapa Flow, Orkney Islands. J. Mar. Biol. Assoc. U.K. 79:541–550.

Goold, J. C., and S. E. Jones. 1995. Time and frequency domain characteristics of sperm whale clicks. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 98(3):1279-1291.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2018. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2017 Second Edition. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-245.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2019. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2018. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-258.

Ketten, D. R. 1992. The cetacean ear: Form, frequency, and evolution. Pages 53-75 in R. A. Kastelein, A. Y. Supin, and J. A. Thomas, editors. Marine Mammal Sensory Systems. Plenum Press, New York.

Laplanche, C., O. Adam, M. Lopatka, and J. F. Motsch. 2005. Sperm whales click focussing: Towards an understanding of single sperm whale foraging strategies. Pages 56 in Nineteenth Annual Conference of the European Cetacean Society, La Rochelle, France.

Lyrholm, T., O. Leimar, B. Johanneson, and U. Gyllensten. 1999. Sexbiased dispersal in sperm whales: contrasting mitochondrial and nuclear genetic structure of global populations. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B 266:347–354

Madsen, P. T., and coauthors. 2003. Sound production in neonate sperm whales. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 113(6):2988-2991.

Marcoux, M., H. Whitehead, and L. Rendell. 2006. Coda vocalizations recorded in breeding areas are almost entirely produced by mature female sperm whales (Physeter macrocephalus). Canadian Journal of Zoology 84(4):609-614.

Mesnick, S.L., et al. 2011. Sperm whale population structure in the eastern and central North Pacific inferred by the use of single-nucleotide polymorphisms, microsatellites and mitochondrial DNA. Molecular Ecology Resources11:278-298.

Miller, P. J. O., M. P. Johnson, and P. L. Tyack. 2004. Sperm whale behaviour indicates the use of echolocation click buzzes 'creaks' in prey capture. Proceedings of the Royal Society of

London Series B Biological Sciences 271(1554):2239-2247.

Mohl, B., M. Wahlberg, P. T. Madsen, A. Heerfordt, and A. Lund. 2003. The monopulsed nature of sperm whale clicks. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 114(2):1143-1154.

Muto, M. M., et al. 2019. Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2018. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-393, 390 p.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2010. Recovery plan for the sperm whale (Physeter macrocephalus). National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. 165pp.

NMFS. 2015. Sperm Whale(Physeter macrocephalus)5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD. 61 pp.

NOAA. 2018. 2018 Revision to: Technical Guidance for Assessing the Effects of Anthropogenic Sound on Marine Mammal Hearing (Version 2.0).

Norris, K. S., and G. W. Harvey. 1972. A theory for the function of the spermaceti organ of the sperm whale. Pages 393-417 in S. R. Galler, editor. Animal Orientation and Navigation.

Pavan, G., and coauthors. 2000. Time patterns of sperm whale codas recorded in the Mediterranean Sea 1985-1996. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 107(6):3487-3495.

Rendell, L., S.L. Mesnick, M.L. Dalebout, J. Burtenshaw, and H. Whitehead. 2012.Can genetic differences explain vocal dialect variation in sperm whales, Physeter macrocephalus? Behavior Genetics42:332-343.

Rendell, L., and H. Whitehead. 2004. Do sperm whales share coda vocalizations? Insights into coda usage from acoustic size measurement. Animal Behaviour 67(5):865-874.

Taylor, B.L., et al. 2019. Physeter macrocephalus (amended version of 2008 assessment). The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2019: e.T41755A160983555. https://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T41755A160983555.en.

Thode, A., J. Straley, C. O. Tiemann, K. Folkert, and V. O'connell. 2007. Observations of potential acoustic cues that attract sperm whales to longline fishing in the Gulf of Alaska. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 122(2):1265-1277.

Tønnesen , P , Gero , S , Ladegaard , M , Johnson , M & Madsen , P T 2018 , ' First-year sperm whale calves echolocate and perform long, deep dives ' , Behavioral Ecology and Sociobiology , vol. 72 , 165 . https://doi.org/10.1007/s00265-018-2570-y

Waring, G. T., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. E. Rosel. 2010. US Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments-2010. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center.

Watkins, W. A. 1985. Changes observed in the reaction of whales to human activities. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service.

Watkins, W. A. and W. E. Schevill. 1977. Spatial distribution of Physeter catodon (sperm whales) underwater. Deep-Sea Research 24:693–699.

Weir, C. R., A. Frantzis, P. Alexiadou, and J. C. Goold. 2007. The burst-pulse nature of 'squeal' sounds emitted by sperm whales (Physeter macrocephalus). Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the U.K. 87(1):39-46.

Weilgart, L., and H. Whitehead. 1993. Coda communication by sperm whales (Physeter macrocephalus) off the Galápagos Islands. Canadian Journal of Zoology 71(4):744-752.

Whitehead, H. 2002. Estimates of the current global population size and historical trajectory for sperm whales. Marine Ecology Progress Series. 242:295-304.

Whitehead, H. 2009. Sperm whale: Physeter macrocephalus. Pages 1091-1097 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, and J. G. M. Thewissen, editors. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals, Second edition. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Loggerhead Sea Turtle

Avens, L., Goshe, L.R., Coggins, L. et al. Age and size at maturation- and adult-stage duration for loggerhead sea turtles in the western North Atlantic. Mar Biol 162, 1749–1767 (2015). https://doi.org/10.1007/s00227-015-2705-x

Bjorndal, K.A. 1997. Foraging ecology and nutrition of sea turtles. Pages 199-231 in Lutz, P.L. and J.A. Musick (editors). The Biology of Sea Turtles. CRC Press. Boca Raton, Florida.

Bolten, A.B. and B.E. Witherington (editors). 2003. Loggerhead Sea Turtles. Smithsonian Books, Washington D.C. 319 pages

Bolten, A.B., L.B. Crowder, M.G. Dodd, A.M. Lauristen, J.A. Musick, B.A. Schroeder, and B.E. Witherington. 2019. Recovery Plan for the Northwest Atlantic Population of Loggerhead Sea Turtles (Caretta caretta) Second Revision (2008). Sumbitted to National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. 21 pp.

Casale, P., and A. D. Tucker. 2017. Caretta caretta (amended version of 2015 assessment). The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2017:e.T3897A119333622. http://doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2017-2.RLTS.T3897A119333622

Ceriani, S. A., and A. B. Meylan. 2017. Caretta caretta (North West Atlantic subpopulation). The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2015: e.T84131194A84131608. https://doi.org/10.2305/iucn.uk.2015-4.rlts.t84131194a84131608.en

Conant, T. A., and coauthors. 2009. Loggerhead sea turtle (Caretta caretta) 2009 status review under the U.S. Endangered Species Act. Report of the Loggerhead Biological Review Team to the National Marine Fisheries Service August 2009:222 pages.

Donaton, J. et al. 2019. Long-term changes in loggerhead sea turtle diet indicate shifts in the benthic community associated with warming temperatures. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science, Volume 218: 139-147. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecss.2018.12.008

Eckert, S.A., J.E. Moore, D.C. Dunn, R.S. van Buiten, K.L. Eckert, and P.N. Halpin. 2008. Modeling loggerhead turtle movement in the Mediterranean: importance of body size and oceanography. Ecological Applications 18(2):290-308.

Ehrhart, LM., D.A. Bagley, and W.E. Redfoot. 2003. Loggerhead turtles in the Atlantic Ocean: geographic distribution, abundance, and population status. Pages 157-174 in Bolten, A.B. 182 and B.E. Witherington (editors). Loggerhead Sea Turtles. Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington, D.C.

Heppell, S.S., L.B. Crowder, D.T. Crouse, S.P. Epperly, and N.B. Frazer. 2003. Population models for Atlantic loggerheads: past, present, and future. Pages 255-273 in Bolten, A.B. and B.E. Witherington (editors). Loggerhead Sea Turtles. Smithsonian Books, Washington D.C.

LaCasella, E. et al. 2013. Genetic stock composition of loggerhead turtles Caretta caretta bycaught in the pelagic waters of the North Atlantic. Endangered Species Research. 22. 73-84. 10.3354/esr00535.

Mansfield, K.L. 2006. Sources of mortality, movements and behavior of sea turtles in Virginia. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation. Virginia Institute of Marine Science, Gloucester Point, Virginia. 343 pages.

Masuda, A. 2010. Natal Origin of Juvenile Loggerhead Turtles from Foraging Ground in Nicaragua and Panama Estimated Using Mitochondria DNA. California State University, Chico, California.

McClellan, C.M. and A.J. Read. 2007. Complexity and variation in loggerhead sea turtle life history. Biology Letters 3:592-594.

Morreale, S.J. and E.A. Standora. 2005. Western North Atlantic waters: crucial developmental habitat for Kemp’s ridley and loggerhead sea turtles. Chelonian Conservation and Biology 4:872-882.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2001. Stock assessments of loggerhead and leatherback sea turtles and an assessment of the impact of the pelagic longline fishery on the loggerhead and leatherback sea turtles of the Western North Atlantic. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-455.

NMFS 2009. An assessment of loggerhead sea turtles to estimate impacts of mortality reductions on population dynamics. NMFS SEFSC Contribution PRD-08/09-14. 45 pp.

Richards PM, Epperly SP, Heppell SS, King RT, Sasso CR, et al. 2011. Sea turtle population estimates incorporating uncertainty: a new approach applied to western North Atlantic loggerheads (Caretta caretta). Endanger Species Res 15: 151–158 DOI:https://doi.org/10.3354/esr00379.

Seney, E.E. and J.A. Musick. 2007. Historical diet analysis of loggerhead sea turtles (Caretta caretta) in Virginia. Copeia 2007(2):478-489.

Shamblin, B. M., and coauthors. 2014. Geographic patterns of genetic variation in a broadly distributed marine vertebrate: New insights into loggerhead turtle stock structure from expanded mitochondrial DNA sequences. PLoS One 9(1):e85956.

Stewart KR, et al. 2019. Using mixed stock analysis to assess source populations for at-sea bycatch juvenile and adult loggerhead turtles (Caretta caretta) in the north-west Atlantic. Fish Fish. 2019;20:239–254.

TEWG (Turtle Expert Working Group). 1998. An Assessment of the Kemp's Ridley (Lepidochelys kempii) and Loggerhead (Caretta caretta) Sea Turtle Populations in the Western North Atlantic. NMFS-SEFC-409

TEWG. 2000. Assessment Update for the Kemp's Ridley and Loggerhead Sea Turtle Populations in the Western North Atlantic. NMFS-SEFC-444

TEWG. 2009. An assessment of the loggerhead turtle population in the western North Atlantic Ocean. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-575. 142 pages. Available at http://www.sefsc.noaa.gov/seaturtletechmemos.jsp.

Witherington, B., P. Kubilis, B. Brost, and A. Meylan. 2009. Decreasing annual nest counts in a globally important loggerhead sea turtle population. Ecological Applications 19(1):30-54.

Witzell, W.N. 2002. Immature Atlantic loggerhead turtles (Caretta caretta): suggested changes to the life history model. Herpetological Review 33(4):266-269.

Zurita, J. C., and coauthors. 2003. Nesting loggerhead and green sea turtles in Quintana Roo, Mexico. Pages 25-127 in J. A. Seminoff, editor Twenty-Second Annual Symposium on Sea Turtle Biology and Conservation, Miami, Florida.

76 Federal Register. 58868. September 22, 2011. Endangered and Threatened Species; Determination of Nine Distinct Population Segments of Loggerhead Sea Turtles as Endangered or Threatened. Document Number: 2011-23960

Leatherback

Avens, L., J. C. Taylor, L. R. Goshe, T. T. Jones, and M. Hastings. 2009. Use of skeletochronological analysis to estimate the age of leatherback sea turtles Dermochelys coriacea in the western North Atlantic. Endangered Species Research 8(3):165-177.

Avens, L., Goshe, L.R., Zug, G.R., Balazs, G.H., Benson, S.R. and Harris, H., 2020. Regional comparison of leatherback sea turtle maturation attributes and reproductive longevity. *Marine Biology*, *167*(1), pp.1-12.

Benson, S. R., and coauthors. 2011. Large-scale movements and high-use areas of western Pacific leatherback turtles, Dermochelys coriacea. Ecosphere 2(7):art84.

Chaloupka, .M., Limpus, .C. Survival probability estimates for the endangered loggerhead sea turtle resident in southern Great Barrier Reef waters. Marine Biology 140, 267–277 (2002). https://doi.org/10.1007/s002270100697

Crouse, DT. 1999. Population modeling and implications for Caribbean hawksbill sea turtle management. Chelonian Conserv Biol 3:185–188

Dutton, P. H., B. W. Bowen, D. W. Owens, A. Barragan, and S. K. Davis. 1999. Global phylogeography of the leatherback turtle (Dermochelys coriacea). Journal of Zoology 248:397-409.

Eckert KL, Wallace BP, Frazier JG, Eckert SA, Pritchard PCH. 2012. Synopsis of the biological data on the leatherback sea turtle (Dermochelys coriacea). U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, editor. Washington, D.C.: Biological Technical Publication.

Hays, G. C. 2000. The implications of variable remigration intervals for the assessment of population size in marine turtles. Journal of Theoretical Biology 206(2):221-7.

James, M. C., R. A. Myers, and C. A. Ottensmeyer. 2005. Behaviour of leatherback sea turtles, Dermochelys coriacea, during the migratory cycle. Proceedings of the Royal Society Biological Sciences Series B 272(1572):1547-1555.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 1992. Recovery plan for leatherback turtles in the U.S. Caribbean, Atlantic, and Gulf of Mexico. National Marine Fisheries Service, Washington, D.C. 65 pp.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 1998. Recovery Plan for the U.S. Pacific Population of the Leatherback Turtle (Dermochelys coriacea). National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD

NMFS and USFWS. 2013. Leatherback sea turtle (Dermochelys coriacea) 5-year review: Summary and evaluation. NOAA, National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Southeast Region, Jacksonville Ecological Services Office.

NMFS and USFWS. 2020. Endangered Species Act status review of the leatherback turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea*). Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service Office of Protected Resources and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/resource/document/status-review-leatherback-turtle-dermochelys-coriacea

Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group. 2018. Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Turtle (Dermochelys coriacea) Status Assessment (Bryan Wallace and Karen Eckert, Compilers and Editors). Conservation Science Partners and the Wider Caribbean Sea Turtle Conservation Network (WIDECAST). WIDECAST Technical Report No. 16. Godfrey, Illinois. 36 pp.

Price ER, Wallace BP, Reina RD, Spotila JR, Paladino FV, Piedra R, Vélez E. 2004. Size, growth, and reproductive output of adult female leatherback turtles Dermochelys coriacea. Endangered Species Research 5: 8.

Reina RD, Mayor PA, Spotila JR, Piedra R, Paladino FV. 2002a. Nesting ecology of the leatherback turtle, Dermochelys coriacea, at Parque Nacional Marino Las Baulas, Costa Rica: 1988–1989 to 1999–2000. Copeia 2002: 653-664.

Shoop, C. R., and R. D. Kenney. 1992. Seasonal distributions and abundances of loggerhead and leatherback sea turtles in waters of the northeastern United States. Herpetological Monographs 6:43-67.

Spotila JR, Dunham AE, Leslie AJ, Steyermark AC, Plotkin PT, Paladino FV. 1996. Worldwide population decline of Dermochelys coriacea: are leatherback turtles going extinct? Chelonian Conservation and Biology 2: 209-222.

Spotila JR, Reina RD, Steyermark AC, Plotkin PT, Paladino FV. 2000. Pacific leatherback turtles face extinction. Nature 405: 529-530.

Tapilatu, R. F., and coauthors. 2013. Long-term decline of the western Pacific leatherback, Dermochelys coriacea: A globally important sea turtle population. Ecosphere 4:15.

TEWG. 2007. An assessment of the leatherback turtle population in the Atlantic Ocean. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-555. p. 116.

Wallace BP, Kilham SS, Paladino FV, Spotila JR. 2006a. Energy budget calculations indicate resource limitation in Eastern Pacific leatherback turtles. Marine Ecology Progress Series 318: 263-270

Wallace, B. P., and coauthors. 2007. Maternal investment in reproduction and its consequences in leatherback turtles. Oecologia 152(1):37-47.

77 Federal Register 4170. January 26, 2012. Endangered and Threatened Species: Final Rule To Revise the Critical Habitat Designation for the Endangered Leatherback Sea Turtle. Document Number: 2012-995. https://www.federalregister.gov/documents/2012/01/26/2012-

995/endangered-and-threatened-species-final-rule-to-revise-the-critical-habitat-designation-for-the

85 Federal Register 48332. August 10, 2020. Endangered and Threatened Wildlife; 12-Month Finding on a Petition To Identify the Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Turtle as a Distinct Population Segment and List It as Threatened Under the Endangered Species Act. Document Number: 2020-16277. https://www.federalregister.gov/documents/2020/08/10/2020-16277/endangered-and-threatened-wildlife-12-month-finding-on-a-petition-to-identify-the-northwest-atlantic

Green Sea Turtle

Avens, L., Snover, M.L., 2013. Age and age esimtation in sea turtles, in: Wyneken, J., Lohmann, K.J., Musick, J.A. (Eds.), The Biology of Sea Turtles Volume III. CRC Press Boca Raton, FL, pp. 97–133

Bell, C.D., Parsons, J., Austin, T.J., Broderick, A.C., Ebanks-Petrie, G., Godley, B.J., 2005. Some of them came home: the Cayman Turtle Farm headstarting project for the green turtle Chelonia mydas. Oryx 39, 137–148.

Ehrhardt, N. M., and R. Witham. 1992. Analysis of growth of the green sea turtle (Chelonia mydas) in the western Central Atlantic. Bull. Mar. Sci. 50: 275-281.

Frazer, N.B., Ehrhart, L.M., 1985. Preliminary growth models for green, Chelonia mydas, and loggerhead, Caretta caretta, turtles in the wild. Copeia 1, 73–79.

Goshe, L.R., Avens, L., Scharf, F.S., Southwood, A.L., 2010. Estimation of age at maturation and growth of Atlantic green turtles (Chelonia mydas) using skeletochronology. Mar. Biol. 157, 1725–1740.

Hirth, H.F., 1997. Synopsis of the biological data on the green turtle Chelonia mydas (Linnaeus 1758). Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C, Biological Report 97(1), 120 pages.

Mendonça, M.T., 1981. Comparative growth rates of wild immature Chelonia mydas and Caretta caretta in Florida. J. Herpetol. 15, 447–451.

Seminoff, J. A., and coauthors. 2015a. Status reviw of the green turtle (Chelonia mydas) under the Endnagered Species Act. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Fisheries Science Center.

Seminoff, J. A., and coauthors. 2015b. Status review of the green turtle (Chelonia Mydas) under the endangered species act. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS-SWFSC-539.

Witherington, B.E., Bresette, M.J., Herren, R., 2006. Chelonia mydas – green Turtle, in: Meylan, P.A. (Ed.), Biology and Conservation of Florida Turtles. Chelonian Research Monographs

3:90-104.

Zurita, J.C., Herrera P., R., Arenas, A., Negrete, A.C., Gómez, L., Prezas, B., Sasso, C.R., 2012. Age at first nesting of green turtles in the Mexican Caribbean, in: Jones, T.T., Wallace, B.P. (Eds.), Proceedings of the 31st Annual Symposium on Sea Turtle Biology and Conservation. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA NMFS-SEFSC-631, p. 75.

66 Federal Register 20057. April 6, 2016.

81 Federal Register 20057. Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants; Final Rule To List Eleven Distinct Population Segments of the Green Sea Turtle (Chelonia mydas) as Endangered or Threatened and Revision of Current Listings Under the Endangered Species Act. Document Number: 2016-07587

Kemp’s Ridley

Epperly, S.P., et al. 2013. Mortality rates of Kemp’s ridley sea turtles in the neritic waters of the United States. Page 219 in Tucker, T., L. Belskis, A. Panagopoulou, A. Rees, M. Frick, K. Williams, R. LeRoux, and K. Stewart (compilers). Proceedings of the Thirty-Third Annual Symposium of Sea Turtle Biology and Conservation. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC 645.

NMFS and USFWS. 2015. Kemp’s Ridley Sea Turtle (Lepidochelys Kempii) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. 63 p. https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/17048

NMFS, USFWS, and SEMARNAT. 2011. BiNational Recovery Plan for the Kemp’s Ridley Sea Turtle (Lepidochelys kempii), Second Revision. National Marine Fisheries Service. Silver Spring, Maryland 156 pp. + appendices.

Putman N. et al. 2013. Predicting the distribution of oceanic-stage Kemp's ridley sea turtlesBiol. Lett.920130345 http://doi.org/10.1098/rsbl.2013.0345

Snover, M.L., A.A. Hohn, L.B. Crowder, and S.S. Heppell. 2007. Age and growth in Kemp’s ridley sea turtles: evidence from mark-recapture and skeletochronology. Pages 89-106 in Plotkin P.T. (editor). Biology and Conservation of Ridley Sea Turtles. Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, Maryland.

TEWG (Turtle Expert Working Group). 1998. An assessment of the Kemp’s ridley (Lepidochelys kempii) and loggerhead (Caretta caretta) sea turtle populations in the western North Atlantic. NOAA Technical Memorandum. NMFS-SEFSC-409:96.

TEWG (Turtle Expert Working Group). 2000. Assessment for the Kemp’s ridley and loggerhead sea turtle populations in the western North Atlantic. NOAA Technical Memorandum. NMFS-SEFSC-444.

Tomas, J., and J. A. Raga. 2008. Occurrence of Kemp's ridley sea turtle (Lepidochelys kempii) in the Mediterranean. Marine Biodiversity Records 1(01).

Wibbels, T. & Bevan, E. 2019. Lepidochelys kempii (errata version published in 2019). The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2019: e.T11533A155057916. https://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2019-2.RLTS.T11533A155057916.en.

Atlantic Sturgeon

Armstrong, J.L. and J.E. Hightower. 2002. Potential for restoration of the Roanoke River population of Atlantic sturgeon. Journal of Applied Ichthyology 18(4-6):475-480.

ASMFC (Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission). 1998. Amendment 1 to the interstate fishery management plan for Atlantic sturgeon. Management Report No. 31, 43 pp.

Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission (ASMFC). 1998b. Amendment 1 to the interstate fishery management plan for Atlantic sturgeon. Management Report No. 31, 43 pp.

Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission (ASMFC). 2006. Review of the Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission Fishery Management Plan for Atlantic Sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrhincus). December 14, 2006. 12pp.

Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission (ASMFC). 2007. Special Report to the Atlantic Sturgeon Management Board: Estimation of Atlantic sturgeon bycatch in coastal Atlantic commercial fisheries of New England and the Mid-Atlantic. August 2007. 95 pp.

Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission (ASMFC). 2010. Annual Report. 68 pp.

ASMFC. 2017. Atlantic Sturgeon Benchmark Stock Assessment and Peer Review Report, Arlington, VA. 456p. http://www.asmfc.org/files/Meetings/AtlMenhadenBoardNov2017/AtlSturgonBenchmarkStockAssmt_PeerReviewReport_2017.pdf

ASSRT (Atlantic Sturgeon Status Review Team). 2007. Status review of Atlantic sturgeon (*Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus*). National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Regional Office, Atlantic Sturgeon Status Review Team.

Bain, M.B. 1997. Atlantic and shortnose sturgeons of the Hudson River: Common and divergent life history attributes. Environmental Biology of Fishes 48(1-4):347-358.

Bain, M.B., N. Haley, D. Peterson, K.K. Arend, K.E. Mills, and P.J. Sullivan. 2000. Shortnose sturgeon of the Hudson River: An endangered species recovery success. Page 14 in Twentieth Annual Meeting of the American Fisheries Society, St. Louis, Missouri.

Balazik M.T. and J.A. Musick. 2015. Dual Annual Spawning Races in Atlantic Sturgeon. PLoS ONE 10(5): e0128234.

Balazik, M.T., G. Garman, M. Fine, C. Hager, and S. McIninch. 2010. Changes in age composition and growth characteristics of Atlantic sturgeon (*Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus*) over 400 years. Biology Letters 6: 708–710.

Balazik, M.T., G.C. Garman, J.P. VanEenennaam, J. Mohler, and C. Woods III. 2012. Empirical evidence of fall spawning by Atlantic sturgeon in the James River, Virginia. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 141(6):1465-1471.

Balazik, M.T., S.P. McIninch, G.C. Garman, and R.J. Latour. 2012. Age and growth of Atlantic sturgeon in the James River, Virginia, 1997 – 2011. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 141(4):1074-1080.

Boreman, J. 1997. Sensitivity of North American sturgeons and paddlefish to fishing mortality. Environmental Biology of Fishes 48:399-405.

Borodin N. 1925. Biological observations on the Atlantic sturgeon (*Acipenser sturio*). Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 55(1):184-190.

Brown, J.J. and G.W. Murphy. 2010. Atlantic sturgeon vessel strike mortalities in the Delaware River. Fisheries 35(2):72-83.

Brundage III, H.M. and J. C. O'Herron, II. 2009. Investigations of juvenile shortnose and Atlantic sturgeons in the lower tidal Delaware River. Bull. N.J. Acad. Sci. 54(2):1–8.

Bushnoe, T.M., J.A. Musick, D.S. Ha. 2005. Essential spawning and nursery habitat of Atlantic sturgeon (*Acipenser oxyrinchus*) in Virginia. Provided by Jack Musick, Virginia Institute of Marine Science, Gloucester Point, Virginia.

Collette, B.B. and G. Klein-MacPhee. 2002. Bigelow and Schroeder's Fishes of the Gulf of Maine., 3rd ed. Smithsonian Institution Press.
Washington and London.

Calvo, L., H.M. Brundage, D. Haivogel, D. Kreeger, R. Thomas, J.C. O'Herron, and E. Powell. 2010. Effects of flow dynamics, salinity, and water quality on the Eastern oyster, the Atlantic sturgeon, and the shortnose sturgeon in the oligohaline zone of the Delaware Estuary. Prepared for the US Army Corps of Engineers, Philadelphia District.

Caron, F., D. Hatin, and R. Fortin. 2002. Biological characteristics of adult Atlantic sturgeon (*Acipenser oxyrinchus*) in the St. Lawrence River estuary and the effectiveness of management rules. Journal of Applied Ichthyology 18:580-585.

Collins, M.R., S G. Rogers, T. I. J. Smith, and M.L. Moser. 2000. Primary factors affecting sturgeon populations in the southeastern United States: Fishing mortality and degradation of essential habitats. Bulletin of Marine Science 66(3):917-928.

Crance, J.H. 1987. Guidelines for using the delphi technique to develop habitat suitability index curves. Biological Report. Washington, D. C., U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 82:36.

Damon-Randall, K., M. Colligan, and J. Crocker. 2013. Composition of Atlantic Sturgeon in Rivers, Estuaries, and Marine Waters. National Marine Fisheries Service, NERO, Unpublished Report. February 2013. 33 pp.

Dovel, W.L. and T.J. Berggren. 1983. Atlantic sturgeon of the Hudson Estuary, New York. New York Fish and Game Journal 30(2): 140-172.

Fernandes, S.J., G.B. Zydlewski, J. Zydlewski, G.S. Wippelhauser, and M.T. Kinnison. 2010. Seasonal distribution and movementskahnle of shortnose sturgeon and Atlantic sturgeon in the Penobscot River Estuary, Maine. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 139:1436–1449.

Fisher, M. 2011. Atlantic Sturgeon Progress Report. Delaware State Wildlife Grant, Project T-4-1, October 1, 2006 to October 15, 2010. 44 pp.

Gilbert, C.R. 1989. Species profiles: Life histories and environmental requirements of coastal fishes and invertebrates (Mid-Atlantic Bight): Atlantic and shortnose sturgeons. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report. Washington, D. C., U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station. 82.

Grunwald, C., L. Maceda, J. Waldman, J. Stabile, and I. Wirgin. 2008. Conservation of Atlantic sturgeon *Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus*: Delineation of stock structure and distinct population segments. Conservation Genetics 9(5):1111-1124.

Guilbard, F., J. Munro, P. Dumont, D. Hatin, and R. Fortin. 2007. Feeding ecology of Atlantic sturgeon and Lake sturgeon co-occurring in the St. Lawrence estuarine transition zone. American Fisheries Society Symposium 56: 85.

Hager, C. 2011. Atlantic Sturgeon Review: Gather data on reproducing subpopulation on Atlantic Sturgeon in the James River. Final Report - 09/15/2010 to 9/15/2011. NOAA/NMFS contract EA133F10CN0317 to the James River Association. 21 pp.

Hager, C., J. Kahn, C. Watterson, J. Russo, and K. Hartman. 2014. Evidence of Atlantic sturgeon spawning in the York River system. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 143(5): 1217-1219.

Hildebrand S.F. and W.C. Schroeder, 1928. Acipenseridae: Acipenser oxyrhynchus, Mitchill. Pp. 72- 77. In: Fishes of Chesapeake Bay, Bulletin of the Bureau of Fisheries, No. 43.

Holton, J.W., Jr. and J.B. Walsh. 1995. Long-term dredged material management plan for the upper James River, Virginia. Virginia Beach, Waterway Surveys and Engineering, Ltd. 94 pp.

Johnson, J.H., D.S. Dropkin, B.E. Warkentine, J.W. Rachlin, and W.D. Andrews. 1997. Food habits of Atlantic sturgeon off the central New Jersey coast. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 126:166-170.

Kahn, J.E., C. Hager, J.C. Watterson, J. Russo, K. Moore, and K. Hartman. 2014. Atlantic sturgeon annual spawning run estimate in the Pamunkey River, Virginia, Transactions of the American Fisheries Society. 143(6):1508-1514.

Kahnle, A.W., et al. 1998. Stock status of Atlantic sturgeon of Atlantic Coast estuaries. Report for the Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. Draft III.

Kahnle, A. W., K. A. Hattala, K. McKown. 2007. Status of Atlantic sturgeon of the Hudson River estuary, New York, USA. In J. Munro, D. Hatin, K. McKown, J. Hightower, K. Sulak, A. Kahnle, and F. Caron (editors). Proceedings of the symposium on anadromous sturgeon: Status and trend, anthropogenic impact, and essential habitat. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, MD

Kazyak, D.C., White, S.L., Lubinski, B.A., Johnson, R. and Eackles, M., 2021. Stock composition of Atlantic sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus) encountered in marine and estuarine environments on the US Atlantic Coast. Conservation Genetics, pp.1-15.

King, T.L., B.A. Lubinski, and A.P. Spidle. 2001. Microsatellite DNA variation in Atlantic sturgeon (*Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus*) and cross-species amplification in the Acipenseridae. Conservation Genetics 2(2):103-119.

Kynard, B. and M. Horgan. 2002. Ontogenetic behavior and migration of Atlantic sturgeon, *Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus*, and shortnose sturgeon, *A. brevirostrum*, with notes on social behavior. Environmental Biology of Fishes 63:137-150.

Leland, J.G. 1968. A survey of the sturgeon fishery of South Carolina. Contributions from Bears Bluff Laboratories, Bears Bluff Laboratories No. 47. 27 pp.

Lichter, J., H. Caron, T. Pasakarnis, S. Rodgers, T. Squiers, and C. Todd. 2006. The ecological collapse and partial recovery of a freshwater tidal ecosystem. Northeastern Naturalist 13:153-178.

Moser, M. L. and S.W. Ross. 1995. Habitat use and movements of shortnose and Atlantic sturgeons in the lower Cape Fear River, North Carolina. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society. 124:225-234.

Murawski, S.A. and A.L. Pacheco. 1977. Biological and fisheries data on Atlantic sturgeon, *Acipenser oxyrhynchus* (Mitchill). Sandy Hook Laboratory, Northeast Fisheries Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, US Department of Commerce.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) Northeast Fisheries Science Center (NEFSC). 2011b. Summary of Discard Estimates for Atlantic Sturgeon. Draft working paper prepared by T. Miller and G. Shepard, Population Dynamics Branch. August 19, 2011.

Niklitschek, E.S. and D.H. Secor. 2010. Experimental and field evidence of behavioral habitat selection by juvenile Atlantic (*Acipenser oxyrinchus*) and shortnose (*Acipenser brevirostrum*) sturgeons. Journal of Fish Biology 77:1293-1308.

Novak, A. et al. 2017. Critical Foraging Habitat of Atlantic Sturgeon Based on Feeding Habits, Prey Distribution, and Movement Patterns in the Saco River Estuary, Maine, Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, 146:2, 308-317, DOI: 10.1080/00028487.2016.1264472

Post, B., T. Darden, D.L. Peterson, M. Loeffler, and C. Collier. 2014. Research and Management of Endangered and Threatened Species in the Southeast: Riverine Movements of Shortnose and Atlantic sturgeon, South Carolina Department of Natural Resources. 274 pp.

Pyzik, L., J. Caddick, and P. Marx. 2004. Chesapeake Bay: Introduction to an ecosystem. EPA 903-R-04-003, CBP/TRS 232/00. 35 pp.

Richardson, B. and D. Secor, 2016. Assessment of critical habitats for recovering the Chesapeake Bay Atlantic sturgeon distinct population segment. Final Report. Section 6 Species Recovery Grants Program Award Number: NA13NMF4720042.

Savoy, T. 2007. Prey eaten by Atlantic sturgeon in Connecticut waters. American Fisheries Society Symposium. 56:157-165.

Savoy, T. and D. Pacileo. 2003. Movements and important habitats of subadult Atlantic sturgeon in Connecticut waters. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society. 132:1-8.

Savoy, T., L. Maceda, N.K. Roy, D. Peterson, and I. Wirgin. 2017. Evidence of natural reproduction of Atlantic sturgeon in the Connecticut River from unlikely sources. PLoS ONE 12(4):e0175085.

Schueller, P. and D.L. Peterson. 2010. Abundance and recruitment of juvenile Atlantic sturgeon in the Altamaha River, Georgia. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society. 139:1526-1535.

Scott, W.B. and E.J. Crossman. 1973. Freshwater fishes of Canada. Bulletin of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada. 184:1-966.

Secor, D.H. 2002. Atlantic sturgeon fisheries and stock abundances during the late nineteenth century. American Fisheries Society Symposium. 28:89-98.

Secor, D. H. and J. R. Waldman. 1999. Historical abundance of Delaware Bay Atlantic sturgeon and potential rate of recovery. American Fisheries Society Symposium 23: 203-216.

Smith, T.I.J. 1985. The fishery, biology, and management of Atlantic sturgeon, *Acipenser oxyrhynchus,* in North America. Environmental Biology of Fishes. 14:61-72.

Smith, T.I.J. and J.P. Clugston. 1997. Status and management of Atlantic sturgeon, *Acipenser oxyrinchus,* in North America. Environmental Biology of Fishes. 48:335-346.

Smith, T.I.J., D.E. Marchette, and R.A. Smiley. 1982. Life history, ecology, culture and management of Atlantic sturgeon, *Acipenser oxyrhynchus oxyrhynchus*, Mitchill. Final Report to US Fish and Wildlife Service. Project AFS-9. 75 pp.

Squiers, T., M. Smith, and L. Flagg. 1979. Distribution and abundance of shortnose and Atlantic sturgeon in the Kennebec River Estuary. Research Reference Document 79/13.

Stein, A.B., K.D. Friedland, and M.Sutherland. 2004. Atlantic sturgeon marine distribution and habitat use along the northeastern coast of the United States. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society. 133:527-537.

Stevenson, JT. 1997. In Life history characteristics of Atlantic sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus) in the Hudson River and a model for fishery management, Master's thesis. University of Maryland, College Park.

Stevenson, J.T. and D.H. Secor. 1999. Age determination and growth of Hudson River Atlantic sturgeon *Acipenser oxyrinchus*. Fishery Bulletin. 98:153-166.

Sweka, J.A., et al. 2007. Juvenile Atlantic sturgeon habitat use in Newburgh and Haverstraw Bays of the Hudson River: Implications for population monitoring. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 27:1058–1067.

Taub, S. H. 1990. Fishery management plan for Atlantic sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrhynchus oxyrhynchus). Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission, Washington, D.C.

Smith, TJ et al. 1980. Induced Spawning and Culture of Atlantic Sturgeon, The Progressive Fish-Culturist, 42:3, 147-151, DOI: 10.1577/1548-8659(1980)42[147:ISACOA]2.0.CO;2

Van Eenennaam, J., S.I. Doroshov, G.P. Moberg, J.G. Watson, D.S. Moore, and J. Linares. 1996. Reproductive conditions of the Atlantic sturgeon (*Acipenser oxyrinchus*) in the Hudson River. Estuaries and Coasts. 19:769-777.

Vladykov, V.D. and J.R. Greeley. 1963. Order Acipenseroidei. Pp. 24-60. *In*: Fishes of Western North Atlantic. Memoir Sears Foundation for Marine Research, Number 1. 630 pp.

Waldman, J. R., and I. I.Wirgin. 1998. Status and restoration options for Atlantic sturgeon in North America. Conservation Biology 12: 631-638.

Waldman, J. R., C. Grunwald, J. Stabile, and I. Wirgin. 2002. Impacts of life history and biogeography on the genetic stock structure of Atlantic sturgeon Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus, Gulf sturgeon A. oxyrinchus desotoi, and shortnose sturgeon A. brevirostrum. Journal of Applied Ichthyology 18: 509-518.

Wipplehauser, G. et al. 2013. A Regional Conservation Plan For Atlantic Sturgeon in the U. S. Gulf of Maine On Behalf of Maine Department of Marine Resources. 37 pp. Available at: https://www.maine.gov/dmr/science-research/species/documents/I%20-%20Atlantic%20Sturgeon%20GOM%20Regional%20Conservation%20Plan.pdf

Wirgin, I. and T.L. King. 2011. Mixed stock analysis of Atlantic sturgeon from coastal locales and a non-spawning river. Presentation of the 2011 Sturgeon Workshop, Alexandria, VA, February 8-10.

Wirgin, I., J.R. Waldman, J. Rosko, R. Gross, M.R. Collins, S.G. Rogers, and J. Stabile. 2000. Genetic structure of Atlantic sturgeon populations based on mitochondrial DNA control region sequences. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society. 129:476-486.

Young, J. R., T. B. Hoff, W. P. Dey, and J. G. Hoff. 1998. Management recommendations for a Hudson River Atlantic sturgeon fishery based on an age-structured population model. Fisheries Research in the Hudson River. State of University of New York Press, Albany, New York. 353 pp.

77 Federal Register 5880. February 6, 2012. Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants; Threatened and Endangered Status for Distinct Population Segments of Atlantic Sturgeon in the Northeast Region. https://www.federalregister.gov/documents/2012/02/06/2012-1946/endangered-and-threatened-wildlife-and-plants-threatened-and-endangered-status-for-distinct

77 Federal Register 5914. February 6, 2012. Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants; Final Listing Determinations for Two Distinct Population Segments of Atlantic Sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus. https://www.federalregister.gov/documents/2012/02/06/2012-1950/endangered-and-threatened-wildlife-and-plants-final-listing-determinations-for-two-distinct

6.0 Environmental Baseline

ASMFC (Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission). 2017. Atlantic Sturgeon Benchmark Stock Assessment Peer Review Report. Accessed November 27, 2018. Retrieved from: http://www.asmfc.org/files/Meetings/76AnnualMeeting/AtlanticSturgeonBoardPresentations_Oct2017.pdf

ASSRT (Atlantic Sturgeon Status Review Team). 2007. Status review of Atlantic sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus). National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Regional Office, Atlantic Sturgeon Status Review Team.

Barco, S. G., M. L. Burt, R. A. DiGiovanni, Jr., W. M. Swingle, and A. S. Williard. 2018. Loggerhead turtle, Caretta caretta, density and abundance in Chesapeake Bay and the temperate ocean waters of the southern portion of the Mid-Atlantic Bight. Endangered Species Research 37: 269-287.

Baumgartner, M.F., F.W. Wenzel, N.S.J. Lysiak, and M.R. Patrician. 2017. "North Atlantic Right Whale Foraging Ecology and its Role in Human-Caused Mortality." Marine Ecological Progress Series 581: 165–181.

Beardsley, R. C., A. W. Epstein, C. Chen, K. F. Wishner, M. C. Macaulay, and R. D. Kenney. 1996. Spatial variability in zooplankton abundance near feeding right whales in the Great South Channel. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 43(7): 1601-1625.

Bort, J., S. M. V. Parijs, P. T. Stevick, E. Summers, and S. Todd. 2015. North Atlantic right whale Eubalaena glacialis vocalization patterns in the central Gulf of Maine from October 2009 through October 2010. Endangered Species Research 26(3):271-280.

Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM). 2021. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Draft Environmental Impact Statement. OCS EIS/EA BOEM 2020-057. https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/SFWF-DEIS_0.pdf

BOEM. 2021. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Biological Assessment, January 2021, for the National Marine Fisheries Service. https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/state-activities/SFWF-BA-NMFS.pdf

BOEM. 2021. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Biological Assessment Supplement, July 2021. Prepared by SWCA Environmental Consultants. https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/state-activities/SFWF-BA-NMFS.pdf

Borobia, M., Gearing, P.J., Simard, Y. et al. Blubber fatty acids of finback and humpback whales from the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Marine Biology 122, 341–353 (1995). https://doi.org/10.1007/BF00350867

Bostrom BL, Jones TT, Hastings M, Jones DR (2010) Behaviour and Physiology: The Thermal Strategy of Leatherback Turtles. PLoS ONE 5(11): e13925. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0013925

Braun-McNeill, J. and S. P. Epperly. 2002. Spatial and temporal distribution of sea turtles in the western North Atlantic and the U.S. Gulf of Mexico from Marine Recreational Fishery Statistics Survey (MRFSS). Marine Fisheries Review 64(4): 50-56.

Braun-McNeill, J., C. R. Sasso, S. P. Epperly, and C. Rivero. 2008. Feasibility of using sea surface temperature imagery to mitigate cheloniid sea turtle–fishery interactions off the coast of northeastern USA. Endangered Species Research 5(2-3): 257-266.

Brown, M. W., O. C. Nichols, M. K. Marx, and J. N. Ciano. 2002. Surveillance, monitoring and management of North Atlantic right whales in Cape Cod Bay and adjacent waters - 2002. Center for Coastal Studies, Submitted to the Massachusetts Division of Marine Fisheries.

Ceriani, S. A., J. D. Roth, D. R. Evans, J. F. Weishampel, and L. M. Ehrhart. 2012. Inferring foraging areas of nesting loggerhead turtles using satellite telemetry and stable isotopes. PLoS ONE 7(9): e45335.

CETAP. 1982. A characterization of marine mammals and turtles in the mid-and north Atlantic areas of the U.S. outer continental shelf. Cetacean and Turtle Assessment Program, University of Rhode Island, South Kingston, Rhode Island. Final report. Sponsored by the Bureau of Land Management under contract AA551-CT8-48.

Clark, C. W. 1995. Application of U.S. Navy underwater hydrophone arrays for scientific research on whales. Reports of the International Whaling Commission 45.

Cole T.V.N., A. Stimpert, L. Pomfret, K. Houle, M. Niemeyer. 2007. North Atlantic Right Whale Sighting Survey (NARWSS) and Right Whale Sighting Advisory System (RWSAS) 2002 Results Summary. U.S. Department of Commerce, Northeast Fisheries Science Center Reference Document. 07-18a.

Cole, T.V.N., P. Hamilton, A. Glass, P. Henry, R.M. Duley, B.N. Pace III, T. White, T. Frasier. 2013. “Evidence of a North Atlantic Right Whale Eubalaena glacialis Mating Ground.” Endangered Species Research 21: 55–64.

Cook, R.R. and P.J. Auster. 2007. A Bioregional Classification of the Continental Shelf of Northeastern North America for Conservation Analysis and Planning Based on Representation. Marine Sanctuaries Conservation Series NMSP-07-03. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Sanctuary Program, Silver Spring, MD.

CSA Ocean Sciences, Inc for South Fork Wind LLC. 2021. Request for an Incidental Harassment Authorization to Allow Harassment of Marine Mammals Incidental to Activities Associated with South Fork Wind Farm and Export Cable Construction. BOEM Lease OCS-A 0517. https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/2021-02/SouthForkWind_2021proposedIHA_App_OPR1.pdf?null=

Curtice, C., J. Cleary, E. Shumchenia, and P. Halpin. 2018. Marine-life Data and Analysis Team (MDAT) Technical Report on the Methods and Development of Marine-Life Data to Support Regional Ocean Planning and Management. Prepared by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab for the Marine-life Data and Analysis Team (MDAT). Available at:

http://seamap.env. duke.edu/models/MDAT/MDAT-Technical-Report.pdf. Accessed September 11, 2018.

Dadswell, M.J. 2006. “A Review of the Status of Atlantic Sturgeon in Canada, with Comparisons to Populations in the United States and Europe.” Fisheries 31: 218-229.

Damon-Randall, K., M. Colligan, and J. Crocker. 2013. Composition of Atlantic Sturgeon in Rivers, Estuaries, and Marine Waters. National Marine Fisheries Service, NERO, Unpublished Report. February 2013. 33 pp.

Davis, G.E., et al. 2017. “Long-Term Passive Acoustic Recordings Track the Changing Distribution of North Atlantic Right Whales (Eubalaena Glacialis) from 2004 to 2014. Scientific Reports 7, no. 13460: 1-12. https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1111/gcb.15191

Davis et al. 2020. Exploring movement patterns and changing distributions of baleen whales in the western North Atlantic using a decade of passive acoustic data. Global Change Biology. Vol 26. Issue 9: 4812-4840.

Denes., S.L., D.G. Zeddies, and M.M. Weirathmueller. (2020a). Turbine Foundation and Cable Installation at South Fork Wind Farm: Underwater Acoustic Modeling of Construction Noise. Document 01584, Version 4.0. Technical report by JASCO Applied Sciences for Jacobs Engineering Group Inc. 5 February 2020

Denes, S.L., M.M. Weirathmueller, and D.G. Zeddies. (2020b). Foundation Installation at South Fork Wind Farm: Animal Exposure Modelling. Document 01726, Version 2.0. Technical report by JASCO Applied Sciences for Jacobs Engineering Group Inc. 5 February 2020

Denes, S.L., M.M. Weirathmueller, and D.G. Zeddies. (2020c). Foundation Installation at South Fork Wind Farm: Animal Exposure Modelling. Document 01726, Version 2.0. Technical report by JASCO Applied Sciences for Jacobs Engineering Group Inc. 10 July 2020.

Dodge, K.L., J.M. Logan, and M.E. Lutcavage. 2011. “Foraging Ecology of Leatherback Sea Turtles in the Western North Atlantic Determined through Multi-Tissue Stable Isotope Analyses.” Marine Biology 158: 2813-2824.

Dodge KL, Galuardi B, Miller TJ, Lutcavage ME. 2014. Leatherback Turtle Movements, Dive Behavior, and Habitat Characteristics in Ecoregions of the Northwest Atlantic Ocean. PLoS ONE 9(3): e91726. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0091726

Dodge, K. L., B. Galuardi, and M. E. Lutcavage. 2015. Orientation behaviour of leatherback sea turtles within the North Atlantic subtropical gyre. Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences 282(1804): 20143129.

Dodge, K. L., A. L. Kukulya, E. Burke, and M. F. Baumgartner. 2018. TurtleCam: A “Smart” autonomous underwater vehicle for investigating behaviors and habitats of sea turtles. Frontiers in Marine Science 5: 10.

Dow, W., Eckert, K., Palmer, M. and Kramer, P., 2007. An atlas of sea turtle nesting habitat for the wider Caribbean region. The Wider Caribbean Sea Turtle Conservation Network and The Nature Conservancy, Beaufort, North Carolina.

Dovel, W.L. and T.J. Berggren. 1983. Atlantic sturgeon of the Hudson Estuary, New York. New York Fish and Game Journal 30(2): 140-172.

Dunton, K.J., A. Jordaan, K.A. McKown, D.O. Conover, and M.G. Frisk. 2010. “Abundance and Distribution of Atlantic Sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus) within the Northwest Atlantic Ocean, Determined from Five Fishery-Independent Surveys.” U.S. National Marine Fisheries Service Fishery Bulletin 108: 450–465.

Dunton, K. J., A. Jordaan, D. O. Conover, K. A. McKown, L. A. Bonacci, and M. G. Frisk. 2015. Marine distribution and habitat use of Atlantic sturgeon in New York lead to fisheries interactions and bycatch. Marine and Coastal Fisheries 7(1): 18-32.

Eckert, S. A., D. Bagley, S. Kubis, L. Ehrhart, C. Johnson, K. Stewart, and D. DeFreese. 2006. Internesting and postnesting movements and foraging habitats of leatherback sea turtles (Dermochelys coriacea) nesting in Florida. Chelonian Conservation and Biology 5(2): 239-248.

Eckert, K.L., B.P. Wallace, J.G. Frazier, S.A. Eckert, and P.C.H. Pritchard. 2012. Synopsis of the Biological Data on the Leatherback Sea Turtle (Dermochelys Coriacea). U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Biological Technical Publication BTP-R4015-2012, Washington, D.C.

EPA. 2012. National Coastal Condition Report. https://www.epa.gov/sites/default/files/2014-10/documents/0_nccr_4_report_508_bookmarks.pdf

EPA. 2015. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Office of Water and Office of Research and Development. (2015). National Coastal Condition Assessment 2010 (EPA 841-R-15-006). Washington, DC. December 2015. http://www.epa.gov/national-aquatic-resource-surveys/ncca

Erickson, D. L., et al. 2011. Use of pop-up satellite archival tags to identify oceanic-migratory patterns for adult Atlantic Sturgeon, Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus Mitchell, 1815. J. Appl. Ichthyol. 27: 356–365.

Eyler, S., M. Mangold, and S. Minkkinen. 2004. Atlantic Coast sturgeon tagging database. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Maryland Fishery Resources Office, Annapolis

Flinn, R. D., A. W. Trites and E. J. Gregr. 2002. Diets of fin, sei, and sperm whales in British Columbia: An analysis of commercial whaling records, 1963-1967. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 18(3): 663-679.

Garrison, L.P. and L. Aichinger Dias. 2020. Distribution and abundance of cetaceans in the northern Gulf of Mexico.
NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SEFSC-747. 40pp. Available from:
https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/25568

Gambell, R., 1977. Whale conservation: role of the International Whaling Commission. Marine Policy, 1(4), pp.301-310.

Gambell, R. 1985. Sei whale – Balaenoptera borealis. In S. H. Ridgway & R. Harrison (Eds.), Sei whale – Balaenoptera borealis (Vol. 1, pp. 155-170). Toronto: Academic Press.

George, R. H. 1997. Health problems and diseases of sea turtles. In Lutz, P.L. and Musick, J.A. (Eds.), The Biology of Sea Turtles (Volume I, pp. 363-385). CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

Gerle E., R. DiGiovanni and R.P. Pisciotta. 1998, 2000. "A Fifteen year review of cold-stunned sea turtles in New York waters." In Abreu-Grobois FA: Proceedings of the Eighteenth International Sea Turtle Symposium, NOAA Tech Memo NMFS-SEFSC-436.

Griffin, D. B., S. R. Murphy, M. G. Frick, A. C. Broderick, J. W. Coker, M. S. Coyne, M. G. Dodd, M. H. Godfrey, B. J. Godley, L. A. Hawkes, T. M. Murphy, K. L. Williams, and M. J. Witt. 2013. Foraging habitats and migration corridors utilized by a recovering subpopulation of adult female loggerhead sea turtles: implications for conservation. Marine Biology 160(12): 3071-3086.

Guida, V., et al. 2017. Habitat Mapping and Assessment of Northeast Wind Energy Areas. U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management. OCS Study BOEM 2017-088.

Hain, J. et al. 1985. The Role of Cetaceans in the Shelf-Edge Region of the Northeastern United States. Marine Fisheries Review. 47 (1). 13-17.

Hain, J. H. W., M. J. Ratnaswamy, R. D. Kenney, and H. E. Winn. 1992. The fin whale, Balaenoptera physalus, in waters of the Northeastern United States continental shelf. Report of the International Whaling Commission 42.

Hamilton, PK et al. 2007. Right whales tell their own stories: The photo-identification catalog. Pages 75–104 in S. D. Kraus and R. M. Rolland, eds. The urban whale: North Atlantic right whales at the crossroads. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2021. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2020. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-271.
https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/2021-07/Atlantic%202020%20SARs%20Final.pdf?null%09

Hayes, S.A., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, P.E. Rosel (eds). (2020). US Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments - 2019 U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, MA. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-264, July 2020. 479 pp.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2019. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2018. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-258.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2018. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2017 Second Edition. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-245.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2017. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2016. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-241.

Henry, A., M. Garron, D. M. Morin, A. Reid, W. Ledwell, and T. V. N. Cole. 2020. Serious injury and mortality determinations for baleen whale stocks along the Gulf of Mexico, United States East Coast, and Atlantic Canadian Provinces, 2013-2017. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, Massachusetts. Center Reference Document 20-06. Available from: https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/25359.

Horwood, J. (1987). The sei whale: Population biology, ecology & management. London: Croom Helm.

Jacobs Engineering Group, Inc. 2021. Construction and Operations Plan, South Fork Wind Farm. Last Updated May 2021 (originally submitted June 2018). *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/South-Fork-Construction-Operations-Plan.pdf*

Jacobsen, K., M. Marx, and N. Ølien. 2004. Two-way trans-Atlantic migration of a North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis). Marine Mammal Science 20(1):161–166.

James, M. C., C. Andrea Ottensmeyer, and R. A. Myers. 2005a. Identification of high-use habitat and threats to leatherback sea turtles in northern waters: new directions for conservation. Ecology Letters 8(2): 195-201.

James, M. C., S. A. Eckert, and R. A. Myers. 2005b. Migratory and reproductive movements of male leatherback turtles (Dermochelys coriacea). Marine Biology 147: 845.

James, M. C., R. A. Myers, and C. A. Ottensmeyer. 2005c. Behaviour of leatherback sea turtles, Dermochelys coriacea, during the migratory cycle. Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences 272(1572): 1547-1555.

James, M. C., C. A. Ottensmeyer, S. A. Eckert, and R. A. Myers. 2006a. Changes in diel diving patterns accompany shifts between northern foraging and southward migration in leatherback turtles. Canadian Journal of Zoology 84: 754+.

James, M. C., S. A. Sherrill-Mix, K. Martin, and R. A. Myers. 2006b. Canadian waters provide critical foraging habitat for leatherback sea turtles. Biological Conservation 133(3): 347-357.

Johnson, J.H., D.S. Dropkin, B.E. Warkentine, J.W. Rachlin, and W.D. Andrews. 1997. Food habits of Atlantic sturgeon off the central New Jersey coast. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 126:166-170.

Kaplan, B., ed. 2011. Literature Synthesis for the North and Central Atlantic Ocean. U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Regulation and Enforcement, Gulf of Mexico OCS Region, New Orleans, LA. OCS Study BOEMRE 2011-012. 447 pp.

Kazyak, D.C., White, S.L., Lubinski, B.A., Johnson, R. and Eackles, M., 2021. Stock composition of Atlantic sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus) encountered in marine and estuarine environments on the US Atlantic Coast. Conservation Genetics, pp.1-15.

Kenney, R.D., and H.E. Winn. 1986. “Cetacean High-Use Habitats of the Northeast United States Continental Shelf.” Fishery Bulletin 84: 345–357.

Kenney, R.D. and Winn, H.E., 1987. Cetacean biomass densities near submarine canyons compared to adjacent shelf/slope areas. Continental Shelf Research, 7(2), pp.107-114.

Kenney, R.D., and K.J. Vigness-Raposa. 2010. RICRMC (Rhode Island Coastal Resources Management Council) Ocean Special Area Management Plan (SAMP), Volume 2. Appendix, Chapter 10. Marine Mammals and Sea Turtles of Narragansett Bay, Block Island Sound, Rhode Island Sound, and Nearby Waters: An Analysis of Existing Data for the Rhode Island Ocean Special Area Management Plan.

Khan, C., P. Duley, A. Henry, J. Gatzke, T. Cole. 2014. North Atlantic Right Whale Sighting Survey (NARWSS) and Right Whale Sighting Advisory System (RWSAS) 2013 Results Summary. U.S. Department of Commerce, Northeast Fishery Science Center Reference Document 14-11.

Kirkpatrick, J.A., et al. 2017. Socio-Economic Impact of Outer Continental Shelf Wind Energy Development on Fisheries in the U.S. Atlantic, Vol. I – Report Narrative. U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Atlantic OCS Region. Washington, D.C. OCS Study BOEM 2017-012

Knowlton, A.R., J. Sigurjonsson, J.N. Ciano, and S.D. Kraus. 1992. Long distance movements of North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis). Mar. Mamm. Sci. 8(4): 397 405.

Kraus, S. D., and J.J. Hatch. 2001. “Mating Strategies in the North Atlantic Right Whale.” Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 2 (Special Issue): 237-244.

Kraus, S.D., R.D. Kenney, C.A Mayo, W.A. McLellan, M.J. Moore, D.P. Nowacek. 2016a. “Recent Scientific Publications Cast Doubt on North Atlantic Right Whale Future.” Frontiers in Marine Science 3, no. 137:1-3.

Kraus, S.D., et al. 2016b. Northeast Large Pelagic Survey Collaborative Aerial and Acoustic Surveys for Large Whales and Sea Turtles. U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Sterling, Virginia. OCS Study BOEM 2016-054.

Kynard, B., M. Horgan, M. Kieffer, and D. Seibel. 2000. Habitats used by shortnose sturgeon in two Massachusetts rivers, with notes on estuarine Atlantic sturgeon: A hierarchical approach. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 129(2): 487-503.

LaBrecque, E, C. Curtice, J. Harrison, S.M. Van Parijs, P.N. Halpin. 2015. “Biologically Important Areas for Cetaceans within US Waters—East Coast Region.” Aquatic Mammals 41, no. 1: 17–29.

Laney, R.W. et al. 2007. Distribution, habitat use, and size of Atlantic sturgeon captured during cooperative winter tagging cruises, 1988–2006. Pages 167-182. In: J. Munro, D. Hatin, J. E. Hightower, K. McKown, K. J. Sulak, A. W. Kahnle, and F. Caron, (editors), Anadromous sturgeons: Habi¬tats, threats, and management. Am. Fish. Soc. Symp. 56, Bethesda, MD

Leiter, S.M., et al. 2017. “North Atlantic Right Whale Eubalaena Glacialis Occurrence in Offshore Wind Energy Areas near Massachusetts and Rhode Island, USA.” Endangered Species Research 34: 45–59.

Mansfield, K. L., V. S. Saba, J. A. Keinath, and J. A. Musick. 2009. Satellite tracking reveals dichotomy in migration strategies among juvenile loggerhead turtles in the Northwest Atlantic. Marine Biology 156: 2555-2570.

Mayo, C. A. and M. K. Marx. 1990. Surface foraging behaviour of the North Atlantic right whale, Eubalaena glacialis, and associated zooplankton characteristics. Canadian Journal of Zoology 68(10): 2214-2220.

Mead, J.G., 1977. Records of sei and Bryde’s whales from the Atlantic coast of the United States, the Gulf of Mexico, and the Caribbean. Reports of the International Whaling Commission (Special Issue 1), pp.113-116.

Mellinger, D. et al. 2011. Confirmation of right whales near a nineteenth-century whaling ground east of southern Greenland. Biology letters. 7. 411-3. 10.1098/rsbl.2010.1191.

Milton, S. L. and P. L. Lutz. 2003. Physiological and genetic responses to environmental stress. In Musick, J.A. and Wyneken, J. (Eds.), The Biology of Sea Turtles, Volume II (pp. 163–197). CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

Morano, J. L., and coauthors. 2012. Acoustically detected year-round presence of right whales in an urbanized migration corridor. Conservation Biology 26(4):698-707.

Morreale, S. J., A. Meylan, S. S. Sadove, and E. A. Standora. 1992. Annual occurrence and winter mortality of marine turtles in New York waters. Journal of Herpetology 26: 301-308.

Morreale, S. J. and E. A. Standora. 1998. Early life stage ecology of sea turtles in northeastern U.S. waters. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-413: 49. National Marine Fisheries Service, Southeast Fisheries Science Center, 75 Virginia Beach Drive, Miami, Florida.

Morreale, S. J. and E. A. Standora. 2005. Western North Atlantic waters: crucial developmental habitat for Kemp's ridley and loggerhead sea turtles. Chelonian Conservation and Biology 4(4): 872-882.

Murison, L. D. and D. E. Gaskin. 1989. The distribution of right whales and zooplankton in the Bay of Fundy, Canada. Canadian Journal of Zoology 67(6): 1411-1420.

Murray, K.T. 2013. Estimated loggerhead and unidentified hard-shelled turtle interactions in Mid-Atlantic gillnet gear 2007–2011. U.S. Dep. Commer. Northeast Fish. Sci. Center Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-225 (2013), p. 21p

Murray, K.T. and C.D. Orphanides. 2013. Estimating risk of loggerhead turtle (Caretta caretta) bycatch in the U.S. mid-Atlantic using fishery –independent and –dependent data. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 477, pp. 259-270

Mussoline, S. E., and coauthors. 2012. Seasonal and diel variation in North Atlantic right whale up-calls: Implications for management and conservation in the northwestern Atlantic Ocean. Endangered Species Research 17(1-Jan):17-26.

NEFSC and SEFSC. 2018. 2018Annual Report of a Comprehensive Assessment of Marine Mammal, Marine Turtle, and Seabird Abundance and Spatial Distributionin US waters of the Western North Atlantic Ocean –AMAPPS II. https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/22040

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2010. Recovery Plan for the Sperm Whale (Physeter Macrocephalus). National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD.

NMFS. 2010. Recovery plan for the fin whale (Balaenoptera physalus). U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS. 2011. Preliminary summer 2010 regional abundance estimate of loggerhead turtles (Caretta caretta) in northwestern Atlantic Ocean continental shelf waters. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Centers, Woods Hole, MA. Center Reference Document 11-03. Available from: https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/3879.

NMFS. 2013a. Biological report on the designation of marine critical habitat for the loggerhead sea turtle, Caretta caretta. National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2018a. Fin Whale Balaenoptera Physalus. Accessed September 1, 2018. Retrieved from: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/species/fin-whale fin

NMFS. 2019a. 2018 Annual report of a comprehensive assessment of marine mammal, marine turtle, and seabird abundance and spatial distribution in U.S. waters of the western North Atlantic Ocean – AMAPPS II. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast and Southeast Fisheries Science Centers, Woods Hole, Massachusetts. Available from: https://www.nefsc.noaa.gov/psb/AMAPPS/.

NMFS. 2021. Biological Opinion for the South Fork Wind Project. GARFO-2021-00353.

NMFS. 2020. Biological Opinion for the Vineyard Wind Project. GARFO-2019-00343

NMFS. 2016. Biological Opinion for the Virginia Offshore Wind Technology Advancement Project. NER-2015-12128

NMFS. 2015. Biological Opinion for the Block Island Wind Farm. NER-2015-12248

NMFS, and USFWS. 2008. Recovery plan for the northwest Atlantic population of the loggerhead sea turtle (Caretta caretta), second revision. National Marine Fisheries Service and United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS, USFWS, SEMARNET, CNANP, and PROFEPA. 2011. Bi-national recovery plan for the Kemp's ridley sea turtle (Lepidochelys kempii), second revision. National Marine Fisheries Service, United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Secretariat of Environment & Natural Resources, National Commissioner of the Natural Protected Areas, Administrator of the Federal Attorney of Environmental Protection, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS Northeast Fisheries Science Center Right Whale Sightings Advisory System. Interactive Maps. Available at: https://apps-nefsc.fisheries.noaa.gov/psb/surveys/MapperiframeWithText.html

Patel, S. et al. 2016. "Videography Reveals In-Water Behavior of Loggerhead Turtles (Caretta caretta) at a Foraging Ground." Frontiers in Marine Science. Volume 3. https://www.frontiersin.org/article/10.3389/fmars.2016.00254; DOI=10.3389/fmars.2016.00254

Patel, S. H., S. G. Barco, L. M. Crowe, J. P. Manning, E. Matzen, R. J. Smolowitz, and H. L. Haas. 2018. Loggerhead turtles are good ocean-observers in stratified mid-latitude regions. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 213: 128-136.

Patrician, M.R., Biedron, I.S., Esch, H.C., Wenzel, F.W., Cooper, L.A., Hamilton, P.K., Glass, A.H. and Baumgartner, M.F. (2009), Evidence of a North Atlantic right whale calf (Eubalaena glacialis) born in northeastern U.S. waters. Marine Mammal Science, 25: 462-477. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1748-7692.2008.00261.x

Payne, M.P., D.N. Wiley, S.B. Young, S. Pittman, P.J. Clapham, and J.W. Jossi. 1990. "Recent Fluctuations in the Abundance of Baleen Whales in the Southern Gulf of Maine in Relation to Changes in Selected Prey." Fisheries Bulletin 88, no. 4: 687-696.

Parks, S.E., D.R. Ketten, J.T. O'Malley, and J. Arruda. 2007. "Anatomical Predictions of Hearing in the North Atlantic Right Whale." The Anatomical Record 290:734–744.

Pendleton, D. E., A. J. Pershing, M. W. Brown, C. A. Mayo, R. D. Kenney, N. R. Record, and T. V. Cole. 2009. Regional-scale mean copepod concentration indicates relative abundance of North Atlantic right whales. Marine Ecology Progress Series 378: 211-225.

Pendleton, D. E., P. J. Sullivan, M. W. Brown, T. V. N. Cole, C. P. Good, C. A. Mayo, B. C. Monger, S. Phillips, N. R. Record, and A. J. Pershing. 2012. Weekly predictions of North Atlantic right whale Eubalaena glacialis habitat reveal influence of prey abundance and seasonality of habitat preferences. Endangered Species Research 18(2): 147-161.

Pettis, H.M. et al. 2018. North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium 2018 Annual Report Card. Report to the North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium. Available at: https://www.narwc.org/uploads/1/1/6/6/116623219/2018report_cardfinal.pdf

Polovina,J. I. Uchida, G. Balazs, E.A. Howell, D. Parker, P. Dutton. 2006. The Kuroshio Extension Bifurcation Region: a pelagic hotspot for juvenile loggerhead sea turtles. Deep Sea Res. Part II Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 53, pp. 326-339

Quintana, E., S. Kraus, and M. Baumgartner. 2018. Megafauna Aerial Surveys in the Wind Energy Areas of Massachusetts and Rhode Island with Emphasis on Large Whales. Summary Report – Campaign 4, 2017-2018. BOEM Cooperative Agreement #M17AC00002 with the Massachusetts Clean Energy Center.

Quintana-Rizzo, et al. 2021. Residency, demographics, and movement patterns of North Atlantic right whales Eubalaena glacialis in an offshore wind energy development area in southern New England, USA. Endangered Species Research. Vol 45: 251-268. DOI: https://doi.org/10.3354/esr01137

Record, N. R., et alhain. 2019. Rapid climate-driven circulation changes threaten conservation of endangered North Atlantic right whales. Oceanography 32(2): 163-169.

Reeves, R. R. and H. Whitehead. 1997. Status of sperm whale, Physeter macrocephalus, in Canada. Canadian Field Naturalist 111: 293-307.

Right Whale Consortium (2018). North Atlantic Right Whale Consortium Sightings Database August 16, 2018. Anderson Cabot Center for Ocean Life at the New England Aquarium, Boston, MA, U.S.A. As cited in BOEM. 2019. Vineyard Wind Offshore Wind Energy Project Biological Assessment. December 2018 (Revised March 2019). For the National Marine Fisheries Service.

Roberts J.J., et al. 2016a. “Habitat-Based Cetacean Density Models for the U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico.” Scientific Reports 6: 22615. doi: 10.1038/srep22615

Roberts, J.J., L. Mannocci, P.N. Halpin. 2016b. Final Project Report: Marine Species Density Data Gap Assessments and Update for the AFTT Study Area, 2016-2017 (Opt. Year 1). Document version 1.4. Report prepared for Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Atlantic by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab, Durham, NC.

Roberts, J. J., L. Mannocci, and P.N. Halpin. (2017). Final project report: Marine species density data gap assessments and update for the AFTT study area, 2016-2017 (Opt. Year 1). Document version 1.4. Report prepared for Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Atlantic by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab. Durham, NC.

Roberts, J. J., Mannocci, L., Schick, R. S., & Halpin, P. N. (2018). Final Project Report: Marine Species Density Data Gap Assessments and Update for the AFTT Study Area, 2017-2018 (Opt. Year 2). Document version 1.2. Report by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab for Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Atlantic Durham, NC, USA.

Roberts JJ. (2020). Revised habitat-based marine mammal density models for the U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico. Unpublished data files received with permission to use August, 2020.

Rochard, E.; Lepage, M.; Meauze, L., 1997: Identification and characterisation of the marine distribution of the European sturgeon Acipenser sturio. Aquat. Living Resour. 10, 101– 109.

Rogan, E. et al. 2017. Distribution, abundance and habitat use of deep diving cetaceans in the North-East Atlantic. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography. 141. 10.1016/j.dsr2.2017.03.015.

Ruben, H. J. and S. J. Morreale. 1999. Draft biological assessment for sea turtles New York and New Jersey harbor complex. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, North Atlantic Division, New York District, 26 Federal Plaza, New York, NY 10278-0090, September 1999.

Savoy, T., L. Maceda, N.K. Roy, D. Peterson, and I. Wirgin. 2017. Evidence of natural reproduction of Atlantic sturgeon in the Connecticut River from unlikely sources. PLoS ONE 12(4):e0175085.

Sasso, CR. 2021. Leatherback Turtles in the Eastern Gulf of Mexico: Foraging and Migration Behavior During the Autumn and Winter. Frontiers in Marine Science. 28 April 2021. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmars.2021.660798

Scales, K. L., Miller, P. I., Hawkes, L. A., Ingram, S. N., Sims, D. W., and Votier, S. C. 2014. On the Front Line: frontal zones as priority at-sea conservation areas for mobile marine vertebrates. J. Appl. Ecol. 51, 1575–1583. doi: 10.1111/1365- 2664.12330

Schmid, J.R., 1998. Marine turtle populations on the. Fishery Bulletin, 96, pp.589-602.

Scott, T. M. and S. S. Sadove. 1997. Sperm whale, Physeter macrocephalus, sightings in the shallow shelf waters off Long Island, New York. Marine Mammal Science 13(2): 317-321.

Sherrill-Mix, S.A., James, M.C. and Myers, R.A., 2008. Migration cues and timing in leatherback sea turtles. Behavioral Ecology, 19(2), pp.231-236.

Shoop, C.R., and R.D. Kenney. 1992. Seasonal distributions and abundance of loggerhead and leatherback sea turtles in waters of the northeastern United States. Herpetological Monographs 6:43-67

Silva, Mónica & Steiner, Lisa & Cascão, Irma & Cruz, Maria & Prieto, Rui & Cole, Timothy & Hamilton, Philip & Baumgartner, Mark. (2012). Winter sighting of a known western North Atlantic right whale in the Azores. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management. 12. 65-69.

Smolowitz, R. J., S. H. Patel, H. L. Haas, and S. A. Miller. 2015. Using a remotely operated vehicle (ROV) to observe loggerhead sea turtle (Caretta caretta) behavior on foraging grounds off the mid-Atlantic United States. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 471: 84-91.

Spotila, J.R., and E.A. Standora. 1985. “Environmental Constraints on the Thermal Energetics of Sea Turtles.” Copeia 3: 694-702.

Stein, A.B., K.D. Friedland, and M. Sutherland. 2004a. “Atlantic Sturgeon Marine Distribution and Habitat Use along the Northeastern Coast of the United States.” Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 133: 527-537.

Stein, A.B., K.D. Friedland, and M. Sutherland. 2004b. “Atlantic Sturgeon Marine Bycatch and Mortality on the Continental Shelf of the Northeast United States.” North American Journal of Fisheries Management 24: 171-183.

Stone, K.M., et al. 2017. “Distribution and Abundance of Cetaceans in a Wind Energy Development Area Offshore of Massachusetts and Rhode Island.” Journal of Coastal Conservation 21: 527–543.

Ullman, D. and P. Cornillon. 1999. “Satellite-derived sea surface temperature fronts on the continental shelf off the northeast U.S. Coast.” Journal of Geophysical Research 104 no. 10: 23,459-23,478.

Wallace, BP, L. Avens, J. Braun-McNeill, C.M. McClellan. 2009. The diet composition of immature loggerheads: insights on trophic niche, growth rates, and fisheries interactions. J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol., 373 (1), pp. 50-57

Wallace, B. P., M. Zolkewitz, and M. C. James. 2015. Fine-scale foraging ecology of leatherback turtles. Frontiers in Ecology and Evolution 3: 15.

Waring, G. T., C. P. Fairfield, C. M. Ruhsam, and M. Sano. 1993. Sperm whales associated with Gulf Stream features off the northeastern USA shelf. Fisheries Oceanography 2(2): 101-105.

Waring, G. T., T. Hamazaki, D. Sheehan, G. Wood, and S. Baker. 2001. Characterizaton of beaked whale (Ziphiidae) and sperm whale (Physeter macrocephalus) summer habitat use in shelf-edge and deeper waters off the northeast U.S. Marine Mammal Science 17(4): 703-717.

Waring, G. T., et al. 2014. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments - 2013.

Waring, G.T., E. Josephson, C.P. Fairfield-Walsh, K. Maze-Foley, editors. 2015. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments -- 2014. NOAA Tech Memo NMFS NE 231.

WBWS (Wellfleet Bay Wildlife Sanctuary). 2018. Sea Turtles on Cape Cod. Accessed August 7, 2018. Retrieved from: https://www.massaudubon.org/get-outdoors/wildlife-sanctuaries/wellfleet-bay/about/our-conservation-work/sea-turtles

Weeks, M., R. Smolowitz, and R. Curry. 2010. Sea turtle oceanography study, Gloucester, Massachusetts. Final Progress Report for 2009 RSA Program. Submitted to National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Regional Office.

Weinrich, M., R. Kenney, P. Hamilton. 2000. “Right Whales (Eubalaena Glacialis) on Jeffreys Ledge: A Habitat of Unrecognized Importance?” Marine Mammal Science 16: 326−337.

Whitehead, H. 2002. Estimates of the current global population and historical trajectory for sperm whales. Marine Ecology Progress Series 242: 295-304.

Whitt, A.D., K. Dudzinski, and J.R. Laliberté. 2013. “North Atlantic Right Whale Distribution and Seasonal Occurrence in Nearshore Waters off New Jersey, USA, and Implications for Management.” Endangered Species Research 20: 59–69.

Winton, M. V., G. Fay, H. L. Haas, M. Arendt, S. Barco, M. C. James, C. Sasso, and R. Smolowitz. 2018. Estimating the distribution and relative density of satellite-tagged loggerhead sea turtles in the western North Atlantic using geostatistical mixed effects models. Marine Ecology Progress Series 586: 217-232.

Wirgin, I. and T.L. King. 2011. Mixed stock analysis of Atlantic sturgeon from coastal locales and a non-spawning river. Presentation of the 2011 Sturgeon Workshop, Alexandria, VA, February 8-10.

Wirgin, I., J.R. Waldman, J. Rosko, R. Gross, M.R. Collins, S.G. Rogers, and J. Stabile. 2000. Genetic structure of Atlantic sturgeon populations based on mitochondrial DNA control region sequences. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society. 129:476-486.

Wippelhauser, G. et al. 2017. Movements of Atlantic Sturgeon of the Gulf of Maine Inside and Outside of the Geographically Defined Distinct Population Segment, Marine and Coastal Fisheries, 9:1, 93-107, DOI: 10.1080/19425120.2016.1271845

Zollett, Erika. (2009). Bycatch of protected species and other species of concern in US east coast commercial fisheries. Endangered Species Research. 9. 49-59. 10.3354/esr00221.

62 Federal Register 6729. February 13, 1997. North Atlantic Right Whale Protection. Document Number: 97-3632

73 Federal Register 60173. October 10, 2008. Endangered Fish and Wildlife; Final Rule To Implement Speed Restrictions to Reduce the Threat of Ship Collisions With North Atlantic Right Whales. Document Number: E8-24177

81 Federal Register 4837. Endangered and Threatened Species; Critical Habitat for Endangered North Atlantic Right Whale. January 27, 2016. https://www.federalregister.gov/documents/2016/01/27/2016-01633/endangered-and-threatened-species-critical-habitat-for-endangered-north-atlantic-right-whale

86 Federal Register 33810. Takes of Marine Mammals Incidental to Specified Activities; Taking Marine Mammals Incidental to Construction of the Vineyard Wind Offshore Wind Project. June 25, 2021. https://www.federalregister.gov/documents/2021/06/25/2021-13501/takes-of-marine-mammals-incidental-to-specified-activities-taking-marine-mammals-incidental-to

7.0 Effects of the Action

Jacobs Engineering Group, Inc. 2021. Construction and Operations Plan, South Fork Wind Farm. Last Updated May 2021 (originally submitted June 2018). *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/South-Fork-Construction-Operations-Plan.pdf*

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and National Marine Fisheries Service. 1998. Endangered Species Consultation Handbook: Procedures for Conducting Consultations and Conference Activities Under Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act. 315 pp.

https://www.fws.gov/southwest/es/arizona/Documents/Consultations/esa_section7_handbook.pdf

7.1 Underwater Noise

Amorin, M., M. McCracken, and M. Fine. 2002. Metablic costs of sound production in the oyster toadfish, Opsanus tau. Canadian Journal of Zoology 80:830-838.

Andersson, M.H., Dock-Åkerman, E., Ubral-Hedenberg, R., Öhman, M.C. and Sigray, P., 2007. Swimming behavior of roach (Rutilus rutilus) and three-spined stickleback (Gasterosteus aculeatus) in response to wind power noise and single-tone frequencies. Ambio, 36(8), p.636.

ANSI (American National Standards Institute). 1986. Methods of Measurement for Impulse Noise 3 (ANSI S12.7-1986). Acoustical Society of America, Woodbury, NY.

ANSI. 1995. Bioacoustical Terminology (ANSI S3.20-1995). Acoustical Society of America, Woodbury, NY.

ANSI. 2005. Measurement of Sound Pressure Levels in Air (ANSI S1.13-2005). Acoustical Society of America, Woodbury, NY.

Austin, M. E., Denes, S. L., MacDonnell, J. T., & Warner, G. A. 2016. Hydroacoustic Monitoring Report: Anchorage Port Modernization Project Test Pile Program. Version 3.0. Technical report by JASCO Applied Sciences for Anchorage Port Modernization Project Test Pile Program. Anchorage, AK

Avens, L., and K. J. Lohmann. 2003. Use of multiple orientation cues by juvenile loggerhead sea turtles, Caretta caretta. Journal of Experiential Biology 206(23):4317–4325.

Bartol, S. M., and D. R. Ketten. 2006. Turtle and tuna hearing. Pages 98-103 in R. W. Y. B. Swimmer, editor. Sea Turtle and Pelagic Fish Sensory Biology: Developing Techniques to Reduce Sea Turtle Bycatch in Longline Fisheries, volume Technical Memorandum NMFS-PIFSC-7. U.S Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center.

Bartol, S. M., J. A. Musick, and M. Lenhardt. 1999a. Auditory evoked potentials of the loggerhead sea turtle (Caretta caretta). Copeia 3:836-840.

Bartol, S. M., J. A. Musick, and M. Lenhardt. 1999b. Evoked potentials of the loggerhead sea turtle (Caretta caretta). Copeia 1999(3):836-840.

Beale, C. M., and P. Monaghan. 2004a. Behavioural responses to human disturbance: A matter of choice? Animal Behaviour 68(5):1065-1069.

Beale, C. M., and P. Monaghan. 2004b. Human disturbance: people as predation-free predators?

Journal of Applied Ecology 41:335-343.

Bellmann, M. A. 2014. Overview of existing noise mitigation systems for reducing pile-driving noise. Paper presented at the Inter-noise2014, Melbourne, Australia.

Bellmann, M.A., (2019). Results from noise measurements in European offshore wind farms. Presentation at Orsted Underwater Noise Mini Workshop. Washington, D.C., October 2, 2019. Data in Press (German).

Bellmann M. A., Brinkmann J., May A., Wendt T., Gerlach S. & Remmers P. (2020) Underwater noise during the impulse pile-driving procedure: Influencing factors on pile-driving noise and technical possibilities to comply with noise mitigation values. Supported by the Federal Ministry for the Environment, Nature Conservation and Nuclear Safety (Bundesministerium für Umwelt, Naturschutz und nukleare Sicherheit (BMU)), FKZ UM16 881500. Commissioned and managed by the Federal Maritime and Hydrographic Agency (Bundesamt für Seeschifffahrt und Hydrographie (BSH)), Order No. 10036866. Edited by the itap GmbH. https://www.itap.de/media/experience_report_underwater_era-report.pdf

Betke, K. (2008). Measurement of Wind Turbine Construction Noise at Horns Rev II (1256-08-aKB)(Technical report by Institut für technische und angewandte Physik GmbH (ITAP) for BioConsultSH. Husun, Germany

BOEM (Bureau of Ocean Energy Management). 2015. Virginia Offshore Wind Technology Advancement Project on the Atlantic Outer Continental Shelf Offshore Virginia. Revised Environmental Assessment. OCS EIS/EA BOEM 2015-031.

BOEM. 2021. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Biological Assessment, January 2021, for the National Marine Fisheries Service. *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/state-activities/SFWF-BA-NMFS.pdf*

BOEM. 2021. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Biological Assessment Supplement, July 2021. Prepared by SWCA Environmental Consultants. *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/state-activities/SFWF-BA-NMFS.pdf*

Bonacito, C., and coauthors. 2001. Acoustical and temporal features of sounds of Sciaena umbra (Sciaenidae) in the Miramare Marine Reserve (Gulf of Trieste, Italy). In: Proceedings of XVIII IBAC, International Bioacoustics Council Meeting, Cogne. Bonacito, C., Costantini, M., Picciulin, M., Ferrero, E.A., Hawkins, A.D., 2002. Passive hydrophone census of Sciaena umbra (Sciaenidae)in the Gulf of Trieste (Northern Adriatic Sea, Italy). Bioacoustics 12 (2/3), 292–294.

Booman, C., and coauthors. 1996. Effekter av luftkanonskyting pa egg, larver og ynell. Havforskningsinstituttet.

Booth, C., Donovan, C., Plunkett, R., & Harwood, J. 2016. Using an interim PCoD protocol to assess the effects of disturbance associated with US Navy exercises on marine mammal populations Final Report (SMRUC-ONR-2016-004).

Booth, C., Harwood, J., Plunkett, R., Mendes, S., & Walker, R. 2017. Using the Interim PCoD framework to assess the potential impacts of offshore wind developments in Eastern English Waters on harbour porpoises in the North Sea (Natural England Joint Publication JP024).

Buehler, D. et al. 2015. CALTRANS Engineering Technical Brief: Overview of the Evaluation of Pile Driving Impacts on Fish for the Permitting Process. Technical Advisory, Hydroacoustic Analysis TAH-15-01. https://dot.ca.gov/-/media/dot-media/programs/environmental-analysis/documents/env/bio-hydroacoustic-impact-assessment-overview-a11y.pdf

Caltrans (California Department of Transportation). 2015. Technical guidance for assessment and mitigation of the hydroacoustic effects of pile driving on fish. California Department of Transportation: 532.

Caltrans (California Department of Transportation). 2020. Technical guidance for the assessment of hydroacoustic effects of pile driving on fish. 2020 Update. https://dot.ca.gov/-/media/dot-media/programs/environmental-analysis/documents/env/hydroacoustic-manual.pdf

Carlson, T.J., D.L. Woodruff, G.E. Johnson, N.P. Kohn, G.R. Ploskey, M.A. Weiland, et al. 2005. Hydroacoustic measurements during pile driving at the Hood Canal Bridge, September through November 2004. PNWD-3621, Prepared by Battelle Marine Sciences Laboratory for the Washington State Department of Transportation: 165.

Casper, B., M. Halvorsen, F. Mattews, T. Carlson, and A. Popper. 2013a. Recovery of barotrauma injuries resulting from exposure to pile driving sound in two sizes of hybrid striped bass. PLoS ONE, 8(9), e73844. .

Casper, B., M. Halvorsen, and A. Popper. 2012a. Are Sharks Even Bothered by a Noisy Environment? In A. N. Popper and A. D. Hawkins (Eds.), The Effects of Noise on Aquatic Life II.

Casper, B., and coauthors. 2013b. Effects of exposure to pile driving sounds on fish inner ear tissues. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology, Part A, 166(2), 352–360. .

Casper, B. M., M. B. Halvorsen, and A. N. Popper. 2012b. Are sharks even bothered by a noisy environment? Adv Exp Med Biol 730:93-7.

Christiansen, F., & Lusseau, D. 2015. Linking behavior to vital rates to measure the effects of non-lethal disturbance on wildlife. Conservation Letters, 8(6), 424–431.

Clark, C.W., et al. 2009. Acoustic masking in marine ecosystems: Intuitions, analysis, and implication. Marine Ecology Progress Series 395:201-222.

Costa, D.P., D.E. Crocker, J. Gedamke, P.M. Webb, D.S. Houser, S.B. Blackwell, et al. 2003. The effect of a low-frequency sound source (acoustic thermometry of the ocean climate) on the diving behavior of juvenile northern elephant seals, Mirounga angustirostris. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 113 (2):1155-1165.

Cox, B., A. Dux, M. Quist, and C. Guy. 2012. Use of a seismic air gun to reduce survival of nonnative lake trout embryos: a tool for conservation? North American Journal of Fisheries Management, 32(2), 292–298.

Crocker, S.E. and F.D. Fratantonio. 2016. Characteristics of Sounds Emitted During High-Resolution Marine Geophysical Surveys. Naval Undersea Warfare Center Division. Accessed November 21, 2018. Retrieved from: https://www.boem.gov/ESPIS/5/5551.pdf

CSA Ocean Sciences, Inc for South Fork Wind LLC. 2021. Request for an Incidental Harassment Authorization to Allow Harassment of Marine Mammals Incidental to Activities Associated with South Fork Wind Farm and Export Cable Construction. BOEM Lease OCS-A 0517. *https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/2021-02/SouthForkWind_2021proposedIHA_App_OPR1.pdf?null=*

Dähne, M., Tougaard, J., Carstensen, J., Rose, A., & Nabe-Nielsen, J. 2017. Bubble curtains attenuate noise from offshore wind farm construction and reduce temporary habitat loss for harbour porpoises. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 580, 221-237.

D'amelio, A. S., and coauthors. 1999. Biochemical responses of European sea bass (Dicentrarchus labrax L.) to the stress induced by offshore experimental seismic prospecting. Marine Pollution Bulletin 38(12):1105-1114.

de Jong, C. A. F., et al. 2010. Underwater noise of Trailing Suction Hopper Dredgers at Maasvlakte 2: Analysis of source levels and background noise – TNO-DV 2010 C335. https://dredging.org/media/ceda/org/documents/resources/othersonline/uwn-tno-dv2010c335.pdf

Denes., S.L., D.G. Zeddies, and M.M. Weirathmueller. 2020. Turbine Foundation and Cable Installation at South Fork Wind Farm: Underwater Acoustic Modeling of Construction Noise. Document 01584, Version 4.0. Technical report by JASCO Applied Sciences for Jacobs Engineering Group Inc. 5 February 2020

Denes, S.L., M.M. Weirathmueller, and D.G. Zeddies. 2020c. Foundation Installation at South Fork Wind Farm: Animal Exposure Modelling. Document 01726, Version 2.0. Technical report by JASCO Applied Sciences for Jacobs Engineering Group Inc. 5 February 2020

Department of the Navy (DON). 2007. Navy OPAREA Density Estimate (NODE) for the Northeast OPAREAs. Prepared for the Department of the Navy, U.S. Fleet Forces Command, Norfolk, Virginia. Contract #N62470-02-D-9997, CTO 0030. Prepared by Geo-Marine, Inc., Hampton, Virginia.

Dunlop, R. A. 2016. The effect of vessel noise on humpback whale, Megaptera novaeangliae, communication behaviour. Animal Behaviour 111:13-21.

Dwyer, C. M. 2004. How has the risk of predation shaped the behavioural responses of sheep to fear and distress? Animal Welfare 13(3):269-281.

Elliot, J. et al. 2019. Field Observations during Wind Turbine Operations at the Block Island Wind Farm, Rhode Island. Final Report to the U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Office of Renewable Energy Programs. OCS Study BOEM 2019-028. 281pp.

Engas, A., E. Haugland, and J. Ovredal. 1998. Reactions of Cod (Gadus Morhua L.) in the Pre-Vessel Zone to an Approaching Trawler under Different Light Conditions. Hydrobiologia, 371/372: 199–206.

Engas, A., O. Misund, A. Soldal, B. Horvei, and A. Solstad. 1995. Reactions of Penned Herring and Cod to Playback of Original, Frequency-Filtered and Time-Smoothed Vessel Sound. Fisheries Research, 22: 243–54.

Epsilon Associates, Inc. 2020. Construction and Operations Plan. Vineyard Wind Project. June 3, 2020. Last Accessed September 10, 2020. https://www.boem.gov/Vineyard-Wind/

Erbe, C., C. Reichmuth, K. Cunningham, K. Lucke, and R. Dooling. 2016. Communication masking in marine mammals: A review and research strategy. Marine Pollution Bulletin 103(1-2):15-38.

Farmer, N. A., Noren, D. P., Fougères, E. M., Machernis, A., & Baker, K. 2018. Resilience of the endangered sperm whale Physeter macrocephalus to foraging disturbance in the Gulf of Mexico, USA: A bioenergetic approach. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 589, 241–261. doi:10.3354/meps12457

Fewtrell, J. 2003. The response of Marine Finfish and Invertebrates to Seismic Survey Noise. Muresk Insititute. 20 pp.

FHWG. 2008. Memorandum of agreement in principle for interim criteria for injury to fish from pile driving. California Department of Transportation and Federal Highway Administration, Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group. https://dot.ca.gov/-/media/dot-media/programs/environmental-analysis/documents/ser/bio-fhwg-criteria-agree-a11y.pdf

Finneran, J.J. 2015. Noise-induced hearing loss in marine mammals: A review of temporary threshold shift studies from 1996 to 2015. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 138 (3):1702-1726.

Flower, J. E., and coauthors. 2015. Baseline plasma corticosterone, haematological and biochemical results in nesting and rehabilitating loggerhead sea turtles (Caretta caretta). Conservation Physiology 3(1).

Frid, A. 2003. Dall's sheep responses to overflights by helicopter and fixed-wing aircraft. Biological Conservation 110(3):387-399.

Frid, A., and L. Dill. 2002. Human-caused disturbance stimuli as a form of predation risk. Conservation Ecology 6(1):11.

Gill, J. A., K. Norris, and W. J. Sutherland. 2001. Why behavioural responses may not reflect the population consequences of human disturbance. Biological Conservation 97:265-268.

Gisiner, R. 1998. Workshop on the effects of anthropogenic noise in the marine environment. Office of Naval Research, Marine Mammal Science Program.

Goldbogen, J.A., J. Calambokidis, A.S. Friedlaender, J. Francis, S.L. Deruiter, A.K. Stimpert, et al. 2013a. Underwater acrobatics by the world's largest predator: 360° rolling manoeuvres by lunge-feeding blue whales. Biology Letters 9 (1):Article 20120986.

Gordon, J., and coauthors. 2003. A review of the effects of seismic surveys on marine mammals. Marine Technology Society Journal, 37(4), 16–34.

Götz, T., G. Hastie, L.T. Hatch, O. Raustein, B.L. Southall, M. Tasker, and F. Thomsen. 2009. Overview of the impacts of anthropogenic underwater sound in the marine environment. OSPAR Commission: 134.

Gregory, L. F., and J. R. Schmid. 2001. Stress response and sexing of wild Kemp's ridley sea turtles (Lepidochelys kempii) in the Northeastern Gulf of Mexico. General and Comparative Endocrinology 124:66–74.

Hain, J. H., et al. 2013. Swim speed, behavior, and movement of North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis) in coastal waters of northeastern Florida, USA. PloS one, 8(1), e54340. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0054340

Hale. R. 2018. Sounds from Submarine Cable & Pipeline Operations. EGS Survey Group representing the International Cable Protection Committee. https://www.un.org/depts/los/consultative_process/icp19_presentations/2.Richard%20Hale.pdf

Halpin, P.N., et al., 2009. OBIS-SEAMAP: The world data center for marine mammal, sea bird, and sea turtle distributions. Oceanography, 22(2), pp.104-115.

Halvorsen, M., B. Casper, F. Matthews, T. Carlson, and A. Popper. 2012a. Effects of exposure to pile-driving sounds on the lake sturgeon, Nile tilapia and hogchoker. Proceedings of Biological Sciences, 279(1748), 4705–4714.

Harrington, F. H., and A. M. Veitch. 1992. Calving success of woodland caribou exposed to lowlevel jet fighter overflights. Arctic 45(3):213-218.

Harris, C.M., ed. 1998. Handbook of Acoustical Measurements and Noise Control. Acoustical Society of America, Woodbury, NY.

Harris, C. M., Wilson, L. J., Booth, C. G., & Harwood, J. 2017. Population consequences of disturbance: A decision framework to identify priority populations for PCoD modelling. Paper presented at the 22nd Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada. October 21-28, 2017

Harwood, J., & Booth, C. 2016. The application of an interim PCoD (PCoD Lite) protocol and its extension to other marine mammal populations and sites Final Report (SMRUC-ONR-2016-004).

Hastings, M.C. and A.N. Popper. 2005. Effects of sound on fish. Prepared by Jones & Stokes for the California Department of Transportation: 82.

Hastings, M. C., C. A. Reid, C. C. Grebe, R. L. Hearn, and J. G. Colman. 2008. The effects of seismic airgun noise on the hearing sensitivity of tropical reef fishes at Scott Reef, Western Australia. Proceedings of the Institute of Acoustics 30(5):8.

Hazel, J., I. R. Lawler, H. Marsh, and S. Robson. 2007. Vessel speed increases collision risk for the green turtle Chelonia mydas. Endangered Species Research 3:105-113.

Hoopes, L. A., A. M. Landry Jr., and E. K. Stabenau. 2000. Physiological effects of capturing Kemp's ridley sea turtles, Lepidochelys kempii, in entanglement nets. Canadian Journal of Zoology 78(11):1941–1947.

ISO (International Organization for Standardization). 2003. Acoustics – Description, Measurement and Assessment of Environmental Noise – Part 1: Basic Quantities and Assessment Procedures (ISO 1996-1:2003(E)). International Organization for Standardization, Geneva.

Jacobs Engineering Group, Inc. 2021. Construction and Operations Plan, South Fork Wind Farm. Last Updated May 2021 (originally submitted June 2018). *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/South-Fork-Construction-Operations-Plan.pdf*

Jansen, E., and Jong, C. D. (2016). “ Underwater noise measurements in the North Sea in and near the Princess Amalia Wind Farm in operation,” in Proceedings from InterNois, Hamburg, 2016.

Jepson, P. D., and coauthors. 2003. Gas-bubble lesions in stranded cetaceans: Was sonar responsible for a spate of whale deaths after an Atlantic military exercise? Nature 425(6958):575-576.

Jessop, T. S. 2001. Modulation of the adrenocortical stress response in marine turtles (Cheloniidae): evidence for a hormonal tactic maximizing maternal reproductive investment Journal of Zoology 254:57-65.

Jessop, T. S., M. Hamann, M. A. Read, and C. J. Limpus. 2000. Evidence for a hormonal tactic maximizing green turtle reproduction in response to a pervasive ecological stressor. General and Comparative Endocrinology 118:407-417.

Jessop, T. S., J. Sumner, V. Lance, and C. Limpus. 2004. Reproduction in shark-attacked sea turtles is supported by stress-reduction mechanisms. Proceedings of the Royal Society Biological Sciences Series B 271:S91-S94.

Kieffer, J.D. and May, L.E., 2020. Repeat UCrit and endurance swimming in juvenile shortnose sturgeon (Acipenser brevirostrum). *Journal of fish biology*, *96*(6), pp.1379-1387.

King, S. L., et al. 2015. An interim framework for assessing the population consequences of disturbance. Methods in Ecology and Evolution, 6(10), 1150–1158. doi:10.1111/2041-210x.12411

Koschinski, S., & Lüdemann, K. 2013. Development of Noise Mitigation Measures in Offshore Wind Farm Construction. Commissioned by the Federal Agency for Nature Conservation (Bundesamt für Naturschutz, BfN). Original report (in German) published Jul 2011, updated Feb 2013. Nehmten and Hamburg, Germany.

Kraus, S. D., et al. 2016. Northeast Large Pelagic Survey Collaborative Aerial and Acoustic Surveys for Large Whales and Sea Turtles. US Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management. OCS Study BOEM 2016-054. Sterling, Virginia.

Kremser, U., P. Klemm, and W.D. Koetz. (2005). Estimating the risk of temporary acoustic threshold shift, caused by hydroacoustic devices, in whales in the Southern Ocean. Antarctic Science, 17(1), 3-10.

Lance, V. A., R. M. Elsey, G. Butterstein, and P. L. Trosclair Iii. 2004. Rapid suppression of testosterone secretion after capture in male American alligators (Alligator mississippiensis). General and Comparative Endocrinology 135(2):217–222.

Lenhardt, M. L. 1994. Seismic and very low frequency sound induced behaviors in captive loggerhead marine turtles (Caretta caretta). Pages 238-241 in K. A. C. Bjorndal, A. B. C. Bolten, D. A. C. Johnson, and P. J. C. Eliazar, editors. Fourteenth Annual Symposium on Sea Turtle Biology and Conservation.

Lenhardt, M. L. 2002. Sea turtle auditory behavior. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 112(5 Part 2):2314.

Lima, S. L. 1998. Stress and decision making under the risk of predation. Advances in the Study of Behavior 27:215-290.

Lokkeborg, S., E. Ona, A. Vold, and A. Salthaug. 2012. Sounds from seismic air guns: gear- and species-specific effects on catch rates and fish distribution. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 69:1278-1291.

Lopez, P., and J. Martin. 2001. Chemosensory predator recognition induces specific defensive behaviours in a fossorial amphisbaenian. Animal Behaviour 62:259-264.

Lovell, J. M., M. M. Findlay, R. M. Moate, J. R. Nedwell, and M. A. Pegg. 2005. The inner ear morphology and hearing abilities of the paddlefish (Polyodon spathula) and the lake sturgeon (Acipenser fulvescens). Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology. Part A, Molecular and Integrative Physiology 142(3):286-296.

Lugli, M., and M. Fine. 2003. Acoustic communication in two freshwater gobies: Ambient noise and short-range propagation in shallow streams. Journal of Acoustical Society of America 114(1).

Madsen, P. T., Wahlberg, M., Tougaard, J., Lucke, K., and Tyack, P. L. (2006). " Wind turbine underwater noise and marine mammals: Implications of current knowledge and data needs," Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 309, 279–295. https://doi.org/10.3354/meps309279

Magalhaes, S., and coauthors. 2002. Short-term reactions of sperm whales (Physeter macrocephalus) to whale-watching vessels in the Azores. Aquatic Mammals 28(3):267-274.

Malme, C.I., P.R. Miles, C.W. Clark, P. Tyack, and J.E. Bird. 1984. Investigations of the potential effects of underwater noise from petroleum industry activities on migrating gray whale behavior, phase II: January 1984 migration. Report No. 5586, Prepared by Bolt Beranek and Newman, Inc. for Minerals Management Service: 357.

Marmo, B., Roberts, I., Buckingham, M.P., King, S., Booth, C. 2013. Modelling of Noise Effects of Operational Offshore Wind Turbines including noise transmission through various foundation types. Edinburgh: Scottish Government.
https://tethys.pnnl.gov/sites/default/files/publications/Marmo_et_al_2013.pdf

Mateo, J. M. 2007. Ecological and hormonal correlates of antipredator behavior in adult Belding's ground squirrels (Spermophilus beldingi). Behavioral Ecology and Sociobiology 62(1):37-49.

McCauley, R. D., and coauthors. 2000a. Marine seismic surveys - A study of environmental implications. APPEA Journal:692-708.

McCauley, R. D., and coauthors. 2000b. Marine seismic surveys: Analysis and propagation of air-gun signals; and effects of air-gun exposure on humpback whales, sea turtles, fishes and squid. Curtin University of Technology, Western Australia.

McCauley, R. D., J. Fewtrell, and A. N. Popper. 2003. High intensity anthropogenic sound damages fish ears. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 113(1):638-642.

McCauley, R., and C. Kent. 2012. A lack of correlation between air gun signal pressure waveforms and fish hearing damage. Adv Exp Med Biol, 730, 245–250.

McHuron, E. A., Schwarz, L. K., Costa, D. P. and Mangel, M. (2018). A state-dependent model for assessing the population consequences of disturbance on income-breeding mammals. Ecol. Model. 385, 133-144. doi:10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2018.07.016

Mckenna, M. F., D. Ross, S. M. Wiggins, and J. A. Hildebrand. 2012. Underwater radiated noise from modern commercial ships. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 131(2):92-103.

Melcon, M. L., and coauthors. 2012. Blue whales respond to anthropogenic noise. PLoS One 7(2):e32681.

Meyer, M., and A. N. Popper. 2002a. Hearing in "primitive" fish: Brainstem responses to pure tone stimuli in the lake sturgeon, Acipenser fulvescens. Abstracts of the Association for Research in Otolaryngology 25:11-12.

Miller, P. J. O., and coauthors. 2009. Using at-sea experiments to study the effects of airguns on the foraging behavior of sperm whales in the Gulf of Mexico. Deep-Sea Research 56:1168–1181.

Miller, J. H., and G.R. Potty. 2017. “Overview of Underwater Acoustic and Seismic Measurements of the Construction and Operation of the Block Island Wind Farm.” Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 141, no.5: 3993-3993. doi:10.1121/1.4989144

Mintz, J. D., and R. J. Filadelfo. (2011). Exposure of Marine Mammals to Broadband Radiated Noise (Specific Authority N0001-4-05-D-0500). Washington, DC: Center for Naval Analyses.

Mitson, R.B (ed.). 1995. Underwater noise of research vessels: Review and recommendations. Cooperative Research Report No. 209, International Council for the Exploration of the Sea: 65.

Moberg, G.P. 2000. Biological response to stress: Implications for animal welfare. Pages 1-21 in G.P. Moberg and J.A. Mench, eds. The Biology of Animal Stress: Basic Principles and Implications for Animal Welfare. CABI Publishing, Oxon, United Kingdom.

Moein, S. E., and coauthors. 1994. Evaluation of seismic sources for repelling sea turtles from hopper dredges. Final Report submitted to the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station. Virginia Institute of Marine Science (VIMS), College of William and Mary, Gloucester Point, Virginia. 42p.

National Academies of Sciences Engineering and Medicine (NAS). (2017). Approaches to Understanding the Cumulative Effects of Stressors on Marine Mammals. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press Series.

Nedwell, J., and D. Howell. 2004. A Review of Offshore Windfarm Related Underwater Noise Sources. Report No. 544 R 0308. Commissioned by COWRIE. October.

Nehls, G., Rose, A., Diederichs, A., Bellmann, M. A., & Pehlke, H. 2016. Noise mitigation during pile driving efficiently reduces disturbance of marine mammals. In A. N. Popper & A. D. Hawkins (Eds.), The Effects of Noise on Aquatic Life II (2015/11/28 ed., Vol. 875, pp. 755-762). New York: Springer.

Narazaki, T., K. Sato, K. J. Abernathy, G. J. Marshall, and N. Miyazaki. 2013. Loggerhead turtles (Caretta caretta) use vision to forage on gelatinous prey in mid-water. PLoS ONE 8(6):e66043.

National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine (NAS). 2017. Approaches to Understanding the Cumulative Effects of Stressors on Marine Mammals. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press. https://doi.org/10.17226/23479.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2018. 2018 Revisions to: Technical Guidance for Assessing the Effects of Anthropogenic Sound on Marine Mammal Hearing (Version 2.0): Underwater Thresholds for Onset of Permanent and Temporary Threshold Shifts. U.S. Dept. of Commer., NOAA. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-59, 167 p. https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/resources/documents

New, L. F., Clark, J. S., Costa, D. P., Fleishman, E., Hindell, M. A., Klanjcek, T., et al. (2014). Using short-term measures of behaviour to estimate long-term fitness of southern elephant seals. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 496, 99–108. doi: 10.3354/meps10547

NMFS. 2016. PROCEDURAL INSTRUCTION 02-110-19. Interim Guidance on the Endangered Species Act Term “Harass”. December 21, 2016. https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/laws-and-policies/protected-resources-policy-directives

NMFS. 2021. Draft Incidental Harassment Authorization for South Fork Wind. *https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/2021-02/SouthForkWind_2021proposedIHA_draftIHA_OPR1.pdf?null=*

NMFS. 2021a. Endangered Species Act Section 7 Consultation: Site Assessment Survey Activities for Renewable Energy Development on the Atlantic Outer Continental Shelf [GARFO-2021-0999]. National Marine Fisheries Service, Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office, Gloucester, Massachusetts, July 29, 2021.

NIOSH (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health). 1998. Criteria for a Recommended Standard: Occupational Noise Exposure. United States Department of Health and Human Services, Cincinnati, OH.

Navy. 2017b. Criteria and Thresholds for U.S. Navy Acoustic and Explosive Effects Analysis (Phase III). SSC Pacific. https://www.mitt-eis.com/portals/mitt-eis/files/reports/Criteria_and_Thresholds_for_U.S._Navy_Acoustic_and_Explosive_Effects_Analysis_June2017.pdf

Nedelec, S., S. Simpson, E. Morley, B. Nedelec, and A. Radford. 2015. Impacts of regular and random noise on the behaviour, growth and development of larval Atlantic cod (Gadus morhua). Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 282(1817).

Nedwell, J. and B. Edwards (2002). Measurements of underwater noise in the Arun River during piling at County Wharf, Littlehampton, Subacoustech Ltd: 26.

Nedwell J R, Langworthy J and Howell D. 2003. Assessment of sub-sea acoustic noise and vibration from offshore wind turbines and its impact on marine wildlife; initial measurements of underwater noise during construction of offshore windfarms, and comparison with background noise. Subacoustech Report ref: 544R0423, published by COWRIE, May 2003

Nedwell, J. and B. Edwards (2004). A review of the Measurements of underwater man-made noise carried out by Subacoustech Ltd 1993 - 2003, Subacoustech: 134.

Nelms, S. E., W. E. D. Piniak, C. R. Weir, and B. J. Godley. 2016. Seismic surveys and marine turtles: An underestimated global threat? Biological Conservation 193:49-65.

Nichols, T., T. Anderson, and A. Sirovic. 2015a. Intermittent noise induces physiological stress in a coastal marine fish. PLoS ONE, 10(9), e0139157

Northeast Fisheries Science Center (NEFSC) & Southeast Fisheries Science Center (SEFSC). 2011. 2010 Annual report to the inter-agency agreement M10PG00075/0001: A comprehensive assessment of marine mammal, marine turtle, and seabird abundance and spatial distribution in US waters of the western North Atlantic Ocean.

NEFSC and SEFSC. 2011b. 2011 Annual report to the inter-agency agreement M10PG00075/0001: A comprehensive assessment of marine mammal, marine turtle, and seabird abundance and spatial distribution in US waters of the western North Atlantic Ocean.

NEFSC and SEFSC 2012. 2012 Annual report to the inter-agency agreement M10PG00075/0001: A comprehensive assessment of marine mammal, [NEFSC] Northeast Fisheries Science Center, & [SEFSC] Southeast Fisheries Science Center. (2012). 2012 Annual report to the inter-agency agreement M10PG00075/0001: A comprehensive assessment of marine mammal,

NEFSC and SEFSC 2014a. 2013 Annual report to the inter-agency agreement M10PG00075/0001: A comprehensive assessment of marine mammal, marine turtle, and seabird abundance and spatial distribution in US waters of the western North Atlantic Ocean.

NEFSC and SEFSC 2014. 2014 Annual report to the inter-agency agreement M10PG00075/0001: A comprehensive assessment of marine mammal, marine turtle, and seabird abundance and spatial distribution in US waters of the western North Atlantic Ocean.

NEFSC and SEFSC 2015. 2015 Annual report to the inter-agency agreement M10PG00075/0001: A comprehensive assessment of marine mammal, marine turtle, and seabird abundance and spatial distribution in US waters of the western North Atlantic Ocean.

NEFSC and SEFSC 2016. 2016 Annual report of a comprehensive assessment of marine mammal, marine turtle, and seabird abundance and spatial distribution in US waters of the western North Atlantic Ocean – AMAPPS II.

New, L. F., et al. 2014. Using short-term measures of behaviour to estimate long-term fitness of southern elephant seals. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 496, 99–108.

Nowacek, D.P., L.H. Thorne, D.W. Johnston, and P.L. Tyack. 2007. Responses of cetaceans to anthropogenic noise. Mammal Review 37 (2):81-115.

O'Hara, J., and J. R. Wilcox. 1990a. Avoidance responses of loggerhead turtles, Caretta caretta, to low frequency sound. Copeia (2):564-567.

Palka, D. L., et al. 2017. Atlantic Marine Assessment Program for Protected Species: 2010-2014. U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Atlantic OCS Region. OCS Study BOEM 2017-071.

Parks, S. E., and C. W. Clark. 2007. Acoustic communication: Social sounds and the potential impacts of noise. Pages 310-332 in S. D. Kraus, and R. M. Rolland, editors. The Urban Whale: North Atlantic Right Whales at the Crossroads. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts.

Parks, S. E., and S. M. Van Parijs. 2015. Acoustic Behavior of North Atlantic Right Whale (Eubalaena glacialis) Mother-Calf Pairs. Office of Naval Research, https://www.onr.navy.mil/reports/FY15/mbparks.pdf.

Parks, S.E., C.W. Clark, and P.L. Tyack. 2007. Short- and long-term changes in right whale calling behavior: The potential effects of noise on acoustic communication. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 122 (6):3725-3731.

Parsons, M., R. McCauley, M. Mackie, P. Siwabessy, and A. Duncan. 2009. Localization of individual mulloway (Argyrosomus japonicus) within a spawning aggregation and their behaviour throughout a diel spawning period. – ICES Journal of Marine Science, 66: 000 – 000.

Patenaude, N. J., and coauthors. 2002. Aircraft sound and disturbance to bowhead and beluga whales during spring migration in the Alaskan Beaufort Sea. Marine Mammal Science 18(2):309-335.

Pickering, A. D. 1981. Stress and Fish. Academic Press, New York.

Picciulin, M., L. Sebastianutto, A. Codarin, G. Calcagno, and E. Ferrero. 2012. Brown meagre vocalization rate increases during repetitive boat noise exposures: a possible case of vocal compensation. Journal of Acoustical Society of America 132:3118-3124.

Pirotta, E., et al. 2018. A Dynamic State Model of Migratory Behavior and Physiology to Assess the Consequences of Environmental Variation and Anthropogenic Disturbance on Marine Vertebrates. The American Naturalist, 191(2), E40–E56. doi:10.1086/695135

Popper, A. D. H., and A. N. 2014. Assessing the impact of underwater sounds on fishes and other forms of marine life. Acoustics Today 10(2):30-41.

Popper, A.N. and Hastings, M.C., 2009. The effects of anthropogenic sources of sound on fishes. Journal of fish biology, 75(3), pp.455-489.

Popper, A. N. 2005. A review of hearing by sturgeon and lamprey. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Portland District. http://pweb.crohms.org/tmt/documents/FPOM/2010/Task%20Groups/Task%20Group%20Pinnipeds/ms-coe%20Sturgeon%20Lamprey.pdf

Popper, A. N., and coauthors. 2005a. Effects of exposure to seismic airgun use on hearing of three fish species. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 117(6):3958-3971.

Popper, A. N., and coauthors. 2007. The effects of high-intensity, low-frequency active sonar on rainbow trout. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 122(1):623-635.

Popper, A., T. Carlson, A. Hawkins, B. L. Southall, and R. Gentry. 2006. Interim Criteria for Injury of Fish Exposed to Pile Driving Operations: A White Paper.

Purser, J. and Radford, A.N., 2011. Acoustic noise induces attention shifts and reduces foraging performance in three-spined sticklebacks (Gasterosteus aculeatus). PLoS One, 6(2), p.e17478.

Putman, N. F., P. Verley, C. S. Endres, and K. J. Lohmann. 2015. Magnetic navigation behavior and the oceanic ecology of young loggerhead sea turtles. Journal of Experimental Biology 218(7):1044–1050.

Quintana, E., S. Kraus, and M. Baumgartner. 2018. Megafauna Aerial Surveys in the Wind Energy Areas of Massachusetts and Rhode Island with Emphasis on Large Whales. Summary Report – Campaign 4, 2017-2018. BOEM Cooperative Agreement #M17AC00002 with the Massachusetts Clean Energy Center.

Quintana-Rizzo, E., Leiter, S., Cole, T.V.N., Hagbloom, M.N., Knowlton, A.R., Nagelkirk, P., Brien, O.O., Khan, C.B., Henry, A.G., Duley, P.A. and Crowe, L.M., 2021. Residency, demographics, and movement patterns of North Atlantic right whales Eubalaena glacialis in an offshore wind energy development in southern New England, USA. Endangered Species Research, 45, pp.251-268.

Remage-Healey, L., D. P. Nowacek, and A. H. Bass. 2006. Dolphin foraging sounds suppress calling and elevate stress hormone levels in a prey species, the Gulf toadfish. Journal of Experimental Biology 209(22):4444-4451.

Richardson, W. J., Würsig, B. & Greene, C. R., Jr. 1986. Reactions of bowhead whales, Balaena mysticetus, to seismic exploration in the Canadian Beaufort Sea. J. Acoust. Soc. Am. 79, 1117–1128.

Richardson, W.J., C.R. Greene, C.I. Malme, and D.H. Thomson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, Inc., San Diego, California.

Ridgway, S. H., E. G. Wever, J. G. McCormick, J. Palin, and J. H. Anderson. 1969a. Hearing in the giant sea turtle, Chelonia mydas. Proceedings of the National Academy of Science 64:884-890.

Roberts, J. J., et al. (2016). Habitat based cetacean density models for the U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico. Scientific Reports, 6. doi:10.1038/srep22615

Roberts, J. J., Mannocci, L., & Halpin, P. N. 2017. Final project report: Marine species density data gap assessments and update for the AFTT study area, 2016-2017 (Opt. Year 1). Document version 1.4. Report prepared for Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Atlantic by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab. Durham, NC.

Roberts, J. J., Mannocci, L., Schick, R. S., & Halpin, P. N. 2018. Final Project Report: Marine Species Density Data Gap Assessments and Update for the AFTT Study Area, 2017-2018 (Opt. Year 2). Document version 1.2. Report by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab for Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Atlantic Durham, NC, USA.

Roberts JJ. (2020). Revised habitat-based marine mammal density models for the U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico. Unpublished data files received with permission to use August, 2020.

Robinson, SP. 2015. Dredging Sound Measurements. WODA Workshop. Paris. March 2015. https://dredging.org/media/ceda/org/documents/presentations/ceda_seminars_workshops/woda-uws-2015-4-measurements-robinson.pdf

Rolland, R.M., S.E. Parks, K.E. Hunt, M. Castellote, P.J. Corkeron, D.P. Nowacek, et al. 2012. Evidence that ship noise increases stress in right whales. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London Series B Biological Sciences 279 (1737):2363-2368.

Romero, L. M. 2004. Physiological stress in ecology: Lessons from biomedical research. Trends in Ecology and Evolution 19(5):249-255.

Root-Gutteridge, H., Cusano, D. A., Shiu, Y., Nowacek, D. P., Van Parijs, S. M., and Parks, S. E. 2018. “ A lifetime of changing calls: North Atlantic right whales, Eubalaena glacialis, refine call production as they age,” Anim. Behav. 137, 1–34. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.anbehav.2017.12.016

Rudd, A.B. et al. 2015. "Underwater Sound Measurements of a High-Speed Jet-Propelled Marine Craft: Implications for Large Whales," Pacific Science, 69(2), 155-164.

Scholik, A. R., and H. Y. Yan. 2001. Effects of underwater noise on auditory sensitivity of a cyprinid fish. Hearing Research 152(2-Jan):17-24.

SERDP-SDSS NODE database, 2009. Available at: http://seamap.env.duke.edu/serdp. Last accessed September 11, 2020.

Seyle, H. 1950. The physiology and pathology of exposure to stress. Montreal, Canada: ACTA, Inc.

Shine, R., X. Bonnet, M. J. Elphick, and E. G. Barrott. 2004. A novel foraging mode in snakes: browsing by the sea snake Emydocephalus annulatus (Serpentes, Hydrophiidae). Functional Ecology 18(1):16–24.

Sierra-Flores, R., T. Atack, H. Migaud, and A. Davie. 2015. Stress response to anthropogenic noise in Atlantic cod Gadus morhua L. Aquacultural Engineering, 67, 67–76. .

Simpson, S., J. Purser, and A. Radford. 2015. Anthropogenic noise compromises antipredator behaviour in European eels. Global Change Biology, 21(2), 586–593. .

Simpson, S. D., and coauthors. 2016. Anthropogenic noise increases fish mortality by predation. Nature Communications 7:10544.

Slabbekoorn, H., and coauthors. 2010. A noisy spring: The impact of globally rising underwater sound levels on fish. Trends in Ecology and Evolution 25(7):419-427.

Smith, M. E., A. B. Coffin, D. L. Miller, and A. N. Popper. 2006. Anatomical and functional recovery of the goldfish (Carassius auratus) ear following noise exposure. Journal of Experimental Biology 209(21):4193-4202.

Smith, M. E., A. S. Kane, and A. N. Popper. 2004a. Acoustical stress and hearing sensitivity in fishes: Does the linear threshold shift hypothesis hold water? Journal of Experimental Biology 207(20):3591-3602.

Smith, M. E., A. S. Kane, and A. N. Popper. 2004b. Noise-induced stress response and hearing loss in goldfish (Carassius auratus). Journal of Experimental Biology 207(3):427-435.

Snoddy, J. E., M. Landon, G. Blanvillain, and A. Southwood. 2009. Blood biochemistry of sea turtles captured in gillnets in the lower Cape Fear River, North Carolina, USA. Journal of

Wildlife Management 73(8):1394–1401.

Stöber U, Thomsen F. 2021. How could operational underwater sound from future offshore wind turbines impact marine life? J Acoust Soc Am. 2021 Mar;149(3):1791. doi: 10.1121/10.0003760. PMID: 33765823.

Song, J., D. A. Mann, P. A. Cott, B. W. Hanna, and A. N. Popper. 2008. The inner ears of northern Canadian freshwater fishes following exposure to seismic air gun sounds. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 124(2):1360-1366.

Southall, B.L., A.E. Bowles, W.T. Ellison, J.J. Finneran, R.L. Gentry, C.R. Greene, et al. 2007. Marine mammal noise exposure criteria: Initial scientific recommendations. Aquatic Mammals 33 (4):411-521.

Southall, B. L., Nowacek, D. P., Miller, P. J. O. and Tyack, P. L. 2016. Experimental field studies to measure behavioral responses of cetaceans to sonar. Endanger. Species Res. 31, 293-315. doi:10.3354/esr00764

Stadler, J. H., and D. P. Woodbury. 2009. Assessing the effects to fishes from pile driving: Application of new hydroacoustic criteria. Pages 8-Jan in Internoise 2009 Innovations in Practical Noise Control, Ottowa, Canada.

Sverdrup, A., and coauthors. 1994. Effects of experimental seismic shock on vasoactivity of arteries, integrity of the vascular endothelium and on primary stress hormones of the Atlantic salmon. Journal of Fish Biology 45(6):973-995.

Thomas, P. O., & Taber, S. M. 1984. Mother-infant interaction and behavioral development in southern right whales, Eubalaena australis. Davis: Animal Behavior Graduate Group, University of California; and Cambridge, MA: Harvard Graduate School of Education.

Thomsen, F. et al. 2016. MaRVEN – Environmental Impacts of Noise, Vibrations and Electromagnetic Emissions from Marine Renewable Energy. 10.2777/272281.

Tougaard, J., and O.D. Henriksen. 2009. “Underwater Noise from Three Types of Offshore Wind Turbines: Estimation of Impact Zones for Harbor Porpoises and Harbor Seals.” Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 125, no. 6: 3766-3773. doi:10.1121/1.3117444

Tougaard, J. et al. 2020. How loud is the underwater noise from operating offshore wind turbines?. The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America. 148. 2885-2893. 10.1121/10.0002453.

Trygonis, V., E. Gerstein, J. Moir, and S. McCulloch. 2013. Vocalization characteristics of North Atlantic right whale surface active groups in the calving habitat, southeastern United States. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 134(6):4518.

Tyack, P. L. (2000). Functional aspects of cetacean communication. Cetacean Societies: Field Studies of Dolphins and Whales. J. Mann, R. C. Connor, P. L. Tyack and H. Whitehead. Chicago, The University of Chicago Press: 270-307. https://www.whoi.edu/fileserver.do?id=57476&pt=10&p=40212

Urick, R.J., 1972. Noise signature of an aircraft in level flight over a hydrophone in the sea. J. Acoust. Soc. Am. 52, 993–999. https://doi.org/10.1121/1.1913206, (3 Pt. 2).

Urick, R.J. 1983. Principles of Underwater Sound. Peninsula Publishing, Los Altos, CA.

Videsen, S.K.A., Bejder, L., Johnson, M. and Madsen, P.T. 2017, High suckling rates and acoustic crypsis of humpback whale neonates maximise potential for mother–calf energy transfer. Funct Ecol, 31: 1561-1573. doi:10.1111/1365-2435.12871

Villegas-Amtmann, S., Schwarz, L. K., Sumich, J. L., & Costa, D. P. 2015. A bioenergetics model to evaluate demographic consequences of disturbance in marine mammals applied to gray whales. Ecosphere, 6(10). doi:10.1890/es15-00146.

Watkins, W. A. 1981b. Activities and underwater sounds of fin whales (Balaenoptera physalus). Scientific Reports of the Whales Research Institute Tokyo 33:83-118.

Wiley, M. L., J. B. Gaspin, and J. F. Goertner. 1981. Effects of underwater explosions on fish with a dynamical model to predict fishkill. Ocean Science and Engineering 6:223-284.

Willis, MR. et al. 2010. Noise Associated with Small Scale Drilling Operations. 3rd International Conference on Ocean Energy, 6 October, Bilbao. Available at: https://www.icoe-conference.com/publication/noise_associated_with_small_scale_drilling_operations/

Wysocki, L. E., S. Amoser, and F. Ladich. 2007a. Diversity in ambient noise in European freshwater habitats: Noise levels, spectral profiles, and impact on fishes. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 121(5):2559-2566.

Wysocki, L. E., and coauthors. 2007b. Effects of aquaculture production noise on hearing, growth, and disease resistance of rainbow trout Oncrhynchus mykiss. Aquaculture 272:687-697.

Wysocki, L. E., J. P. Dittami, and F. Ladich. 2006. Ship noise and cortisol secretion in European freshwater fishes. Biological Conservation 128(4):501-508.

Yelverton, J. T., D. R. Richmond, W. Hicks, H. Saunders, and E. R. Fletcher. 1975a. The relationship between fish size and their response to underwater blast. Lovelace Foundation for Medical Education Research, DNA 3677T, Albuquerque, N. M.

7.2 Effects of Project Vessels

Berman-Kowalewski, M., F. M. D. Gulland, S. Wilkin, J. Calambokidis, B. Mate, J. Cordaro, D. Rotstein, J. S. Leger, P. Collins, K. Fahy, and S. Dover. (2010). Association between blue whale (Balaenoptera musculus) mortality and ship strikes along the California coast. Aquatic Mammals 36:59-66.

Calambokidis, J. (2012). Summary of ship-strike related research on blue whales in 2011. Chaloupka, M., Bjorndal, K. A., Balazs, G. H., Bolten, A. B., Ehrhart, L. M., Limpus, C. J., ... & Yamaguchi, M. (2008). Encouraging outlook for recovery of a once severely exploited marine megaherbivore. Global Ecology and Biogeography, 17(2), 297-304. Available at: https://www.cascadiaresearch.org/files/Projects/Blue_whale_ship_strikes/summary_of_ship_strike_all-2011.pdf

Clyne, H., R. Leaper, and J. Kennedy. 1999. Computer simulation of interactions between the North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis) and shipping. European Research on Cetaceans 13:458.

Conn, P. B., and G. K. Silber. (2013). Vessel speed restrictions reduce risk of collision-related mortality for North Atlantic right whales. Ecosphere 4.

Dodge, K. L., Galuardi, B., Miller, T. J., & Lutcavage, M. E. (2014). Leatherback turtle movements, dive behavior, and habitat characteristics in ecoregions of the Northwest Atlantic Ocean. PLoS One, 9(3), e91726.

Douglas, A. B., J. Calambokidis, S. Raverty, S. J. Jeffries, D. M. Lambourn, and S. A. Norman. (2008). Incidence of ship strikes of large whales in Washington State. Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom.

Epperly, S. P., Braun, J., Chester, A. J., Cross, F. A., Merriner, J. V., Tester, P. A., & Churchill, J. H. (1996). Beach strandings as an indicator of at-sea mortality of sea turtles. Bulletin of Marine Science, 59(2), 289-297.

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). (2021). South Fork Wind LLC's - South Fork Windfarm Draft Outer Continental Shelf Air Permit. Available at: https://www.epa.gov/caa-permitting/south-fork-wind-llcs-south-fork-windfarm-draft-outer-continental-shelf-air-permit

Executive Office of Energy and Environmental Affairs Massachusetts Office of Coastal Zone Management. (2014). Transportation and Navigation Work Group Report. Massachusetts Ocean Management Plan Update.

Foley, A. M., Stacy, B. A., Hardy, R. F., Shea, C. P., Minch, K. E., & Schroeder, B. A. (2019). Characterizing watercraft-related mortality of sea turtles in Florida. The Journal of Wildlife Management, 83(5), 1057-1072.

Hart, K. M., Mooreside, P., & Crowder, L. B. (2006). Interpreting the spatio-temporal patterns of sea turtle strandings: going with the flow. Biological Conservation, 129(2), 283-290.

Hayes, S. A., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. E. Rosel. 2020. US Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments - 2016. National Marine Fisheries Service Northeast Fisheries Science Center, NMFS-NE-264, Woods Hole, Massachusetts.

Hayes, S. A., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, P. E. Rosel, & J. Turek. 2021. US Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments - 2020. National Marine Fisheries Service Northeast Fisheries Science Center, NMFS-NE-271, Woods Hole, Massachusetts.

Hazel, J., Lawler, I. R., Marsh, H., & Robson, S. (2007). Vessel speed increases collision risk for the green turtle Chelonia mydas. Endangered Species Research, 3(2), 105-113.

Henry, A.G., T.V.N. Cole, L. Hall, W. Ledwell, D. Morin and A. Reid. 2021. Mortality and serious injury determinations for baleen whale stocks along the Gulf of Mexico, United States East Coast and Atlantic Canadian Provinces, 2014–2018. Northeast Fish. Sci. Cent. Ref. Doc. 21-07.

Henry A.G., Garron M., Morin D., Reid A., Ledwell W., Cole T.V.N. 2020. Serious Injury and Mortality Determinations for Baleen Whale Stocks along the Gulf of Mexico, United States East Coast, and Atlantic Canadian Provinces, 2013-2017. US Dept Commer, Northeast Fish Sci Cent Ref Doc. 20-06; 53 p. Available from:https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/new-england-mid-atlantic/northeast-fisheries-science-center-publications

Jensen, A. S., and G. K. Silber. (2003). Large whale ship strike database. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-F/OPR-25.

Jensen, A. S., and G. K. Silber. (2004). Large whale ship strike database. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources.

Kelley, DE, Vlasic, JP, Brillant, SW. 2021. Assessing the lethality of ship strikes on whales using simple biophysical models. Marine Mammal Science 7: 251– 267.

Knowlton, A. R., F. T. Korsmeyer, J. E. Kerwin, H. Wu, and B. Hynes. (1995). The hydrodynamic effects of large vessels on right whales. Pages 62 in Eleventh Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Orlando, Florida.

Knowlton, A. R., Korsmeyer, F. T., & Hynes, B. (1998). The hydrodynamic effects of large vessels on right whales: phase two. Final Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, MA.

Koch, V., Peckham, H., Mancini, A., & Eguchi, T. (2013). Estimating at-sea mortality of marine turtles from stranding frequencies and drifter experiments. PLoS One, 8(2), e56776.

Kraus, S. D., Brown, M. W., Caswell, H., Clark, C. W., Fujiwara, M., Hamilton, P. K., ... & McLellan, W. A. (2005). North Atlantic right whales in crisis. Science, 309(5734), 561-562.

Kraus, S. D., Kenney, R. D., Mayo, C. A., McLellan, W. A., Moore, M. J., & Nowacek, D. P. (2016). Recent scientific publications cast doubt on North Atlantic right whale future. Frontiers in Marine Science, 3, 137

Laggner, D. (2009). Blue whale (Baleanoptera musculus) ship strike threat assessment in the Santa Barbara Channel, California. Master's. Evergreen State College.

Laist, D. W., A. R. Knowlton, J. G. Mead, A. S. Collet, and M. Podesta. (2001). Collisions between ships and whales. Marine Mammal Science 17:35-75.

Lammers, A., A. Pack, and L. Davis. (2003). Historical evidence of whale/vessel collisions in Hawaiian waters (1975-present). Ocean Science Institute.

Lutcavage, M. E., P. Plotkin, B. E. Witherington, and P. L. Lutz. (1997). Human impacts on sea turtle survival. Pages 387-409 in P. L. L. J. A. Musick, editor. The Biology of Sea Turtles. CRC Press, New York, New York.

McKown, K., Meyer, T., Collins, M., & Robbins, E. (2006). Review of the Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission Fishery Management Plan for Atlantic Sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrhincus) for 2005.

Murphy, T. M., & Hopkins-Murphy, S. (1989). Sea turtle & shrimp fishing interactions: a summary and critique of relevant information. Center for Marine Conservation.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2020. North Atlantic Right Whale (Eubalaena glacialis) Vessel Speed Rule Assessment. National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). (2007). Loggerhead sea turtle (Caretta caretta) 5-year review: Summary and evaluation. National Marine Fisheries Service and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Silver Spring, Maryland.

National Research Council (NRC). (1990). Decline of the sea turtles: Causes and prevention. National Research Council, Washington, D. C.

National Research Council (NRC). 1990. Sea turtle mortality associated with human activities. National Academy Press, National Research Council Committee on Sea Turtle Conservation, Washington, D.C.

Nowacek, D. P., M. P. Johnson, and P. L. Tyack. (2004). North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis) ignore ships but respond to alerting stimuli. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London Series B Biological Sciences 271:227-231.

Pace III, R. M., Williams, R., Kraus, S. D., Knowlton, A. R., & Pettis, H. M. (2021). Cryptic mortality of North Atlantic right whales. Conservation Science and Practice, 3(2), e346.

Peckham, S. H., Maldonado-Diaz, D., Koch, V., Mancini, A., Gaos, A., Tinker, M. T., & Nichols, W. J. (2008). High mortality of loggerhead turtles due to bycatch, human consumption and strandings at Baja California Sur, Mexico, 2003 to 2007. Endangered Species Research, 5(2-3), 171-183.

Renaud, M. L., & Carpenter, J. A. (1994). Movements and submergence patterns of loggerhead turtles (Caretta caretta) in the Gulf of Mexico determined through satellite telemetry. Bulletin of Marine Science, 55(1), 1-15.

Ritter, F. (2012). Collisions of sailing vessels with cetaceans worldwide: First insights into a seemingly growing problem. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 12:119-127.

Rockwood, R. C., Calambokidis, J., & Jahncke, J. (2017). High mortality of blue, humpback and fin whales from modeling of vessel collisions on the US West Coast suggests population impacts and insufficient protection. PLoS One, 12(8), e0183052.

Sasso, C. R., & Witzell, W. N. (2006). Diving behaviour of an immature Kemp's ridley turtle (Lepidochelys kempii) from Gullivan Bay, Ten Thousand Islands, south-west Florida. Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom, 86(4), 919-92.

Schofield, G., Bishop, C. M., MacLean, G., Brown, P., Baker, M., Katselidis, K. A., ... & Hays, G. C. (2007). Novel GPS tracking of sea turtles as a tool for conservation management. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 347(1-2), 58-68.

Schofield, G., Hobson, V. J., Lilley, M. K., Katselidis, K. A., Bishop, C. M., Brown, P., & Hays, G. C. (2010). Inter-annual variability in the home range of breeding turtles: implications for current and future conservation management. Biological Conservation, 143(3), 722-730.

Silber, G., J. Slutsky, and S. Bettridge. (2010). Hydrodynamics of a ship/whale collision. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 391:10-19.

Starbuck K., Lipsky A., SeaPlan. (2012). Northeast Recreational Boater Survey: A Socioeconomic and Spatial Characterization of Recreational Boating in Coastal and Ocean Waters of the Northeast United States. Technical Report Dec 2013. Boston (MA): Doc #121.13.10, p.105

Stein, A. B., Friedland, K. D., & Sutherland, M. (2004). Atlantic sturgeon marine distribution and habitat use along the northeastern coast of the United States. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, 133(3), 527-537

United States Army Corps of Engineers (USACE). (2015). Waterborne Commerce of the United States (IWR-WCUS-15-1). Atlantic Coast: Institute for Water Resources. https://ntl.bts.gov/lib/23000/23500/23563/wcusnatl01.pdf

United States Coast Guard (USCG). (2016). Nantucket Sound Port Access Route Study. Docket Number USCG-2016-0165

United States Coast Guard (USCG). (2020). Areas Offshore of Massachusetts and Rhode Island Port Access Route Study. Docket Number USCG-2019-0131

Vanderlaan, A. S., & Taggart, C. T. (2007). Vessel collisions with whales: the probability of lethal injury based on vessel speed. Marine Mammal Science, 23(1), 144-156.

Work, P. A., Sapp, A. L., Scott, D. W., & Dodd, M. G. (2010). Influence of small vessel operation and propulsion system on loggerhead sea turtle injuries. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 393(1-2), 168-175.

7.3 Effects to Habitat and Environmental Conditions during Construction

Afsharian, S. & P.A. Taylor. (2019). On the potential impact of Lake Erie windfarms on water temperatures and mixed-layer depths: Some preliminary1-D modeling using COHERENS. J. Geophys. Res. Oceans. 124: 1736–1749. https://doi.org/10.1029/2018JC014577.

ASMFC. 2012. Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission Habitat Addendum Iv To Amendment 1 To The Interstate Fishery Management Plan For Atlantic Sturgeon. http://www.asmfc.org/uploads/file/sturgeonHabitatAddendumIV_Sept2012.pdf

Baumgartner, M.F., Mayo, C.A. and Kenney, R.D., 2007. Enormous carnivores, microscopic food, and a restaurant that’s hard to find. The urban whale: North Atlantic right whales at the crossroads. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, pp.138-171.

Baumgartner, M.F. and Fratantoni, D.M., 2008. Diel periodicity in both sei whale vocalization rates and the vertical migration of their copepod prey observed from ocean gliders. Limnology and Oceanography, 53(5part2), pp.2197-2209.

Baumgartner, M.F., Lysiak, N.S., Schuman, C., Urban-Rich, J. and Wenzel, F.W., 2011. Diel vertical migration behavior of Calanus finmarchicus and its influence on right and sei whale occurrence. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 423, pp.167-184.

Bevelhimer, M.S., Cada, G.F., Fortner, A.M., Schweizer, P.E. and Riemer, K., 2013. Behavioral responses of representative freshwater fish species to electromagnetic fields. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, 142(3), pp.802-813.

Bigelow, H.B. (1927). Physical oceanography of the Gulf of Maine. Bulletin of the U.S. Bureau of Fisheries 40: 511–1027.

Bochert, R. and Zettler, M.L., 2006. Effect of electromagnetic fields on marine organisms. In Offshore Wind Energy (pp. 223-234). Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg.

Boysen, K. A., & Hoover, J. J. 2009. Swimming performance of juvenile white sturgeon (Acipenser transmontanus): training and the probability of entrainment due to dredging. Journal of Applied Ichthyology, 25, 54-59.

Broström, G. (2008). On the influence of large wind farms on the upper ocean circulation. Journal of Marine Systems 74:585-591.

Burke, V.J., Standora, E.A. and Morreale, S.J., 1993. Diet of juvenile Kemp's ridley and loggerhead sea turtles from Long Island, New York. Copeia, 1993(4), pp.1176-1180.

Castelao, R., S. Glenn, and O. Schofield, 2010: Temperature, salinity, and density variability in the central Middle Atlantic Bight. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans, 115, C10005.

Carpenter, J. R., L. Merckelbach, U. Callies, S. Clark, L. Gaslikova, and B. Baschek. (2016). Potential Impacts of Offshore Wind Farms on North Sea Stratification. PLoS One 11:e0160830.

Cazenave, P. W., R. Torres, and J. I. Allen. (2016). Unstructured grid modelling of offshore wind farm impacts on seasonally stratified shelf seas. Progress in Oceanography 145:25-41.

Checkley Jr., D.M., S. Raman, G.L. Maillet, & K.M. Mason. (1988). Winter storm effects on the spawning and larval drift of a pelagic fish. Nature. 355:346-348.

Chen, Z., Curchitser, E., Chant, R., & Kang, D. (2018). Seasonal variability of the cold pool over the Mid-Atlantic Bight Continental Shelf. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans, 123(11), 8203-8226.

Chen, Changsheng, R.C. Beardsley, J. Qi, and H. Lin. 2016. Use of Finite-Volume Modeling and the Northeast Coastal Ocean Forecast System in Offshore Wind Energy Resource Planning. Final Report to the U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Office of Renewable Energy Programs. BOEM 2016-050.

Christiansen, M.B & C.B. Hasager. (2013). Wake effects of large offshore wind farms identified from satellite SAR. Remote Sens. Environ. 98:251-268.

Clarke, D. 2011. Sturgeon Protection. Dredged Material Assessment and Management. https://dots.el.erdc.dren.mil/workshops/2011-05-24-dmams/22_21_Sturgeon-Issues_Clarke.pdf

Coolen, J.W.P., et al. 2018. RECON: Reef effect structures in the North Sea, islands or connections?: Summary report (No. C074/17A). Wageningen Marine Research.

Cowen, R.K., J.K. Hare & M.P. Fahay. (1993). Beyond hydrography: can physical processes explain larval fish assemblages within the Middle Atlantic Bight. Bull. Mar. Sci. 53:567-587.

Cronin, T.W., Fasick, J.I., Schweikert, L.E., Johnsen, S., Kezmoh, L.J. and Baumgartner, M.F., 2017. Coping with copepods: do right whales (Eubalaena glacialis) forage visually in dark waters?. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 372(1717), p.20160067.

Crowley, D. and C. Swanson. 2018. Hydrodynamic and Sediment Dispersion Modeling Study for the Vineyard Wind Project. 55 Village Square Drive South Kingstown, RI 02879.

Dadswell, M.J., 2006. A review of the status of Atlantic sturgeon in Canada, with comparisons to populations in the United States and Europe. Fisheries, 31(5), pp.218-229.

Dodge, K.L., Logan, J.M. and Lutcavage, M.E., 2011. Foraging ecology of leatherback sea turtles in the Western North Atlantic determined through multi-tissue stable isotope analyses. Marine Biology, 158(12), pp.2813-2824.

Dodge, K. L., Galuardi, B., Miller, T. J., & Lutcavage, M. E. (2014). Leatherback turtle movements, dive behavior, and habitat characteristics in ecoregions of the Northwest Atlantic Ocean. PLoS One, 9(3), e91726.

ECORP Consulting, Inc. 2009. Literature Review (for studies conducted prior to 2008): Fish Behaviour in Response to Dredging and Dredged Material Placement Activities (Contract No.W912P7-07-0079). Prepared for: US Army Corps of Engineers, San Francisco, CA. 48p + tables.

EPRI Workshop on EMF and Aquatic Life. EPRI, Palo Alto, CA: 2013. 3002000477. https://tethys.pnnl.gov/sites/default/files/publications/EPRI_2013.pdf

Fasick, J.I., Baumgartner, M.F., Cronin, T.W., Nickle, B. and Kezmoh, L.J., 2017. Visual predation during springtime foraging of the North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis). Marine Mammal Science, 33(4), pp.991-1013.

Floeter, J., J. E. E. van Beusekom, D. Auch, U. Callies, J. Carpenter, T. Dudeck, S. Eberle, A. Eckhardt, D. Gloe, K. Hänselmann, M. Hufnagl, S. Janßen, H. Lenhart, K. O. Möller, R. P. North, T. Pohlmann, R. Riethmüller, S. Schulz, S. Spreizenbarth, A. Temming, B. Walter, O. Zielinski, and C. Möllmann. (2017). Pelagic effects of offshore wind farm foundations in the stratified North Sea. Progress in Oceanography 156:154-173.

Garakouei, M.Y., Pajand, Z., Tatina, M. and Khara, H., 2009. Median lethal concentration (LC50) for suspended sediments in two sturgeon species, Acipenser persicus and Acipenser stellatus fingerlings. Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science, 4(6), pp.285-295.

Glenn, S., R. Arnone, T. Bergmann, W P. Bissett, M. Crowley, J. Cullen, J. Gryzmski, D. Haidvogel, J. Kohut, M. Moline, M. Oliver, C. Orrico, R. Sherrell, T. Song, A. Weidemann, R. Chant, & O. Schofield. (2004). Biogeochemical impact of summertime coastal upwelling on the New Jersey Shelf. JGR. 109: C12S02. doi:10.1029/2003JC002265.

Glenn, S.M. & O. Schofield. (2003). Observing the Oceans from the COOL Room: Our History, Experience, and Opinions. Oceanography. 16:37-52.

Grothues, T. M., R. K. Cowen, L.J. Pietrafesa, G. Weatherly, F. Bignami & C. Flagg. (2002). Flux of larval fish around Cape Hatteras. Limnol. Oceanogr. 47:165-175.

Hare, J. A., & Cowen, R. K. (1996). Transport mechanisms of larval and pelagic juvenile bluefish (Pomatomus saltatrix) from South Atlantic Bight spawning grounds to Middle Atlantic Bight nursery habitats. Limnology and Oceanography, 41(6), 1264-1280.

Hastings, R.W., 1983. A study of the shortnose sturgeon (Acipenser brevirostrum) population in the upper tidal Delaware River: assessment of impacts of maintenance dredging. Final Report to the United States Army Corps of Engineers, Philadelphia, Pennsylvannia.

HDR. 2020. Field Observations During Offshore Wind Structure Installation and Operation, Volume I. Final Report to the U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Office of Renewable Energy Programs. OCS Study BOEM 2021-025. 332 pp.

Hoover, J. J., Killgore, K. J., Clarke, D. G., Smith, H. M., Turnage, A., & Beard, J. A. 2005. Paddlefish and sturgeon entrainment by dredges: swimming performance as an indicator of risk. https://erdc-library.erdc.dren.mil/jspui/bitstream/11681/8759/1/TN-DOER-E22.pdf

Hoover, J.J., Boysen, K.A., Beard, J.A. and Smith, H., 2011. Assessing the risk of entrainment by cutterhead dredges to juvenile lake sturgeon (Acipenser fulvescens) and juvenile pallid sturgeon (Scaphirhynchus albus). Journal of Applied Ichthyology, 27(2), pp.369-375.

Houghton, R.W., R. Schlitz, R.C. Beardsley, B. Butman & J.L. Chamberlin. (1982). The Middle Atlantic Bight Cold Pool: Evolution of the Temperature Structure During Summer 1979. J. Phys. Oceanogr. 12:1019–1029. doi:10.1175/1520-0485(1982)012<1019:TMABCP>2.0.CO;2.

Irish, J.D. and Signell, R.P., (1992). Tides of Massachusetts and Cape Cod Bays (No. WHOI-92-35). Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution.

Jacobs Engineering Group, Inc. 2021. Construction and Operations Plan, South Fork Wind Farm. Last Updated May 2021 (originally submitted June 2018). *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/South-Fork-Construction-Operations-Plan.pdf*

Kane, J. (2005). The demography of Calanus finmarchicus (Copepoda: Calanoida) in the middle Atlantic bight, USA, 1977–2001. Journal of Plankton Research, 27(5), 401-414.

Kaplan, B., (2011). Literature synthesis for the north and central Atlantic Ocean. US Dept. of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Regulation and Enforcement, Gulf of Mexico OCS Region, New Orleans, LA. OCS Study BOEMRE, 12, p.447.

Kenney, R.D. and K.J. Vigness-Raposa. (2010). Marine mammals and sea turtles of Narragansett Bay, Block Island Sound, Rhode Island Sound, and nearby waters: An analysis of existing data for the Rhode Island Ocean Special Area Management Plan. Pp. 705–1041 in: Rhode Island Coastal Resources Management Council. Rhode Island Ocean Special Area Management Plan, Vol. 2.: Technical Reports for the Rhode Island Ocean Special Area Management Plan. Rhode Island Coastal Resources Management Council, Wakefield, RI.

Kirschvink, J.L., 1990. Geomagnetic sensitivity in cetaceans: an update with live stranding records in the United States. In Sensory Abilities of Cetaceans (pp. 639-649). Springer, Boston, MA.

Kraus, S.D., R.D. Kenney, and L. Thomas. (2019). A Framework for Studying the Effects of Offshore Wind Development on Marine Mammals and Turtles. Report prepared for the Massachusetts Clean Energy Center, Boston, MA 02110, and the Bureau of Ocean Energy Management. May, 2019.

Kraus, S.D., S. Leiter, K. Stone, B. Wikgren, C. Mayo, P. Hughes, R. D. Kenney, C. W. Clark, A. N. Rice, B. Estabrook and J. Tielens. (2016). Northeast Large Pelagic Survey Collaborative Aerial and Acoustic Surveys for Large Whales and Sea Turtles. US Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Sterling, Virginia. OCS Study BOEM 2016-054. 117 pp. + appendices.

Leiter, S.M., K. M. Stone1, J. L. Thompson, C. M. Accardo, B. C. Wikgren, M. A. Zani, T. V. N. Cole, R. D. Kenney, C. A. Mayo, and S. D. Kraus. (2017). North Atlantic right whale Eubalaena glacialis occurrence in offshore wind energy areas near Massachusetts and Rhode Island, USA. Endang. Species Res. Vol. 34: 45–59. doi.org/10.3354/esr00827

Lohmann, K.J., Witherington, B.E., Lohmann, C.M. and Salmon, M., 1997. Orientation, navigation, and natal beach homing. In The biology of sea turtles (pp. 107-135). CRC Press Florida.

Lohoefener, R., Hoggard, W., Mullin, K., Roden, C., & Rogers, C. (1990). Association of sea turtles with petroleum platforms in the north-central Gulf of Mexico (No. PB-91-137232/XAB). National Marine Fisheries Service, Pascagoula, MS (USA). Mississippi Labs.

Methratta, E. T., & Dardick, W. R. (2019). Meta-analysis of finfish abundance at offshore wind farms. Reviews in Fisheries Science & Aquaculture, 27(2), 242-260.

Miles, J., Martin, T., & Goddard, L. 2017. Current and wave effects around windfarm monopile foundations. Coastal Engineering, 121:167–78.

Miles, T., Murphy, S., Kohut, J., Borsetti, S., & Munroe, D. (2021). Offshore Wind Energy and the Mid-Atlantic Cold Pool: A Review of Potential Interactions. Marine Technology Society Journal, 55(4), 72-87.

Miller, P.J.O., M.P. Johnson, and P.L. Tyack. 2004. Sperm whale behavior indicates the use of rapid echolocation click buzzes ‘creaks’ in prey capture. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London, Series B 271:2239-2247. Available at: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC1691849/pdf/15539349.pdf

Munroe, D.M., D.A. Narvaez, D. Hennen, L. Jacobsen, R. Mann, E.E. Hofmann, E.N. Powell & J.M. Klinck. (2016). Fishing and bottom water temperature as drivers of change in maximum shell length in Atlantic surfclams (Spisula solidissima). Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci. 170:112–122. doi:10.1016/j.ecss.2016.01.009.

Michel, J., A. C. Bejarano, C. H. Peterson, and C. Voss. 2013. Review of biological and biophysical impacts from dredging and handling of offshore sand. OCS Study BOEM 2013-0119. U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Herndon, Virginia.

Miller, L.M. and Keith, D.W., 2018. Climatic impacts of wind power. *Joule*, *2*(12), pp.2618-2632.

Nagel, T., Chauchat, J., Wirth, A., & Bonamy, C. 2018. On the multi-scale interactions between an offshore-wind-turbine wake and the ocean-sediment dynamics in an idealized framework—A numerical investigation. Renewable Energy. 115:783–96.

Narváez, D.A., Munroe, D.M., Hofmann, E.E., Klinck, J.M., Powell, E.N., Mann, R. and Curchitser, E., (2015). Long-term dynamics in Atlantic surfclam (Spisula solidissima) populations: the role of bottom water temperature. Journal of Marine Systems, 141, pp.136-148

Nelson, D. A., & Shafer, D. J. 1996. Effectiveness of a sea turtle-deflecting hopper dredge draghead in Port Canaveral Entrance Channel, Florida. US Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station.

NMFS. 2010. Recovery plan for the sperm whale (Physeter macrocephalus). National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. 165pp.

NMFS. 2010. Recovery plan for the fin whale (Balaenoptera physalus). U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, Maryland.

National Marine Fisheries Service, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and SEMARNAT. 2011. BiNational Recovery Plan for the Kemp’s Ridley Sea Turtle (Lepidochelys kempii), Second Revision. National Marine Fisheries Service. Silver Spring, Maryland 156 pp. + appendices.

Normandeau, Exponent, T. Tricas, and A. Gill. 2011. Effects of EMFs from Undersea Power Cables on Elasmobranchs and Other Marine Species. U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Regulation, and Enforcement, Pacific OCS Region, Camarillo, CA. OCS Study BOEMRE 2011-09.

Novak, A.J., Carlson, A.E., Wheeler, C.R., Wippelhauser, G.S. and Sulikowski, J.A., 2017. Critical foraging habitat of Atlantic sturgeon based on feeding habits, prey distribution, and movement patterns in the Saco River estuary, Maine. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, 146(2), pp.308-317.

OSPAR. 2009. Assessment of the environmental impacts of cables. Biodiveristy Series ISBN 978-1-906840-77-8. Publication Number: 437/2009. Available online from:

http://qsr2010.ospar.org/media/assessments/p00437_Cables.pdf

Pace III, R.M. and Merrick, R.L., 2008. Northwest Atlantic Ocean habitats important to the conservation of North Atlantic right whales (Eubalaena glacialis). Northeast Fisheries Science Center Reference Document 08, 7.

Pendleton, D. E., Sullivan, P. J., Brown, M. W., Cole, T. V., Good, C. P., Mayo, C. A., ... & Pershing, A. J. (2012). Weekly predictions of North Atlantic right whale Eubalaena glacialis habitat reveal influence of prey abundance and seasonality of habitat preferences. Endangered Species Research, 18(2), 147-161.

Pershing, A. J., & Stamieszkin, K. (2019). The North Atlantic Ecosystem, from Plankton to Whales. Annual review of marine science, 12:1, 339-359

Platis, A., Siedersleben, S., Bange, J. *et al.* First *in situ* evidence of wakes in the far field behind offshore wind farms. *Sci Rep* **8,** 2163 (2018). https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-018-20389-y

Quintana-Rizzo, E., Leiter, S., Cole, T.V.N., Hagbloom, M.N., Knowlton, A.R., Nagelkirk, P., Brien, O.O., Khan, C.B., Henry, A.G., Duley, P.A. and Crowe, L.M., 2021. Residency, demographics, and movement patterns of North Atlantic right whales Eubalaena glacialis in an offshore wind energy development in southern New England, USA. *Endangered Species Research*, *45*, pp.251-268.

Record, N. R., Runge, J. A., Pendleton, D. E., Balch, W. M., Davies, K. T., Pershing, A. J., & Kraus, S. D. (2019). Rapid climate-driven circulation changes threaten conservation of endangered North Atlantic right whales. Oceanography, 32(2), 162-169.

Reine, K.J., Clarke, D.G. and Engler, R.M., 1998. Entrainment by hydraulic dredges-A review of potential impacts (No. WES-DOER-E1). Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station Vicksburg Ms Environmental Lab.

Roberts, J.J., R.S. Schick, and P.N. Halpin. 2020. Final Project Report: Marine species density data gap assessments and update for the AFTT Study Area, 2018-2020 (Opt. Year 3). Document version 1.4. Report prepared for Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Atlantic by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab, Durham, NC. 142 p

Rudloe, A., & Rudloe, J. (2005). Site specificity and the impact of recreational fishing activity on subadult endangered Kemp's ridley sea turtles in estuarine foraging habitats in the northeastern Gulf of Mexico. *Gulf of Mexico Science*, *23*(2), 5.

Scheidat, M., Tougaard, J., Brasseur, S., Carstensen, J., van Polanen Petel, T., Teilmann, J., & Reijnders, P. (2011). Harbour porpoises (Phocoena phocoena) and wind farms: a case study in the Dutch North Sea. Environmental Research Letters, 6(2), 025102.

Schultze, L.K.P., Merckelbach, L.M., Horstmann, J., Raasch, S. and Carpenter, J.R., (2020). Increased mixing and turbulence in the wake of offshore wind farm foundations. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans, 125(8), p.e2019JC015858.

Seney, E.E. 2003. Historical diet analysis of loggerhead (Caretta caretta) and Kemp's ridley (Lepidochelys kempi) sea turtles in Virginia. Unpublished Master of Science thesis. College of William and Mary, Williamsburg, Virginia. 123 pages.

Sha, J., Y. Jo, M. Oliver, J. Kohut, M. Shatley, W. Liu & X. Yan. (2015). A case study of large phytoplankton blooms off the New Jersey coast with multi-sensor observations. Cont. Shelf Res. 107:79-91.

Slay, C. K., & Richardson, J. I. 1988. King's Bay, Georgia: dredging and turtles. In BA Schroeder (compiler). Proceedings of the 10th annual workshop on sea turtle biology and conservation. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFC-214 (pp. 109-111).

Smith, T.I.J. 1985. The fishery, biology, and management of Atlantic sturgeon, Acipenser oxyrhynchus, in North America. Environmental Biology of Fishes. 14:61-72.

Stenberg, C., et al. 2015. Long-term effects of an offshore wind farm in the North Sea on fish communities. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 528, pp.257-265.

Stevick, P. T., Incze, L. S., Kraus, S. D., Rosen, S., Wolff, N., & Baukus, A. (2008). Trophic relationships and oceanography on and around a small offshore bank. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 363, 15-28.

Stone K.M., Leiter S.M., Kenney R.D., Wikgreen B.C., Thompson J.L., Taylor J.K.D. and S.D. Kraus. (2017). Distribution and abundance of cetaceans in a wind energy development area offshore of Massachusetts and Rhode Island. Journal of Coastal Conservation 21:527-543

Sullivan, M.C., R.K. Cowen, K.W. Able & M.P. Fahay. (2006). Applying the basin model: Assessing habitat suitability of young-of-the-year demersal fishes on the New York Bight continental shelf. Cont. Shelf Res. 26:1551-1570.

Teilmann, J., & Carstensen, J. (2012). Negative long term effects on harbour porpoises from a large scale offshore wind farm in the Baltic—evidence of slow recovery. Environmental Research Letters, 7(4), 045101.

Todd, V.L., et al. 2015. A review of impacts of marine dredging activities on marine mammals. ICES Journal of Marine Science, 72(2), pp.328-340.

T. Merck, R. Wasserthal. Assessment of the environmental impacts of cables. OSPAR Biodivers Ser, 437 (2009), p. 18

Tougaard, J., Carstensen, J., Wisz, M.S., Jespersen, M., Teilmann, J., Bech, N.I., Skov, H., 2006. Harbour porpoises on Horns Reef - Effects of the Horns Reef wind farm. NERI Technical Report, National Environmental Research Institute, Aarhus University, Roskilde, Denmark.

Vanhellemont, Q. and Ruddick, K., (2014). Turbid wakes associated with offshore wind turbines observed with Landsat 8. Remote Sensing of Environment, 145, pp.105-115.

Wang, C. and Prinn, R.G., 2010. Potential climatic impacts and reliability of very large-scale wind farms. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics, 10(4), pp.2053-2061.

Wang, C. and Prinn, R.G., 2011. Potential climatic impacts and reliability of large-scale offshore wind farms. Environmental Research Letters, 6(2), p.025101.

Watwood, S.L., Miller, P.J.O., Johnson, M., Madsen, P.T. And Tyack, P.L. (2006), Deep-diving foraging behaviour of sperm whales (*Physeter macrocephalus*). Journal of Animal Ecology, 75: 814-825. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2656.2006.01101.x

Winton, M. V., Fay, G., Haas, H. L., Arendt, M., Barco, S., James, M. C., ... & Smolowitz, R. (2018). Estimating the distribution and relative density of satellite-tagged loggerhead sea turtles using geostatistical mixed effects models. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 586, 217-232.

Wishner, K. F., Schoenherr, J. R., Beardsley, R., & Chen, C. (1995). Abundance, distribution and population structure of the copepod Calanus finmarchicus in a springtime right whale feeding area in the southwestern Gulf of Maine. Continental Shelf Research, 15(4-5), 475-507.

Youngkin, D. 2001. A Long-term Dietary Analysis of Loggerhead Sea Turtles (Caretta Caretta) Based on Strandings from Cumberland Island, Georgia. Unpublished Master of Science thesis. Florida Atlantic University. Charles E. Schmidt College of Science, 65 pp.

van Berkel, J., Burchard, H., Christensen, A., Mortensen, L. O., Petersen, O. S., & Thomsen, F. (2020). The effects of offshore wind farms on hydrodynamics and implications for fishes. *Oceanography*, *33*(4), 108-117.

7.5 Marine Resource Monitoring Survey Activities

Aguilar, A. 2002. Fin Whale: *Balaenoptera physalus*. In Perrin, W.F., Würsig, B. and Thewissen, J.G.M. (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals (Second Edition)* (pp. 435-438). Academic Press, London.

ASMFC. 2007. Estimation of Atlantic sturgeon bycatch in coastal Atlantic commercial fisheries of New England and the Mid-Atlantic. Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission, Arlington, Virginia, August 2007. Special Report to the ASMFC Atlantic Sturgeon Management Board.

ASMFC. 2017. Atlantic sturgeon benchmark stock assessment and peer review report. Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission, Arlington, Virginia, October 18, 2017. Available from: https://www.asmfc.org/species/atlantic-sturgeon#stock.

Balazs, G. H. 1985. Impact of ocean debris on marine turtles: entanglement and ingestion. In Shomura, R.S. and Yoshida, H.O. (Eds.), *Proceedings of the Workshop on the Fate and Impact of Marine Debris, 27-29 November, 1984*. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFC-54: 387-429. Southwest Fisheries Center, Honolulu, Hawaii.

Epperly, S., L. Avens, L. Garrison, T. Henwood, W. Hoggard, J. Mitchell, J. Nance, J. Poffenberger, C. Sasso, and E. Scott-Denton. 2002. Analysis of sea turtle bycatch in the commercial shrimp fisheries of southeast U.S. waters and the Gulf of Mexico. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-490: 88. NMFS, Southeast Fisheries Science Center, Miami, Florida.

Hamilton, P. K., A. R. Knowlton, M. N. Hagbloom, K. R. Howe, H. M. Pettis, M. K. Marx, M. A. Zani, and S. D. Kraus. 2018. Maintenance of the North Atlantic Right Whale Catalog, whale scarring and visual health databases, anthropogenic injury case studies, and near real-time matching for biopsy efforts, entangled, injured, sick, or dead right whales. Anderson Cabot Center for Ocean Life, New England Aquarium, Boston, Massachusetts, October.

Hamilton, P. K., A. R. Knowlton, M. N. Hagbloom, K. R. Howe, H. M. Pettis, M. K. Marx, M. A. Zani, and S. D. Kraus. 2019. Maintenance of the North Atlantic right whale catalog, whale scarring and visual health databases, anthropogenic injury case studies, and near real-time matching for biopsy effort entangled, injured, sick, or dead right whales. New England Aquarium, Boston, MA. Report No. Contract No. 1305M2-18-P-NFFM-0108.

Hamelin, K. M., M. C. James, W. Ledwell, J. Huntington, and K. Martin. 2017. Incidental capture of leatherback sea turtles in fixed fishing gear off Atlantic Canada. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems **27**(3): 631-642.

Hayes, S.A., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P.E. Rosel (eds.). 2020. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments: 2019. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFSNE-264, National Marine Fisheries Service: 479.

Henwood, T. A. and W. E. Stuntz. 1987. Analysis of sea turtle captures and mortalities during commercial shrimp trawling. Fishery Bulletin **85**(4): 813-817.

Ingram, E. C., Cerrato, R. M., Dunton, K. J., & Frisk, M. G. (2019). Endangered Atlantic Sturgeon in the New York Wind Energy Area: implications of future development in an offshore wind energy site. Scientific reports, 9(1), 1-13.

Johnson, A., G. Salvador, J. Kenney, J. Robbins, S. Kraus, S. Landry, and P. Clapham. 2005. Fishing gear involved in entanglements of right and humpback whales. Marine Mammal Science 21(4): 635-645.

Kazyak, D. C., S. L. White, B. A. Lubinski, R. Johnson, and M. Eackles. 2021. Stock composition of Atlantic sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus) encountered in marine and estuarine environments on the U.S. Atlantic Coast. Conservation Genetics.

Kraus, S.D., S. Leiter, K. Stone, B. Wikgren, C. Mayo, P. Hughes, R.D. Kenney, C.W. Clark, A.N. Rice, B. Estabrook and J. Tielens. 2016. Northeast Large Pelagic Survey Collaborative Aerial and Acoustic Surveys for Large Whales and Sea Turtles. U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Sterling, Virginia. OCS Study BOEM 2016-054.

Linden, D. W. 2020. Sea turtle interactions in the federal fisheries. National Marine Fisheries Service, Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office, Gloucester, Massachusetts, August 6, 2020. Miller, T. and G. Shepard. 2011. Summary of discard estimates for Atlantic sturgeon, August 19, 2011. Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Population Dynamics Branch.

Lutcavage, M. E. and P. L. Lutz. 1997. Diving Physiology. In Lutz, P.L. and Musick, J.A. (Eds.), *The Biology of Sea Turtles*. CRC Marine Science Series I: 277-296. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

Lutcavage, M. E., P. Plotkin, B. Witherington, and P. L. Lutz. 1997. Human impacts on sea turtle survival. In Lutz, P.L. and Musick, J.A. (Eds.), *The Biology of Sea Turtles* (Volume I, pp. 387-409). CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida. Murray, K. T. 2018. Estimated bycatch of sea turtles in sink gillnet gear. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, Massachusetts, April. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-242.

Murray, K. T. 2020. Estimated magnitude of sea turtle interactions and mortality in U.S. bottom trawl gear, 2014-2018. National Marine Fisheries Service, Woods Hole, Massachusetts, 2020. Northeast Fisheries Science Center Technical Memorandum No. NMFS-NE-260.

NEFMC. 2016. Omnibus Essential Fish Habitat Amendment 2: Final Environmental Assessment, Volume I-VI. New England Fishery Management Council in cooperation with the National Marine Fisheries Service, Newburyport, Massachusetts.

NEFMC. 2020. Fishing effects model, Northeast Region. New England Fishery Management Council, Newburyport, Massachusetts. Available from: https://www.nefmc.org/library/fishing-effects-model.

NMFS. 2021a. Endangered Species Act Section 7 Consultation: Site Assessment Survey Activities for Renewable Energy Development on the Atlantic Outer Continental Shelf [GARFO-2021-0999]. National Marine Fisheries Service, Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office, Gloucester, Massachusetts, July 29, 2021.

NMFS. 2021b. Final Environmental Impact Statement, Regulatory Impact Review, And Final Regulatory Flexibility Analysis For Amending The Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan: Risk Reduction Rule. National Marine Fisheries Service, Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office, Gloucester, Massachusetts. Available from: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/new-england-mid-atlantic/marine-mammal-protection/atlantic-large-whale-take-reduction-plan

NMFS. 2021c. Endangered Species Act Section 7 Consultation: (a) Authorization of the American Lobster, Atlantic Bluefish, Atlantic Deep-Sea Red Crab, Mackerel/Squid/Butterfish, Monkfish, Northeast Multispecies, Northeast Skate Complex, Spiny Dogfish, Summer

Flounder/Scup/Black Sea Bass, and Jonah Crab Fisheries and (b) Implementation of the New England Fishery Management Council's Omnibus Essential Fish Habitat Amendment 2 [Consultation No. GARFO-2017-00031]. National Marine Fisheries Service, Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office, Gloucester, Massachusetts, May 27, 2021. https://doi.org/10.25923/cfsq-qn06

Perry, S. L., D. P. DeMaster, and G. K. Silber. 1999. The Great Whales: History and Status of Six Species Listed as Endangered Under the U.S. Endangered Species Act of 1973. The Marine Fisheries Review 61(1): 74.

Roberts, J.J., B.D. Best, L. Mannocci, E. Fujioka, P.N. Halpin, D.L. Palka, et al. 2016. Habitat based cetacean density models for the U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico. Scientific Reports 6:22615.

Roberts, J.J., L. Mannocci, and P.N. Halpin. 2017. Final Project Report: Marine species density data gap assessments and update for the AFTT Study Area, 2016-2017 (Opt. Year 1). Document version 1.4. Report prepared for Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Atlantic by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab, Durham, NC. 87 p.

Roberts, J.J., L. Mannocci, R.S. Schick, and P.N. Halpin. 2018. Final Project Report: Marine species density data gap assessments and update for the AFTT Study Area, 2017-2018 (Opt. Year 2). Document version 1.2. Report prepared for Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Atlantic by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab, Durham, NC. 113 p.

Roberts, J.J., R.S. Schick, and P.N. Halpin. 2020. Final Project Report: Marine species density data gap assessments and update for the AFTT Study Area, 2018-2020 (Opt. Year 3). Document version 1.4. Report prepared for Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Atlantic by the Duke University Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab, Durham, NC. 142 p

Sasso, C. R. and S. P. Epperly. 2006. Seasonal sea turtle mortality risk from forced submergence in bottom trawls. Fisheries Research 81(1): 86-88.

Stein, A. B., K. D. Friedland, and M. Sutherland. 2004 b. Atlantic sturgeon marine bycatch and mortality on the continental shelf of the Northeast United States. North American Journal of Fisheries Management. 24: 171-183

Swimmer, Y., A. Gutierrez, K. Bigelow, C. Barceló, B. Schroeder, K. Keene, K. Shattenkirk, and D. G. Foster. 2017. Sea turtle bycatch mitigation in U.S. longline fisheries. Frontiers in Marine Science **4**: 260.

Townsend, D. W., A. C. Thomas, L. W. Mayer, and M. A. Thomas. 2006. Oceanography of the Northwest Atlantic continental shelf (1,W). In Robinson, A.R. and Brink, K.H. (Eds.), The Sea, Volume 14A: The Global Coastal Ocean-Interdisciplinary Regional Studies and Syntheses (p. 57). Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA.

Upite, C., K. T. Murray, B. Stacy, S. Weeks, and C. R Williams. 2013. Serious injury and mortality determinations for sea turtles in US northeast and Mid-Atlantic fishing gear, 2006-2010. National Marine Fisheries Service, Woods Hole, Massachusetts, 2013. Northeast Fisheries Science Center Technical Memorandum No. NMFS-NE-222.

Upite, C., K. T. Murray, B. Stacy, L. Stokes, and S. Weeks. 2019. Mortality rate estimates for sea turtles in Mid-Atlantic and Northeast fishing gear, 2012-2017. National Marine Fisheries Service, Gloucester, 465 Massachusetts. Greater Atlantic Region Policy Series 19-03. Available from: https://www.greateratlantic.fisheries.noaa.gov/policyseries/.

7.6 Consideration of Potential Shifts or Displacement of Fishing Activity

Cook, M., Dunch, V. S., & Coleman, A. T. (2020). An Interview-Based Approach to Assess Angler Practices and Sea Turtle Captures on Mississippi Fishing Piers. Frontiers in Marine Science, 7, 655.

Hooper, T., Hattam, C., & Austen, M. (2017). Recreational use of offshore wind farms: Experiences and opinions of sea anglers in the UK. Marine Policy, 78, 55-60.

Rudloe, A., & Rudloe, J. (2005). Site specificity and the impact of recreational fishing activity on subadult endangered Kemp's ridley sea turtles in estuarine foraging habitats in the northeastern Gulf of Mexico. Gulf of Mexico Science, 23(2), 5.

Seney, E. E. (2016). Diet of Kemp's ridley sea turtles incidentally caught on recreational fishing gear in the northwestern Gulf of Mexico. Chelonian Conservation and Biology, 15(1), 132-137.

Smythe, T., Bidwell, D., & Tyler, G. (2021). Optimistic with reservations: The impacts of the United States’ first offshore wind farm on the recreational fishing experience. Marine Policy, 127, 104440.

Swingle, W.M., Barco, S.G., Costidis, A.M., Bates, E.B., Mallette, S.D., Phillips, K.M., Rose, S.A., Williams, K.M. 2017. Virginia Sea Turtle and Marine Mammal Stranding Network 2016 Grant Report: VAQF Scientific Report (Vol 2017 No. 1).

ten Brink, T. S., & Dalton, T. (2018). Perceptions of commercial and recreational fishers on the potential ecological impacts of the Block Island Wind Farm (US). Frontiers in Marine Science, 5, 439.

U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service. (2021). Socioeconomic Impacts of Atlantic Offshore Wind Development. Descriptions of Selected Fishery Landings and Estimates of Recreational Party and Charter Vessel Revenue from Areas: A Planning-level Assessment. https://www.greateratlantic.fisheries.noaa.gov/ro/fso/reports/WIND/WIND_AREA_REPORTS/party_charter_reports/South_Fork_Wind_1_rec.html

Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM). 2021b. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Final Environmental Impact Statement. OCS EIS/EA BOEM 2020-057. https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/state-activities/SFWF%20FEIS.pdf

7.7 Repairs

7.8 Unexpected/Unanticipated Events

AKRF and A.N. Popper. 2012a. Presence of acoustic-tagged Atlantic sturgeon and potential avoidance of pile-driving activities during the Pile Installation Demonstration Project (PIDP) for the Tappan Zee Hudson River Crossing Project. September 2012. 9pp.

Bejarano, A.C., J. Michel, J. Rowe, Z. Li, D. French McCay, L. McStay and D.S. Etkin. 2013. Environmental Risks, Fate and Effects of Chemicals Associated with Wind Turbines on the Atlantic Outer Continental Shelf. US Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Office of Renewable Energy Programs. OCS Study BOEM 2013-213.

Knutson, T., Camargo, S.J., Chan, J.C., Emanuel, K., Ho, C.H., Kossin, J., Mohapatra, M., Satoh, M., Sugi, M., Walsh, K. and Wu, L., 2020. Tropical cyclones and climate change assessment: Part II: Projected response to anthropogenic warming. Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society, 101(3), pp.E303-E322

NOAA. 2017. Historical Hurricane Tracks. Retrieved November 15, 2017, from https://coast.noaa.gov/hurricanes/ as cited in Clarendon Consulting, 2018 (Navigational Risk Assessment).

Reine, K. J. and D. G. Clarke 1998. Entrainment by hydraulic dredges—A review of potential impacts. Dredging Operations and Environmental Research Technical Note Series DOER-E1. U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center, Vicksburg, MS. 14 pp. http://el.erdc.usace.army.mil/dots/doer.html. (Last viewed: 30 January 2014).

Scheidat, M., et al. 2011. Harbour porpoises (Phocoena phocoena) and wind farms: a case study in the Dutch North Sea. Environmental Research Letters, 6(2), 025102.

Taormina, B., J. Bald, A. Want, G. Thouzeau, M. Lejart, N. Desroy, and A. Carlier. 2018. “A Review of Potential Impacts of Submarine Power Cables on the Marine Environment: Knowledge Gaps, Recommendations and Future Directions.” Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews 96: 380-391.

Teilmann, J., & Carstensen, J. 2012. Negative long term effects on harbour porpoises from a large scale offshore wind farm in the Baltic—evidence of slow recovery. Environmental Research Letters, 7(4), 045101.

Teilmann, J., Tougaard, J., & Carstensen, J. 2006. Summary on harbour porpoise monitoring 1999-2006 around Nysted and Horns Rev Offshore Wind Farms. Report to Energi E2 A/S and Vattenfall A/S.

Tougaard, J., et al. 2006. Harbour seals on Horns Reef before, during and after construction of the Horns Rev Offshore Wind Farm. Final Report to Vatten fall A/S. Biological Papers from the Fisheries and Maritime Museum No. 5, Esbjerg. 67 pp. https://cpdp.debatpublic.fr/cpdp-eolien-en-mer/DOCS/DANEMARK/HARBOUR_SEALS_REPORT.PDF

Wilber, D.H. and Clarke, D.G., 2001. Biological effects of suspended sediments: a review of suspended sediment impacts on fish and shellfish with relation to dredging activities in estuaries. North American Journal of Fisheries Management, 21(4), pp.855-875.

7.9 Project Decommissioning

Hinzmann, N. et al. 2017. Measurements of hydro sound emissions during internal jet cutting during monopile decommissioning. https://www.researchgate.net/profile/Nils_Hinzmann/publication/322986958_Measurements_of_hydro_sound_emissions_during_internal_jet_cut-ting_during_monopile_decommissioning/links/5a7af0eaa6fdcc772b095646/Measurements-of-hydro-sound-emissions-during-internal-jet-cut-ting-during-monopile-decommissioning.pdf

7.10 Consideration of the Effects of the Action in the Context of Predicted Climate Change due to Past, Present, and Future Activities

Garrison. L. P. 2007. Defining the North Atlantic Right Whale Calving Habitat in the Southeastern United States: An Application of a Habitat Model. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA NMFS-SEFSC-553: 66 p.

Grieve, B.D., Hare, J.A. & Saba, V.S. Projecting the effects of climate change on Calanus finmarchicus distribution within the U.S. Northeast Continental Shelf. Sci Rep 7, 6264 (2017). https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-06524-1

Hare JA, Morrison WE, Nelson MW, Stachura MM, Teeters EJ, Griffis RB, et al. 2016. A Vulnerability Assessment of Fish and Invertebrates to Climate Change on the Northeast U.S. Continental Shelf. PLoS ONE 11(2): e0146756. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0146756

IPCC, 2014: *Climate Change 2014: Synthesis Report. Contribution of Working Groups I, II and III to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change* [Core Writing Team, R.K. Pachauri and L.A. Meyer (eds.)]. IPCC, Geneva, Switzerland, 151 pp.

Learmonth, J.A., C.D. MacLeod, M.B. Santos, G.J. Pierce, H.Q.P. Crick and R.A. Robinson, 2006: Potential effects of climate change on marine mammals.

Oceanogr. Mar. Biol., 44, 431-464.

Miller, M.H. and C. Klimovich. 2017. Endangered Species Act Status Review Report: Giant Manta Ray (Manta birostris) and Reef Manta Ray (Manta alfredi). Report to National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD. September 2017. 128 Pp

National Marine Fisheries Service and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2013. HAWKSBILL SEA TURTLE (ERETMOCHELYS IMBRICATA) 5-YEAR REVIEW:SUMMARY AND EVALUATION. https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/17041

Norton, S.L., Wiley, T.R., Carlson, J.K., Frick, A.L., Poulakis, G.R. and Simpfendorfer, C.A. 2012. Designating Critical Habitat for Juvenile Endangered Smalltooth Sawfish in the United States. Marine and Coastal Fisheries, 4: 473-480. doi:10.1080/19425120.2012.676606

Record, N., et al. 2019. Rapid Climate-Driven Circulation Changes Threaten Conservation of Endangered North Atlantic Right Whales. Oceanography, 32(2), 162-169. Retrieved October 14, 2020, from https://www.jstor.org/stable/26651192

Young, C.N., Carlson, J., Hutchinson, M., Hutt, C., Kobayashi, D., McCandless, C.T., Wraith, J. 2018. Status review report: oceanic whitetip shark (Carcharhinius longimanus). Final Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources. December 2017. 170pp

8.0 Cumulative Effects

Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM). 2021a. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Draft Environmental Impact Statement. OCS EIS/EA BOEM 2020-057. *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/SFWF-DEIS_0.pdf*

Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM). 2021b. South Fork Wind Farm and South Fork Export Cable Project Final Environmental Impact Statement. OCS EIS/EA BOEM 2020-057. *https://www.boem.gov/sites/default/files/documents/renewable-energy/state-activities/SFWF%20FEIS.pdf*

9.0 Integration and Synthesis of Effects

ASMFC (Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission). 2017. Atlantic Sturgeon Benchmark Stock Assessment and Peer Review Report, Arlington, VA. 456. http://www.asmfc.org/files/Meetings/AtlMenhadenBoardNov2017/AtlSturgonBenchmarkStockAssmt_PeerReviewReport_2017.pdf

Balazik, M. T. and J. A. Musick. 2015. Dual annual spawning races in Atlantic sturgeon. PLoS ONE **10**(5): e0128234.

Balazik, M.T., G.C. Garman, J.P. VanEenennaam, J. Mohler, and C. Woods III. 2012. Empirical evidence of fall spawning by Atlantic sturgeon in the James River, Virginia. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 141(6):1465-1471.

Bolten, A. B., L. B. Crowder, M. G. Dodd, A. M. Lauritsen, J. A. Musick, B. A. Schroeder, and B. E. Witherington. 2019. Recovery plan for the Northwest Atlantic Population of the loggerhead sea turtle (*Caretta caretta*) second revision (2008). Assessment of progress toward recovery. Northwest Atlantic Loggerhead Recovery Team.

Braham, H. W. 1991. Endangered whales: A status update. A report on the 5-year status of stocks review under the 1978 amendments to the U.S. Endangered Species Act. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Mammal Laboratory, Seattle, Washington.

Carr, A. 1963. Panspecific reproductive convergence in *Lepidochelys kempi*. In Autrum, H., Bünning, E., v. Frisch, K., Hadorn, E., Kühn, A., Mayr, E., Pirson, A., Straub, J., Stubbe, H. and Weidel, W. (Eds.), *Orientierung der Tiere / Animal Orientation: Symposium in Garmisch-Partenkirchen 17.–21. 9. 1962* (pp. 298-303). Springer Berlin Heidelberg, Berlin, Heidelberg.

Carretta, J. V., K. A. Forney, E. M. Oleson, D. W. Weller, A. R. Lang, J. Baker, M. M. Muto, H. Brad, A. J. Orr, H. Huber, M. S. Lowry, J. Barlow, J. E. Moore, D. Lynch, L. Carswell, and R. L. Brownell Jr. 2019a. U.S. Pacific marine mammal stock assessments: 2018. National Marine Fisheries Service, La Jolla, CA. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-617. Available from: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/marine-mammal-protection/marine-mammal-stock-assessments.

Cattanach, K. L., J. Sigurjonsson, S. T. Buckland, and T. Gunnlaugsson. 1993. Sei whale abundance in the North Atlantic, estimated from NASS-87 and NASS-89 data. Report of the International Whaling Commission 43:315-321.

Ceriani SA, Meylan AB. 2017. Caretta caretta North West Atlantic subpopulation (amended version of 2015 assessment). The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2017:e.T84131194A119339029. http: //dx.doi.org/ 10.2305/IUCN. UK. 2017-2.RLTS.T84131194A119339029.en

Conant, T. A., and coauthors. 2009. Loggerhead sea turtle (Caretta caretta) 2009 status review under the U.S. Endangered Species Act. Report of the Loggerhead Biological Review Team to the National Marine Fisheries Service August 2009:222 pages.

Cooke, J. G. (2018). “Balaenoptera borealis,” The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2018, e.T2475A130482064.

Daoust, P.-Y., E. L. Couture, T. Wimmer, and L. Bourque. 2017. Incident Report: North Atlantic Right Whale Mortality Event in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, 2017. Collaborative Report Produced by: Canadian Wildlife Health Cooperative, Marine Animal Response Society, and Fisheries and Oceans Canada., http://www.cwhcrcsf.ca/docs/technical_reports/Incident%20Report%20Right%20Whales%20EN.pdf.

Damon-Randall, K., M. Colligan, and J. Crocker. 2013. Composition of Atlantic Sturgeon in Rivers, Estuaries, and Marine Waters. National Marine Fisheries Service, NERO, Unpublished Report. February 2013. 33 pp.

Dutton, P., V. Pease, and D. Shaver. Characterization of mtDNA variation among Kemp's ridleys nesting on Padre Island with reference to Rancho Nuevo genetic stock. *In* Twenty-Sixth Annual Conference on Sea Turtle Conservation and Biology, 2006: 189.

Ernst, C. H. and R. Barbour. 1972. Turtles ofthe United States. University Press of Kentucky, Lexington. 347 pp.

Farmer, N. A., D. P. Noren, E. M. Fougères, A. Machernis, and K. Baker. 2018. Resilience of the endangered sperm whale Physeter macrocephalus to foraging disturbance in the Gulf of Mexico, USA: A bioenergetic approach. Marine Ecology Progress Series 589:241-261.

Gallaway, B. J., et al. 2016. Development of a Kemp’s ridley sea turtle stock assessment model. Gulf of Mexico Science **33**(2): 138-157.

Goldbogen, J.A. et al. 2013. Blue whales respond to simulated mid-frequency military sonar. Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 280(1765): 20130657.

Goldbogen, J.A., et al. 2013b. Blue whales respond to simulated mid-frequency military sonar. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London Series B Biological Sciences, 280(1765): Article 20130657.

Hager, C., J. Kahn, C. Watterson, J. Russo, and K. Hartman. 2014. Evidence of Atlantic Sturgeon spawning in the York river system. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society **143**(5): 1217-1219.

Harris, C. M., and coauthors. 2017a. Marine mammals and sonar: dose-response studies, the riskdisturbance hypothesis and the role of exposure context. Journal of Applied Ecology:1-9.

Harris, C. M., L. J. Wilson, C. G. Booth, and J. Harwood. 2017b. Population consequences of disturbance: A decision framework to identify priority populations for PCoD modelling. 22nd Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2017. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2016. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-241.

Hayes, S. et al. 2018. North Atlantic Right Whales- Evaluating Their Recovery Challenges in 2018 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration National Marine Fisheries Service Northeast Fisheries Science Center Woods Hole, Massachusetts September 2018 NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-247 https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/19086

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2019. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2018. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-258.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2020. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2019. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-264.

Hayes, S., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. Rosel, eds. 2021. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments—2020. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE-271. https://media.fisheries.noaa.gov/2021-07/Atlantic%202020%20SARs%20Final.pdf?null%09

Hilton, E. J., B. Kynard, M. T. Balazik, A. Z. Horodysky, and C. B. Dillman. 2016. Review of the biology, fisheries, and conservation status of the Atlantic sturgeon, (*Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus* Mitchill, 1815). Journal of Applied Ichthyology **32**(S1): 30-66.

Kahn, J., C. Hager, J. C. Watterson, J. Russo, K. Moore, and K. Hartman. 2014. Atlantic sturgeon annual spawning run estimate in the Pamunkey River, Virginia. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society **143**(6): 1508-1514.

Kahn, J.E., Hager, C., Watterson, J.C., Mathies, N. and Hartman, K.J., 2019. Comparing abundance estimates from closed population mark-recapture models of endangered adult Atlantic sturgeon. Endangered Species Research, 39, pp.63-76.

Kazyak, D.C., White, S.L., Lubinski, B.A., Johnson, R. and Eackles, M., 2021. Stock composition of Atlantic sturgeon (Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus) encountered in marine and estuarine environments on the US Atlantic Coast. Conservation Genetics, pp.1-15.

King, S. L., and coauthors. 2015b. An interim framework for assessing the population consequences of disturbance. Methods in Ecology and Evolution 6(10):1150–1158.

Kocik, J., C. Lipsky, T. Miller, P. Rago, and G. Shepherd. 2013. An Atlantic sturgeon population index for ESA management analysis. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, Massachusetts. Center Reference Document 13-06. Available from: http://www.nefsc.noaa.gov/publications/crd/.

Macleod, C. D., and coauthors. 2005. Climate change and the cetacean community of north-west Scotland. Biological Conservation 124(4):477-483.

Melcon, M. L., and coauthors. 2012. Blue whales respond to anthropogenic noise. PLoS One 7(2):e32681.

Meylan, A. 1982. Estimation of population size in sea turtles. In Bjorndal, K.A. (Ed.), *Biology and Conservation of Sea Turtles* (1 ed., pp. 1385-1138). Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington, D.C.

NAS. 2017. Approaches to Understanding the Cumulative Effects of Stressors on Marine

Mammals. National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine. The National Academies Press, Washington, District of Columbia.

New, L. F., and coauthors. 2014. Using short-term measures of behaviour to estimate long-term fitness of southern elephant seals. Marine Ecology Progress Series 496:99-108.

NMFS. 2005. Recovery plan for the North Atlantic right whale (Eubalaena glacialis). National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service.

NMFS. 2010. Recovery plan for the fin whale (Balaenoptera physalus). U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS. 2010a. Final recovery plan for the sperm whale (Physeter macrocephalus). National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS. 2011e. Final recovery plan for the sei whale (Balaenoptera borealis). U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS-NEFSC. 2011. Preliminary summer 2010 regional abundance estimate of loggerhead turtles (Caretta caretta) in northwestern Atlantic Ocean continental shelf waters. U.S. Department of Commerce, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Reference Document 11-03.

NMFS SEFSC. 2009. An assessment of loggerhead sea turtles to estimate impacts of mortality reductions on population dynamics. National Marine Fisheries Service, Southeast Fisheries Science Center, Miami, Florida, July. NMFS-SEFSC Contribution PRD-08/09-14. Available from: https://grunt.sefsc.noaa.gov/P_QryLDS/download/PRB27_PRBD-08_09-14.pdf?id=LDS.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 1991. Recovery plan for U.S. population of Atlantic green turtle (Chelonia mydas). National Marine Fisheries Service, Washington, DC. 52 pp

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 1992. Recovery plan for leatherback turtles in the U.S. Caribbean, Atlantic, and Gulf of Mexico. National Marine Fisheries Service, Washington, D.C. 65 pp.

NMFS, and USFWS. 2007. Loggerhead sea turtle (Caretta caretta) 5-year review: Summary and evaluation. National Marine Fisheries Service and United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS, and USFWS. 2008. Recovery plan for the northwest Atlantic population of the loggerhead sea turtle (Caretta caretta), second revision. National Marine Fisheries Service and United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS. 2011c. Preliminary summer 2010 regional abundance esimate of loggerhead turtles (*Caretta caretta*) in northwestern Atlantic Ocean continental shelf waters. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Centers, Woods Hole, MA. Center Reference Document 11-03. Available from: https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/3879.

NMFS, and USFWS. 2013. Leatherback Sea Turtle (Dermochelys coriacea) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. National Marine Fisheries Service and United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NMFS and USFWS. 2015. Kemp's ridley sea turtle (*Lepidochelys kempii*). 5-year review: Summary and evaluation. National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, Maryland and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Albuquerque, New Mexico, July. Available from: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/find-species.

NMFS and USFWS. 2020. Endangered Species Act status review of the leatherback turtle (Dermochelys coriacea). Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service Office of Protected Resources and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

NMFS, USFWS, SEMARNET, CNANP, and PROFEPA. 2011. Bi-national recovery plan for the Kemp’s ridley sea turtle (Lepidochelys kempii), second revision. National Marine Fisheries Service, United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Secretariat of Environment & Natural Resources, National Commissioner of the Natural Protected Areas, Administrator of the Federal Attorney of Environmental Protection, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group. 2018. Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Turtle (Dermochelys coriacea) Status Assessment (Bryan Wallace and Karen Eckert, Compilers and Editors). Conservation Science Partners and the Wider Caribbean Sea Turtle Conservation Network (WIDECAST). WIDECAST Technical Report No. 16. Godfrey, Illinois. 36 pp.

Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Working Group. 2019. *Dermochelys coriacea*, Northwest Atlantic Ocean subpopulation. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. 2019:e.T46967827A83327767. International Union for the Conservation of Nature. Available from: https://www.iucnredlist.org/species/46967827/83327767.

NPS. 2020. Review of the sea turtle science and recovery program, Padre Island National Seashore. National Park Service, Denver, Colorado. Available from: https://www.nps.gov/pais/learn/management/sea-turtle-review.htm.

Pace, R. M., P. J. Corkeron, and S. D. Kraus. 2017. State-space mark-recapture estimates reveal a recent decline in abundance of North Atlantic right whales. Ecology and Evolution:doi: 10.1002/ece3.3406.

Pace, R. M. 2021. Revisions and further evaluations of the right whale abundance model: improvements for hypothesis testing. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center, Woods Hole, Massachusetts. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NE 269.

Pace, R. M., III, R. Williams, S. D. Kraus, A. R. Knowlton, and H. M. Pettis. 2021. Cryptic mortality of North Atlantic right whales. Conservation Science and Practice **3**(2): e346.

Palka, D. 2012. Cetacean abundance estimates in US northwestern Atlantic Ocean waters from summer 2011 line transect survey. Northeast Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Reference Document 12-29, Woods Hole, Massachusetts.

Pendleton, R.M. and Adams, R.D., 2021. Long-Term Trends in Juvenile Atlantic Sturgeon Abundance May Signal Recovery in the Hudson River, New York, USA. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*, *41*(4), pp.1170-1181.

Richards, P. M., S. P. Epperly, S. S. Heppell, R. T. King, C. R. Sasso, F. Moncada, G. Nodarse, D. J. Shaver, Y. Medina, and J. Zurita. 2011. Sea turtle population estimates incorporating uncertainty: A new approach applied to western North Atlantic loggerheads Caretta caretta. Endangered Species Research 15: 151-158.

Richardson, B. and Secor, D., 2016. Assessment of Critical Habitats for Recovering the Chesapeake Bay Atlantic Sturgeon Distinct Population Segment. *Maryland Department of Natural Resources, Stevensville, MD.*

Ross, J. P. 1996. Caution urged in the interpretation of trends at nesting beaches. Marine Turtle Newsletter **74**: 9-10.

Secor, D.H., O’Brien, M.H.P., Coleman, N., Horne, A., Park, I., Kazyak, D.C., Bruce, D.G. and Stence, C., 2021. Atlantic Sturgeon Status and Movement Ecology in an Extremely Small Spawning Habitat: The Nanticoke River-Marshyhope Creek, Chesapeake Bay. *Reviews in Fisheries Science & Aquaculture*, pp.1-20.

NMFS SEFSC. 2009. An assessment of loggerhead sea turtles to estimate impacts of mortality reductions on population dynamics. National Marine Fisheries Service, Southeast Fisheries Science Center, Miami, Florida, July. NMFS-SEFSC Contribution PRD-08/09-14. Available from: https://grunt.sefsc.noaa.gov/P_QryLDS/download/PRB27_PRBD-08_09-14.pdf?id=LDS.

Seminoff, J. A., and coauthors. 2015b. Status review of the green turtle (Chelonia Mydas) under the endangered species act. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS-SWFSC-539.

Silve, L. D., and coauthors. 2015. Severity of expert-identified behavioural responses of humpback whale, minke whale, and northern bottlenose whale to naval sonar. Aquatic Mammals, 41(4), 469–502.

Southall, B., and coauthors. 2007a. Aquatic mammals marine mammal noise exposure criteria: Initial scientific recommendations. Aquatic Mammals 33(4):122.

Southall, B., and coauthors. 2007b. Mammal noise exposure criteria: Initial scientific recommendations. Aquatic Mammals 33(4):122.

Southall, B. L., D. P. Nowacek, P. J. O. Miller, and P. L. Tyack. 2016. Experimental field studies to measure behavioral responses of cetaceans to sonar. Endangered Species Research 31:293-315.

Tiwari, M., W. B.P., and M. Girondot. 2013a. Dermochelys coriacea (West Pacific Ocean subpopulation). The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2013: e.T46967817A46967821. International Union for the Conservation of Nature. Available from: https://www.iucnredlist.org/ja/species/46967817/46967821.

Tiwari, M., B. P. Wallace, and M. Girondot. 2013b. Dermochelys coriacea (Northwest Atlantic Ocean subpopulation). The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2013: e.T46967827A46967830. International Union for the Conservation of Nature. Available from: https://www.iucnredlist.org/ja/species/46967827/184748440.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and National Marine Fisheries Service. 1998. Endangered Species Consultation Handbook: Procedures for Conducting Consultations and Conference Activities Under Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act. 315 pp. https://www.fws.gov/southwest/es/arizona/Documents/Consultations/esa_section7_handbook.pdf

Villegas-Amtmann, S., L. K. Schwarz, J. L. Sumich, and D. P. Costa. 2015. A bioenergetics model to evaluate demographic consequences of disturbance in marine mammals applied to gray whales. Ecosphere 6(10).

Ward, W.D. (1997). Effects of high-intensity sound. Pages 1497-1507 in M.J. Crocker, ed. Encyclopedia of Acoustics, Volume III. John Wiley & Sons, New York.

Waring, G. T., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P. E. Rosel. 2015. US Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments-2014, NOAA Tech Memo NMFS NE 231.

Whitehead, H. 2009. Sperm whale: Physeter macrocephalus. Pages 1091-1097 in W. F. Perrin, B. Würsig, and J. G. M. Thewissen, editors. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals, Second edition. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Wibbels, T. and E. Bevan. 2019. *Lepidochelys kempii*. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2019: e.T11533A142050590. Retrived, from https://www.iucnredlist.org/species/11533/142050590.

Wirgin, I., M. W. Breece, D. A. Fox, L. Maceda, K. W. Wark, and T. King. 2015a. Origin of Atlantic Sturgeon collected off the Delaware coast during spring months. North American Journal of Fisheries Management **35**(1): 20-30.

Wirgin, I., L. Maceda, C. Grunwald, and T. L. King. 2015b. Population origin of Atlantic sturgeon *Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus* bycatch in U.S. Atlantic coast fisheries. Journal of Fish Biology **86**(4): 1251-1270.

76 Federal Register 58867 September 22, 2011. Endangered and Threatened Species; Determination of Nine Distinct Population Segments of Loggerhead Sea Turtles as Endangered or Threatened

85 FR 48332 August 10, 2020. Endangered and Threatened Wildlife; 12-Month Finding on a Petition To Identify the Northwest Atlantic Leatherback Turtle as a Distinct Population Segment and List It as Threatened Under the Endangered Species Act

11.0 Incidental Take Statement

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and National Marine Fisheries Service. 1998. Endangered Species Consultation Handbook: Procedures for Conducting Consultations and Conference Activities Under Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act. 315 pp. https://www.fws.gov/southwest/es/arizona/Documents/Consultations/esa_section7_handbook.pdf